CHEM 12A: ORGANIC CHEMISTRY



Andy Wells
Chabot College

LibreTexts™

Chem 12A Fall 2022 Draft 2 July 11

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 03/11/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry- review of atoms and molecules

- 1.1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry
- 1.2: Structure of the Atom
- 1.3: The Electronic Structure of Atoms
- 1.4: Electron Configurations and Electronic Orbital Diagrams (Review)
- 1.5: Octet Rule - Ionic and Covalent Bonding (Review)
- 1.6: Lewis Structures and Formal Charges (Review)
- 1.7: Electron-Dot Model of Bonding - Lewis Structures
- 1.8: Common Bonding Patterns for Organic Chemistry
- 1.9: Hybridization and Molecular Shapes (Review)
- 1.10: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory (Review)

2: Polarity, Intermolecular Forces, and Physical Properties of Molecules

- 2.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity (Review)
- 2.2: Intermolecular Forces (IMFs) - Review
- 2.3: Organic Functional Groups- H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors
- 2.4: Intermolecular Forces and Relative Boiling Points (bp)
- 2.5: Intermolecular Forces and Solubilities

3: Representations of Organic Molecules

- 3.1: Structural Formulas - Lewis, Kekule, Bond-line, Condensed, and Perspective
- 3.2: Isomerism Introduction
- 3.3: Resonance
- 3.4: Organic Functional Groups

4: Acids and Bases

- 4.1: Arrhenius Acids and Bases (Review)
- 4.2: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases (Review)
- 4.3: Distinguishing between pH and pKa
- 4.4: Predicting Relative Acidity
- 4.5: Lewis Acids and Bases

5: Alkanes and Conformations

- 5.1: Hydrocarbons and the Homologous Series
- 5.2: Generic (Abbreviated) Structures (aka R Groups)
- 5.3: Overview of the IUPAC Naming Strategy
- 5.4: Alkanes
- 5.5: Uses and Sources of Alkanes
- 5.6: Cycloalkanes
- 5.7: Haloalkane - Classification and Nomenclature
- 5.8: Hydrocarbon Functional Groups
- 5.9: Physical Properties of Alkanes

- 5.10: Structure and Conformations of Alkanes
- 5.11: Conformations of Butane
- 5.12: Conformations of Higher Alkanes
- 5.13: Cycloalkanes and Ring Strain
- 5.14: Cyclohexane Conformations
- 5.15: Conformations of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes
- 5.16: Cis-trans Isomerism in Cycloalkanes
- 5.17: Conformations of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes
- 5.18: Additional Exercises
- 5.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises

6: Stereoisomerism

- 6.1: Chirality
- 6.2: Fischer Projections to communicate Chirality
- 6.3: Absolute Configuration and the (R) and (S) System
- 6.4: Diastereomers - more than one chiral center
- 6.5: Meso Compounds
- 6.6: Isomerism Summary Diagram
- 6.7: Optical Activity and Racemic Mixtures
- 6.8: Resolution (Separation) of Enantiomers

7: Introduction to Organic Reactions

- 7.1: Describing a Reaction - Equilibrium and Free Energy Changes
- 7.2: Types of Organic Reactions
- 7.3: Reaction Mechanism Notation and Symbols
- 7.4: Polar Reactions- the Dance of the Nucleophile and Electrophile
- 7.5: Homolytic Cleavage and Bond Dissociation Energies
- 7.6: Reaction Energy Diagrams and Transition States
- 7.7: Reactive Intermediates - Carbocations

8: Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

- 8.1: Alkyl Halides - Structure and Physical Properties
- 8.2: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination
- 8.3: The S_n2 Reaction
- 8.4: Characteristics of the S_n2 Reaction
- 8.5: Stereochemistry of the SN2 Reaction
- 8.6: The S_n1 Reaction
- 8.7: Characteristics of the S_n1 Reaction
- 8.8: Rearrangements of the Carbocation and S_n1 Reactions
- 8.9: The Hammond Postulate and Transition States
- 8.10: Comparison of SN1 and SN2 Reactions
- 8.11: Biological Substitution Reactions

9: Elimination Reactions

- 9.1: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination
- 9.2: Characteristics of the E2 Reaction
- 9.3: Zaitsev's Rule
- 9.4: Characteristics of the E1 Reaction

- 9.5: E2 Regiochemistry and Cyclohexane Conformations
- 9.6: The E2 Reaction and the Deuterium Isotope Effect
- 9.7: Comparison of E1 and E2 Reactions
- 9.8: Comparing Substitution and Elimination Reactions
- 9.9: Biological Elimination Reactions
- 9.10: Additional Exercises
- 9.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises

10: Properties and Reactions of Alkenes

- 10.1: Alkene Structure
- 10.2: Physical Properties and Important Common Names
- 10.3: The Alkene Double Bond and Stereoisomerism
- 10.4: Degrees of Unsaturation
- 10.5: The E/Z System (when cis/trans does not work)
- 10.6: Stability of Alkenes
- 10.7: Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides
- 10.8: Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols
- 10.9: Additional Exercises. Part 1
- 10.10: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 1
- 10.11: Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs)
- 10.12: Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Symmetrical Alkenes
- 10.13: Alkene Asymmetry and Markovnikov's Rule
- 10.14: Hydration- Acid Catalyzed Addition of Water
- 10.15: Hydration- Oxymercuration-Demercuration
- 10.16: Hydration - Hydroboration-Oxidation
- 10.17: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Achiral Alkenes
- 10.18: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Chiral Alkenes
- 10.19: Addition of Halogens
- 10.20: Formation of Halohydrins
- 10.21: Reduction of Alkenes - Catalytic Hydrogenation
- 10.22: Oxidation of Alkenes - Epoxidation
- 10.23: Dihydroxylation of Alkenes
- 10.24: Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes
- 10.25: Additional Exercises, Part 2
- 10.26: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 2

11: Properties and Reactions of Alkynes

- 11.1: Structure and Physical Properties
- 11.2: 10.2 Synthesis of Alkynes - Elimination Reactions of Dihalides
- 11.3: Reactions of Alkynes - Addition of HX and X_2
- 11.4: Hydration of Alkynes for Markovnikov Products
- 11.5: Hydration of Alkynes for Anti-Markovnikov Products
- 11.6: 10.6 Reduction of Alkynes
- 11.7: Oxidation of Alkynes
- 11.8: Acidity of Terminal Alkynes and Acetylide Ions
- 11.9: Synthesis of Larger Alkynes from Acetylides
- 11.10: An Introduction to Multiple Step Synthesis
- 11.11: Additional Exercises
- 11.12: Solutions to Additional Exercises

12: Free Radical Reactions

- 12.1: Reactive Intermediates - Radicals
- 12.2: The Free-Radical Halogenation of Alkanes
- 12.3: Radical-Chain Addition Reactions to Alkenes

13: Properties and Reactions of Alcohols

- 13.1: Introduction to Structure and Synthesis of Alcohols
- 13.2: Classification of Alcohols
- 13.3: Physical Properties of Alcohols
- 13.4: Spectroscopy of Alcohols
- 13.5: Synthesis of Alcohols - Review
- 13.6: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols
- 13.7: Reduction of the Carbonyl Group - Synthesis of 1º and 2º Alcohols
- 13.8: Organometallic Reagents
- 13.9: Organometallic Reagents in Alcohol Synthesis
- 13.10: Additional Exercises Part 1
- 13.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 1
- 13.12: Reactions of Alcohols with Hydrohalic Acids
- 13.13: Reactions with Phosphorus Halides and Thionyl Chloride
- 13.14: Dehydration Reactions of Alcohols
- 13.15: Oxidation States of Alcohols and Related Functional Groups
- 13.16: Oxidation Reactions of Alcohols
- 13.17: Protection of Alcohols
- 13.18: Additional Exercises Part 2
- 13.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 2

14: Infrared Spectroscopy and Mass Spectrometry

- 14.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum and Spectroscopy
- 14.2: Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy
- 14.3: IR-Active and IR-Inactive Vibrations
- 14.4: Interpretting IR Spectra
- 14.5: Infrared Spectra of Some Common Functional Groups
- 14.6: Summary and Tips to Distinguish between Carbonyl Functional Groups

15: Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

- 15.1: Theory of Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR)
- 15.2: NMR Spectra - an introduction and overview
- 15.3: Chemical Shifts and Shielding
- 15.4: ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy and Proton Equivalence
- 15.5: Functional Groups and Chemical Shifts in ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy
- 15.6: Integration of ^{1}H NMR Absorptions- Proton Counting
- 15.7: Spin-Spin Splitting in ^{1}H NMR Spectra
- 15.8: More Complex Spin-Spin Splitting Patterns
- 15.9: Uses of ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy
- 15.10: Sample NMR Spectra

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry- review of atoms and molecules

1.1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry
1.2: Structure of the Atom
1.3: The Electronic Structure of Atoms
1.4: Electron Configurations and Electronic Orbital Diagrams (Review)
1.5: Octet Rule - Ionic and Covalent Bonding (Review)
1.6: Lewis Structures and Formal Charges (Review)
1.7: Electron-Dot Model of Bonding - Lewis Structures
1.8: Common Bonding Patterns for Organic Chemistry
1.9: Hybridization and Molecular Shapes (Review)
1.10: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory (Review)

1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry- review of atoms and molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. Define organic chemistry as the study of carbon-containing compounds.
2. Explain why the results of the experiments carried out by Chevreul and Wöhler contributed to the demise of the "vital force" theory.

Key Terms

Make certain that you can define, and use in context, the key term below.

- organic chemistry

All living things on earth are formed mostly of carbon compounds. The prevalence of carbon compounds in living things has led to the epithet "carbon-based" life. The truth is we know of no other kind of life. Early chemists regarded substances isolated from *organisms* (plants and animals) as a different type of matter that could not be synthesized artificially, and these substances were thus known as *organic compounds*.



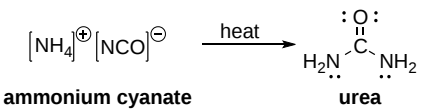
Figure **1.1.1**: All organic compounds contain carbon and most are formed by living things, although they are also formed by geological and artificial processes. (credit left: modification of work by Jon Sullivan; credit left middle: modification of work by Deb Tremper; credit right middle: modification of work by "annszyp"/Wikimedia Commons; credit right: modification of work by George Shuklin)

Jöns Jacob Berzelius, a physician by trade, first coined the term "organic chemistry" in 1806 for the study of compounds derived from biological sources. Up through the early 19th century, naturalists and scientists observed critical differences between compounds that were derived from living things and those that were not.



Berzelius

In 1828, Friedrich Wöhler (widely regarded as a pioneer in organic chemistry) successfully completed an organic synthesis by heating ammonium cyanate and synthesizing of the biological compound urea (a component of urine in many animals) in what is now called "the Wöhler synthesis." Until this discovery it was widely believed by chemists that organic substances could only be formed under the influence of the "vital force" in the bodies of animals and plants. Wöhler's synthesis dramatically proved that view to be false.



Urea synthesis was a critical discovery for biochemists because it showed that a compound known to be produced in nature only by biological organisms could be produced in a laboratory under controlled conditions from inanimate matter. This “in vitro” synthesis of organic matter disproved the common theory (vitalism) about the *vis vitalis*, a transcendent “life force” needed for producing organic compounds.

The ability to manipulate organic compounds includes fermentation to create wine and the making of soap, both of which have been a part of society so long their discovery has been lost in antiquity. Evidence has shown the Babylonians, as early as 2800 BC, were creating soap by mixing animal fat with wood ashes. It wasn't until the 19th century that the chemical nature of the creation of soap was discovered by Eugène Chevreul. In a reaction now call saponification, fats are heated in the presence of a strong base (KOH or NaOH) to produce fatty acid salts and glycerol. The fatty acid salts are the soap which improve water's ability to dissolve grease.

$$\text{animal fat} \xrightarrow[H_2O]{NaOH} \text{soap} + \text{glycerol}$$

Although originally defined as the chemistry of biological molecules, **organic chemistry** has since been redefined to refer specifically to carbon compounds — even those with non-biological origin. Some carbon molecules are not considered organic, with carbon dioxide being the most well known and most common inorganic carbon compound, but such molecules are the exception and not the rule. Organic chemistry focuses on carbon compounds and following movement of the electrons in carbon chains and rings, and also how electrons are shared with other carbon atoms and heteroatoms. Organic chemistry is primarily concerned with the properties of covalent bonds and non-metallic elements, though ions and metals do play critical roles in some reactions.

Why is carbon so special? The answer to this question involves carbon's special ability to bond with itself, which will be discussed in this chapter. Carbon is unique in its ability to form a wide variety of compounds from simple to complex. There are literally millions of organic compounds known to science from methane, which contains one carbon atom, to DNA which contains millions of carbons. More importantly, organic chemistry gives us the ability to make and alter the structure of organic compounds, which is the main topic in this book. The applications of organic chemistry are myriad, and include all sorts of plastics, dyes, flavorings, scents, detergents, explosives, fuels and many, many other products. Read the ingredient list for almost any kind of food that you eat — or even your shampoo bottle — and you will see the handiwork of organic chemists listed there.



The value to us of organic compounds ensures that organic chemistry is an important discipline within the general field of chemistry. In this chapter, we discuss why the element carbon gives rise to a vast number and variety of compounds, how those compounds are classified, and the role of organic compounds in representative biological and industrial settings. The field of organic chemistry is probably the most active and important field of chemistry at the moment, due to its extreme applicability to both biochemistry (especially in the pharmaceutical industry) and petrochemistry (especially in the energy industry). Organic chemistry has a relatively recent history, but it will have an enormously important future, affecting the lives of everyone around the world for many, many years to come

---

1.1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.0: Introduction to Organic Chemistry** by Dietmar Kennepohl, Krista Cunningham, OpenStax, Steven Farmer is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

1.2: Structure of the Atom

Learning Objective

- Use and apply the language of Atomic Structure (atomic number, mass number, isotopes)

The precise physical nature of atoms finally emerged from a series of elegant experiments carried out between 1895 and 1915. The most notable of these achievements was Ernest Rutherford's famous 1911 alpha-ray scattering experiment, which established that

- Almost all of the *mass* of an atom is contained within a tiny (and therefore extremely dense) *nucleus* which carries a positive electric charge whose value identifies each element and is known as the *atomic number* of the element.
- Almost all of the *volume* of an atom consists of empty space in which electrons, the fundamental carriers of negative electric charge, reside. The extremely small mass of the electron (1/1840 the mass of the hydrogen nucleus) causes it to behave as a quantum particle, which means that its location at any moment cannot be specified; the best we can do is describe its behavior in terms of the probability of its manifesting itself at any point in space. It is common (but somewhat misleading) to describe the volume of space in which the electrons of an atom have a significant probability of being found as the *electron cloud*. The latter has no definite outer boundary, so neither does the atom. The radius of an atom must be defined arbitrarily, such as the boundary in which the electron can be found with 95% probability. Atomic radii are typically 30-300 pm.

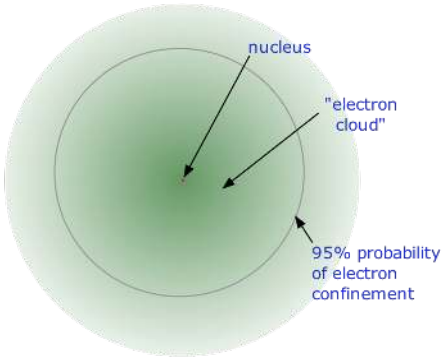


Figure **1.2.1**: The structure of the nuclear atom with a central nucleus and surrounding electrons.

The nucleus is itself composed of two kinds of particles. *Protons* are the carriers of positive electric charge in the nucleus; the proton charge is exactly the same as the electron charge, but of opposite sign. This means that in any [electrically neutral] atom, the number of protons in the nucleus (often referred to as the *nuclear charge*) is balanced by the *same* number of electrons outside the nucleus. The other nuclear particle is the *neutron*. As its name implies, this particle carries no electrical charge. Its mass is almost the same as that of the proton. Most nuclei contain roughly equal numbers of neutrons and protons, so we can say that these two particles together account for almost all the mass of the atom.

> *Because the electrons of an atom are in contact with the outside world, it is possible for one or more electrons to be lost, or some new ones to be added. The resulting electrically-charged atom is called an ion.*

Elements

To date, about 115 different elements have been discovered; by definition, each is chemically unique. To understand why they are unique, you need to understand the structure of the atom (the fundamental, individual particle of an element) and the characteristics of its components. Atoms consist of electrons, protons, and neutrons. Although this is an oversimplification that ignores the other subatomic particles that have been discovered, it is sufficient for discussion of chemical principles. Some properties of these subatomic particles are summarized in Table **1.2.1**, which illustrates three important points:

1. Electrons and protons have electrical charges that are identical in magnitude but opposite in sign. Relative charges of −1 and +1 are assigned to the electron and proton, respectively.
2. Neutrons have approximately the same mass as protons but no charge. They are electrically neutral.

3. The mass of a proton or a neutron is about 1836 times greater than the mass of an electron. Protons and neutrons constitute the bulk of the mass of atoms.

The discovery of the electron and the proton was crucial to the development of the modern model of the atom and provides an excellent case study in the application of the scientific method. In fact, the elucidation of the atom's structure is one of the greatest detective stories in the history of science.

Table **1.2.1**: Properties of Subatomic Particles*

Particle	Mass (g)	Atomic Mass (amu)	Electrical Charge (coulombs)	Relative Charge
electron	9.109×10^{-28}	0.0005486	-1.602×10^{-19}	−1
proton	1.673×10^{-24}	1.007276	$+1.602 \times 10^{-19}$	+1
neutron	1.675×10^{-24}	1.008665	0	0

In most cases, the symbols for the elements are derived directly from each element's name, such as C for carbon, U for uranium, Ca for calcium, and Po for polonium. Elements have also been named for their properties [such as radium (Ra) for its radioactivity], for the native country of the scientist(s) who discovered them [polonium (Po) for Poland], for eminent scientists [curium (Cm) for the Curies], for gods and goddesses [selenium (Se) for the Greek goddess of the moon, Selene], and for other poetic or historical reasons. Some of the symbols used for elements that have been known since antiquity are derived from historical names that are no longer in use; only the symbols remain to indicate their origin. Examples are Fe for iron, from the Latin *ferrum*; Na for sodium, from the Latin *natrium*; and W for tungsten, from the German *wolfram*. Examples are in Table **1.2.2**.

Table **1.2.2**: Element Symbols Based on Names No Longer in Use

Element	Symbol	Derivation	Meaning
antimony	Sb	stibium	Latin for "mark"
copper	Cu	cuprum	from Cyprium, Latin name for the island of Cyprus, the major source of copper ore in the Roman Empire
gold	Au	aurum	Latin for "gold"
iron	Fe	ferrum	Latin for "iron"
lead	Pb	plumbum	Latin for "heavy"
mercury	Hg	hydrargyrum	Latin for "liquid silver"
potassium	K	kalium	from the Arabic al-qili, "alkali"
silver	Ag	argentum	Latin for "silver"
sodium	Na	natrium	Latin for "sodium"
tin	Sn	stannum	Latin for "tin"
tungsten	W	wolfram	German for "wolf stone" because it interfered with the smelting of tin and was thought to devour the tin

Recall that the nuclei of most atoms contain neutrons as well as protons. Unlike protons, the number of neutrons is not absolutely fixed for most elements. Atoms that have the same number of protons, and hence the same atomic number, but different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. All isotopes of an element have the same number of protons and electrons, which means they exhibit

the same chemistry. The isotopes of an element differ only in their atomic mass, which is given by the mass number (A), the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons.

The element carbon (C) has an atomic number of 6, which means that all neutral carbon atoms contain 6 protons and 6 electrons. In a typical sample of carbon-containing material, 98.89% of the carbon atoms also contain 6 neutrons, so each has a mass number of 12. An isotope of any element can be uniquely represented as $^{A}_{Z}X$, where X is the atomic symbol of the element. The isotope of carbon that has 6 neutrons is therefore $^{12}_{6}C$. The subscript indicating the atomic number is actually redundant because the atomic symbol already uniquely specifies Z. Consequently, $^{12}_{6}C$ is more often written as ^{12}C, which is read as "carbon-12." Nevertheless, the value of Z is commonly included in the notation for nuclear reactions because these reactions involve changes in Z.

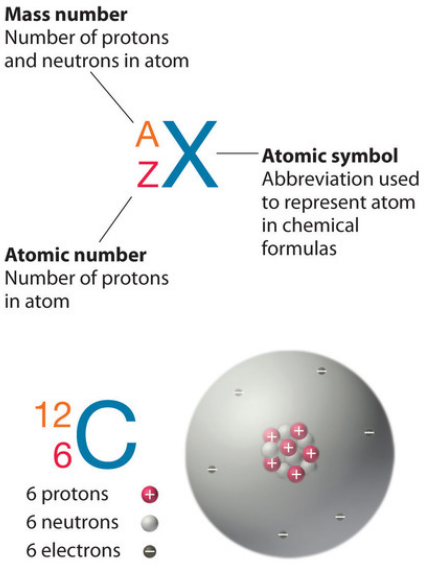


***Figure* 1.2.2**: *Formalism used for identifying specific nuclide (any particular kind of nucleus)*

In addition to ^{12}C, a typical sample of carbon contains 1.11% $^{13}_{6}C$ (^{13}C), with 7 neutrons and 6 protons, and a trace of $^{14}_{6}C$ (^{14}C), with 8 neutrons and 6 protons. The nucleus of ^{14}C is not stable, however, but undergoes a slow radioactive decay that is the basis of the carbon-14 dating technique used in archaeology. Many elements other than carbon have more than one stable isotope; tin, for example, has 10 isotopes. The properties of some common isotopes are in Table **1.2.3**.

Table **1.2.3**: Properties of Selected Isotopes

Element	Symbol	Atomic Mass (amu)	Isotope Mass Number	Isotope Masses (amu)	Percent Abundances (%)
hydrogen	H	1.0079	1	1.007825	99.9855
			2	2.014102	0.0115
boron	B	10.81	10	10.012937	19.91
			11	11.009305	80.09
carbon	C	12.011	12	12 (defined)	99.89
			13	13.003355	1.11
oxygen	O	15.9994	16	15.994915	99.757
			17	16.999132	0.0378
			18	17.999161	0.205
iron	Fe	55.845	54	53.939611	5.82
			56	55.934938	91.66
			57	56.935394	2.19
			58	57.933276	0.33
uranium	U	238.03	234	234.040952	0.0054
			235	235.043930	0.7204
			238	238.050788	99.274

Sources of isotope data: G. Audi et al., Nuclear Physics A 729 (2003): 337–676; J. C. Kotz and K. F. Purcell, Chemistry and Chemical Reactivity, 2nd ed., 1991.

Example 1.2.1

An element with three stable isotopes has 82 protons. The separate isotopes contain 124, 125, and 126 neutrons. Identify the element and write symbols for the isotopes.

Given: number of protons and neutrons

Asked for: element and atomic symbol

Strategy:

A. Refer to the periodic table and use the number of protons to identify the element.
B. Calculate the mass number of each isotope by adding together the numbers of protons and neutrons.
C. Give the symbol of each isotope with the mass number as the superscript and the number of protons as the subscript, both written to the left of the symbol of the element.

Solution:

A The element with 82 protons (atomic number of 82) is lead: Pb.

B For the first isotope, A = 82 protons + 124 neutrons = 206. Similarly, A = 82 + 125 = 207 and A = 82 + 126 = 208 for the second and third isotopes, respectively. The symbols for these isotopes are $^{206}_{82}Pb$, $^{207}_{82}Pb$, and $^{208}_{82}Pb$, which are usually abbreviated as ^{206}Pb, ^{207}Pb, and ^{208}Pb.

Exercise 1.2.1

Identify the element with 35 protons and write the symbols for its isotopes with 44 and 46 neutrons.

Answer

$^{79}_{35}\mathrm{Br}$ and $^{81}_{35}\mathrm{Br}$ or, more commonly, $^{79}\mathrm{Br}$ and $^{81}\mathrm{Br}$.

Summary

The atom consists of discrete particles that govern its chemical and physical behavior. Each atom of an element contains the same number of protons, which is the **atomic number** (*Z*). Neutral atoms have the same number of electrons and protons. Atoms of an element that contain different numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Each isotope of a given element has the same atomic number but a different **mass number** (*A*), which is the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons. The relative masses of atoms are reported using the **atomic mass unit** (**amu**), which is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of one atom of carbon-12, with 6 protons, 6 neutrons, and 6 electrons.

1.2: Structure of the Atom is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.3: The Electronic Structure of Atoms

Learning Objective

Draw, interpret, and convert between Lewis (Kekule), Condensed, and Bond-line Structures

Note: The review of general chemistry in sections 1.3 - 1.6 is integrated into the above Learning Objective for organic chemistry in sections 1.7 and 1.8.

The primary skills needed are the ability to determine the electron configurations of elements following the concepts of "aufbau" or "build up", Hund's Rule, and the Pauli Exclusion Principle, as well as visualizing the orbitals, subshells, and shells spatially and energetically. Converting electron configurations to orbital diagrams is a useful skill as we transition to organic chemistry. These skills are practiced in the next section.

The Wave Nature of Light

A wave is a periodic oscillation by which energy is transmitted through space. All waves are periodic, repeating regularly in both space and time. Waves are characterized by several interrelated properties.

- **Electronic structure**: arrangement of electrons in atoms
- **Electromagnetic radiation**: aka **radiant energy**; form of energy that has wave characteristics and carries energy through space. *All types of electromagnetic radiation move through a vacuum at a speed of 3.00 X 10^8 m/s (speed of light).*
- **Wavelength**: the distance between identical points on successive waves
- **Frequency**: the number of complete wavelengths that pass a given point in 1s

$$\nu\lambda = c \tag{1.3.1}$$

where ν = frequency, λ= wavelength, and c = speed of light

Wavelength is expressed in units of length.

- **Electromagnetic spectrum**: various types of electromagnetic radiations arranged in order of increasing wavelength.

Frequency is expressed in Hertz (Hz), also denoted by s^{-1} or /s

Quantum Effects and Photons

- **Quantum**: smallest quantity of energy that can be emitted or absorbed as electromagnetic radiation

$$E = h\nu \tag{1.3.2}$$

where E = energy, h = Planck's constant, ν = frequency

Planck's constant = 6.63 X 10^{-34} J/s

According to Planck's theory, energy is always emitted or absorbed in whole-number multiples of *hv*, for example, *hv*, *2hv*, *3hv*, and so forth. We say that the allowed energies are *quantized* (that is, their values are restricted to certain quantities).

Quantized Energy and Photons

Blackbody radiation is the radiation emitted by hot objects and could not be explained with classical physics. Max Planck postulated that energy was quantized and may be emitted or absorbed only in integral multiples of a small unit of energy, known as a quantum. The energy of a quantum is proportional to the frequency of the radiation; the proportionality constant h is a fundamental constant (Planck's constant). Albert Einstein used the quantization of energy to explain the photoelectric effect

- The photoelectric effect: when photons of sufficiently high energy strike a metal surface, electrons are emitted from the metal. The emitted electrons are drawn toward the other electrode, which is a positive terminal. As a result, current flows in a circuit.
- **Photon***:* smallest increment (a *quantum*) of radiant energy; a photon of light with frequency v has an energy equal to *hv*.
- When a photon strikes the metal, its energy is transferred to an electron in the metal. A certain amount of energy is required for the electron to overcome the attractive forces that hold it within the metal. If the photons have less energy that this energy

threshold, the electrons cannot escape from the metal surface. If a photon has sufficient energy, an electron is emitted. If the photon has more energy than necessary, the excess appears as kinetic energy of the emitted electron.

Line Spectra and the Bohr Model

There is an intimate connection between the atomic structure of an atom and its spectral characteristics. Most light is polychromatic and contains light of many wavelengths. Light that has only a single wavelength is monochromatic and is produced by devices called lasers, which use transitions between two atomic energy levels to produce light in a very narrow range of wavelengths. Atoms can also absorb light of certain energies, resulting in a transition from the ground state or a lower-energy e

Line Spectra

Radiation composed of a single wavelength is said to be *monochromatic*.

- **Spectrum**: distribution among various wavelengths of the radiant energy emitted or absorbed by an object
- **Continuous spectrum**: rainbow of colors, containing light of all wavelengths. *Not all radiation sources produce a continuous spectrum*
- **Line spectrum**: spectrum containing radiation of only specific wavelengths

$$v = C\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \tag{1.3.3}$$

with n = 3, 4, 5, 6, and $C = 3.29 \times 10^{15} s^{-1}$ (constant)

Bohr's Model

Electrons in a permitted orbit have a specific energy and are said to be in an "allowed" energy state. An electron in an allowed energy state will not radiate energy and therefore will not spiral into the nucleus.

$$E_n = -R_H \frac{1}{n^2} \tag{1.3.4}$$

- R_H = Rydberg constant: 2.18 X 10^{-18} J
- n = principal quantum number, corresponds to the different allowed orbits for the electron

All energies given by this equation will be negative. The lower (more negative) the energy is, the more stable the atom is. The lowest energy state is that for which n=1.

- **Ground state:** lowest energy state of an atom, $n = 1$
- **Excited state:** when the electron is in higher energy orbit (less negative), n=2 or higher

If n becomes infinitely large (∞), the electron is completely separated from the nucleus:

$$E_\infty = (-2.18 \times 10^{-18} J)\left(\frac{1}{\infty^2}\right) = 0 \tag{1.3.5}$$

Thus, the state in which the electron is removed from the nucleus is the reference, or zero-energy, state of the hydrogen atom. It is important to remember that this zero-energy state is higher in energy than the states with negative energies

Electrons can change from one energy state to another by absorbing or emitting radiant energy. Radiant energy must be absorbed for an electron to move to a higher energy state, but is emitted when the electron moves to a lower energy state. .

$$\Delta E = E_f - E_i \tag{1.3.6}$$

- If $n_f > n_i$, then ΔE is positive, radiant energy is absorbed
- If $n_f < n_i$, then ΔE is negative, radiant energy is emitted

The Wave Behavior of Matter

An electron possesses both particle and wave properties. Louis de Broglie showed that the wavelength of a particle is equal to Planck's constant divided by the mass times the velocity of the particle. The electron in Bohr's circular orbits could thus be described as a standing wave, one that does not move through space. Werner Heisenberg's uncertainty principle states that it is impossible to precisely describe both the location and the speed of particles that exhibit wavelike behavior.

- **Momentum**: the product of the mass, *m*, and the velocity, *v*, of a particle
- **Matter waves**: term used to describe the wave characteristics of a particle

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} \tag{1.3.7}$$

where λ is the wavelength, h is Planck's constant, m is the particle mass, and v is the velocity

The Uncertainty Principle

- **Uncertainty principle**: theory first put forth by Heisenberg, states that is it impossible to determine both the exact momentum of the electron and its exact location.

Quantum Mechanics and Atomic Orbitals

There is a relationship between the motions of electrons in atoms and molecules and their energies that is described by quantum mechanics. Because of wave–particle duality, scientists must deal with the probability of an electron being at a particular point in space. To do so required the development of quantum mechanics, which uses wavefunctions to describe the mathematical relationship between the motion of electrons in atoms and molecules and their energies.

- **Wave functions**: represented by ψ, square of wave function, ψ^2, provides information about an electron's location when it is in an allowed energy state.
- **Probability density**: represented by ψ^2, value that represents the probability that an electron will be found at a given point in space
- **Electron density**: the probability of finding and electron at any particular point in an atom. Equals ψ^2.

Orbitals and Quantum Numbers

-Orbital: allowed energy state of an electron in the quantum-mechanical model of the atom; also used to describe the spatial distribution of an electron. Defined by the value of 3 quantum numbers; *n, l, and* m_l.

Value of l	0	1	2	3
Letter used	s	p	d	f

1. The principal quantum number, *n*, can have integral values of 1, 2, 3 and so forth. As *n* increases, the orbital becomes larger; the electron has a higher energy and is farther away from the nucleus.
2. The second quantum number, *l*, can have integral values from 0 to *n* – 1 for each value of *n*. This quantum number defines the shape of the orbital. Generally designated by the letters *s*, *p*, *d*, and *f*. These correspond to values ranging from 0 to 3.
3. The magnetic quantum number, m_l, can have integral values between *l* and –*l*, including zero. This quantum number describes the orientation of the orbital in space.

Electron shell: collection of orbitals with the same value of *n*

Subshell: one or more orbitals with the same set of *n* and *l* values

1. Each shell is divided into the number of subshells equal to the principal quantum number, *n*, for that shell. The first shell consists of only the 1s subshell; the second shell consists of two subshells, 2s and 2p; the third of three subshell, 3s, 3p and 3d, and so forth.
2. Each subshell is divided into orbitals. Each *s* subshell consists of one orbital; each *p* subshell of three orbitals, each *d* subshell of five, and each *f* subshell of seven orbitals.

3D Representation of Orbitals

Orbitals with l = 0 are s orbitals and are spherically symmetrical, with the greatest probability of finding the electron occurring at the nucleus. Orbitals with values of n > 1 and l = 0 contain one or more nodes. Orbitals with l = 1 are p orbitals and contain a nodal plane that includes the nucleus, giving rise to a dumbbell shape. Orbitals with l = 2 are d orbitals and have more complex shapes with at least two nodal surfaces. l = 3 orbitals are f orbitals, which are still more complex.

The s Orbitals: 1s orbital: most stable, spherically symmetric, figure indicates that the probability decreases as we move away from the nucleus. ALL *s* ORBITALS ARE SPHERICALLY SYMMETRIC.

- **Nodal surfaces (nodes)**: intermediate regions where ψ^2 goes to zero. The number of nodes increases with increasing value for the principal quantum number, *n*.

The *p* Orbitals: Electron density is concentrated on two sides of the nucleus, separated by a node at the nucleus. The orbitals of a given subshell have the same size and shape but differ from each other in orientation. The axis along which the orbital is oriented is not related to m_l.

Many-Electron Atoms

In addition to the three quantum numbers (n, l, m_l) dictated by quantum mechanics, a fourth quantum number is required to explain certain properties of atoms. This is the electron spin quantum number (m_s), which can have values of +½ or −½ for any electron, corresponding to the two possible orientations of an electron in a magnetic field. This is important for chemistry because the Pauli exclusion principle implies that no orbital can contain more than two electrons (with opposite spin).

Although the shapes of the orbitals for many-electron atoms are the same as those for hydrogen, the presence of more than one electron greatly changes the energies of the orbitals. In hydrogen, the energy of an orbital depends only on its principal quantum number, however, in many-electron atoms, electron-electron repulsions cause different subshells to be at different energies

Effective Nuclear Charge

- *Effective nuclear charge*: net positive charge attracting electrons

$$Z_{eff} = Z–S \tag{1.3.8}$$

where Z_{eff} is the effective nuclear charge, Z is the number of protons in the nucleus, and S is the average number of electrons between the nucleus and electron in question.

- *Screening effect*: effect of inner electrons in decreasing the nuclear charge experienced by outer electrons

Energies of Orbitals

The extent to which an electron will be screened by the other electrons depends on its electron distribution as we move outward from the nucleus.

- *In a many-electron atom, for a given value of n, Z_{eff} decreases with increasing value of l.*
- *In a many-electron atom, for a given value of n, the energy of an orbital increases with increasing value of l.*

Degenerate: orbitals that have the same energy

Electron Spin and the Pauli Exclusion Principle

- **Electron spin**: property of the electron that makes it behave as though it were a tiny magnet. The electron behaves as if it were spinning on its axis; electron spin is quantized.
- **Electron spin quantum number**: denoted as m_s. It can only have two possible values, +½ and –½, which we can interpret as indicating the two opposite directions in which the electron can spin.
- **Pauli exclusion principle**: states that no two electrons in an atom can have the same set of four quantum numbers *n*, *l*, m_l, m_s. This means that if we wish to put two electrons in an orbital and satisfy Pauli's exclusion principle, our only choice is to assign different m_s values to the electrons. Because there are only two values, *we can conclude that an orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons and they must have opposite spins*.

Electron Configurations

Based on the Pauli principle and a knowledge of orbital energies obtained using hydrogen-like orbitals, it is possible to construct the periodic table by filling up the available orbitals beginning with the lowest-energy orbitals (the aufbau principle), which gives rise to a particular arrangement of electrons for each element (its electron configuration). Hund's rule says that the lowest-energy arrangement of electrons is the one that places them in degenerate orbitals with parallel spins.

- **Electron configuration**: the way in which the electrons are distributed among the various orbitals. The most stable, or ground, electron configuration of an atom is that in which the electrons are in the lowest possible energy level
- **Orbital diagram**: representation of electron configuration in which each orbital is represented by a box and each electron by a half-arrow. A half-arrow pointing upward represents an electron with positive spin; one pointing downward represents an electron with a negative spin.

Writing Electron Configurations

- **Hund's rule**: rule stating that electrons occupy degenerate orbitals in such a way as to maximize the number of electrons with the same spin. In other words, each orbital has one electron placed in it before paring of electron in orbitals occurs. Note that this rule applies to orbitals that are *degenerate*, which means that they have the same energy.
- **Valence electrons**: electrons in the outer shells
- **Core electrons**: electrons in the inner shells
- **Transition elements**: aka **Transition metals**; elements of the *d* orbitals
- **Lanthanide elements**: aka **Rare-earth elements**; 14 elements of the 4f orbitals, # 58-71
- **Actinide elements**: 14 elements of 5f orbitals, # 90-103. Most are not found in nature.

Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

The arrangement of atoms in the periodic table results in blocks corresponding to filling of the ns, np, nd, and nf orbitals to produce the distinctive chemical properties of the elements in the s block, p block, d block, and f block, respectively.

- **Main group elements**: aka **Representatives**; *s* and *p* block elements
- **F-block metals**: 28 elements located below the table, *f* block elements

---

1.3: The Electronic Structure of Atoms is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.4: Electron Configurations and Electronic Orbital Diagrams (Review)

Learning Objective

Draw, interpret, and convert between Lewis (Kekule), Condensed, and Bond-line Structures

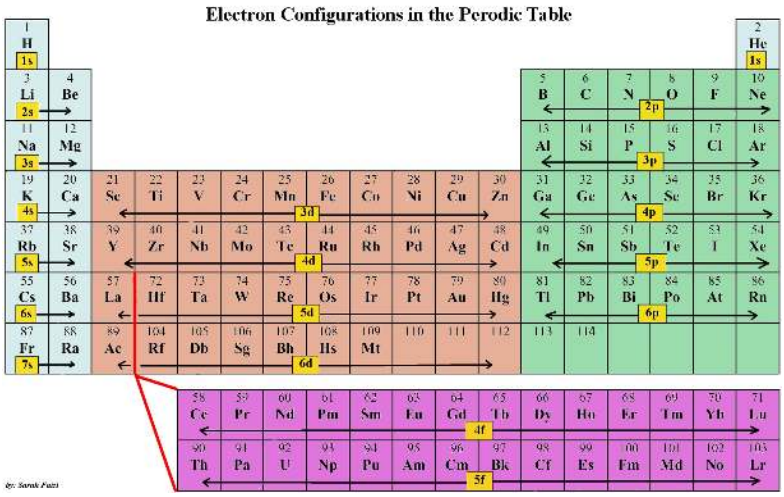
Note: The review of general chemistry in sections 1.3 - 1.6 is integrated into the above Learning Objective for organic chemistry in sections 1.7 and 1.8.

The electron configuration of an atom is the representation of the arrangement of electrons distributed among the orbital shells and subshells. Commonly, the electron configuration is used to describe the orbitals of an atom in its ground state, but it can also be used to represent an atom that has ionized into a cation or anion by compensating with the loss of or gain of electrons in their subsequent orbitals. Many of the physical and chemical properties of elements can be correlated to their unique electron configurations. The valence electrons, electrons in the outermost shell, are the determining factor for the unique chemistry of the element.

Introduction

Before assigning the electrons of an atom into orbitals, one must become familiar with the basic concepts of electron configurations. Every element on the Periodic Table consists of atoms, which are composed of protons, neutrons, and electrons. Electrons exhibit a negative charge and are found around the nucleus of the atom in electron orbitals, defined as the volume of space in which the electron can be found within 95% probability. The four different types of orbitals (s,p,d, and f) have different shapes, and one orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons. The p, d, and f orbitals have different sublevels, thus can hold more electrons.

As stated, the electron configuration of each element is unique to its position on the periodic table. The energy level is determined by the period and the number of electrons is given by the atomic number of the element. Orbitals on different energy levels are similar to each other, but they occupy different areas in space. The 1s orbital and 2s orbital both have the characteristics of an s orbital (radial nodes, spherical volume probabilities, can only hold two electrons, etc.) but, as they are found in different energy levels, they occupy different spaces around the nucleus. Each orbital can be represented by specific blocks on the periodic table. The s-block is the region of the alkali metals including helium (Groups 1 & 2), the d-block are the transition metals (Groups 3 to 12), the p-block are the main group elements from Groups 13 to 18, and the f-block are the lanthanides and actinides series.



Using the periodic table to determine the electron configurations of atoms is key, but also keep in mind that there are certain rules to follow when assigning electrons to different orbitals. The periodic table is an incredibly helpful tool in writing electron configurations. For more information on how electron configurations and the periodic table are linked, visit the Connecting Electrons to the Periodic Table module.

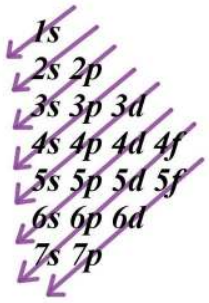
Rules for Assigning Electron Orbitals

Occupation of Orbitals

Electrons fill orbitals in a way to minimize the energy of the atom. Therefore, the electrons in an atom fill the principal energy levels in order of increasing energy (the electrons are getting farther from the nucleus). The order of levels filled looks like this:

1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p, 6s, 4f, 5d, 6p, 7s, 5f, 6d, and 7p

One way to remember this pattern, probably the easiest, is to refer to the periodic table and remember where each orbital block falls to logically deduce this pattern. Another way is to make a table like the one below and use vertical lines to determine which subshells correspond with each other.

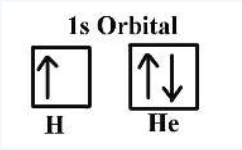


Pauli Exclusion Principle

The Pauli exclusion principle states that no two electrons can have the same four quantum numbers. The first three (n, l, and m_l) may be the same, but the fourth quantum number must be different. A single orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons, which **must** have opposing spins; otherwise they would have the same four quantum numbers, which is forbidden. One electron is spin up (m_s = +1/2) and the other would spin down (m_s = -1/2). This tells us that each subshell has double the electrons per orbital. The s subshell has 1 orbital that can hold up to 2 electrons, the p subshell has 3 orbitals that can hold up to 6 electrons, the d subshell has 5 orbitals that hold up to 10 electrons, and the f subshell has 7 orbitals with 14 electrons.

Example 1: Hydrogen and Helium

The first three quantum numbers of an electron are n=1, l=0, m_l=0. Only two electrons can correspond to these, which would be either m_s = -1/2 or m_s = +1/2. As we already know from our studies of quantum numbers and electron orbitals, we can conclude that these four quantum numbers refer to the 1s subshell. If only one of the m_s values are given then we would have $1s^1$ (denoting hydrogen) if both are given we would have $1s^2$ (denoting helium). Visually, this is be represented as:



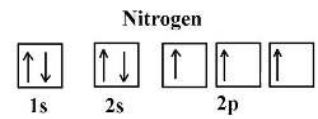
As shown, the 1s subshell can hold only two electrons and, when filled, the electrons have opposite spins.

Hund's Rule

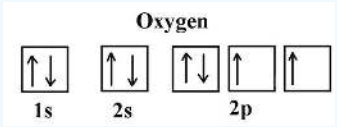
When assigning electrons in orbitals, each electron will first fill all the orbitals with similar energy (also referred to as degenerate) before pairing with another electron in a half-filled orbital. Atoms at ground states tend to have as many unpaired electrons as possible. When visualizing this processes, think about how electrons are exhibiting the same behavior as the same poles on a magnet would if they came into contact; as the negatively charged electrons fill orbitals they first try to get as far as possible from each other before having to pair up.

Example 2: Oxygen and Nitrogen

If we look at the correct electron configuration of the Nitrogen (Z = 7) atom, a very important element in the biology of plants: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^3$



We can clearly see that p orbitals are half-filled as there are three electrons and three p orbitals. This is because Hund's Rule states that the three electrons in the 2p subshell will fill all the empty orbitals first before filling orbitals with electrons in them. If we look at the element after Nitrogen in the same period, Oxygen (Z = 8) its electron configuration is: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^4$ (for an atom).



Oxygen has one more electron than Nitrogen and as the orbitals are all half filled the electron must pair up.

The Aufbau Process

Aufbau comes from the German word "aufbauen" meaning "to build." When writing electron configurations, orbitals are built up from atom to atom. When writing the electron configuration for an atom, orbitals are filled in order of increasing atomic number. However, there are some exceptions to this rule.

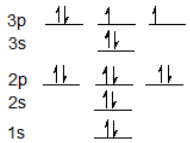
Example 3: 3rd row elements

Following the pattern across a period from B (Z=5) to Ne (Z=10), the number of electrons increases and the subshells are filled. This example focuses on the p subshell, which fills from boron to neon.

- B (Z=5) configuration: $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^1$
- C (Z=6) configuration:$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^2$
- N (Z=7) configuration:$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^3$
- O (Z=8) configuration:$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^4$
- F (Z=9) configuration:$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^5$
- Ne (Z=10) configuration:$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6$

Example

The electron configuration for sulfur is $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^4$ and can be represented using the orbital diagram below.

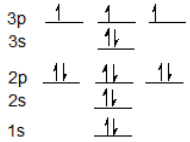


Exercises

Write the electron configuration for phosphorus and draw the orbital diagram.

Solution:

The electron configuration for phosphorus is $1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^3$ and the orbital diagram is drawn below.



1.4: Electron Configurations and Electronic Orbital Diagrams (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.5: Octet Rule - Ionic and Covalent Bonding (Review)

Learning Objective

Draw, interpret, and convert between Lewis (Kekule), Condensed, and Bond-line Structures

Note: The review of general chemistry in sections 1.3 - 1.6 is integrated into the above Learning Objective for organic chemistry in sections 1.7 and 1.8.

For organic chemistry, the emphasis is on the chemistry of carbon. The chemistry of carbon becomes more interesting when carbon is bonded to oxygen and/or nitrogen or other heteroatoms, atoms that are NOT carbon or hydrogen. Therefore, the octet rule is a strong factor in organic chemistry and is only violated by non-carbon elements like hydrogen, boron, aluminum, sulfur, and phosphorus.

Why are some substances chemically bonded molecules and others are an association of ions? The answer to this question depends upon the electronic structures of the atoms and nature of the chemical forces within the compounds. Although there are no sharply defined boundaries, chemical bonds are typically classified into three main types: ionic bonds, covalent bonds, and metallic bonds. In this chapter, each type of bond will be discussed and the general properties found in typical substances in which the bond type occurs

1. Ionic bonds results from ***electrostatic forces that exist between ions of opposite charge***. These bonds typically involves a metal with a nonmetal
2. Covalent bonds ***result from the sharing of electrons between two atoms***. The bonds typically involves one nonmetallic element with another
3. Metallic bonds These bonds are found in solid metals (copper, iron, aluminum) with each metal bonded to several neighboring groups and bonding electrons free to move throughout the 3-dimensional structure.

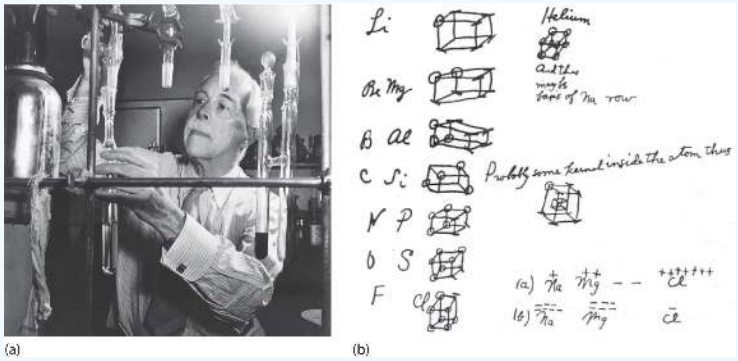


Figure **1.5.1**: G. N. Lewis and the Octet Rule. (a) Lewis is working in the laboratory. (b) In Lewis's original sketch for the octet rule, he initially placed the electrons at the corners of a cube rather than placing them as we do now.

The Octet Rule

In 1904, Richard Abegg formulated what is now known as *Abegg's rule*, which states that the difference between the maximum positive and negative valences of an element is frequently eight. This rule was used later in 1916 when Gilbert N. Lewis formulated the "octet rule" in his cubical atom theory. The **octet rule** refers to the tendency of atoms to prefer to have eight electrons in the *valence shell*. When atoms have fewer than eight electrons, they tend to react and form more stable compounds. Atoms will react to get in the most stable state possible. A complete octet is very stable because all orbitals will be full. Atoms with greater stability have less energy, so a reaction that increases the stability of the atoms will release energy in the form of heat or light ;reactions that decrease stability must absorb energy, getting colder.

> *The Octet Rule: Atoms often gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve the same number of electrons as the noble gas closest to them in the periodic table.*

When discussing the octet rule, we do not consider *d* or *f* electrons. Only the s and p electrons are involved in the octet rule, making it a useful rule for the *main group elements* (elements not in the transition metal or inner-transition metal blocks); an

octet in these atoms corresponds to an electron configurations ending with s^2p^6.

Covalent Bonds

Covalent bonds form when atoms share electrons. Hydrogen is a first shell element with only one valence electron, so it can only form one bond creating a duet, an exception to the octet rule. With its four valence electrons, carbon can form four bonds to create an octet.

1. Normally two electrons pairs up and forms a bond, e.g., H_2
2. For most atoms there will be a maximum of eight electrons in the valence shell (octet structure), e.g., CH_4

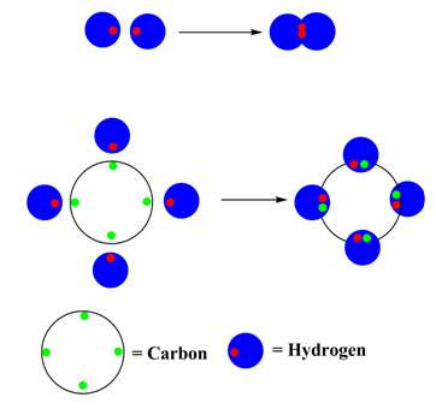


Figure 1: Bonding in H_2 and methane (CH_4)

The other tendency of atoms is to maintain a neutral charge. Only the noble gases (the elements on the right-most column of the periodic table) have zero charge with filled valence octets. All of the other elements have a charge when they have eight electrons all to themselves. The result of these two guiding principles is the explanation for much of the reactivity and bonding that is observed within atoms: atoms seek to share electrons in a way that minimizes charge while fulfilling an octet in the valence shell.

Ionic Bonds

Some atoms do not share electrons. Energetically, it is more favorable to fully gain or lose electrons to form ions. Ionic compounds form through the eletrostatic attraction of the ions to create a crystal lattice.

The formula for table salt is NaCl. It is the result of Na^+ ions and Cl^- ions bonding together. If sodium metal and chlorine gas mix under the right conditions, they will form salt. The sodium loses an electron, and the chlorine gains that electron. In the process, a great amount of light and heat is released. The resulting salt is mostly unreactive — it is stable. It will not undergo any explosive reactions, unlike the sodium and chlorine that it is made of. Why? Referring to the octet rule, atoms attempt to get a noble gas electron configuration, which is eight valence electrons. Sodium has one valence electron, so giving it up would result in the same electron configuration

as neon. Chlorine has seven valence electrons, so if it takes one it will have eight (an octet). Chlorine has the electron configuration of argon when it gains an electron.

The octet rule could have been satisfied if chlorine gave up all seven of its valence electrons and sodium took them. In that case, both would have the electron configurations of noble gasses, with a full valence shell. However, their charges would be much higher. It would be Na^{7-} and Cl^{7+}, which is much less stable than Na^{+} and Cl^{-}. Atoms are more stable when they have no charge, or a small charge.

Ionic Bonds Example

Lewis dot symbols can also be used to represent the ions in ionic compounds. The reaction of cesium with fluorine, for example, to produce the ionic compound CsF can be written as follows:



No dots are shown on Cs^{+} in the product because cesium has lost its single valence electron to fluorine. The transfer of this electron produces the Cs^{+} ion, which has the valence electron configuration of Xe, and the F^{-} ion, which has a total of eight valence electrons (an octet) and the Ne electron configuration. This description is consistent with the statement that among the main group elements, ions in simple binary ionic compounds generally have the electron configurations of the nearest noble gas. The charge of each ion is written in the product, and the anion and its electrons are enclosed in brackets. This notation emphasizes that the ions are associated electrostatically; no electrons are shared between the two elements.

Noble Gases

The noble gases rarely form compounds. They have the most stable configuration (full octet, no charge), so they have no reason to react and change their configuration. All other elements attempt to gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve a noble gas configuration.

Summary

Lewis dot symbols can be used to predict the number of bonds formed by most elements in their compounds. One convenient way to predict the number and basic arrangement of bonds in compounds is by using **Lewis electron dot symbols**, which consist of the chemical symbol for an element surrounded by dots that represent its valence electrons, grouped into pairs often placed above, below, and to the left and right of the symbol. The structures reflect the fact that the elements in period 2 and beyond tend to gain, lose, or share electrons to reach a total of eight valence electrons in their compounds, the so-called **octet rule**. Hydrogen, with only two valence electrons, does not obey the octet rule.

Exercises

Lewis

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

- National Programme on Technology Enhanced Learning (India)

1.5: Octet Rule - Ionic and Covalent Bonding (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.6: Lewis Structures and Formal Charges (Review)

Learning Objective

Draw, interpret, and convert between Lewis (Kekule), Condensed, and Bond-line Structures

Note: The review of general chemistry in sections 1.3 - 1.6 is integrated into the above Learning Objective for organic chemistry in sections 1.7 and 1.8.

Lewis Structures

Lewis structures, also known as Lewis-dot diagrams, show the bonding relationship between atoms of a molecule and the lone pairs of electrons in a molecule. While it can be helpful initially to write the individual shared electrons, this approach quickly becomes awkward.

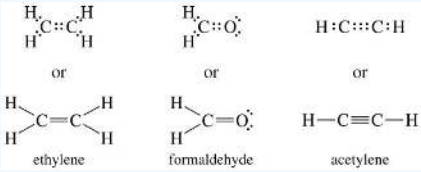
A single line is used to represent one pair of shared electrons. Line representations are only used for shared electrons. Lone pair (unshared) electrons are still shown as individual electrons. Double and triple bonds can also be communicated with lines as shown below.

2 shared electrons form a single bond shown as ':' or '–'

4 shared electrons form a double bond shown as '::' or '='

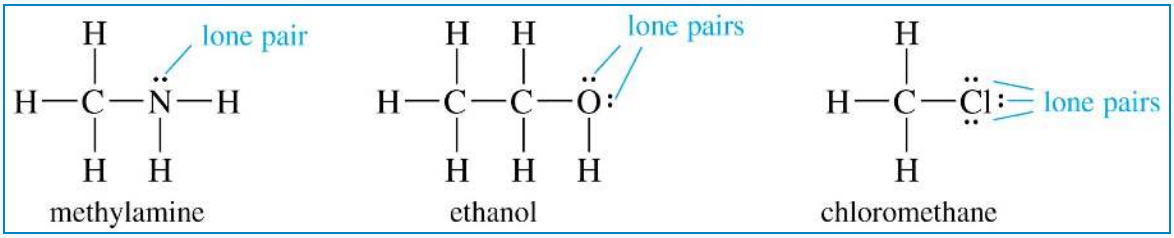
6 shared electrons form at triple bond shown as ':::' or HC≡CH

Unshared electrons are also called 'Lone Pairs' and are shown as ':'



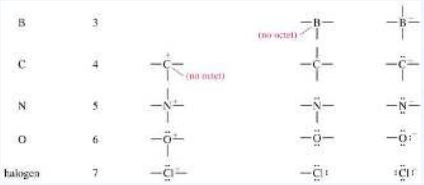
Drawing Lone Pairs

Since the lone pair electrons are often NOT shown in chemical structures, it is important to mentally add the lone pairs. In the beginning, it can be helpful to physically add the lone pair electrons.



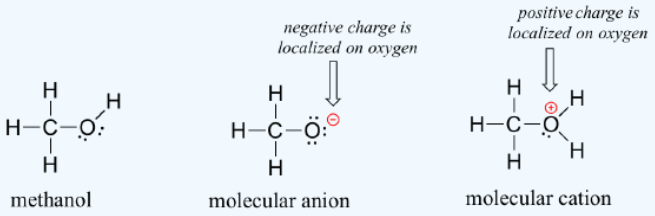
Bonding Patterns

For organic chemistry, the common bonding patterns of carbon, oxygen, and nitrogen have useful applications when evaluating chemical structures and reactivity.



Formal charges

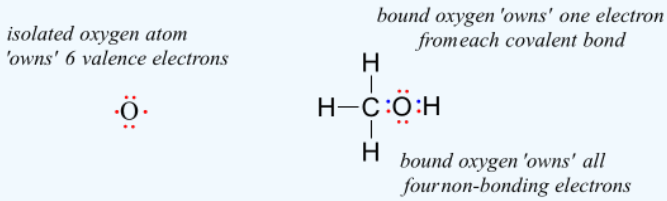
Organic molecules can also have positive or negative charges associated with them. During chemical reactions, it is common to have charge reactant, intermediates, and/or products. Recognizing and distinguishing between neutral and charged bonding patterns will be helpful in learning reaction mechanisms. Consider the Lewis structure of methanol, CH_3OH (methanol is the so-called 'wood alcohol' that unscrupulous bootleggers sometimes sold during the prohibition days in the 1920's, often causing the people who drank it to go blind). Methanol itself is a neutral molecule, but can lose a proton to become a molecular anion (CH_3O^-), or gain a proton to become a molecular cation ($CH_3OH_2^{+)}$.



The molecular anion and cation have overall charges of -1 and +1, respectively. But we can be more specific than that - we can also state for each molecular ion that a **formal charge** is located specifically on the oxygen atom, rather than on the carbon or any of the hydrogen atoms.

Figuring out the formal charge on different atoms of a molecule is a straightforward process - it's simply a matter of adding up valence electrons.

A unbound oxygen atom has 6 valence electrons. When it is bound as part of a methanol molecule, however, an oxygen atom is surrounded by 8 valence electrons: 4 nonbonding electrons (two 'lone pairs') and 2 electrons in each of its two covalent bonds (one to carbon, one to hydrogen). In the formal charge convention, we say that the oxygen 'owns' all 4 nonbonding electrons. However, it only 'owns' one electron from each of the two covalent bonds, because covalent bonds involve the sharing of electrons between atoms. Therefore, the oxygen atom in methanol owns 2 + 2 + (½ x 4) = 6 valence electrons.



The formal charge on an atom is calculated as the number of valence electrons owned by the isolated atom minus the number of valence electrons owned by the bound atom in the molecule:

Determining formal charge on an atom

formal charge =

(number of valence electrons owned by the isolated atom)

- (number of valence electrons owned by the bound atom)

or . . .

formal charge =

(number of valence electrons owned by the isolated atom)

- (number of non-bonding electrons on the bound atom)

- (½ the number of bonding electrons on the bound atom)

Using this formula for the oxygen atom of methanol, we have:

formal charge on oxygen =

(6 valence electrons on isolated atom)

- (4 non-bonding electrons)

- (½ x 4 bonding electrons)

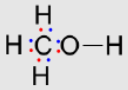
= 6 - 4 - 2 = **0**. Thus, oxygen in methanol has a formal charge of zero (in other words, it has *no formal charge*).

How about the carbon atom in methanol? An isolated carbon owns 4 valence electrons. The bound carbon in methanol owns (½ x 8) = 4 valence electrons:

isolated carbon atom 'owns' 4 valence electrons



bound carbon 'owns' one electron from each covalent bond



formal charge on carbon =

(4 valence electron on isolated atom)

- (0 nonbonding electrons)

- (½ x 8 bonding electrons)

= 4 - 0 - 4 = **0**. So the formal charge on carbon is zero.

For each of the hydrogens in methanol, we also get a formal charge of zero:

formal charge on hydrogen =

(1 valence electron on isolated atom)

- (0 nonbonding electrons)

- (½ x 2 bonding electrons)

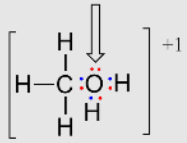
= 1 - 0 - 1 = **0**

Now, let's look at the cationic form of methanol, $CH_3OH_2^+$. The bonding picture has not changed for carbon or for any of the hydrogen atoms, so we will focus on the oxygen atom.

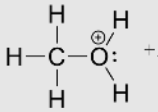
isolated oxygen atom 'owns' 6 valence electrons



bound oxygen 'owns' both non-bonding electrons



bound oxygen 'owns' one electron from each of the three covalent bonds



+1 formal charge is located on oxygen

The oxygen owns 2 non-bonding electrons and 3 bonding elections, so the formal charge calculations becomes:

formal charge on oxygen =

(6 valence electrons in isolated atom)

- (2 non-bonding electrons)

- (½ x 6 bonding electrons)

= 6 - 2 - 3 = **1**. A formal charge of +1 is located on the oxygen atom.

For methoxide, the anionic form of methanol, the calculation for the oxygen atom is:

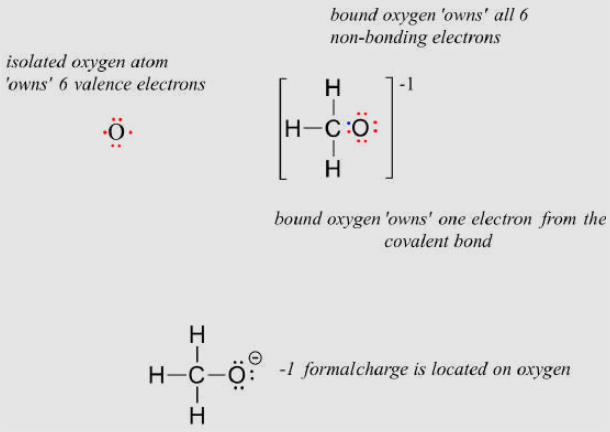
formal charge on oxygen =

(6 valence electrons in isolated atom)

- (6 non-bonding electrons)

- (½ x 2 bonding electrons)

= 6 - 6 - 1 = **-1**. A formal charge of -1 is located on the oxygen atom.

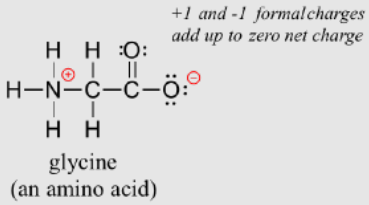


A very important rule to keep in mind is that *the sum of the formal charges on all atoms of a molecule must equal the net charge on the whole molecule.*

When drawing the structures of organic molecules, it is very important to show all non-zero formal charges, being clear about where the charges are located. *A structure that is missing non-zero formal charges is not correctly drawn, and will probably be marked as such on an exam!*

At this point, thinking back to what you learned in general chemistry, you are probably asking "What about dipoles? Doesn't an oxygen atom in an O-H bond 'own' more of the electron density than the hydrogen, because of its greater electronegativity?" This is absolutely correct, and we will be reviewing the concept of bond dipoles later on. For the purpose of calculating formal charges, however, bond dipoles don't matter - we always consider the two electrons in a bond to be shared equally, even if that is not an accurate reflection of chemical reality. Formal charges are just that - a formality, a method of electron book-keeping that is tied into the Lewis system for drawing the structures of organic compounds and ions. Later, we will see how the concept of formal charge can help us to visualize how organic molecules react.

Finally, don't be lured into thinking that just because the net charge on a structure is zero there are no atoms with formal charges: one atom could have a positive formal charge and another a negative formal charge, and the net charge would still be zero. **Zwitterions,** such as amino acids, have both positive and negative formal charges on different atoms:

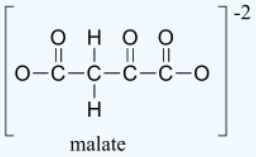


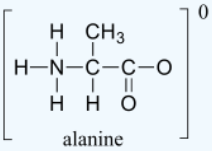
glycine
(an amino acid)

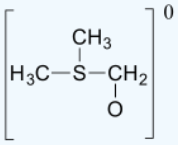
Even though the *net* charge on glycine is zero, it is still neccessary to show the location of the positive and negative formal charges.

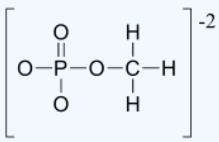
Exercise 1.4

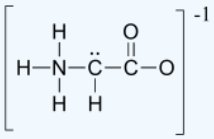
Fill in all missing lone pair electrons and formal charges in the structures below. Assume that all atoms have a complete valence shell of electrons. Net charges are shown outside the brackets.

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 

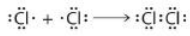
Solutions to exercises

1.6: Lewis Structures and Formal Charges (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.7: Electron-Dot Model of Bonding - Lewis Structures

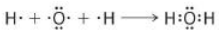
Using Lewis Dot Symbols to Describe Covalent Bonding

This sharing of electrons allowing atoms to "stick" together is the basis of covalent bonding. There is some intermediate distant, generally a bit longer than 0.1 nm, or if you prefer 100 pm, at which the attractive forces significantly outweigh the repulsive forces and a bond will be formed if both atoms can achieve a completen s^2np^6 configuration. It is this behavior that Lewis captured in his octet rule. The valence electron configurations of the constituent atoms of a covalent compound are important factors in determining its structure, stoichiometry, and properties. For example, chlorine, with seven valence electrons, is one electron short of an octet. If two chlorine atoms share their unpaired electrons by making a covalent bond and forming Cl_2, they can each complete their valence shell:



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

We can illustrate the formation of a water molecule from two hydrogen atoms and an oxygen atom using Lewis dot symbols:



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

1. **Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.** When there is a central atom, it is usually the least electronegative element in the compound. Chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom), which is another clue to the compound's structure. Hydrogen and the halogens are almost always connected to only one other atom, so they are usually *terminal* rather than central.

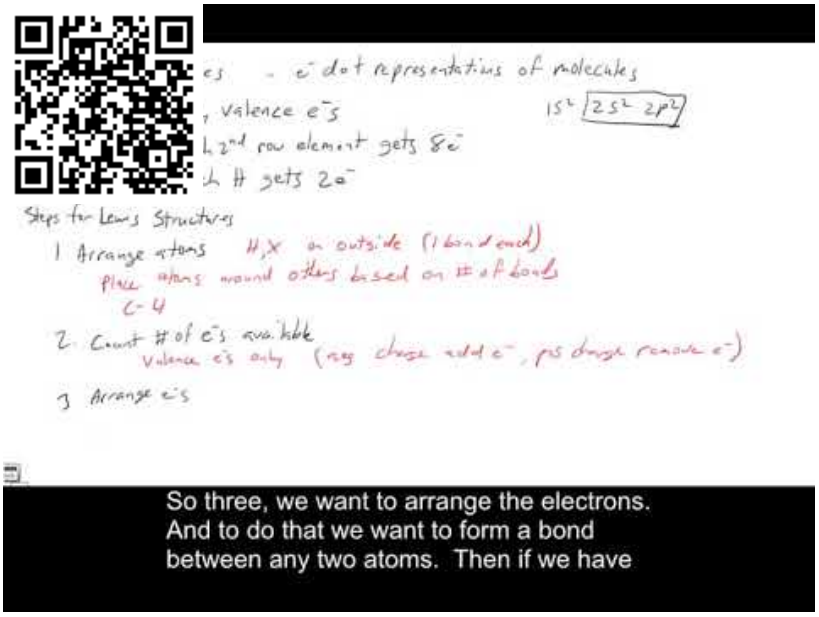
> **Note**
>
> The central atom is usually the least electronegative element in the molecule or ion; hydrogen and the halogens are usually terminal.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

1. **Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion**. Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall from Chapter 2 that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.) If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion. For CO32−, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the −2 charge.

2. **Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond**. In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.
3. **Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen)**. These electrons will usually be lone pairs.
4. **If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom**. Some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.
5. **If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet**. This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



H_2O

1. Because H atoms are almost always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.

2. Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.

3. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives H:O:H, with 4 electrons left over.

4. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

OCl^-

1. With only two atoms in the molecule, there is no central atom.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

CH_2O

1. Because carbon is less electronegative than oxygen and hydrogen is normally terminal, C must be the central atom. One possible arrangement is as follows:



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a

covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.



Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Each chlorine atom now has an octet. The electron pair being shared by the atoms is called a bonding pair ; the other three pairs of electrons on each chlorine atom are called lone pairs. Lone pairs are not involved in covalent bonding. If both electrons in a covalent bond come from the same atom, the bond is called a coordinate covalent bond.

Example

Write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

1. NCl_3
2. S_2^{2-}
3. NOCl

Given: chemical species

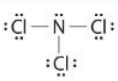
Asked for: Lewis electron structures

Strategy:

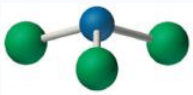
Use the six-step procedure to write the Lewis electron structure for each species.

Solution:

Nitrogen is less electronegative than chlorine, and halogen atoms are usually terminal, so nitrogen is the central atom. The nitrogen atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons and each chlorine atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, for a total of 26 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for each N–Cl bond and adding three lone pairs to each Cl account for (3 × 2) + (3 × 2 × 3) = 24 electrons. Rule 5 leads us to place the remaining 2 electrons on the central N:



Nitrogen trichloride is an unstable oily liquid once used to bleach flour; this use is now prohibited in the United States.

1. 

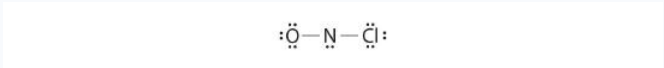
2. In a diatomic molecule or ion, we do not need to worry about a central atom. Each sulfur atom (group 16) contains 6 valence electrons, and we need to add 2 electrons for the −2 charge, giving a total of 14 valence electrons. Using 2 electrons for the S–S bond, we arrange the remaining 12 electrons as three lone pairs on each sulfur, giving each S atom an octet of electrons:



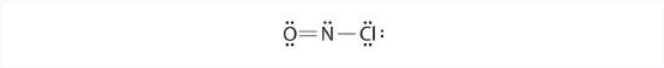
3. Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen or chlorine, it is the central atom. The N atom (group 15) has 5 valence electrons, the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, and the Cl atom (group 17) has 7 valence electrons, giving a total of 18 valence electrons. Placing one bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms uses 4 electrons and gives the following:



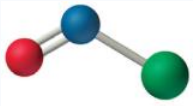
Adding three lone pairs each to oxygen and to chlorine uses 12 more electrons, leaving 2 electrons to place as a lone pair on nitrogen:



4. Because this Lewis structure has only 6 electrons around the central nitrogen, a lone pair of electrons on a terminal atom must be used to form a bonding pair. We could use a lone pair on either O or Cl. Because we have seen many structures in which O forms a double bond but none with a double bond to Cl, it is reasonable to select a lone pair from O to give the following:



All atoms now have octet configurations. This is the Lewis electron structure of nitrosyl chloride, a highly corrosive, reddish-orange gas.

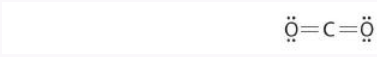


Nitrosyl chloride

Exercise

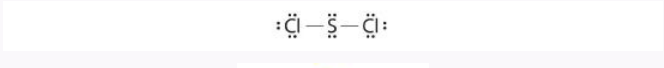
Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2, a vile-smelling, unstable red liquid that is used in the manufacture of rubber.

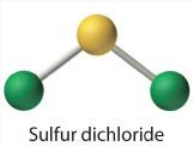
Answer:

1. 



Carbon dioxide

2. 



Sulfur dichloride

Formal Charges

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on

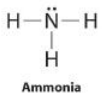
the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

> It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

For each atom, we then compute a formal charge:

$$\textit{formal charge} = \underset{(\textit{free atom})}{\textit{valence } e^-} - \underbrace{\left(\textit{non} - \textit{bonding } e^- + \frac{\textit{bonding } e^-}{2}\right)}_{(\textit{atom in Lewis structure})} \qquad (5.3.1)$$

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.



Ammonia

A neutral nitrogen atom has five valence electrons (it is in group 15). From its Lewis electron structure, the nitrogen atom in ammonia has one lone pair and shares three bonding pairs with hydrogen atoms, so nitrogen itself is assigned a total of five electrons [2 nonbonding e^- + (6 bonding e^-/2)]. Substituting into Equation 5.3.1, we obtain

$$\textit{formal charge}\,(N) = 5\ \textit{valence } e^- - \left(2\ \textit{non} - \textit{bonding } e^- + \frac{6\ \textit{bonding } e^-}{2}\right) = 0 \qquad (4.4.2)$$

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

$$\textit{formal charge}\,(H) = 1\ \textit{valence } e^- - \left(0\ \textit{non} - \textit{bonding } e^- + \frac{2\ \textit{bonding } e^-}{2}\right) = 0 \qquad (4.4.3)$$

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

It is sometimes possible to write more than one Lewis structure for a substance that does not violate the octet rule, as we saw for CH_2O, but not every Lewis structure may be equally reasonable. In these situations, we can choose the most stable Lewis structure by considering the formal charge on the atoms, which is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the free atom and the number assigned to it in the Lewis electron structure. The formal charge is a way of computing the charge distribution within a Lewis structure; the sum of the formal charges on the atoms within a molecule or an ion must equal the overall charge on the molecule or ion. A formal charge does *not* represent a true charge on an atom in a covalent bond but is simply used to predict the most likely structure when a compound has more than one valid Lewis structure.

Example

Calculate the formal charges on each atom in the NH_4^+ ion.

Given: chemical species

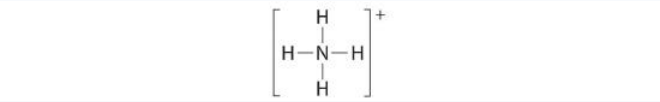
Asked for: formal charges

Strategy:

Identify the number of valence electrons in each atom in the NH_4^+ ion. Use the Lewis electron structure of NH_4^+ to identify the number of bonding and nonbonding electrons associated with each atom and then use Equation 4.4.1 to calculate the formal charge on each atom.

Solution:

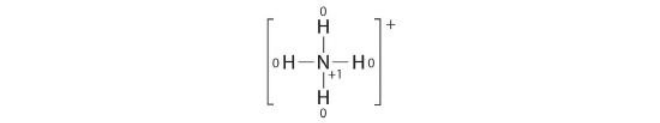
The Lewis electron structure for the NH_4^+ ion is as follows:



The nitrogen atom shares four bonding pairs of electrons, and a neutral nitrogen atom has five valence electrons. Using Equation 4.4.1, the formal charge on the nitrogen atom is therefore

Each hydrogen atom in has one bonding pair. The formal charge on each hydrogen atom is therefore

The formal charges on the atoms in the NH_4^+ ion are thus

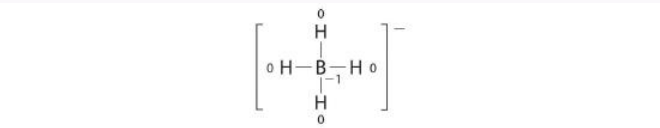


Adding together the formal charges on the atoms should give us the total charge on the molecule or ion. In this case, the sum of the formal charges is 0 + 1 + 0 + 0 + 0 = +1.

Exercise

Write the formal charges on all atoms in BH_4^-.

Answer:



If an atom in a molecule or ion has the number of bonds that is typical for that atom (e.g., four bonds for carbon), its formal charge is zero.

Using Formal Charges to Distinguish between Lewis Structures

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

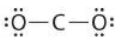
CO_2

1. C is less electronegative than O, so it is the central atom.

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

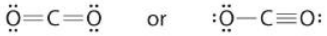
As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.



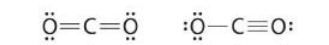
As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

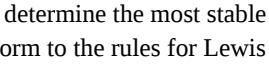
As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.



As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.



As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.



As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

As an example of how formal charges can be used to determine the most stable Lewis structure for a substance, we can compare two possible structures for CO_2. Both structures conform to the rules for Lewis electron structures.

Example

The thiocyanate ion (SCN^-), which is used in printing and as a corrosion inhibitor against acidic gases, has at least two possible Lewis electron structures. Draw two possible structures, assign formal charges on all atoms in both, and decide which is the preferred arrangement of electrons.

Given: chemical species

Asked for: Lewis electron structures, formal charges, and preferred arrangement

Strategy:

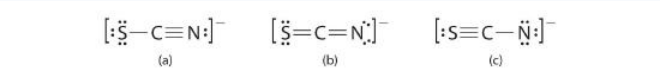
A Use the step-by-step procedure to write two plausible Lewis electron structures for SCN^-.

B Calculate the formal charge on each atom using Equation 4.4.1.

C Predict which structure is preferred based on the formal charge on each atom and its electronegativity relative to the other atoms present.

Solution:

A Possible Lewis structures for the SCN^- ion are as follows:



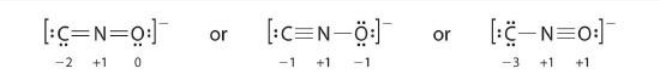
B We must calculate the formal charges on each atom to identify the more stable structure. If we begin with carbon, we notice that the carbon atom in each of these structures shares four bonding pairs, the number of bonds typical for carbon, so it has a formal charge of zero. Continuing with sulfur, we observe that in (a) the sulfur atom shares one bonding pair and has three lone pairs and has a total of six valence electrons. The formal charge on the sulfur atom is therefore In (c), nitrogen has a formal charge of −2.

C Which structure is preferred? Structure (b) is preferred because the negative charge is on the more electronegative atom (N), and it has lower formal charges on each atom as compared to structure (c): 0, −1 versus +1, −2.

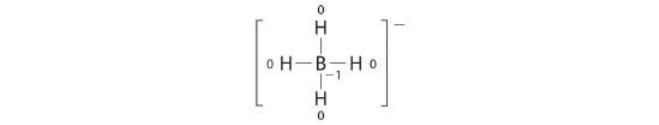
Exercise

Salts containing the fulminate ion (CNO^-) are used in explosive detonators. Draw three Lewis electron structures for CNO^- and use formal charges to predict which is more stable. (Note: N is the central atom.)

Answer:



The second structure is predicted to be more stable.



Drawing isomers of Lewis Structures



Contributors

- Anonymous

Layne Morsch (University of Illinois Springfield)

Three cases can be constructed that do not follow the octet rule, and as such, they are known as the exceptions to the octet rule. Following the Octet Rule for Lewis Dot Structures leads to the most accurate depictions of stable molecular and atomic structures and because of this we always want to use the octet rule when drawing Lewis Dot Structures. However, it is hard to imagine that one rule could be followed by all molecules. There is always an exception, and in this case, three exceptions. The octet rule is violated in these three scenarios:

1. When there are an odd number of valence electrons
2. When there are too few valence electrons
3. When there are too many valence electrons

Exception 1: Species with Odd Numbers of Electrons

The first exception to the Octet Rule is when there are an odd number of valence electrons. An example of this would be Nitrogen (II) Oxide (NO ¸refer to figure one). Nitrogen has 5 valence electrons while Oxygen has 6. The total would be 11 valence electrons to be used. The Octet Rule for this molecule is fulfilled in the above example, however that is with 10 valence electrons. The last one does not know where to go. The lone electron is called an unpaired electron. But where should the unpaired electron go? The unpaired electron is usually placed in the Lewis Dot Structure so that each element in the structure will have the *lowest* formal charge possible. The formal charge is *the perceived charge on an individual atom in a molecule when atoms do not contribute equal numbers of electrons to the bonds they participate in*. The formula to find a formal charge is:

Formal Charge= [# of valence e^- the atom would have on its own] - [# of lone pair electrons on that atom]

- [# of bonds that atom participates in]

No formal charge at all is the most ideal situation. An example of a stable molecule with an odd number of valence electrons would be nitrogen monoxide. Nitrogen monoxide has 11 valence electrons. If you need more information about formal charges, see Lewis Structures. If we were to imagine nitrogen monoxide had ten valence electrons we would come up with the Lewis Structure (Figure 8.7.1):

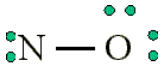


Figure 8.7.1. This is if Nitrogen monoxide has only *ten* valence electrons, which it does not.

Let's look at the formal charges of Figure 8.7.2 based on this Lewis structure. Nitrogen normally has five valence electrons. In Figure 8.7.1, it has two lone pair electrons and it participates in two bonds (a double bond) with oxygen. This results in nitrogen having a formal charge of +1. Oxygen normally has six valence electrons. In Figure 8.7.1, oxygen has four lone pair electrons and it participates in two bonds with nitrogen. Oxygen therefore has a formal charge of 0. The overall molecule here has a formal charge of +1 (+1 for nitrogen, 0 for oxygen. +1 + 0 = +1). However, if we add the eleventh electron to nitrogen (because we want the molecule to have the *lowest* total formal charge), it will bring both the nitrogen and the molecule's overall charges to zero, the most ideal formal charge situation. That is exactly what is done to get the correct Lewis structure for nitrogen monoxide (Figure 8.7.2):

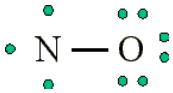


Figure 8.7.2. The proper Lewis structure for NO molecule

Free Radicals

There are actually very few stable molecules with odd numbers of electrons that exist, since that unpaired electron is willing to react with other unpaired electrons. Most odd electron species are highly reactive, which we call Free Radicals. Because of their instability, free radicals bond to atoms in which they can take an electron from in order to become stable, making them very chemically reactive. Radicals are found as both reactants and products, but generally react to form more stable molecules as soon as they can. In order to emphasize the existence of the unpaired electron, radicals are denoted with a dot in front of their chemical symbol as with , the hydroxyl radical. An example of a radical you may by familiar with already is the gaseous chlorine atom, denoted . Interestingly, odd Number of Valence Electrons will result in the molecule being paramagnetic.

Exception 2: Incomplete Octets

The second exception to the Octet Rule is when there are too few valence electrons that results in an incomplete Octet. There are even more occasions where the octet rule does not give the most correct depiction of a molecule or ion. This is also the case with incomplete octets. Species with incomplete octets are pretty rare and generally are only found in some beryllium, aluminum, and boron compounds including the boron hydrides. Let's take a look at one such hydride, BH_3 (Borane).

If one was to make a Lewis structure for BH_3 following the basic strategies for drawing Lewis structures, one would probably come up with this structure (Figure 8.7.3):

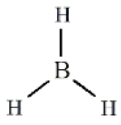


Figure 8.7.3

The problem with this structure is that boron has an incomplete octet; it only has six electrons around it. Hydrogen atoms can naturally only have only 2 electrons in their outermost shell (their version of an octet), and as such there are no spare electrons to form a double bond with boron. One might surmise that the failure of this structure to form complete octets must mean that this bond should be ionic instead of covalent. However, boron has an electronegativity that is very similar to hydrogen, meaning there is likely very little ionic character in the hydrogen to boron bonds, and as such this Lewis structure, though it does not fulfill the octet rule, is likely the best structure possible for depicting BH_3 with Lewis theory. One of the things that may account for BH_3's incomplete octet is that it is commonly a transitory species, formed temporarily in reactions that involve multiple steps.

Let's take a look at another incomplete octet situation dealing with boron, BF_3 (Boron trifluorine). Like with BH_3, the initial drawing of a Lewis structure of BF_3 will form a structure where boron has only six electrons around it (Figure 8.7.4).

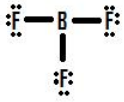


Figure 8.7.4

If you look Figure 8.7.4, you can see that the fluorine atoms possess extra lone pairs that they can use to make additional bonds with boron, and you might think that all you have to do is make one lone pair into a bond and the structure will be correct. If we add one double bond between boron and one of the fluorines we get the following Lewis Structure (Figure 8.7.5):

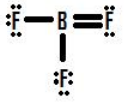


Figure 8.7.5

Each fluorine has eight electrons, and the boron atom has eight as well! Each atom has a perfect octet, right? Not so fast. We must examine the formal charges of this structure. The fluorine that shares a double bond with boron has six electrons around it (four from its two lone pairs of electrons and one each from its two bonds with boron). This is one less electron than the number of valence electrons it would have naturally (Group Seven elements have seven valence electrons), so it has a formal charge of +1. The two flourines that share single bonds with boron have seven electrons around them (six from their three lone pairs and one from their single bonds with boron). This is the same amount as the number of valence electrons they would have on their own, so they both have a formal charge of zero. Finally, boron has four electrons around it (one from each of its four bonds shared with fluorine). This is one more electron than the number of valence electrons that boron would have on its own, and as such boron has a formal charge of -1.

This structure is supported by the fact that the experimentally determined bond length of the boron to fluorine bonds in BF_3 is less than what would be typical for a single bond (see Bond Order and Lengths). However, this structure contradicts one of the major rules of formal charges: Negative formal charges are supposed to be found on the more electronegative atom(s) in a bond, but in the structure depicted in Figure 8.7.5, a *positive* formal charge is found on fluorine, which not only is the most electronegative element in the structure, but the most electronegative element in the entire periodic table ( ). Boron on the other hand, with the much lower electronegativity of 2.0, has the negative formal charge in this structure. This formal charge-electronegativity disagreement makes this double-bonded structure impossible.

However the large electronegativity difference here, as opposed to in BH_3, signifies significant polar bonds between boron and fluorine, which means there is a high ionic character to this molecule. This suggests the possibility of a semi-ionic structure such as seen in Figure 8.7.6:

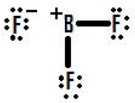


Figure 8.7.6

None of these three structures is the "correct" structure in this instance. The most "correct" structure is most likely a resonance of all three structures: the one with the incomplete octet (Figure 8.7.4), the one with the double bond (Figure 8.7.5), and the one with the ionic bond (Figure 8.7.6). The most contributing structure is probably the incomplete octet structure (due to Figure 8.7.5 being basically impossible and Figure 8.7.6 not matching up with the behavior and properties of BF_3). As you can see even when other possibilities exist, incomplete octets may best portray a molecular structure.

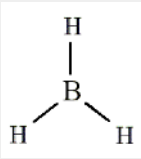
As a side note, it is important to note that BF_3 frequently bonds with a F^- ion in order to form BF_4^- rather than staying as BF_3. This structure completes boron's octet and it is more common in nature. This exemplifies the fact that incomplete octets are rare, and other configurations are typically more favorable, including bonding with additional ions as in the case of BF_3 .

Example 8.7.1:

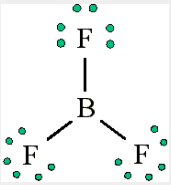
Draw the Lewis structure for boron trifluoride (BF_3).

SOLUTION

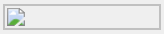
1. Add electrons (3*7) + 3 = **24**
2. Draw connectivities:



3. Add octets to outer atoms:

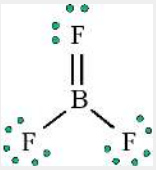


4. Add extra electrons (24-24=0) to central atom:



5. Does central electron have octet?

- NO. It has 6 electrons
- Add a multiple bond (double bond) to see if central atom can achieve an octet:

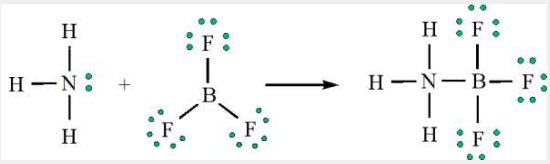


6. The central Boron now has an octet (there would be three resonance Lewis structures)

However...

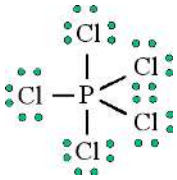
- In this structure with a double bond the fluorine atom is sharing extra electrons with the boron.
- The fluorine would have a '+' partial charge, and the boron a '-' partial charge, this is inconsistent with the electronegativities of fluorine and boron.
- Thus, ***the structure of BF_3, with single bonds, and 6 valence electrons around the central boron is the most likely structure***

BF_3 reacts strongly with compounds which have an unshared pair of electrons which can be used to form a bond with the boron:



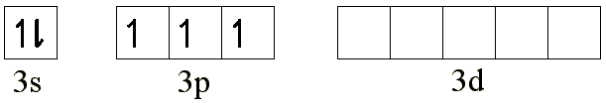
Exception 3: Expanded Valence Shells

More common than incomplete octets are expanded octets where the central atom in a Lewis structure has more than eight electrons in its valence shell. In expanded octets, the central atom can have ten electrons, or even twelve. *Molecules with expanded octets involve highly electronegative terminal atoms, and a nonmetal central atom found in the third period or below*, which those terminal atoms bond to. For example, is a legitimate compound (whereas) is not:



Note
Expanded valence shells are observed **only** for elements in period 3 (i.e. n=3) and beyond

The 'octet' rule is based upon available n*s* and n*p* orbitals for valence electrons (2 electrons in the *s* orbitals, and 6 in the *p* orbitals). Beginning with the n=3 principle quantum number, the d orbitals become available (*l*=2). The orbital diagram for the valence shell of phosphorous is:



Hence, the third period elements occasionally exceed the octet rule by using their empty d orbitals to accommodate additional electrons. Size is also an important consideration:

- The larger the central atom, the larger the number of electrons which can surround it
- Expanded valence shells occur most often when the central atom is bonded to small electronegative atoms, such as F, Cl and O.

There is currently much scientific exploration and inquiry into the reason why expanded valence shells are found. The top area of interest is figuring out where the extra pair(s) of electrons are found. Many chemists think that there is not a very large energy difference between the 3p and 3d orbitals, and as such it is plausible for extra electrons to easily fill the 3d orbital when an expanded octet is more favorable than having a complete octet. This matter is still under hot debate, however and there is even debate as to what makes an expanded octet more favorable than a configuration that follows the octet rule.

One of the situations where expanded octet structures are treated as more favorable than Lewis structures that follow the octet rule is when the formal charges in the expanded octet structure are smaller than in a structure that adheres to the octet rule, or when there are less formal charges in the expanded octet than in the structure a structure that adheres to the octet rule.

Example 8.7.2: The ion

Such is the case for the sulfate ion, SO_4^{-2}. A strict adherence to the octet rule forms the following Lewis structure:

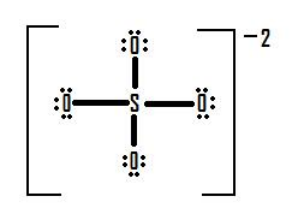


Figure 8.7.12

If we look at the formal charges on this molecule, we can see that all of the oxygen atoms have seven electrons around them (six from the three lone pairs and one from the bond with sulfur). This is one more electron than the number of valence electrons then they would have normally, and as such each of the oxygens in this structure has a formal charge of -1. Sulfur has four electrons around it in this structure (one from each of its four bonds) which is two electrons more than the number of valence electrons it would have normally, and as such it carries a formal charge of +2.

If instead we made a structure for the sulfate ion with an expanded octet, it would look like this:

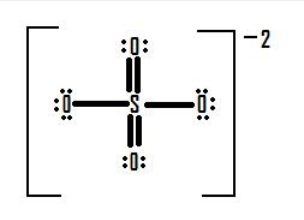


Figure 8.7.13

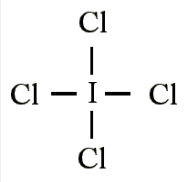
Looking at the formal charges for this structure, the sulfur ion has six electrons around it (one from each of its bonds). This is the same amount as the number of valence electrons it would have naturally. This leaves sulfur with a formal charge of zero. The two oxygens that have double bonds to sulfur have six electrons each around them (four from the two lone pairs and one each from the two bonds with sulfur). This is the same amount of electrons as the number of valence electrons that oxygen atoms have on their own, and as such both of these oxygen atoms have a formal charge of zero. The two oxygens with the single bonds to sulfur have seven electrons around them in this structure (six from the three lone pairs and one from the bond to sulfur). That is one electron more than the number of valence electrons that oxygen would have on its own, and as such those two oxygens carry a formal charge of -1. Remember that with formal charges, the goal is to keep the formal charges (or the difference between the formal charges of each atom) as small as possible. The number of and values of the formal charges on this structure (-1 and 0 (difference of 1) in Figure 8.7.12, as opposed to +2 and -1 (difference of 3) in Figure 8.7.12) is significantly lower than on the structure that follows the octet rule, and as such an expanded octet is plausible, and even preferred to a normal octet, in this case.

Example 8.7.3: The Ion

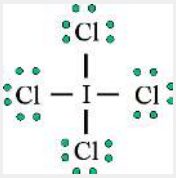
Draw the Lewis structure for ion.

SOLUTION

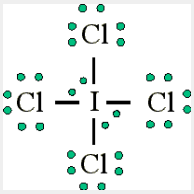
1. Count up the valence electrons: 7+(4*7)+1 = **36** electrons
2. Draw the connectivities:



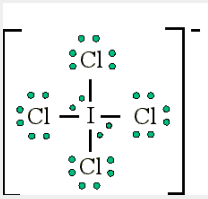
3. Add octet of electrons to outer atoms:



4. Add extra electrons (36-32=**4**) to central atom:



5. The ICl_4^- ion thus has 12 valence electrons around the central Iodine (in the 5*d* orbitals)



Expanded Lewis structures are also plausible depictions of molecules when experimentally determined bond lengths suggest partial double bond characters even when single bonds would already fully fill the octet of the central atom. Despite the cases for expanded octets, as mentioned for incomplete octets, it is important to keep in mind that, in general, the octet rule applies.

Contributors

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

1.7: Electron-Dot Model of Bonding - Lewis Structures is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.8: Common Bonding Patterns for Organic Chemistry

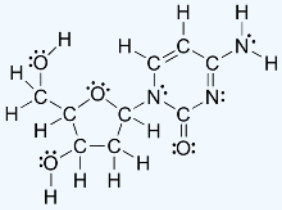
Learning Objective

Draw, interpret, and convert between Lewis (Kekule), Condensed, and Bond-line Structures

Note: The review of general chemistry in sections 1.3 - 1.6 is integrated into the above Learning Objective for organic chemistry in sections 1.7 and 1.8.

Common bonding patterns in organic structures

The Lewis structure below (of one of the four nucleoside building blocks that make up DNA) can appear complex and confusing at first glance. Fortunately, common bonding patterns occur that can allow for simplifications when drawing structures. The rules for the simplifies structures rely on the neutral bonding patterns for carbon, orygen, nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur primarily. Since organic compounds have a hydrocarbon backbone, the atoms that are NOT carbon and hydrogen are called heteroatoms. 2'-deoxycytidine contains seven heteroatoms: four oxygen atoms land three nitrogen atoms. Heteroatoms are a primary source of chemical reactivity for organic chemistry.



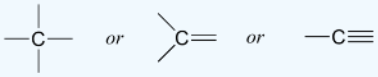
2'-deoxycytidine

Heteroatoms: atoms in an organic compound that are NOT carbon or hydrogen,

typically oxygen, nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur

The ability to quickly and efficiently draw large structures and determine formal charges is not terribly hard to come by - all it takes is a few shortcuts and some practice at recognizing common bonding patterns.

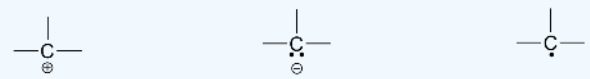
Let’s start with carbon, the most important element for organic chemists. Carbon is said to be tetravalent, meaning that it tends to form four bonds. If you look at the simple structures of methane, methanol, ethane, ethene, and ethyne in the figures from the previous section, you should quickly recognize that in each molecule, the carbon atom has four bonds, and a formal charge of zero.



carbon usually has 4 bonds

This is a pattern that holds throughout most of the organic molecules we will see, but there are also exceptions.

<style type="text/css"></style> In carbon dioxide, the carbon atom has double bonds to oxygen on both sides (O=C=O). Later on in this chapter and throughout this book we will see examples of organic ions called ‘carbocations’ and carbanions’, in which a carbon atom bears a positive or negative formal charge, respectively. If a carbon has only three bonds and an unfilled valence shell (in other words, if it does not fulfill the octet rule), it will have a positive formal charge.



3 bonds, no lone pair: carbocation

3 bonds + lone pair: carbanion

3 bonds + unpaired electron: carbon radical

If, on the other hand, it has three bonds plus a lone pair of electrons, it will have a formal charge of -1. Another possibility is a carbon with three bonds and a single, unpaired (free radical) electron: in this case, the carbon has a formal charge of zero. (One

last possibility is a highly reactive species called a ‘carbene’, in which a carbon has two bonds and one lone pair of electrons, giving it a formal charge of zero. You may encounter carbenes in more advanced chemistry courses, but they will not be discussed any further in this book).

You should certainly use the methods you have learned to check that these formal charges are correct for the examples given above. More importantly, you will need, before you progress much further in your study of organic chemistry, to simply recognize these patterns (and the patterns described below for other atoms) and be able to identify carbons that bear positive and negative formal charges by a quick inspection.

The pattern for hydrogens is easy: hydrogen atoms have only one bond, and no formal charge. The exceptions to this rule are the proton, H^+, and the hydride ion, H^-, which is a proton plus two electrons. Because we are concentrating in this book on organic chemistry as applied to living things, however, we will not be seeing ‘naked’ protons and hydrides as such, because they are too reactive to be present in that form in aqueous solution. Nonetheless, the *idea* of a proton will be very important when we discuss acid-base chemistry, and the *idea* of a hydride ion will become very important much later in the book when we discuss organic oxidation and reduction reactions. As a rule, though, all hydrogen atoms in organic molecules have one bond, and no formal charge.

Let us next turn to oxygen atoms. Typically, you will see an oxygen bonding in three ways, all of which fulfill the octet rule.



neutral oxygen: 2 bonds + 2 lone pairs

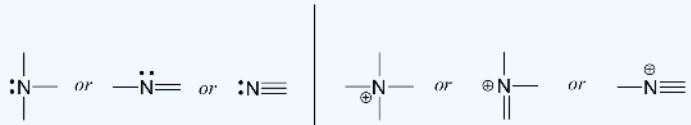
negative formal charge: 1 bond + 3 lone pairs

positive formal charge: 3 bonds + 1 lone pair

If it has two bonds and two lone pairs, as in water, it will have a formal charge of zero. If it has one bond and three lone pairs, as in hydroxide ion, it will have a formal charge of-1. If it has three bonds and one lone pair, as in hydronium ion, it will have a formal charge of +1.

When we get to our discussion of free radical chemistry in chapter 17, we will see other possibilities, such as where an oxygen atom has one bond, one lone pair, and one unpaired (free radical) electron, giving it a formal charge of zero. For now, however, concentrate on the three main non-radical examples, as these will account for virtually everything we see until chapter 17.

Nitrogen has two major bonding patterns, both of which fulfill the octet rule:

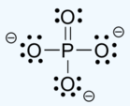


neutral nitrogen: 3 bonds, 1 lone pair

positive nitrogen: 4 bonds

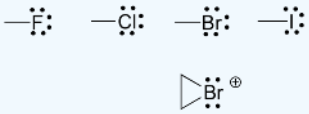
If a nitrogen has three bonds and a lone pair, it has a formal charge of zero. If it has four bonds (and no lone pair), it has a formal charge of +1. In a fairly uncommon bonding pattern, negatively charged nitrogen has two bonds and two lone pairs.

Two third row elements are commonly found in biological organic molecules: sulfur and phosphorus. Although both of these elements have other bonding patterns that are relevant in laboratory chemistry, in a biological context sulfur almost always follows the same bonding/formal charge pattern as oxygen, while phosphorus is present in the form of phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}), where it has five bonds (almost always to oxygen), no lone pairs, and a formal charge of zero. Remember that atoms of elements in the third row and below in the periodic table have 'expanded valence shells' with *d* orbitals available for bonding, and the the octet rule does not apply.



phosphate

Finally, the halogens (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine) are very important in laboratory and medicinal organic chemistry, but less common in naturally occurring organic molecules. Halogens in organic compounds usually are seen with one bond, three lone pairs, and a formal charge of zero. Sometimes, especially in the case of bromine, we will encounter reactive species in which the halogen has two bonds (usually in a three-membered ring), two lone pairs, and a formal charge of +1.



These rules, if learned and internalized so that you don't even need to think about them, will allow you to draw large organic structures, complete with formal charges, quite quickly.

Once you have gotten the hang of drawing Lewis structures, it is not always necessary to draw lone pairs on heteroatoms, as you can assume that the proper number of electrons are present around each atom to match the indicated formal charge (or lack thereof). Occasionally, though, lone pairs are drawn if doing so helps to make an explanation more clear.

Exercise 1: Draw one structure that corresponds to each of the following molecular formulas, using the common bonding patters covered above. Be sure to include all lone pairs and formal charges where applicable, and assume that all atoms have a full valence shell of electrons. More than one correct answer is possible for each, so you will want to check your answers with your instructor or tutor.

a) $C_5H_{10}O$ b) C_5H_8O c) $C_6H_8NO^+$ d) $C_4H_3O_2^-$

Solutions to exercises

1.8: Common Bonding Patterns for Organic Chemistry is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

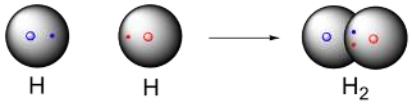
1.9: Hybridization and Molecular Shapes (Review)

Learning Objectives

- predict the hybridization and geometry of atoms in a molecule - refer to section 2.3
- draw accurate 3-D representations of molecules with approximate bond angles

Formation of sigma bonds: the H_2 molecule

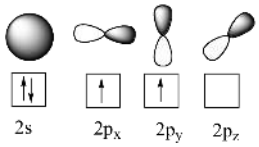
The simplest case to consider is the hydrogen molecule, H_2. When we say that the two electrons from each of the hydrogen atoms are shared to form a covalent bond between the two atoms, what we mean in valence bond theory terms is that the two spherical 1*s* orbitals overlap, allowing the two electrons to form a pair within the two overlapping orbitals.



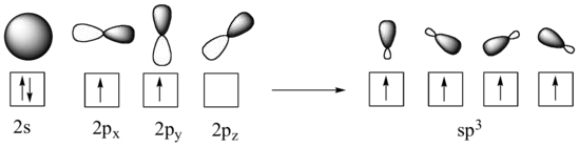
These two electrons are now attracted to the positive charge of *both* of the hydrogen nuclei, with the result that they serve as a sort of 'chemical glue' holding the two nuclei together.

Bonding in Methane

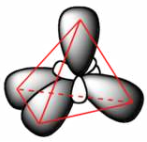
Now let's turn to methane, the simplest organic molecule. Recall the valence electron configuration of the central carbon:



This picture, however, is problematic. How does the carbon form four bonds if it has only two half-filled *p* orbitals available for bonding? A hint comes from the experimental observation that the four C-H bonds in methane are arranged with tetrahedral geometry about the central carbon, and that each bond has the same length and strength. In order to explain this observation, valence bond theory relies on a concept called **orbital hybridization**. In this picture, the four valence orbitals of the carbon (one 2*s* and three 2*p* orbitals) combine mathematically (remember: orbitals are described by equations) to form four equivalent **hybrid orbitals**, which are named **sp^3 orbitals** because they are formed from mixing one s and three p orbitals. In the new electron configuration, each of the four valence electrons on the carbon occupies a single sp^3 orbital.



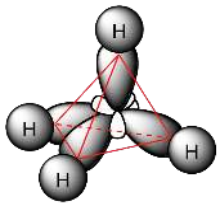
The sp^3 hybrid orbitals, like the *p* orbitals of which they are partially composed, are oblong in shape, and have two lobes of opposite sign. Unlike the *p* orbitals, however, the two lobes are of very different size. The larger lobes of the sp^3 hybrids are directed towards the four corners of a tetrahedron, meaning that the angle between any two orbitals is 109.5^o.



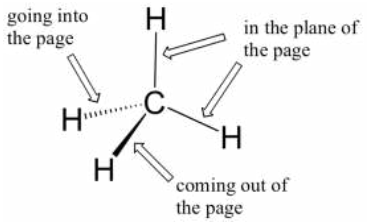
This geometric arrangement makes perfect sense if you consider that it is precisely this angle that allows the four orbitals (and the electrons in them) to be as far apart from each other as possible.This is simply a restatement of the Valence Shell Electron Pair

Repulsion (VSEPR) theory that you learned in General Chemistry: electron pairs (in orbitals) will arrange themselves in such a way as to remain as far apart as possible, due to negative-negative electrostatic repulsion.

Each C-H bond in methane, then, can be described as an overlap between a half-filled 1*s* orbital in a hydrogen atom and the larger lobe of one of the four half-filled sp^3 hybrid orbitals in the central carbon. The length of the carbon-hydrogen bonds in methane is 1.09 Å (1.09×10^{-10} m).



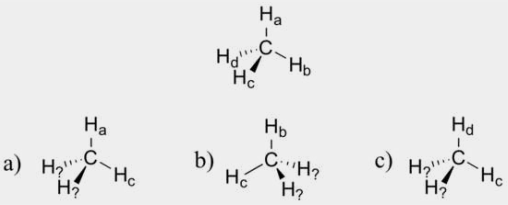
While previously we drew a Lewis structure of methane in two dimensions using lines to denote each covalent bond, we can now draw a more accurate structure in three dimensions, showing the tetrahedral bonding geometry. To do this on a two-dimensional page, though, we need to introduce a new drawing convention: the solid / dashed wedge system. In this convention, a solid wedge simply represents a bond that is meant to be pictured emerging from the plane of the page. A dashed wedge represents a bond that is meant to be pictured pointing into, or behind, the plane of the page. Normal lines imply bonds that lie in the plane of the page.



This system takes a little bit of getting used to, but with practice your eye will learn to immediately 'see' the third dimension being depicted.

Example

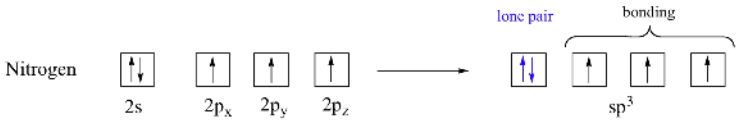
Imagine that you could distinguish between the four hydrogens in a methane molecule, and labeled them H_a through H_d. In the images below, the *exact same* methane molecule is rotated and flipped in various positions. Draw the missing hydrogen atom labels. (It will be much easier to do this if you make a model.)



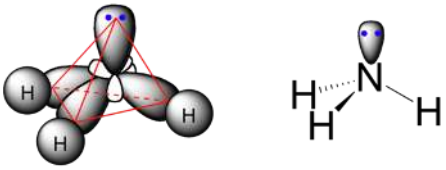
Exercise

Describe, with a picture and with words, the bonding in chloroform, $CHCl_3$.

Solutions

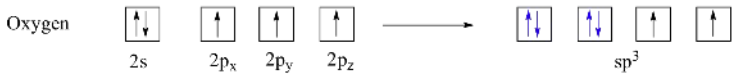


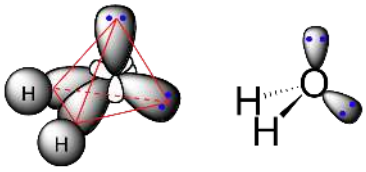
The bonding arrangement here is also tetrahedral: the three N-H bonds of ammonia can be pictured as forming the base of a trigonal pyramid, with the fourth orbital, containing the lone pair, forming the top of the pyramid.



Recall from your study of VSEPR theory in General Chemistry that the lone pair, with its slightly greater repulsive effect, 'pushes' the three N-H sbonds away from the top of the pyramid, meaning that the H-N-H bond angles are slightly less than tetrahedral, at 107.3˚ rather than 109.5˚.

VSEPR theory also predicts, accurately, that a water molecule is 'bent' at an angle of approximately 104.5˚. It would seem logical, then, to describe the bonding in water as occurring through the overlap of sp^3-hybrid orbitals on oxygen with 1sorbitals on the two hydrogen atoms. In this model, the two nonbonding lone pairs on oxygen would be located in sp^3 orbitals.





Some experimental evidence, however, suggests that the bonding orbitals on the oxygen are actually unhybridized 2*p* orbitals rather than sp^3 hybrids. Although this would seem to imply that the H-O-H bond angle should be 90˚ (remember that *p* orbitals are oriented perpendicular to one another), it appears that electrostatic repulsion has the effect of distorting this *p*-orbital angle to 104.5˚. Both the hybrid orbital and the nonhybrid orbital models present reasonable explanations for the observed bonding arrangement in water, so we will not concern ourselves any further with the distinction.

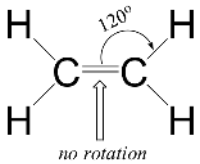
Exercise

Draw, in the same style as the figures above, an orbital picture for the bonding in methylamine.
Solution

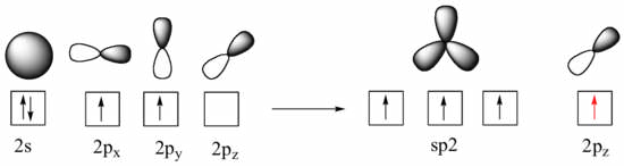
Formation of π bonds - sp^2 and sp hybridization

The valence bond theory, along with the hybrid orbital concept, does a very good job of describing double-bonded compounds such as ethene. Three experimentally observable characteristics of the ethene molecule need to be accounted for by a bonding model:

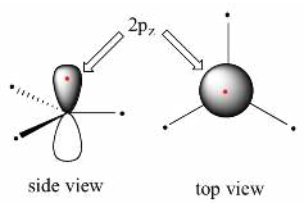
1. Ethene is a planar (flat) molecule.
2. Bond angles in ethene are approximately 120°, and the carbon-carbon bond length is 1.34 Å, significantly shorter than the 1.54 Å single carbon-carbon bond in ethane.
3. There is a significant barrier to rotation about the carbon-carbon double bond.



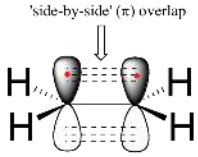
Clearly, these characteristics are not consistent with an sp^3 hybrid bonding picture for the two carbon atoms. Instead, the bonding in ethene is described by a model involving the participation of a different kind of hybrid orbital. Three atomic orbitals on each carbon – the 2*s*, $2p_x$ and $2p_y$ orbitals – combine to form three sp^2 hybrids, leaving the $2p_z$ orbital unhybridized.



The three sp^2 hybrids are arranged with trigonal planar geometry, pointing to the three corners of an equilateral triangle, with angles of 120°between them. The unhybridized $2p_z$ orbital is *perpendicular* to this plane (in the next several figures, sp^2 orbitals and the sigma bonds to which they contribute are represented by lines and wedges; only the $2p_z$ orbitals are shown in the 'space-filling' mode).

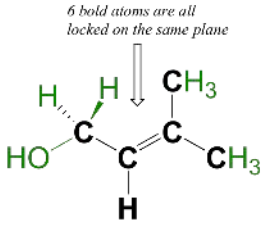


The carbon-carbon double bond in ethene consists of one sbond, formed by the overlap of two sp^2 orbitals, and a second bond, calleda **π (pi) bond**, which is formed by the *side-by-side* overlap of the two unhybridized $2p_z$ orbitals from each carbon.

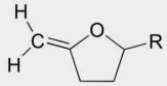


spacefilling image of bonding in ethene

The pi bond does *not* have symmetrical symmetry. Because they are the result of side-by-side overlap (rather then end-to-end overlap like a sigma bond), *pi bonds are not free to rotate.* If rotation about this bond were to occur, it would involve disrupting the side-by-side overlap between the two $2p_z$ orbitals that make up the pi bond. The presence of the pi bond thus ‘locks’ the six atoms of ethene into the same plane. This argument extends to larger alkene groups: in each case, the six atoms of the group form a single plane.

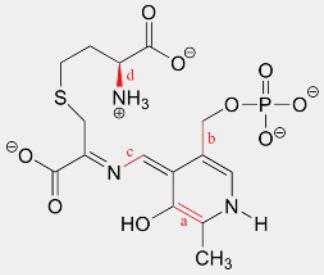


Conversely, sbonds such as the carbon-carbon single bond in ethane (CH_3CH_3) exhibit free rotation, and can assume many different conformations, or shapes - this is one of the main subjects of Chapter 3.

Exercise
Circle the six atoms in the molecule below that are ‘locked’ into the same plane. 

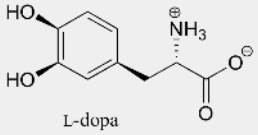
Exercise

What kinds of orbitals are overlapping in bonds a-d indicated below?



Exercise

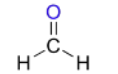
What is wrong with the way the following structure is drawn?



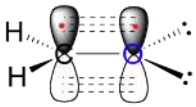
L-dopa

Solutions

A similar picture can be drawn for the bonding in carbonyl groups, such as formaldehyde. In this molecule, the carbon is sp^2-hybridized, and we will assume that the oxygen atom is also sp^2 hybridized. The carbon has three sigma bonds: two are formed by overlap between two of its sp^2 orbitals with the 1sorbital from each of the hydrogens, and the third sigma bond is formed by overlap between the remaining carbon sp^2 orbital and an sp^2 orbital on the oxygen. The two lone pairs on oxygen occupy its other two sp^2 orbitals.



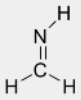
formaldehyde



The pi bond is formed by side-by-side overlap of the unhybridized $2p_z$ orbitals on the carbon and the oxygen. Just like in alkenes, the $2p_z$ orbitals that form the pi bond are perpendicular to the plane formed by the sigma bonds.

Exercise

Describe and draw the bonding picture for the imine group shown below. Use the drawing of formaldehyde above as your guide.



Solution

Contributors and Attributions

- **Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis** by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

1.9: Hybridization and Molecular Shapes (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.10: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory (Review)

Learning Objective

- write and interpret molecular orbital (MO) diagrams

Overview

Molecular orbital (MO) theory describes the behavior of electrons in a molecule in terms of combinations of the atomic wavefunctions. The resulting molecular orbitals may extend over all the atoms in the molecule. Bonding molecular orbitals are formed by in-phase combinations of atomic wavefunctions, and electrons in these orbitals stabilize a molecule. Antibonding molecular orbitals result from out-of-phase combinations and electrons in these orbitals make a molecule less stable.

Molecular orbital theory describes the distribution of electrons in molecules in much the same way that the distribution of electrons in atoms is described using atomic orbitals. Using quantum mechanics, the behavior of an electron in a molecule is still described by a wave function, Ψ, analogous to the behavior in an atom. Just like electrons around isolated atoms, electrons around atoms in molecules are limited to discrete (quantized) energies. The region of space in which a valence electron in a molecule is likely to be found is called a molecular orbital (Ψ^2). Like an atomic orbital, a molecular orbital is full when it contains two electrons with opposite spin.

We will consider the molecular orbitals in molecules composed of two identical atoms (H_2 or Cl_2, for example). Such molecules are called homonuclear diatomic molecules. In these diatomic molecules, several types of molecular orbitals occur.

The mathematical process of combining atomic orbitals to generate molecular orbitals is called the linear combination of atomic orbitals (LCAO). The wave function describes the wavelike properties of an electron. Molecular orbitals are combinations of atomic orbital wave functions. Combining waves can lead to constructive interference, in which peaks line up with peaks, or destructive interference, in which peaks line up with troughs (Figure **1.10.2**). In orbitals, the waves are three dimensional, and they combine with in-phase waves producing regions with a higher probability of electron density and out-of-phase waves producing nodes, or regions of no electron density.



Figure **1.10.2**: (a) When in-phase waves combine, constructive interference produces a wave with greater amplitude. (b) When out-of-phase waves combine, destructive interference produces a wave with less (or no) amplitude.

There are two types of molecular orbitals that can form from the overlap of two atomic *s* orbitals on adjacent atoms. The two types are illustrated in Figure 8.4.3. The in-phase combination produces a lower energy σ_s molecular orbital (read as "sigma-s") in which most of the electron density is directly between the nuclei. The out-of-phase addition (which can also be thought of as subtracting the wave functions) produces a higher energy σ_s^* molecular orbital (read as "sigma-s-star") molecular orbital in which there is a node between the nuclei. The asterisk signifies that the orbital is an antibonding orbital. Electrons in a σ_s orbital are attracted by both nuclei at the same time and are more stable (of lower energy) than they would be in the isolated atoms. Adding electrons to these orbitals creates a force that holds the two nuclei together, so we call these orbitals bonding orbitals. Electrons in the σ_s^* orbitals are located well away from the region between the two nuclei. The attractive force between the nuclei and these electrons pulls the two nuclei apart. Hence, these orbitals are called antibonding orbitals. Electrons fill the lower-energy bonding orbital before the higher-energy antibonding orbital, just as they fill lower-energy atomic orbitals before they fill higher-energy atomic orbitals.

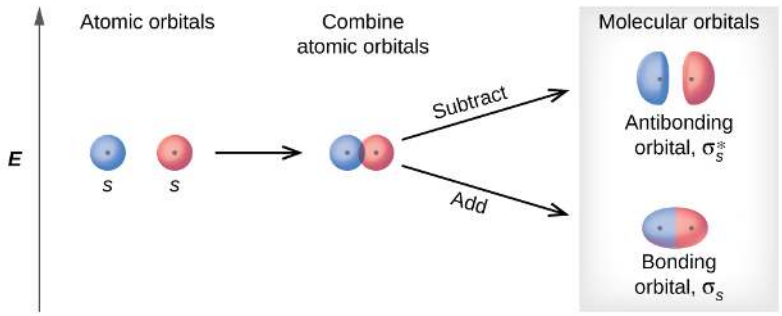


Figure **1.10.3**: Sigma (σ) and sigma-star (σ*) molecular orbitals are formed by the combination of two s atomic orbitals. The plus (+) signs indicate the locations of nuclei.

In *p* orbitals, the wave function gives rise to two lobes with opposite phases, analogous to how a two-dimensional wave has both parts above and below the average. We indicate the phases by shading the orbital lobes different colors. When orbital lobes of the same phase overlap, constructive wave interference increases the electron density. When regions of opposite phase overlap, the destructive wave interference decreases electron density and creates nodes. When *p* orbitals overlap end to end, they create σ and σ* orbitals (Figure **1.10.4**). If two atoms are located along the *x*-axis in a Cartesian coordinate system, the two p_x orbitals overlap end to end and form σ_{px} (bonding) and σ^*_{px} (antibonding) (read as "sigma-p-x" and "sigma-p-x star," respectively). Just as with *s*-orbital overlap, the asterisk indicates the orbital with a node between the nuclei, which is a higher-energy, antibonding orbital.

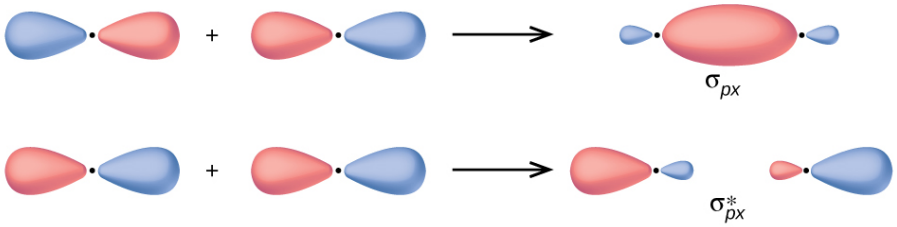


Figure **1.10.4**: Combining wave functions of two *p* atomic orbitals along the internuclear axis creates two molecular orbitals, σ_p and σ^*_p.

The side-by-side overlap of two *p* orbitals gives rise to a pi (π) bonding molecular orbital and a π* antibonding molecular orbital, as shown in Figure **1.10.5**. In valence bond theory, we describe π bonds as containing a nodal plane containing the internuclear axis and perpendicular to the lobes of the *p* orbitals, with electron density on either side of the node. In molecular orbital theory, we describe the π orbital by this same shape, and a π bond exists when this orbital contains electrons. Electrons in this orbital interact with both nuclei and help hold the two atoms together, making it a bonding orbital. For the out-of-phase combination, there are two nodal planes created, one along the internuclear axis and a perpendicular one between the nuclei.

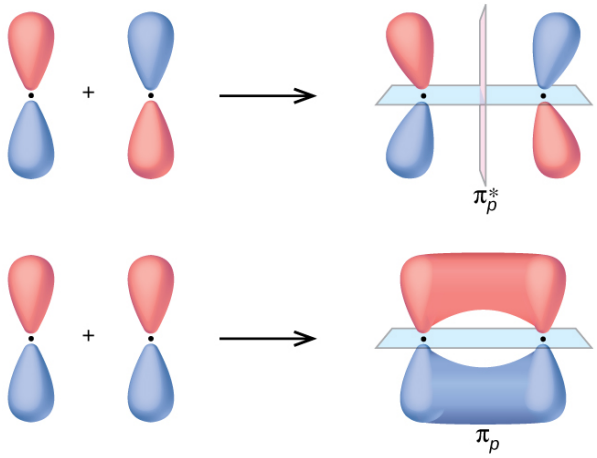
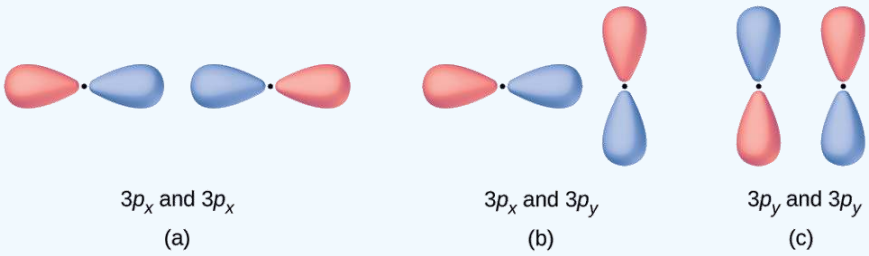


Figure **1.10.5**: Side-by-side overlap of each two p orbitals results in the formation of two π molecular orbitals. Combining the out-of-phase orbitals results in an antibonding molecular orbital with two nodes. One contains the internuclear axis, and one is perpendicular to the axis. Combining the in-phase orbitals results in a bonding orbital. There is a node (blue plane) containing the internuclear axis with the two lobes of the orbital located above and below this node.

In the molecular orbitals of diatomic molecules, each atom also has two sets of *p* orbitals oriented side by side (p_y and p_z), so these four atomic orbitals combine pairwise to create two π orbitals and two π* orbitals. The π_{py} and $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{py}}$ orbitals are oriented at right angles to the π_{pz} and $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{pz}}$ orbitals. Except for their orientation, the π_{py} and π_{pz} orbitals are identical and have the same energy; they are degenerate orbitals. The $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{py}}$ and $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{pz}}$ antibonding orbitals are also degenerate and identical except for their orientation. A total of six molecular orbitals results from the combination of the six atomic *p* orbitals in two atoms: σ_{px} and $\boldsymbol{\sigma^*_{px}}$, π_{py} and $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{py}}$, π_{pz} and $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{pz}}$.

Example 1.10.1

Molecular Orbitals Predict what type (if any) of molecular orbital would result from adding the wave functions so each pair of orbitals shown overlap. The orbitals are all similar in energy.



Solution

a. This is an in-phase combination, resulting in a σ_{3p} orbital
b. This will not result in a new orbital because the in-phase component (bottom) and out-of-phase component (top) cancel out. Only orbitals with the correct alignment can combine.
c. This is an out-of-phase combination, resulting in a $\boldsymbol{\pi^*_{3p}}$ orbital.

Exercise 1.10.1

Label the molecular orbital shown as *σ* or π, bonding or antibonding and indicate where the node occurs.



Answer

The orbital is located along the internuclear axis, so it is a σ orbital. There is a node bisecting the internuclear axis, so it is an antibonding orbital.



Molecular Orbital Energy Diagrams

The relative energy levels of atomic and molecular orbitals are typically shown in a molecular orbital diagram (Figure **1.10.7**). For a diatomic molecule, the atomic orbitals of one atom are shown on the left, and those of the other atom are shown on the right. Each horizontal line represents one orbital that can hold two electrons. The molecular orbitals formed by the combination of the atomic orbitals are shown in the center. Dashed lines show which of the atomic orbitals combine to form the molecular orbitals. For each pair of atomic orbitals that combine, one lower-energy (bonding) molecular orbital and one higher-energy (antibonding) orbital result. Thus we can see that combining the six 2*p* atomic orbitals results in three bonding orbitals (one σ and two π) and three antibonding orbitals (one σ* and two π*).

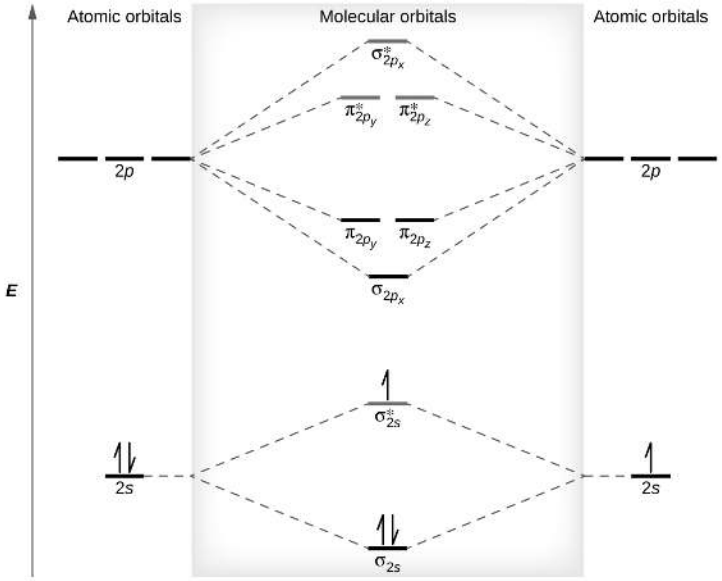


Figure **1.10.7**: This is the molecular orbital diagram for the homonuclear diatomic $\mathbf{Be_2^+}$, *showing the molecular orbitals of the valence shell only. The molecular orbitals are filled in the same manner as atomic orbitals, using the Aufbau principle and Hund's rule*.

We predict the distribution of electrons in these molecular orbitals by filling the orbitals in the same way that we fill atomic orbitals, by the Aufbau principle. Lower-energy orbitals fill first, electrons spread out among degenerate orbitals before pairing, and each orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons with opposite spins (Figure **1.10.7**). Just as we write electron configurations for atoms, we can write the molecular electronic configuration by listing the orbitals with superscripts indicating the number of electrons present. For clarity, we place parentheses around molecular orbitals with the same energy. In this case, each orbital is at a different energy, so parentheses separate each orbital. Thus we would expect a diatomic molecule or ion containing seven electrons (such as $\mathbf{Be_2^+}$) would have the molecular electron configuration $(\sigma_{1s})^2(\sigma_{1s}^*)^2(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^1$. It is common to omit the core electrons from molecular orbital diagrams and configurations and include only the valence electrons.

Bond Order

The filled molecular orbital diagram shows the number of electrons in both bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals. The net contribution of the electrons to the bond strength of a molecule is identified by determining the bond order that results from the filling of the molecular orbitals by electrons.

When using Lewis structures to describe the distribution of electrons in molecules, we define bond order as the number of bonding pairs of electrons between two atoms. Thus a single bond has a bond order of 1, a double bond has a bond order of 2, and a triple bond has a bond order of 3. We define bond order differently when we use the molecular orbital description of the distribution of

electrons, but the resulting bond order is usually the same. The MO technique is more accurate and can handle cases when the Lewis structure method fails, but both methods describe the same phenomenon.

In the molecular orbital model, an electron contributes to a bonding interaction if it occupies a bonding orbital and it contributes to an antibonding interaction if it occupies an antibonding orbital. The bond order is calculated by subtracting the destabilizing (antibonding) electrons from the stabilizing (bonding) electrons. Since a bond consists of two electrons, we divide by two to get the bond order. We can determine bond order with the following equation:

$$\text{bond order} = \frac{(\text{number of bonding electrons}) - (\text{number of antibonding electrons})}{2} \tag{1.10.1}$$

The order of a covalent bond is a guide to its strength; a bond between two given atoms becomes stronger as the bond order increases. If the distribution of electrons in the molecular orbitals between two atoms is such that the resulting bond would have a bond order of zero, a stable bond does not form. We next look at some specific examples of MO diagrams and bond orders.

Bonding in Diatomic Molecules

A dihydrogen molecule (H_2) forms from two hydrogen atoms. When the atomic orbitals of the two atoms combine, the electrons occupy the molecular orbital of lowest energy, the σ_{1s} bonding orbital. A dihydrogen molecule, H_2, readily forms because the energy of a H_2 molecule is lower than that of two H atoms. The σ_{1s} orbital that contains both electrons is lower in energy than either of the two 1*s* atomic orbitals.

A molecular orbital can hold two electrons, so both electrons in the H_2 molecule are in the σ_{1s} bonding orbital; the electron configuration is $(\sigma_{1s})^2$. We represent this configuration by a molecular orbital energy diagram (Figure 1.10.8) in which a single upward arrow indicates one electron in an orbital, and two (upward and downward) arrows indicate two electrons of opposite spin.

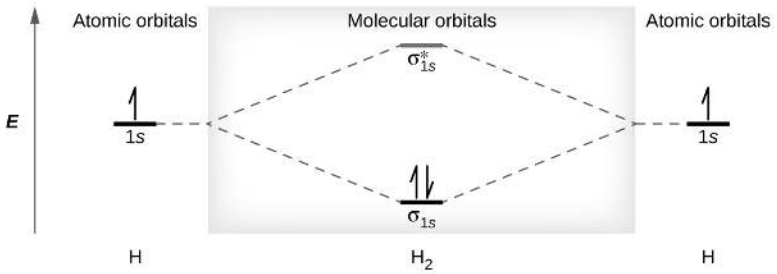


Figure 1.10.8: *The molecular orbital energy diagram predicts that H_2 will be a stable molecule with lower energy than the separated atoms.*

A dihydrogen molecule contains two bonding electrons and no antibonding electrons so we have

$$\text{bond order in } H_2 = \frac{(2-0)}{2} = 1 \tag{1.10.2}$$

Because the bond order for the H–H bond is equal to 1, the bond is a single bond.

A helium atom has two electrons, both of which are in its 1*s* orbital. Two helium atoms do not combine to form a dihelium molecule, He_2, with four electrons, because the stabilizing effect of the two electrons in the lower-energy bonding orbital would be offset by the destabilizing effect of the two electrons in the higher-energy antibonding molecular orbital. We would write the hypothetical electron configuration of He_2 as $(\sigma_{1s})^2(\sigma^*_{1s})^2$ as in Figure 1.10.9 . The net energy change would be zero, so there is no driving force for helium atoms to form the diatomic molecule. In fact, helium exists as discrete atoms rather than as diatomic molecules. The bond order in a hypothetical dihelium molecule would be zero.

$$\text{bond order in } He_2 = \frac{(2-2)}{2} = 0 \tag{1.10.3}$$

A bond order of zero indicates that no bond is formed between two atoms.

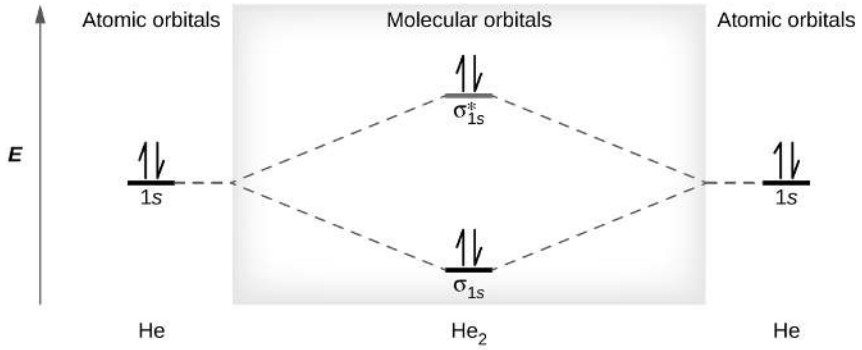


Figure **1.10.9**: *The molecular orbital energy diagram predicts that He_2 will not be a stable molecule, since it has equal numbers of bonding and antibonding*

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

1.10: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Polarity, Intermolecular Forces, and Physical Properties of Molecules

2.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity (Review)

2.2: Intermolecular Forces (IMFs) - Review

2.3: Organic Functional Groups- H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors

2.4: Intermolecular Forces and Relative Boiling Points (bp)

2.5: Intermolecular Forces and Solubilities

2: Polarity, Intermolecular Forces, and Physical Properties of Molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity (Review)

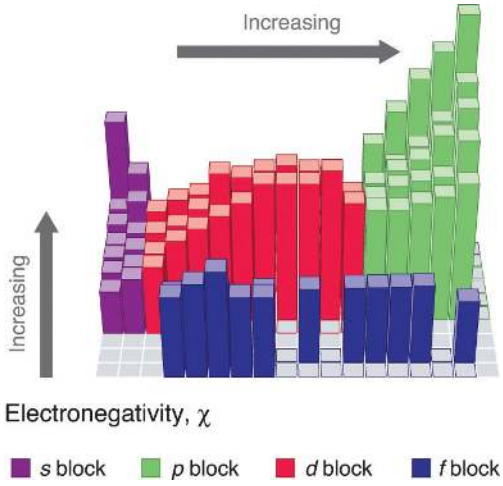
Learning Objective

- Identify polar bonds and compounds

Electronegativity is a measure of the tendency of an atom to attract a bonding pair of electrons. The Pauling scale is the most commonly used. Fluorine (the most electronegative element) is assigned a value of 4.0, and values range down to cesium and francium which are the least electronegative at 0.7.

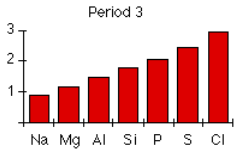
Patterns of electronegativity in the Periodic Table

> *Electronegativity is defined as the ability of an atom in a particular molecule to attract electrons to itself. The **greater** the value, the **greater** the attractiveness for electrons.*



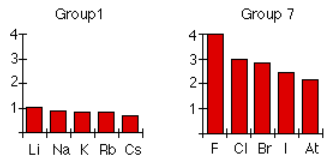
Trends in electronegativity across a period

The positively charged protons in the nucleus attract the negatively charged electrons. As the number of protons in the nucleus increases, the electronegativity or attraction will increase. Therefore electronegativity **increases** from **left to right** in a row in the periodic table. This effect only holds true for a row in the periodic table because the attraction between charges falls off rapidly with distance. The chart shows electronegativities from sodium to chlorine (ignoring argon since it does not does not form bonds).



Trends in electronegativity down a group

As you go down a group, electronegativity decreases. (If it increases up to fluorine, it must decrease as you go down.) The chart shows the patterns of electronegativity in Groups 1 and 7.



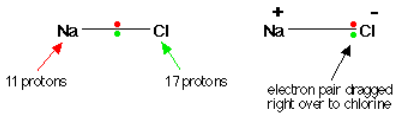
Explaining the patterns in electronegativity

The attraction that a bonding pair of electrons feels for a particular nucleus depends on:

- the number of protons in the nucleus;
- the distance from the nucleus;
- the amount of screening by inner electrons.

Why does electronegativity increase across a period?

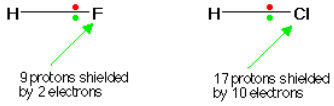
Consider sodium at the beginning of period 3 and chlorine at the end (ignoring the noble gas, argon). Think of sodium chloride as if it were covalently bonded.



Both sodium and chlorine have their bonding electrons in the 3-level. The electron pair is screened from both nuclei by the 1s, 2s and 2p electrons, but the chlorine nucleus has 6 more protons in it. It is no wonder the electron pair gets dragged so far towards the chlorine that ions are formed. Electronegativity increases across a period because the number of charges on the nucleus increases. That attracts the bonding pair of electrons more strongly.

Why does electronegativity fall as you go down a group?

As you go **down** a group, electronegativity **decreases** because the bonding pair of electrons is increasingly distant from the attraction of the nucleus. Consider the hydrogen fluoride and hydrogen chloride molecules:



The bonding pair is shielded from the fluorine's nucleus only by the $1s^2$ electrons. In the chlorine case it is shielded by all the $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electrons. In each case there is a net pull from the center of the fluorine or chlorine of +7. But fluorine has the bonding pair in the 2-level rather than the 3-level as it is in chlorine. If it is closer to the nucleus, the attraction is greater.

Dipole moments occur when there is a separation of charge. They can occur between two ions in an ionic bond or between atoms in a covalent bond; dipole moments arise from differences in electronegativity. The larger the difference in electronegativity, the larger the dipole moment. The distance between the charge separation is also a deciding factor into the size of the dipole moment. The dipole moment is a measure of the polarity of the molecule.

Bond Polarity & Dipole Moment

Atoms with differences in electronegativity will share electrons unequally. The shared electrons of the covalent bond are held more tightly at the more electronegative element creating a partial negative charge, while the less electronegative element has a partial positive charge, . The larger the difference in electronegativity between the two atoms, the more polar the bond. To be considered a polar bond, the difference in electronegativity must >0.4 on the Pauling scale. Since the two electrical partial charges have opposite sign and equal magnitude and are separated by a distance, a **dipole** is established. Dipole moment is measured in debye units, which is equal to the distance between the charges multiplied by the charge (1 debye equals 3.34×10^{-30} coulomb-meters).

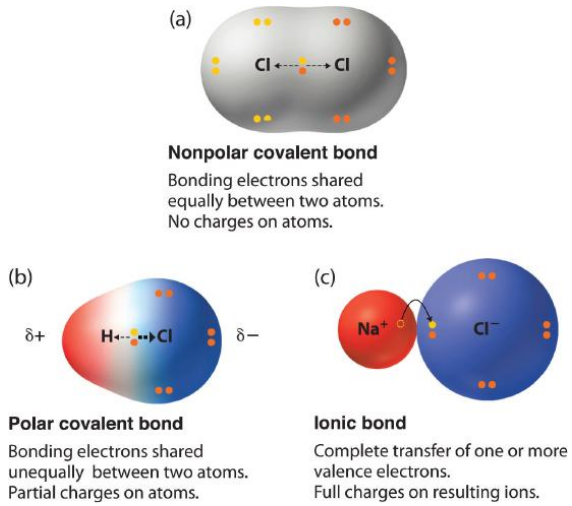


Figure **2.1.4**: The Electron Distribution in a Nonpolar Covalent Bond, a Polar Covalent Bond, and an Ionic Bond Using Lewis Electron Structures. In a purely covalent bond (a), the bonding electrons are shared equally between the atoms. In a purely ionic bond (c), an electron has been transferred completely from one atom to the other. A polar covalent bond (b) is intermediate between the two extremes: the bonding electrons are shared unequally between the two atoms, and the electron distribution is asymmetrical with the electron density being greater around the more electronegative atom. Electron-rich (negatively charged) regions are shown in blue; electron-poor (positively charged) regions are shown in red.

Polarity and Structure of Molecules

The shape of a molecule AND the polarity of its bonds. A molecule that contains polar bonds, might not have any overall polarity, depending upon its shape. The simple definition of whether a complex molecule is polar or not depends upon whether its overall centers of positive and negative charges overlap. If these centers lie at the same point in space, then the molecule has no overall polarity (and is non polar).

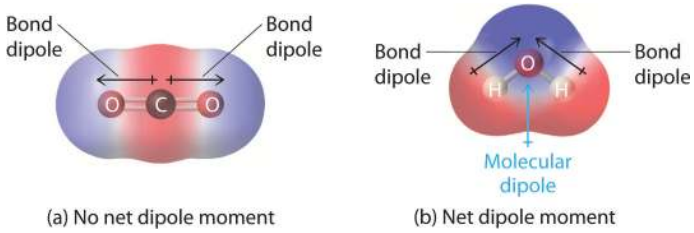


Figure 3: Charge distrubtions

If a molecule is completely symmetric, then the dipole moment vectors on each molecule will cancel each other out, making the molecule nonpolar. A molecule can only be polar if the structure of that molecule is not symmetric.

A good example of a nonpolar molecule that contains polar bonds is carbon dioxide. This is a linear molecule and the C=O bonds are, in fact, polar. The central carbon will have a net positive charge, and the two outer oxygens a net negative charge. However, since the molecule is linear, these two bond dipoles cancel each other out (i.e. vector addition of the dipoles equals zero). And the overall molecule has no dipole ($\mu = 0$.

Although a polar bond is a prerequisite for a molecule to have a dipole, not all molecules with polar bonds exhibit dipoles

Geometric Considerations

Example 1: Polar Bonds vs. Polar Molecules

In a simple diatomic molecule like HCl, if the bond is polar, then the whole molecule is polar. What about more complicated molecules?

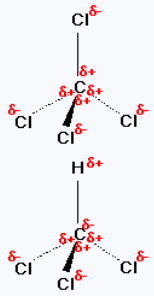


Figure: (left) CCl_4 (right) $CHCl_3$

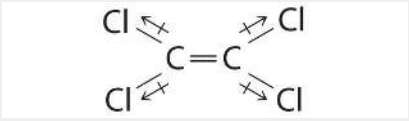
Consider CCl_4, (left panel in figure above), which as a molecule is not polar - in the sense that it doesn't have an end (or a side) which is slightly negative and one which is slightly positive. The whole of the outside of the molecule is somewhat negative, but there is no overall separation of charge from top to bottom, or from left to right.

In contrast, $CHCl_3$ is a polar molecule (right panel in figure above). The hydrogen at the top of the molecule is less electronegative than carbon and so is slightly positive. This means that the molecule now has a slightly positive "top" and a slightly negative "bottom", and so is overall a polar molecule.

A polar molecule will need to be "lop-sided" in some way.

Example 2:

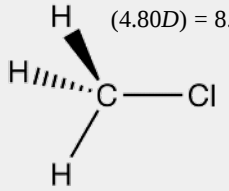
Although the C–Cl bonds are rather polar, the individual bond dipoles cancel one another in this symmetrical structure, and $Cl_2C=CCl_2$ does not have a net dipole moment.



Example 3:

C-Cl, the key polar bond, is 178 pm. Measurement reveals 1.87 D. From this data, % ionic character can be computed. If this bond were 100% ionic (based on proton & electron),

$$\mu = (4.80D) = 8.54D$$



Example 4:

Since measurement 1.87 D,
% ionic = (1.7/8.54)x100 = 22%
u = 1.03 D (measured) H-Cl bond length 127 pm
If 100% ionic,

$$\mu = (4.80D) = 6.09D$$

ionic = (1.03/6.09)x100 = 17%

A "spectrum" of bonds

The implication of all this is that there is no clear-cut division between covalent and ionic bonds. In a pure covalent bond, the electrons are held on average exactly half way between the atoms. In a polar bond, the electrons have been dragged slightly towards one end. How far does this dragging have to go before the bond counts as ionic? There is no real answer to that. Sodium chloride is typically considered an ionic solid, but even here the sodium has not completely lost control of its electron. Because of the properties of sodium chloride, however, we tend to count it as if it were purely ionic. Lithium iodide, on the other hand, would be described as being "ionic with some covalent character". In this case, the pair of electrons has not moved entirely over to the iodine end of the bond. Lithium iodide, for example, dissolves in organic solvents like ethanol - not something which ionic substances normally do.

Summary

- No electronegativity difference between two atoms leads to a pure non-polar covalent bond.
- A small electronegativity difference leads to a polar covalent bond.
- A large electronegativity difference leads to an ionic bond.

Example 1: Polar Bonds vs. Polar Molecules

In a simple diatomic molecule like HCl, if the bond is polar, then the whole molecule is polar. What about more complicated molecules?

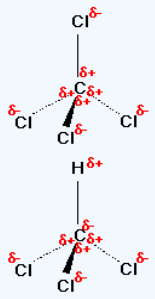


Figure: (left) CCl_4 (right) $CHCl_3$

Consider CCl_4, (left panel in figure above), which as a molecule is not polar - in the sense that it doesn't have an end (or a side) which is slightly negative and one which is slightly positive. The whole of the outside of the molecule is somewhat negative, but there is no overall separation of charge from top to bottom, or from left to right.

In contrast, $CHCl_3$ is a polar molecule (right panel in figure above). The hydrogen at the top of the molecule is less electronegative than carbon and so is slightly positive. This means that the molecule now has a slightly positive "top" and a slightly negative "bottom", and so is overall a polar molecule.

A polar molecule will need to be "lop-sided" in some way.

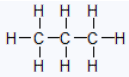
Exercises

For the following compounds,

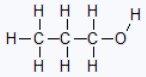
a) add lone pairs of electrons to complete octets

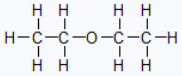
b) add dipole moment arrows or partial +/- signs to indicate polar bonds

c) predict the molecular polarity (Remember to visualize each compound in three dimensions.)

a) 

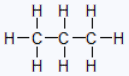
b) 

c) 

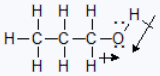
d) 

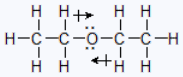
e) 

Solutions

a)  nonpolar

b)  nonpolar

c)  polar

d)  polar - molecular shape is bent around the oxygen atom

e)  polar

Contributors and Attributions

- *Mike Blaber* (*Florida State University*)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Prof. Richard Bank, Boise State University, Emeritus,

2.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.2: Intermolecular Forces (IMFs) - Review

learning objective

- determine the dominant intermolecular forces (IMFs) of organic compounds

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids, but are more similar to solids. In contrast to *intra*molecular forces, such as the covalent bonds that hold atoms together in molecules and polyatomic ions, *inter*molecular forces hold molecules together in a liquid or solid. Intermolecular forces are generally much weaker than covalent bonds. For example, it requires 927 kJ to overcome the intramolecular forces and break both O–H bonds in 1 mol of water, but it takes only about 41 kJ to overcome the intermolecular attractions and convert 1 mol of liquid water to water vapor at 100°C. (Despite this seemingly low value, the intermolecular forces in liquid water are among the strongest such forces known!) Given the large difference in the strengths of intra- and intermolecular forces, changes between the solid, liquid, and gaseous states almost invariably occur for molecular substances *without breaking covalent bonds*.

> *The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids but are more similar to solids.*

Intermolecular forces determine bulk properties such as the melting points of solids and the boiling points of liquids. Liquids boil when the molecules have enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold them together, thereby forming bubbles of vapor within the liquid. Similarly, solids melt when the molecules acquire enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular forces that lock them into place in the solid.

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature; that is, they arise from the interaction between positively and negatively charged species. Like covalent and ionic bonds, intermolecular interactions are the sum of both attractive and repulsive components. Because electrostatic interactions fall off rapidly with increasing distance between molecules, intermolecular interactions are most important for solids and liquids, where the molecules are close together. These interactions become important for gases only at very high pressures, where they are responsible for the observed deviations from the ideal gas law at high pressures. (For more information on the behavior of real gases and deviations from the ideal gas law,.)

In this section, we explicitly consider three kinds of intermolecular interactions: There are two additional types of electrostatic interaction that you are already familiar with: the ion–ion interactions that are responsible for ionic bonding and the ion–dipole interactions that occur when ionic substances dissolve in a polar substance such as water. The first two are often described collectively as van der Waals forces.

Dipole–Dipole Interactions

Polar covalent bonds behave as if the bonded atoms have localized fractional charges that are equal but opposite (i.e., the two bonded atoms generate a *dipole*). If the structure of a molecule is such that the individual bond dipoles do not cancel one another, then the molecule has a net dipole moment. Molecules with net dipole moments tend to align themselves so that the positive end of one dipole is near the negative end of another and vice versa, as shown in Figure **2.2.1*a***.

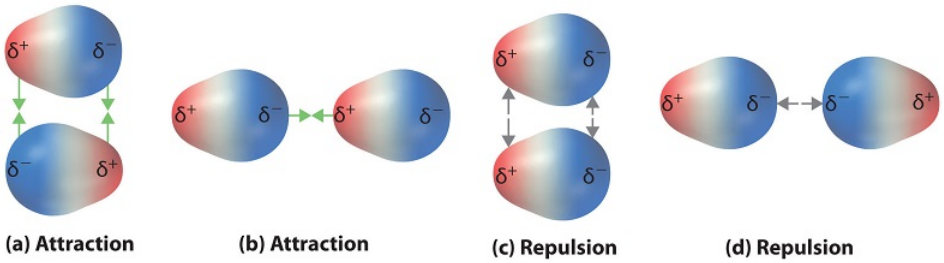


Figure **2.2.1**: Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions. (a and b) Molecular orientations in which the positive end of one dipole (δ^+) is near the negative end of another (δ^-) (and vice versa) produce attractive interactions. (c and d) Molecular orientations that juxtapose the positive or negative ends of the dipoles on adjacent molecules produce repulsive interactions.

These arrangements are more stable than arrangements in which two positive or two negative ends are adjacent (Figure **2.2.1***c*). Hence dipole–dipole interactions, such as those in Figure **2.2.1***b*, are *attractive intermolecular interactions*, whereas those in Figure **2.2.1***d* are *repulsive intermolecular interactions*. Because molecules in a liquid move freely and continuously, molecules always experience both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions simultaneously, as shown in Figure **2.2.2**. On average, however, the attractive interactions dominate.

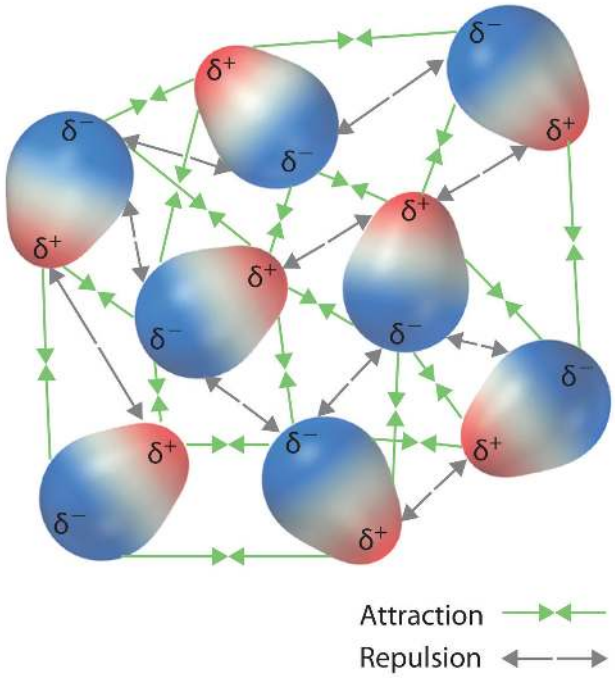


Figure **2.2.2**: Both Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions Occur in a Liquid Sample with Many Molecules

Because each end of a dipole possesses only a fraction of the charge of an electron, dipole–dipole interactions are substantially weaker than the interactions between two ions, each of which has a charge of at least ±1, or between a dipole and an ion, in which one of the species has at least a full positive or negative charge. In addition, the attractive interaction between dipoles falls off much more rapidly with increasing distance than do the ion–ion interactions. Recall that the attractive energy between two ions is proportional to $1/r$, where r is the distance between the ions. Doubling the distance ($r \rightarrow 2r$) decreases the attractive energy by one-half. In contrast, the energy of the interaction of two dipoles is proportional to $1/r^3$, so doubling the distance between the dipoles decreases the strength of the interaction by 2^3, or 8-fold. Thus a substance such as **HCl**, which is partially held together by dipole–dipole interactions, is a gas at room temperature and 1 atm pressure, whereas **NaCl**, which is held together by interionic interactions, is a high-melting-point solid. Within a series of compounds of similar molar mass, the strength of the intermolecular interactions increases as the dipole moment of the molecules increases, as shown in Table **2.2.1**.

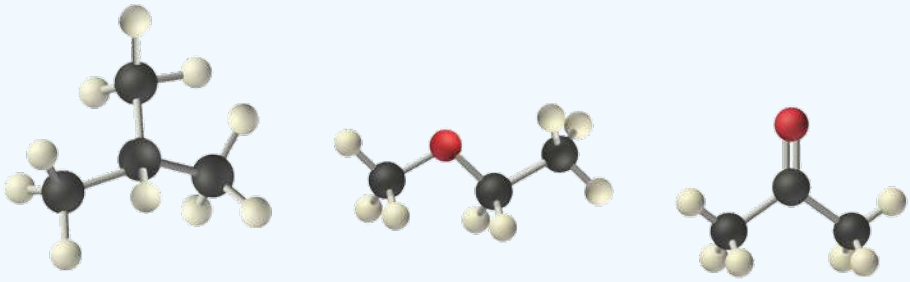
Table **2.2.1**: Relationships between the Dipole Moment and the Boiling Point for Organic Compounds of Similar Molar Mass

Compound	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Dipole Moment (D)	Boiling Point (K)
C_3H_6 (cyclopropane)	42	0	240
CH_3OCH_3 (dimethyl ether)	46	1.30	248
CH_3CN (acetonitrile)	41	3.9	355

> *The attractive energy between two ions is proportional to 1/r, whereas the attractive energy between two dipoles is proportional to 1/r6.*

Example

Arrange ethyl methyl ether ($CH_3OCH_2CH_3$), 2-methylpropane [isobutane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and acetone (CH_3COCH_3) in order of increasing boiling points. Their structures are as follows:



2-Methylpropane Ethyl methyl ether Acetone

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Compare the molar masses and the polarities of the compounds. Compounds with higher molar masses and that are polar will have the highest boiling points.

Solution:

The three compounds have essentially the same molar mass (58–60 g/mol), so we must look at differences in polarity to predict the strength of the intermolecular dipole–dipole interactions and thus the boiling points of the compounds.

The first compound, 2-methylpropane, contains only C–H bonds, which are not very polar because C and H have similar electronegativities. It should therefore have a very small (but nonzero) dipole moment and a very low boiling point.

Ethyl methyl ether has a structure similar to H_2O; it contains two polar C–O single bonds oriented at about a 109° angle to each other, in addition to relatively nonpolar C–H bonds. As a result, the C–O bond dipoles partially reinforce one another and generate a significant dipole moment that should give a moderately high boiling point.

Acetone contains a polar C=O double bond oriented at about 120° to two methyl groups with nonpolar C–H bonds. The C–O bond dipole therefore corresponds to the molecular dipole, which should result in both a rather large dipole moment and a high boiling point.

Thus we predict the following order of boiling points:

2-methylpropane < ethyl methyl ether < acetone.

This result is in good agreement with the actual data: 2-methylpropane, boiling point = −11.7°C, and the dipole moment (μ) = 0.13 D; methyl ethyl ether, boiling point = 7.4°C and μ = 1.17 D; acetone, boiling point = 56.1°C and μ = 2.88 D.

Exercise

Arrange carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4), ethyl methyl sulfide ($CH_3SC_2H_5$), dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2S{=}O$], and 2-methylbutane [isopentane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$] in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer

dimethyl sulfoxide (boiling point = 189.9°C) > ethyl methyl sulfide (boiling point = 67°C) > 2-methylbutane (boiling point = 27.8°C) > carbon tetrafluoride (boiling point = −128°C)

London Dispersion Forces

Thus far we have considered only interactions between polar molecules, but other factors must be considered to explain why many nonpolar molecules, such as bromine, benzene, and hexane, are liquids at room temperature, and others, such as iodine and naphthalene, are solids. Even the noble gases can be liquefied or solidified at low temperatures, high pressures, or both (Table **2.2.2**).

What kind of attractive forces can exist between nonpolar molecules or atoms? This question was answered by Fritz London (1900–1954), a German physicist who later worked in the United States. In 1930, London proposed that temporary fluctuations in the electron distributions within atoms and nonpolar molecules could result in the formation of short-lived instantaneous dipole moments, which produce attractive forces called London dispersion forces between otherwise nonpolar substances.

Table **2.2.2**: Normal Melting and Boiling Points of Some Elements and Nonpolar Compounds

Substance	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)
Ar	40	−189.4	−185.9
Xe	131	−111.8	−108.1
N_2	28	−210	−195.8
O_2	32	−218.8	−183.0
F_2	38	−219.7	−188.1
I_2	254	113.7	184.4
CH_4	16	−182.5	−161.5

Consider a pair of adjacent He atoms, for example. On average, the two electrons in each He atom are uniformly distributed around the nucleus. Because the electrons are in constant motion, however, their distribution in one atom is likely to be asymmetrical at any given instant, resulting in an instantaneous dipole moment. As shown in part (a) in Figure **2.2.3**, the instantaneous dipole moment on one atom can interact with the electrons in an adjacent atom, pulling them toward the positive end of the instantaneous dipole or repelling them from the negative end. The net effect is that the first atom causes the temporary formation of a dipole, called an induced dipole, in the second. Interactions between these temporary dipoles cause atoms to be attracted to one another. These attractive interactions are weak and fall off rapidly with increasing distance. London was able to show with quantum mechanics that the attractive energy between molecules due to temporary dipole–induced dipole interactions falls off as $1/r^6$. Doubling the distance therefore decreases the attractive energy by 2^6, or 64-fold.

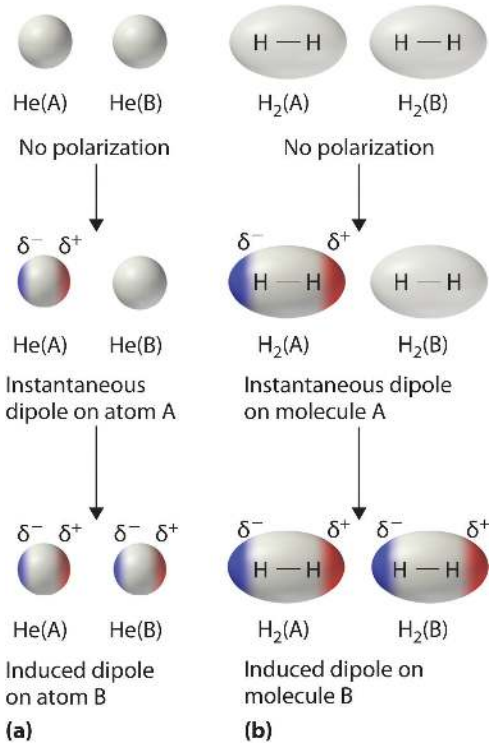


Figure **2.2.3**: Instantaneous Dipole Moments. The formation of an instantaneous dipole moment on one He atom (a) or an H_2 molecule (b) results in the formation of an induced dipole on an adjacent atom or molecule.

Instantaneous dipole–induced dipole interactions between nonpolar molecules can produce intermolecular attractions just as they produce interatomic attractions in monatomic substances like Xe. This effect, illustrated for two H_2 molecules in part (b) in Figure **2.2.3**, tends to become more pronounced as atomic and molecular masses increase (Table **2.2.2**). For example, Xe boils at −108.1°C, whereas He boils at −269°C. The reason for this trend is that the strength of London dispersion forces is related to the ease with which the electron distribution in a given atom can be perturbed. In small atoms such as He, the two 1*s* electrons are held close to the nucleus in a very small volume, and electron–electron repulsions are strong enough to prevent significant asymmetry in their distribution. In larger atoms such as Xe, however, the outer electrons are much less strongly attracted to the nucleus because of filled intervening shells. As a result, it is relatively easy to temporarily deform the electron distribution to generate an instantaneous or induced dipole. The ease of deformation of the electron distribution in an atom or molecule is called its polarizability. Because the electron distribution is more easily perturbed in large, heavy species than in small, light species, we say that heavier substances tend to be much more *polarizable* than lighter ones.

> *For similar substances, London dispersion forces get stronger with increasing molecular size.*

The polarizability of a substance also determines how it interacts with ions and species that possess permanent dipoles. Thus London dispersion forces are responsible for the general trend toward higher boiling points with increased molecular mass and greater surface area in a homologous series of compounds, such as the alkanes (part (a) in Figure **2.2.4**). The strengths of London dispersion forces also depend significantly on molecular shape because shape determines how much of one molecule can interact with its neighboring molecules at any given time. For example, part (b) in Figure **2.2.4** shows 2,2-dimethylpropane (neopentane) and *n*-pentane, both of which have the empirical formula C_5H_{12}. Neopentane is almost spherical, with a small surface area for intermolecular interactions, whereas *n*-pentane has an extended conformation that enables it to come into close contact with other *n*-pentane molecules. As a result, the boiling point of neopentane (9.5°C) is more than 25°C lower than the boiling point of *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

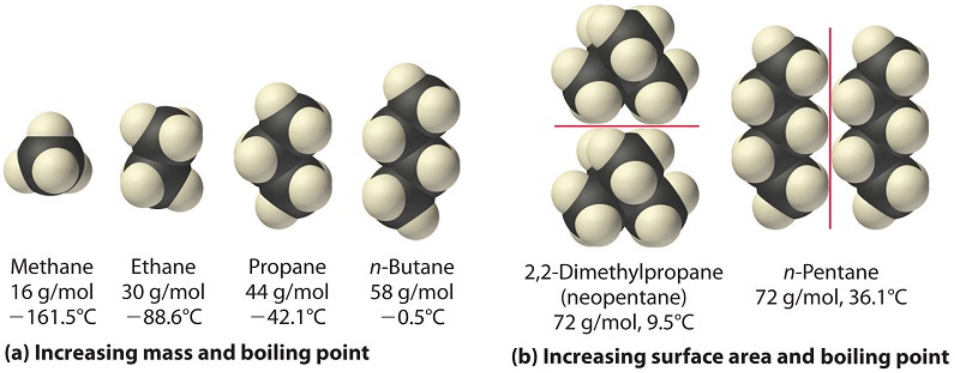


Figure **2.2.4**: Mass and Surface Area Affect the Strength of London Dispersion Forces. (a) In this series of four simple alkanes, larger molecules have stronger London forces between them than smaller molecules and consequently higher boiling points. (b) Linear *n*-pentane molecules have a larger surface area and stronger intermolecular forces than spherical neopentane molecules. As a result, neopentane is a gas at room temperature, whereas *n*-pentane is a volatile liquid.

All molecules, whether polar or nonpolar, are attracted to one another by London dispersion forces in addition to any other attractive forces that may be present. In general, however, dipole–dipole interactions in small polar molecules are significantly stronger than London dispersion forces, so the former predominate.

Example

Arrange *n*-butane, propane, 2-methylpropane [isobutene, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and *n*-pentane in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Determine the intermolecular forces in the compounds and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

The four compounds are alkanes and nonpolar, so London dispersion forces are the only important intermolecular forces. These forces are generally stronger with increasing molecular mass, so propane should have the lowest boiling point and *n*-pentane should have the highest, with the two butane isomers falling in between. Of the two butane isomers, 2-methylpropane is more compact, and *n*-butane has the more extended shape. Consequently, we expect intermolecular interactions for *n*-butane to be stronger due to its larger surface area, resulting in a higher boiling point. The overall order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses: propane (−42.1°C) < 2-methylpropane (−11.7°C) < *n*-butane (−0.5°C) < *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

Exercise

Arrange GeH_4, $SiCl_4$, SiH_4, CH_4, and $GeCl_4$ in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer

$GeCl_4$ (87°C) > $SiCl_4$ (57.6°C) > GeH_4 (−88.5°C) > SiH_4 (−111.8°C) > CH_4 (−161°C)

Hydrogen Bonds

Molecules with hydrogen atoms bonded to electronegative atoms such as O, N, and F (and to a much lesser extent Cl and S) tend to exhibit unusually strong intermolecular interactions. These result in much higher boiling points than are observed for substances in which London dispersion forces dominate, as illustrated for the covalent hydrides of elements of groups 14–17 in Figure **2.2.5**. Methane and its heavier congeners in group 14 form a series whose boiling points increase smoothly with increasing molar mass. This is the expected trend in nonpolar molecules, for which London dispersion forces are the exclusive intermolecular forces. In contrast, the hydrides of the lightest members of groups 15–17 have boiling points that are more than 100°C greater than predicted

on the basis of their molar masses. The effect is most dramatic for water: if we extend the straight line connecting the points for H_2Te and H_2Se to the line for period 2, we obtain an estimated boiling point of −130°C for water! Imagine the implications for life on Earth if water boiled at −130°C rather than 100°C.

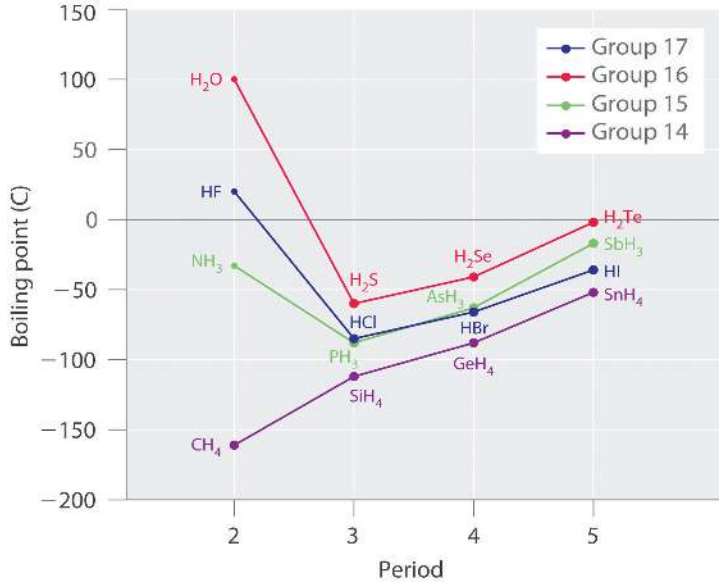


Figure **2.2.5**: The Effects of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points. These plots of the boiling points of the covalent hydrides of the elements of groups 14–17 show that the boiling points of the lightest members of each series for which hydrogen bonding is possible (HF, NH_3, and H_2O) are anomalously high for compounds with such low molecular masses.

Why do strong intermolecular forces produce such anomalously high boiling points and other unusual properties, such as high enthalpies of vaporization and high melting points? The answer lies in the highly polar nature of the bonds between hydrogen and very electronegative elements such as O, N, and F. The large difference in electronegativity results in a large partial positive charge on hydrogen and a correspondingly large partial negative charge on the O, N, or F atom. Consequently, H–O, H–N, and H–F bonds have very large bond dipoles that can interact strongly with one another. Because a hydrogen atom is so small, these dipoles can also approach one another more closely than most other dipoles. The combination of large bond dipoles and short dipole–dipole distances results in very strong dipole–dipole interactions called hydrogen bonds, as shown for ice in Figure **2.2.6**. A hydrogen bond is usually indicated by a dotted line between the hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F (the *hydrogen bond donor*) and the atom that has the lone pair of electrons (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because each water molecule contains two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs, a tetrahedral arrangement maximizes the number of hydrogen bonds that can be formed. In the structure of ice, each oxygen atom is surrounded by a distorted tetrahedron of hydrogen atoms that form bridges to the oxygen atoms of adjacent water molecules. The bridging hydrogen atoms are *not* equidistant from the two oxygen atoms they connect, however. Instead, each hydrogen atom is 101 pm from one oxygen and 174 pm from the other. In contrast, each oxygen atom is bonded to two H atoms at the shorter distance and two at the longer distance, corresponding to two O–H covalent bonds and two O···H hydrogen bonds from adjacent water molecules, respectively. The resulting open, cagelike structure of ice means that the solid is actually slightly less dense than the liquid, which explains why ice floats on water rather than sinks.

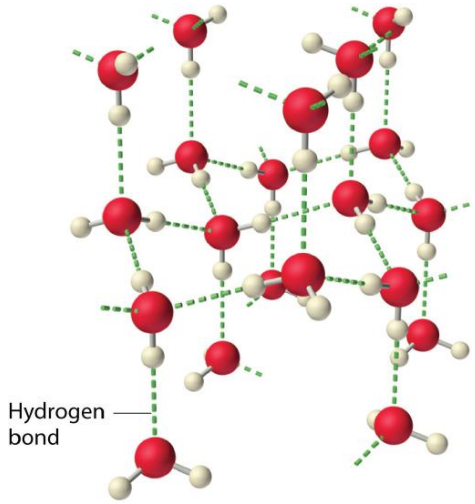


Figure **2.2.6**: The Hydrogen-Bonded Structure of Ice.

Each water molecule accepts two hydrogen bonds from two other water molecules and donates two hydrogen atoms to form hydrogen bonds with two more water molecules, producing an open, cagelike structure. The structure of liquid water is very similar, but in the liquid, the hydrogen bonds are continually broken and formed because of rapid molecular motion.

> *Hydrogen bond formation requires both a hydrogen bond donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor.*

Because ice is less dense than liquid water, rivers, lakes, and oceans freeze from the top down. In fact, the ice forms a protective surface layer that insulates the rest of the water, allowing fish and other organisms to survive in the lower levels of a frozen lake or sea. If ice were denser than the liquid, the ice formed at the surface in cold weather would sink as fast as it formed. Bodies of water would freeze from the bottom up, which would be lethal for most aquatic creatures. The expansion of water when freezing also explains why automobile or boat engines must be protected by “antifreeze” and why unprotected pipes in houses break if they are allowed to freeze.

Example

Considering CH_3OH, C_2H_6, Xe, and $(CH_3)_3N$, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Given: compounds

Asked for: formation of hydrogen bonds and structure

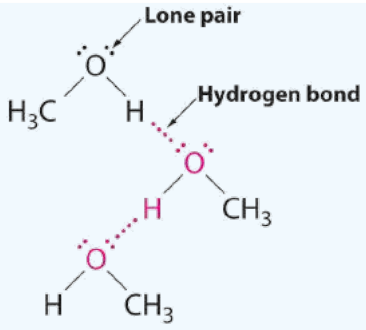
Strategy:

A. Identify the compounds with a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F. These are likely to be able to act as hydrogen bond donors.
B. Of the compounds that can act as hydrogen bond donors, identify those that also contain lone pairs of electrons, which allow them to be hydrogen bond acceptors. If a substance is both a hydrogen donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor, draw a structure showing the hydrogen bonding.

Solution:

A Of the species listed, xenon (Xe), ethane (C_2H_6), and trimethylamine [$(CH_3)_3N$] do not contain a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F; hence they cannot act as hydrogen bond donors.

B The one compound that can act as a hydrogen bond donor, methanol (CH_3OH), contains both a hydrogen atom attached to O (making it a hydrogen bond donor) and two lone pairs of electrons on O (making it a hydrogen bond acceptor); methanol can thus form hydrogen bonds by acting as either a hydrogen bond donor or a hydrogen bond acceptor. The hydrogen-bonded structure of methanol is as follows:



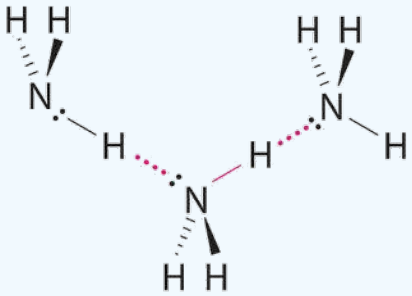
Hydrogen bonding in methanol

Exercise

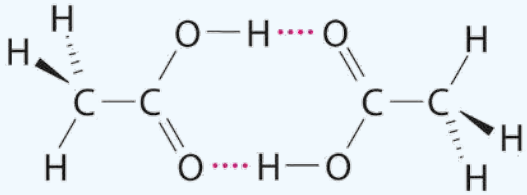
Considering CH_3CO_2H, $(CH_3)_3N$, NH_3, and CH_3F, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Answer

CH_3CO_2H and NH_3;



Hydrogen bonding in ammonia



Hydrogen bonding in acetic acid

Although hydrogen bonds are significantly weaker than covalent bonds, with typical dissociation energies of only 15–25 kJ/mol, they have a significant influence on the physical properties of a compound. Compounds such as HF can form only two hydrogen bonds at a time as can, on average, pure liquid NH_3. Consequently, even though their molecular masses are similar to that of water, their boiling points are significantly lower than the boiling point of water, which forms *four* hydrogen bonds at a time.

Example: Buckyballs

Arrange C_{60} (buckminsterfullerene, which has a cage structure), NaCl, He, Ar, and N_2O in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Identify the intermolecular forces in each compound and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

Electrostatic interactions are strongest for an ionic compound, so we expect NaCl to have the highest boiling point. To predict the relative boiling points of the other compounds, we must consider their polarity (for dipole–dipole interactions), their ability to form hydrogen bonds, and their molar mass (for London dispersion forces). Helium is nonpolar and by far the lightest, so it should have the lowest boiling point. Argon and N_2O have very similar molar masses (40 and 44 g/mol, respectively), but N_2O is polar while Ar is not. Consequently, N_2O should have a higher boiling point. A C_{60} molecule is nonpolar, but its molar mass

is 720 g/mol, much greater than that of Ar or N_2O. Because the boiling points of nonpolar substances increase rapidly with molecular mass, C_{60} should boil at a higher temperature than the other nonionic substances. The predicted order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses:

$$\text{He } (-269°C) < \text{Ar } (-185.7°C) < N_2O\ (-88.5°C) < C_{60}\ (>280°C) < \text{NaCl } (1465°C).$$

Exercise

Arrange 2,4-dimethylheptane, Ne, CS_2, Cl_2, and KBr in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer

KBr (1435°C) > 2,4-dimethylheptane (132.9°C) > CS_2 (46.6°C) > Cl_2 (−34.6°C) > Ne (−246°C)

Example

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. C_3H_8
b. CH_3OH
c. H_2S

Solution

a. Although C–H bonds are polar, they are only minimally polar. The most significant intermolecular force for this substance would be dispersion forces.

b. This molecule has an H atom bonded to an O atom, so it will experience hydrogen bonding.

c. Although this molecule does not experience hydrogen bonding, the Lewis electron dot diagram and VSEPR indicate that it is bent, so it has a permanent dipole. The most significant force in this substance is dipole-dipole interaction.

Exercise

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. HF
b. HCl

Answer a

hydrogen bonding

Answer b

dipole-dipole interactions

More complex examples of hydrogen bonding

The hydration of negative ions

When an ionic substance dissolves in water, water molecules cluster around the separated ions. This process is called hydration. Water frequently attaches to positive ions by co-ordinate (dative covalent) bonds. It bonds to negative ions using hydrogen bonds.

> *If you are interested in the bonding in hydrated positive ions, you could follow this link to co-ordinate (dative covalent) bonding.*

The diagram shows the potential hydrogen bonds formed to a chloride ion, Cl-. Although the lone pairs in the chloride ion are at the 3-level and would not normally be active enough to form hydrogen bonds, in this case they are made more attractive by the full negative charge on the chlorine.

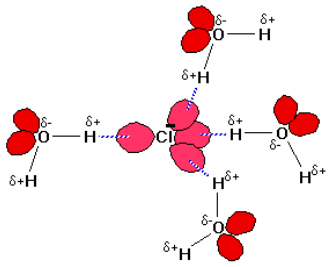


Figure 5: Hydrogen bonding between chloride ions and water.

However complicated the negative ion, there will always be lone pairs that the hydrogen atoms from the water molecules can hydrogen bond to.

Hydrogen bonding in alcohols

An alcohol is an organic molecule containing an -OH group. Any molecule which has a hydrogen atom attached directly to an oxygen or a nitrogen is capable of hydrogen bonding. Such molecules will always have higher boiling points than similarly sized molecules which don't have an -O-H or an -N-H group. The hydrogen bonding makes the molecules "stickier", and more heat is necessary to separate them.

Ethanol, CH_3CH_2OH, and methoxymethane, CH_3OCH_3, are structural isomers with the same molecular formula, C_2H_6O.

ethanol CH_3CH_2OH 

methoxymethane CH_3OCH_3 

They have the same number of electrons, and a similar length to the molecule. The van der Waals attractions (both dispersion forces and dipole-dipole attractions) in each will be much the same. However, ethanol has a hydrogen atom attached directly to an oxygen - and that oxygen still has exactly the same two lone pairs as in a water molecule. Hydrogen bonding can occur between ethanol molecules, although not as effectively as in water. The hydrogen bonding is limited by the fact that there is only one hydrogen in each ethanol molecule with sufficient $\delta+$ charge.

In methoxymethane, lone pairs on the oxygen are still there, but the hydrogens are not sufficiently $\delta+$ for hydrogen bonds to form. Except in some rather unusual cases, the hydrogen atom has to be attached directly to the very electronegative element for hydrogen bonding to occur. The boiling points of ethanol and methoxymethane show the dramatic effect that the hydrogen bonding has on the stickiness of the ethanol molecules:

ethanol (with hydrogen bonding)	78.5°C
methoxymethane (without hydrogen bonding)	-24.8°C

The hydrogen bonding in the ethanol has lifted its boiling point about 100°C. It is important to realize that hydrogen bonding exists in addition to van der Waals attractions. For example, all the following molecules contain the same number of electrons, and the first two are much the same length. The higher boiling point of the butan-1-ol is due to the additional hydrogen bonding.

pentane $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ B.Pt: 36.3°C

butan-1-ol $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$ B.Pt: 117°C

2-methylpropan-1-ol CH_3CHCH_2OH (with CH_3 branch) B.Pt: 108°C

Comparing the two alcohols (containing -OH groups), both boiling points are high because of the additional hydrogen bonding due to the hydrogen attached directly to the oxygen - but they are not the same. The boiling point of the 2-methylpropan-1-ol isn't as

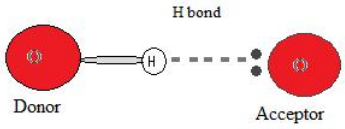
high as the butan-1-ol because the branching in the molecule makes the van der Waals attractions less effective than in the longer butan-1-ol.

Hydrogen bonding in organic molecules containing nitrogen

Hydrogen bonding also occurs in organic molecules containing N-H groups - in the same sort of way that it occurs in ammonia. Examples range from simple molecules like CH_3NH_2 (methylamine) to large molecules like proteins and DNA. The two strands of the famous double helix in DNA are held together by hydrogen bonds between hydrogen atoms attached to nitrogen on one strand, and lone pairs on another nitrogen or an oxygen on the other one.

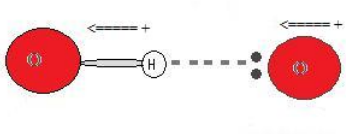
Donors and Acceptors

In order for a hydrogen bond to occur there must be both a hydrogen donor and an acceptor present. The donor in a hydrogen bond is the atom to which the hydrogen atom participating in the hydrogen bond is covalently bonded, and is usually a strongly electronegative atom such as N,O, or F. The hydrogen acceptor is the neighboring electronegative ion or molecule, and must posses a lone electron pair in order to form a hydrogen bond.



Why does a hydrogen bond occur?

Since the hydrogen donor is strongly electronegative, it pulls the covalently bonded electron pair closer to its nucleus, and away from the hydrogen atom. The hydrogen atom is then left with a partial positive charge, creating a dipole-dipole attraction between the hydrogen atom bonded to the donor, and the lone electron pair on the accepton. This results in a hydrogen bond.(see Interactions Between Molecules With Permanent Dipoles)

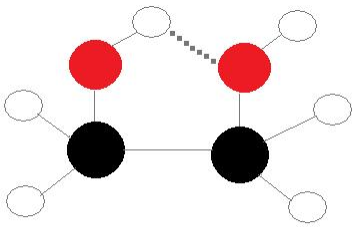


Types of hydrogen bonds

Hydrogen bonds can occur within one single molecule, between two like molecules, or between two unlike molecules.

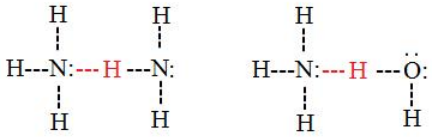
Intramolecular hydrogen bonds

Intramolecular hydrogen bonds are those which occur within one single molecule. This occurs when two functional groups of a molecule can form hydrogen bonds with each other. In order for this to happen, both a hydrogen donor an acceptor must be present within one molecule, and they must be within close proximity of each other in the molecule. For example, intramolecular hydrogen bonding occurs in ethylene glycol ($C_2H_4(OH)_2$) between its two hydroxyl groups due to the molecular geometry.


Intramolecular h-bonding in Ethylene Glycol molecule

Intermolecular hydrogen bonds

Intermolecular hydrogen bonds occur *between* separate molecules in a substance. They can occur between any number of like or unlike molecules as long as hydrogen donors and acceptors are present an in positions in which they can interact.For example, intermolecular hydrogen bonds can occur between NH_3 molecules alone, between H_2O molecules alone, or between NH_3 and H_2O molecules.



Properties and effects of hydrogen bonds

On Boiling Point

When we consider the boiling points of molecules, we usually expect molecules with larger molar masses to have higher normal boiling points than molecules with smaller molar masses. This, without taking hydrogen bonds into account, is due to greater dispersion forces (see Interactions Between Nonpolar Molecules). Larger molecules have more space for electron distribution and thus more possibilities for an instantaneous dipole moment. However, when we consider the table below, we see that this is not always the case.

Compound	Molar Mass	Normal Boiling Point
H_2O	18 g/mol	373 K
HF	20 g/mol	292.5 K
NH_3	17 g/mol	239.8 K
H_2S	34 g/mol	212.9 K
HCl	36.4 g/mol	197.9 K
PH_3	34 g/mol	185.2 K

We see that H_2O, HF, and NH_3 each have higher boiling points than the same compound formed between hydrogen and the next element moving down its respective group, indicating that the former have greater intermolecular forces. This is because H_2O, HF, and NH_3 all exhibit hydrogen bonding, whereas the others do not. Furthermore, H_2O has a smaller molar mass than HF but partakes in more hydrogen bonds per molecule, so its boiling point is consequently higher.

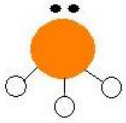
On Viscosity

The same effect that is seen on boiling point as a result of hydrogen bonding can also be observed in the viscosity of certain substances. Those substances which are capable of forming hydrogen bonds tend to have a higher viscosity than those that do not. Substances which have the possibility for multiple hydrogen bonds exhibit even higher viscosities.

Factors preventing Hydrogen bonding

Electronegativity

Hydrogen bonding cannot occur without significant electronegativity differences between hydrogen and the atom it is bonded to. Thus, we see molecules such as PH3, which no not partake in hydrogen bonding. PH3 exhibits a trigonal pyramidal molecular geometry like that of ammmonia, but unlike NH3 it cannot hydrogen bond. This is due to the similarity in the electronegativities of phosphorous and hydrogen. Both atoms have an electronegativity of 2.1, and thus, no dipole moment occurs. This prevents the hydrogen bonding from acquiring the partial positive charge needed to hydrogen bond with the lone electron pair in another molecule. (see Polarizability)



Atom Size

The size of donors and acceptors can also effect the ability to hydrogen bond. This can account for the relatively low ability of Cl to form hydrogen bonds. When the radii of two atoms differ greatly or are large, their nuclei cannot achieve close proximity when they interact, resulting in a weak interaction.

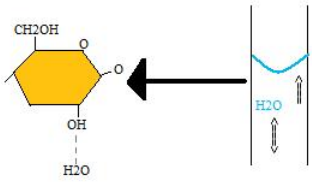


Hydrogen Bonding in Nature

Hydrogen bonding plays a crucial role in many biological processes and can account for many natural phenomena such as the Unusual properties of Water. In addition to being present in water, hydrogen bonding is also important in the water transport system of plants, secondary and tertiary protein structure, and DNA base pairing.

Plants

The cohesion-adhesion theory of transport in vascular plants uses hydrogen bonding to explain many key components of water movement through the plant's xylem and other vessels. Within a vessel, water molecules hydrogen bond not only to each other, but also to the cellulose chain which comprises the wall of plant cells. This creates a sort of capillary tube which allows for capillary action to occur since the vessel is relatively small. This mechanism allows plants to pull water up into their roots. Furthermore,hydrogen bonding can create a long chain of water molecules which can overcome the force of gravity and travel up to the high altitudes of leaves.



Proteins

Hydrogen bonding is present abundantly in the secondary structure of proteins, and also sparingly in tertiary conformation. The secondary structure of a protein involves interactions (mainly hydrogen bonds) between neighboring polypeptide backbones which contain Nitrogen-Hydrogen bonded pairs and oxygen atoms. Since both N and O are strongly electronegative, the hydrogen atoms bonded to nitrogen in one polypeptide backbone can hydrogen bond to the oxygen atoms in another chain and visa-versa. Though they are relatively weak,these bonds offer great stability to secondary protein structure because they repeat a great number of times.

In tertiary protein structure,interactions are primarily between functional R groups of a polypeptide chain; one such interaction is called a hydrophobic interaction. These interactions occur because of hydrogen bonding between water molecules around the hydrophobe and further reinforce conformation.

References

1. Chang, Raymond. General Chemistry:The Essential Concepts. 3rd ed. New York: Mcgraw Hill, 2003
2. Petrucci, et al. General Chemistry: Principles & Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Pearson/Prentice Hall, 2007.

Contributors

- Jose Pietri

2.2: Intermolecular Forces (IMFs) - Review is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

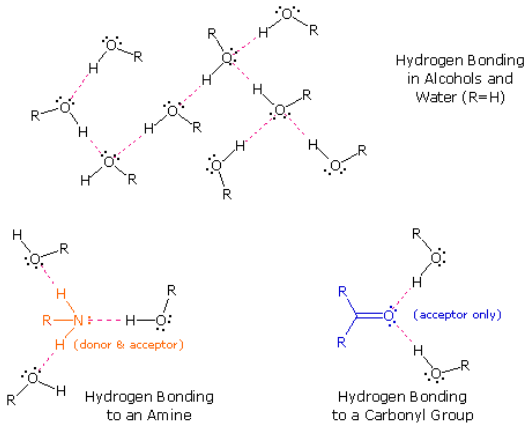
2.3: Organic Functional Groups- H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors

Learning Objective

- distinguish between organic compounds that are H-bond donors versus H-bond acceptors

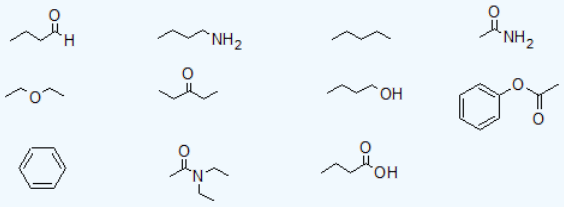
H-bond donors vs H-bond acceptors

Compounds with H-bonding as their dominant intermolecular force (IMF) are BOTH H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors. They are H-bond donors because they have a highly polar hydrogen atom bonded to a strongly electronegative atom, primarily nitrogen, oxygen, or fluorine (NOF). Because there is an equivalent partial negative charge on the atom bonded to hydrogen (mostly NOF), this atom can accept H-bonds from another atoms. Since H-bond donors are ALWAYS H-bond acceptors, we simplify communication to "H-bond donor". There are two H-bonding interactions for H-bond donors. The strongly electronegative elements (primarily nitrogen, oxygen, and fluorine) will always form a relatively large partial negative charge when bonded with carbon. These elements can accept H-bonds when they are part of the organic molecule. In this situation, there is only one H-bonding interaction. The diagram below illustrates the similarities and differences between H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors. Water and alcohols may serve as both donors and acceptors, whereas ethers, aldehydes, ketones and esters can function only as acceptors. Similarly, primary and secondary amines are both donors and acceptors, but tertiary amines function only as acceptors.



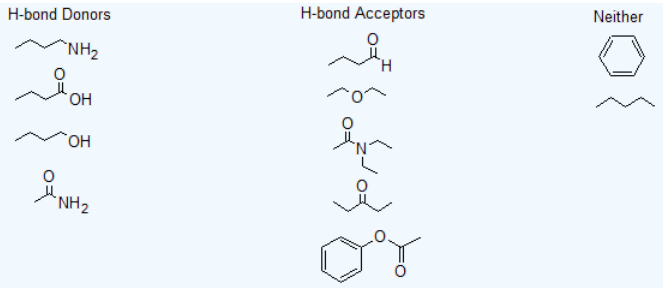
Exercise

1. Classify the compounds below as H-bond donors, H-bond acceptors, or neither.



Answer

1.

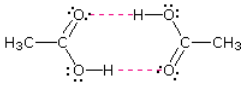


Comparing Physical Properties of H-bond Donors vs H-bond Acceptors

Once we are able to recognize compounds that can exhibit intermolecular hydrogen bonding, the relatively high boiling points they exhibit become understandable. The data in the following table serve to illustrate this point.

Compound	Formula	Mol. Wt.	Boiling Point	Melting Point
dimethyl ether	CH_3OCH_3	46	–24ºC	–138ºC
ethanol	CH_3CH_2OH	46	78ºC	–130ºC
propanol	$CH_3(CH_2)_2OH$	60	98ºC	–127ºC
diethyl ether	$(CH_3CH_2)_2O$	74	34ºC	–116ºC
propyl amine	$CH_3(CH_2)_2NH_2$	59	48ºC	–83ºC
methylaminoethane	$CH_3CH_2NHCH_3$	59	37ºC	
trimethylamine	$(CH_3)_3N$	59	3ºC	–117ºC
ethylene glycol	$HOCH_2CH_2OH$	62	197ºC	–13ºC
acetic acid	CH_3CO_2H	60	118ºC	17ºC
ethylene diamine	$H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2$	60	118ºC	8.5ºC

Alcohols boil cosiderably higher than comparably sized ethers (first two entries), and isomeric 1º, 2º & 3º-amines, respectively, show decreasing boiling points, with the two hydrogen bonding isomers being substantially higher boiling than the 3º-amine (entries 5 to 7). Also, O–H---O hydrogen bonds are clearly stronger than N–H---N hydrogen bonds, as we see by comparing propanol with the amines.



As expected, the presence of two hydrogen bonding functions in a compound raises the boiling point even further. Acetic acid (the ninth entry) is an interesting case. A dimeric species, shown on the right, held together by two hydrogen bonds is a major component of the liquid state. If this is an accurate representation of the composition of this compound then we would expect its boiling point to be equivalent to that of a $C_4H_8O_4$ compound (formula weight = 120). A suitable approximation of such a compound is found in tetramethoxymethane, $(CH_3O)_4C$, which is actually a bit larger (formula weight = 136) and has a boiling point of 114ºC. Thus, the dimeric hydrogen bonded structure appears to be a good representation of acetic acid in the condensed state.

A related principle is worth noting at this point. Although the hydrogen bond is relatively weak (*ca.* 4 to 5 kcal per mole), when several such bonds exist the resulting structure can be quite robust. The hydrogen bonds between cellulose fibers confer great strength to wood and related materials. For additional information on this subject Click Here.

2.3: Organic Functional Groups- H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.4: Intermolecular Forces and Relative Boiling Points (bp)

Learning Objective

- predict the relative boil points of organic compounds

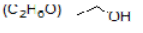
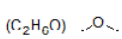
Intermolecular forces (IMFs) can be used to predict relative boiling points. The stronger the IMFs, the lower the vapor pressure of the substance and the higher the boiling point. Therefore, we can compare the relative strengths of the IMFs of the compounds to predict their relative boiling points.

H-bonding > dipole-dipole > London dispersion (van der Waals)

When comparing compounds with the same IMFs, we use size and shape as tie breakers since the London dispersion forces increase as the surface area increases. Since all compounds exhibit some level of London dispersion forces and compounds capable of H-bonding also exhibit dipole-dipole, we will use the phrase "dominant IMF" to communicate the IMF most responsible for the physical properties of the compound.

In the table below, we see examples of these relationships. When comparing the structural isomers of pentane (pentane, isopentane, and neopentane), they all have the same molecular formula C_5H_{12}. However, as the carbon chain is shortened to create the carbon branches found in isopentane and neopentane the overall surface area of the molecules decreases. The visual image of MO theory can be helpful in seeing each compound as a cloud of electrons in an all encompassing MO system. Branching creates more spherical shapes noting that the sphere allows the maximum volume with the least surface area. The structural isomers with the chemical formula C_2H_6O have different dominant IMFs. The H-bonding of ethanol results in a liquid for cocktails at room temperature, while the weaker dipole-dipole of the dimethylether results in a gas a room temperature. In the last example, we see the three IMFs compared directly to illustrate the relative strength IMFs to boiling points.

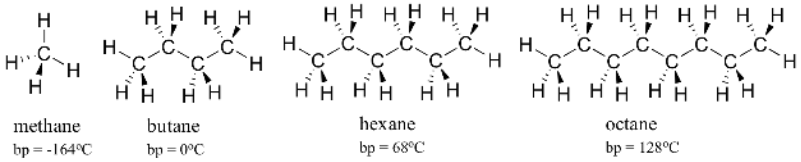
IMFs and Boiling Points

Compounds	bp	"dominant IMF"	
(C_6H_{12})	36°C	London dispersion	↑ branching ↓ surface area ↓ the London force ↓ the boiling points
(C_5H_{12}) 	28°C	London dispersion	
(C_5H_{12}) 	10°C	London dispersion	
(C_2H_6O) 	78°C	H-bonding	H-bond > dip-dip
(C_2H_6O) 	-25°C	dipole-dipole	
(methane) CH_4	-161°C	London dispersion	H-bond > dip-dip > London
(chloromethane) CH_3Cl	-24°C	dipole-dipole	
(methanol) CH_3OH	80°C	H-bonding	

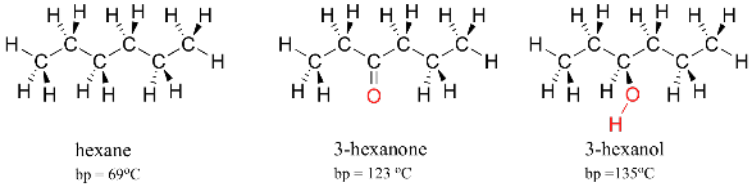
Boiling points and melting points

The observable melting and boiling points of different organic molecules provides an additional illustration of the effects of noncovalent interactions. The overarching principle involved is simple: the stronger the noncovalent interactions between molecules, the more energy that is required, in the form of heat, to break them apart. Higher melting and boiling points signify stronger noncovalent intermolecular forces.

Consider the boiling points of increasingly larger hydrocarbons. More carbons means a greater surface area possible for hydrophobic interaction, and thus higher boiling points.



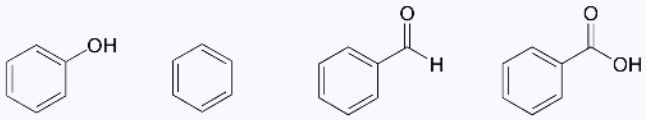
As you would expect, the strength of intermolecular hydrogen bonding and dipole-dipole interactions is reflected in higher boiling points. Just look at the trend for hexane (nonpolar London dispersion interactions only), 3-hexanone (dipole-dipole interactions), and 3-hexanol (hydrogen bonding).



Of particular interest to biologists (and pretty much anything else that is alive in the universe) is the effect of hydrogen bonding in water. Because it is able to form tight networks of intermolecular hydrogen bonds, water remains in the liquid phase at temperatures up to 100 ^{O}C, (slightly lower at high altitude). The world would obviously be a very different place if water boiled at 30 ^{O}C.

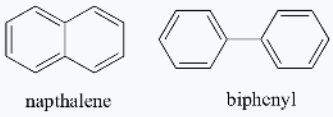
Exercise

1. Based on their structures, rank phenol, benzene, benzaldehyde, and benzoic acid in terms of lowest to highest boiling point.

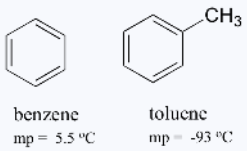


Solution

By thinking about noncovalent intermolecular interactions, we can also predict relative melting points. All of the same principles apply: stronger intermolecular interactions result in a higher melting point. Ionic compounds, as expected, usually have very high melting points due to the strength of ion-ion interactions (there are some ionic compounds, however, that are liquids at room temperature). The presence of polar and especially hydrogen-bonding groups on organic compounds generally leads to higher melting points. Molecular shape, and the ability of a molecule to pack tightly into a crystal lattice, has a very large effect on melting points. The flat shape of aromatic compounds such as napthalene and biphenyl allows them to stack together efficiently, and thus aromatics tend to have higher melting points compared to alkanes or alkenes with similar molecular weights.



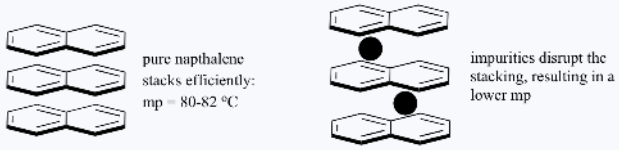
Comparing the melting points of benzene and toluene, you can see that the extra methyl group on toluene disrupts the molecule's ability to stack, thus decreasing the cumulative strength of intermolecular London dispersion forces.



Note also that the *boiling* point for toluene is 111 ^{o}C, well *above* the boiling point of benzene (80 ^{o}C). The key factor for the boiling point trend in this case is size (toluene has one more carbon), whereas for the melting point trend, shape plays a much

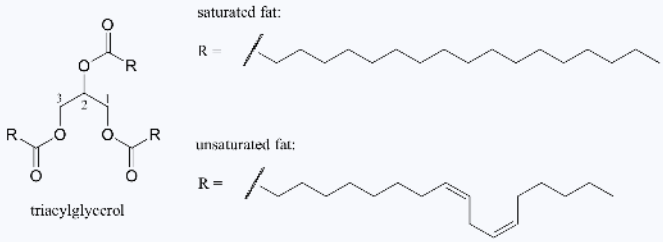
more important role. This makes sense when you consider that melting involves 'unpacking' the molecules from their ordered array, whereas boiling involves simply separating them from their already loose (liquid) association with each other.

If you are taking an organic lab course, you may have already learned that impurities in a crystalline substance will cause the observed melting point to be lower compared to a pure sample of the same substance. This is because impurities disrupt the ordered packing arrangement of the crystal, and make the cumulative intermolecular interactions weaker.



The melting behavior of lipid structures

An interesting biological example of the relationship between molecular structure and melting point is provided by the observable physical difference between animal fats like butter or lard, which are solid at room temperature, and vegetable oils, which are liquid. Both solid fats and liquid oils are based on a 'triacylglycerol' structure, where three hydrophobic hydrocarbon chains of varying length are attached to a glycerol backbone through an ester functional group (compare this structure to that of the membrane lipids discussed in section 2.4B).



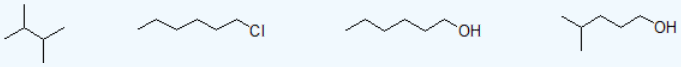
Interactive 3D image of a saturated triacylglycerol (BioTopics)

Saturated vs mono-unsaturated fatty acid (BioTopics)

In vegetable oils, the hydrophobic chains are **unsaturated**, meaning that they contain one or more double bonds. Solid animal fat, in contrast, contains **saturated** hydrocarbon chains, with no double bonds. The double bonds in vegetable oils cause those hydrocarbon chains to be more rigid, and 'bent' at an angle (remember that rotation is restricted around double bonds), with the result that they don't pack together as closely, and thus can be broken apart (*ie*. melted) more readily. Shown in the figure above is a polyunsaturated fatty acid chain (two double bonds), and you can click on the link to see interactive images of a saturated fatty acid compared to a monounsaturated fatty acid (one double bond).

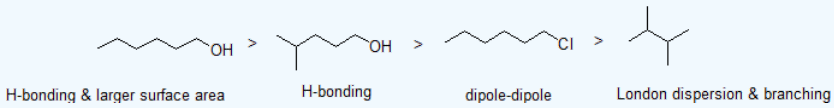
Exercise

2. Arrange the following compounds in order of decreasing boiling point.



Answer

2.



Contributors

- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

2.4: Intermolecular Forces and Relative Boiling Points (bp) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.5: Intermolecular Forces and Solubilities

Learning Objective

- predict whether a mixture of compounds will a form homogeneous or heterogeneous solution

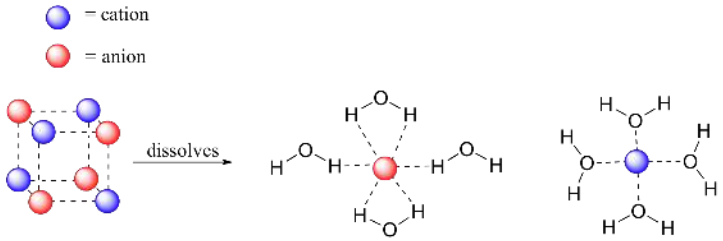
The type of intermolecular forces (IMFs) exhibited by compounds can be used to predict whether two different compounds can be mixed to form a homogeneous solution (soluble or miscible). Because organic chemistry can perform reactions in non-aqueous solutions using organic solvents. It is important to consider the solvent as a reaction parameter and the solubility of each reagent. With this said, solvent effects are secondary to the sterics and electrostatics of the reactants. Make sure that you do not drown in the solvent.

Solubility

Virtually all of the organic chemistry that you will see in this course takes place in the solution phase. In the organic laboratory, reactions are often run in nonpolar or slightly polar solvents such as toluene (methylbenzene), hexane, dichloromethane, or diethylether. In recent years, much effort has been made to adapt reaction conditions to allow for the use of 'greener' (in other words, more environmentally friendly) solvents such as water or ethanol, which are polar and capable of hydrogen bonding. In organic reactions that occur in the cytosolic region of a cell, the solvent is of course water. It is critical for any organic chemist to understand the factors which are involved in the solubility of different molecules in different solvents.

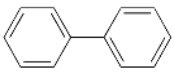
You probably remember the rule you learned in general chemistry regarding solubility: 'like dissolves like' (and even before you took any chemistry at all, you probably observed at some point in your life that oil does not mix with water). Let's revisit this old rule, and put our knowledge of covalent and noncovalent bonding to work.

Imagine that you have a flask filled with water, and a selection of substances that you will test to see how well they dissolve in the water. The first substance is table salt, or sodium chloride. As you would almost certainly predict, especially if you've ever inadvertently taken a mouthful of water while swimming in the ocean, this ionic compound dissolves readily in water. Why? Because water, as a very polar molecule, is able to form many ion-dipole interactions with both the sodium cation and the chloride anion, the energy from which is more than enough to make up for energy required to break up the ion-ion interactions in the salt crystal and some water-water hydrogen bonds.



The end result, then, is that in place of sodium chloride crystals, we have individual sodium cations and chloride anions surrounded by water molecules – the salt is now *in solution*. Charged species as a rule dissolve readily in water: in other words, they are very **hydrophilic** (water-loving).

Now, we'll try a compound called biphenyl, which, like sodium chloride, is a colorless crystalline substance (the two compounds are readily distinguishable by sight, however – the crystals look quite different).

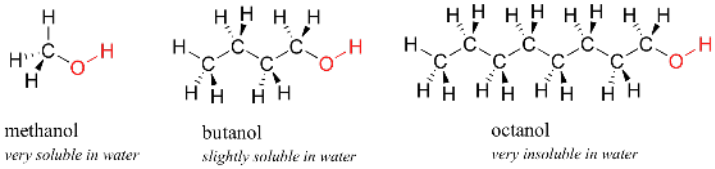


biphenyl

Biphenyl does not dissolve at all in water. Why is this? Because it is a very non-polar molecule, with only carbon-carbon and carbon-hydrogen bonds. It is able to bond to itself very well through nonpolar (London dispersion) interactions, but it is not able to form significant attractive interactions with the very polar solvent molecules. Thus, the energetic cost of breaking up the biphenyl-

to-biphenyl interactions in the solid is high, and very little is gained in terms of new biphenyl-water interactions. Water is a terrible solvent for nonpolar hydrocarbon molecules: they are very **hydrophobic** ('water-fearing').

Next, you try a series of increasingly large alcohol compounds, starting with methanol (1 carbon) and ending with octanol (8 carbons).



methanol
very soluble in water

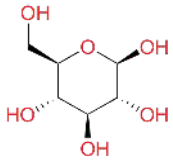
butanol
slightly soluble in water

octanol
very insoluble in water

You find that the smaller alcohols - methanol, ethanol, and propanol - dissolve easily in water. This is because the water is able to form hydrogen bonds with the hydroxyl group in these molecules, and the combined energy of formation of these water-alcohol hydrogen bonds is more than enough to make up for the energy that is lost when the alcohol-alcohol hydrogen bonds are broken up. When you try butanol, however, you begin to notice that, as you add more and more to the water, it starts to form its own layer on top of the water.

The longer-chain alcohols - pentanol, hexanol, heptanol, and octanol - are increasingly non-soluble. What is happening here? Clearly, the same favorable water-alcohol hydrogen bonds are still possible with these larger alcohols. The difference, of course, is that the larger alcohols have larger nonpolar, hydrophobic regions in addition to their hydrophilic hydroxyl group. At about four or five carbons, the hydrophobic effect begins to overcome the hydrophilic effect, and water solubility is lost.

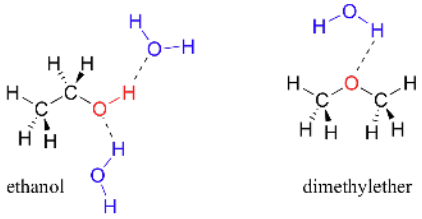
Now, try dissolving glucose in the water – even though it has six carbons just like hexanol, it also has five hydrogen-bonding, hydrophilic hydroxyl groups in addition to a sixth oxygen that is capable of being a hydrogen bond acceptor.



glucose

We have tipped the scales to the hydrophilic side, and we find that glucose is quite soluble in water.

We saw that ethanol was very water-soluble (if it were not, drinking beer or vodka would be rather inconvenient!) How about dimethyl ether, which is a constitutional isomer of ethanol but with an ether rather than an alcohol functional group? We find that diethyl ether is much less soluble in water. Is it capable of forming hydrogen bonds with water? Yes, in fact, it is –the ether oxygen can act as a hydrogen-bond acceptor. The difference between the ether group and the alcohol group, however, is that the alcohol group is both a hydrogen bond donor *and* acceptor.

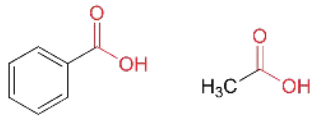


ethanol

dimethylether

The result is that the alcohol is able to form more energetically favorable interactions with the solvent compared to the ether, and the alcohol is therefore more soluble.

Here is another easy experiment that can be done (with proper supervision) in an organic laboratory. Try dissolving benzoic acid crystals in room temperature water – you'll find that it is not soluble. As we will learn when we study acid-base chemistry in a later chapter, carboxylic acids such as benzoic acid are relatively weak acids, and thus exist mostly in the acidic (protonated) form when added to pure water.

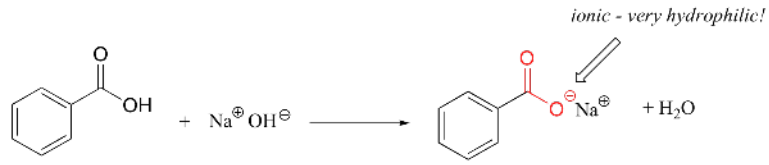


benzoic acid
insoluble in water

acetic acid
soluble in water

Acetic acid, however, is quite soluble. This is easy to explain using the small alcohol vs large alcohol argument: the hydrogen-bonding, hydrophilic effect of the carboxylic acid group is powerful enough to overcome the hydrophobic effect of a single methyl group on acetic acid, but not the larger hydrophobic effect of the 6-carbon benzene group on benzoic acid.

Now, try slowly adding some aqueous sodium hydroxide to the flask containing undissolved benzoic acid. As the solvent becomes more and more basic, the benzoic acid begins to dissolve, until it is completely in solution.



benzoic acid
insoluble in water

sodium benzoate
soluble in water

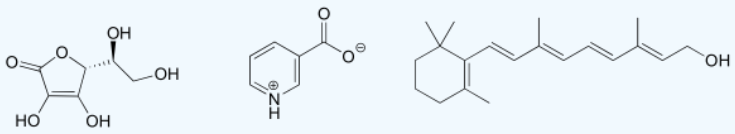
What is happening here is that the benzoic acid is being converted to its conjugate base, benzoate. The *neutral* carboxylic acid group was not hydrophilic enough to make up for the hydrophobic benzene ring, but the carboxylate group, with its *full negative charge*, is much more hydrophilic. Now, the balance is tipped in favor of water solubility, as the powerfully hydrophilic anion part of the molecule drags the hydrophobic part, kicking and screaming, (if a benzene ring can kick and scream) into solution. If you want to precipitate the benzoic acid back out of solution, you can simply add enough hydrochloric acid to neutralize the solution and reprotonate the carboxylate.

If you are taking a lab component of your organic chemistry course, you will probably do at least one experiment in which you will use this phenomenon to separate an organic acid like benzoic acid from a hydrocarbon compound like biphenyl.

Similar arguments can be made to rationalize the solubility of different organic compounds in nonpolar or slightly polar solvents. In general, the greater the content of charged and polar groups in a molecule, the less soluble it tends to be in solvents such as hexane. The ionic and very hydrophilic sodium chloride, for example, is not at all soluble in hexane solvent, while the hydrophobic biphenyl is very soluble in hexane.

Exercise

1. Vitamins can be classified as water-soluble or fat-soluble (consider fat to be a very non-polar, hydrophobic 'solvent'. Decide on a classification for each of the vitamins shown below.



Vitamin C
(ascorbic acid)

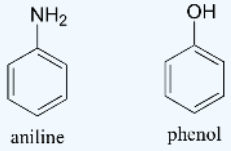
Vitamin B_3
(niacin)

Vitamin A
(retinol)

Solutions

Exercise

2. Both aniline and phenol are insoluble in pure water. Predict the solubility of these two compounds in 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid, and explain your reasoning. Hint – in this context, aniline is basic, phenol is not!

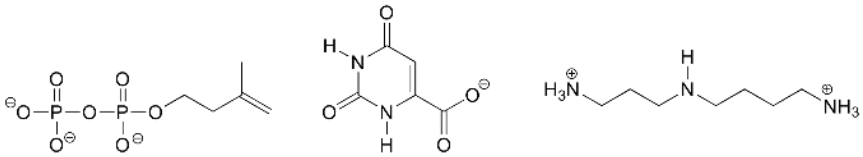


aniline phenol

Solutions

Illustrations of solubility concepts: metabolic intermediates, lipid bilayer membranes, soaps and detergents

Because water is the biological solvent, most biological organic molecules, in order to maintain water-solubility, contain one or more charged functional groups. These are most often phosphate, ammonium or carboxylate, all of which are charged when dissolved in an aqueous solution buffered to pH 7.



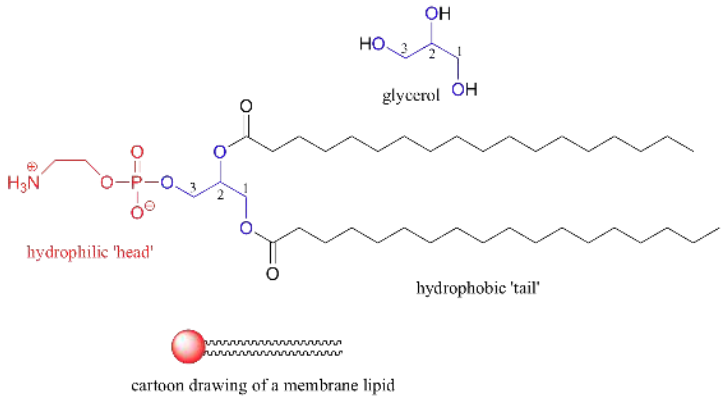
ispentenyl diphosphate
an early precuror to cholesterol

orotate
a precursor to the RNA base uridine

spermidine
binds tightly to DNA in rapidly dividing cells

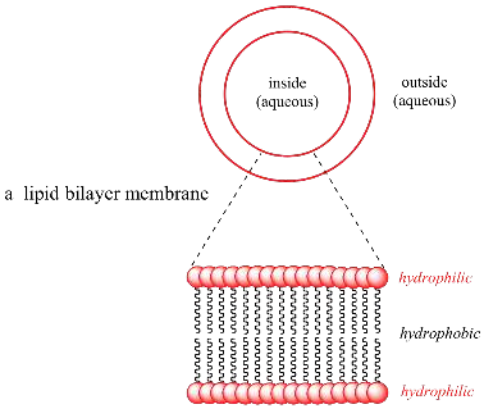
Sugars often lack charged groups, but as we discussed in our ‘thought experiment’ with glucose, they are quite water-soluble due to the presence of multiple hydroxyl groups.

Some biomolecules, in contrast, contain distinctly nonpolar, hydrophobic components. The ‘lipid bilayer’ membranes of cells and subcellular organelles serve to enclose volumes of water and myriad biomolecules in solution. The lipid (fat) molecules that make up membranes are **amphipathic**: they have a charged, hydrophilic ‘head’ and a hydrophobic hydrocarbon ‘tail’.



interactive 3D image of a membrane phospholipid *(BioTopics)*

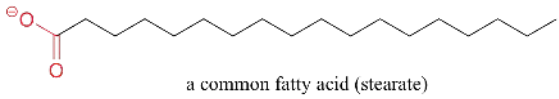
Notice that the entire molecule is built on a ‘backbone’ of glycerol, a simple 3-carbon molecule with three alcohol groups. In a biological membrane structure, lipid molecules are arranged in a spherical bilayer: hydrophobic tails point inward and bind together by London dispersion forces, while the hydrophilic head groups form the inner and outer surfaces in contact with water.



Interactive 3D Image of a lipid bilayer *(BioTopics)*

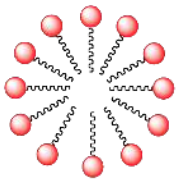
Because the interior of the bilayer is extremely hydrophobic, biomolecules (which as we know are generally charged species) are not able to diffuse through the membrane– they are simply not soluble in the hydrophobic interior. The transport of molecules across the membrane of a cell or organelle can therefore be accomplished in a controlled and specific manner by special transmembrane transport proteins, a fascinating topic that you will learn more about if you take a class in biochemistry.

A similar principle is the basis for the action of soaps and detergents. Soaps are composed of fatty acids, which are long (typically 18-carbon), hydrophobic hydrocarbon chains with a (charged) carboxylate group on one end,



a common fatty acid (stearate)

Fatty acids are derived from animal and vegetable fats and oils. In aqueous solution, the fatty acid molecules in soaps will spontaneously form **micelles**, a spherical structure that allows the hydrophobic tails to avoid contact with water and simultaneously form favorable London dispersion contacts.

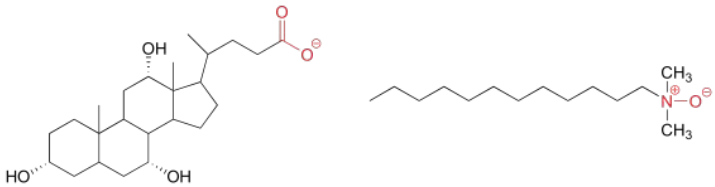


micelle

Interactive 3D images of a fatty acid soap molecule and a soap micelle (Edutopics)

Because the outside of the micelle is charged and hydrophilic, the structure as a whole is soluble in water. Micelles will form spontaneously around small particles of oil that normally would not dissolve in water (like that greasy spot on your shirt from the pepperoni slice that fell off your pizza), and will carry the particle away with it into solution. We will learn more about the chemistry of soap-making in a later chapter (section 12.4B).

Synthetic detergents are non-natural amphipathic molecules that work by the same principle as that described for soaps.



synthetic detergents

2.5: Intermolecular Forces and Solubilities is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Representations of Organic Molecules

3.1: Structural Formulas - Lewis, Kekule, Bond-line, Condensed, and Perspective

3.2: Isomerism Introduction

3.3: Resonance

3.4: Organic Functional Groups

3: Representations of Organic Molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.1: Structural Formulas - Lewis, Kekule, Bond-line, Condensed, and Perspective

Learning Objective

Draw, interpret, and convert between Lewis (Kekule), Condensed, and Bond-line Structures

Note: The review of general chemistry in sections 1.3 - 1.6 is integrated into the above Learning Objective for organic chemistry in sections 1.7 and 1.8.

Shorthand notations to represent organic molecules rely on our knowledge of common neutral bonding patterns. Knowing these patterns, we can fill in the missing structural information. Some of these shorthand ways of drawing molecules give us insight into the bond angles and relative positions of atoms in the molecule, while some notations eliminate the carbon and hydrogen atoms and only indicate the heteroatoms (the atoms that are NOT carbon or hydrogen).

There are three primary methods to communicate chemical structure of organic molecules:

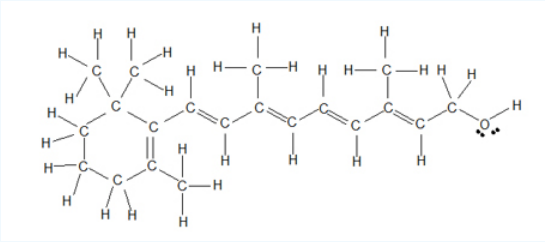
Kekule: Lewis structures using lines to represent covalent bonds and showing all atoms and lone pair electrons

Bond-line (Skeletl-line): shows bonds between carbon atoms and heteroatoms) (with lone pair electrons when requested)

Condensed: all atoms are written to communicate structure without drawing any chemical bonds based on the carbon backbone

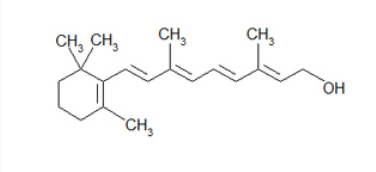
Introduction

Observe the following drawings of the structure of Retinol, the most common form of vitamin A. The first drawing follows the straight-line (a.k.a. Kekulé) structure which is helpful when you want to look at every single atom; however, showing all of the hydrogen atoms makes it difficult to compare the overall structure with other similar molecules and makes it difficult to focus in on the double bonds and OH group.



Retinol: Kekulé straight-line drawing

The following is a bond-line (a.k.a. zig-zag) formula for retinol. With this simiplified representation, one can easily see the carbon-carbon bonds, double bonds, OH group, and CH_3 groups sticking off of the the main ring and chain. Also, it is much quicker to draw this than the one above. You will learn to appreciate this type of formula writing after drawing a countless number of organic molecules.



Retinol: Bond-line or zig-zag formula

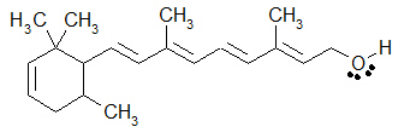
Importance of Structure

Learning and practicing the basics of Organic Chemistry will help you immensely in the long run as you learn new concepts and reactions. Some people say that Organic Chemistry is like another language, and in some aspects, it is. At first it may seem difficult or overwhelming, but the more you practice looking at and drawing organic molecules, the more familiar you will

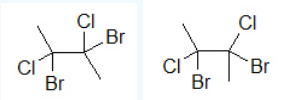
become with the structures and formulas. Another good idea is to get a model kit and physically make the molecules that you have trouble picturing in your head.

Through general chemistry, you may have already experienced looking at molecular structure. The different ways to draw organic molecules include Kekulé (straight-line), Condensed Formulas, and Bond-Line Formulas (zig-zag). It will be more helpful if you become comfortable going from one style of drawing to another, and look at drawings and understanding what they mean, than knowing which kind of drawing is named what.

An example of a drawing that incorporates all three ways to draw organic molecules would be the following additional drawing of Retinol. The majority of the drawing is Bond-line (zig-zag) formula, but the -CH_3 are written as condensed formulas, and the -OH group is written in Kekulé form.

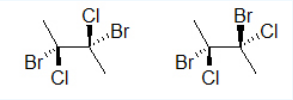


A widely used way of showing the 3D structure of molecules is the use of dashes, wedges, and straight lines. This drawing method is essential because the placement of different atoms could yield different molecules even if the molecular formulas were exactly the same. Below are two drawings of a 4-carbon molecule with two chlorines and two bromines attached.

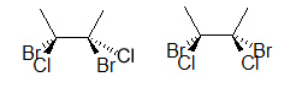


4-carbon molecule with 2 chlorines and 2 bromines 4-carbon molecule with 2 chlorines and 2 bromines

Both drawings look like they represent the same molecule; however, if we add dashes and wedged we will see that two different molecules could be depicted:



The two molecules above are different, prove this to yourself by building a model. An easier way to compare the two molecules is to rotate one of the bonds (here, it is the bond on the right):

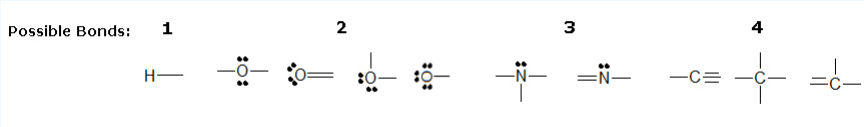


Notice how the molecule on the right has both bromines on the same side and chlorines on the same side, whereas the first molecule is different. Read about Dashed-Wedged Line structures, bottom of page, to understand what has been introduced above. You will learn more about the importance of atomic connectivity in molecules as you continue on to learn about Stereochemistry.

Drawing the Structure of Organic Molecules

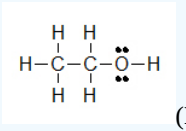
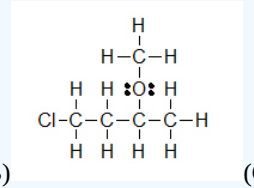
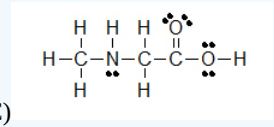
Although larger molecules may look complicated, they can be easily understood by breaking them down and looking at their smaller components.

All atoms want to have their valence shell full, a "closed shell." Hydrogen wants to have 2 e^- whereas carbon, oxygen, and nitrogen want to have 8 e^-. When looking at the different representations of molecules, keep in mind the Octet Rule. Also remember that hydrogen can bond one time, oxygen can bond up to two times, nitrogen can bond up to three times, and carbon can bond up to four times.



Kekulé (a.k.a. Lewis Structures)

Kekulé structures are similar to Lewis Structures, but instead of covalent bonds being represented by electron dots, the two shared electrons are shown by a line.

(A)  (B)  (C) 

Lone pairs remain as two electron dots, or are sometimes left out even though they are *still there*. Notice how the three lone pairs of electrons were not draw in around chlorine in example B.

Condensed Formulas

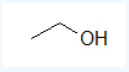
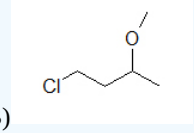
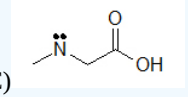
A condensed formula is made up of the elemental symbols. The order of the atoms suggests the connectivity. Condensed formulas can be read from either direction and H_3C is the same as CH_3, although the latter is more common because Look at the examples below and match them with their identical molecule under Kekulé structures and bond-line formulas.

(A) CH_3CH_2OH (B) $ClCH_2CH_2CH(OCH_3)CH_3$ (C) H_3CNHCH_2COOH

Let's look closely at example B. As you go through a condensed formula, you want to focus on the carbons and other elements that aren't hydrogen. The hydrogen's are important, but are usually there to complete octets. Also, notice the $-OCH_3$ is in written in parentheses which tell you that it not part of the main chain of carbons. As you read through a a condensed formula, if you reach an atom that doesn't have a complete octet by the time you reach the next hydrogen, then it's possible that there are double or triple bonds. In example C, the carbon is double bonded to oxygen and single bonded to another oxygen. Notice how COOH means C(=O)-O-H instead of CH_3-C-O-O-H because carbon does not have a complete octet and oxygens.

Bond-Line (a.k.a. zig-zag) Formulas

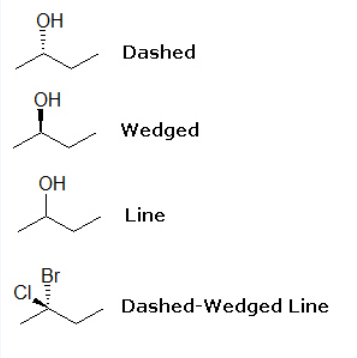
The name gives away how this formula works. This formula is full of bonds and lines, and because of the typical (more stable) bonds that atoms tend to make in molecules, they often end up looking like zig-zag lines. If you work with a molecular model kit you will find it difficult to make stick straight molecules (unless they contain sp triple bonds) whereas zig-zag molecules and bonds are much more feasible.

(A)  (B)  (C) 

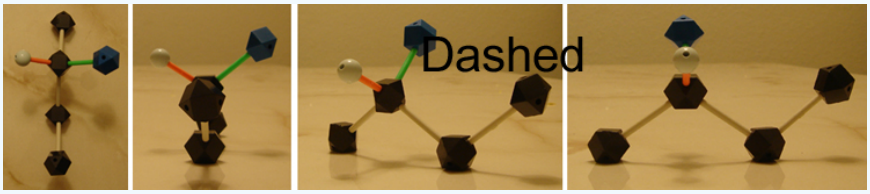
These molecules correspond to the exact same molecules depicted for Kekulé structures and condensed formulas. Notice how the carbons are no longer drawn in and are replaced by the ends and bends of a lines. In addition, the hydrogens have been omitted, but could be easily drawn in (see practice problems). Although we do not usually draw in the H's that are bonded to carbon, we do draw them in if they are connected to other atoms besides carbon (example is the OH group above in example A) . This is done because it is not always clear if the non-carbon atom is surrounded by lone pairs or hydrogens. Also in example A, notice how the OH is drawn with a bond to the second carbon, but it does not mean that there is a third carbon at the end of that bond/ line.

Dashed-Wedged Line Structure

As you may have guessed, the Dashed-Wedged Line structure is all about lines, dashes, and wedges. At first it may seem confusing, but with practice, understanding dash-wedged line structures will become like second nature. The following are examples of each, and how they can be used together.

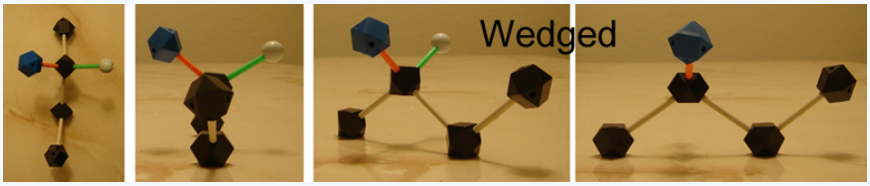


Above are 4-carbon chains with attached OH groups or Cl and Br atoms. Remember that each line represents a bond and that the carbons and hydrogens have been omitted. When you look at or draw these structures, the straight lines illustrate atoms and bonds that are in the same plane, the plane of the paper (in this case, computer screen). **Dashed lines** show atoms and bonds that go into the page, behind the plane, away from you. In the above example, the OH group is going into the plane, while at the same time a hydrogen comes out (wedged).



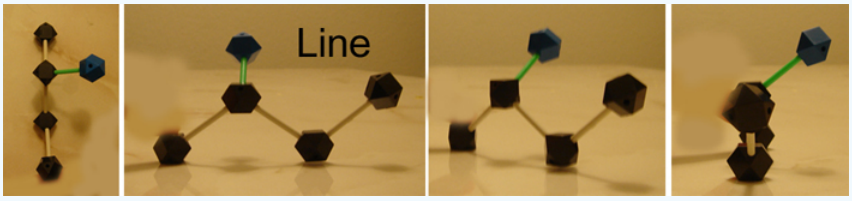
Blue bead= OH group; White bead=H

Wedged lines illustrate bonds and atoms that come out of the page, in front of the plane, toward you. In the 2D diagram above, the OH group is coming out of the plane of the paper, while a hydrogen goes in (dashed).



Blue bead= OH group; White bead=H

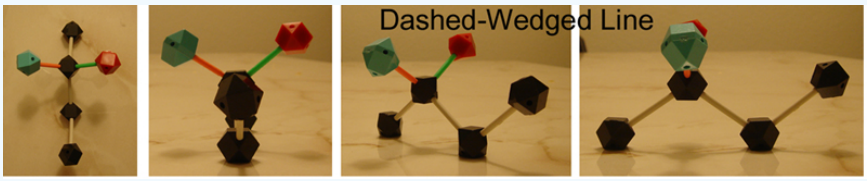
As stated before, straight lines illustrate atoms and bonds that are in the same plane as the paper, but in the 2D example, the straight line bond for OH means that it it unsure or irrelevant whether OH is going away or toward you. It is also assumed that hydrogen is also connected to the same carbon that OH is on.



Blue bead= OH group; H is not shown

Try using your model kit to see that the OH group cannot lie in the same plane at the carbon chain (don't forget your hydrogens!). In the final 2Dexample, both dashed and wedged lines are used because the attached atoms are not hydrogens

(although dashed and wedged lines *can* be used for hydrogens).The chlorine is coming out the page while bromine is going into the page.



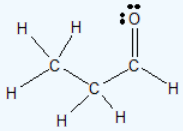
Blue bead=Cl; Red bead=Br

Example: Converting between Structural Formulas

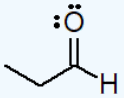
Throughout the course, it will be helpful to convert compounds into different structural formulas (Kekule (Lewis Structures), Bond-line, and Condensed) depending on the type of question that is asked. Standardized exams frequently include a high percentage of condensed formulas because it is easier and cheaper to type letters and numbers than to import figures. Initially, it can be tricky writing a bond-line structure directly from a condensed formula. First write the Kekule structure from the condensed formula and then draw the bond-line structure from the Kekule. Practice will quickly allow you to convert directly between condensed and bond-line structures.

The condensed formula for propanal is CH_3CH_2CHO. Can you visualize the bond-line structure of propanal? If yes, excellent, If no, the following practice will help.

The Kekule structure for propanal is shown below.

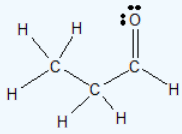


The bond-line structure for propanal is shown below.

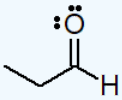


All three structures represent the same compound, propanal.

CH_3CH_2CHO =

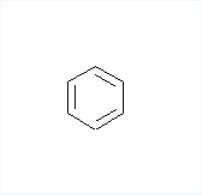


=

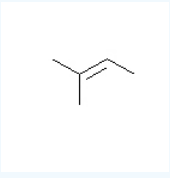


Exercises

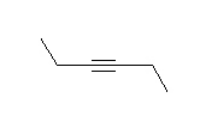
1. How many carbons are in the following drawing? How many hydrogens?



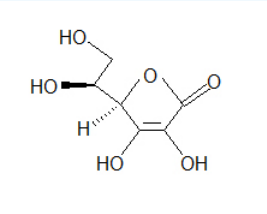
2. How many carbons are in the following drawing? How many hydrogens?



3. How many carbons are in the following drawing? How many hydrogens?



4. Look at the following molecule of vitamin A and draw in the hidden hydrogens and electron pairs.

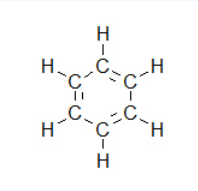


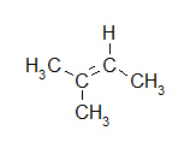
(hint: Do all of the carbons have 4 bonds? Do all the oxygens have a full octet?)

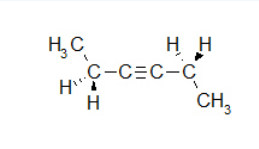
5. How many bonds can hydrogen make?
6. How many bonds can chlorine make?
7. Dashed lines means the atomic bond goes _____(away/toward) you.
8. Draw $ClCH_2CH_2CH(OCH_3)CH_3$ in Kekuléand zig-zag form.
9. Extra practice problems can be found _____?

Solutions

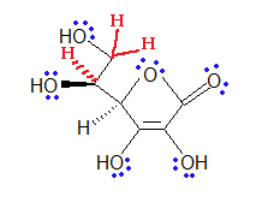
1. Remember the octet rule and how many times carbons and hydrogens are able to bond to other atoms.



2. 

3. 

4. Electron pairs drawn in blue and hydrogens draw in red.



5. Hygrogen can make one bond.
6. Chlorine can make one bond.
7. Away
8. See (B) under Kekulé and Bond-line (zig-zag) formulas.
9. Extra practice problems can be found: in your textbook, homework, lecture notes, online, reference books, and more. Try making up some of your own molecules, they may exist!

References

1. Vollhardt, K. Peter C., and Neil E. Schore. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. 5th ed. New York: W. H. Freeman Company, 2007. 38-40.
2. Klein, David R. Organic Chemistry I As a Second Language. 2nd ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, Inc, 2007. 1-14.

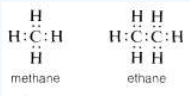
Outside Links

- Stereochemistry: en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Stereochemistry
- Retinol: http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Retinol
- Octet Rule: http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Octet_rule
- Lewis Structures: chemwiki.ucdavis.edu/index.ph...wis+structures
- sp hybrid orbitals: chemwiki.ucdavis.edu/index.ph...s&highlight=sp
- For drawing organic molecules on the computer: http://bkchem.zirael.org/download_en.html

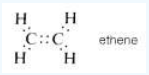
Contributors and Attributions

- Choo, Ezen (2009, UCD '11)

The building block of structural organic chemistry is the tetravalent carbon atom. With few exceptions, carbon compounds can be formulated with four covalent bonds to each carbon, regardless of whether the combination is with carbon or some other element. The two-electron bond, which is illustrated by the carbon-hydrogen bonds in methane or ethane and the carbon-carbon bond in ethane, is called a **single bond**. In these and many related substances, each carbon is attached to four other atoms:



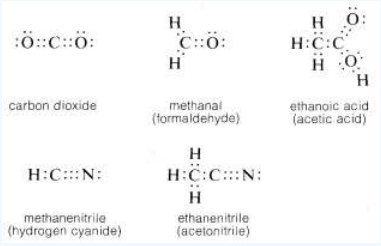
There exist, however, compounds such as ethene (ethylene), C_2H_4, in which two electrons from each of the carbon atoms are mutually shared, thereby producing *two* two-electron bonds, an arrangement which is called a **double bond**. Each carbon in ethene is attached to only three other atoms:



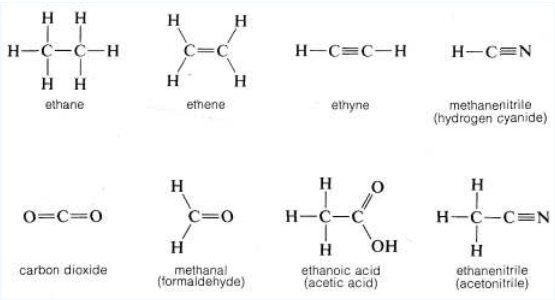
Similarly, in ethyne (acetylene), C_2H_2, three electrons from each carbon atom are mutually shared, producing *three* two-electron bonds, called a **triple bond**, in which each carbon is attached to only two other atoms:



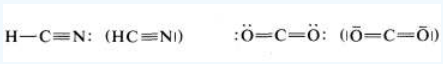
Of course, in all cases each carbon has a full octet of electrons. Carbon also forms double and triple bonds with several other elements that can exhibit a covalence of two or three. The carbon-oxygen (or carbonyl) double bond appears in carbon dioxide and many important organic compounds such as methanal (formaldehyde) and ethanoic acid (acetic acid). Similarly, a carbon-nitrogen triple bond appears in methanenitrile (hydrogen cyanide) and ethanenitrile (acetonitrile).



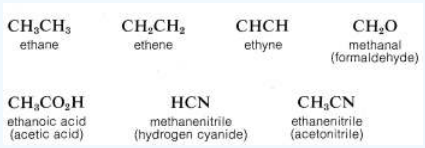
By convention, a single straight line connecting the atomic symbols is used to represent a single (two-electron) bond, two such lines to represent a double (four-electron) bond, and three lines a triple (six-electron) bond. Representations of compounds by these symbols are called **structural formulas**; some examples are



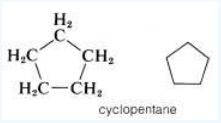
A point worth noting is that structural formulas usually do not indicate the *nonbonding* electron pairs. This is perhaps unfortunate because they play as much a part in the chemistry of organic molecules as do the bonding electrons and their omission may lead the unwary reader to overlook them. However, when it is important to represent them, this can be done best with pairs of dots, although a few authors use lines:



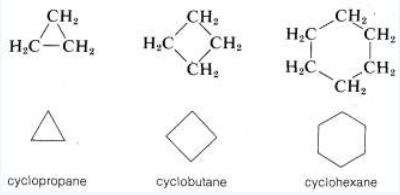
To save space and time in the representation of organic structures, it is common practice to use "condensed formulas" in which the bonds are not shown explicitly. In using condensed formulas, normal atomic valences are understood throughout. Examples of condensed formulas are



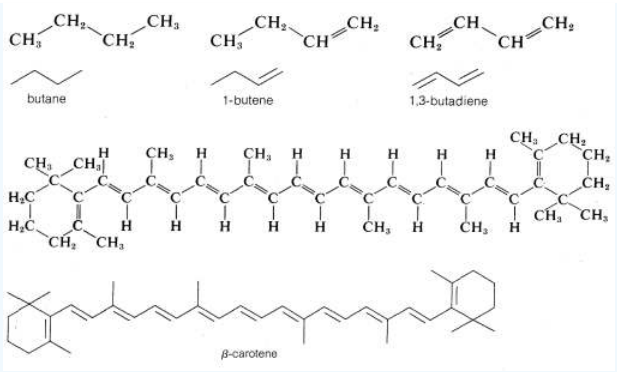
Another type of abbreviation that often is used, particularly for ring compounds, dispenses with the symbols for carbon and hydrogen atoms and leaves only the lines in a structural formula. For instance, cyclopentane, C_5H_{10}, often is represented as a regular pentagon in which it is understood that each apex represents a carbon atom with the requisite number of hydrogens to satisfy the tetravalence of carbon:



Likewise, cyclopropane, C_3H_6; cyclobutane, C_4H_8; and cyclohexane, C_6H_{12}, are drawn as regular polygons:



Although this type of line drawing is employed most commonly for cyclic structures, its use for open chain (acyclic) structures is becoming increasingly widespread. There is no special merit to this abbreviation for simple structures such as butane, C_4H_{10}; 1-butene, C_4H_8; or 1,3-butadiene, C_4H_6, but it is of value in representing more complex molecules such as β-carotene, $C_{40}H_{56}$:



Line structures also can be modified to represent the three-dimensional *shapes* of molecules, and the way that this is done will be discussed in detail in Chapter 5. At the onset of you study of organic chemistry, you should write out the formulas rather completely until you are thoroughly familiar with what these abbreviations stand for.

Contributors and Attributions

John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

3.1: Structural Formulas - Lewis, Kekule, Bond-line, Condensed, and Perspective is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.2: Isomerism Introduction

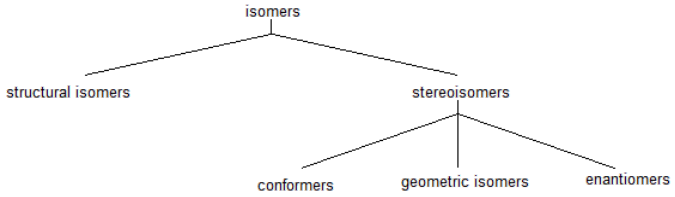
Learning Objective

- recognize the relationships between constitutional (structural) isomers, conformational isomers, and geometric isomers

Isomers

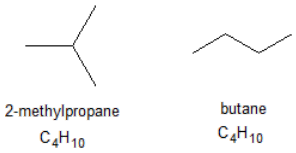
Isomers always have the same chemical formula. When the chemical formulae are different, then the compounds are completely different. Important information can be gained from the chemical formulas when comparing compounds.

Structural (constitutional) isomers have the same molecular formula but a different bonding arrangement among the atoms. Stereoisomers have identical molecular formulas and arrangements of atoms. They differ from each other only in the spatial orientation of groups in the molecule. For organic chemistry, there are several types of stereoisomers: enantiomers, diasteriomers, geometric isomers, and conformers. These stereoisomers will be introduced and explained throughout several chapters.



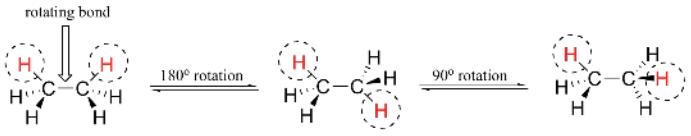
Structural (Constitutional) Isomers

Because carbon forms four bonds, there can be multiple ways to form molecules that follow the octet rule. Even with only four carbon atoms, there are two possible structures for the carbon backbone. The carbon atoms can be bonded to make a four carbon chain (butane) or there can be a one carbon branch from a three carbon chain (2-methylpropane). Butane and 2-methylpropane are structural isomers because they both have the chemical formula C_4H_{10}.



Identical vs Conformer

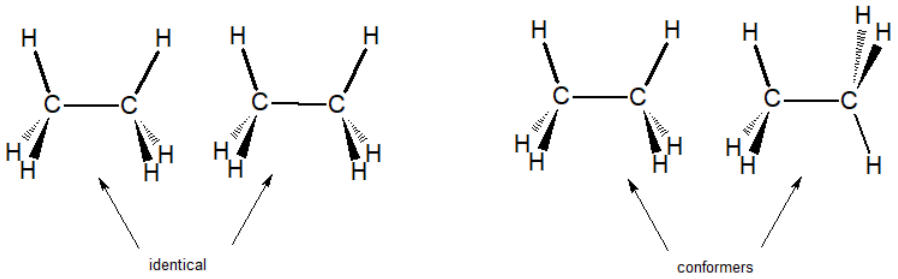
The rotation about single bonds creates dynamic molecules. When drawing and discussing molecules, it is important to be aware that our drawing are static while the molecule themselves are rotating. Although there are seven sigma bonds in the ethane molecule, rotation about the six carbon-hydrogen bonds does not result in any change in the shape of the molecule because the hydrogen atoms are essentially spherical. Rotation about the carbon-carbon bond, however, results in many different possible molecular conformations. Conformers are the simplest example of stereoisomerism.



Identical compounds are the same compound shown with ALL atoms in the same spatial orientation.

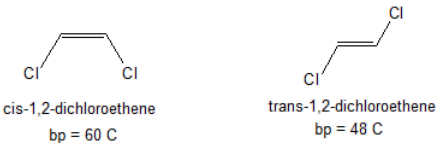
Conformers are the same compound shown with different rotations about single bonds.

In the example below, we can compare two identical structures for ethane with two conformers of ethane.

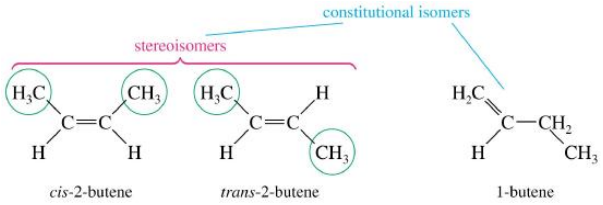


Geometric Isomers - an example of stereoisomerism

The rigidity of the pi bonds in double bonds can create geometric isomerism. Without rotation, there are two different orientations possible across the carbon-carbon double bond (C=C). The rigidity of the double bond creates a line of reference for spatial orientation. The prefixes cis and trans are used to distinguish between geometric isomers. The cis-stereoisomer has both non-hydrogen atoms on the same side of the double bond. Whereas, the trans-stereoisomer has the non-hydrogen atoms across the double bond. In the same way, we cross the ocean an a trans-Atlantic journey. This small difference may seem insignificant, but geometric isomers are different chemical compounds with different physical properties as shown in the example below.

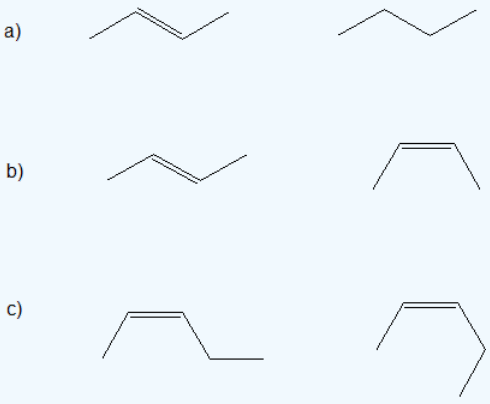


For now, it is important to distinguish between structural differences and spatial differences when comparing compounds. In the future, we will look more closely at isomerism.



Example

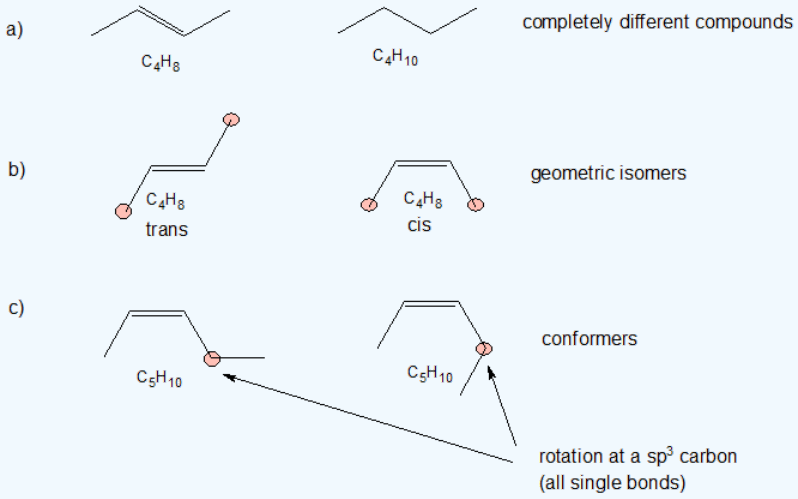
Let's look ate the bond-line structures below and determine the relationships between the following pairs of compounds: identical, conformers, structural isomers, geometric isomers, or completely different compounds.



The first important step (that is often skipped) is to determine the chemical formula of each compound. If the chemical formulas are different, then the compounds are completely different and there is NO isomeric relationship. If the chemical formulas are the same, then we identify the difference between to the compounds to determine their relatioship. If there are structural differences in the bonding patterns, then the compounds are constitutional (structural isomers). If the compounds have the same structural connections, but the spatial orientations are different, then the compounds are stereoisomers. For now,

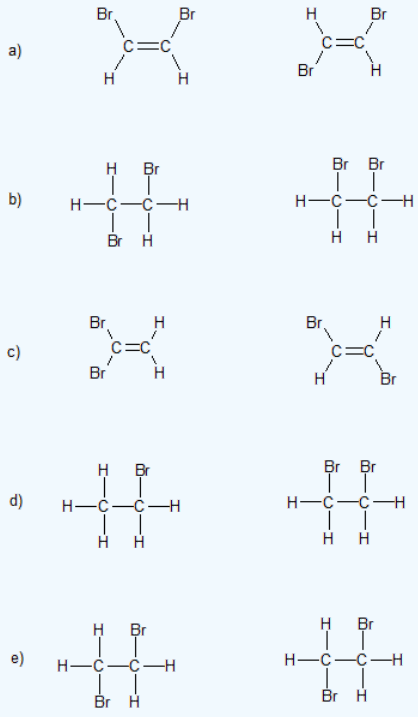
the possible stereoisomers are conformers showing the same compound with different carbon-carbon single bond rotations or geometric isomers of compounds with different orientations at the carbon-carbon double bonds.

Applying the logic above to our example, we determine the following.



Exercise

1. What is the relationship between the following pairs of compounds: identical, conformers, structural isomers, geometric isomers, or completely different compounds?



Answer

1.

a) geometric isomers

b) conformers

c) structural isomers

d) completely different compounds

e) identical

3.2: Isomerism Introduction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.3: Resonance

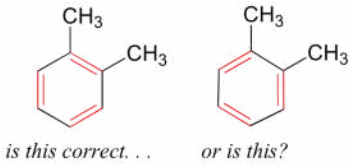
Learning Objective

- Draw resonance forms and predict the relative contribution of each resonance form to the overall structure of the compound or ion

Recognizing resonance

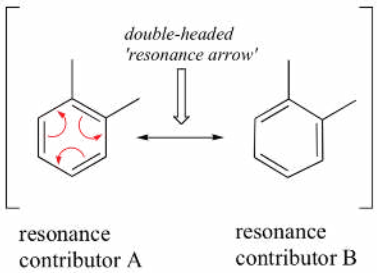
Resonance contributors involve the ‘imaginary movement’ of pi-bonded electrons or of lone-pair electrons that are adjacent to (i.e. conjugated to) pi bonds. You can never shift the location of electrons in sigma bonds – if you show a sigma bond forming or breaking, you are showing a chemical reaction taking place. Likewise, the positions of atoms in the molecule cannot change between two resonance contributors.

Because benzene will appear throughout this course, it is important to recognize the stability gained through the resonance delocalization of the six pi electrons throughout the six carbon atoms. Benzene also illustrates one way to recognize resonance - when it is possible to draw two or more equivalent Lewis strucutres. If we were to draw the structure of an aromatic molecule such as 1,2-dimethylbenzene, there are two ways that we could draw the double bonds:



Which way is correct? There are two simple answers to this question: 'both' and 'neither one'. Both ways of drawing the molecule are equally acceptable approximations of the bonding picture for the molecule, but neither one, by itself, is an accurate picture of the delocalized pi bonds. The two alternative drawings, however, *when considered together*, give a much more accurate picture than either one on its own. This is because they imply, together, that the carbon-carbon bonds are not double bonds, not single bonds, but about halfway in between.

When it is possible to draw more than one valid structure for a compound or ion, we have identified **resonance contributors**: two or more different Lewis structures depicting the same molecule or ion that, when considered together, do a better job of approximating delocalized pi-bonding than any single structure. By convention, resonance contributors are linked by a double-headed arrow, and are sometimes enclosed by brackets:

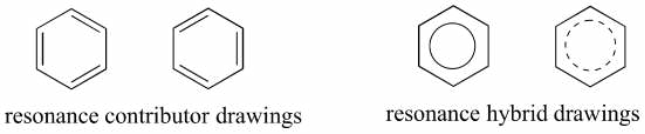


In order to make it easier to visualize the difference between two resonance contributors, small, curved arrows are often used. Each of these arrows depicts the ‘movement’ of two pi electrons. A few chapters from now when we begin to study organic reactions - a process in which electron density shifts and covalent bonds between atoms break and form - this ‘curved arrow notation’ will become extremely important in depicting electron movement. In the drawing of resonance contributors, however, this electron ‘movement’ occurs only in our minds, as we try to visualize delocalized pi bonds. Nevertheless, use of the curved arrow notation is an essential skill that you will need to develop in drawing resonance contributors.

The depiction of benzene using the two resonance contributors A and B in the figure above does *not* imply that the molecule at one moment looks like structure A, then at the next moment shifts to look like structure B. Rather, at all moments, the molecule is a combination, or **resonance hybrid** of both A and B.

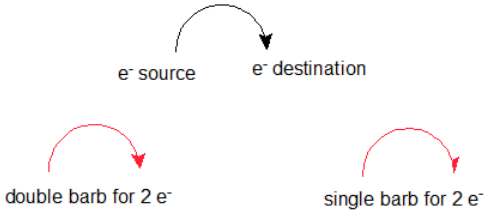
Caution! It is very important to be clear that in drawing two (or more) resonance contributors, we are not drawing two different molecules: they are simply *different depictions of the exact same molecule*. Furthermore, the double-headed resonance arrow does NOT mean that a chemical reaction has taken place.

Usually, derivatives of benzene (and phenyl groups, when the benzene ring is incorporated into a larger organic structure) are depicted with only one resonance contributor, and it is assumed that the reader understands that resonance hybridization is implied. This is the convention that will be used for the most part in this book. In other books or articles, you may sometimes see benzene or a phenyl group drawn with a circle inside the hexagon, either solid or dashed, as a way of drawing a resonance hybrid.

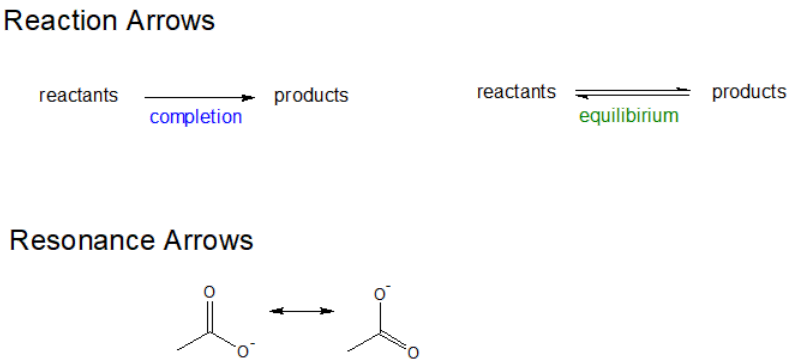


Curved arrows communicate electron flow (movement)

Curved arrows indicate electron flow. The base of the curved arrow is placed at the source of the electrons that are moving. The head of the arrow is placed at the destination of the electrons. A single barbed arrow represents one electron and a double barb represents two electrons. Electrons move from regions of relative high density to regions of low density or toward electronegative elements. It is important to use accuracy and precision when drawing curved arrows.



It is also important to consciously use the correct type of arrow. There are four primary types of arrows used by chemists to communicate one of the following: completion reaction, equilibrium reaction, electron movement, resonance forms. The three other types of arrows are shown below to build discernment between them.



Resonance Delocalizes Charge to Increase Stability

Resonance is most useful wen it delocalizes charge to stabilize reactive intermediates and products. Recognizing, drawing, and evaluating the relative stability of resonance contributors is essential to understanding organic reaction mechanisms.

Guidelines for drawing and working with resonance contributors

Learning to draw and interpret resonance structures, there are a few basic guidelines to help avoid drawing nonsensical structures. All of these guidellines make perfect sense as long as we remember that resonance contributors are merely a human-invented convention for depicting the delocalization of pi electrons in conjugated systems. When we see two different resonance contributors, we are not seeing a chemical reaction! We are seeing the exact same molecule or ion depicted in two different ways. All resonance contributors must be drawn as proper Lewis structures, with correct formal charges. Never show curved 'electron

movement' arrows that would lead to a situation where a second-row element (ie. carbon, nitrogen, or oxygen) has more than eight electrons: this would break the 'octet rule'. Sometimes, however, we will draw resonance contributors in which a carbon atom has only six electrons (ie. a carbocation). In general, all oxygen and nitrogen atoms should have a complete octet of valence electrons.

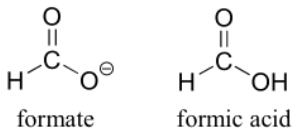
1. There is ONLY ONE STRUCTURE for each compound or ion. This structure takes its character from the sum of all the contributors, not all resonance structures contribute equally to the sum.
2. Atoms must maintain their same position.
3. Only e- move !
4. All resonance contributors for a molecule or ion must have the same net charge.
5. Recognize which electrons can participate in resonance
    a) unshared e^- pairs or radicals
    b) pi bond electrons
6. Recognize electron receptors
    a) atoms with a positive (+) charge
    b) electronegative atoms that can tolerate a negative charge
    c) atoms which possess delocalizable electrons - see #4 above
7. Common electron flow patterns
    a) move pi e^- toward positive (+) charge or other pi bonds
    b) move non-bonding e^- pairs toward pi bonds
    c) move single non-bonding e^- toward pi bonds

Evaluating Resonance Contributors

1. Identical structures are equally important.
2. Structures will a greater number of bonds are more important.
3. Structures with charge separation are less important.
4. Pay attention to electronegativities.
5. Neutral atoms need to have complete octets.

Resonance Contributors for the Carboxylate Group

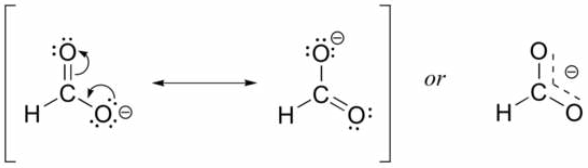
The convention of drawing two or more resonance contributors to approximate a single structure may seem a bit clumsy to you at this point, but as you gain experience you will see that the practice is actually very useful when discussing the manner in which many functional groups react. Let's next consider the carboxylate ion (the conjugate base of a carboxylic acid). As our example, we will use formate, the simplest possible carboxylate-containing molecule. The conjugate acid of formate is formic acid, which causes the painful sting you felt if you have ever been bitten by an ant.



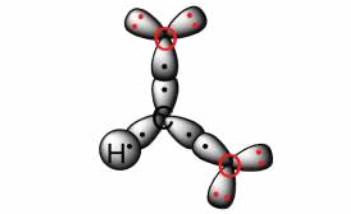
formate formic acid

Usually, you will see carboxylate groups drawn with one carbon-oxygen double bond and one carbon-oxygen single bond, with a negative formal charge located on the single-bonded oxygen. In actuality, however, the two carbon-oxygen bonds are the same length, and although there is indeed an overall negative formal charge on the group, it is shared equally between the two oxygens. Therefore, the carboxylate can be more accurately depicted by a *pair* of resonance contributors. Alternatively, a single structure can

be used, with a dashed line depicting the resonance-delocalized pi bond and the negative charge located in between the two oxygens.

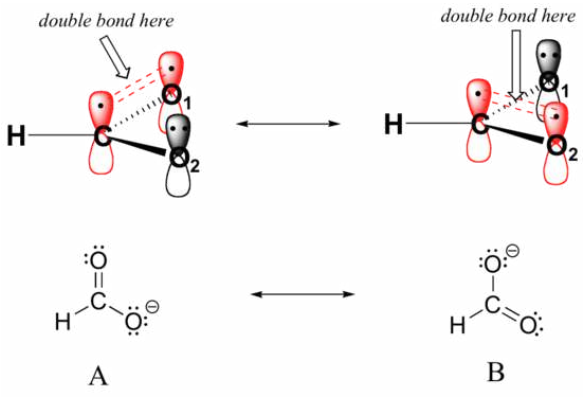


Let's see if we can correlate these drawing conventions to a valence bond theory picture of the bonding in a carboxylate group. We know that the carbon must be sp^2-hybridized, (the bond angles are close to 120˚, and the molecule is planar), and we will treat both oxygens as being sp^2-hybridized as well. Both carbon-oxygen sigma bonds, then, are formed from the overlap of carbon sp^2 orbitals and oxygen sp^2 orbitals.



the σ-bonding framework of formate

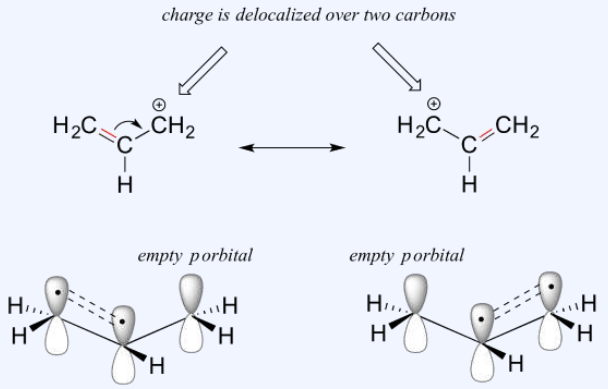
In addition, the carbon and both oxygens each have an unhybridized $2p_z$ orbital situated perpendicular to the plane of the sigma bonds. These three $2p_z$ orbitals are parallel to each other, and can overlap in a side-by-side fashion to form a delocalized pi bond.



Resonance contributor A shows oxygen #1 sharing a pair of electrons with carbon in a pi bond, and oxygen #2 holding a lone pair of electrons in its $2p_z$ orbital. Resonance contributor B, on the other hand, shows oxygen #2 participating in the pi bond with carbon, and oxygen #1 holding a lone pair in its $2p_z$ orbital. Overall, the situation is one of *three parallel, overlapping $2p_z$ orbitals sharing four delocalized pi electrons*. Because there is one more electron than there are $2p_z$ orbitals, the system has an overall charge of –1. This is the kind of 3D picture that resonance contributors are used to approximate, and once you get some practice you should be able to quickly visualize overlapping $2p_z$ orbitals and delocalized pi electrons whenever you see resonance structures being used. In this text, carboxylate groups will usually be drawn showing only one resonance contributor for the sake of simplicity, but you should always keep in mind that the two C-O bonds are equal, and that the negative charge is delocalized to both oxygens.

Exercise 2.13: There is a third resonance contributor for formate (which we will soon learn is considered a 'minor' contributor). Draw this resonance contributor.

Here's another example, this time with a carbocation. Recall from section 2.1 that carbocations are sp^2-hybridized, with an empty *2p* orbital oriented perpendicular to the plane formed by three sigma bonds. If a carbocation is adjacent to a double bond, then three *2p* orbitals can overlap and share the two pi electrons - another kind of conjugated pi system in which the positive charge is shared over two carbons.

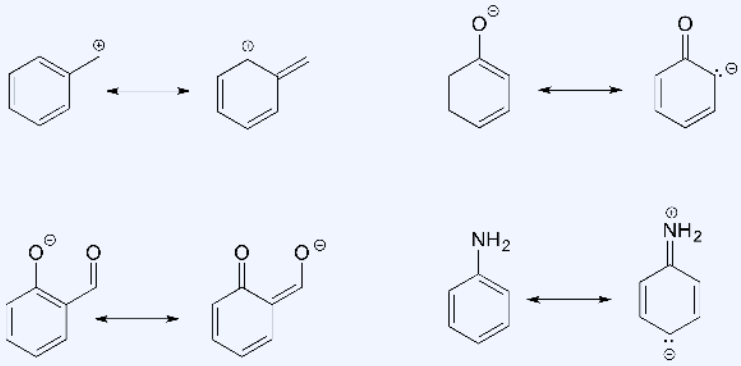


three *p* orbitals sharing two ≠ electrons

Exercise 2.14: Draw the resonance contributors that correspond to the curved, two-electron movement arrows in the resonance expressions below.



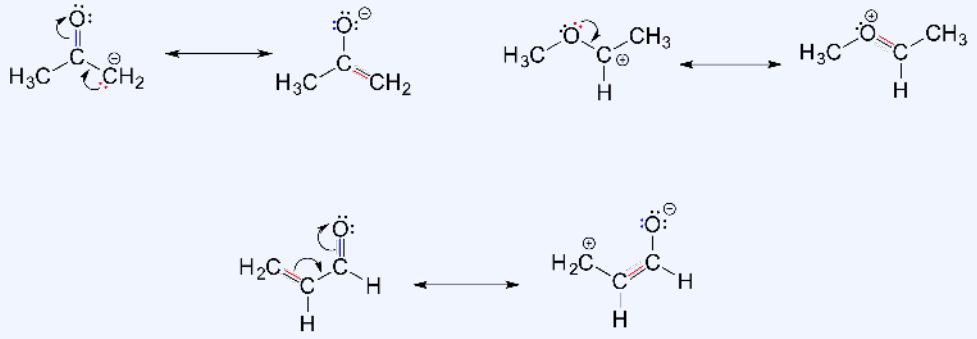
Exercise 2.15: In each resonance expression, draw curved two-electron movement arrows on the left-side contributor that shows how we get to the right-side contributor. Be sure to include formal charges.



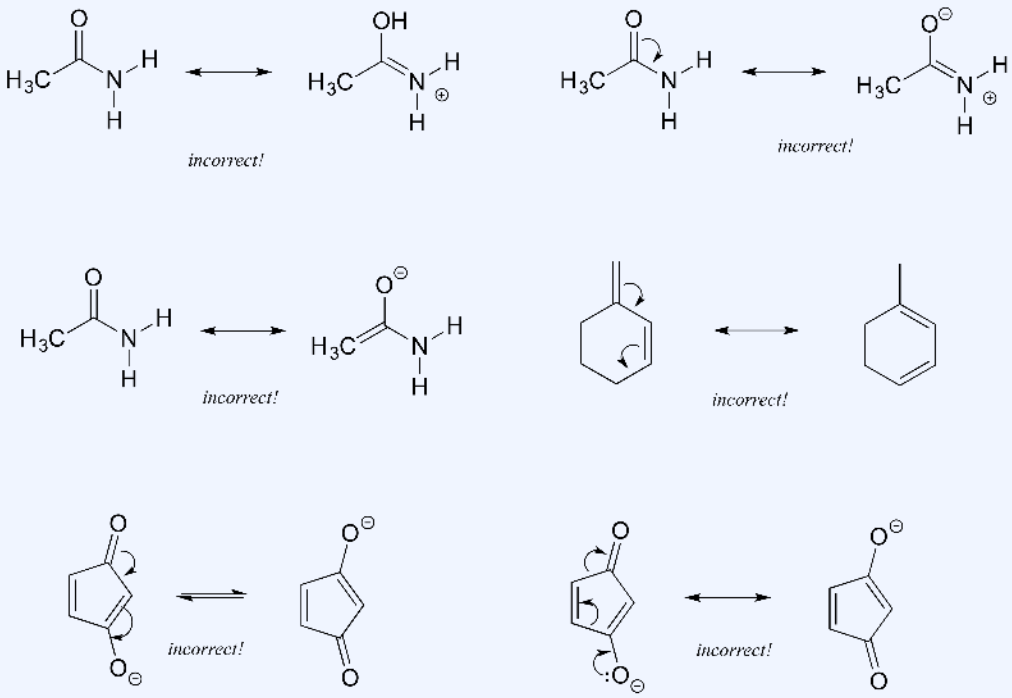
Solutions to exercises

Guided Resonance Practice

Below are a few more examples of 'legal' resonance expressions. Confirm for yourself that the octet rule is not exceeded for any atoms, and that formal charges are correct.



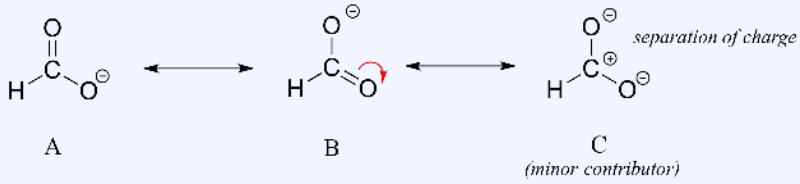
Exercise 2.16: Each of the 'illegal' resonance expressions below contains one or more mistakes. Explain what is incorrect in each.



Solutions to exercises

Major vs minor resonance contributors

Different resonance contributors do not always make the same contribution to the overall structure of the hybrid - rather, in many cases one contributor comes closer to depicting the actual bonding picture than another. In the case of carboxylates, contributors A and B below are equivalent in terms of their relative contribution to the hybrid structure. However, there is also a third resonance contributor ‘C, in which the carbon bears a positive formal charge and both oxygens are single-bonded and bear negative charges.



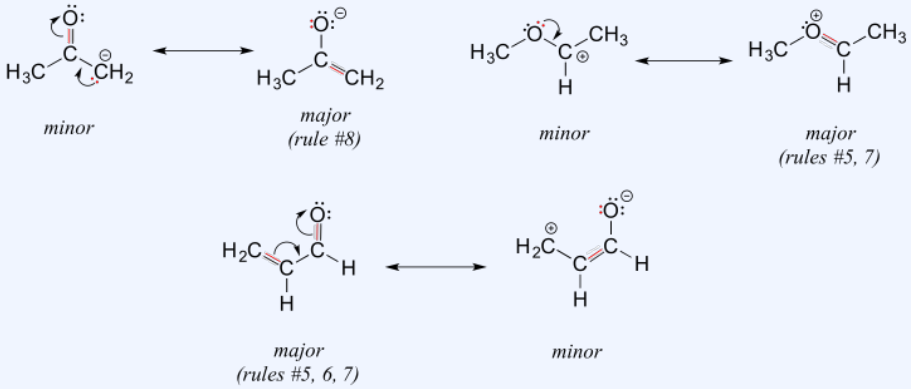
Structure C makes a less important contribution to the overall bonding picture of the group relative to A and B. How do we know that structure C is the ‘minor’ contributor? There are four basic rules which you need to learn in order

to evaluate the relative importance of different resonance contributors. We will number them 5-8 so that they may be added to in the 'rules for resonance' list earlier on this page.

Rules for determining major and minor resonance contributors:

5. The carbon in contributor C does not have an octet – in general, resonance contributors in which a carbon does not fulfill the octet rule are relatively less important.
6. In structure C, a separation of charge has been introduced that is not present in A or B. In general, resonance contributors in which there is a greater separation of charge are relatively less important.
7. In structure C, there are only three bonds, compared to four in A and B. In general, a resonance structure with a lower number of total bonds is relatively less important.
8. The resonance contributor in which a negative formal charge is located on a more electronegative atom, usually oxygen or nitrogen, is more stable than one in which the negative charge is located on a less electronegative atom such as carbon. An example is in the upper left expression in the next figure.

Below are some additional examples of major and minor resonance contributors:

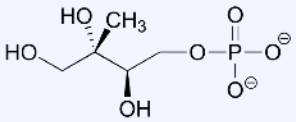


Why do we worry about a resonance contributor if it is the minor one? We will see later that very often a minor contributor can still be extremely important to our understanding of how a molecule reacts.

Exercise 2.17:

a. Draw a minor resonance structure for acetone (IUPAC name 2-propanone). Explain why it is a minor contributor.
b. Are acetone and 2-propanol resonance contributors of each other? Explain.

Exercise 2.18: Draw four additional resonance contributors for the molecule below. Label each one as major or minor (the structure below is of a major contributor).



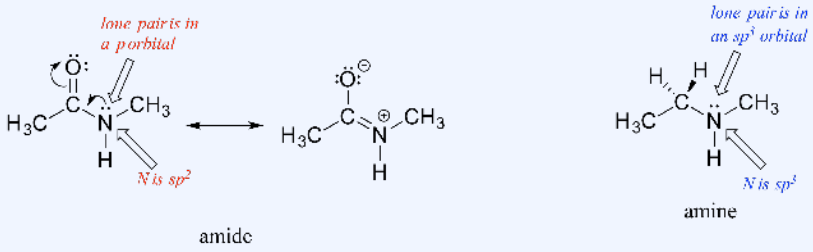
Exercise 2.19: Draw three resonance contributors of methyl acetate (IUPAC name methyl methanoate), and order them according to their relative importance to the bonding picture of the molecule. Explain your reasoning.

Solutions to exercises

Resonance and peptide bonds

What is the hybridization state of the nitrogen atom in an amide? At first glance, it would seem logical to say that it is sp^3-hybridized, because, like the nitrogen in an amine, the Lewis structure shows three single bonds and a lone pair. The picture looks quite different, though, if we consider another resonance contributor in which

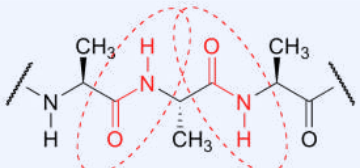
the nitrogen has a double bond to the carbonyl carbon: in this case, we would have to say that applicable hybridization is sp^2, and the bonding geometry trigonal planar rather than tetrahedral.



amide amine

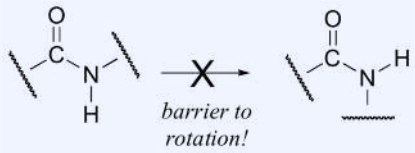
In fact, the latter picture is more accurate: the lone pair of electrons on an amide nitrogen are not localized in an sp^3 orbital, rather, they are delocalized as part of a conjugated pi system, and the bonding geometry around the nitrogen is trigonal planar as expected for sp^2 hybridization. This is a good illustration of an important point: conjugation and the corresponding delocalization of electron density is stabilizing, thus if conjugation can occur, it probably will.

One of the most important examples of amide groups in nature is the 'peptide bond' that links amino acids to form polypeptides and proteins.



peptide bonds in a polypeptide

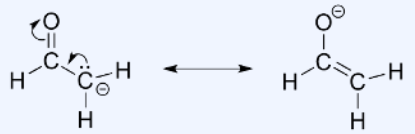
Critical to the structure of proteins is the fact that, although it is conventionally drawn as a single bond, *the C-N bond in a peptide linkage has a significant barrier to rotation*, indicating that to some degree, C-N pi overlap is present - in other words, there is some double bond character, and the nitrogen is sp^2 hybridized with trigonal planar geometry.



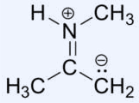
The barrier to rotation in peptide bonds is an integral part of protein structure, introducing more rigidity to the protein's backbone. If there were no barrier to rotation in a peptide bond, proteins would be much more 'floppy' and three dimensional folding would be very different.

Exercise 2.20: Draw two pictures showing the unhybridized *2p* orbitals and the location of pi electrons in methyl amide. One picture should represent the major resonance contributor, the other the minor contributor. How many overlapping *2p* orbitals are sharing how many pi-bonded electrons?

Exercise 2.21: Draw two pictures showing the unhybridized *2p* orbitals and the location of pi electrons in the 'enolate' anion shown below. One picture should represent the major resonance contributor, the other the minor contributor. How many overlapping 2*p* orbitals are sharing how many pi-bonded electrons?

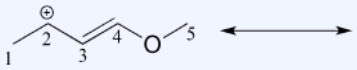


Exercise 2.22: Below is a minor resonance contributor of a species known as an 'enamine', which we will study more in chapter 12. Draw the major resonance contributor for the enamine, and explain why your contributor is the major one (refer to resonance rules #5-8 from this section).

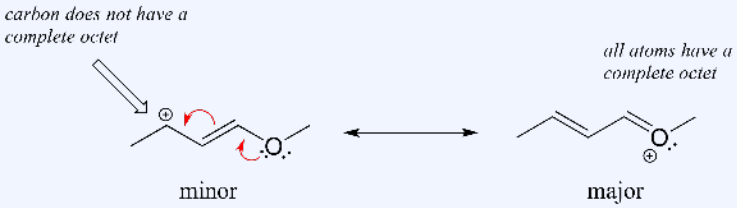


Solutions to exercises

Solved example: Draw the major resonance contributor of the structure below. Include in your figure the appropriate curved arrows showing how you got from the given structure to your structure. Explain why your contributor is the major one. In what kind of orbitals are the two lone pairs on the oxygen?

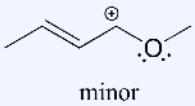


Solution: In the structure above, the carbon with the positive formal charge does not have a complete octet of valence electrons. Using the curved arrow convention, a lone pair on the oxygen can be moved to the adjacent bond to the left, and the electrons in the double bond shifted over to the left (see the rules for drawing resonance contributors to convince yourself that these are 'legal' moves).



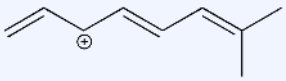
The resulting resonance contributor, in which the oxygen bears the formal charge, is the major one because all atoms have a complete octet, and there is one additional bond drawn (resonance rules #5 and #7 both apply). This system can be thought of as four parallel *2p* orbitals (one each on C_2, C_3, and C_4, plus one on oxygen) sharing four pi electrons. One lone pair on the oxygen is in an unhybridized *2p* orbital and is part of the conjugated pi system, and the other is located in an sp^2 orbital.

Also note that one additional contributor can be drawn, but it is also minor because it has a carbon with an incomplete octet:



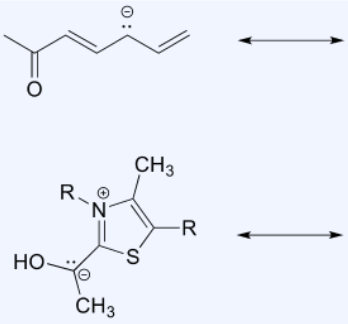
Exercise 2.23:

a) Draw three additional resonance contributors for the carbocation below. Include in your figure the appropriate curved arrows showing how one contributor is converted to the next.



b) Fill in the blanks: the conjugated pi system in this carbocation is composed of _____ *2p* orbitals sharing _____ delocalized pi electrons.

Exercise 2.24: Draw the major resonance contributor for each of the anions below.

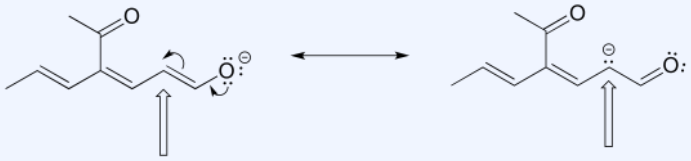


c) Fill in the blanks: the conjugated pi system in part (a) is composed of _____ *2p* orbitals containing _____ delocalized pi electrons.

Exercise 2.25: The figure below shows how the negative formal charge on the oxygen can be delocalized to the carbon indicated by an arrow. More resonance contributors can be drawn in which negative charge is delocalized to three other atoms on the molecule.

a) Circle these atoms.

b) Draw the two most important resonance contributors for the molecule.



Solutions to exercises

A word of advice

Becoming adept at drawing resonance contributors, using the curved arrow notation to show how one contributor can be converted to another, and understanding the concepts of conjugation and resonance delocalization are some of the most challenging but also most important jobs that you will have as a beginning student of organic chemistry. If you work hard now to gain a firm grasp of these ideas, you will have come a long way toward understanding much of what follows in your organic chemistry course. Conversely, if you fail to come to grips with these concepts now, a lot of what you see later in the course will seem like a bunch of mysterious and incomprehensible lines, dots, and arrows, and you will be in for a rough ride, to say the least. More so than many other topics in organic chemistry, *understanding bonding, conjugation, and resonance is something that most students really need to work on 'in person' with an instructor or tutor, preferably using a molecular modeling kit*. Keep working problems, keep asking questions, and keep at it until it all makes sense!

Kahn Academy video tutorials

Drawing resonance structures

More on resonance

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

3.3: Resonance is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

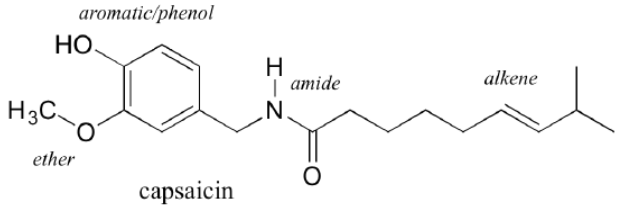
3.4: Organic Functional Groups

Learning Objective

- recognize and classify the common functional groups of organic chemistry (alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, alkyl halides, alcohols, amines, ethers, aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, esters, and amides

Functional groups in organic compounds

Functional groups are structural units within organic compounds that are defined by specific bonding arrangements between specific atoms. The structure of capsaicin, the compound responsible for the heat in peppers, incorporates several functional groups, labeled in the figure below and explained throughout this section.

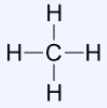


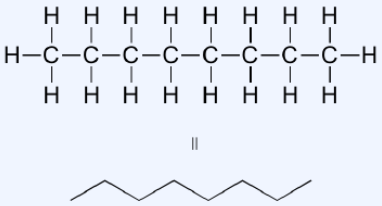
capsaicin

As we progress in our study of organic chemistry, it will become extremely important to be able to quickly recognize the most common functional groups, because *they are the key structural elements that define how organic molecules react*. For now, we will only worry about drawing and recognizing each functional group, as depicted by Lewis and line structures. Much of the remainder of your study of organic chemistry will be taken up with learning about how the different functional groups behave in organic reactions.

The 'default' in organic chemistry (essentially, the *lack* of any functional groups) is given the term **alkane**, characterized by single bonds between carbon and carbon, or between carbon and hydrogen. Methane, CH_4, is the natural gas you may burn in your furnace. Octane, C_8H_{18}, is a component of gasoline.

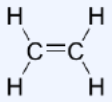
Alkanes

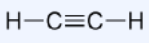

methane


octane

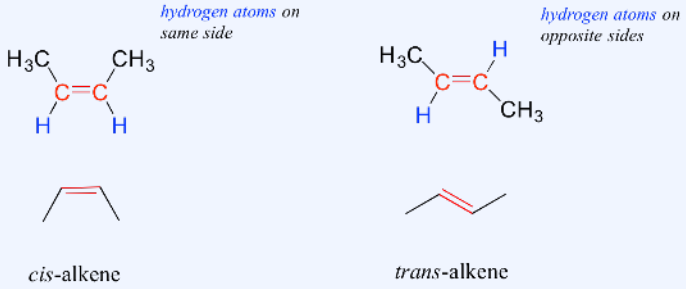
Alkenes (sometimes called **olefins**) have carbon-carbon double bonds, and **alkynes** have carbon-carbon triple bonds. Ethene, the simplest alkene example, is a gas that serves as a cellular signal in fruits to stimulate ripening. (If you want bananas to ripen quickly, put them in a paper bag along with an apple - the apple emits ethene gas, setting off the ripening process in the bananas). Ethyne, commonly called acetylene, is used as a fuel in welding blow torches.

Alkenes and alkynes


ethene
(an alkene)


ethyne
(an alkyne)

Alkenes have trigonal planar electron geometry while alkynes have linear geometry. Furthermore, many alkenes can take two geometric forms: ***cis*** or ***trans***. The *cis* and *trans* forms of a given alkene are different molecules with different physical properties there is a very high energy barrier to rotation about a double bond. In the example below, the difference between *cis* and *trans* alkenes is readily apparent.

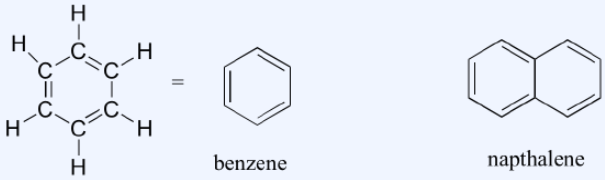


cis-alkene *trans*-alkene

Alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes are all classified as **hydrocarbons**, because they are composed solely of carbon and hydrogen atoms. Alkanes are said to be **saturated hydrocarbons**, because the carbons are bonded to the maximum possible number of hydrogens - in other words, they are *saturated* with hydrogen atoms. The double and triple-bonded carbons in alkenes and alkynes have fewer hydrogen atoms bonded to them - they are thus referred to as **unsaturated hydrocarbons**. As we will see in chapter 15, hydrogen can be added to double and triple bonds, in a type of reaction called 'hydrogenation'.

The **aromatic** group is exemplified by benzene (which used to be a commonly used solvent on the organic lab, but which was shown to be carcinogenic), and naphthalene, a compound with a distinctive 'mothball' smell. Aromatic groups are planar (flat) ring structures, and are widespread in nature. We will learn more about the structure and reactions of aromatic groups in chapters 2 and 14.

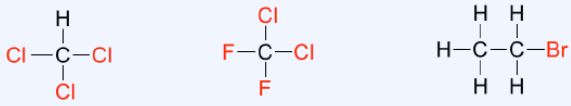
Aromatics



benzene napthalene

When the carbon of an alkane is bonded to one or more halogens, the group is referred to as a **alkyl halide** or **haloalkane**. Chloroform is a useful solvent in the laboratory, and was one of the earlier anesthetic drugs used in surgery. Chlorodifluoromethane was used as a refrigerant and in aerosol sprays until the late twentieth century, but its use was discontinued after it was found to have harmful effects on the ozone layer. Bromoethane is a simple alkyl halide often used in organic synthesis. Alkyl halides groups are quite rare in biomolecules.

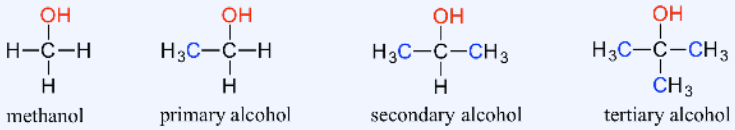
Haloalkanes

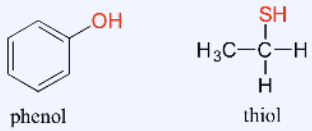


trichloromethane (chloroform) dichlorodifluoromethane (Freon-12) bromoethane

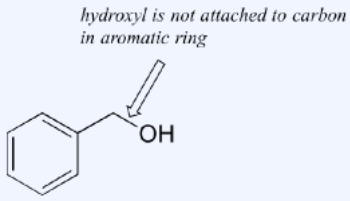
In the **alcohol** functional group, a carbon is single-bonded to an OH group (the OH group, by itself, is referred to as a **hydroxyl**). Except for methanol, all alcohols can be classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary. In a **primary alcohol**, the carbon bonded to the OH group is also bonded to only one other carbon. In a **secondary alcohol** and **tertiary alcohol,** the carbon is bonded to two or three other carbons, respectively. When the hydroxyl group is *directly* attached to an aromatic ring, the resulting group is called a **phenol**. The sulfur analog of an alcohol is called a **thiol** (from the Greek *thio*, for sulfur).

Alcohols, phenols, and thiols





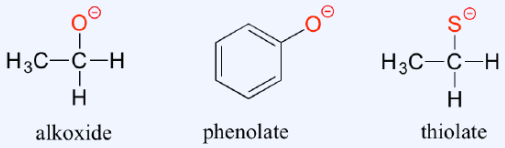
Note that the definition of a phenol states that the hydroxyl oxygen must be *directly* attached to one of the carbons of the aromatic ring. The compound below, therefore, is *not* a phenol - it is a primary alcohol.

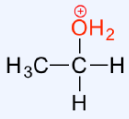


primary alcohol
(*not* a phenol)

The distinction is important, because as we will see later, there is a significant difference in the reactivity of alcohols and phenols.

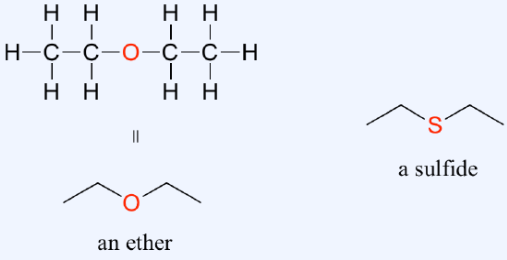
The deprotonated forms of alcohols, phenols, and thiols are called **alkoxides**, **phenolates**, and **thiolates**, respectively. A protonated alcohol is an **oxonium** ion.




oxonium

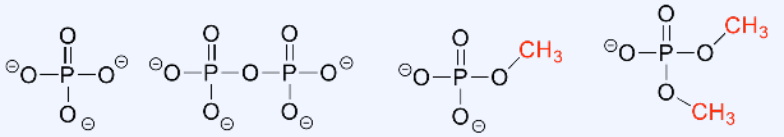
In an **ether** functional group, a central oxygen is bonded to two carbons. Below is the structure of diethyl ether, a common laboratory solvent and also one of the first compounds to be used as an anesthetic during operations. The sulfur analog of an ether is called a **thioether** or **sulfide**.

Ethers and sulfides



Phosphate and its derivative functional groups are ubiquitous in biomolecules. Phosphate linked to a single organic group is called a **phosphate ester**; when it has two links to organic groups it is called a **phosphate diester**. A linkage between two phosphates creates a **phosphate anhydride**.

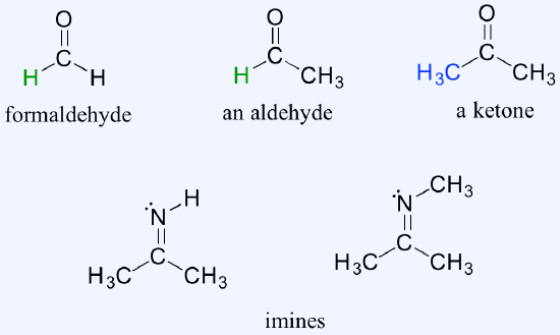
Organic phosphates



There are a number of functional groups that contain a carbon-oxygen double bond, which is commonly referred to as a **carbonyl**. **Ketones** and **aldehydes** are two closely related carbonyl-based functional groups that react in very similar ways. In a ketone, the carbon atom of a carbonyl is bonded to two other carbons. In an aldehyde, the carbonyl carbon is bonded on one side to a hydrogen, and on the other side to a carbon. The exception to this definition is formaldehyde, in which the carbonyl carbon has bonds to two hydrogens.

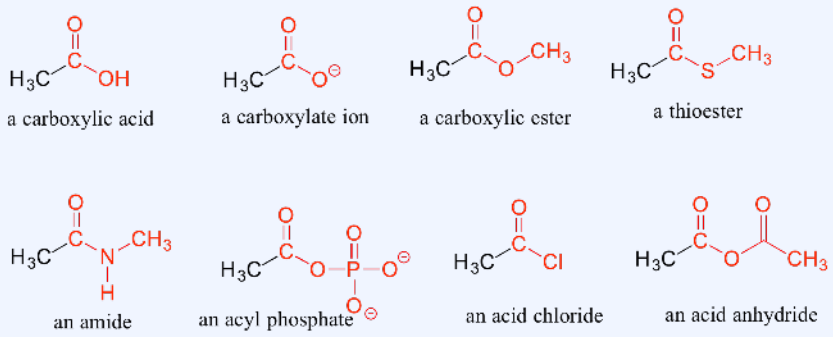
A group with a carbon-nitrogen double bond is called an **imine**, or sometimes a **Schiff base** (in this book we will use the term 'imine'). The chemistry of aldehydes, ketones, and imines will be covered in chapter 10.

Aldehydes, ketones, and imines

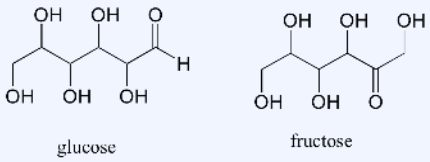


When a carbonyl carbon is bonded on one side to a carbon (or hydrogen) and on the other side to an oxygen, nitrogen, or sulfur, the functional group is considered to be one of the '**carboxylic acid derivatives**', a designation that describes a set of related functional groups. The eponymous member of this family is the **carboxylic acid** functional group, in which the carbonyl is bonded to a hydroxyl group. The conjugate base of a carboxylic acid is a **carboxylate**. Other derivatives are carboxylic esters (usually just called '**esters**'), **thioesters**, **amides**, **acyl phosphates**, **acid chlorides**, and **acid anhydrides**. With the exception of acid chlorides and acid anhydrides, the carboxylic acid derivatives are very common in biological molecules and/or metabolic pathways, and their structure and reactivity will be discussed in detail in chapter 11.

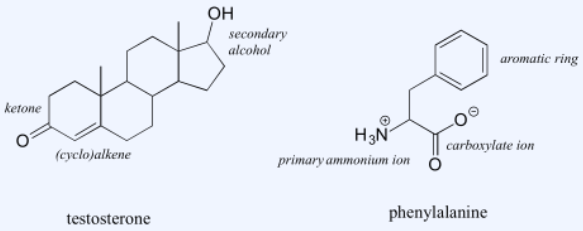
Carboxylic acid derivatives

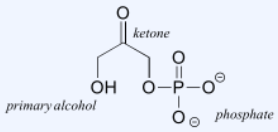


A single compound often contains several functional groups, particularly in biological organic chemistry. The six-carbon sugar molecules glucose and fructose, for example, contain aldehyde and ketone groups, respectively, and both contain five alcohol groups (a compound with several alcohol groups is often referred to as a '**polyol**').



The hormone testosterone, the amino acid phenylalanine, and the glycolysis metabolite dihydroxyacetone phosphate all contain multiple functional groups, as labeled below.



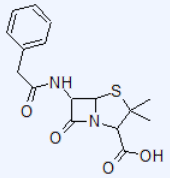


dihydroxyacetone phosphate
(DHAP)

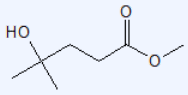
While not in any way a complete list, this section has covered most of the important functional groups that we will encounter in biological organic chemistry.

Exercise:

1. Identify the functional groups (other than alkanes) in the following organic compounds. State whether alcohols and amines are primary, secondary, or tertiary.



penicillin



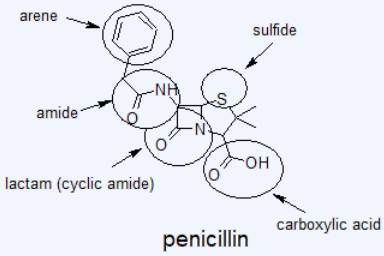


pyruvic acid

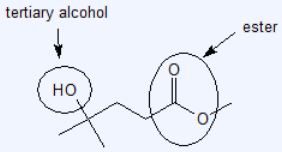


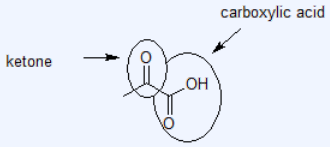
Solution

1.

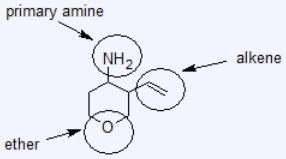


penicillin





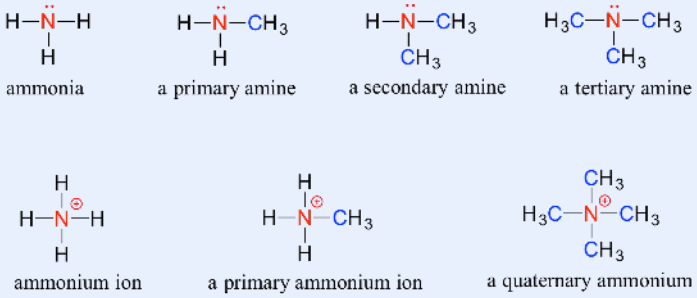
pyruvic acid



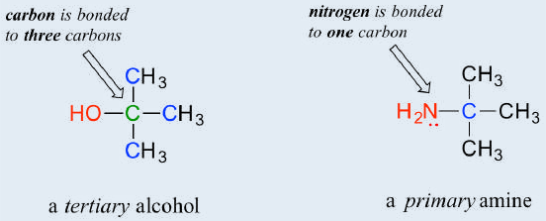
Amines are characterized by nitrogen atoms with single bonds to hydrogen and carbon. Just as there are primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols, there are primary, secondary, and tertiary amines. Ammonia is a special case with no carbon atoms.

One of the most important properties of amines is that they are basic, and are readily protonated to form **ammonium** cations. In the case where a nitrogen has four bonds to carbon (which is somewhat unusual in biomolecules), it is called a quaternary ammonium ion.

Amines

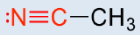


Note: Do not be confused by how the terms 'primary', 'secondary', and 'tertiary' are applied to alcohols and amines - the definitions are different. In alcohols, what matters is how many other carbons the alcohol *carbon* is bonded to, while in amines, what matters is how many carbons the *nitrogen* is bonded to.



Finally, a **nitrile** group is characterized by a carbon triple-bonded to a nitrogen.

Nitriles



acetonitrile

Exercise

2. Draw one example of each compound that includes the specified structural features. Be sure to designate the location of all non-zero formal charges. All atoms should have complete octets (phosphorus may exceed the octet rule). There are many possible correct answers for these, so be sure to check your structures with your instructor or tutor.

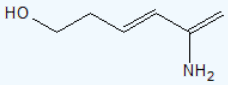
a) a compound with molecular formula $C_6H_{11}NO$ that includes alkene, secondary amine, and primary alcohol functional groups

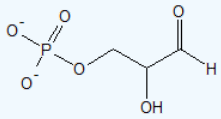
b) an ion with molecular formula $C_3H_5O_6P^{2-}$ that includes aldehyde, secondary alcohol, and phosphate functional groups.

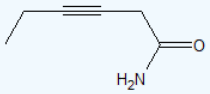
c) A compound with molecular formula C_6H_9NO that has an amide functional group, and does *not* have an alkene group.

Answer

2.

a) 

b) 

c) 

3.4: Organic Functional Groups is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Acids and Bases

4.1: Arrhenius Acids and Bases (Review)

4.2: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases (Review)

4.3: Distinguishing between pH and pKa

4.4: Predicting Relative Acidity

4.5: Lewis Acids and Bases

4: Acids and Bases is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.1: Arrhenius Acids and Bases (Review)

LEARNING objective

- recognize acids or bases

Introduction

In 1884, the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed two specific classifications of compounds, termed acids and bases. When dissolved in an aqueous solution, certain ions were released into the solution. As defined by Arrhenius, acid-base reactions are characterized by acids, which dissociate in aqueous solution to form hydrogen ions (H^+) and bases, which form hydroxide (OH^-) ions. Arrhenius received the lowest passing score for his doctoral thesis with these innovative ideas about acids and bases. Ten years later he was awarded the Nobel Prize for his insights.

Acids are defined as a compound or element that releases hydrogen (H^+) ions into the solution (mainly water).

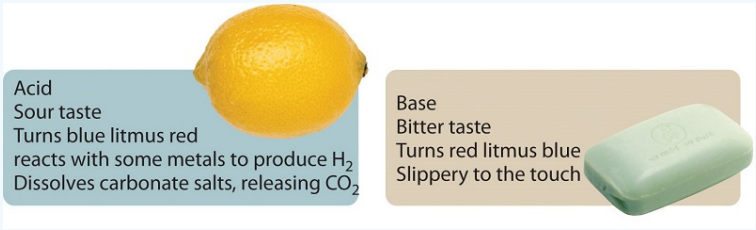
$$\mathbf{NHO_3\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l) \rightarrow H_3O^+ + NO_3^-\,(aq)} \tag{4.1.1}$$

In this reaction nitric acid (HNO_3) disassociates into hydrogen (H^+) and nitrate (NO_3^-) ions when dissolved in water. Bases are defined as a compound or element that releases hydroxide (OH^-) ions into the solution.

$$\mathbf{LiOH\,(s) \xrightarrow{H_2O} Li^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)} \tag{4.1.2}$$

In this reaction lithium hydroxide (**LiOH**) dissociates into lithium ($\mathbf{Li^+}$) and hydroxide ($\mathbf{OH^-}$) ions when dissolved in water.

One way to define a class of compounds is by describing the various characteristics its members have in common. In the case of the compounds known as acids, the common characteristics include a sour taste, the ability to change the color of the vegetable dye *litmus* to red, and the ability to dissolve certain metals and simultaneously produce hydrogen gas. For the compounds called bases, the common characteristics are a slippery texture, a bitter taste, and the ability to change the color of litmus to blue. Acids and bases also react with each other to form compounds generally known as salts.



Although we include their tastes among the common characteristics of acids and bases, we never advocate tasting an unknown chemical!

Chemists prefer, however, to have definitions for acids and bases in chemical terms. The Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius developed the first chemical definitions of acids and bases in the late 1800s. Arrhenius defined an acid as a compound that increases the concentration of hydrogen ion (H^+) in aqueous solution. Many acids are simple compounds that release a hydrogen cation into solution when they dissolve. Similarly, Arrhenius defined a base as a compound that increases the concentration of hydroxide ion (OH^-) in aqueous solution. Many bases are ionic compounds that have the hydroxide ion as their anion, which is released when the base dissolves in water.

Table **4.1.1**: Formulas and Names for Some Acids and Bases

Acids		Bases	
Formula	Name	Formula	Name
HCl(aq)	hydrochloric acid	NaOH(aq)	sodium hydroxide
HBr(aq)	hydrobromic acid	KOH(aq)	potassium hydroxide
HI(aq)	hydriodic acid	$Mg(OH)_2$(aq)	magnesium hydroxide
H_2S(aq)	hydrosulfuric acid	$Ca(OH)_2$(aq)	calcium hydroxide
$HC_2H_3O_2$(aq)	acetic acid	NH_3(aq)	ammonia
HNO_3(aq)	nitric acid		
HNO_2(aq)	nitrous acid		
H_2SO_4(aq)	sulfuric acid		
H_2SO_3(aq)	sulfurous acid		
$HClO_3$(aq)	chloric acid		
$HClO_4$(aq)	perchloric acid		
$HClO_2$(aq)	chlorous acid		
H_3PO_4(aq)	phosphoric acid		
H_3PO_3(aq)	phosphorous acid		

Many bases and their aqueous solutions are named using the normal rules of ionic compounds that were presented previously; that is, they are named as hydroxide compounds. For example, the base sodium hydroxide (NaOH) is both an ionic compound and an aqueous solution. However, aqueous solutions of acids have their own naming rules. The names of *binary acids* (compounds with hydrogen and one other element in their formula) are based on the root of the name of the other element preceded by the prefix *hydro-* and followed by the suffix *-ic acid*. Thus, an aqueous solution of HCl [designated "HCl(aq)"] is called hydrochloric acid, H_2S(aq) is called hydrosulfuric acid, and so forth. Acids composed of more than two elements (typically hydrogen and oxygen and some other element) have names based on the name of the other element, followed by the suffix *-ic acid* or *-ous acid*, depending on the number of oxygen atoms in the acid's formula. Other prefixes, like *per-* and *hypo-*, also appear in the names for some acids. Unfortunately, there is no strict rule for the number of oxygen atoms that are associated with the *-ic acid* suffix; the names of these acids are best memorized. Table **4.1.1** lists some acids and bases and their names. Note that acids have hydrogen written first, as if it were the cation, while most bases have the negative hydroxide ion, if it appears in the formula, written last.

> *The name oxygen comes from the Latin meaning "acid producer" because its discoverer, Antoine Lavoisier, thought it was the essential element in acids. Lavoisier was wrong, but it is too late to change the name now.*

Example 4.1.1

Name each substance.

a. HF(aq)
b. $Sr(OH)_2$(aq)

Solution

a. This acid has only two elements in its formula, so its name includes the *hydro-* prefix. The stem of the other element's name, fluorine, is *fluor*, and we must also include the *-ic acid* ending. Its name is hydrofluoric acid.

b. This base is named as an ionic compound between the strontium ion and the hydroxide ion: strontium hydroxide.

Exercise 4.1.1

Name each substance.

a. $H_2Se(aq)$
b. $Ba(OH)_2(aq)$

Notice that one base listed in Table **4.1.1**—ammonia—does not have hydroxide as part of its formula. How does this compound increase the amount of hydroxide ion in aqueous solution? Instead of dissociating into hydroxide ions, ammonia molecules react with water molecules by taking a hydrogen ion from the water molecule to produce an ammonium ion and a hydroxide ion:

$$NH_{3(aq)} + H_2O_{(\ell)} \rightarrow NH^+_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{4.1.3}$$

Because this reaction of ammonia with water causes an increase in the concentration of hydroxide ions in solution, ammonia satisfies the Arrhenius definition of a base. Many other nitrogen-containing compounds are bases because they too react with water to produce hydroxide ions in aqueous solution.

4.1: Arrhenius Acids and Bases (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.2: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases (Review)

learning objective

- recognize acids and bases

The Brønsted-Lowry Theory of Acids and Bases

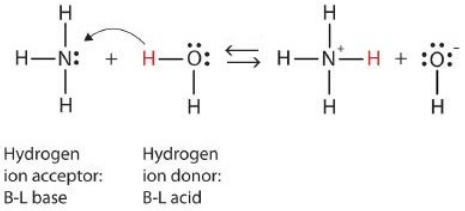
In 1923, Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and English chemist Thomas Lowry independently proposed new definitions for acids and bases, ones that focus on proton transfer. A **Brønsted-Lowry acid** is any species that can donate a proton (H^+) to another molecule. A **Brønsted-Lowry base** is any species that can accept a proton from another molecule. In short, **a Brønsted-Lowry acid** is a **proton donor (PD)**, while **a Brønsted-Lowry base** is a **proton acceptor (PA)**.

> *A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.*

Let us use the reaction of ammonia in water to demonstrate the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base. Ammonia and water molecules are reactants, while the ammonium ion and the hydroxide ion are products:

$$\mathbf{NH_3\,(aq) + H_2O\,(\ell) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)} \tag{4.2.1}$$

What has happened in this reaction is that the original water molecule has donated a hydrogen ion to the original ammonia molecule, which in turn has accepted the hydrogen ion. We can illustrate this as follows:

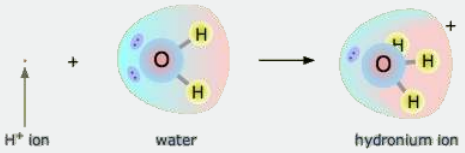


Because the water molecule donates a hydrogen ion to the ammonia, it is the Brønsted-Lowry acid, while the ammonia molecule—which accepts the hydrogen ion—is the Brønsted-Lowry base. Thus, ammonia acts as a base in both the Arrhenius sense and the Brønsted-Lowry sense.

Is an Arrhenius acid like hydrochloric acid still an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Yes, but it requires us to understand what really happens when HCl is dissolved in water. Recall that the hydrogen *atom* is a single proton surrounded by a single electron. To make the hydrogen *ion*, we remove the electron, leaving a bare proton. Do we *really* have bare protons floating around in aqueous solution? No, we do not. What really happens is that the H^+ ion attaches itself to H_2O to make H_3O^+, which is called the *hydronium ion*. For most purposes, H^+ and H_3O^+ represent the same species, but writing H_3O^+ instead of H^+ shows that we understand that there are no bare protons floating around in solution. Rather, these protons are actually attached to solvent molecules.

The Hydronium IOn

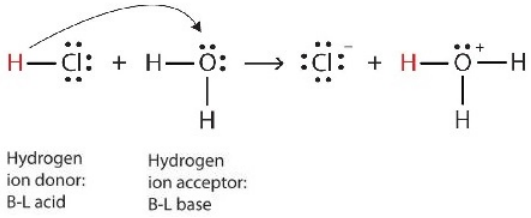
A proton in aqueous solution may be surrounded by more than one water molecule, leading to formulas like $\mathbf{H_5O_2^+}$ or $\mathbf{H_9O_4^+}$ rather than $\mathbf{H_3O^+}$. It is simpler, however, to use $\mathbf{H_3O^+}$ to represent the hydronium ion.



With this in mind, how do we define HCl as an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Consider what happens when HCl is dissolved in H_2O:

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(g) + H_2O\ (\ell)\ \rightarrow H_3O^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)} \tag{4.2.2}$$

We can depict this process using Lewis electron dot diagrams:



Now we see that a hydrogen ion is transferred from the HCl molecule to the H_2O molecule to make chloride ions and hydronium ions. As the hydrogen ion donor, HCl acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid; as a hydrogen ion acceptor, H_2O is a Brønsted-Lowry base. So HCl is an acid not just in the Arrhenius sense but also in the Brønsted-Lowry sense. Moreover, by the Brønsted-Lowry definitions, H_2O is a base in the formation of aqueous HCl. So the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base classify the dissolving of HCl in water as a reaction between an acid and a base—although the Arrhenius definition would not have labeled H_2O a base in this circumstance.

- A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton (hydrogen ion) donor.
- A Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton (hydrogen ion) acceptor.
- All Arrhenius acids and bases are Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases as well. However, not all Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases are Arrhenius acids and bases.

Example 4.2.1

Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) is slightly soluble in water. It has a nitrogen atom that can accept a hydrogen ion from a water molecule just like the nitrogen atom in ammonia does. Write the chemical equation for this reaction and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.

Solution

$C_6H_5NH_2$ and H_2O are the reactants. When $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton from H_2O, it gains an extra H and a positive charge and leaves an OH^- ion behind. The reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_5NH_2\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5NH_3^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

Because $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton, it is the Brønsted-Lowry base. The H_2O molecule, because it donates a proton, is the Brønsted-Lowry acid.

Exercise 4.2.1

Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and the Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-} + H_3O^+} \tag{4.2.3}$$

Answer:

Brønsted-Lowry acid: $H_2PO_4^-$; Brønsted-Lowry base: H_2O

Exercise 4.2.2

Which of the following compounds is a Bronsted-Lowry base?

a. HCl
b. HPO_4^{2-}
c. H_3PO_4
d. NH_4^+
e. $CH_3NH_3^+$

Answer:

A Brønsted-Lowry Base is a proton acceptor, which means it will take in an H^+. This eliminates $\mathbf{HCl}$, $\mathbf{H_3PO_4}$, $\mathbf{NH_4^+}$ and $\mathbf{CH_3NH_3^+}$ because they are Bronsted-Lowry acids. They all give away protons. In the case of $\mathbf{HPO_4^{2-}}$, consider the following equation:

$$\mathbf{HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow PO_4^{3-}(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)}$$

Here, it is clear that HPO_4^{2-} is the acid since it donates a proton to water to make H_3O^+ and PO_4^{3-}. Now consider the following equation:

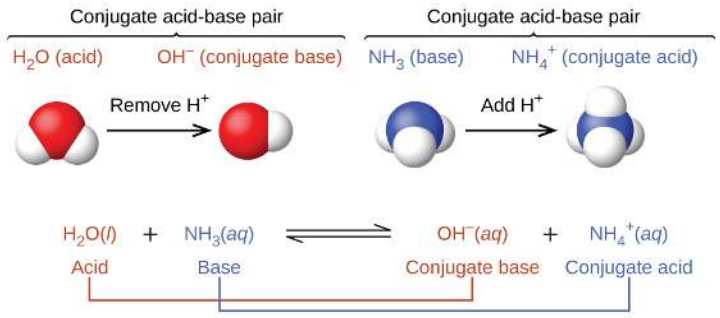
$$\mathbf{HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2PO_4^- + OH^-(aq)}$$

In this case, HPO_4^{2-} is the base since it accepts a proton from water to form $H_2PO_4^-$ and OH^-. Thus, HPO_4^{2-} is an acid and base together, making it amphoteric.

Since HPO_4^{2-} is the only compound from the options that can act as a base, the answer is **(b) $\mathbf{HPO_4^{2-}}$.**

Conjugate Acid-Base Pair

In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, $\mathbf{OH^-}$, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, $\mathbf{NH_4^+}$:



In the reaction of ammonia with water to give ammonium ions and hydroxide ions, ammonia acts as a base by accepting a proton from a water molecule, which in this case means that water is acting as an acid. In the reverse reaction, an ammonium ion acts as an acid by donating a proton to a hydroxide ion, and the hydroxide ion acts as a base. The conjugate acid–base pairs for this reaction are $\boldsymbol{NH_4^+/NH_3}$ and $\boldsymbol{H_2O/OH^-}$.

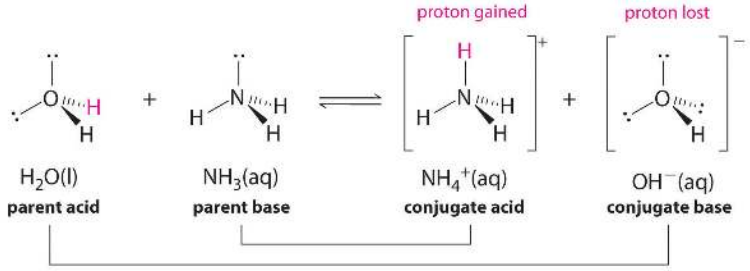


Figure **4.2.1**. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

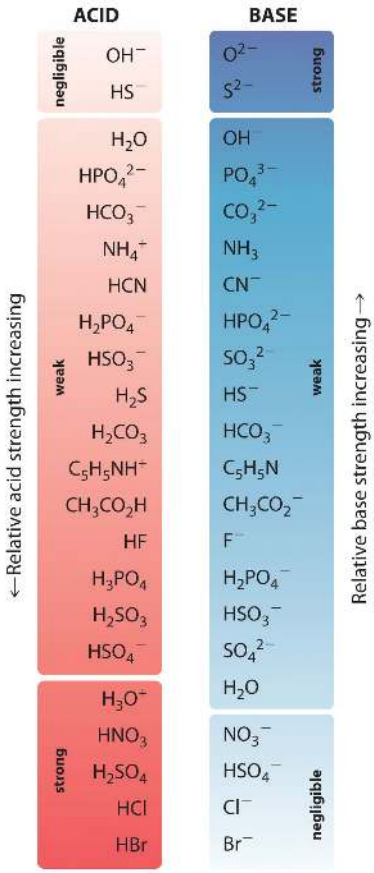


Figure **4.2.1**: The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid–Base Pairs

The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

Example 4.2.2

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

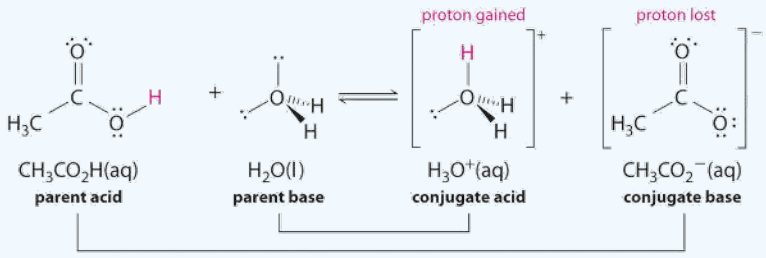
$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-}$$

Solution

Similarly, in the reaction of acetic acid with water, acetic acid **donates** a proton to water, which acts as the base. In the reverse reaction, $\boldsymbol{H_3O^+}$ is the acid that donates a proton to the acetate ion, which acts as the base.

Once again, we have two conjugate acid–base pairs:

- the parent acid and its conjugate base ($\boldsymbol{CH_3CO_2H/CH_3CO_2^-}$) and
- the parent base and its conjugate acid ($\boldsymbol{H_3O^+/H_2O}$).



Example 4.2.3

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$$

Solution

One pair is H_2O and OH^-, where H_2O has one more H^+ and is the conjugate acid, while OH^- has one less H^+ and is the conjugate base.

The other pair consists of $(CH_3)_3N$ and $(CH_3)_3NH^+$, where $(CH_3)_3NH^+$ is the conjugate acid (it has an additional proton) and $(CH_3)_3N$ is the conjugate base.

Exercise 4.2.3

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$NH_2^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + OH^-$$

Answer:

H_2O (acid) and OH^- (base); NH_2^- (base) and NH_3 (acid)

Contributors and Attributions

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

4.2: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases (Review) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.3: Distinguishing between pH and pKa

Learning Objective

- Determine relative strengths of acids and bases from their pK_a values
- Determine the form of an acid or base at a specified pH (given the pK_a)

The Henderson-Hasselbach Equation - a Quantitative View

We will use the general reaction for a weak acid to write the Ka expression.

$$HA_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + A^-_{(aq)} \tag{4.3.1}$$

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]} \tag{4.3.2}$$

pKa = -log Ka

where each bracketed term represents the concentration of that substance in solution.

The stronger an acid, the greater the ionization, the lower the pKa, and the lower the pH the compound will produce in solution.

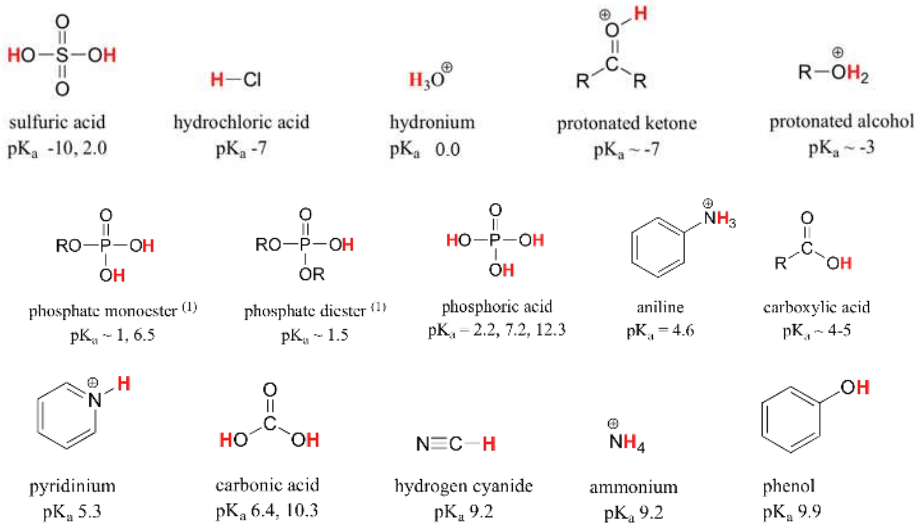
It is important to realize that pK_a is not at all the same thing as pH: the former is an inherent property of a compound or functional group, while the latter is the measure of the hydronium ion concentration in a particular aqueous solution:

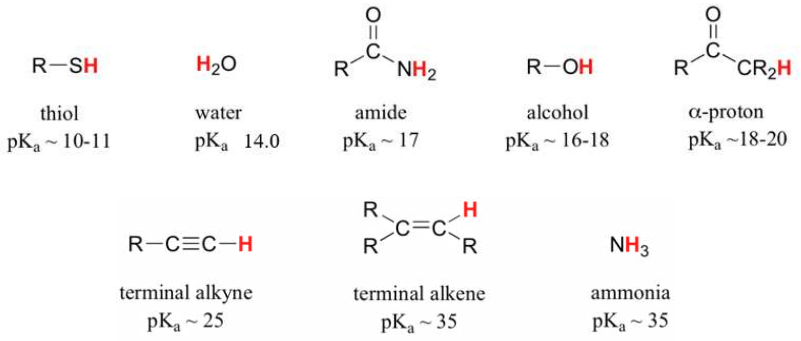
pH = -log $[H_3O^+]$

Additional reagents can be added to a reaction solution to change the pH of the reaction conditions beyond the effects of an individual compound.

Relative Acidity and pKa Values

An application of the Henderson-Hasselbach Equation is the ability to determine the relative acidity of compounds by comparing their pKa values. The stronger an acid, the greater the ionization, the lower the pKa, and the lower the pH the compound will produce in solution. Some selected pKa values for compounds in the study of organic chemistry are shown bellow. Since organic reactions can be performed in non-aqueous environments, the pH can exceed 14 and organic compounds can have pKa values above 16. It is a variation on that line from the Wizard of Oz, "We don't live in water anymore."



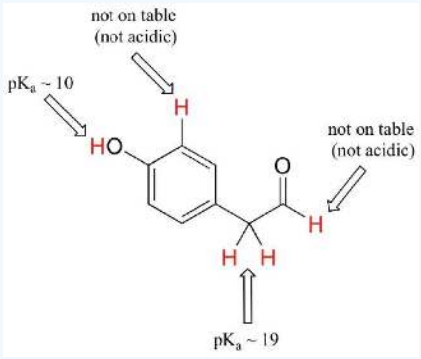


It is a very good idea to commit to memory the approximate pK_a ranges of the compounds above. A word of caution: when using the pK_a table, be absolutely sure that you are considering the correct conjugate acid/base pair. If you are asked to say something about the basicity of ammonia (NH_3) compared to that of ethoxide ion ($CH_3CH_2O^-$), for example, the relevant pK_a values to consider are 9.2 (the pK_a of ammonium ion) and 16 (the pK_a of ethanol). From these numbers, you know that ethoxide is the stronger base. Do not make the mistake of using the pK_a value of 38: this is the pK_a of ammonia *acting as an acid*, and tells you how basic the NH_2^- ion is (very basic!)

* A note on the pKa of water: The pKa of water is 14. Biochemistry and organic chemistry texts often list the value as 15.7. These texts have incorrectly factored the molar value for the concentration of water into the equilibrium constant. The correct derivation of the equilibrium constant involves the **activity** of water, which has a value of 1.

Example

While this course begins with single functional groups, we will eventually work with interesting compounds containing multiple functional groups. Recognizing which hydrogens can be ionized as acidic protons and which hydrogens can NOT, is a useful skill. Notice in this example that we need to evaluate the potential acidity at *four* different locations on the molecule.



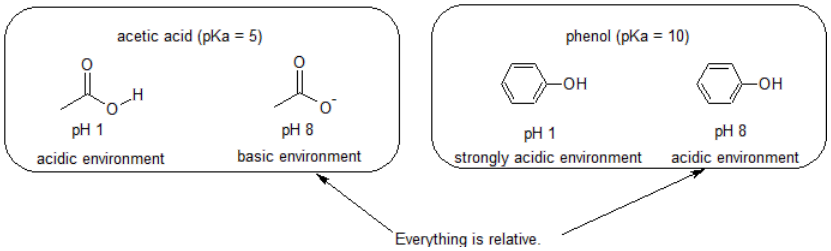
Aldehyde and aromatic protons are not at all acidic (pK_avalues are above 40 – not on our table). The two protons on the carbon next to the carbonyl are slightly acidic, with pK_a values around 19-20 according to the table. The most acidic proton is on the phenol group, so if the compound were to be subjected to a single molar equivalent of strong base, this is the proton that would be donated.

Acidic & Basic Environments - Everything is Relative in Reactivity

Because our goal is understanding dynamic chemical reactivity, we do NOT need to know the specific amount of the protonated and unprotonated forms of a compound. We simply need to know which form is predominate. When the pH of the environment is less than the pKa of the compound, the environment is considered acidic and the compound will exist predominately in its

protonated form. When the pH of the environment is greater than the pKa of the compound, the environment is considered basic and the compound will exist predominately in its deprotonated form.

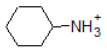
For example, the pKa of acetic acid is about 5. At a pH of 1, the environment is considered acidic and acetic acid exists predominately in its protonated form. At pH 8, the environment is considered basic, and acetic acid becomes deprotonated to form acetate ($CH_3CO_2^-$). Conversely, the pKa of phenol is 10. At pH 8, the environment is considered acidic for phenol and it remains primarily protonated.



It is also important to remember that organic chemistry does NOT have to occur in water so pKa values can be as high as 50.

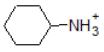
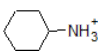
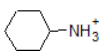
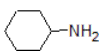
Exercise

1. Complete the table below to indicate whether each compound exists predominantly in its protonated (acidic environment) or deprotonated (basic environment) form.

compound (pKa)	pH 1 environment	pH 8 environment	pH 13 environment
 pKa = 5.1			
 pKa = 10.7			
 pKa = 16			
 pKa = 20			

Answer

1.

compound (pKa)	pH 1 environment	pH 8 environment	pH 13 environment
 pKa = 5.1			
 pKa = 10.7			
 pKa = 16			
 pKa = 20			

4.3: Distinguishing between pH and pKa is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.4: Predicting Relative Acidity

Learning Objective

- Predict relative strengths of acids and bases from their structure, bonding and resonance

Since compounds are neutral, it can be difficult to evaluate and compare their overall stability without going through the tedious process of performing bond energy calculations.

When acidic compounds donate hydrogen ions or accepts electrons, they become ionized. It is much easier to compare ions because we can evaluate the charge density. The lower the charge density, the more stable the ion. Conversely, the higher the charge density, the less stable the ion. Charge density is analogous to density of matter. We place charge in the numerator, instead of mass, and volume can still be found in the denominator.

$$\text{charge density} = \frac{\text{charge}}{\text{volume}} \tag{4.4.1}$$

The six strong acids (HCl, HBr, HI, HNO_3, H_2SO_4, $HClO_4$) fully ionize to form the highly stable anions (Cl^-, Br^-, I^-, NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, ClO_4^-) respectively.

For the remaining weak acids (HA), we can determine their relative acidity by comparing the relative electron densities of their conjugate bases (A^-).

the lower the electron density, the more stable the conjugate base

Structural Effects on Electron Density - Four Considerations

There are four main considerations for evaluating electron density.

1. Identity of the element or atoms holding the charge
2. Can the charge be delocalized by resonance?
3. Are there any inductive effects?
4. Hybridization of orbital holding the charge

These considerations are listed in order of importance and are explained individually, but must be looked at collectively.

Identity of the Element

When comparing the identity of the elements, it depends on the positional relationship of the elements on the periodic table.

Within a Group (aka down a column) As we move down the periodic table, the electrons are occupying higher energy subshells creating a larger atomic size and volume. As the volume increases, the electron density decreases.

Figure **4.4.1** shows spheres representing the atoms of the *s* and *p* blocks from the periodic table to scale, showing the two trends for the atomic radius.

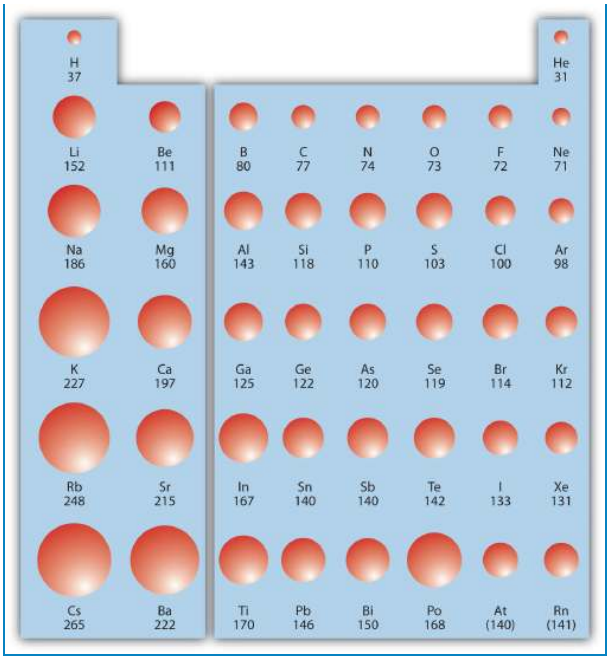
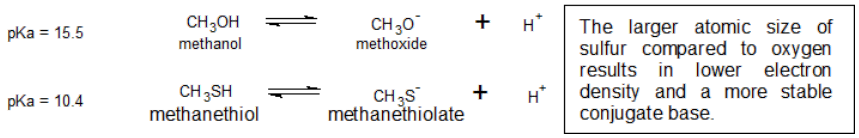


Figure **4.4.1**: Atomic Radii Trends on the Periodic Table. Although there are some reversals in the trend (e.g., see Po in the bottom row), atoms generally get smaller as you go across the periodic table and larger as you go down any one column. Numbers are the radii in pm.

This relationship of atomic size and electron density is illustrated when we compare the relative acidities of methanol, CH_3OH, with methanethiol, CH_3SH. The lower pKa value of 10.4 for methanethiol indicates that it is a stronger acid than methanol with a pKa value of 15.5. It is important to remember that neither compound is considered an acid. These relationships become useful when trying to deprotonate compounds to increase their chemical reactivity in non-aqueous reaction conditions.



Across a Period (aka across a row) As we move across a period of the main group elements, the valence electrons all occupy orbitals in the same shell. These electrons have comparable energy, so this factor does not help us discern differences relative stability. Differences in electronegativity are now the dominant factor. This trend is shown when comparing the pKa values of methane, ammonia, water, and hydrofluoric acid reflects the relative electonegativities of the C < N < O < F.

Compound	pK_a	Reaction
methane	50	$CH_4 \rightleftharpoons CH_3^- + H^+$
ammonia	36	$NH_3 \rightleftharpoons NH_2^- + H^+$
water	14	$H_2O \rightleftharpoons OH^- + H^+$
hydrofluoric acid	3	$HF \rightleftharpoons F^- + H^+$

Periodic trends

First, we will focus on individual atoms, and think about trends associated with the position of an element on the periodic table. We'll use as our first models the simple organic compounds ethane, methylamine, and ethanol, but the concepts apply equally to more complex biomolecules, such as the side chains of alanine, lysine, and serine.

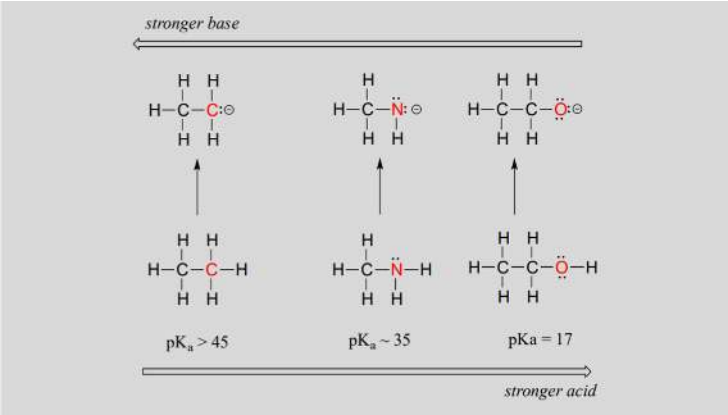


Figure **4.4.2**: Horizontal periodic trend in acidity and basicity. (CC-NC-SA; Timothy Soderberg via UMn Morris Digital Well)

We can see a clear trend in acidity as we move from left to right along the second row of the periodic table from carbon to nitrogen to oxygen. The key to understanding this trend is to consider the hypothetical conjugate base in each case*: the more stable (weaker) the conjugate base, the stronger the acid*. Look at where the negative charge ends up in each conjugate base. In the ethyl anion, the negative charge is borne by carbon, while in the methylamine anion and ethoxide anion the charges are located on a nitrogen and an oxygen, respectively. Remember the periodic trend in electronegativity (section 2.3A): it also increases as we move from left to right along a row, meaning that oxygen is the most electronegative of the three, and carbon the least. *The more electronegative an atom, the better it is able to bear a negative charge*. Thus, the ethoxide anion is the most stab = 0.00le (lowest energy, least basic) of the three conjugate bases, and the ethyl anion is the least stable (highest energy, most basic).

We can use the same set of ideas to explain the difference in basicity between water and ammonia.

$$pK_a = 0.00 \quad H_3O^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2O + H^+$$

$$pK_a = 9.26 \quad NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + H^+$$

By looking at the pK$_a$values for the appropriate conjugate acids, we know that ammonia is more basic than water. Oxygen, as the more electronegative element, holds more tightly to its lone pair than the nitrogen. The nitrogen lone pair, therefore, is more likely to break away and form a new bond to a proton - it is, in other words, more basic. Once again, a more reactive (stronger) conjugate base means a less reactive (weaker) conjugate acid.

When moving vertically within a given column of the periodic table, we again observe a clear periodic trend in acidity. This is best illustrated with the halides: basicity, like electronegativity, increases as we move up the column.

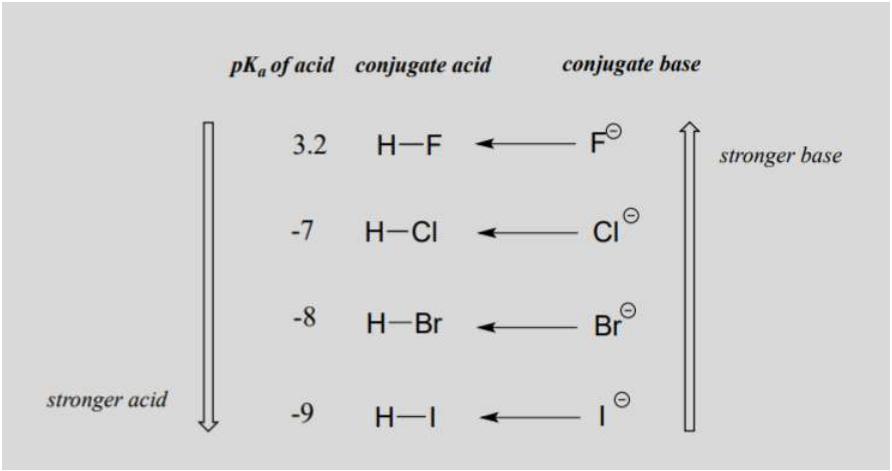


Figure **4.4.4**: Vertical periodic trend in acidity and basicity. (CC-NC-SA; Timothy Soderberg via UMn Morris Digital Well)

Conversely, acidity in the haloacids increases as we move *down* the column.

In order to make sense of this trend, we will once again consider the stability of the conjugate bases. Because fluorine is the most electronegative halogen element, we might expect fluoride to also be the least basic halogen ion. But in fact, it is the *least* stable, and the most basic! It turns out that when moving vertically in the periodic table, the *size* of the atom trumps its electronegativity with regard to basicity. The atomic radius of iodine is approximately twice that of fluorine, so in an iodine ion, the negative charge is spread out over a significantly larger volume:

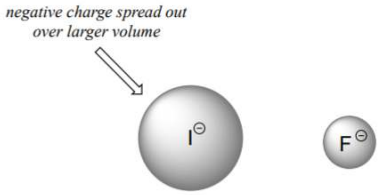


Figure **4.4.5**: In conjugate bases the size of the ion controls basicity. ()

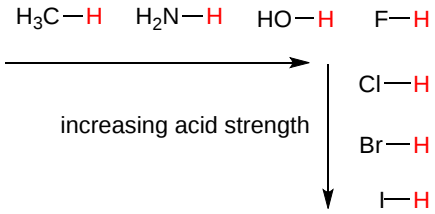
This illustrates a fundamental concept in organic chemistry that is important enough to put in red:

Electrostatic charges, whether positive or negative, are more stable when they are 'spread out' than when they are confined to one atom.

We will see this idea expressed again and again throughout our study of organic reactivity, in many different contexts. For now, the concept is applied only to the influence of atomic radius on anion stability. Because fluoride is the least stable (most basic) of the halide conjugate bases, HF is the least acidic of the haloacids, only slightly stronger than acetic acid. HI, with a pK_a of about -9, is one the strongest acids known.

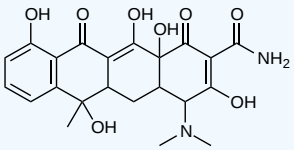
More importantly to the study of biological organic chemistry, this trend tells us that thiols are more acidic than alcohols. The pK_a of the thiol group on the cysteine side chain, for example, is approximately 8.3, while the pK_a for the hydroxyl on the serine side chain is on the order of 17.

To reiterate: acid strength increases as we move to the right along a row of the periodic table, and as we move down a column.



Example 4.4.1:

Draw the structure of the conjugate base that would form if the compound below were to react with 1 molar equivalent of sodium hydroxide:



Solution

Is resonance possible to localize the charge?

In the previous section we focused our attention on periodic trends - the differences in acidity and basicity between groups where the exchangeable proton was bound to different elements. Now, it is time to think about how the structure of different organic groups contributes to their relative acidity or basicity, even when we are talking about the same element acting as the proton donor/acceptor. When evaluating conjugate bases for the presence of the resonance contributors, remember to look for movable electrons as described in section 1.10 of this chapter. Delocalizing electrons over two or more atoms lowers the electron density.

The first model pair we will consider is ethanol and acetic acid, but the conclusions we reach will be equally valid for all alcohol and carboxylic acid groups. Despite the fact that they are both oxygen acids, the pK_a values of ethanol and acetic acid are very different. What makes a carboxylic acid so much more acidic than an alcohol? As before, we begin by considering the conjugate bases.

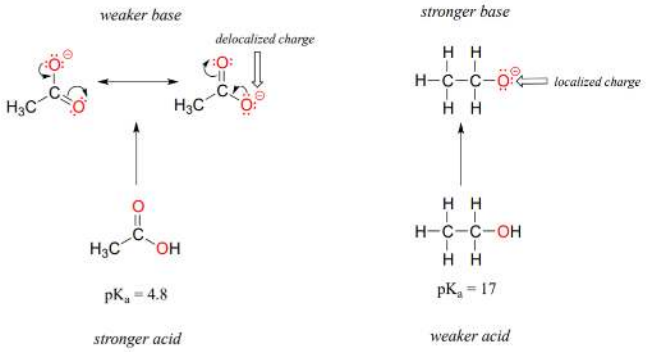


Figure 4.4.8: (CC-NC-SA; Timothy Soderberg via UMn Morris Digital Well)

In both species, the negative charge on the conjugate base is held by an oxygen, so periodic trends cannot be invoked. For acetic acid, however, there is a key difference: a resonance contributor can be drawn in which the negative charge is localized on the second oxygen of the group. The two resonance forms for the conjugate base are equal in energy, according to our 'rules of resonance' (section 2.2C). What this means, you may recall, is that the negative charge on the acetate ion is not located on one oxygen or the other: rather it is shared between the two. Chemists use the term 'delocalization of charge' to describe this situation. In the ethoxide ion, by contrast, the negative charge is 'locked' on the single oxygen – it has nowhere else to go.

Now is the time to think back to that statement from the previous section that was so important that it got printed in bold font in its own paragraph – in fact, it is so important that we'll just say it again: "Electrostatic charges, whether positive or negative, are more stable when they are 'spread out' than when they are confined to one atom." Now, we are seeing this concept in another context, where a charge is being 'spread out' (in other words, delocalized) *by resonance*, rather than simply by the size of the atom involved.

The delocalization of charge by resonance has a very powerful effect on the reactivity of organic molecules, enough to account for the difference of over 12 pK_a units between ethanol and acetic acid (and remember, pK_a is a log expression, so we are talking about a difference of over 10^{12} between the acidity constants for the two molecules). The acetate ion is that much more stable than the ethoxide ion, all due to the effects of resonance delocalization.

The resonance effect also nicely explains why a nitrogen atom is basic when it is in an amine, but *not* basic when it is part of an amide group. Recall that in an amide, there is significant double-bond character to the carbon-nitrogen bond, due to a second resonance contributor in which the nitrogen lone pair is part of a p bond.

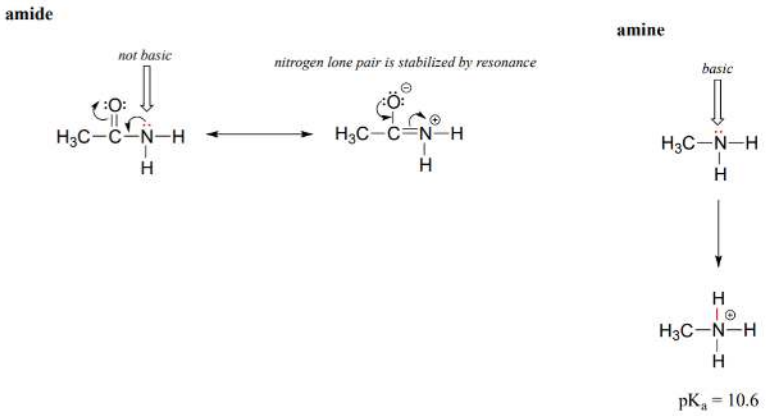
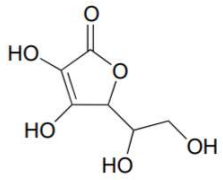


Figure 4.4.9: (CC-NC-SA; Timothy Soderberg via UMn Morris Digital Well)

While the electron lone pair of an amine nitrogen is 'stuck' in one place, the lone pair on an amide nitrogen is delocalized by resonance. Notice that in this case, we are extending our central statement to say that electron density – in the form of a lone pair – is stabilized by resonance delocalization, even though there is not a negative charge involved. Here's another way to think about it: the lone pair on an amide nitrogen is not available for bonding with a proton – these two electrons are too 'comfortable' being part of the delocalized pi-bonding system. The lone pair on an amine nitrogen, by contrast, is not part of a delocalized p system, and is very ready to form a bond with any acidic proton that might be nearby.

Often it requires some careful thought to predict the most acidic proton on a molecule. Ascorbic acid, also known as Vitamin C, has a pK_a of 4.1.

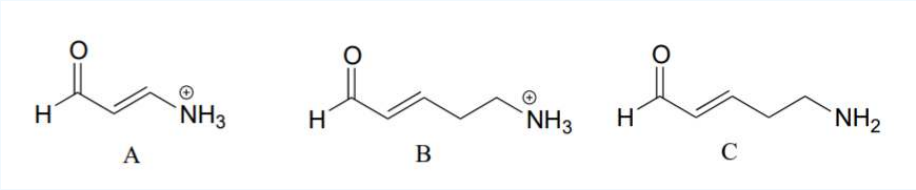


ascorbic acid
(Vitamin C)

There are four hydroxyl groups on this molecule – which one is the most acidic? If we consider all four possible conjugate bases, we find that there is only one for which we can delocalized the negative charge over *two* oxygen atoms.

Example 4.4.1:

Rank the compounds below from most acidic to least acidic, and explain your reasoning.

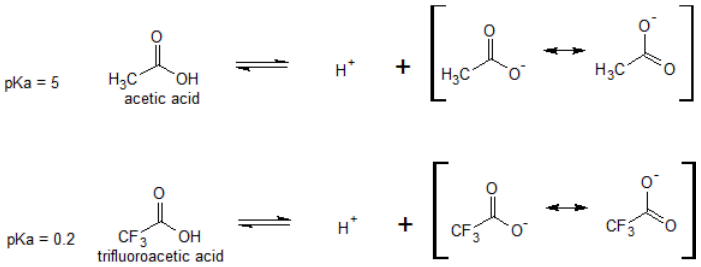


(CC-NC-SA; Timothy Soderberg via UMn Morris Digital Well)

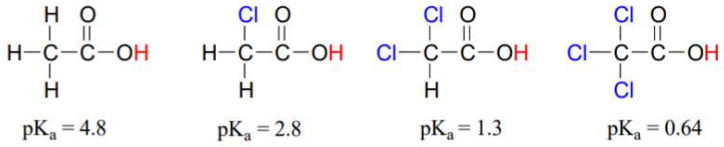
Inductive Effects

The inductive effect is an experimentally observed effect of the transmission of charge through a chain of atoms in a molecule, resulting in a permanent dipole in a bond. Inductive effects decrease quickly with distance. The inductive effect can be electron donating which helps stabilize positive charge. Alkyl groups (hydrocarbons) are inductive electron donators. The inductive effect can also be electron withdrawing. Electronegativity indicates the strength of electron withdrawing induction. Halogens are inductive electron withdrawing groups.

The effects of induction on relative acidity can also be seen when comparing acetic acid with trifluoroacetic acid. The difference in acidity does not have to do with resonance delocalization because no additional resonance structures can be drawn for the fluorinated molecule. The fluorine atoms inductively pull some of the electron density away from the carboxylate ion to further delocalize the negative charge of the conjugate base.



Compare the pK_a values of acetic acid and its mono-, di-, and tri-chlorinated derivatives:

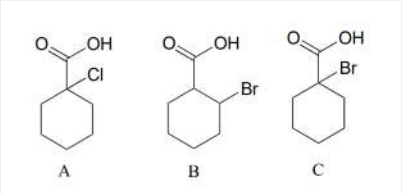


(CC-NC-SA; Timothy Soderberg via UMn Morris Digital Well)

The presence of the chlorines clearly increases the acidity of the carboxylic acid group. A chlorine atom is more electronegative than a hydrogen, and thus is able to 'induce', or 'pull' electron density towards itself, away from the carboxylate group. In helping to further spread out the electron density of the conjugate base, which as we know has a stabilizing effect. In this context, the chlorine substituent is called an **electron-withdrawing group**. Notice that the pK_a-lowering effect of each chlorine atom, while significant, is not as dramatic as the delocalizing resonance effect illustrated by the difference in pK_a values between an alcohol and a carboxylic acid. In general, *resonance effects are more powerful than inductive effects*. The inductive electron-withdrawing effect of the chlorines takes place through covalent bonds, and its influence decreases markedly with distance – thus a chlorine two carbons away from a carboxylic acid group has a decreased effect compared to a chlorine just one carbon away.

Exercise

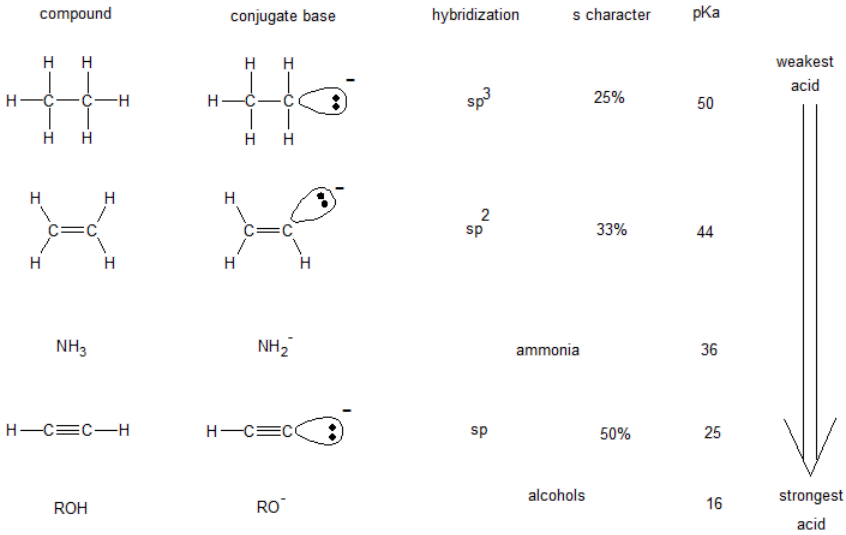
Rank the compounds below from most acidic to least acidic, and explain your reasoning.



Solution

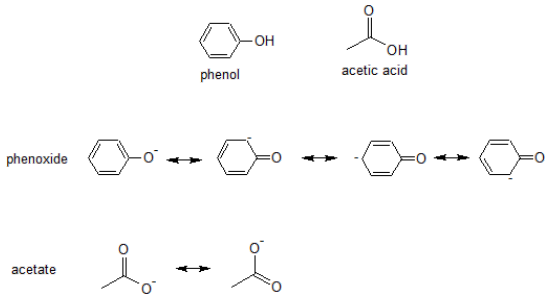
Orbital Hybridization

The hybridization of an orbital affects its electronegativity. Within a shell, the s orbitals occupy the region closer to the nucleus than the p orbitals. Therefore, the spherical s orbitals are more electronegative than the lobed p orbitals. The relative electronegativity of hybridized orbitals is sp > sp^2 > sp^3. This trend indicates the sp hybridized orbitals are more stable with a -1 charge than sp^3 hybridized orbitals. The table below shows how orbital hybridization compares with the identity of the atom when predicting relative acidity.



Guided Practice

Let's practice by comparing the relative acidity of phenol with acetic acid.



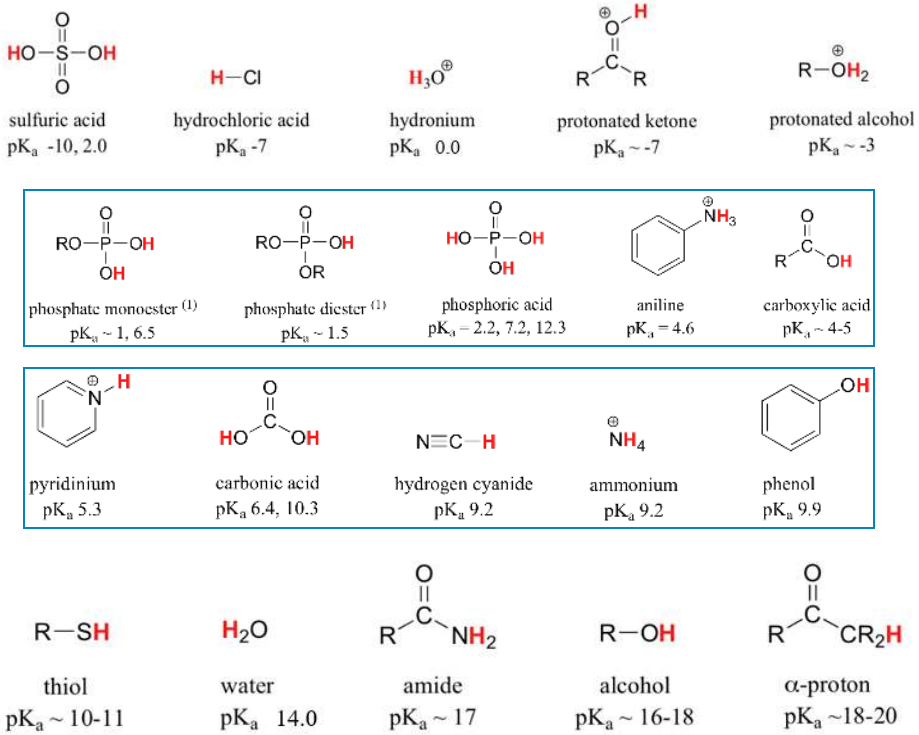
Which compound is the stronger acid - phenol or acetic acid?

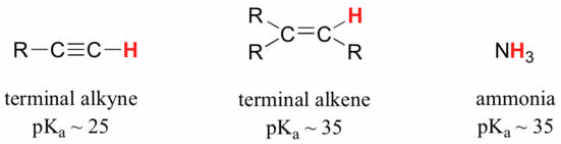
To answer this question, we draw all the relevant resonance contributors for each conjugate base, phenoxide and acetate, respectively.

Phenoxide has four resonance contributors, but three of the contributors have a negative charge on a carbon atom while both resonance contributors for acetate have a negative charge on the more electronegative element oxygen. There are no inductive effects or orbital hybridization differences to consider in this example, so we would predict acetic acid to be the stronger acid. The acetate ion is more stable than the phenoxide ion, so we would expect acetic acid to be the stronger acid.

The pKa table below supports our prediction. Acetic acid has a pKa of 4.7 while phenol has a pKa of 9.9.

A word of caution: when using the pK_a table, be absolutely sure that you are considering the correct conjugate acid/base pair. If you are asked to say something about the basicity of ammonia (NH_3) compared to that of ethoxide ion ($CH_3CH_2O^-$), for example, the relevant pK_a values to consider are 9.2 (the pK_a of ammonium ion) and 16 (the pK_a of ethanol). From these numbers, you know that ethoxide is the stronger base. Do not make the mistake of using the pK_a value of 38: this is the pK_a of ammonia *acting as an acid*, and tells you how basic the NH_2^- ion is (very basic!)





Contributors and Attributions

- **Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis** by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Layne A. Morsch (University of Illinois Springfield)

4.4: Predicting Relative Acidity is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.5: Lewis Acids and Bases

Learning Objective

- Use the definition of Lewis Acids and Bases to recognize electron movement in reactions

Acids and bases are an important part of chemistry. One of the most applicable theories is the Lewis acid/base motif that extends the definition of an acid and base beyond H^+ and OH^- ions as described by Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases.

Introduction

The Brønsted acid-base theory has been used throughout the history of acid and base chemistry. However, this theory is very restrictive and focuses primarily on acids and bases acting as proton donors and acceptors. Sometimes conditions arise where the theory doesn't necessarily fit, such as in solids and gases. In 1923, G.N. Lewis from UC Berkeley proposed an alternate theory to describe acids and bases. His theory gave a generalized explanation of acids and bases based on structure and bonding. Through the use of the Lewis definition of acids and bases, chemists are now able to predict a wider variety of acid-base reactions. Lewis' theory used electrons instead of proton transfer and specifically stated that an acid is a species that accepts an electron pair while a base donates an electron pair.

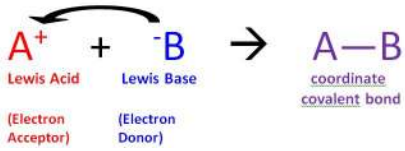


Figure **4.5.1**: Above: A Lewis Base (B) donates it electrons to a Lewis Acid (A) resulting in a coordinate covalently bonded compound, also known as an adduct.

The reaction of a Lewis acid and a Lewis base will produce a coordinate covalent bond, as shown in Figure **4.5.1** above. A coordinate covalent bond is just a type of covalent bond in which one reactant gives it electron pair to another reactant. In this case the lewis base donates its electrons to the lewis acid. When they do react this way the resulting product is called an addition compound, or more commonly an adduct.

- Lewis Acid: a species that accepts an electron pair (i.e., an electrophile) and will have vacant orbitals
- Lewis Base: a species that donates an electron pair (i.e., a nucleophile) and will have lone-pair electrons

Lewis Acids

Lewis acids accept an electron pair. Lewis Acids are Electrophilic meaning that they are electron attracting. When bonding with a base the acid uses its lowest unoccupied molecular orbital or LUMO (Figure 2).

- Various species can act as Lewis acids. All cations are Lewis acids since they are able to accept electrons. (e.g., Cu^{2+}, Fe^{2+}, Fe^{3+})
- An atom, ion, or molecule with an incomplete octet of electrons can act as an Lewis acid (e.g., BF_3, AlF_3).
- Molecules where the central atom can have more than 8 valence shell electrons can be electron acceptors, and thus are classified as Lewis acids (e.g., $SiBr_4$, SiF_4).
- Molecules that have multiple bonds between two atoms of different electronegativities (e.g., CO_2, SO_2)

Lewis Bases

Lewis Bases donate an electron pair. Lewis Bases are Nucleophilic meaning that they “attack” a positive charge with their lone pair. They utilize the highest occupied molecular orbital or HOMO (Figure 2). An atom, ion, or molecule with a lone-pair of electrons can thus be a Lewis base. Each of the following anions can "give up" their electrons to an acid, e.g., OH^-, CN^-, CH_3COO^-, $:NH_3$, $H_2O:$, $CO:$. Lewis base's HOMO (highest occupied molecular orbital) interacts with the Lewis acid's LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbital) to create bonded molecular orbitals. Both Lewis Acids and Bases contain HOMO and LUMOs but only the HOMO is considered for Bases and only the LUMO is considered for Acids (Figure **4.5.2**).

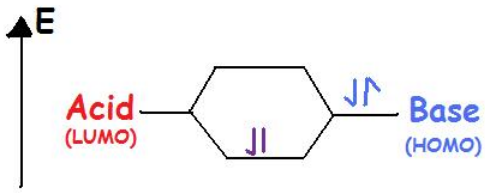


Figure **4.5.2**: Lewis Acids have vacant orbitals so they are in a lower energy level. While lewis bases have lone pair electrons to share and thus occupy a higher energy level.

Complex Ion / Coordination Compounds

Complex ions are polyatomic ions, which are formed from a central metal ion that has other smaller ions joined around it. While Brønsted theory can't explain this reaction Lewis acid-base theory can help. A Lewis Base is often the ligand of a coordination compound with the metal acting as the Lewis Acid (see Oxidation States of Transition Metals).

$$Al^{3+} + 6H_2O \rightleftharpoons [Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+} \tag{4.5.1}$$

The aluminum ion is the metal and is a cation with an unfilled valence shell, and it is a Lewis Acid. Water has lone-pair electrons and is an anion, thus it is a Lewis Base.

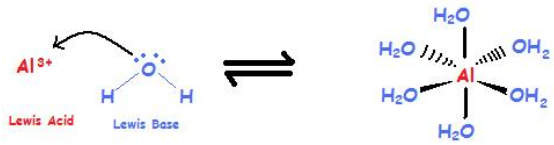


Figure **4.5.3**: Aluminum ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts the electrons from water, which is acting as a Lewis base. This helps explain the resulting hexaaquaaluminum(III) ion.

The Lewis Acid accepts the electrons from the Lewis Base which donates the electrons. Another case where Lewis acid-base theory can explain the resulting compound is the reaction of ammonia with Zn^{2+}.

$$Zn^{2+} + 4NH_3 \rightarrow [Zn(NH_3)_4]^{4+} \tag{4.5.2}$$

Similarly, the Lewis Acid is the zinc Ion and the Lewis Base is NH_3. Note how Brønsted Theory of Acids and Bases will not be able to explain how this reaction occurs because there are no H^+ or OH^- ions involved. Thus, Lewis Acid and Base Theory allows us to explain the formation of other species and complex ions which do not ordinarily contain hydronium or hydroxide ions. One is able to expand the definition of an acid and a base via the Lewis Acid and Base Theory. The lack of H^+ or OH^- ions in many complex ions can make it harder to identify which species is an acid and which is a base. Therefore, by defining a species that donates an electron pair and a species that accepts an electron pair, the definition of a acid and base is expanded.

Amphoterism

As of now you should know that acids and bases are distinguished as two separate things however some substances can be both an acid and a base. You may have noticed this with water, which can act as both an acid or a base. This ability of water to do this makes it an amphoteric molecule. Water can act as an acid by donating its proton to the base and thus becoming its conjugate acid, OH-. However, water can also act as a base by accepting a proton from an acid to become its conjugate base, H_3O^+.

- Water acting as an Acid:

$$H_2O + NH_3 \rightarrow NH_4^+ + OH^- \tag{4.5.3}$$

- Water acting as a Base:

$$H_2O + HCl \rightarrow Cl^- + H_3O^+ \tag{4.5.4}$$

You may have noticed that the degree to which a molecule acts depends on the medium in which the molecule has been placed in. Water does not act as an acid in an acid medium and does not act as a base in a basic medium. Thus, the medium which a molecule is placed in has an effect on the properties of that molecule. Other molecules can also act as either an acid or a base. For example,

$$Al(OH)_3 + 3H^+ \rightarrow Al^{3+} + 3H_2O \tag{4.5.5}$$

- where $Al(OH)_3$ is acting as a Lewis Base.

$$Al(OH)_3 + OH^- \rightarrow Al(OH)_4^- \tag{4.5.6}$$

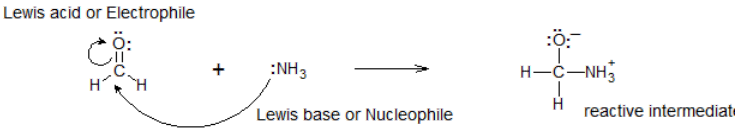
- where $Al(OH)_3$ is acting as an Lewis Acid.

Note how the amphoteric properties of the $Al(OH)_3$ depends on what type of environment that molecule has been placed in.

Lewis Bases & Acids as Nucleophiles & Electrophiles

The emphasis on electron flow in the Lewis Theory of acids and bases is an important foundation for learning and predicting reaction mechanisms. The electron rich Lewis base can be described as a nucleophile. Nucleophiles are attracted to and can react with compounds or ions that have full or partial positive charge (like the nucleus). The electron poor Lewis acids can be described as electrophiles. Electrophiles attract nucleophiles until orbital overlap occurs between them triggering a reaction. At this point in the course, we can indicate electron flow using curved arrows when both the reactant(s) and product(s) are given.

Example

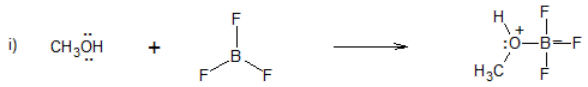


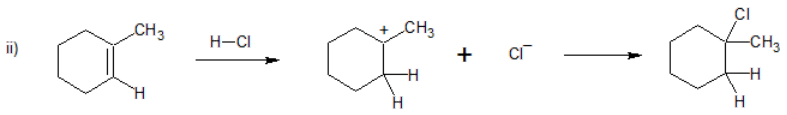
Exercises

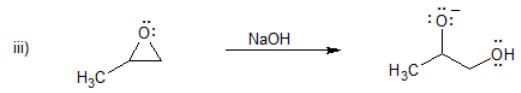
For the following reactions,

a) add curved arrows to indicate the electron flow

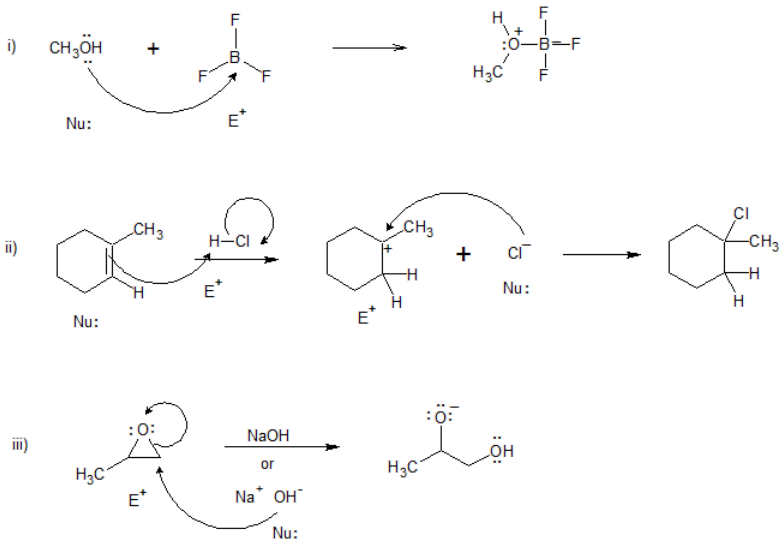
b) label each reactant as the Nu (nucleophile) or E^+ (electrophile).







Solutions



Outside Links

- Very Detailed review of Lewis Acids and Bases, covering all topics of this type of chemistry
- Very Complex and Detailed "Lewis Acid and Base Interaction Matrix"
- Youtube Video about Lewis Acids/Bases

References

1. Cycloaddition on Ge(100) of the Lewis Acid AlCl3. Soon Jung Jung,, Young-Sang Youn,, Hangil Lee,,, Ki-Jeong Kim,,, Bong Soo Kim, and, Sehun Kim,. *Journal of the American Chemical Society* 2008 130 (11), 3288-3289
2. Fluorescence Maxima of 10-Methylacridone? Metal Ion Salt Complexes: A Convenient and Quantitative Measure of Lewis Acidity of Metal Ion Salts. Shunichi Fukuzumi and, Kei Ohkubo. *Journal of the American Chemical Society 2002* 124 (35), 10270-10271.
3. Harwood, William S., F. G. Herring, Jeffry D. Madura, and Ralph H. Petrucci. General Chemistry Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2007. 695-96.

Contributors and Attributions

- Adam Abudra (UCD), Tajinder Badial (UCD)

4.5: Lewis Acids and Bases is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Alkanes and Conformations

5.1: Hydrocarbons and the Homologous Series
5.2: Generic (Abbreviated) Structures (aka R Groups)
5.3: Overview of the IUPAC Naming Strategy
5.4: Alkanes
5.5: Uses and Sources of Alkanes
5.6: Cycloalkanes
5.7: Haloalkane - Classification and Nomenclature
5.8: Hydrocarbon Functional Groups
5.9: Physical Properties of Alkanes
5.10: Structure and Conformations of Alkanes
5.11: Conformations of Butane
5.12: Conformations of Higher Alkanes
5.13: Cycloalkanes and Ring Strain
5.14: Cyclohexane Conformations
5.15: Conformations of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes
5.16: Cis-trans Isomerism in Cycloalkanes
5.17: Conformations of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes
5.18: Additional Exercises
5.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises

5: Alkanes and Conformations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.1: Hydrocarbons and the Homologous Series

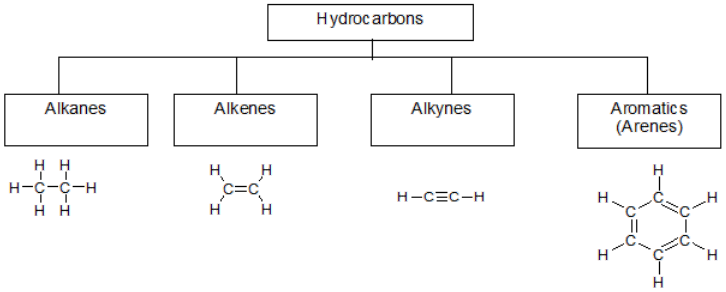
Learning Objective

- classify hydrocarbons as saturated or unsaturated
- classify hydrocarbons as alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, cycloalkanes, or aromatics (arenes)
- apply the homologous series to organic molecules with 1-10 carbons

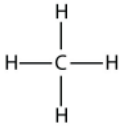
Hydrocarbon Classifications

Hydrocarbons are organic compounds that contain **only** carbon and hydrogen. The inherent ability of hydrocarbons to bond to themselves is known as catenation, and allows hydrocarbon to form more complex molecules, such as cyclohexane and benzene. Catenation comes from the fact that the bond character between carbon atoms is entirely non-polar.

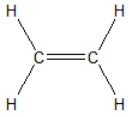
The four general classes of hydrocarbons are: alkanes, alkenes, alkynes and arenes. Aromatic compounds derive their names from the fact that many of these compounds in the early days of discovery were grouped because they were oils with fragrant odors. The classifications for hydrocarbons are summarized below.



Saturated hydrocarbons (alkanes) are the simplest of the hydrocarbon species. They are composed entirely of single bonds and are saturated with hydrogen. The general formula for saturated hydrocarbons is C_nH_{2n+2} (assuming non-cyclic structures). Saturated hydrocarbons are the basis of petroleum fuels and are found as either linear or branched species.The simplest alkanes have their C atoms bonded in a straight chain; these are called *normal* alkanes. They are named according to the number of carbon atoms in the chain. The smallest alkane is methane:



Unsaturated hydrocarbons have double and/or triple bonds between carbon atoms. Those with double bond are called alkenes and have the general formula C_nH_{2n} (assuming non-cyclic structures). Those containing triple bonds are called alkynes and have general formula C_nH_{2n-2}. The smallest alkene—ethene—has two C atoms and is also known by its common name ethylene and the smallest alkyne is ethyne, also known as acetylene.



ethene

C_2H_4

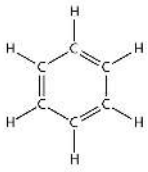
ethyne (acetylene)

C_2H_2

Cycloalkanes are hydrocarbons containing one or more carbon rings to which hydrogen atoms are attached. The prefix "cyclo" is added to the name to communicate the ring structure. The general formula for a saturated hydrocarbon containing one ring is C_nH_{2n}.

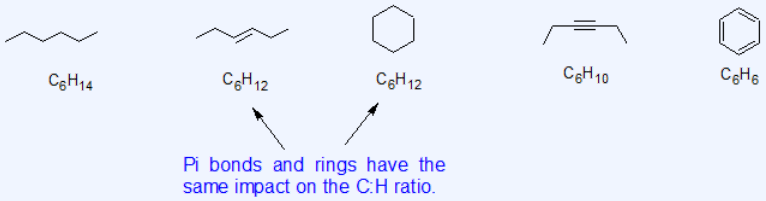


Aromatic hydrocarbons, also known as arenes, are hydrocarbons that have at least one aromatic ring. Aromatic compounds contain the benzene unit. Benzene itself is composed of six C atoms in a ring, with alternating single and double C–C bonds:



For most compounds, information beyond the chemical formula will be needed to elucidate their structure. However, the ratio of C:H in a chemical formula can provide insights into the chemical structure.

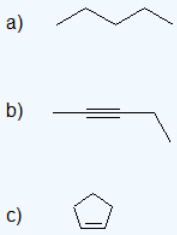
For example, let's look at some of the possible structures and chemical formulas for hydrocarbons containing six carbon atoms.



The saturated alkane has the highest ratio of hydrogen to carbon. The unsaturated alkene and the six membered alkane ring share the same chemical formula. It is important to remember this relationship. The unsaturated alkyne has a lower ratio of hydrogen to carbon than alkenes with a second pi bond. Benzene rings have the lowest hydrogen ratio to carbon at 1:1.

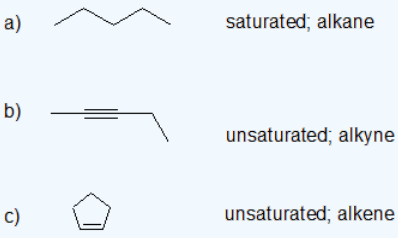
Exercise

1. Classify the following compounds are saturated or unsaturated. For unsaturated hydrocarbons, refine the classification by indicating whether the compound is an alkene, alkyne, or arene.



Answer

1.



The number of carbons continuously bonded together is an important structural feature and is described using the Homologous Series. In first year organic chemistry, the first ten names of the Homologous Series are usually all that need to be memorized.

Of course, your professor will set the standard. Most of the prefixes are familiar from the Greek prefixes for binary covalent compounds. It is the prefixes for the first four carbon chain lengths that may be unfamiliar. Interestingly, three of these hydrocarbons frequently appear in every day life. Methane gas is a primary component of flatulence and is the ingredient that ignites when farts are lit - don't try this at home. Propane and butane are gases at room temperature. They are stored under pressure to create the liquid state. Propane is the fuel for bbqs, while butane is used in lighters. The suffix "ane" is used to distinguish between the longest continuous carbon chain, while the shorter carbon branches (substituents) are indicated with "yl" as the suffix.

THE HOMOLOGOUS SERIES

# C's	Alkane Structure	Parent name	Substituent name
1	CH_4	methane	methyl
2	CH_3CH_3	ethane	ethyl
3	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	propyl
4	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane	butyl
5	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	pentane	pentyl
6	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	hexane	hexyl
7	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	heptane	heptyl
8	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	octane	octyl
9	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	nonane	nonyl
10	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	decane	decyl

Exercise

2. Complete the table below.

Condensed Structural Formula	Chemical Name
	propane
C_6H_6	
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	

Answer

2.

Condensed Structural Formula	Chemical Name
$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane
C_6H_6	benzene
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	hexane

Contributors and Attributions

- Wikipedia

5.1: Hydrocarbons and the Homologous Series is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

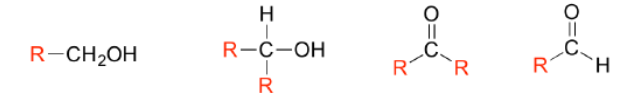
5.2: Generic (Abbreviated) Structures (aka R Groups)

learning objective

- use R groups to draw generic functional groups - refer to section 3.1

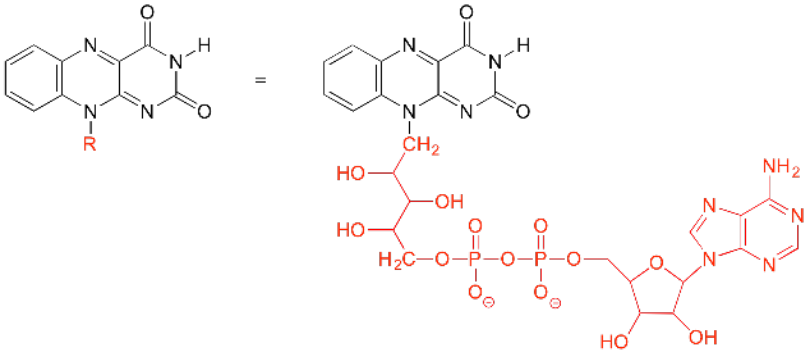
Drawing Generic (abbreviated) Organic Structures

In chapter 2, we learned to recognize and distinguish between organic functional groups. Often when drawing organic structures, chemists find it convenient to use the letter 'R' to designate part of a molecule outside of the region of interest. "R" represents the "Rest of the Molecule". If we just want to refer in general to a functional group without drawing a specific molecule, for example, we can use 'R groups' to focus attention on the group of interest:



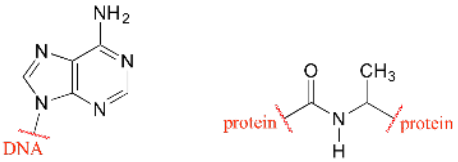
a primary alcohol a secondary alcohol a ketone an aldehyde

The 'R' group is a convenient way to abbreviate the structures of large biological molecules, especially when we are interested in something that is occurring specifically at one location on the molecule. For example, in chapter 15 when we look at biochemical oxidation-reduction reactions involving the flavin molecule, we will abbreviate a large part of the flavin structure which does not change at all in the reactions of interest:



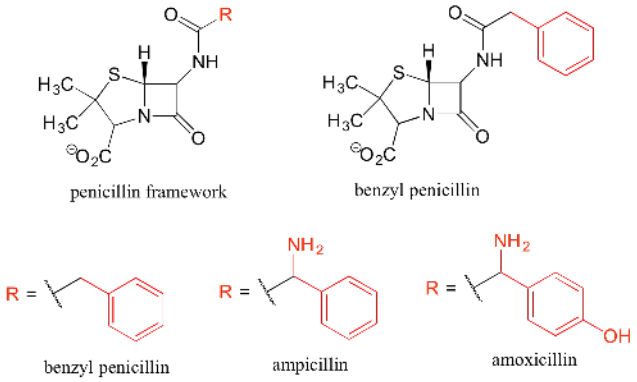
flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)

As an alternative, we can use a 'break' symbol to indicate that we are looking at a small piece or section of a larger molecule. This is used commonly in the context of drawing groups on large polymers such as proteins or DNA.



an adenine base in DNA a small section of a protein

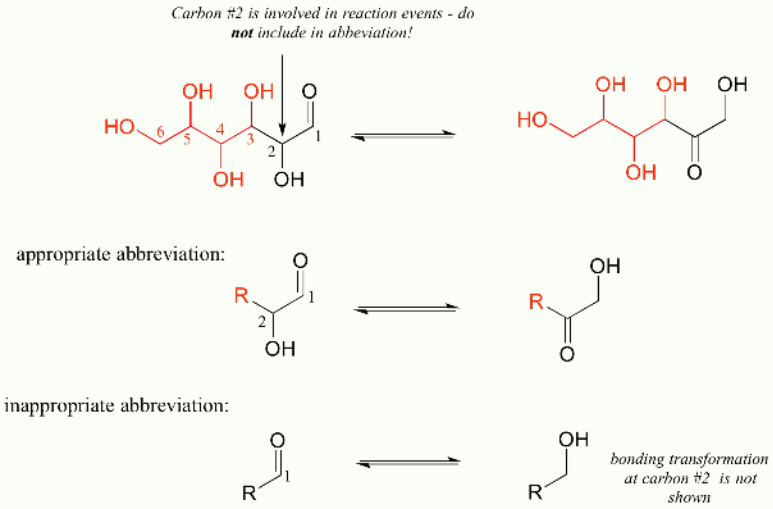
Finally, 'R' groups can be used to concisely illustrate a series of related compounds, such as the family of penicillin-based antibiotics.



Using abbreviations appropriately is a very important skill to develop when studying organic chemistry in a biological context, because although many biomolecules are very large and complex (and take forever to draw!), usually we are focusing on just one small part of the molecule where a change is taking place.

As a rule, *you should never abbreviate any atom involved in a bond-breaking or bond-forming event that is being illustrated:* only abbreviate that part of the molecule which is not involved in the reaction of interest.

For example, carbon #2 in the reactant/product below most definitely is involved in bonding changes, and therefore should not be included in the 'R' group.

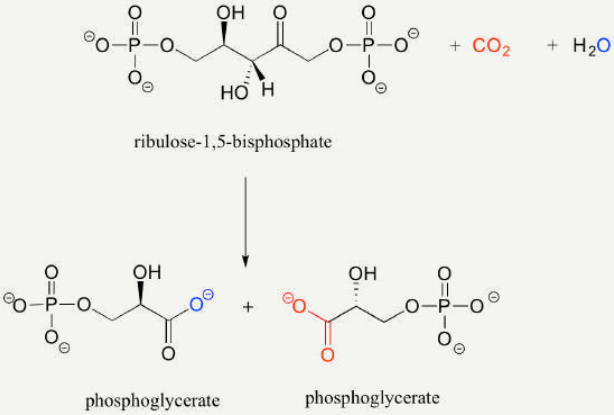


If you are unsure whether to draw out part of a structure or abbreviate it, the safest thing to do is to draw it out.

1. a) If you intend to draw out the chemical details of a reaction in which the methyl ester functional group of cocaine (see earlier figure) was converted to a carboxylate plus methanol, what would be an appropriate abbreviation to use for the cocaine structure (assuming that you *only* wanted to discuss the chemistry specifically occurring at the ester group)?

b) Below is the (somewhat complicated) reaction catalyzed by an enzyme known as 'Rubisco', by which plants 'fix' carbon dioxide. Carbon dioxide and the oxygen of water are

colored red and blue respectively to help you see where those atoms are incorporated into the products. Propose an appropriate abbreviation for the starting compound (ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate), using two different 'R' groups, R_1 and R_2.



Solutions to exercises

5.2: Generic (Abbreviated) Structures (aka R Groups) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.3: Overview of the IUPAC Naming Strategy

learning objectives

- name alkanes, cycloalkanes, alkenes, alkynes, alkyl halides, ethers, alcohols, amines, benzene and its derivatives, aldehydes, ketones, amines, carboxylic acids, and carboxylic acid derivatives using IUPAC (systematic) and selected common name nomenclature
- draw the structure of alkanes, cycloalkanes, alkenes, alkynes, alkyl halides, ethers, alcohols, amines, benzene and its derivatives, aldehydes, ketones, amines, carboxylic acids, and carboxylic acid derivatives from the IUPAC (systematic) and selected common names

Overview of the IUPAC System for Naming Organic Compounds

The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) has established the rules of nomenclature of all chemical compounds. IUPAC nomenclature can also be called "systematic" nomenclature because there is an overall system and structure to the names. This section provides an overview of the general naming strategy and structure for organic compounds.

Naming organic compounds according to the IU{AC system requires up to four pieces of information

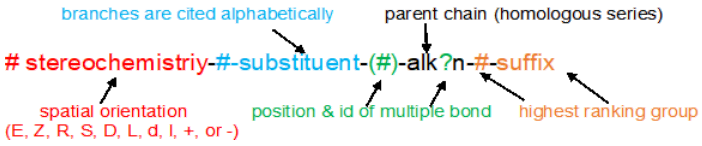
1. recognize & prioritize the functional group(s) present

2. identify & number the longest continuous carbon chain to give the highest ranking group the lowest possible number

3. cite the substituents (branches) alphabetically using the numbering determined above

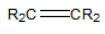
4. recognize & classify any stereochemistry (E/Z, R/S, cis/trans, etc)

With these four pieces of information, the IUPAC name is written using the format below. This same format applies to **ALL** the organic compounds.



Recognize & Prioritize the Functional Group(s) Present

The IUPAC Rules of Organic Nomenclature assume that the following table is understood and memorized.

Structure	Classification	Suffix Name	Substituent Name
higher priority 	Carboxylic acid	-oic acid	carboxy-
	Ester	-oate	alkoxycarbonyl-
	Amide	-amide	amido-
	Nitrile	-nitrile	cyano-
	Aldehyde	-al	formyl-
	Ketone	-one	oxo-
	Alcohol	-ol	hydroxy-
	Amine	-amine	amino-
	Alkene	-ene	alken-
	Alkyne	-yne	alkyn-
	Alkane*	-ane	alkyl-
	Ether*	---	alkoxy-
lower priority 	Alkyl halide*	---	halo-

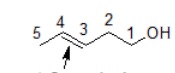
*Same overall priority, prioritize by structure as described in the appendix

Identify & Number the Longest Continuous Carbon Chain with the Highest Priority Group

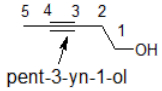
The longest continuous carbon chain (parent) is named using the Homologous Series, as well as any carbon branches. The suffixes and location within the name distinguish between the parent and the branches.

When Alkenes and Alkynes have Lower Priority

The hydrocarbon suffixes differ in the letter preceeding the "n". When alkenes and alkynes occur in compounds with higher priority functional groups, then the distinction between hydrocarbons is communicated with a single letter: "e", or "y" for alkenes and alkynes, respectively, An example is shown below to illustrate the application of this rule.



pent-3-en-1-ol



pent-3-yn-1-ol

substituents (branches) alphabetically

The major substituents are listed above and need to be memorized. There are a few additional substituents that will introduced later in the text.

Stereochemistry

Distinguishing spatial orientations of atoms (stereochemistry) are communicated at the beginning of the name using the appropriate symbols, such as E/Z, R/S, cis/trans, etc. This nomenclature will be discussed when it is possible for a functional group.

5.3: Overview of the IUPAC Naming Strategy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.4: Alkanes

learning objectives

- name alkanes using IUPAC (systematic) and selected common name nomenclature
- draw the structure of alkanes from IUPAC (systematic) and selected common names

Alkanes are hydrocarbons that can be described by the general formula C_nH_{2n+2}. They consist only of carbon and hydrogen and contain only single bonds. Alkanes are also known as "saturated hydrocarbons."

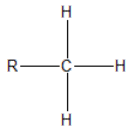
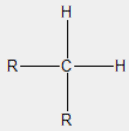
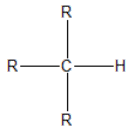
The following table contains the systematic names for the first twenty straight chain alkanes. It will be important to familiarize yourself with these names because they will be the basis for naming many other organic molecules throughout your course of study.

Name	Molecular Formula	Condensed Structural Formula
Methane	CH_4	CH_4
Ethane	C_2H_6	CH_3CH_3
Propane	C_3H_8	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$
Butane	C_4H_{10}	$CH_3(CH_2)_2CH_3$
Pentane	C_5H_{12}	$CH_3(CH_2)_3CH_3$
Hexane	C_6H_{14}	$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$
Heptane	C_7H_{16}	$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_3$
Octane	C_8H_{18}	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_3$
Nonane	C_9H_{20}	$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_3$
Decane	$C_{10}H_{22}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_8CH_3$
Undecane	$C_{11}H_{24}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_9CH_3$
Dodecane	$C_{12}H_{26}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{10}CH_3$
Tridecane	$C_{13}H_{28}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{11}CH_3$
Tetradecane	$C_{14}H_{30}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{12}CH_3$
Pentadecane	$C_{15}H_{32}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{13}CH_3$
Hexadecane	$C_{16}H_{34}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CH_3$
Heptadecane	$C_{17}H_{36}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{15}CH_3$
Octadecane	$C_{18}H_{38}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{16}CH_3$
Nonadecane	$C_{19}H_{40}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{17}CH_3$
Eicosane	$C_{20}H_{42}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_{18}CH_3$

Carbon Atom Classifications

To assign the prefixes sec-, which stands for secondary, and tert-, for tertiary, it is important that we first learn how to classify carbon atoms. If a carbon is attached to only one other carbon, it is called a primary carbon. If a carbon is attached to two other

carbons, it is called a seconday carbon. A tertiary carbon is attached to three other carbons and last, a quaternary carbon is attached to four other carbons. These terms are summarixed with an example in the table below.

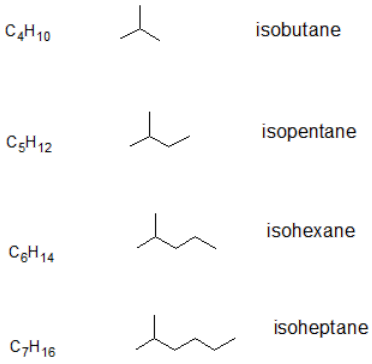
Classification	Example
methyl	CH_4
primary	
secondary	
tertiary	

Using Common Names with Branched Alkanes

Certain branched alkanes have common names that are still widely used today. These common names make use of prefixes, such as ***iso***-, ***sec***-, ***tert***-, and ***neo***-.

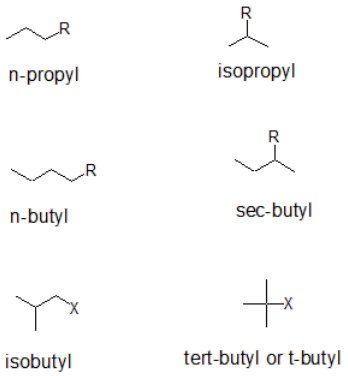
Isoalkanes

The prefix ***iso***-, which stands for isomer, is commonly given to 2-methyl alkanes. In other words, if there is methyl group located on the second carbon of a carbon chain, we can use the prefix ***iso***-. The prefix will be placed in front of the alkane name that indicates the *total* number of carbons as in isopentane which is the same as 2-methylbutane and isobutane which is the same as 2-methylpropane. The pattern is illustrated below

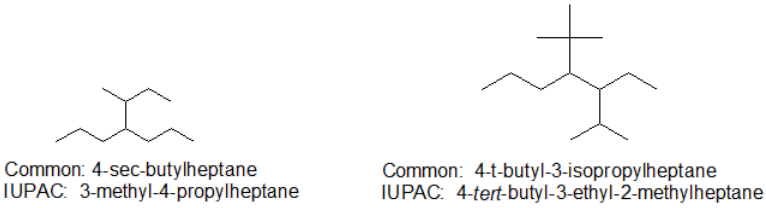


Sec- and Tert-alkanes

Secondary and tertiary alkanes can be further distinguished from their "iso-counter parts" by applying comparing the carbon classifications. The common names for three and four carbon branches are summarized below. Notice that the "iso" prefix is joined directly to the alkyl name. When alphabetizing branches, the "i" is considered. For "sec" and "tert", the prefix is separated from the alkyl name and is NOT considered when alphabetizing branches.

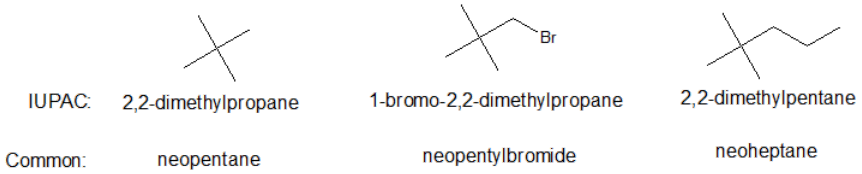


For some compounds, the common names bring a simple a simple elegance to the experience.



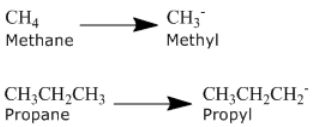
Neo-alkanes

A five carbon alkane and the corresponding five carbon branch can form a structural pattern commonly known as neopentane and neopentyl respectively. The prefix neo- can also be applied to larger alkanes as shown below.



Alkyl Groups

An alkyl group is formed by removing one hydrogen from the alkane chain and is described by the formula C_nH_{2n+1}. The removal of this hydrogen results in a stem change from **-ane** to **-yl**. Take a look at the following examples.



The same approach can be used with any of the alkanes in the table above and with common names.

Alkyl Group Common Names that sound like Alkenes

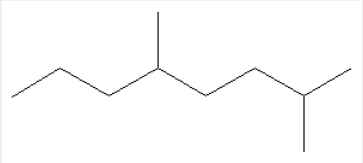
In long hydrocarbon chains there can be many $-CH_2-$ groups in a series. These internal $-(CH_2)_n-$ groups are names using the homologous series stem with the suffice "ene" even though there are NO carbon-carbon double bonds present. For example, the common name for dichloromethane, CH_2Cl_2, is methylene chloride; and the common names for the major ingredients in antifreeze are ethylene glycol ($CH_2(OH)CH_2OH$) and propylene glycol ($CH_2(OH)CH_2(OH)CH_3$), in spite of the fact that there are no carbon-carbon double bonds in any of these three compounds.

Three Basic Principles of Naming

1. Choose the longest, most substituted carbon chain containing a functional group.
2. A carbon bonded to a functional group must have the lowest possible carbon number. If there are no functional groups, then any substitute present must have the lowest possible number.

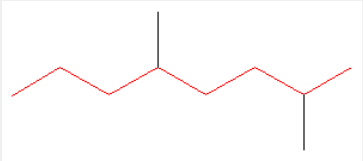
3. Take the alphabetical order into consideration; that is, after applying the first two rules given above, make sure that your substitutes and/or functional groups are written in alphabetical order.

Example

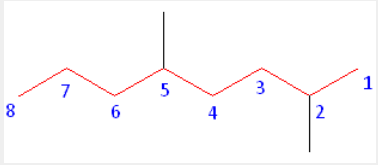


Solution

Rule #1 Choose the longest, most substituted carbon chain containing a functional group. This example does not contain any functional groups, so we only need to be concerned with choosing the longest, most substituted carbon chain. The longest carbon chain has been highlighted in red and consists of eight carbons.

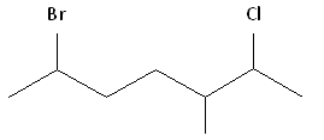


Rule #2 Carbons bonded to a functional group must have the lowest possible carbon number. If there are no functional groups, then any substitute present must have the lowest possible number. Because this example does not contain any functional groups, we only need to be concerned with the two substitutes present, that is, the two methyl groups. If we begin numbering the chain from the left, the methyls would be assigned the numbers 4 and 7, respectively. If we begin numbering the chain from the right, the methyls would be assigned the numbers 2 and 5. Therefore, to satisfy the second rule, numbering begins on the right side of the carbon chain as shown below. This gives the methyl groups the lowest possible numbering.



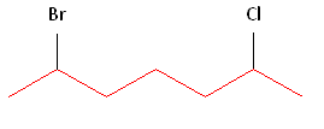
In this example, there is no need to utilize the third rule. Because the two substitutes are identical, neither takes alphabetical precedence with respect to numbering the carbons. This concept will become clearer in the next example.

Example



Solution

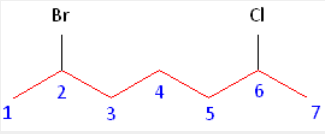
Rule #1 Choose the longest, most substituted carbon chain containing a functional group. This example contains two functional groups, bromine and chlorine. The longest carbon chain has been highlighted in red and consists of seven carbons.



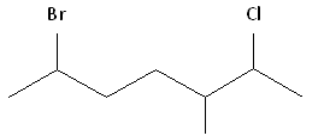
Rule #2 Carbons bonded to a functional group must have the lowest possible carbon number. If there are no functional groups, then any substitute present must have the lowest possible number. In this example, numbering the chain from the left or the right would satisfy this rule. If we number the chain from the left, bromine and chlorine would be assigned the second and sixth carbon positions, respectively. If we number the chain from the right, chlorine would be assigned the second position and bromine would be assigned the sixth position. In other words, whether we choose to number from the left or right, the functional groups occupy the second and sixth positions in the chain. To select the correct numbering scheme, we need to utilize the third rule.



Rule #3 After applying the first two rules, take the alphabetical order into consideration. Alphabetically, bromine comes before chlorine. Therefore, bromine is assigned the second carbon position, and chlorine is assigned the sixth carbon position.

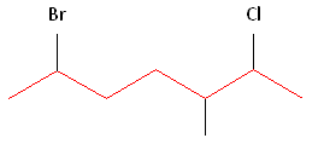


Example

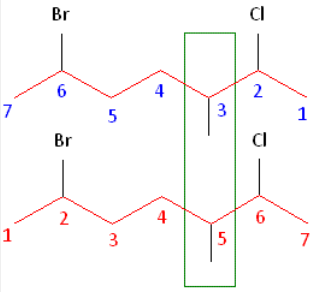


Solution

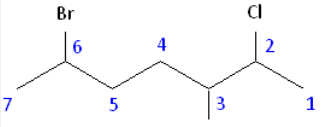
Rule #1 Choose the longest, most substituted carbon chain containing a functional group. This example contains two functional groups, bromine and chlorine, and one substitute, the methyl group. The longest carbon chain has been highlighted in red and consists of seven carbons.



Rule #2 Carbons bonded to a functional group must have the lowest possible carbon number. After taking functional groups into consideration, any substitutes present must have the lowest possible carbon number. This particular example illustrates the **point of difference principle**. If we number the chain from the left, bromine, the methyl group and chlorine would occupy the second, fifth and sixth positions, respectively. This concept is illustrated in the second drawing below. If we number the chain from the right, chlorine, the methyl group and bromine would occupy the second, third and sixth positions, respectively, which is illustrated in the first drawing below. The position of the methyl, therefore, becomes a **point of difference**. In the first drawing, the methyl occupies the third position. In the second drawing, the methyl occupies the fifth position. To satisfy the second rule, we want to choose the numbering scheme that provides the lowest possible numbering of this substitute. Therefore, the first of the two carbon chains shown below is correct.



Therefore, the first numbering scheme is the appropriate one to use.



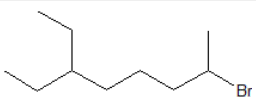
Once you have determined the correct numbering of the carbons, it is often useful to make a list, including the functional groups, substitutes, and the name of the parent chain.

Parent chain: heptane 2-Chloro 3-Methyl 6-Bromo

6-bromo-2-chloro-3-methylheptane

Exercises

Write the IUPAC (systematic) name for each of the compounds below. The parent chains have numbered for the first two compounds to help you begin.

a)	
b)	
c)	

Solutions

a) 9-chloro-7-ethyl-2,2,4-tromethyldecane

b) 3-chloro-5-ethyl-4,4-dimethylheptane

c) 2-bromo-6-ethyloctane

5.4: Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.5: Uses and Sources of Alkanes

Learning Objective

- describe the uses and sources of alkanes

Occurrence

The most important sources for alkanes are oil and natural gas. Oil is a mixture of liquid alkanes and other hydrocarbons. Higher alkanes (which are solid) occur as residues from oil distillation ("tar"). One of the largest natural deposits of solid alkanes is in an asphalt lake known as the Pitch Lake in Trinidad and Tobago. Natural gas contains primarily methane (70-90%) with some ethane, propane and butane; some gas sources deliver up to 8% CO_2. Traces of methane (about 0.00017% or 1.7 ppm) occur in the Earth's atmosphere, the content in the oceans is negligible due to the low solubility of methane in water.(1)

Use of Alkanes

Alkanes are important raw materials of the chemical industry and the principal constituent of gasoline and lubricating oils. Natural gas mainly contains methane and ethane and is used for heating and cooking purposes and for power utilities (gas turbines). For transportation purposes, natural gas may be liquefied by applying pressure and cooling it (LNG = liqid natural gas). The Sultanate of Oman, for example, exports most of its natural gas as LNG - see the LNG plant at Qalhat which has been designed to liquefy 6.6 million tons natural gas per year. Crude oil is separated into its components by fractional distillation at oil refineries. The different "fractions" of crude oil have different boiling points and consist mostly of alkanes of similar chain lengths (the higher the boiling point the more carbon atoms the components of a particular fraction contain - see the list of alkanes for details about the boiling points).

The following table provides a short survey of the different fractions of crude oil:

$C_3..C_4$	Propane and butane can be liquefied at fairly low pressures, and are used, for example, in the propane gas burner, or as propellants in aerosol sprays. Butane in used in cigarette lighters (where the pressure at room temperature is about 2 bar).
$C_5..C_8$	The alkanes from pentane to octane are highly volatile liquids and good solvents for nonpolar substances. They are used as fuels in internal combustion engines.
$C_9..C_{16}$	Alkanes from nonane to hexadecane are liquids of higher viscosity, being used in diesel and aviation fuel (kerosene). The higher melting points of these alkanes can cause problems at low temperatures and in polar regions, where the fuel becomes too viscous.
$C_{17}..C_{35}$	Alkanes with 17 to 35 carbon atoms form the major components of lubricating oil. They also act as anti-corrosive agents, as their hydrophobic nature protects the metal surface from contact with water. Solid alkanes also find use as paraffin wax in candles(2).
$>C_{35}$	Alkanes with a chain length above 35 carbon atoms are found in bitumen (as it is used in road surfacing). These higher alkanes have little chemical and commercial value and are usually split into lower alkanes by cracking.

Notes:

(1)	Methane can co-crystallize with water at high pressures and low temperatures, forming a solid methane hydrate. The energy content of the known submarine methane hydrate fields exceeds that of all known natural gas and oil deposits put together.
(2)	Paraffin wax should not be mixed up with true animal or plant wax, which consist of esters of various carboxylic acids and alcohols.

5.5: Uses and Sources of Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.6: Cycloalkanes

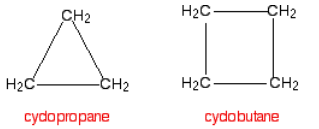
learning objectives

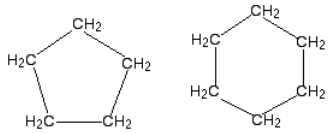
- name cycloalkanes using IUPAC (systematic) and selected common name nomenclature
- draw the structure of cycloalkanes from IUPAC (systematic) and selected common names

Cycloalkanes are cyclic hydrocarbons, meaning that the carbons of the molecule are arranged in the form of a ring. Cycloalkanes are also saturated, meaning that all of the carbons atoms that make up the ring are single bonded to other atoms (no double or triple bonds). There are also polycyclic alkanes, which are molecules that contain two or more cycloalkanes that are joined, forming multiple rings.

Introduction

Many organic compounds found in nature or created in a laboratory contain rings of carbon atoms with distinguishing chemical properties; these compounds are known as cycloalkanes. Cycloalkanes only contain carbon-hydrogen bonds and carbon-carbon single bonds, but in cycloalkanes, the carbon atoms are joined in a ring. The smallest cycloalkane is cyclopropane.





If you count the carbons and hydrogens, you will see that they no longer fit the general formula C_nH_{2n+2}. By joining the carbon atoms in a ring,two hydrogen atoms have been lost. The general formula for a cycloalkane is C_nH_{2n}. Cyclic compounds are not all flat molecules. All of the cycloalkanes, from cyclopentane upwards, exist as "puckered rings". Cyclohexane, for example, has a ring structure that looks like this:

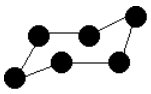
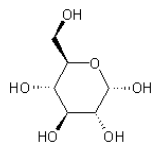
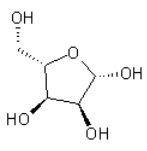
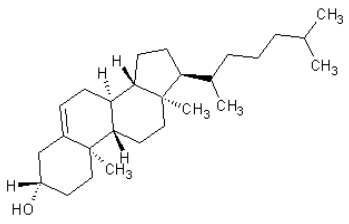


Figure 2: This is known as the "chair" form of cyclohexane from its shape, which vaguely resembles a chair. Note: The cyclohexane molecule is constantly changing, with the atom on the left, which is currently pointing down, flipping up, and the atom on the right flipping down. During this process, another (slightly less stable) form of cyclohexane is formed known as the "boat" form. In this arrangement, both of these atoms are either pointing up or down at the same time

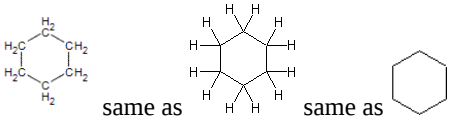
In addition to being saturated cyclic hydrocarbons, cycloalkanes may have multiple substituents or functional groups that further determine their unique chemical properties. The most common and useful cycloalkanes in organic chemistry are cyclopentane and cyclohexane, although other cycloalkanes varying in the number of carbons can be synthesized. Understanding cycloalkanes and their properties are crucial in that many of the biological processes that occur in most living things have cycloalkane-like structures.

		
Glucose (6 carbon sugar)	Ribose (5 carbon sugar)	Cholesterol (polycyclic)

Although polycyclic compounds are important, they are highly complex and typically have common names accepted by IUPAC. However, the common names do not generally follow the basic IUPAC nomenclature rules. The general formula of the cycloalkanes is C_nH_{2n} where n is the number of carbons. The naming of cycloalkanes follows a simple set of rules that are built upon the same basic steps in naming alkanes. Cyclic hydrocarbons have the prefix "cyclo-".

Contents

For simplicity, cycloalkane molecules can be drawn in the form of skeletal structures in which each intersection between two lines is assumed to have a carbon atom with its corresponding number of hydrogens.



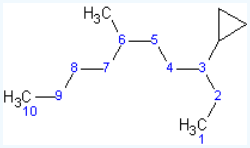
Cycloalkane	Molecular Formula	Basic Structure
Cyclopropane	C_3H_6	
Cyclobutane	C_4H_8	
Cyclopentane	C_5H_{10}	
Cyclohexane	C_6H_{12}	
Cycloheptane	C_7H_{14}	
Cyclooctane	C_8H_{16}	
Cyclononane	C_9H_{18}	
Cyclodecane	$C_{10}H_{20}$	

IUPAC Rules for Nomenclature

1. Determine the cycloalkane to use as the parent chain. The parent chain is the one with the highest number of carbon atoms. If there are two cycloalkanes, use the cycloalkane with the higher number of carbons as the parent chain.
2. If there is an alkyl straight chain that has a greater number of carbons than the cycloalkane, then the alkyl chain must be used as the primary parent chain. Cycloalkane acting as a substituent to an alkyl chain has an ending "-yl" and, therefore, must be named as a cycloalkyl.

Cycloalkane	Cycloalkyl
cyclopropane	cyclopropyl
cyclobutane	cyclobutyl
cyclopentane	cyclopentyl
cyclohexane	cyclohexyl
cycloheptane	cycloheptyl
cyclooctane	cyclooctyl
cyclononane	cyclononanyl
cyclodecane	cyclodecanyl

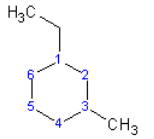
Example 5.6.1:



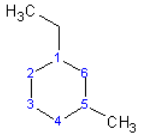
The longest straight chain contains 10 carbons, compared with cyclopropane, which only contains 3 carbons. Because cyclopropane is a substituent, it would be named a cyclopropyl-substituted alkane.

3) Determine any functional groups or other alkyl groups.

4) Number the carbons of the cycloalkane so that the carbons with functional groups or alkyl groups have the lowest possible number. A carbon with multiple substituents should have a lower number than a carbon with only one substituent or functional group. One way to make sure that the lowest number possible is assigned is to number the carbons so that when the numbers corresponding to the substituents are added, their sum is the lowest possible.

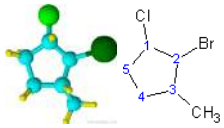


1-ethyl-3-methylcyclohexane (1+3=4) **NOT**



1-ethyl-5-methylcyclohexane (1+5=6)

5) When naming the cycloalkane, the substituents and functional groups must be placed in alphabetical order.



(ex: 2-bromo-1-chloro-3-methylcyclopentane)

6) Indicate the carbon number with the functional group with the highest priority according to alphabetical order. A dash"-" must be placed between the numbers and the name of the substituent. After the carbon number and the dash, the name of the substituent can follow. When there is only one substituent on the parent chain, indicating the number of the carbon atoms with the substituent is not necessary.

(ex: 1-chlorocyclohexane or cholorocyclohexane is acceptable)

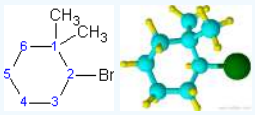


7) If there is more than one of the same functional group on one carbon, write the number of the carbon two, three, or four times, depending on how many of the same functional group is present on that carbon. The numbers must be separated by commas, and

the name of the functional group that follows must be separated by a dash. When there are two of the same functional group, the name must have the prefix "di". When there are three of the same functional group, the name must have the prefix "tri". When there are four of the same functional group, the name must have the prefix "tetra". However, these prefixes cannot be used when determining the alphabetical priorities.

There must always be commas between the numbers and the dashes that are between the numbers and the names.

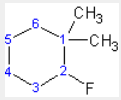
Example 5.6.2



(2-bromo-1,1-dimethylcyclohexane)

Notice that "f" of fluoro alphabetically precedes the "m" of methyl. Although "di" alphabetically precedes "f", it is not used in determining the alphabetical order.

Example 3



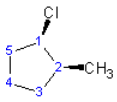
(2-fluoro-1,1,-dimethylcyclohexane **NOT** 1,1-dimethyl-2-fluorocyclohexane)

8) If the substituents of the cycloalkane are related by the cis or trans configuration, then indicate the configuration by placing "cis-" or "trans-" in front of the name of the structure.



Blue=Carbon Yellow=Hydrogen Green=Chlorine

Notice that chlorine and the methyl group are both pointed in the same direction on the axis of the molecule; therefore, they are cis.



cis-1-chloro-2-methylcyclopentane

9) After all the functional groups and substituents have been mentioned with their corresponding numbers, the name of the cycloalkane can follow.

Summary

1. Determine the parent chain: the parent chain contains the most carbon atoms.
2. Number the substituents of the chain so that the sum of the numbers is the lowest possible.
3. Name the substituents and place them in alphabetical order.
4. If stereochemistry of the compound is shown, indicate the orientation as part of the nomenclature.
5. Cyclic hydrocarbons have the prefix "cyclo-" and have an "-alkane" ending unless there is an alcohol substituent present. When an alcohol substituent is present, the molecule has an "-ol" ending.

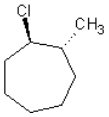
Glossary

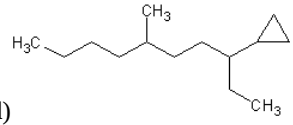
- **alkyl:** A structure that is formed when a hydrogen atom is removed from an alkane.
- **cyclic:** Chemical compounds arranged in the form of a ring or a closed chain form.
- **cycloalkanes:** Cyclic saturated hydrocarbons with a general formula of CnH(2n). Cycloalkanes are alkanes with carbon atoms attached in the form of a closed ring.
- **functional groups:** An atom or groups of atoms that substitute for a hydrogen atom in an organic compound, giving the compound unique chemical properties and determining its reactivity.
- **hydrocarbon:** A chemical compound containing only carbon and hydrogen atoms.
- **saturated**: All of the atoms that make up a compound are single bonded to the other atoms, with no double or triple bonds.
- **skeletal structure:** A simplified structure in which each intersection between two lines is assumed to have a carbon atom with its corresponding number of hydrogens.

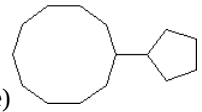
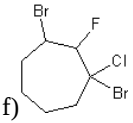
Exercises

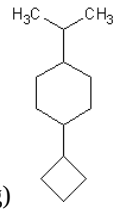
1. Name the following structures. (Note: The structures are complex for practice purposes and may not be found in nature.)

a) 
b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 
f) 

g) 

2. Draw the following structures.

    a) 1,1-dibromo-5-fluoro-3-butyl-7-methylcyclooctane

    b) trans-1-bromo-2-chlorocyclopentane

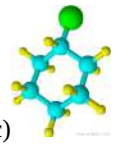
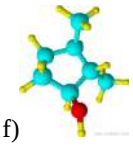
    c) 1,1-dibromo-2,3-dichloro-4-propylcyclobutane

    d) 2-methyl-1-ethyl-1,3-dipropylcyclopentane

    e) cycloheptane-1,3,5-triol

3. Name the following structures.

Blue=Carbon Yellow=Hydrogen Red=Oxygen Green=Chlorine

a) 
b) 
c) 
d) 
e) 
f) 
g) 

Solutions

1. a) cyclodecane

b) chlorocyclopentane or 1-chlorocyclopentane

c) trans-1-chloro-2-methylcycloheptane

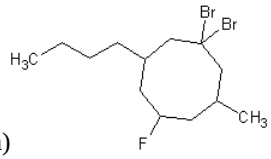
d) 3-cyclopropyl-6-methyldecane

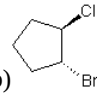
e) cyclopentylcyclodecane or 1-cyclopentylcyclodecane

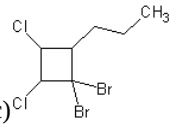
f) 1,3-dibromo-1-chloro-2-fluorocycloheptane

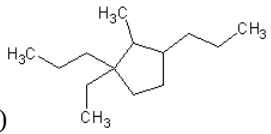
g) 1-cyclobutyl-4-isopropylcyclohexane

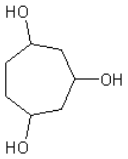
2.

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 

3. a) cyclohexane

b) cyclohexanol

c) chlorocyclohexane

d) cyclopentylcyclohexane

e) 1-chloro-3-methylcyclobutane

f) 2,3-dimethylcyclohexanol

g) cis-1-propyl-2-methylcyclopentane

References

1. ACD/ChemSketch Freeware, version 11.0, Advanced Chemistry Development, Inc., Toronto, ON, Canada, www.acdlabs.com, 2008.
2. Bruice, Paula Yurkanis. Oragnic Chemistry. 5th. CA. Prentice Hall, 2006.
3. Fryhle, C.B. and G. Solomons. Organic Chemistry. 9th ed. Danvers, MA: Wiley, 2008.
4. McMurry, John. Organic Chemistry. 7th ed. Belmont, California: Thomson Higher Education, 2008.
5. Sadava, Heller, Orians, Purves, Hillis. Life The Science of Biology. 8th ed. Sunderland, MA: W.H. Freeman, 2008.
6. Vollhardt, K. Peter C., and Neil E. Schore. Organic Chemistry. 5th ed. New York: W.H. Freeman, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

- Pwint Zin
- Jim Clark (ChemGuide)

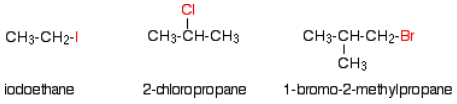
5.6: Cycloalkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.7: Haloalkane - Classification and Nomenclature

learning objectives

- classify alkyl halides as primary, secondary, or tertiary
- name alkyl halides using IUPAC (systematic) and selected common name nomenclature
- draw the structure of alkyl halides from IUPAC (systematic) and selected common names

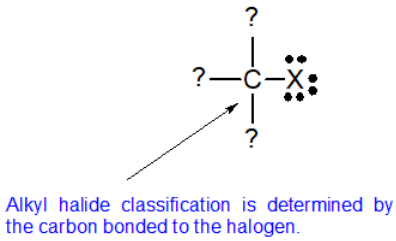
The haloalkanes, also known as alkyl halides, are a group of chemical compounds comprised of an alkane with one or more hydrogens replaced by a halogen atom (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, or iodine). There is a fairly large distinction between the structural and physical properties of haloalkanes and the structural and physical properties of alkanes. As mentioned above, the structural differences are due to the replacement of one or more hydrogens with a halogen atom. The differences in physical properties are a result of factors such as electronegativity, bond length, bond strength, and molecular size. A few representative alklyl halides are shown below.



Alkyl halides are a versatile and useful functional group for multi-step organic synthesis. The reactivity of the alkyl halides can be predicted using their structural classifications. To communicate the three different structures, the terms primary, secondary, and tertiary are used. The classification is determined by the number of carbons bonded to the carbon bearing the halide. This classification strategy is analogous to the one used for alcohols and is explained in further detail below.

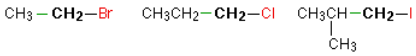
Classification of Alkyl Halides

Functional group classifications are based on the bonding patterns of the atoms involved. There is only one neutral bonding pattern for halogens (three lone pairs and a single bond) so the halogens cannot be used to determine their classification. To determine the classification of alkyl halides, the bonding pattern of the carbon bonded to the halogen is used as shown in the diagram below.



Primary alkyl halides

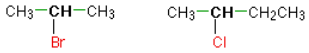
In a primary (1°) halogenoalkane, the carbon which carries the halogen atom is only attached to one other alkyl group.Some examples of primary alkyl halides include:



Notice that it doesn't matter how complicated the attached alkyl group is. In each case there is only one linkage to an alkyl group from the CH2 group holding the halogen. There is an exception to this: CH_3Br and the other methyl halides are often counted as primary alkyl halides even though there are no alkyl groups attached to the carbon with the halogen on it.

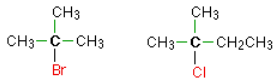
Secondary alkyl halides

In a secondary (2°) halogenoalkane, the carbon with the halogen attached is joined directly to two other alkyl groups, which may be the same or different. Examples:



Tertiary alkyl halides

In a tertiary (3°) halogenoalkane, the carbon atom holding the halogen is attached directly to three alkyl groups, which may be any combination of same or different. Examples:



IUPAC and Common Nomenclature

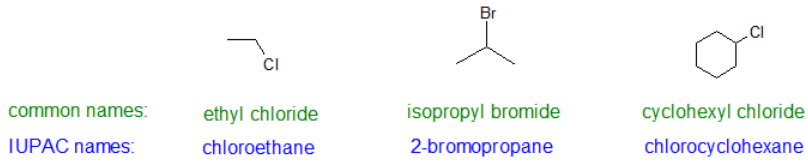
The replacement of only one hydrogen atom gives an alkyl halide (or haloalkane) so the nomenclature system is closely related to the system for alkanes. The common names of alkyl halides consist of two parts: the name of the alkyl group plus the stem of the name of the halogen, with the ending -ide.

Common Name Format: alkyl name + halide name

The IUPAC system uses the name of the parent alkane with a prefix indicating the halogen substituents, preceded by number indicating the substituent's location. The prefixes are fluoro-, chloro-, bromo-, and iodo-. Thus CH_3CH_2Cl has the common name ethyl chloride and the IUPAC name chloroethane. For simple halo alkanes, the IUPAC name includes the three parts shown below.

IUPAC Name Format: locator # + halo prefix + parent alkane

Alkyl halides with simple alkyl groups (one to four carbon atoms) are often called by common names. Those with a larger number of carbon atoms are usually given IUPAC names.



Example

Give the common and IUPAC names for each compound.

1. $CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$
2. $(CH_3)_2CHCl$

Solution

1. The alkyl group ($CH_3CH_2CH_2$–) is a propyl group, and the halogen is bromine (Br). The common name is therefore propyl bromide. For the IUPAC name, the prefix for bromine (bromo) is combined with the name for a three-carbon chain (propane), preceded by a number identifying the carbon atom to which the Br atom is attached, so the IUPAC name is 1-bromopropane.
2. The alkyl group [$(CH_3)_2CH$–] has three carbon atoms, with a chlorine (Cl) atom attached to the middle carbon atom. The alkyl group is therefore isopropyl, and the common name of the compound is isopropyl chloride. For the IUPAC name, the Cl atom (prefix chloro-) attached to the middle (second) carbon atom of a propane chain results in 2-chloropropane.

Exercise

Give common and IUPAC names for each compound.

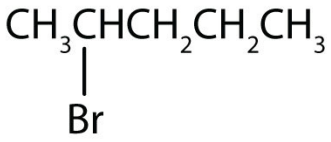
1. CH_3CH_2I

- $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2F$

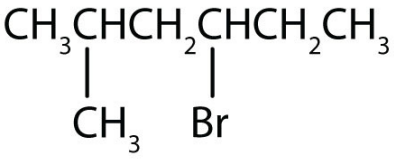
Exercise

Give the IUPAC name for each compound.

3.



4.



Solution

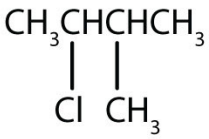
3. The parent alkane has five carbon atoms in the longest continuous chain; it is pentane. A bromo (Br) group is attached to the second carbon atom of the chain. The IUPAC name is 2-bromopentane.

4. The parent alkane is hexane. Methyl (CH3) and bromo (Br) groups are attached to the second and fourth carbon atoms, respectively. Listing the substituents in alphabetical order gives the name 4-bromo-2-methylhexane.

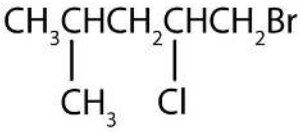
Exercise

Give the IUPAC name for each compound.

5.



6.



Solutions

5. 2-choro-3-methylbutane

6. 1-bromo-2-chloro-4-methylpentane

5.7: Haloalkane - Classification and Nomenclature is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.8: Hydrocarbon Functional Groups

Learning Objective

- distinguish between the different hydrocarbon functional groups

Saturated vs. Unsaturated Molecules

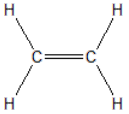
Hydrocarbons are organic compounds that contain **only** carbon and hydrogen. The broadest distinction between hydrocarbons is whether they are saturated and unsaturated. Saturated hydrocarbons only contain carbon-carbon single bonds with the maximum number of hydrogens relative to the number of carbon atoms. It can be said that the carbon atoms are "saturated" with hydrogen atoms in the same way a saturated solution has dissolved the maximum amount of solute. Hydrocarbons that contain pi bonds as carbon-carbon double or triple bonds are classified as unsaturated hydrocarbons. Unsaturation indicates that some of the carbon-hydrogen bonds were lost to from pi bonds between carbon atoms. There are less than the maximum number os hydrogens relative to the number of carbon atoms.

1. Saturated hydrocarbons (alkanes) are the simplest of the hydrocarbon species. They are composed entirely of single bonds and are saturated with hydrogen. Saturated hydrocarbons are the basis of petroleum fuels and are found as either linear or branched species.The simplest alkanes have their C atoms bonded in a straight chain; these are called *normal* alkanes. They are named according to the number of C atoms in the chain. The smallest alkane is methane:



2. Unsaturated hydrocarbons have one or more double or triple bonds between carbon atoms. Those with double bond are called alkenes and those with one double bond have the formula C_nH_{2n} (assuming non-cyclic structures). Those containing triple bonds are called alkynes, with general formula C_nH_{2n-2}.

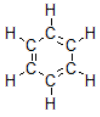
The smallest alkene—ethene—has two C atoms and is also known by its common name ethylene:



The smallest alkyne is ethyne, which is also known as acetylene:



3. For now, we will focus on benzene as the representative aromatic hydrocarbon. Aromatic compounds were first noted for their strong aromas and low chemical reactivity compared to other saturated hydrocarbons. Aromatic compounds will be discussed in greater detail in the second semester to organic chemistry.



Hydrocarbon Functional Groups

The four distinct hydrocarbon functional groups are: alkanes, alkenes, alkynes and arenes. Aromatic compounds derive their names from the fact that many of these compounds in the early days of discovery were grouped because they were oils with fragrant odors.

Alkanes are organic compounds that consist entirely of single-bonded carbon and hydrogen atoms and lack any other functional groups. Alkanes have the general formula C_nH_{2n+2}. Alkanes can be subdivided into the following three groups: the **linear straight-chain alkanes**, **branched alkanes**, and **cycloalkanes**. Alkanes are also *saturated hydrocarbons*. Alkanes are the simplest and least reactive hydrocarbon species containing only carbons and hydrogens. The distinguishing feature of an alkane, making it distinct

from other compounds that also exclusively contain carbon and hydrogen, is its lack of unsaturation. That is to say, it contains no double or triple bonds, which are highly reactive in organic chemistry. Though not totally devoid of reactivity, their lack of reactivity under most laboratory conditions makes them a relatively uninteresting, though very important component of organic chemistry. As you will learn about later, the energy confined within the carbon-carbon bond and the carbon-hydrogen bond is quite high and their rapid oxidation produces a large amount of heat, typically in the form of fire.

The general formula for saturated hydrocarbons is C_nH_{2n+2}(assuming non-cyclic structures) as shown in hexane (C_6H_{14}) below.



Cycloalkanes are hydrocarbons containing one or more carbon rings to which hydrogen atoms are attached. The general formula for a cyclic hydrocarbon containing one ring is C_nH_{2n} as shown in cyclohexane (C_6H_{12}) below.



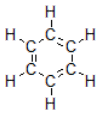
Akenes contain at least one carbon-carbon double bond and alkynes contain at least one carbon-carbon triple bond. Alkenes have the general formula C_nH_{2n}. Alkynes have the general formula C_nH_{2n-2}. The ratio of carbon to hydrogen increased because hydrogen atoms are replaced with pi bonds as shown in trans-2-butene (C_4H_8) and 2-butyne (C_4H_6) below. Since both double and triple bonds include pi bonds, Alkenes and alkynes share similar chemical reactivity.



trans-2-butene

2-butyne

Aromatic hydrocarbons, also known as arenes, are hydrocarbons that have at least one aromatic ring. Aromatic compounds contain the benzene unit. Benzene itself is composed of six C atoms in a ring, with alternating single and double C–C bonds:



Calculating Degrees of Unsaturation (DU)

There are many ways one can go about determining the structure of an unknown organic molecule. Although, nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) and infrared radiation (IR) are the primary ways of determining molecular structures, calculating the degrees of unsaturation (DU) is useful information. Knowing the degrees of unsaturation tells us the combined number of pi bonds and rings within a compound which makes it easier to figure out the molecular structure.

Degree of Unsaturation (DU) can be calculated with the equation below and the molecular formula

DU= (2C+2+N-X-H)/2

where: C is the number of carbons; N is the number of nitrogens; X is the number of halogens (F, Cl, Br, I); and H is the number of hydrogens from the molecular formula.

As stated before, a saturated molecule contains only single bonds and no rings. Another way of interpreting this is that a saturated molecule has the maximum number of hydrogen atoms possible to be an acyclic alkane. Thus, the number of hydrogens can be represented by 2C+2, which is the general molecular representation of an alkane. As an example, for the molecular formula C_3H_4 the number of actual hydrogens needed for the compound to be saturated is 8 *[2C+2=(2x3)+2=8]*. The compound needs 4 more hydrogens in order to be fully saturated *(expected number of hydrogens-observed number of hydrogens=8-4=4)*. Degrees of unsaturation is equal to 2, or half the number of hydrogens the molecule needs to be classified as saturated. Hence, the DoB formula divides by 2. The formula subtracts the number of X's because a halogen (X) replaces a hydrogen in a compound. For instance, in chloroethane, C_2H_5Cl, there is one less hydrogen compared to ethane, C_2H_6.

For a compound to be saturated, there is one more hydrogen in a molecule when nitrogen is present. Therefore, we add the number of nitrogens (N). This can be seen with C_3H_9N compared to C_3H_8. Oxygen and sulfur are not included in the formula because saturation is unaffected by these elements. As seen in alcohols, the same number of hydrogens in ethanol, C_2H_5OH, matches the number of hydrogens in ethane, C_2H_6.

The following chart illustrates the possible combinations of the number of double bond(s), triple bond(s), and/or ring(s) for a given degree of unsaturation. Each row corresponds to a different combination.

- One degree of unsaturation is equivalent to 1 ring or 1 double bond (1 π bond).
- Two degrees of unsaturation is equivalent to 2 double bonds, 1 ring and 1 double bond, 2 rings, or 1 triple bond (2 π bonds).

DU	**Possible combinations of rings/ bonds**		
	# of rings	# of double bonds	# of triple bonds
1	1	0	0
	0	1	0
2	2	0	0
	0	2	0
	0	0	1
	1	1	0
3	3	0	0
	2	1	0
	1	2	0
	0	1	1
	0	3	0
	1	0	1

Remember, the degrees of unsaturation only gives the sum of double bonds, triple bonds and/or rings. For instance, a degree of unsaturation of 3 can contain 3 rings, 2 rings+1 double bond, 1 ring+2 double bonds, 1 ring+1 triple bond, 1 double bond+1 triple bond, *or* 3 double bonds.

Example

What is the Degree of Unsaturation for benzene?

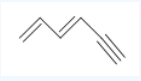
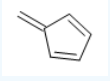
Solution - "Thinking it through"

The molecular formula for benzene is C_6H_6. Thus,

DU= 4, where C=6, N=0,X=0, and H=6. 1 DU can equal 1 ring or 1 double bond. This corresponds to benzene containing 1 ring and 3 double bonds.

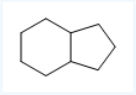
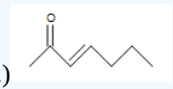
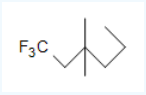


Even though there are other possible structures with a DU = 4, like the ones shown below. We will learn the benzene rings have unusual stability and occur frequently in the world of organic chemistry. When the DU for a compound is $\geq$ 4, we can assume the presence of at least one benzene ring.


Exercise

1. Are the following molecules saturated or unsaturated:

1.  (b.)  (c.)  (d.) $C_{10}H_6N_4$

2. Using the molecules from 1., give the degrees of unsaturation for each.
3. Calculate the degrees of unsaturation for the following molecular formulas:

    1. (a.) C_9H_{20} (b.) C_7H_8 (c.) C_5H_7Cl (d.) $C_9H_9NO_4$

4. Using the molecular formulas from 3, are the molecules unsaturated or saturated.
5. Using the molecular formulas from 3, if the molecules are unsaturated, how many rings/double bonds/triple bonds are predicted?

Answer

1.

(a.) **unsaturated** (E*ven though rings only contain single bonds, rings are considered unsaturated.)*

(b.) **unsaturated**

(c.) **saturated**

(d.) **unsaturated**

2. *If the molecular structure is given, the easiest way to solve is to count the number of double bonds, triple bonds and/or rings. However, you can also determine the molecular formula and solve for the degrees of unsaturation by using the formula.*

(a.) **2**

(b.) **2** *(one double bond and the double bond from the carbonyl)*

(c.) **0**

(d.) **10**

3. *Use the formula to solve*

(a.) **0**

(b.) **4**

(c.) **2**

(d.) **6**

4.

(a.) **saturated**

(b.) **unsaturated**

(c.) **unsaturated**

(d.) **unsaturated**

5.

(a.) **0** (Remember-a saturated molecule only contains single bonds)

(b.) *The molecule can contain any of these combinations* **(i) 4 double bonds (ii) 4 rings (iii) 2 double bonds+2 rings (iv) 1 double bond+3 rings (v) 3 double bonds+1 ring (vi) 1 triple bond+2 rings (vii) 2 triple bonds (viii) 1 triple bond+1 double bond+1 ring (ix) 1 triple bond+2 double bonds**

(c.) (**i) 1 triple bond (ii) 1 ring+1 double bond (iii) 2 rings (iv) 2 double bonds**

(d.) **(i) 3 triple bonds (ii) 2 triple bonds+2 double bonds (iii) 2 triple bonds+1 double bond+1 ring (iv)...** *(As you can see, the degrees of unsaturation only gives the sum of double bonds, triple bonds and/or ring. Thus, the formula may give numerous possible structures for a given molecular formula.)*

References

1. Vollhardt, K. P.C. & Shore, N. (2007). *Organic Chemistry* (5^{th}Ed.). New York: W. H. Freeman. (473-474)
2. Shore, N. (2007). *Study Guide and Solutions Manual for Organic Chemistry* (5th Ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman. (201)

Contributors and Attributions

- Kim

5.8: Hydrocarbon Functional Groups is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.9: Physical Properties of Alkanes

Learning Objective

- explain & predict the physical properties of alkanes including relative bp and solubility in a mixture

Overview

Alkanes are not very reactive and have little biological activity; all alkanes are colorless and odorless non-polar compounds. The relative weak London dispersion forces of alkanes result in gaseous substances for short carbon chains, volatile liquids with densities around 0.7 g/mL for moderate carbon chains, and solids for long carbon chains. The differences in the physical states occurs because there is a direct relationship between the size and shape of molecules and the strength of the intermolecular forces (IMFs).

Because alkanes have relatively predictable physical properties and undergo relatively few chemical reactions other than combustion, they serve as a basis of comparison for the properties of many other organic compound families. Let's consider their physical properties first.

Boiling Points

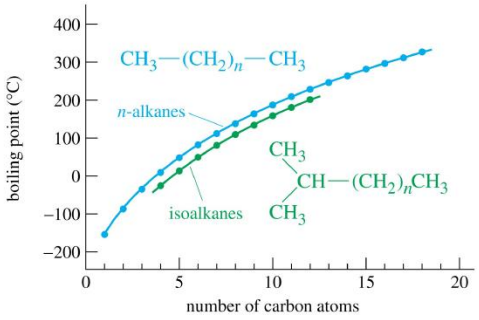
Table **5.9.1** describes some of the properties of some of the first 10 straight-chain alkanes. Because alkane molecules are nonpolar, they are insoluble in water, which is a polar solvent, but are soluble in nonpolar and slightly polar solvents. Consequently, alkanes themselves are commonly used as solvents for organic substances of low polarity, such as fats, oils, and waxes. Nearly all alkanes have densities less than 1.0 g/mL and are therefore less dense than water (the density of H_2O is 1.00 g/mL at 20°C). These properties explain why oil and grease do not mix with water but rather float on its surface.

Table* 5.9.1: Physical Properties of Some Alkanes*

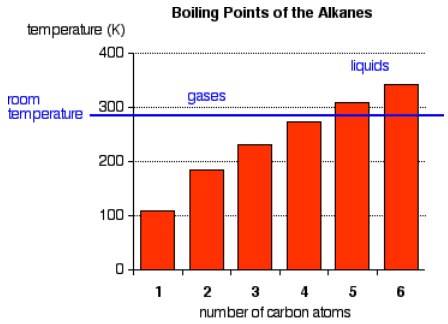
Molecular Name	Formula	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)	Density (20°C)*	Physical State (at 20°C)
methane	CH_4	–182	–164	0.668 g/L	gas
ethane	C_2H_6	–183	–89	1.265 g/L	gas
propane	C_3H_8	–190	–42	1.867 g/L	gas
butane	C_4H_{10}	–138	–1	2.493 g/L	gas
pentane	C_5H_{12}	–130	36	0.626 g/mL	liquid
hexane	C_6H_{14}	–95	69	0.659 g/mL	liquid
octane	C_8H_{18}	–57	125	0.703 g/mL	liquid
decane	$C_{10}H_{22}$	–30	174	0.730 g mL	liquid

*Note the change in units going from gases (grams per liter) to liquids (grams per milliliter). Gas densities are at 1 atm pressure.

The boiling points for the "straight chain" isomers and isoalkanes isomers are shown to demonstrate that branching decreases the surfaces area, weakens the IMFs, and lowers the boiling point.



This next diagrams summarizes the physical states of the first six alkanes. The first four alkanes are gases at room temperature, and solids do not begin to appear until about $C_{17}H_{36}$, but this is imprecise because different isomers typically have different melting and boiling points. By the time you get 17 carbons into an alkane, there are unbelievable numbers of isomers!



Cycloalkanes have boiling points that are approximately 20 K higher than the corresponding straight chain alkane.

There is not a significant electronegativity difference between carbon and hydrogen, thus, there is not any significant bond polarity. The molecules themselves also have very little polarity. A totally symmetrical molecule like methane is completely non-polar, meaning that the only attractions between one molecule and its neighbors will be Van der Waals dispersion forces. These forces will be very small for a molecule like methane but will increase as the molecules get bigger. Therefore, the boiling points of the alkanes increase with molecular size.

Where you have isomers, the more branched the chain, the lower the boiling point tends to be. Van der Waals dispersion forces are smaller for shorter molecules and only operate over very short distances between one molecule and its neighbors. It is more difficult for short, fat molecules (with lots of branching) to lie as close together as long, thin molecules.

For example, the boiling points of the three isomers of C_5H_{12} are:

- pentane: 309.2 K
- 2-methylbutane: 301.0 K
- 2,2-dimethylpropane: 282.6 K

The slightly higher boiling points for the cycloalkanes are presumably because the molecules can get closer together because the ring structure makes them tidier and less "wriggly"!

Solubility

Alkanes (both alkanes and cycloalkanes) are virtually insoluble in water, but dissolve in organic solvents. However, liquid alkanes are good solvents for many other non-ionic organic compounds.

Solubility in Water

When a molecular substance dissolves in water, the following must occur:

- break the intermolecular forces within the substance. In the case of the alkanes, these are the Van der Waals dispersion forces.
- break the intermolecular forces in the water so that the substance can fit between the water molecules. In water, the primary intermolecular attractions are hydrogen bonds.

Breaking either of these attractions requires energy, although the amount of energy to break the Van der Waals dispersion forces in something like methane is relatively negligible; this is not true of the hydrogen bonds in water.

As something of a simplification, a substance will dissolve if there is enough energy released when new bonds are made between the substance and the water to compensate for what is used in breaking the original attractions. The only new attractions between the alkane and the water molecules are Van der Waals forces. These forces do not release a sufficient amount of energy to compensate for the energy required to break the hydrogen bonds in water.; the alkane does not dissolve.

The energy only description of solvation is an oversimplification because entropic effects are also important when things dissolve.

The lack of water solubility can lead to environmental concerns when oils are spilled into natural bodies of water as shown below.



Oil Spills. Crude oil coats the water's surface in the Gulf of Mexico after the Deepwater Horizon oil rig sank following an explosion. The leak was a mile below the surface, making it difficult to estimate the size of the spill. One liter of oil can create a slick 2.5 hectares (6.3 acres) in size. This and similar spills provide a reminder that hydrocarbons and water don't mix. Source: Photo courtesy of NASA Goddard / MODIS Rapid Response Team, http://www.nasa.gov/topics/earth/features/oilspill/oil-20100519a.html.

Solubility in organic solvents

In most organic solvents, the primary forces of attraction between the solvent molecules are Van der Waals - either dispersion forces or dipole-dipole attractions. Therefore, when an alkane dissolves in an organic solvent, the Van der Waals forces are broken and are replaced by new Van der Waals forces. The two processes more or less cancel each other out energetically; thus, there is no barrier to solubility.

Looking Closer: Gas Densities and Fire Hazards

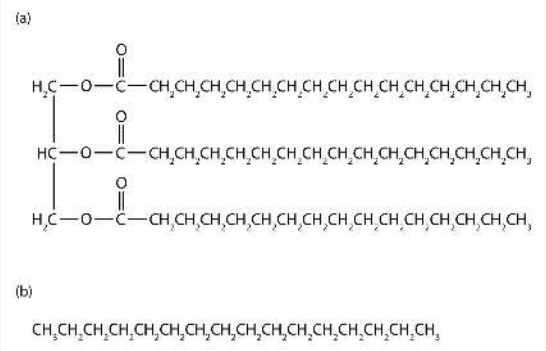
Table **5.9.1** indicates that the first four members of the alkane series are gases at ordinary temperatures. Natural gas is composed chiefly of methane, which has a density of about 0.67 g/L. The density of air is about 1.29 g/L. Because natural gas is less dense than air, it rises. When a natural-gas leak is detected and shut off in a room, the gas can be removed by opening an upper window. On the other hand, bottled gas can be either propane (density 1.88 g/L) or butanes (a mixture of butane and isobutane; density about 2.5 g/L). Both are much heavier than air (density 1.2 g/L). If bottled gas escapes into a building, it collects near the floor. This presents a much more serious fire hazard than a natural-gas leak because it is more difficult to rid the room of the heavier gas.

Also shown in Table **5.9.1** are the boiling points of the straight-chain alkanes increase with increasing molar mass. This general rule holds true for the straight-chain homologs of all organic compound families. Larger molecules have greater surface areas and consequently interact more strongly; more energy is therefore required to separate them. For a given molar mass, the boiling points of alkanes are relatively low because these nonpolar molecules have only weak dispersion forces to hold them together in the liquid state.

Looking Closer: An Alkane Basis for Properties of Other Compounds

An understanding of the physical properties of the alkanes is important in that petroleum and natural gas and the many products derived from them—gasoline, bottled gas, solvents, plastics, and more—are composed primarily of alkanes. This understanding is also vital because it is the basis for describing the properties of other organic and biological compound families. For example, large portions of the

structures of lipids consist of nonpolar alkyl groups. Lipids include the dietary fats and fatlike compounds called phospholipids and sphingolipids that serve as structural components of living tissues. These compounds have both polar and nonpolar groups, enabling them to bridge the gap between water-soluble and water-insoluble phases. This characteristic is essential for the selective permeability of cell membranes.



Tripalmitin (a), a typical fat molecule, has long hydrocarbon chains typical of most lipids. Compare these chains to hexadecane (b), an alkane with 16 carbon atoms.

Exercise

1. Without referring to a table, predict which has a higher boiling point—hexane or octane. Explain.

2. If 25 mL of hexane were added to 100 mL of water in a beaker, which of the following would you expect to happen? Explain.

    1. Hexane would dissolve in water.
    2. Hexane would not dissolve in water and would float on top.
    3. Hexane would not dissolve in water and would sink to the bottom of the container.

3. Without referring to a table or other reference, predict which member of each pair has the higher boiling point.

    1. pentane or butane
    2. heptane or nonane

4. For which member of each pair is hexane a good solvent?

    1. pentane or water
    2. sodium chloride or soybean oil

Answer

    1. octane because of its greater molar mass

2. b; Hexane is insoluble in water and is less dense than water so it floats on top.

3. a) pentane

b) nonane

4. a) pentane

b) soybean oil

Contributors and Attributions

- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

5.9: Physical Properties of Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.10: Structure and Conformations of Alkanes

Learning Objective

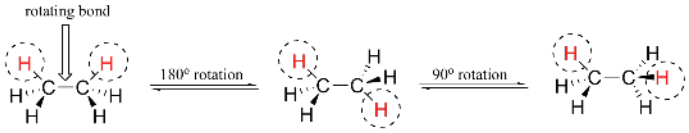
- interpret and draw the rotation about a carbon-carbon single bond using Newman projections and sawhorse structures
- correlate energies of conformations with rotational energy diagrams

Single Bond Rotation and Conformational Isomerism

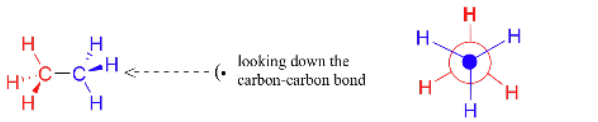
Conformational isomerism involves rotation about sigma bonds, and does not involve any differences in the connectivity or geometry of bonding. Two or more structures that are categorized as conformational isomers, or **conformers**, are really just two of the exact same molecule that differ only in terms of the angle about one or more sigma bonds. The carbon-carbon single bonds of alkanes rotate freely. Conformers are the same molecule shown with different sigma bond rotations. Newman projections are one way to communicate bond rotation.

Ethane Conformations

Although there are seven sigma bonds in the ethane molecule, rotation about the six carbon-hydrogen bonds does not result in any change in the shape of the molecule because the hydrogen atoms are essentially spherical. Rotation about the carbon-carbon bond, however, results in many different possible molecular conformations.



In order to better visualize these different conformations, it is convenient to use a drawing convention called the **Newman projection**. In a Newman projection, we look lengthwise down a specific bond of interest – in this case, the carbon-carbon bond in ethane. When there are multiple carbons,then we specify the bond of interest using the carbon numbers from the IUPAC name. We depict the ‘front’ atom as a dot, and the ‘back’ atom as a larger circle.

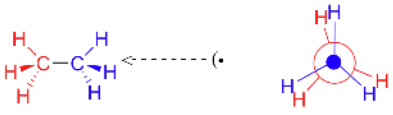


'staggered' conformation (Newman projection)

The six carbon-hydrogen bonds are shown as solid lines protruding from the two carbons at 120°angles, which is what the actual tetrahedral geometry looks like when viewed from this perspective and flattened into two dimensions.

The lowest energy conformation of ethane, shown in the figure above, is called the ‘staggered’ or 'anti' conformation, in which all of the C-H bonds on the front carbon are positioned at dihedral angles of 60°relative to the C-H bonds on the back carbon. In this conformation, the distance between the bonds (and the electrons in them) is maximized.

If we now rotate the front CH_3 group 60°clockwise, the molecule is in the highest energy ‘eclipsed' conformation, where the hydrogens on the front carbon are as close as possible to the hydrogens on the back carbon.



'eclipsed' conformation

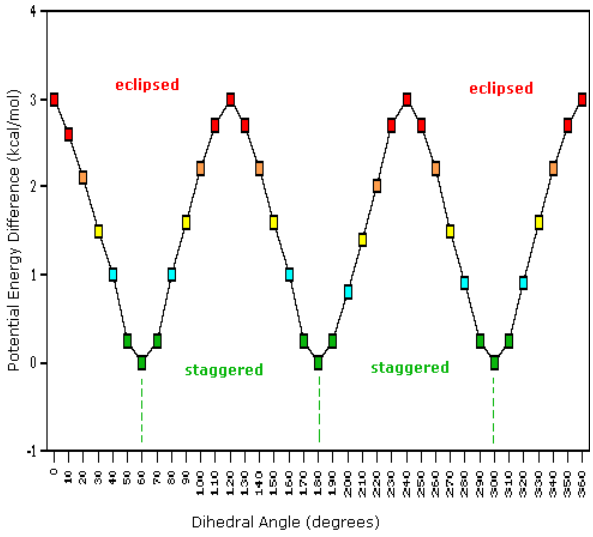
This is the highest energy conformation because of unfavorable interactions between the electrons in the front and back C-H bonds. The energy of the eclipsed conformation is approximately 3 kcal/mol higher than that of the staggered conformation.

Another 60°rotation returns the molecule to a second eclipsed conformation. This process can be continued all around the 360°circle, with three possible eclipsed conformations and three staggered conformations, in addition to an infinite number of variations in between.

The carbon-carbon bond is not *completely* free to rotate – there is indeed a small, 3 kcal/mol barrier to rotation that must be overcome for the bond to rotate from one staggered conformation to another. This rotational barrier is not high enough to prevent constant rotation except at extremely cold temperatures. However, at any given moment the molecule is more likely to be in a staggered conformation - one of the rotational 'energy valleys' - than in any other state.

Free Rotations Do Not Exist in Ethane

The carbon-carbon bond is not *completely* free to rotate – there is indeed a small, 3 kcal/mol barrier to rotation that must be overcome for the bond to rotate from one staggered conformation to another. This rotational barrier is not high enough to prevent constant rotation except at extremely cold temperatures. However, at any given moment the molecule is more likely to be in a staggered conformation - one of the rotational 'energy valleys' - than in any other state. The potential energy associated with the various conformations of ethane varies with the dihedral angle of the bonds, as shown below.



The potential energy associated with the various conformations of ethane varies with the dihedral angle of the bonds.

Although the conformers of ethane are in rapid equilibrium with each other, the 3 kcal/mol energy difference leads to a substantial preponderance of staggered conformers (> 99.9%) at any given time. The animation below illustrates the relationship between ethane's potential energy and its dihedral angle

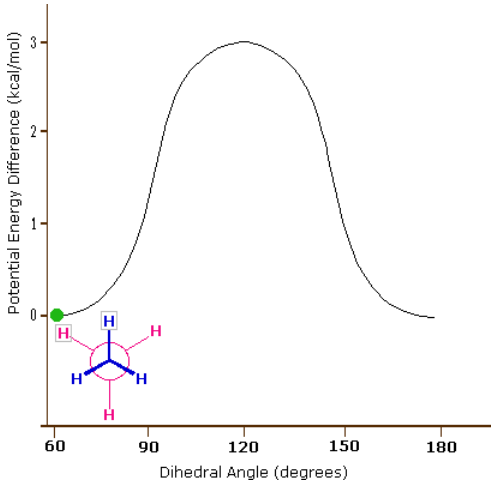


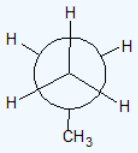
Figure 3.6.X: Animation of potential energy vs. dihedral angle in ethane

Exercise

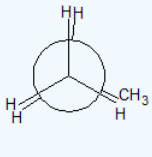
1. Draw the Newman projections for the staggered and eclipsed conformers of propane along the C1-C2 axis.

Answer

1.



staggered



eclipsed

5.10: Structure and Conformations of Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

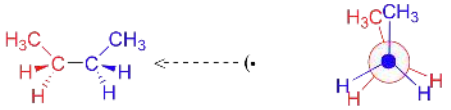
5.11: Conformations of Butane

Learning Objective

- interpret and draw the rotation about a carbon-carbon single bond using Newman projections and sawhorse structures
- correlate energies of conformations with rotational energy diagrams and predict the most stable conformations for butane

Butane Conformations

Now let's consider butane, with its four-carbon chain. There are now three rotating carbon-carbon bonds to consider, but we will focus on the middle bond between C_2 and C_3. Below are two representations of butane in a conformation which puts the two CH_3 groups (C_1 and C_4) in the eclipsed position, with the two C-C bonds at a 0° dihedral angle.



eclipsed (A)

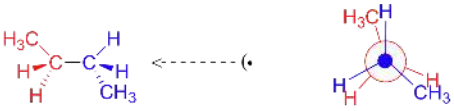
If we rotate the front, (blue) carbon by 60° clockwise, the butane molecule is now in a staggered conformation.



gauche

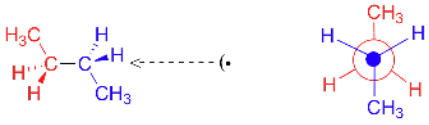
This is more specifically referred to as the **gauche** conformation of butane. Notice that although they are staggered, the two methyl groups are not as far apart as they could possibly be.

A further rotation of 60° gives us a second eclipsed conformation (B) in which both methyl groups are lined up with hydrogen atoms.



eclipsed (B)

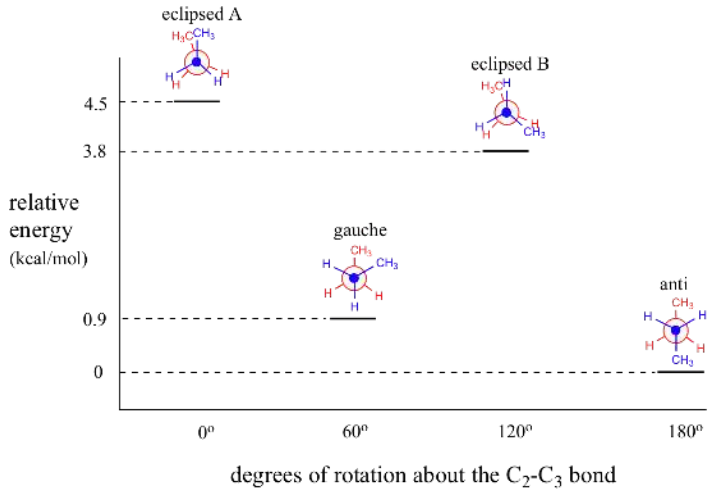
One more 60 rotation produces another staggered conformation called the **anti** conformation, where the two methyl groups are positioned opposite each other (a dihedral angle of 180°).



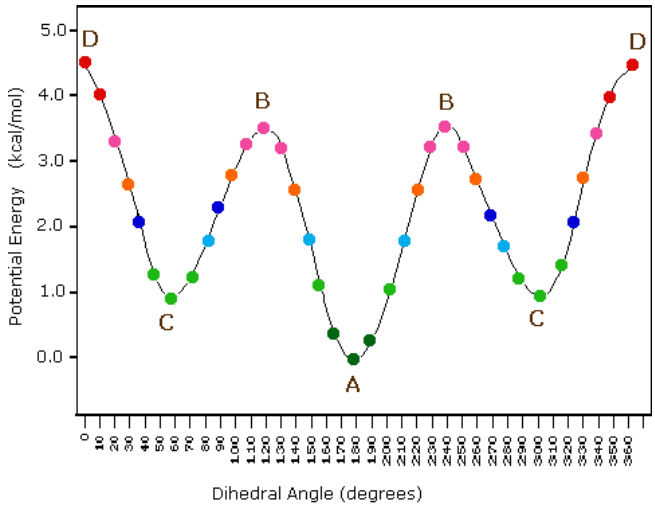
anti

As with ethane, the staggered conformations of butane are energy 'valleys', and the eclipsed conformations are energy 'peaks'. However, in the case of butane there are two different valleys, and two different peaks. The gauche conformation is a higher energy valley than the anti conformation due to **steric strain**, which is the repulsive interaction caused by the two bulky methyl groups being forced too close together. Clearly, steric strain is lower in the anti conformation. In the same way, steric strain causes the eclipsed A conformation - where the two methyl groups are as close together as they can possibly be - to be higher in energy than the two eclipsed B conformations.

The diagram below summarizes the relative energies for the various eclipsed, staggered, and gauche conformations.

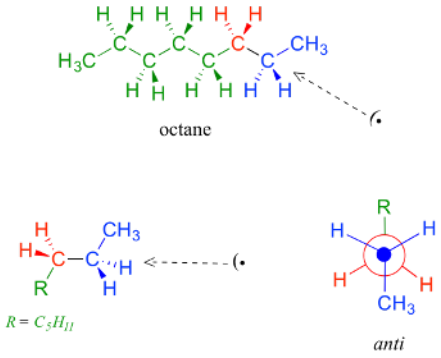


The following diagram illustrates the change in potential energy that occurs with rotation about the C_2–C_3 bond at smaller rotational increments.



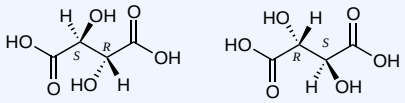
Potential curve vs dihedral angle of the C_2-C_3 bond of butane.

Because the anti conformation (staggered) is lowest in energy (and also simply for ease of drawing), it is conventional to draw open-chain alkanes in a 'zigzag' form, which implies anti conformation at all carbon-carbon bonds. The figure below shows, as an example, a Newman projection looking down the C_2-C_3 bond of octane.

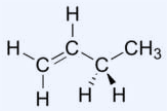


Exercise

1: Using free rotation around C-C single bonds, show that (R,S) and (S,R)-tartaric acid are identical molecules.



2: Draw a Newman projection, looking down the C_2-C_3 bond, of 1-butene in the conformation shown below (C_2 should be your *front* carbon).



Solutions to exercises

Online lectures from Kahn Academy

Newman projections part I

Newman projections part II

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

5.11: Conformations of Butane is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.12: Conformations of Higher Alkanes

Learning Objective

- interpret and draw the rotation about a carbon-carbon single bond using Newman projections and sawhorse structures
- correlate energies of conformations with rotational energy diagrams and predict the most stable conformations for higher alkanes

Pentane and Higher Alkanes

Pentane and higher alkanes have conformational preferences similar to ethane and butane. Each dihedral angle tries to adopt a staggered conformation and each internal C-C bond attempts to take on an anti conformation to minimize the potential energy of the molecule. The most stable conformation of any unbranched alkane follows these rules to take on zigzag shapes:

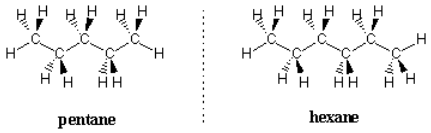


Figure %: The zigzag shapes of unbranched alkanes in their most stable conformations.

Let's analyze the staggered conformations of pentane in more detail, considering conformations about the $C_2 –C_3 $ and $C_3 –C_4 $ bonds. shows a few possible permutations. The most stable conformation is anti at both bonds, whereas less stable conformations contain gauche interactions. One gauche-gauche conformer is particularly unfavorable because methyl groups are aligned with parallel bonds in close proximity. This conformation is called syn. This type of steric hindrance across five atoms is called a syn-pentane interaction. Syn-pentane interactions have an energetic cost of about 3.6 kcal/mol relative to the anti-anti conformation and are therefore disfavored.

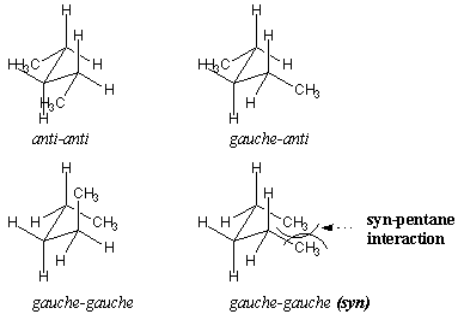
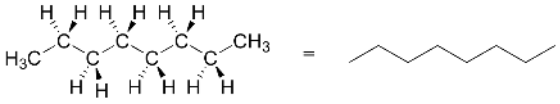
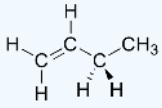


Figure %: Staggered conformations of pentane.



Exercises

1. Draw Newman projections of the eclipsed and staggered conformations of propane.
2. Draw a Newman projection, looking down the C_2-C_3 bond, of 1-butene in the conformation shown below.

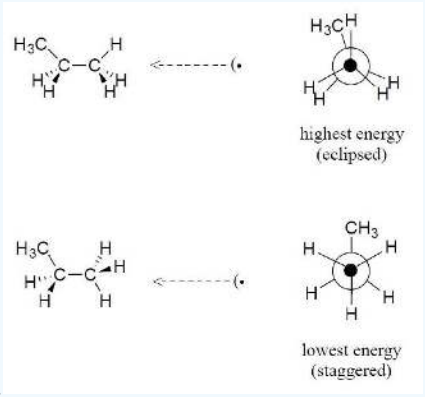


3. Draw the energy diagram for the rotation of the bond highlighted in pentane.



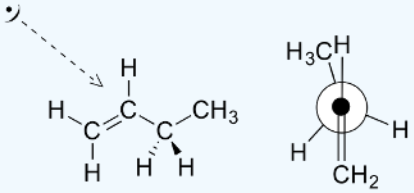
Answer

1.

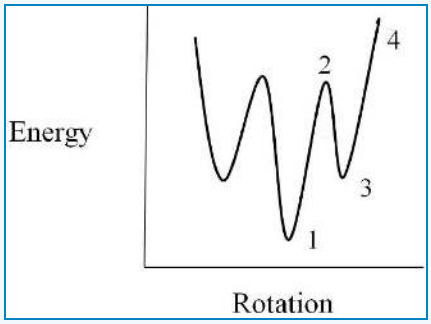


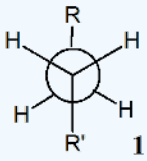
.

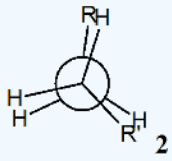
2.



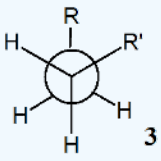
3.

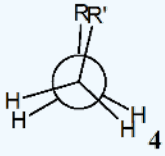



1


2

R=Methyl
R'=Ethyl


3


4

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

5.12: Conformations of Higher Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.13: Cycloalkanes and Ring Strain

Learning Objective

- explain the partial rotation of carbon-carbon single bonds in rings
- explain ring strain and its relationship to cycloalkane stability

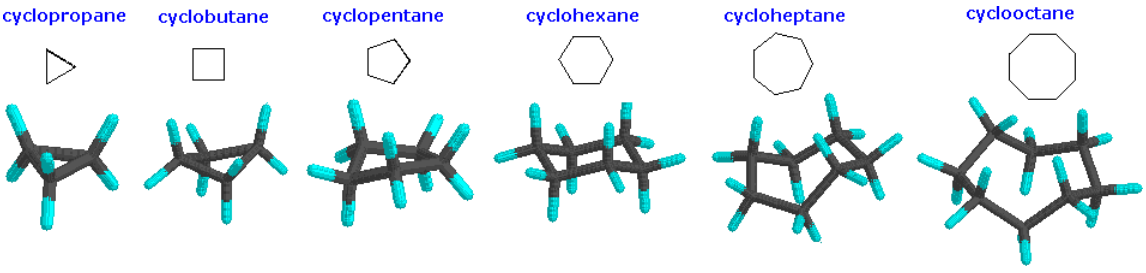
Cycloalkanes (aka Rings)

Cycloalkanes have one or more rings of carbon atoms. The simplest examples of this class consist of a single, unsubstituted carbon ring, and these form a homologous series similar to the unbranched alkanes. The IUPAC names of the first five members of this series are given in the following table. The last column gives the general formula for a cycloalkane of any size. If a simple unbranched alkane is converted to a cycloalkane two hydrogen atoms, one from each end of the chain, must be lost. Hence the general formula for a cycloalkane composed of **n** carbons is $\mathbf{C_nH_{2n}}$. Although a cycloalkane has two fewer hydrogens than the equivalent alkane, each carbon is bonded to four other atoms so such compounds are still considered to be **saturated** with hydrogen.

Table: Examples of Simple Cycloalkanes

Name	Cyclopropane	Cyclobutane	Cyclopentane	Cyclohexane	Cycloheptane	Cycloalkane
Molecular Formula	C_3H_6	C_4H_8	C_5H_{10}	C_6H_{12}	C_7H_{14}	C_nH_{2n}
Structural Formula						$(CH_2)_n$
Line Formula						

Although the customary line drawings of simple cycloalkanes are geometrical polygons, the actual shape of these compounds in most cases is very different. Cyclic systems are a little different from open-chain systems. In an open chain, any bond can be rotated 360 degrees, going through many different conformations. Complete rotation isn't possible in a cyclic system, because the parts that you would be trying to twist away from each other would still be connected together. Cyclic systems have fewer "degrees of freedom" than aliphatic systems; they have "restricted rotation". Because of the restricted rotation of cyclic systems, most of them have much more well-defined shapes than their aliphatic counterparts. Let's take a look at the basic shapes of some common rings. Many biologically important compounds are built around structures containing rings, so it's important that we become familiar with them. In nature, three- to six-membered rings are frequently encountered, so we'll focus on those.



The Baeyer Theory and the Experimental Evidence of Ring Strain

Many of the properties of cyclopropane and its derivatives are similar to the properties of alkenes. In 1890, the famous German organic chemist, A. Baeyer, suggested that cyclopropane and cyclobutane derivatives are different from cyclopentane and cyclohexane, because their C—C—C angles cannot have the tetrahedral value of 109.5°. At the same time, Baeyer hypothesized that the difficulties encountered in synthesizing cycloalkane rings from C7 upward was the result of the angle strain that would be expected if the large rings were regular planar polygons (see Table 12-3). Baeyer also believed that cyclohexane had a planar

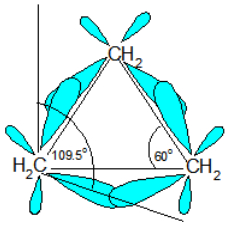
structure like that shown in Figure 12-2, which would mean that the bond angles would have to deviate 10.5° from the tetrahedral value. However, in 1895, the then unknown chemist H. Sachse suggested that cyclohexane exists in the strain-free chair and boat forms discussed in Section 12-3. This suggestion was not accepted at the time because it led to the prediction of several possible isomers for compounds such as chlorocyclohexane (cf. Exercise 12-4). The idea that such isomers might act as a single substance, as the result of rapid equilibration, seemed like a needless complication, and it was not until 1918 that E. Mohr proposed a definitive way to distinguish between the Baeyer and Sachse cyclohexanes. As will be discussed in Section 12-9, the result, now known as the Sachse-Mohr theory, was complete confirmation of the idea of nonplanar large rings.

Table: Strain in Cycloalkane Rings and Heats of Combustion of Cycloalkanes

Compound	n	Angle Strain at each CH2	Heat of Combustion ΔHo (kcal/mol)	Heat of Combustion ΔHo per CH2/N (kcal/mol)	Total Strain (kcal/mol)
ethene	2	109.5	337.2	168.6	22.4
cyclopropane	3	49.5	499.9	166.6	27.7
cyclobutane	4	19.5	655.9	164.0	26.3
cyclopentane	5	1.5	793.4	158.7	6.5
cyclohexane	6	10.5	944.8	157.5	0.4
cycloheptane	7	19.1	1108.1	158.4	6.3
cyclooctane	8	25.5	1268.9	158.6	9.7
cyclononane	9	30.5	1429.5	158.8	12.9
cyclodecane	10	34.5	1586.1	158.6	12.1
cyclopentadecane	15	46.5	2362.5	157.5	1.5
open chain alkane				157.4	-

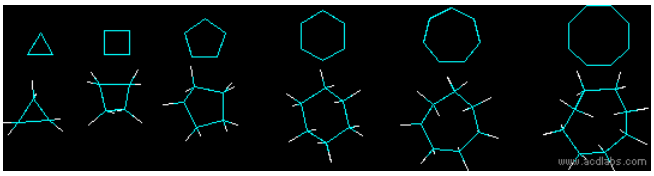
Ring Strain in Cycloalkanes

Ring Strain occurs because the carbons in cycloalkanes are sp^3 hybridized, which means that they do not have the expected ideal bond angle of 109.5^o ; this causes an increase in the potential energy because of the desire for the carbons to be at an ideal 109.5^o. An example of ring strain can be seen in the diagram of cyclopropane below in which the bond angle is 60° between the carbons.



The reason for ring strain can be seen through the tetrahedral carbon model. The C-C-C bond angles in cyclopropane (diagram above) (60°) and cyclobutane (90°) are much different than the ideal bond angle of 109.5^o. This bond angle causes cyclopropane and cyclobutane to have a high ring strain. However, molecules, such as cyclohexane and cyclopentane, would have a much lower ring strain because the bond angle between the carbons is much closer to 109.5^o.

Below are some examples of cycloalkanes. Ring strain can be seen more prevalently in the cyclopropane and cyclobutane models



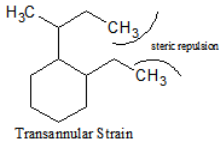
Below is a chart of cycloalkanes and their respective heats of combustion (ΔH_{comb}). The ΔH_{comb} value increases as the number of carbons in the cycloalkane increases (higher membered ring), and the $\Delta H_{comb}/CH_2$ ratio decreases. The increase in ΔH_{comb} can be attributed to the greater amount of London Dispersion forces. However, the decrease in $\Delta H_{comb}/CH_2$can be attributed to a decrease in the ring strain.

Cycloalkane	$\triangle H_{comb}$ (KJ/Mol)	$\Delta H_{comb}/CH_2$(KJ/mol)
△	-499.8	-166.6
□	-655.9	-164.0
⬠	-793.5	-158.7
⬡	-944.5	-157.4

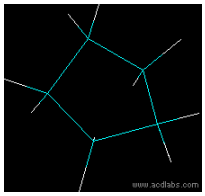
Certain cycloalkanes, such as cyclohexane, deal with ring strain by forming conformers. A conformer is a stereoisomer in which molecules of the same connectivity and formula exist as different isomers, in this case, to reduce ring strain. The ring strain is reduced in conformers due to the rotations around the sigma bonds.

Other Types of Strain

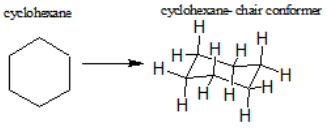
There are many different types of strain that occur with cycloalkanes. In addition to ring strain, there is also transannular strain, eclipsing, or torsional strain and bond angle strain.Transannular strain exists when there is steric repulsion between atoms. Eclipsing (torsional) strain exists when a cycloalkane is unable to adopt a staggered conformation around a C-C bond, and bond angle strain is the energy needed to distort the tetrahedral carbons enough to close the ring. The presence of angle strain in a molecule indicates that there are bond angles in that particular molecule that deviate from the ideal bond angles required (i.e., that molecule has conformers).



Transannular Strain



This is an example of torsional strain through cylcopentane. The torsional strain is caused by the hudrogen bonds in the ring (shown in yellow)



this conformer is more stable

Cyclopropane

A three membered ring has no rotational freedom whatsoever, so the three carbon atoms in cyclopropane are all constrained to lie in the same plane at the corners of an equilateral triangle. The 60º bond angles are much smaller than the optimum 109.5º angles of a normal tetrahedral carbon atom, and the resulting angle strain dramatically influences the chemical behavior of this cycloalkane. Cyclopropane also suffers substantial eclipsing strain, since all the carbon-carbon bonds are fully eclipsed.



cyclopropane

Furthermore, if you look at a model you will find that the neighboring C-H bonds (C-C bonds, too) are all held in eclipsed conformations.

Cyclopropane is always at maximum torsional strain. This strain can be illustrated in a line drawing of cyclopropane as shown from the side. In this oblique view, the dark lines mean that those sides of the ring are closer to you.



However, the ring isn't big enough to introduce any steric strain, which does not become a factor until we reach six membered rings. Until that point, rings are not flexible enough for two atoms to reach around and bump into each other.

The really big problem with cyclopropane is that the C-C-C bond angles are all too small.

- All the carbon atoms in cyclopropane appear to be tetrahedral.
- These bond angles ought to be 109 degrees.
- The angles in an equilateral triangle are actually 60 degrees, about half as large as the optimum angle.
- This factor introduces a huge amount of strain in the molecule, called ring strain.

Cyclobutane

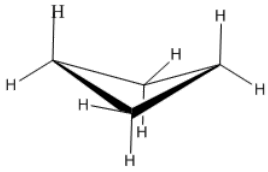
Cyclobutane is a four membered ring. In two dimensions, it is a square, with 90 degree angles at each corner. Cyclobutane reduces some bond-eclipsing strain by folding (the out-of-plane dihedral angle is about 25º), but the total eclipsing and angle strain remains high. Cyclopentane has very little angle strain (the angles of a pentagon are 108º), but its eclipsing strain would be large (about 10 kcal/mol) if it remained planar. Consequently, the five-membered ring adopts non-planar puckered conformations whenever possible.



cyclobutane

However, in three dimensions, cyclobutane is flexible enough to buckle into a "butterfly" shape, relieving torsional strain a little bit. When it does that, the bond angles get a little worse, going from 90 degrees to 88 degrees.

In a line drawing, this butterfly shape is usually shown from the side, with the near edges drawn using darker lines.



- With bond angles of 88 rather than 109 degrees, cyclobutane has a lot of ring strain, but less than in cyclopropane.
- Torsional strain is still present, but the neighbouring bonds are not exactly eclipsed in the butterfly.
- Cyclobutane is still not large enough that the molecule can reach around to cause crowding. Steric strain is very low.
- Cyclobutanes are a little more stable than cyclopropanes and are also a little more common in nature.

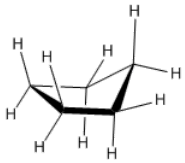
Cyclopentane

Cyclopentanes are even more stable than cyclobutanes, and they are the second-most common paraffinic ring in nature, after cyclohexanes. In two dimensions, a cyclopentane appears to be a regular pentagon.



cyclopentane

In three dimensions, there is enough freedom of rotation to allow a slight twist out of this planar shape. In a line drawing, this three-dimensional shape is drawn from an oblique view, just like cyclobutane.



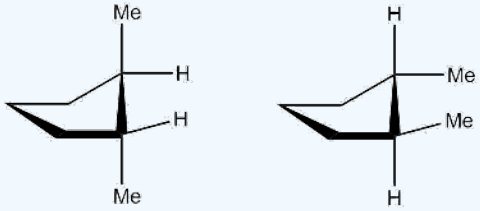
- The ideal angle in a regular pentagon is about 107 degrees, very close to a tetrahedral bond angle.
- Cyclopentane distorts only very slightly into an "envelope" shape in which one corner of the pentagon is lifted up above the plane of the other four, and as a result, ring strain is entirely removed.
- The envelope removes torsional strain along the sides and flap of the envelope. However, the neighbouring carbons are eclipsed along the "bottom" of the envelope, away from the flap. There is still some torsional strain in cyclopentane.
- Again, there is no steric strain in this system.

Rings larger than cyclopentane would have angle strain if they were planar. However, this strain, together with the eclipsing strain inherent in a planar structure, can be relieved by puckering the ring. Cyclohexane is a good example of a carbocyclic system that virtually eliminates eclipsing and angle strain by adopting non-planar conformations. Cycloheptane and cyclooctane have greater strain than cyclohexane, in large part due to transannular crowding (steric hindrance by groups on opposite sides of the ring).

Exercise 5.13.1

1. If cyclobutane were to be planar how many H-H eclipsing interactions would there be, and assuming 4 kJ/mol per H-H eclipsing interaction what is the strain on this “planar” molecule?

2. In the two conformations of *cis*-cyclopentane one is more stable than the other. Explain why this is.



Answer

1. There are 8 eclipsing interactions (two per C-C bond). The extra strain on this molecule would be 32 kJ/mol (4 kJ/mol x 8).

2. The first conformation is more stable. Even though the methyl groups are *cis* in the model on the left, they are eclipsing due the conformation, therefore increasing the strain within the molecule.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Chris P Schaller, Ph.D., (College of Saint Benedict / Saint John's University)

- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

5.13: Cycloalkanes and Ring Strain is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.14: Cyclohexane Conformations

Learning Objective

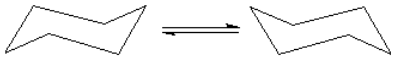
- draw cyclohexane conformations (chair & boat)
- correlate energies of conformations with rotational energy diagrams and predict the most stable conformations for cyclohexane

Introduction

Rings larger than cyclopentane would have angle strain if they were planar. However, this strain, together with the eclipsing strain inherent in a planar structure, can be relieved by puckering the ring. Cyclohexane is a good example of a carbocyclic system that virtually eliminates eclipsing and angle strain by adopting non-planar conformations. Cycloheptane and cyclooctane have greater strain than cyclohexane, in large part due to transannular crowding (steric hindrance by groups on opposite sides of the ring).

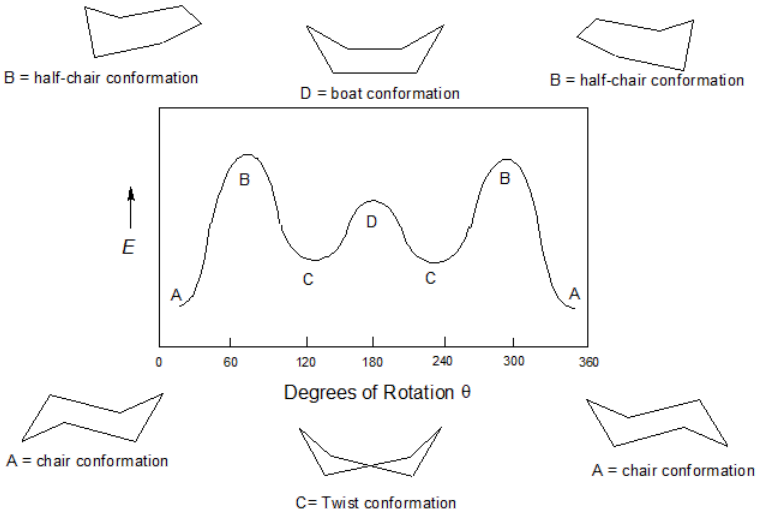
Cyclohexane Conformations (aka Chair Flips)

Cyclohexane is rapidly rotating between the two most stable conformations known as the chair conformations in what is called the "Chair Flip" shown below.



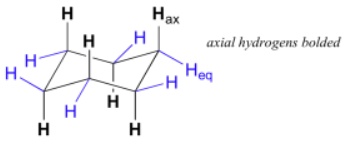
The "Chair Flip" describes the rapid equilibrium of cyclohexane rings between the two chair conformations.

Several other notable cyclohexane conformations occur during the transition from one chair conformer to the other - the boat, the twist, and the half-chair. The relative energies of the conformations is a direct reflection of their relative stabilities. These structural and energetic relationships are summarized in the conformational energy diagram for cyclohexane below.

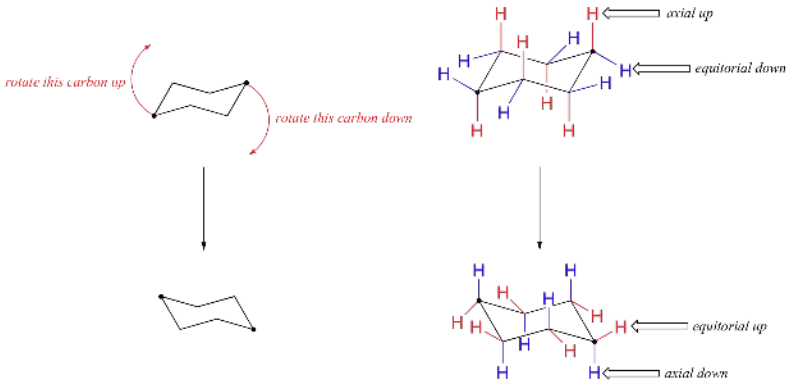


The Chair Conformation - a closer look

Since the chair conformation has the lowest potential energy, it is the most relevant to the conformation of cyclohexane. On careful examination of a chair conformation of cyclohexane, we find that the twelve hydrogens are not structurally equivalent. Six of them are located about the periphery of the carbon ring, and are termed equatorial. The other six are oriented above and below the approximate plane of the ring (three in each location), and are termed axial because they are aligned parallel to the symmetry axis of the ring.



In the figure above, the equatorial hydrogens are colored blue, and the axial hydrogens are in bold. Since there are two equivalent chair conformations of cyclohexane in rapid equilibrium, all twelve hydrogens have 50% equatorial and 50% axial character. The figure below illustrates how to convert a molecular model of cyclohexane between two different chair conformations - this is something that you should practice with models. Notice that a 'ring flip' causes equatorial hydrogens to become axial, and vice-versa.



How to draw stereo bonds ("up" and "down" bonds)

There are various ways to show these orientations. The solid (dark) "up wedge" I used is certainly common. Some people use an analogous "down wedge", which is light, to indicate a down bond; unfortunately, there is no agreement as to which way the wedge should point, and you are left relying on the lightness of the wedge to know it is "down". The "down bond" avoids this wedge ambiguity, and just uses some kind of light line. The down bond I used (e.g., in Figure 5B) is a dashed line; IUPAC encourages a series of parallel lines, something like ⁞⁞⁞⁞ What I did is a variation of what is recommended by IUPAC:

- In **ISIS/Draw**, the "up wedge" and "down bond" that I used, along with other variations, are available from a tool button that may be labeled with any of them, depending on most recent use. It is located directly below the tool button for ordinary C-C bonds.
- In **Symyx Draw**, the "up wedge" and "down bond", along with other variations, are available from a tool button that may be labeled with any of them, depending on most recent use. It is located directly below the "Chain" tool button.
- **ChemSketch** provides up and down wedges, but not the simple up and down bonds discussed above. The wedges are available from the second toolbar across the top. For an expanded discussion of using these wedges, see the section of my ChemSketch Guide on Stereochemistry: Wedge bonds.

As always, the information provided on these pages in intended to help you get started. Each program has more options for drawing bonds than discussed here. When you feel the need, look around!

How to Draw chairs

Most of the structures shown on this page were drawn with the free program **ISIS/Draw**. I have posted a guide to help you get started with ISIS/Draw. ISIS/Draw provides a simple cyclohexane (6-ring) hexagon template on the toolbar across the top. It provides templates for various 6-ring chair structures from the Templates menu; choose Rings. There are templates for simple chairs, without substituents (e.g., Fig 1B), and for chairs showing all the substituents (e.g., Fig 2B). In either case, you can add, delete, or change things as you wish. Various kinds of stereo bonds (wedges and bars) are available by clicking the left-side tool button that is just below the regular C-C single bond button. It may have a wedge shown on it, but this will vary depending on how it has been used. To choose a type of stereo bond, click on the button and hold the mouse click; a new menu will appear to the right of the button.

The free drawing program **Symyx Draw**, the successor to ISIS/Draw, provides similar templates and tools. A basic chair structure is provided on the default template bar that is shown. More options are available by choosing the Rings template. See my page Symyx Draw for a general guide for getting started with this program.

The free drawing program **ChemSketch** provides similar templates and tools. To find the special templates for chairs, go to the **Templates** menu, choose **Template Window**, and then choose "Rings" from the drop-down menu near upper left. See my page ChemSketch for a general guide for getting started with this program.

If you want to draw chair structures by hand (and if you are going on in organic chemistry, you should)... Be careful. The precise zigs and zags, and the angles of substituents are all important. Your textbook may offer you some hints for how to draw chairs. A short item in the Journal of Chemical Education offers a nice trick, showing how the chair can be thought of as consisting of an M and a W. The article is V Dragojlovic, A method for drawing the cyclohexane ring and its substituents. J Chem Educ 78:923, 7/01. (I thank M Farooq Wahab, Chemistry, Univ Karachi, for suggesting that this article be noted here.)

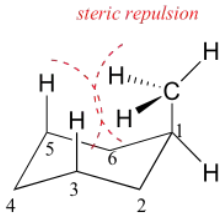
Aside from drawing the basic chair, the key points in adding substituents are:

- Axial groups alternate up and down, and are shown "vertical".
- Equatorial groups are approximately horizontal, but actually somewhat distorted from that, so that the angle from the axial group is a bit more than a right angle -- reflecting the common 109 degree bond angle.
- As cautioned before, it is usually easier to draw and see what is happening at the four corners of the chair than at the two middle positions. Try to use the corners as much as possible.

Because axial bonds are parallel to each other, substituents larger than hydrogen generally suffer greater steric crowding when they are oriented axial rather than equatorial. Consequently, ***substituted cyclohexanes will preferentially adopt conformations in which the larger substituents assume equatorial orientation***.



When the methyl group in the structure above occupies an axial position it suffers steric crowding by the two axial hydrogens located on the same side of the ring.



The conformation in which the methyl group is equatorial is more stable, and thus the equilibrium lies in this direction

Exercise

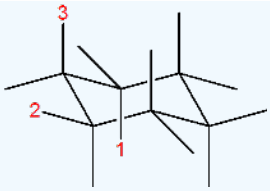
Questions

1. Consider the conformations of cyclohexane, chair, boat, twist boat. Order them in increasing strain in the molecule.

2. Draw two conformations of cyclohexyl amine ($C_6H_{11}NH_2$). Indicate axial and equatorial positions.

3. Draw the two isomers of 1,4-dihydroxylcyclohexane, identify which are equatorial and axial.

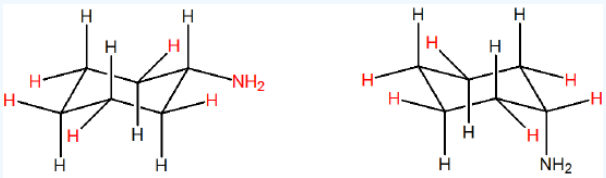
4. In the following molecule, label which are equatorial and which are axial, then draw the chair flip (showing labels 1,2,3).



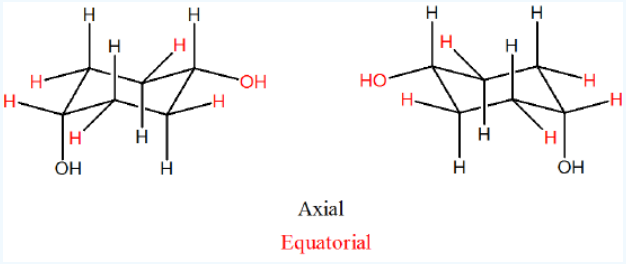
Answer

1. Chair < Twist Boat < Boat (most strain)

2.

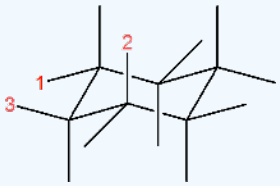


3.



4. Original conformation: 1 = axial, 2 = equatorial, 3 = axial

Flipped chair now looks like this.



Contributors and Attributions

Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)

Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

>Robert Bruner (http://bbruner.org)

5.14: Cyclohexane Conformations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

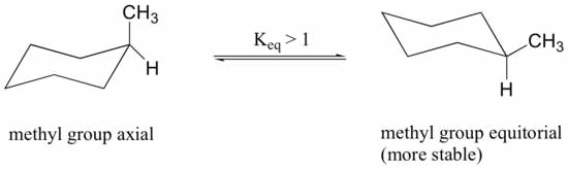
5.15: Conformations of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes

Learning Objective

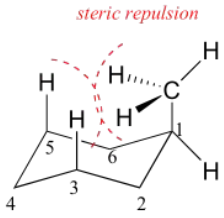
- draw mono-substituted cyclohexane conformers (chair only)
- correlate energies of conformations with rotational energy diagrams and predict the most stable conformations for butane, higher alkanes, cyclohexane, mono-substituted cyclohexanes, and disubstituted cyclohexanes

Introduction

Because axial bonds are parallel to each other, substituents larger than hydrogen generally suffer greater steric crowding when they are oriented axial rather than equatorial. Consequently, ***substituted cyclohexanes will preferentially adopt conformations in which the larger substituents assume equatorial orientation***.



When the methyl group in the structure above occupies an axial position it suffers steric crowding by the two axial hydrogens located on the same side of the ring. The conformation in which the methyl group is equatorial is more stable, and thus the equilibrium lies in this direction.



In examining possible structures for monosubstituted cyclohexanes, it is useful to follow two principles:

i. Chair conformations are generally more stable than other possibilities.
ii. Substituents on chair conformers prefer to occupy equatorial positions due to the increased steric hindrance of axial locations.

Experimental Measurements of Steric Hindrance

The relative steric hindrance experienced by different substituent groups oriented in an axial versus equatorial location on cyclohexane may be determined by the conformational equilibrium of the compound. The corresponding equilibrium constant is related to the energy difference between the conformers and collecting such data allows us to evaluate the relative tendency of substituents to exist in an equatorial or axial location.

Looking at the energy values the table, it is clear that the apparent "size" of a substituent (in terms of its preference for equatorial over axial orientation) is influenced by its width and bond length to cyclohexane, as evidenced by the fact that an axial vinyl group is less hindered than ethyl, and iodine slightly less than chlorine.

A Selection of AG° Values for the Change from Axial to Equatorial Orientation of Substituents for Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes

Substituent	$-\Delta G^o$ kcal/mol	Substituent	$-\Delta G^o$ kcal/mol
CH_3-	1.7	O_2N-	1.1
CH_2H_5-	1.8	$N\equiv C-$	0.2
$(CH_3)_2CH-$	2.2	CH_3O-	0.5
$(CH_3)_3C-$	≥ 5.0	$(CH_3)_3C$-	0.7
$F-$	0.3	F-	1.3
$Cl-$	0.5	C_6H_5-	3.0
$Br-$	0.5		
$I-$	0.5		

Exercise

1. In the molecule, cyclohexyl ethyne there is little steric strain, why?

Answer

1.

The ethyne group is linear and therefore does not affect the hydrogens in the 1,3 positions to say to the extent as a bulkier or a bent group (e.g. ethene group) would. This leads to less of a strain on the molecule.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

>Robert Bruner (http://bbruner.org)

- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

5.15: Conformations of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.16: Cis-trans Isomerism in Cycloalkanes

Learning Objective

- identify & draw the geometric (cis/trans) isomers of cycloalkanes

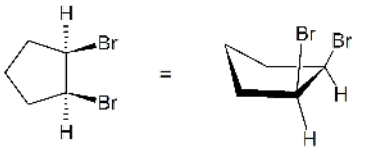
Geometric Isomerism of Cycloalkanes

The carbon ring of cycloalkanes forms a pseudo-plane that can be used to assign the relative orientation of atoms or substituents bonded to the ring (stereochemistry). One side of the ring is called "up" while the other side is called "down". By agreement, chemists use heavy, wedge-shaped bonds to indicate a substituent located above the average plane of the ring (up), and a hatched line for bonds to atoms or groups located below the ring (down).

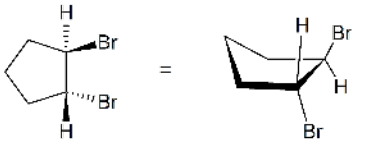
Disubstituted cycloalkane stereoisomers may be designated by nomenclature prefixes such as *cis* and *trans*. Cis and trans isomers are also called "geometric isomers".

For the cis isomer, both substituents are aobe or below the carbon ring. For the trans isomer, one substituent is above the ring while the other substituent is below the ring.

The cis and trans isomers for 1,2-dibromocyclopentane are shown as an example below.



cis-1,2-dibromocyclopentane

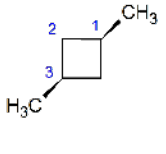


trans-1,2-dibromocyclopentane

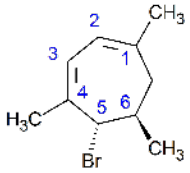
While the carbon-carbon single bonds of the rings can rotate partially, there is NO way to inter-convert between the cis and trans isomers. Cis and trans isomers are unique compounds with their own unique melting points, boiling points, densities, etc.

Further explanation:

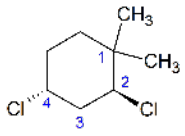
In general, if any two sp^3 carbons in a ring have two different substituent groups (not counting other ring atoms) stereoisomerism is possible. This is similar to the substitution pattern that gives rise to stereoisomers in alkenes; indeed, one might view a double bond as a two-membered ring. Four other examples of this kind of stereoisomerism in cyclic compounds are shown below.



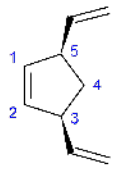
cis-1,3-dimethylcyclobutane



trans-5-bromo-1,4,6-trimethyl-1,3-cycloheptadiene

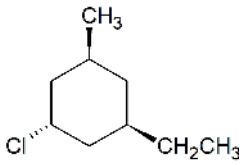


trans-2,4-dichloro-1,1-dimethylcyclohexane



cis-3,5-divinylcyclopentene

If more than two ring carbons have different substituents (not counting other ring atoms) the stereochemical notation distinguishing the various isomers becomes more complex. However, we can always state the relationship of any two substituents using cis or trans. For example, in the trisubstitutued cyclohexane below, we can say that the methyl group is *cis* to the ethyl group, and *trans* to the chlorine. We can also say that the ethyl group is *trans* to the chlorine. We cannot, however, designate the entire molecule as a *cis* or trans *isomer*.



Exercise

1. Draw the following molecules:

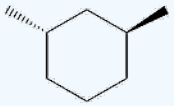
trans-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane

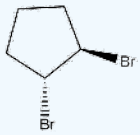
trans-1,2-dibromocyclopentane

cis-1,3-dichlorocyclobutane

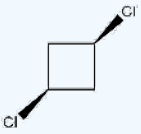
Answer

1.


1



2



3

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

5.16: Cis-trans Isomerism in Cycloalkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.17: Conformations of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes

Learning Objective

- draw di-substituted cyclohexane conformers (chair only)
- correlate energies of conformations with rotational energy diagrams and predict the most stable conformations for disubstituted cyclohexanes

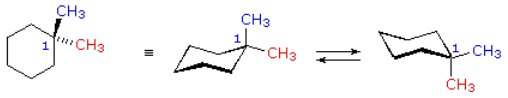
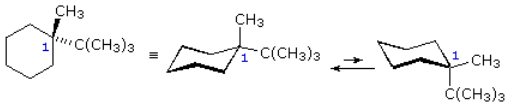
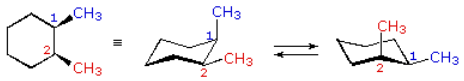
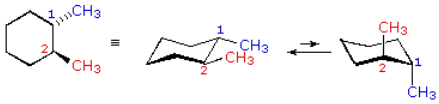
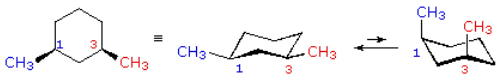
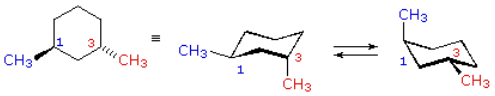
Conformational Structures of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes

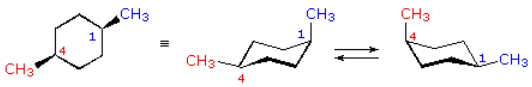
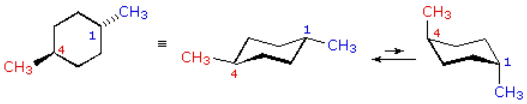
In a sample of cyclohexane, the two identical chair conformers are present in equal concentration, and the hydrogens are all equivalent (50% equatorial & 50% axial) due to rapid interconversion of the conformers. When the cyclohexane ring bears a substituent, the two chair conformers are not the same. In one conformer the substituent is axial, in the other it is equatorial. Due to steric hindrance in the axial location, substituent groups prefer to be equatorial and that chair conformer predominates in the equilibrium.

When cycloalkanes have two substituents on different ring carbon atoms, then a pair of configurational stereoisomers exist. Now we must examine the way in which favorable ring conformations influence the properties of the configurational isomers. Remember, configurational stereoisomers are stable, unique chemical compounds, whereas, conformational isomers are different rotations of the same compound. In examining possible structures for disubstituted cyclohexane, it is useful to follow two principles:

1. Substituents on chair conformers prefer to occupy equatorial positions due to the increased steric hindrance of axial locations.

The following equations and formulas illustrate how the presence of two or more substituent on a cyclohexane ring perturbs the interconversion of the two chair conformers in ways that can be predicted. When there is a potential energy difference between the conformers, then the lower energy conformation is favored as indicated by the equilibrium reaction arrows.

1,1-dimethylcyclohexane	
1-t-butyl-1-methylcyclohexane	
cis-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane	
trans-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane	
cis-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane	
	

trans-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane	
cis-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane	
trans-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane	

In the case of 1,1-disubstituted cyclohexanes, one of the substituents must necessarily be axial and the other equatorial, regardless of which chair conformer is considered. Since the substituents are the same in 1,1-dimethylcyclohexane, the two conformers are identical and present in equal concentration. In 1-t-butyl-1-methylcyclohexane the t-butyl group is much larger than the methyl, and that chair conformer in which the larger group is equatorial will be favored in the equilibrium(> 99%). Consequently, the methyl group in this compound is almost exclusively axial in its orientation.

In the cases of 1,2-, 1,3- and 1,4-disubstituted compounds the analysis is a bit more complex. It is always possible to have both groups equatorial, but whether this requires a cis-relationship or a trans-relationship depends on the relative location of the substituents. As we count around the ring from carbon #1 to #6, the uppermost bond on each carbon changes its orientation from equatorial (or axial) to axial (or equatorial) and back. It is important to remember that the **bonds on a given side of a chair ring-conformation always alternate in this fashion**. Therefore, it should be clear that for cis-1,2-disubstitution, one of the substituents must be equatorial and the other axial; in the trans-isomer both may be equatorial. Because of the alternating nature of equatorial and axial bonds, the opposite relationship is true for 1,3-disubstitution (cis is all equatorial, trans is equatorial/axial). Finally, 1,4-disubstitution reverts to the 1,2-pattern.

The conformations of some substituted cyclohexanes may be examined as interactive models by Clicking Here.

It can be helpful to add the hydrogen atoms at the axial positions to help recognize the equatorial position.

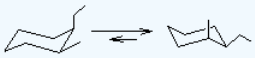
Exercise

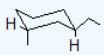
1. Draw the two chair conformations for cis-1-ethyl-2-methylcyclohexane using bond-line structures and indicate the more energetically favored conformation.

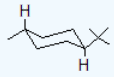
2. Draw the most stable conformation for trans-1-ethyl-3-methylcyclohexane using bond-line structures.

3. Draw the most stable conformation for trans-1-t-butyl-4-methylcyclohexane using bond-line structures.

Answer

1. 
larger ethyl group in equatorial position is favored

2. 
larger ethyl group in equatorial position is favored

3. 
both alkyl groups in equatorial position

Contributors

- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

5.17: Conformations of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.18: Additional Exercises

Structural and Geometric Isomerism

4-1

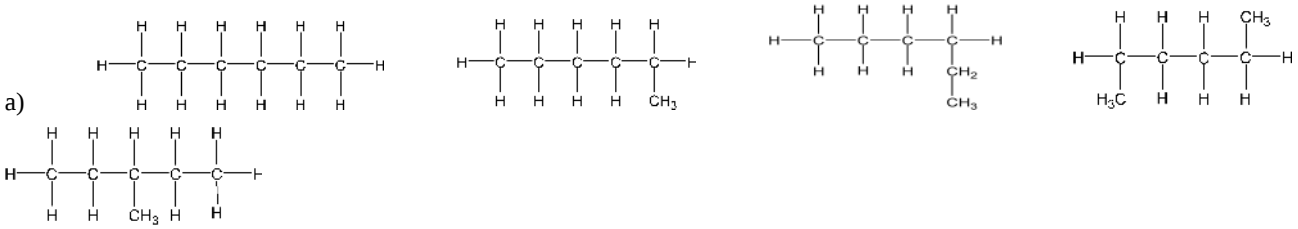
a) There are five alkane isomers of hexane C_6H_{14}. Draw and name all of them.

b) The heat of combustion of hexane is 4163.2 kJ/mol. Heat of combustion of neohexane is 4159.5 kJ/mol. Predict the relative stability of these two compounds?

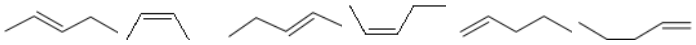
c) Draw and name all cycloalkane isomers of C_5H_{10}, including all possible geometric (cis-trans) stereoisomers.

4-2 Which of the following structures represent the same compound? Name the structures given in part (a), (d), (e), (f), (g)

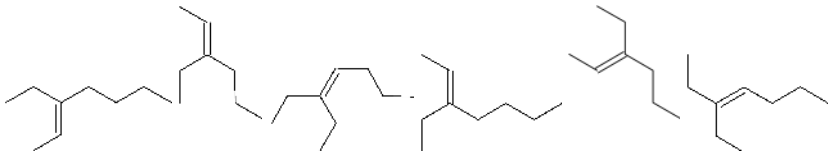
a)



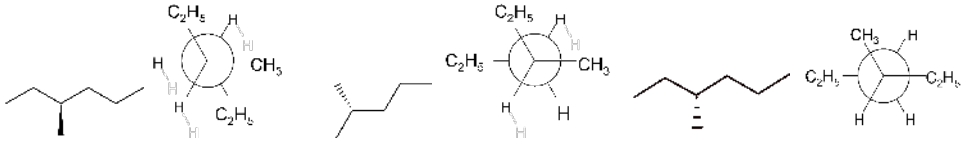
b)



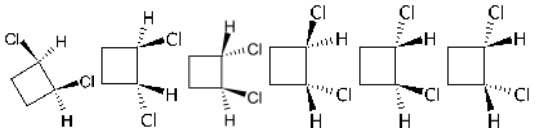
c)



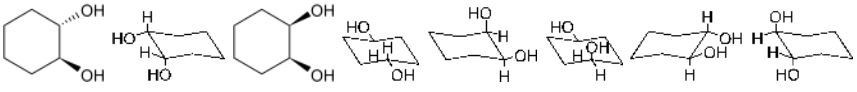
d)



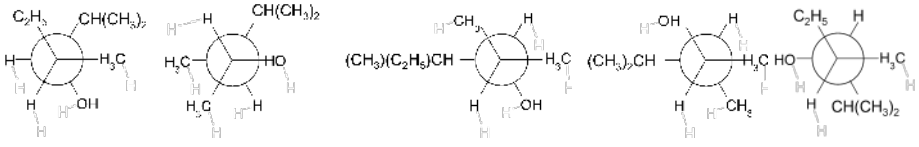
e)



f)



g)



4-3 Each of the following descriptions applies to more than one alkane. In each case, draw and name two structures that match the description.

(a) a sec-butylheptane

(b) a trans-dimethylcyclobutane

(c) a cis-di-tert-butylcyclohexane

(d) an isopropyloctane

(e) a (1,2-dimethylpropyl)cycloalkane

(f) a bicycloheptane

4-4 Write structures for a homologous series of alcohols (R-OH) having from one to five carbons.

4-5 In each pair of compound, which compound has the higher boiling point? Explain your reasoning.

(a) Nonane or 3-ethylhexane

(b) Pentane or 2-methylbutane

(c) Octane or 2,2,4-trimethylpentane

4-6 There are four isomeric four-carbon alkyl groups. Draw them, give their systematic names and label the degree of substitution (primary, secondary, or tertiary) of the head carbon atom which is bonded to the main chain.

4-7 Draw Newman projection of the most stable conformation of the following compounds as viewed from the indicated bond.

(a) 3-methylhexane viewed at C3-C4 bond

(b) 2,2-dimethylbutane viewed at C2-C3 bond

4-8

(a) Draw two chair conformations of trans-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane and label all position as (a) for axial or (e) for equatorial.

(b) Determine the higher-energy and the lower-energy conformations

(c) Calculate the energy difference in these two conformations

4-9 Draw the two chair conformations of each compound and label the substituents as axial or equatorial. In each case, determine which conformation is more stable.

(a) cis-1-ethyl-4-methylcyclohexane

(b) trans-1-ethyl-4-methylcyclohexane

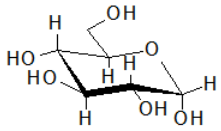
(c) cis-1-bromo-3-methylcyclohexane

(d) trans-1-bromo-3-methylcyclohexane

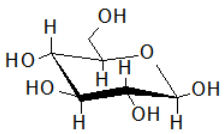
(e) cis-1-methyl-2-isopropylcychlohexane

(f) trans-1-methyl-2-isopropylchyclohexane

4-10 Glucose with molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$ is by far the most abundant sugar in nature. Glucose can take form as an open chain or as can be closed into a ring form. Below are chair conformations of α and β D-glucose. Using what you know about the conformational energy of substituted cyclohexane, predict which of the two isomers predominates in equilibrium. Explain your reasoning.

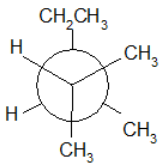


α-D-Glucopyranose

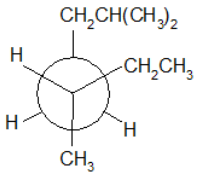


β-D-Glucopyranose

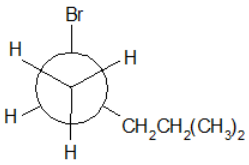
4-11 Provide a line drawing corresponding to each of the following Newman projections and name them using IUPAC rules.


CH2CH3
H
CH3
H
CH3
CH3

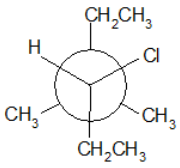
(a)


CH2CH(CH3)2
H
CH2CH3
H
H
CH3

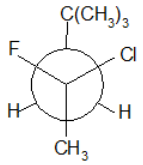
(b)


Br
H
H
H
CH2CH2(CH3)2
H

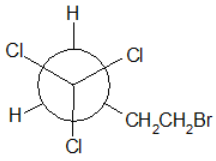
(c)


CH2CH3
H
Cl
CH3
CH3
CH2CH3

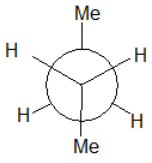
(d)


C(CH3)3
F
Cl
H
H
CH3

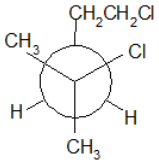
(e)


H
Cl
Cl
H
CH2CH2Br
Cl

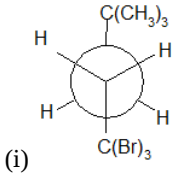
(f)


Me
H
H
H
H
Me

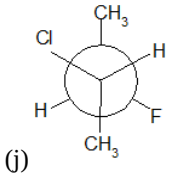
(g)


CH2CH2Cl
CH3
Cl
H
H
CH3

(h)



(i)

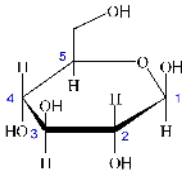


(j)

4-12 Draw Newman projections along the C3-C4 bond to show the most stable and the least stable conformation of 2,3,5-trimethylhexane.

4-13 In β-D-glucose, the hydroxyl group in C1 position is *cis* to the CH_2OH group in C5 position, as shown in the figure below.

There are two chair conformations of β-D-glucose. Draw them and identify which conformation is more stable.



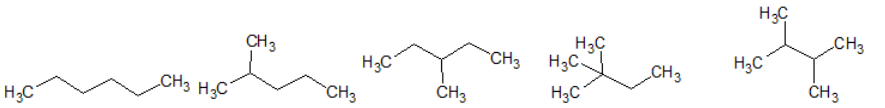
β-D-Glucose

5.18: Additional Exercises is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises

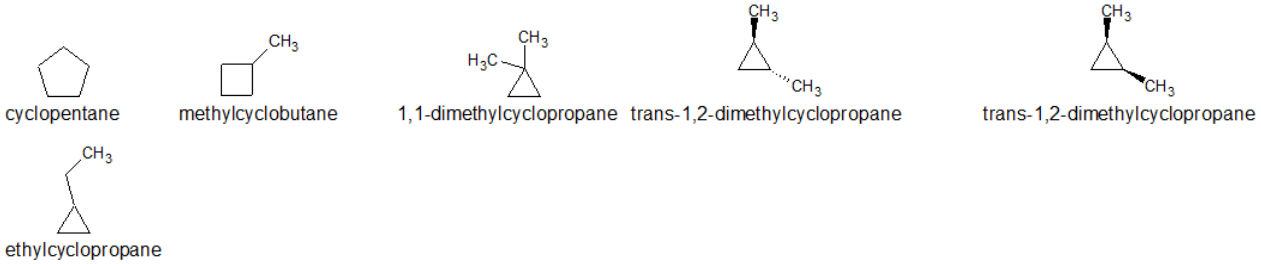
Structural and Geometric Isomerism

4-1 a)



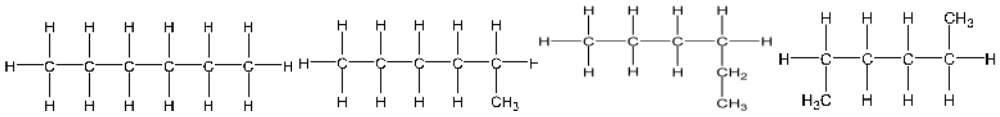
b) The isomer that releases the least energy is the most stable, so neohexane is more stable than hexane.

c)

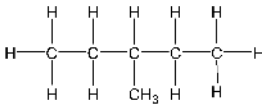


4-2

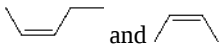
a) The following structures all represent hexane.



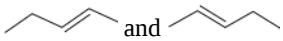
The following structure represents 3-methylpentane:



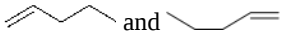
b) Both structures represent cis-2-pentene:



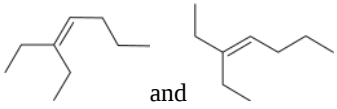
Both structures represent trans-2-pentene:



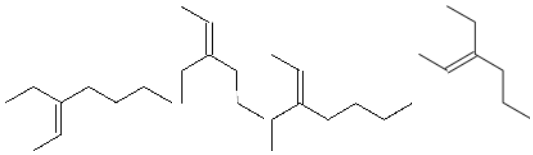
Both structures represent 1-pentene:



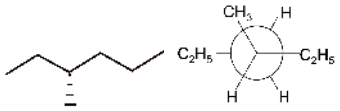
c) Both structures represent 3-ethyl-3-heptene:



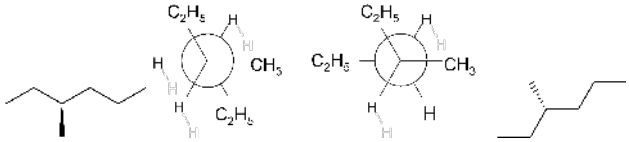
These three structures all represent 3-ethyl-2-heptene:



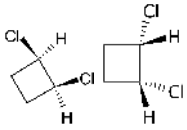
d) Both structures represent (3R)-3-methylhenxane:



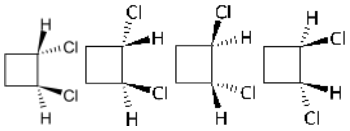
All four structures represent (3S)-3-methylhenxane:



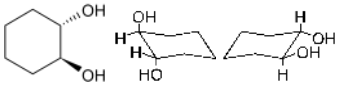
e) Both structures represent trans-1,2-dichlorocyclobutane:



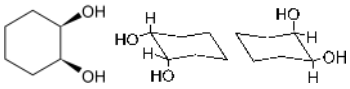
All four structures represent cis-1,2-dichlorocyclobutane:



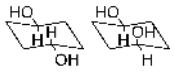
f) All three structures represent trans-1,2-cyclohexanediol:



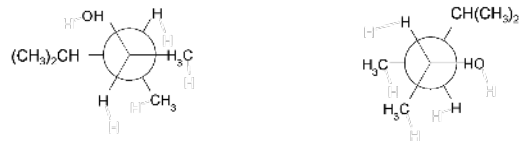
All three structures represent cis-1,2-cyclohexanediol:



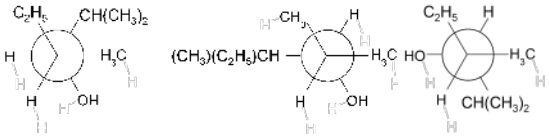
Both structures represent trans-1,4-cyclohexanediol Cis-1,4-cyclohexanediol:



g) Both structures represent 3,4-dimethylpentan-2-ol:

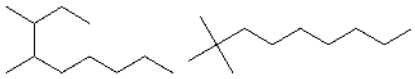


All three structures represent 2,4-dimethylhexan-3-ol:



4-3

(a) a dimethylnonane



3,4-dimethylnonane 2,2-dimethylnonane

(b) a trans-dimethylcyclobutane



trans-1,2-dimethylcyclobutane trans-1,3-dimethylcyclobutane

(c) a cis-di-tert-butylcyclohexane



cis-1,2-di-*tert*-butylcyclohexane cis-1,3-di-*tert*-butylcyclohexane

(d) an isopropyloctane



4-isopropyloctane 3-ethyl-2-methyloctane

(e) a (1,2-dimethylpropyl)cycloalkane



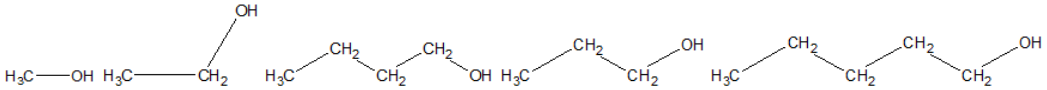
(1,2-dimethylpropyl)cyclohexane (1,2-dimethylpropyl)cycloheptane

(f) a bicycloheptane



Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane Bicyclo[3.1.1]heptane

4-4



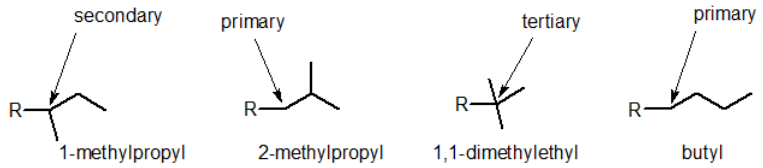
4-5

(a) Nonane has the higher boiling point because it has the higher molecular weight. Recall that higher molecular weight compounds have more surface area, and therefore they have stronger London dispersion forces. As a result, higher molecular weight compounds have the higher boiling temperatures.

(b) Pentane has the higher boiling point. Pentane has a straight chain while 2-methylbutane is branched. Compared to a straight-chain isomer, a branched hydrocarbon has a lower boiling temperature because of its smaller surface area.

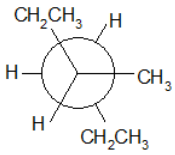
(c) Octane has the higher boiling point because 2,2,4-trimethylpentane is highly branched while octane is a straight-chain hydrocarbon.

4-6

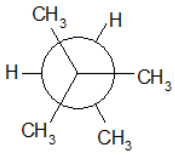


4-7

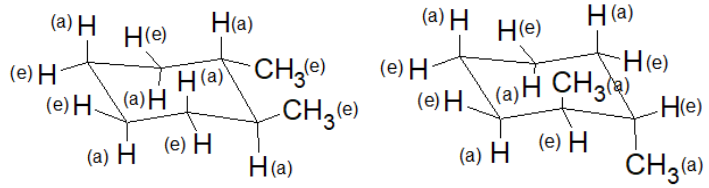
(a)



(b)



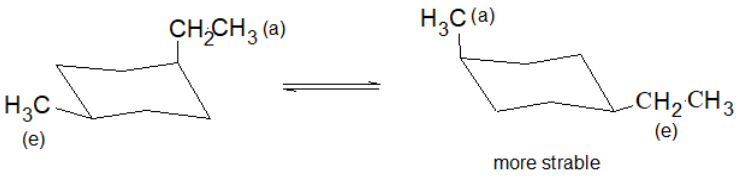
4-8



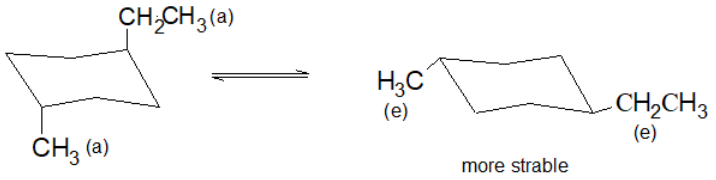
(c) The first conformer has one gauche interaction between the $–CH_3$ groups, so the strain energy of this conformer is 0.9 kcal/mol. The second conformer has four 1,3-diaxial interaction between H and $–CH_3$ groups, so its strain energy is 4 x 0.9 = 3.6 kcal/mol. Therefore, the energy difference in these two conformations is 3.6 – 0.9 =2.7 kcal/mol.

4-9

(a)



(b)



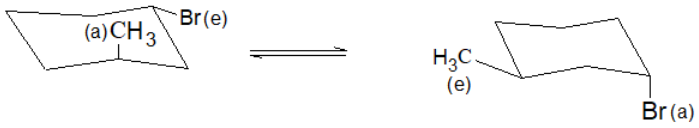
more strable

(c)



more strable

(d)



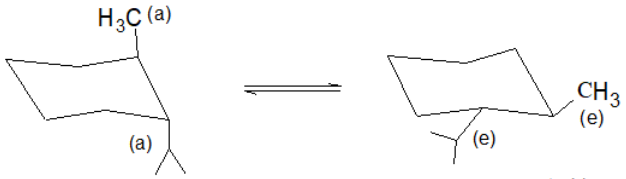
more strable

(e)



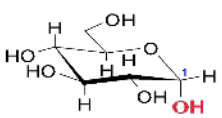
more strable

(f)

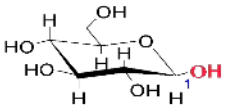


more strable

4-10



α-D-Glucopyranose

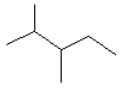


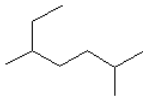
β-D-Glucopyranose

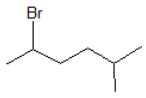
In α-D-glucopyranose, the hydroxyl group at C1 occupies an axial position. In β-D-glucopyranose, the hydroxyl group at C1 of occupies an equatorial position, which is the more stable structure. So the β forms predominates in equilibrium.

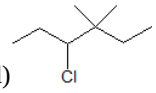
4.11

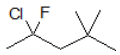
(a)

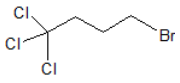


(b) 

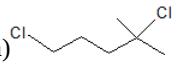
(c) 

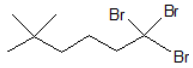
(d) 

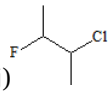
(e) 

(f) 

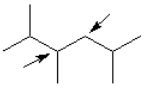
(g) 

(h) 

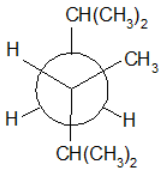
(i) 

(j) 

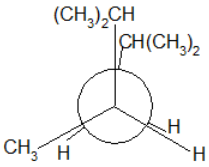
4.12



2,3,5-trimethylhexane

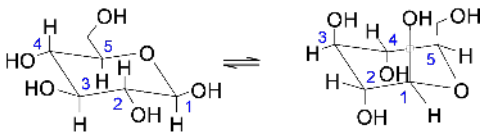


most stable



least stable

4.13



more stable

5.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Stereoisomerism

6.1: Chirality
6.2: Fischer Projections to communicate Chirality
6.3: Absolute Configuration and the (R) and (S) System
6.4: Diastereomers - more than one chiral center
6.5: Meso Compounds
6.6: Isomerism Summary Diagram
6.7: Optical Activity and Racemic Mixtures
6.8: Resolution (Separation) of Enantiomers

6: Stereoisomerism is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.1: Chirality

Learning Objective

- recognize and classify molecules as chiral or achiral and identify planes of symmetry

Stereoisomers are isomers that differ in spatial arrangement of atoms, rather than order of atomic connectivity. One of their most interesting type of isomer is the mirror-image stereoisomers, a non-superimposable set of two molecules that are mirror image of one another. The existence of these molecules are determined by concept known as chirality.

Introduction

Organic compounds, molecules created around a chain of carbon atom (more commonly known as carbon backbone), play an essential role in the chemistry of life. These molecules derive their importance from the energy they carry, mainly in a form of potential energy between atomic molecules. Since such potential force can be widely affected due to changes in atomic placement, it is important to understand the concept of an isomer, a molecule sharing same atomic make up as another but differing in structural arrangements. This article will be devoted to a specific isomers called stereoisomers and its property of chirality (Figure 1).

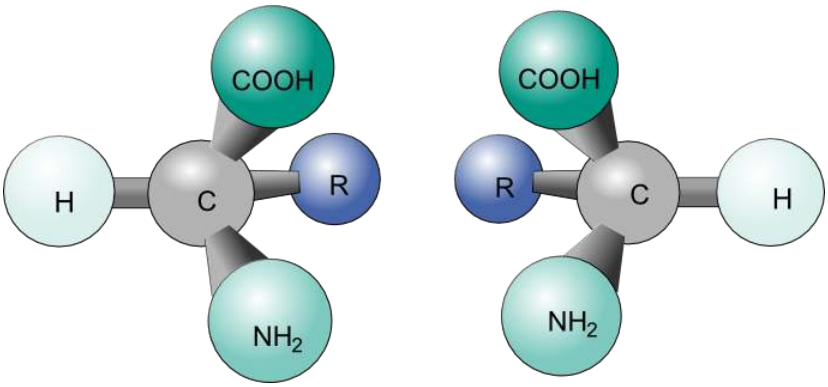


Figure 1: Two enantiomers of a tetrahedral complex.

The concepts of steroisomerism and chirality command great deal of importance in modern organic chemistry, as these ideas helps to understand the physical and theoretical reasons behind the formation and structures of numerous organic molecules, the main reason behind the energy embedded in these essential chemicals. In contrast to more well-known constitutional isomerism, which develops isotopic compounds simply by different atomic connectivity, stereoisomerism generally maintains equal atomic connections and orders of building blocks as well as having same numbers of atoms and types of elements.

What, then, makes stereoisomers so unique? To answer this question, the learner must be able to think and imagine in not just two-dimensional images, but also three-dimensional space. This is due to the fact that stereoisomers are isomers because their atoms are different from others in terms of spatial arrangement.

Spatial Arrangement

First and foremost, one must understand the concept of spatial arrangement in order to understand stereoisomerism and chirality. Spatial arrangement of atoms concern how different atomic particles and molecules are situated about in the space around the organic compound, namely its carbon chain. In this sense, spatial arrangement of an organic molecule are different another if an atom is shifted in any three-dimensional direction by even one degree. This opens up a very broad possibility of different molecules, each with their unique placement of atoms in three-dimensional space .

Stereoisomers

Stereoisomers are, as mentioned above, contain different types of isomers within itself, each with distinct characteristics that further separate each other as different chemical entities having different properties. Type called entaniomer are the previously-

mentioned mirror-image stereoisomers, and will be explained in detail in this article. Another type, diastereomer, has different properties and will be introduced afterwards.

The Many Synonyms of the Chiral Carbon

Be aware - all of the following terms can be used to describe a chiral carbon.

chiral carbon = asymmetric carbon = optically active carbon = stereo carbon

Enantiomers

This type of stereoisomer is the essential mirror-image, non-superimposable type of stereoisomer introduced in the beginning of the article. Figure 3 provides a perfect example; note that the gray plane in the middle demotes the mirror plane.

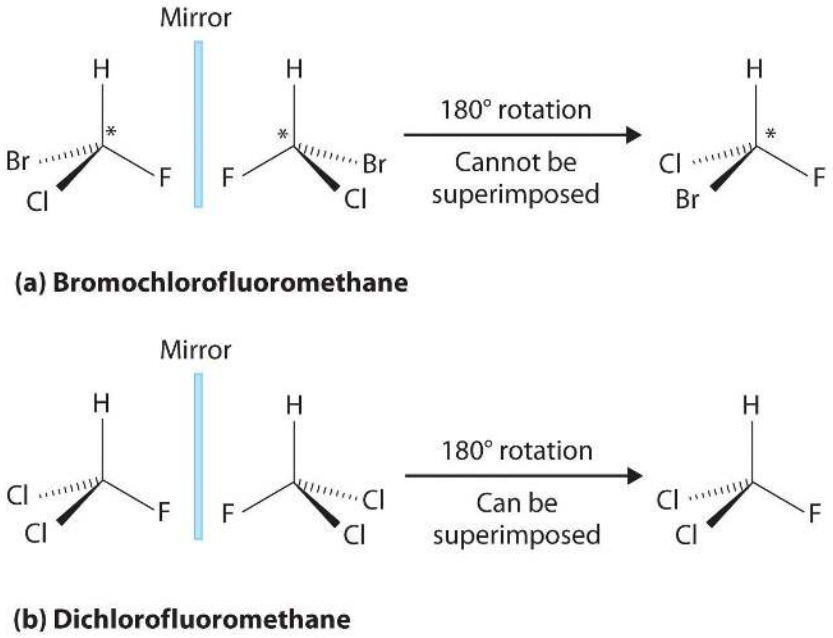


Figure 2: Comparison of Chiral and Achiral Molecules. (a) Bromochlorofluoromethane is a chiral molecule whose stereocenter is designated with an asterisk. Rotation of its mirror image does not generate the original structure. To superimpose the mirror images, bonds must be broken and reformed. (b) In contrast, dichlorofluoromethane and its mirror image can be rotated so they are superimposable.

Note that even if one were to flip over the left molecule over to the right, the atomic spatial arrangement will not be equal. This is equivalent to the left hand - right hand relationship, and is aptly referred to as 'handedness' in molecules. This can be somewhat counter-intuitive, so this article recommends the reader try the 'hand' example. Place both palm facing up, and hands next to each other. Now flip either side over to the other. One hand should be showing the back of the hand, while the other one is showing the palm. They are not same and non-superimposable.

This is where the concept of chirality comes in as one of the most essential and defining idea of stereoisomerism.

Chirality

Chirality essentially means 'mirror-image, non-superimposable molecules', and to say that a molecule is chiral is to say that its mirror image (it must have one) is not the same as it self. Whether a molecule is chiral or achiral depends upon a certain set of overlapping conditions. Figure 4 shows an example of two molecules, chiral and achiral, respectively. Notice the distinct characteristic of the achiral molecule: it possesses two atoms of same element. In theory and reality, if one were to create a plane that runs through the other two atoms, they will be able to create what is known as bisecting plane: The images on either side of the plan is the same as the other (Figure 4).

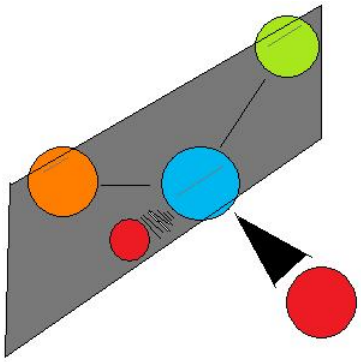


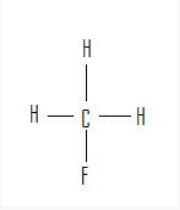
Figure 4.

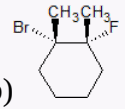
In this case, the molecule is considered 'achiral'. In other words, to distinguish chiral molecule from an achiral molecule, one must search for the existence of the bisecting plane in a molecule. All chiral molecules are deprive of bisecting plane, whether simple or complex.

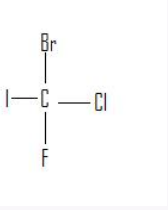
As a universal rule, no molecule with different surrounding atoms are achiral. Chirality is a simple but essential idea to support the concept of stereoisomerism, being used to explain one type of its kind. The chemical properties of the chiral molecule differs from its mirror image, and in this lies the significance of chilarity in relation to modern organic chemistry.

Exercise 1

Identify the following as either a constitutional isomer or stereoisomer. If stereoisomer, determine if it is an enantiomer or diastereomer. Explain the reason behind the answer. Also mark chirality for each molecule.

a) 

b) 

c) 

Solutions

a) achiral

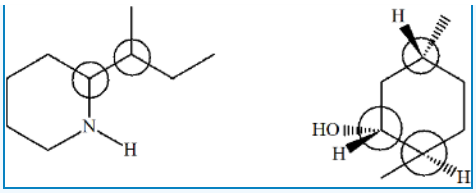
b) chiral

c) chiral

Exercise 2

Identify the chiral centers in each of the following:

Solutions



References

1. Anslyn, Eric V. and Dougherty, Dennis A. Modern Physical Organic Chemistry. Chicago, IL.: University Science. 2005
2. Hick, Janice M. The Physical Chemistry of Chirality. New York, N.Y.: An American Chemical Society Publication. 2001.
3. Vollhardt, K. Peter C. and Schore, Neil E. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. Fifth Edition. New York, N.Y.: W. H. Freeman Company, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dan Chong
- Jonathan Mooney (McGill University)

6.1: Chirality is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

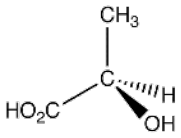
6.2: Fischer Projections to communicate Chirality

Learning Objective

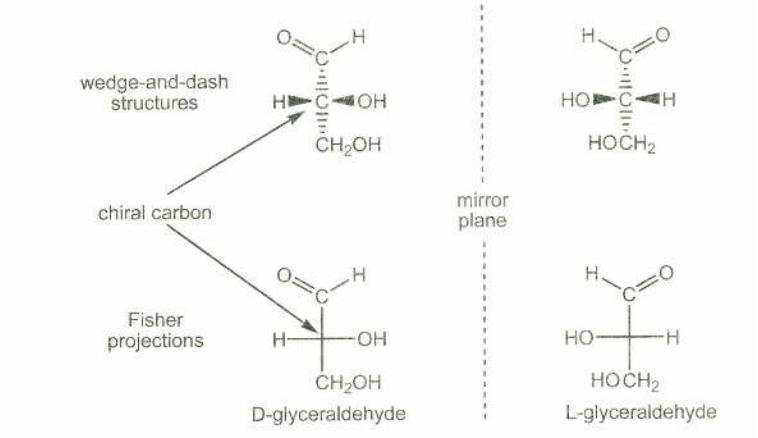
- draw, interpret, and convert between perspective formulae and Fischer projections for chiral compounds

Perspective Formulas and Fischer Projections

So far, we have communicated the stereochemical orentation of compounds using the wedges and dashes of perspective formulas. For example, the perspective formula for (*R*)-Lactic acid is shown below.



A Fischer projection is a convention used to depict stereochemistry in two dimensions. The horizontal bonds are seen as wedges and the vertical bonds are seen as dashed lines as shown below in the example below for glyceraldehyde.



Converting between Perspective and Fischer Formulas

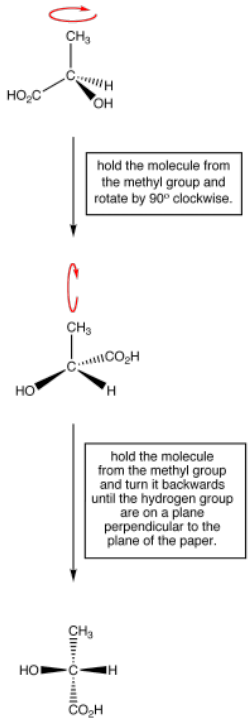
It can be useful to convert between perspective formulas and Fischer projections. Below is one approach using (R)-lactic acid as an example..

Step 1: Hold the molecule so that

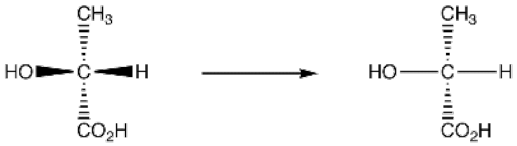
a) the chiral center is on the plane of the paper,

b) two bonds are coming out of the plane of the paper and are on a horizontal plane,

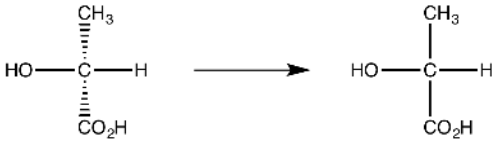
c) the two remaining bonds are going into the plane of the paper and are on a vertical plane



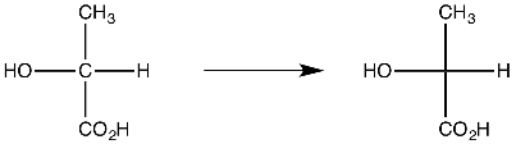
Step 2: Push the two bonds coming out of the plane of the paper onto the plane of the paper.



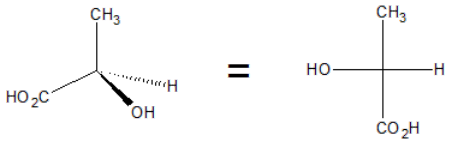
Step 3: Pull the two bonds going into the plane of the paper onto the plane of the paper.



Step 4: Omit the chiral atom symbol for convenience. This is the Fischer Projection of (*R*)-Lactic acid.



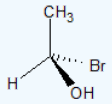
The stereochemical formula for (R)-lactic acid can be drawn using either method. To build this skill, we begin by drawing the structures and converting them step wise. Models can also be helpful. Eventually, we will be able to mentally conversion between these two structures.

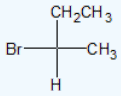


(R)-lactic acid (R)-lactic acid

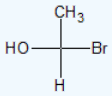
Exercise 1

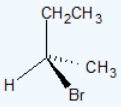
1. Convert each compound into the alternate sterochemical structure (Perspective ⟷ Fischer).

a) 

b) 

Answer

a) 

b) 

Other representations are possible. If you are not sure, use a molecular model kit to make a model for each structure and then compare the models.

See also D,L-convention.

Contributors and Attributions

- Gamini Gunawardena from the OChemPal site (Utah Valley University)

6.2: Fischer Projections to communicate Chirality is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.3: Absolute Configuration and the (R) and (S) System

Learning Objective

- name chiral compounds using (R) & (S) nomenclature

USE YOUR MODELING KIT: Models assist in visualizing the structure. When using a model, make sure the lowest priority is pointing away from you. Then determine the direction from the highest priority substituent to the lowest: clockwise (R) or counterclockwise (S).

IF YOU DO NOT HAVE A MODELING KIT: remember that the dashes mean the bond is going into the screen and the wedges means that bond is coming out of the screen. If the lowest priority bond is not pointing to the back, mentally rotate it so that it is. However, it is very useful when learning organic chemistry to use models.

If you have a modeling kit use it as you read through this section and work the practice problems.

Introduction and the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog rules of Priority

To name the enantiomers of a compound unambiguously, their names must include the "handedness" of the molecule. The letters "R" and "S" are determined by applying the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog (CIP) rules. The optical activity (+/-) can also be communicated in the name, but must be empirically derived. There are also biochemical conventions for carbohydrates (sugars) and amino acids (the building blocks of proteins).

The method of unambiguously assigning the handedness of molecules was originated by three chemists: R.S. Cahn, C. Ingold, and V. Prelog and, as such, is also often called the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog rules. In addition to the CIP system, there are two ways of experimentally determining the absolute configuration of an enantiomer:

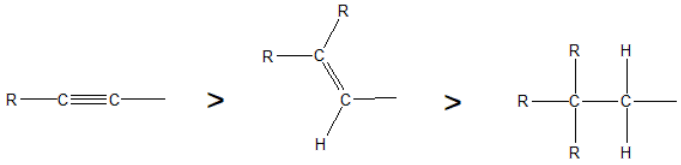
1. X-ray diffraction analysis. Note that there is no correlation between the sign of rotation and the structure of a particular enantiomer.
2. Chemical correlation with a molecule whose structure has already been determined via X-ray diffraction.

However, for non-laboratory purposes, it is beneficial to focus on the R/S system. The sign of optical rotation, although different for the two enantiomers of a chiral molecule,at the same temperature, **cannot** be used to establish the absolute configuration of an enantiomer; this is because the sign of optical rotation for a particular enantiomer may change when the temperature changes.

The **Cahn-Ingold-Prelog** rules of priority are based on the atomic numbers of the atoms of interest. For chirality, the atoms of interest are the atoms bonded to the chiral carbon.

1. The atom with higher atomic number has higher priority (I > Br > Cl > S > P > F > O > N > C > H).
2. When comparing isotopes, the atom with the higher mass number has higher priority [$^{18}O > {}^{16}O$ or $^{15}N > {}^{14}N$ or $^{13}C > {}^{12}C$ or T (^{3}H) > D (^{2}H) > H].
3. When there is a tie in (2) above, establish relative priority by proceeding to the next atom(s) along the chain until the first difference is observed.

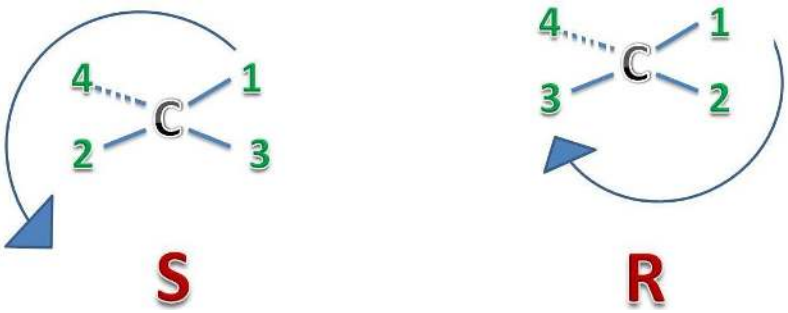
Multiple bonds are treated as if each bond of the multiple bond is bonded to a unique atom. For example, the ethenyl group (CH_2=CH) has higher priority than the ethyl group (CH_3CH_2). The ethenyl carbon priority is "two" bonds to carbon atoms and one bond to a hydrogen atom compared with the ethyl carbon that has only one bond to a carbon atom and two bonds to two hydrogen atoms. Similarly, the carbon-carbon triple bond of acetylene would give it higher CIP priority than the ethenyl group as summarized below.



Relative Priority according to the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog Rules

Stereocenters are labeled R or S

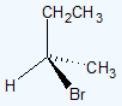
The "right hand" and "left hand" nomenclature is used to name the enantiomers of a chiral compound. The stereocenters are labeled as R or S.



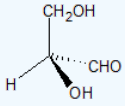
Consider the diagram above on the left: a curved arrow is drawn counter-clockwise (c-cw) from the highest priority substituent (*1*) to the lowest priority substituent *(4)* in the ***S-configuration*** ("Sinister" → Latin= "left"). The counterclockwise direction can be recognized by the movement left when leaving the 12 o' clock position. Now consider the diagram above on the right where a curved arrow is drawn clockwise (cw) from the highest priority substituent (*1*) to the lowest priority substituent *(4)* in the R configuration ("Rectus" → Latin= "right"). The ***R*** *or* ***S*** is then added as a prefix, in parenthesis, to the name of the enantiomer of interest. A locator number is required if there is more than one chiral center. Otherwise, the person reading the name is expected to recognize the chiral center.

Example 1

The two chiral compounds below are drawn to emphasize the chiral carbon with the full chemical name below each structure.



(2*R*)-2-bromobutane



(2*S*)-2,3-dihydroxypropanal

Absolute Configurations of Perspective Formulas

Chemists need a convenient way to distinguish one stereoisomer from another. The **Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system** is a set of rules that allows us to unambiguously define the stereochemical configuration of any stereocenter, using the designations '***R*** ' (from the Latin *rectus*, meaning right-handed) or ' ***S*** ' (from the Latin *sinister*, meaning left-handed).

The rules for this system of stereochemical nomenclature are, on the surface, fairly simple.

Rules for assigning an R/S designation to a chiral center

1: Assign priorities to the four substituents, with #1 being the highest priority and #4 the lowest. Priorities are based on the atomic number.

2: Trace a circle from #1 to #2 to #3.

3: Determine the orientation of the #4 priority group. If it is oriented into the plane of the page (away from you), go to step 4a. If it is oriented out of the plane of the page (toward you) go to step 4b.

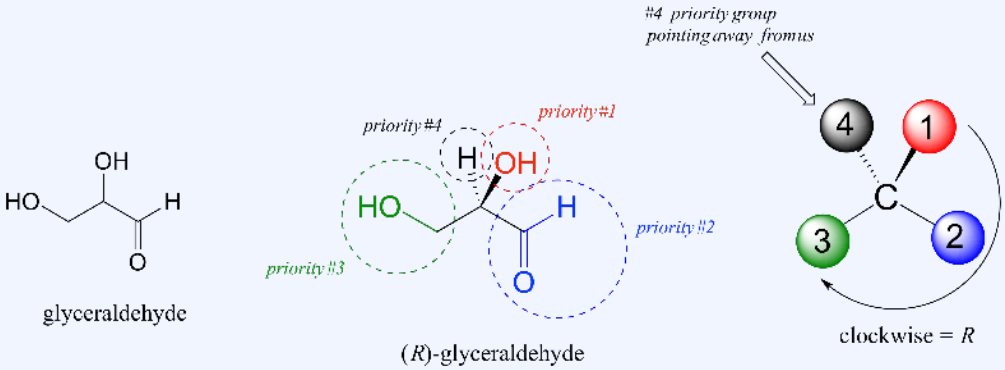
4a: *(#4 group pointing away from you)*: a clockwise circle in part 2 corresponds to the *R* configuration, while a counterclockwise circle corresponds to the *S* configuration.

4b: *(#4 group pointing toward you)*: a clockwise circle in part 2 corresponds to the *S* configuration, while a counterclockwise circle corresponds to the *R* configuration.

We'll use the 3-carbon sugar glyceraldehyde as our first example. The first thing that we must do is to assign a **priority** to each of the four substituents bound to the chiral center. We first look at the atoms that are directly bonded to the chiral center:

these are H, O (in the hydroxyl), C (in the aldehyde), and C (in the CH_2OH group).

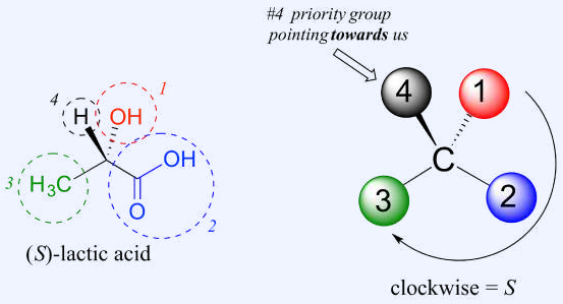
Assigning R/S configuration to glyceraldehyde:



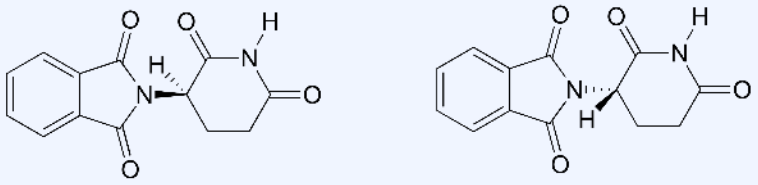
Two priorities are easy: hydrogen, with an atomic number of 1, is the lowest (#4) priority, and the hydroxyl oxygen, with atomic number 8, is priority #1. Carbon has an atomic number of 6. Which of the two 'C' groups is priority #2, the aldehyde or the CH_2OH? To determine this, we move one more bond away from the chiral center: for the aldehyde we have a *double* bond to an oxygen, while on the CH_2OH group we have a *single* bond to an oxygen. If the atom is the same, double bonds have a higher priority than single bonds. Therefore, the aldehyde group is assigned #2 priority and the CH_2OH group the #3 priority.

With our priorities assigned, we look next at the #4 priority group (the hydrogen) and see that it is pointed back away from us, into the plane of the page - thus step 4a from the procedure above applies. Then, we trace a circle defined by the #1, #2, and #3 priority groups, in increasing order. The circle is clockwise, which by step 4a tells us that this carbon has the '*R*' configuration, and that this molecule is (*R*)-glyceraldehyde. Its enantiomer, by definition, must be (*S*)-glyceraldehyde.

Next, let's look at one of the enantiomers of lactic acid and determine the configuration of the chiral center. Clearly, H is the #4 substituent and OH is #1. Owing to its three bonds to oxygen, the carbon on the acid group takes priority #2, and the methyl group takes #3. The #4 group, hydrogen, happens to be drawn pointing *toward* us (out of the plane of the page) in this figure, so we use step 4b: The circle traced from #1 to #2 to #3 is clockwise, which means that the chiral center has the *S* configuration.

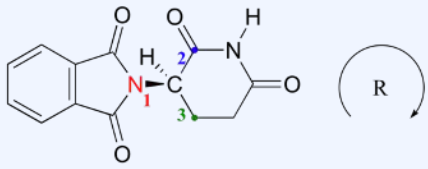


The drug thalidomide is an interesting - but tragic - case study in the importance of stereochemistry in drug design. First manufactured by a German drug company and prescribed widely in Europe and Australia in the late 1950's as a sedative and remedy for morning sickness in pregnant women, thalidomide was soon implicated as the cause of devastating birth defects in babies born to women who had taken it. Thalidomide contains a chiral center, and thus exists in two enantiomeric forms. It was marketed as a **racemic mixture**: in other words, a 50:50 mixture of both enantiomers.



two enantiomers of thalidomide

Let's try to determine the stereochemical configuration of the enantiomer on the left. Of the four bonds to the chiral center, the #4 priority is hydrogen. The nitrogen group is #1, the carbonyl side of the ring is #2, and the $–CH_2$ side of the ring is #3.



(R)-thalidomide

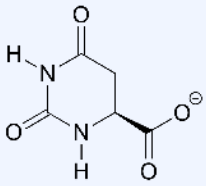
The hydrogen is shown pointing away from us, and the prioritized substituents trace a clockwise circle: this is the *R* enantiomer of thalidomide. The other enantiomer, of course, must have the S configuration.

Although scientists are still unsure today how thalidomide works, experimental evidence suggests that it was actually the *R* enantiomer that had the desired medical effects, while the *S* enantiomer caused the birth defects. Even with this knowledge, however, pure (*R*)-thalidomide is not safe, because enzymes in the body rapidly convert between the two enantiomers - we will see how that happens in chapter 12.

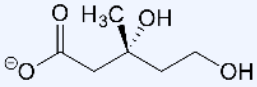
As a historical note, thalidomide was never approved for use in the United States. This was thanks in large part to the efforts of Dr. Frances Kelsey, a Food and Drug officer who, at peril to her career, blocked its approval due to her concerns about the lack of adequate safety studies, particularly with regard to the drug's ability to enter the bloodstream of a developing fetus. Unfortunately, though, at that time clinical trials for new drugs involved widespread and unregulated distribution to doctors and their patients across the country, so families in the U.S. were not spared from the damage caused.

Very recently a close derivative of thalidomide has become legal to prescribe again in the United States, with strict safety measures enforced, for the treatment of a form of blood cancer called multiple myeloma. In Brazil, thalidomide is used in the treatment of leprosy - but despite safety measures, children are still being born with thalidomide-related defects.

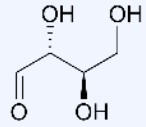
Exercise 1.: Determine the stereochemical configurations of the chiral centers in the biomolecules shown below.



dihydroorotate

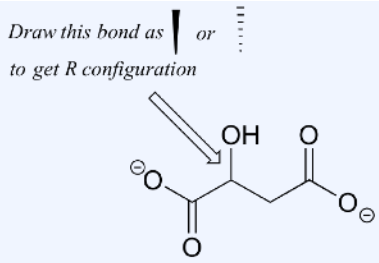


mevalonate



(D)-erythrose

Exercise 2.: Should the (*R*) enantiomer of malate have a solid or dashed wedge for the C-O bond in the figure below?



(*R*)-malate

Exercise 3.: Using solid or dashed wedges to show stereochemistry, draw the (*R*) enantiomer of ibuprofen and the (*S*) enantiomer of 2-methylerythritol-4-phosphate (structures are shown earlier in this chapter without stereochemistry).

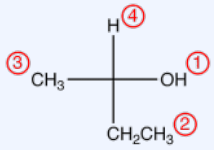
Solutions to exercises

Absolute Configurations of Fischer Projections

To determine the absolute configuration of a chiral center in a Fisher projection, use the following two-step procedure.

Step 1

Assign priority numbers to the four ligands (groups) bonded to the chiral center using the CIP priority system.



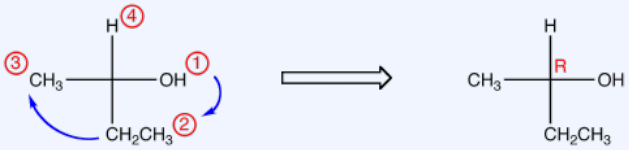
Step 2 - vertical option

If the lowest priority ligand is on a Vertical bond, then it is pointing away from the viewer.

Trace the three highest-priority ligands starting at the highest-priority ligand (① → ② → ③) in the direction that will give a Very correct answer.

direction of ① → ② → ③	absolute configuration
clockwise	R
counterclockwise	S

In the compound below, the movement is clockwise indicating an R-configuration. The complete IUPAC name for this compound is (R)-butan-2-ol.



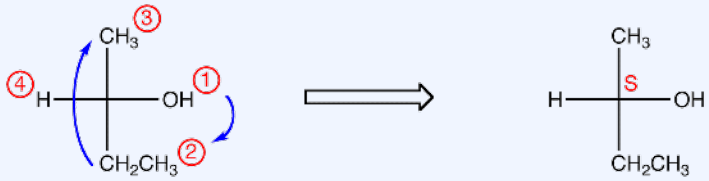
Step 2 - horizontal option

If the lowest-priority ligand is on a Horizontal bond, then it is pointing toward the viewer.

Trace the three highest-priority ligands starting at the highest-priority ligand (① → ② → ③) in the direction that will give a Horribly wrong answer. Note in the table below that the configurations are reversed from the first example.

direction of ① → ② → ③	absolute configuration
clockwise	S
counterclockwise	R

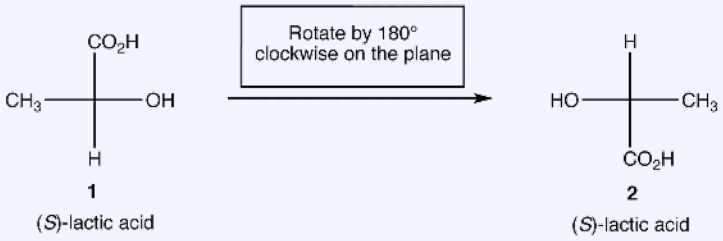
In the compound below, the movement is clockwise (R) which is Horribly wrong, so the actual configuration is S. The complete IUPAC name for this compound is (S)-butan-2-ol.

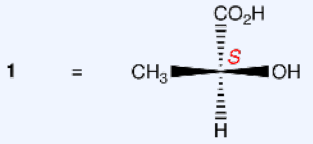


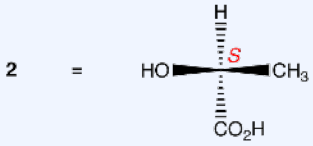
Manipulating Fischer Projections with NO Change to Configuration

A Fischer projection restricts a three-dimensional molecule into two dimensions. Consequently, there are limitations as to the operations that can be performed on a Fischer projection without changing the absolute configuration at chiral centers. The operations that do not change the absolute configuration at a chiral center in a Fischer projections can be summarized as two rules.

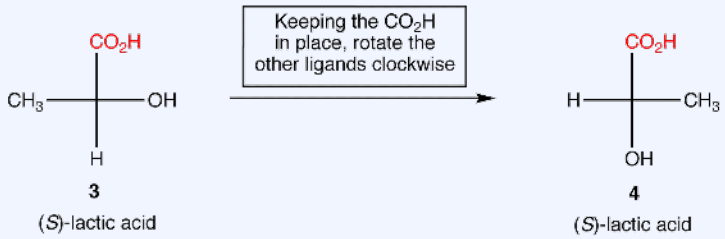
Rule 1: Rotation of the Fischer projection by 180° in either direction without lifting it off the plane of the paper does not change the absolute configuration at the chiral center.

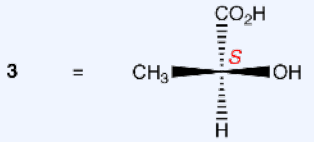






Rule 2: Rotation of three ligands on the chiral center in either direction, keeping the remaining ligand in place, does not change the absolute configuration at the chiral center.



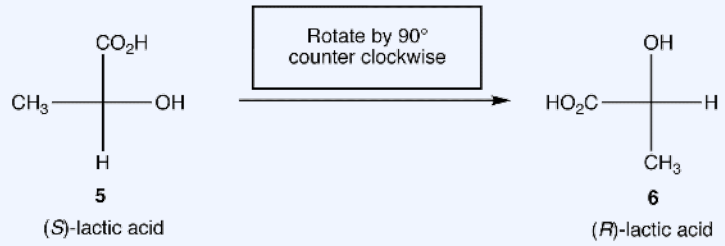


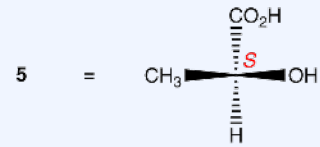


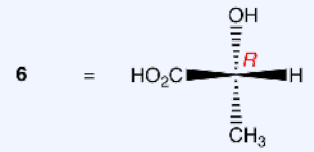
Manipulating Fischer Projections with Change to Configuration

The operations that do change the absolute configuration at a chiral center in a Fischer projection can be summarized as two rules.

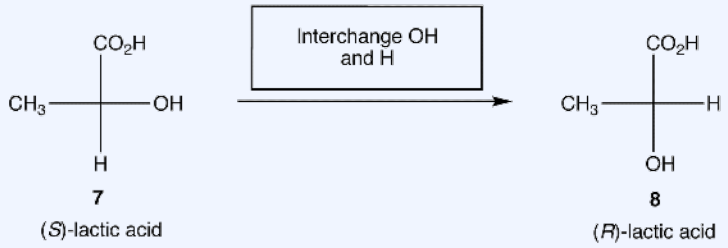
Rule 1: Rotation of the Fischer projection by 90º in either direction changes the absolute configuration at the chiral center.

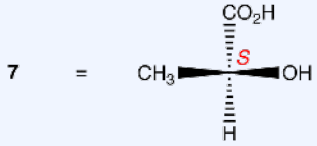


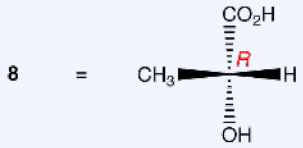




Rule 2: Interchanging any two ligands on the chiral center changes the absolute configuration at the chiral center.



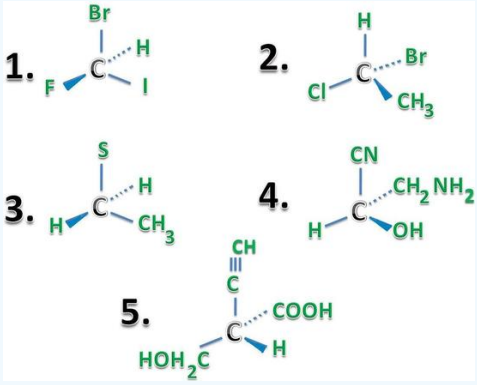




The above rules assume that the Fischer projection under consideration contains only one chiral center. However, with care, they can be applied to Fischer projections containing any number of chiral centers.

Exercise 1

Classify the following compounds as R or S?

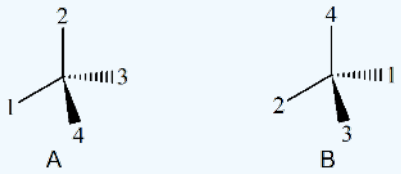


Solution

1. **S:** I > Br > F > H. The lowest priority substituent, H, is already going towards the back. It turns left going from I to Br to F, so it's a S.
2. **R:** Br > Cl > CH_3 > H. You have to switch the H and Br in order to place the H, the lowest priority, in the back. Then, going from Br to Cl, CH_3 is turning to the right, giving you a R.
3. **Neither R or S**: This molecule is achiral. Only chiral molecules can be named R or S.
4. **R:** OH > CN > CH_2NH_2 > H. The H, the lowest priority, has to be switched to the back. Then, going from OH to CN to CH_2NH_2, you are turning right, giving you a R.
5. **(5) S:** $-COOH$ > $-CH_2OH$ > $C{\equiv}CH$ > H. Then, going from $-COOH$ to $-CH_2OH$ to $-C{\equiv}CH$ you are turning left, giving you a S configuration.

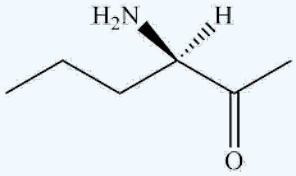
Exercises

6. Orient the following so that the least priority (4) atom is paced behind, then assign stereochemistry (*R* or *S*).



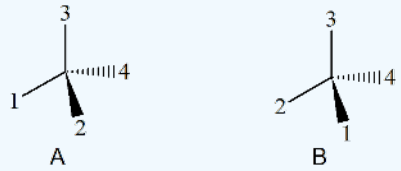
7. Draw (*R*)-2-bromobutan-2-ol.

8. Assign *R/S* to the following molecule.



Solutions

6.



A = *S*; B = *R*

7.

8. The stereo center is *R*.

Other Resources

Kahn Academy video tutorial on the R-S naming system

References

1. Schore and Vollhardt. *Organic Chemistry Structure and Function.* New York:W.H. Freeman and Company, 2007.
2. McMurry, John and Simanek, Eric. *Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry*. 6th Ed. Brooks Cole, 2006.

Contributors and Attributions

- Ekta Patel (UCD), Ifemayowa Aworanti (University of Maryland Baltimore County)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

6.3: Absolute Configuration and the (R) and (S) System is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.4: Diastereomers - more than one chiral center

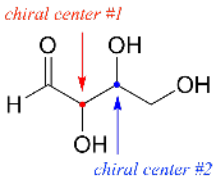
Learning Objective

- recognize and classify diastereomers

Diastereomers are stereoisomers with two or more chiral centers that are not enantiomers. Diastereomers have different physical properties (melting points, boiling points, and densities). Depending on the reaction mechanism, diastereomers can produce different stereochemical products.

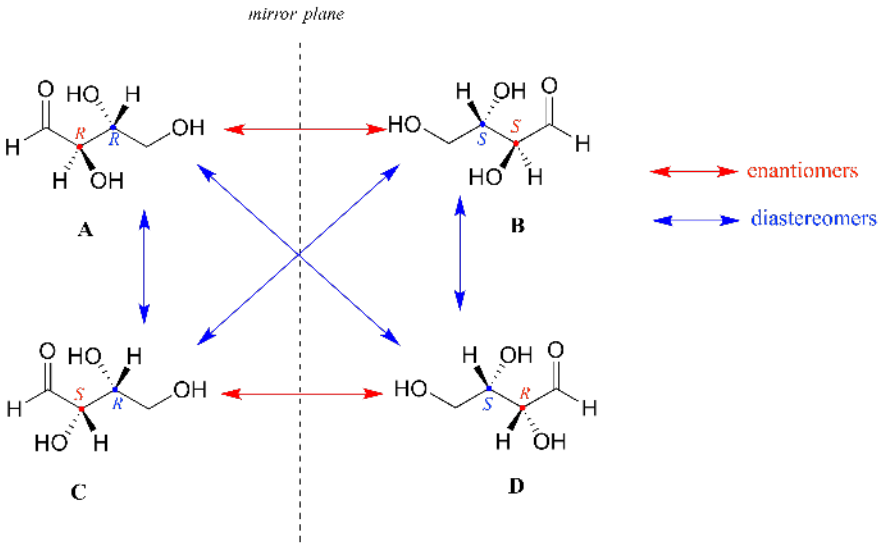
Introduction

So far, we have been analyzing compounds with a single chiral center. Next, we turn our attention to those which have multiple chiral centers. We'll start with some stereoisomeric four-carbon sugars with two chiral centers.



To avoid confusion, we will simply refer to the different stereoisomers by capital letters.

Look first at compound A below. Both chiral centers in have the *R* configuration (you should confirm this for yourself!). The mirror image of Compound A is compound B, which has the *S* configuration at both chiral centers. If we were to pick up compound A, flip it over and put it next to compound B, we would see that they are *not* superimposable (again, confirm this for yourself with your models!). A and B are nonsuperimposable mirror images: in other words, enantiomers.



Now, look at compound C, in which the configuration is *S* at chiral center 1 and *R* at chiral center 2. Compounds A and C are stereoisomers: they have the same molecular formula and the same bond connectivity, but a different arrangement of atoms in space (recall that this is the definition of the term 'stereoisomer). However, they are *not* mirror images of each other (confirm this with your models!), and so they are *not* enantiomers. By definition, they are **diastereomers** of each other.

Notice that compounds C and B also have a diastereomeric relationship, by the same definition.

So, compounds A and B are a pair of enantiomers, and compound C is a diastereomer of both of them. Does compound C have its own enantiomer? Compound D is the mirror image of compound C, and the two are not superimposable. Therefore, C and D are a pair of enantiomers. Compound D is also a diastereomer of compounds A and B.

This can also seem very confusing at first, but there some simple shortcuts to analyzing stereoisomers:

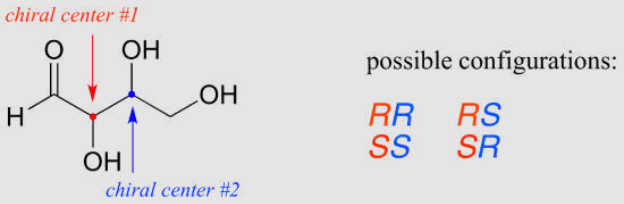
Stereoisomer shortcuts

If ***all*** of the chiral centers are of opposite R/S configuration between two stereoisomers, they are enantiomers.

If ***at least one, but not all*** of the chiral centers are opposite between two stereoisomers, they are diastereomers.

(*Note: these shortcuts to not take into account the possibility of additional stereoisomers due to alkene groups: we will come to that later)*

Here's another way of looking at the four stereoisomers, where one chiral center is associated with red and the other blue. Pairs of enantiomers are stacked together.

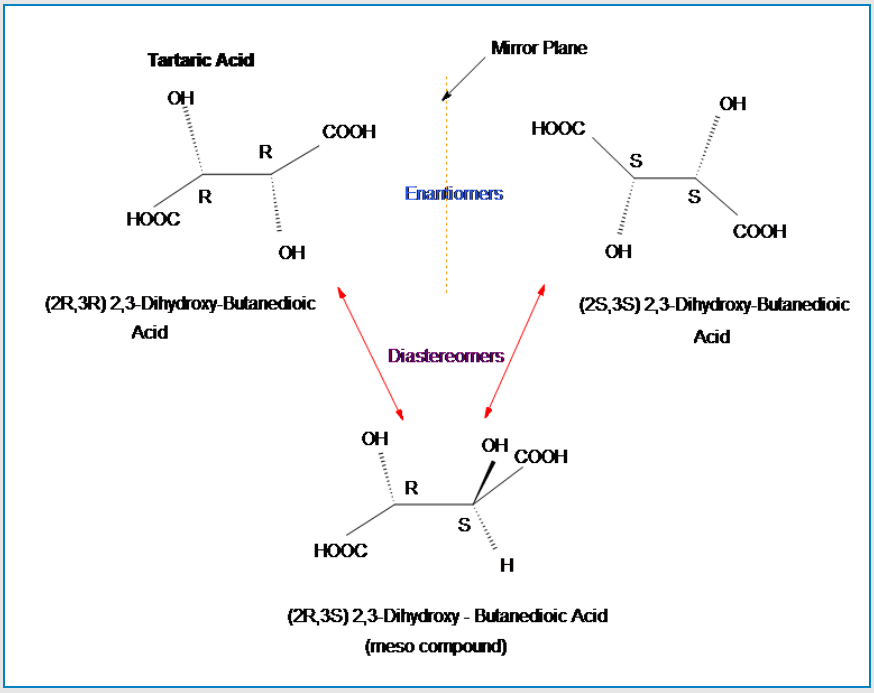


We know, using the shortcut above, that the enantiomer of RR must be SS - both chiral centers are different. We also know that RS and SR are diastereomers of RR, because in each case one - but not both - chiral centers are different.

Diastereomers vs. Enantiomers in Wine Chemistry

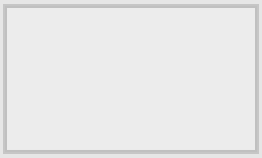
Tartaric acid, $C_4H_6O_6$, is an organic compound that can be found in grape, bananas, and in wine. The structures of tartaric acid itself is really interesting. Naturally, it is in the form of (R,R) stereocenters. Artificially, it can be in the meso form (R,S), which is achiral. R,R tartaric acid is enantiomer to is mirror image which is S,S tartaric acid and diasteromers to meso-tartaric acid (Figure 5.6.2).

(R,R) and (S,S) tartaric acid have similar physical properties and reactivity. However, meso-tartaric acid have different physical properties and reactivity. For example, melting point of (R,R) & (S,S) tartaric is about 170 degree Celsius, and melting point of meso-tartaric acid is about 145 degree Celsius.



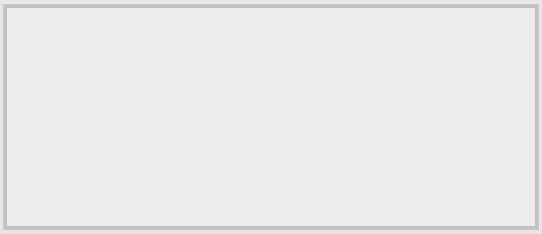
Diastereomers vs. Enantiomers in Sugar Chemistry

D-erythrose is a common four-carbon sugar.



A note on sugar nomenclature: biochemists use a special system to refer to the stereochemistry of sugar molecules, employing names of historical origin in addition to the designators '*D*' and '*L*'. You will learn about this system if you take a biochemistry class. We will use the *D/L* designations here to refer to different sugars, but we won't worry about learning the system.

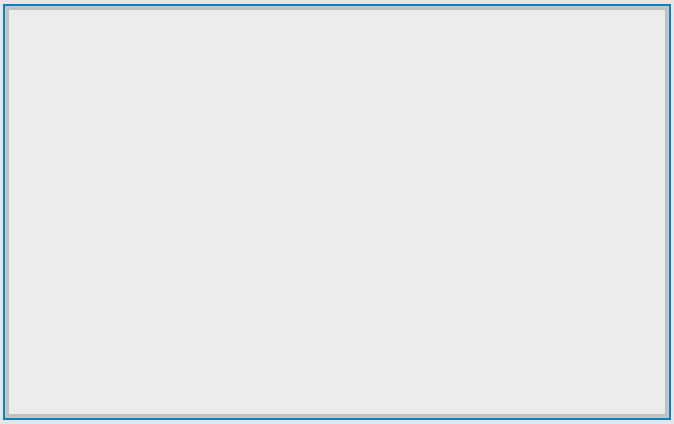
As you can see, *D*-erythrose is a chiral molecule: C_2 and C_3 are stereocenters, both of which have the *R* configuration. In addition, you should make a model to convince yourself that it is impossible to find a plane of symmetry through the molecule, regardless of the conformation. Does D-erythrose have an enantiomer? Of course it does – if it is a chiral molecule, it must. The enantiomer of erythrose is its mirror image, and is named L-erythrose (once again, you should use models to convince yourself that these mirror images of erythrose are not superimposable).



Notice that both chiral centers in L-erythrose both have the *S* configuration.

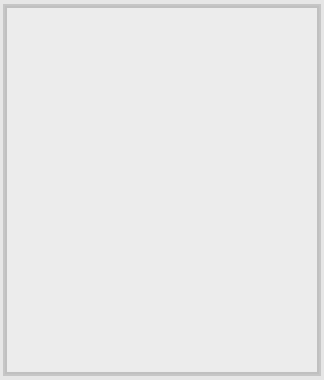
> **Note**
>
> In a pair of enantiomers, **all** of the chiral centers are of the opposite configuration.

What happens if we draw a stereoisomer of erythrose in which the configuration is *S* at C_2 and *R* at C_3? This stereoisomer, which is a sugar called D-threose, is *not* a mirror image of erythrose. D-threose is a **diastereomer** of both D-erythrose and L-erythrose.



The definition of diastereomers is simple: if two molecules are stereoisomers (same molecular formula, same connectivity, different arrangement of atoms in space) but are *not* enantiomers, then they are diastereomers by default. *In practical terms, this means that at least one - but not all - of the chiral centers are opposite in a pair of diastereomers.* By definition, two molecules that are diastereomers are *not* mirror images of each other.

L-threose, the enantiomer of D-threose, has the *R* configuration at C_2 and the *S* configuration at C_3. L-threose is a diastereomer of both erythrose enantiomers.

Erythronolide B, a precursor to the 'macrocyclic' antibiotic erythromycin, has 10 stereocenters. It's enantiomer is that molecule in which all 10 stereocenters are inverted. 

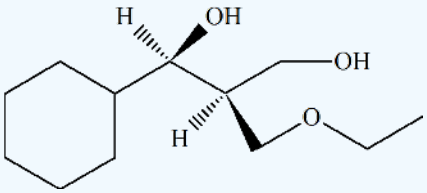
In total, there are 2^{10} = 1024 stereoisomers in the erythronolide B family: 1022 of these are diastereomers of the structure above, one is the enantiomer of the structure above, and the last ***is*** the structure above.

We know that enantiomers have identical physical properties and equal but opposite degrees of specific rotation. Diastereomers, in theory at least, have different physical properties – we stipulate 'in theory' because sometimes the physical properties of two or more diastereomers are so similar that it is very difficult to separate them. In addition, the specific rotations of diastereomers are unrelated – they could be the same sign or opposite signs, and similar in magnitude or very dissimilar.

Exercises

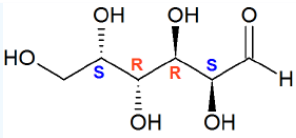
1. Draw the structures of L-galactose (the enantiomer of D-galactose) and two more diastereomers of D-glucose (one should be an epimer).

2. Determine the stereochemistry of the following molecule:

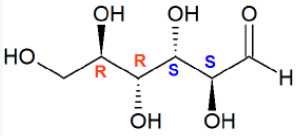


Answer

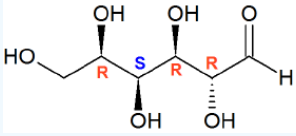
1.



L-galactose

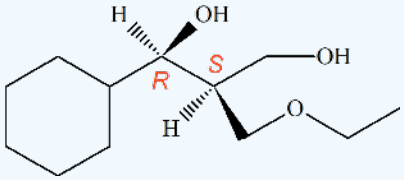


L-mannose
(epimer of D-glucose)



L-gulose
(diastereomer of D-glucose)

2.



Contributors and Attributions

- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)

6.4: Diastereomers - more than one chiral center is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.5: Meso Compounds

Learning Objective

- recognize and classify meso compounds

A meso compound is an achiral compound that has chiral centers. It is superimposed on its mirror image and is optically inactive although it contains two or more stereocenters.

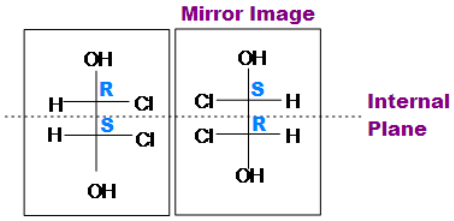
Introduction

In general, a meso compound should contain two or more identical substituted stereocenters. Also, it has an internal symmetry plane that divides the compound in half. These two halves reflect each other by the internal mirror. The stereochemistry of stereocenters should "cancel out". What it means here is that when we have an internal plane that splits the compound into two symmetrical sides, the stereochemistry of both left and right side should be opposite to each other, and therefore, result in optically inactive. Cyclic compounds may also be meso.

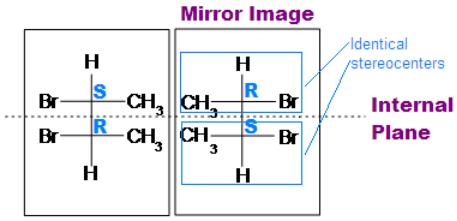
Identification

If A is a meso compound, it should have two or more stereocenters, an internal plane, and the stereochemistry should be R and S.

1. Look for an internal plane, or internal mirror, that lies in between the compound.
2. The stereochemistry (e.g. R or S) is very crucial in determining whether it is a meso compound or not. As mentioned above, a meso compound is optically inactive, so their stereochemistry should cancel out. For instance, R cancels S out in a meso compound with two stereocenters.

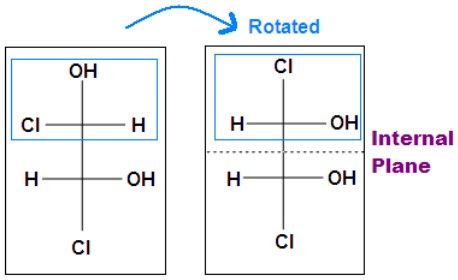


trans-1,2-dichloro-1,2-ethanediol

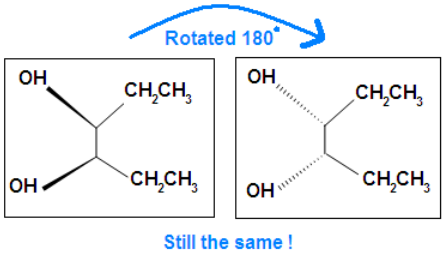


(meso)-2,3-dibromobutane

Tips: An interesting thing about single bonds or sp3-orbitals is that we can rotate the substituted groups that attached to a stereocenter around to recognize the internal plane. As the molecule is rotated, its stereochemistry does not change. For example:

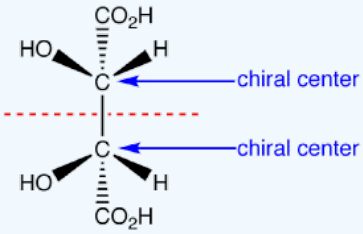


Another case is when we rotate the whole molecule by 180 degree. Both molecules below are still meso.



Remember the internal plane here is depicted on two dimensions. However, in reality, it is three dimensions, so be aware of it when we identify the internal mirror.

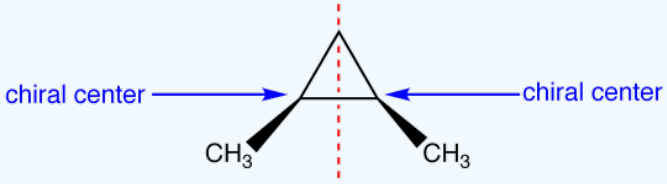
Example 6.5.1:



1

1 has a plane of symmetry (the horizontal plane going through the red broken line) and, therefore, is achiral; 1 has chiral centers. Thus, 1 is a meso compound.

Example 6.5.2:

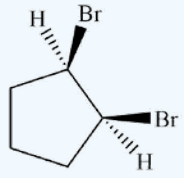


2

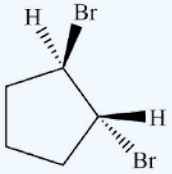
This molecules has a plane of symmetry (the vertical plane going through the red broken line perpendicular to the plane of the ring) and, therefore, is achiral, but has has two chiral centers. Thus, its is a meso compound.

Exercise 6.5.1

Which of the following are meso-compounds:



A



B

a.

b. C – 2,3-dibromobutane

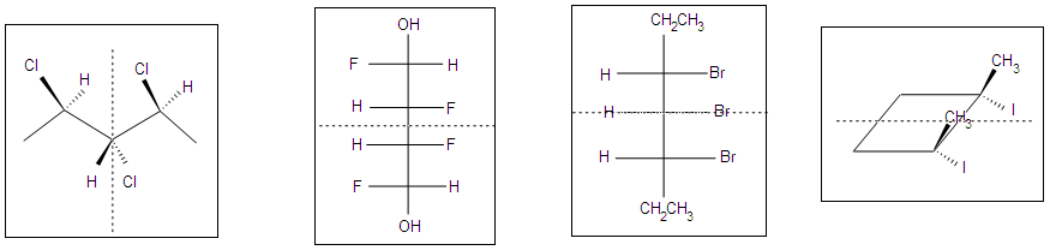
c. D – 2,3-dibromopentane

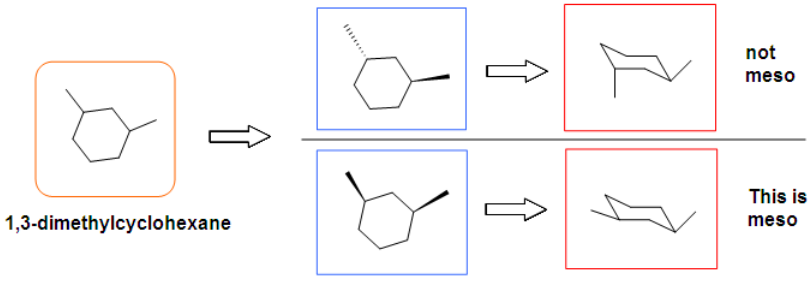
Answer

Compounds A and C are meso.

Other Examples of meso compounds

Meso compounds can exist in many different forms such as pentane, butane, heptane, and even cyclobutane. They do not necessarily have to be two stereocenters, but can have more.



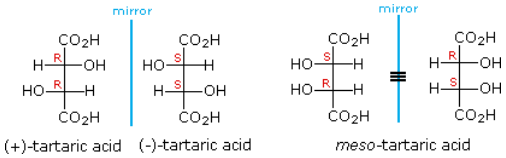


The chiral centers in the preceding examples have all been different. In the case of 2,3-dihydroxybutanedioic acid, known as tartaric acid, the two chiral centers have the same four substituents and are equivalent. As a result, two of the four possible stereoisomers of this compound are identical due to a plane of symmetry, so there are only three stereoisomeric tartaric acids. Two of these stereoisomers are enantiomers and the third is an achiral diastereomer, called a meso compound. Meso compounds are achiral (optically inactive) diastereomers of chiral stereoisomers. Investigations of isomeric tartaric acid salts, carried out by Louis

Pasteur in the mid 19th century, were instrumental in elucidating some of the subtleties of stereochemistry. Some physical properties of the isomers of tartaric acid are given in the following table.

(+)-tartaric acid:	[α]D = +13º	m.p. 172 ºC
(–)-tartaric acid:	[α]D = –13º	m.p. 172 ºC
meso-tartaric acid:	[α]D = 0º	m.p. 140 ºC

Fischer projection formulas provide a helpful view of the configurational relationships within the structures of these isomers. In the following illustration a mirror line is drawn between formulas that have a mirror-image relationship. In demonstrating the identity of the two meso-compound formulas, remember that a Fischer projection formula may be rotated 180º in the plane.



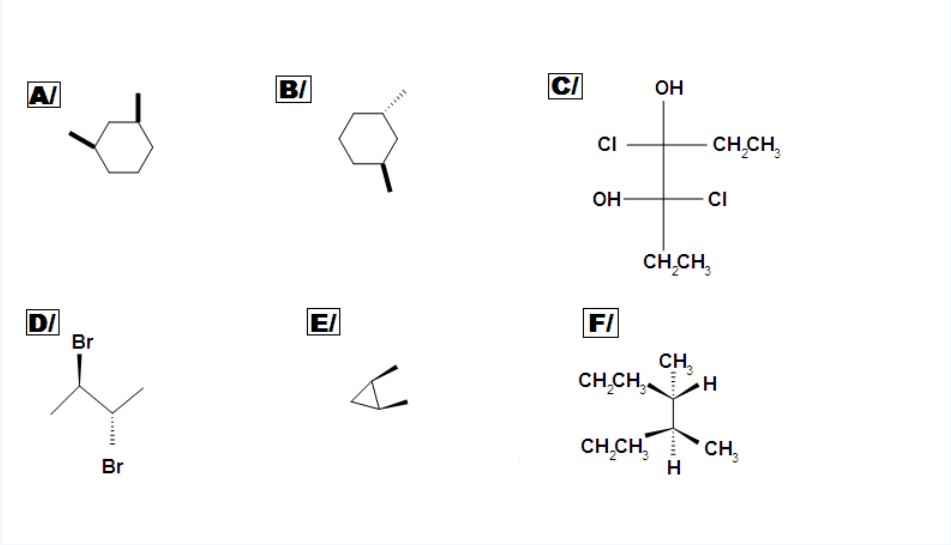
Optical Activity Analysis

When the optical activity of a meso compound is attempted to be determined with a polarimeter, the indicator will not show (+) or (-). It simply means there is no certain direction of rotation of the polarized light, neither levorotatory (-) and dexorotatory (+).

Achiral Diastereomers (meso-Compounds)

Exercise 6.5.1

Beside meso, there are also other types of molecules: enantiomer, diastereomer, and identical. Determine if the following molecules are meso.



Answer

A C, D, E are meso compounds.

Contributors and Attributions

- Duy Dang
- Gamini Gunawardena from the OChemPal site (Utah Valley University)

- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)

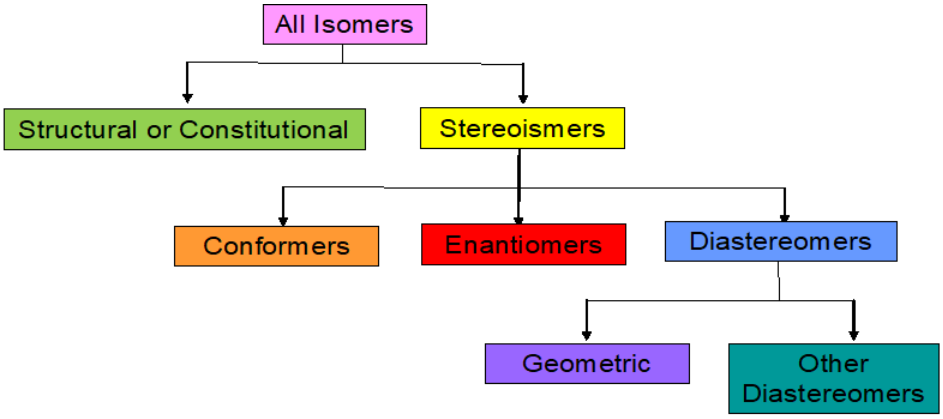
6.5: Meso Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.6: Isomerism Summary Diagram

Learning Objective

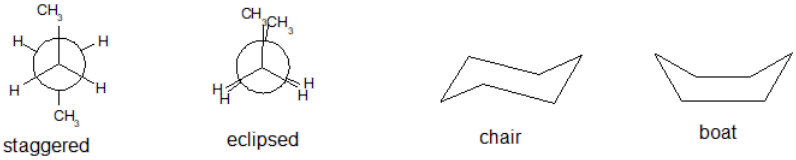
- distinguish and discern the structural and chemical relationships between isomeric compounds

The various types of isomers have been introduced and explored over several chapters. It can be helpful to review, compare, and contrast all of the forms of isomerism to build our skills of discernment. A brief review of each type of isomerism follows the summary diagram. See the respective chapter for a complete explanation.



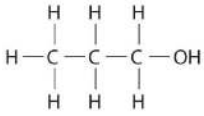
Conformational Isomers

The rotation of C–C single bonds both carbon chains creates conformers (the same compound shown in different rotations). Consequently, many different arrangements of the atoms are possible, each corresponding to different degrees of rotation. Differences in three-dimensional structure resulting from rotation about a σ bond are called differences in conformation, and each different arrangement is called a conformational isomer (or conformer). While complete rotation of C-C single bonds is not possible in rings. The freedom of bond movement does allow the rings to assume different conformations, such as the chair and boat for 6-membered rings.

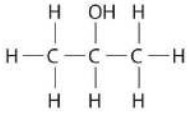


Structural (Constitutional) Isomers

Unlike conformational isomers, structural isomers differ in connectivity, as illustrated below for 1-propanol and 2-propanol. Although these two alcohols have the same molecular formula C_3H_8O, the position of the –OH group differs creating a unique compounds with differences in their physical and chemical properties.

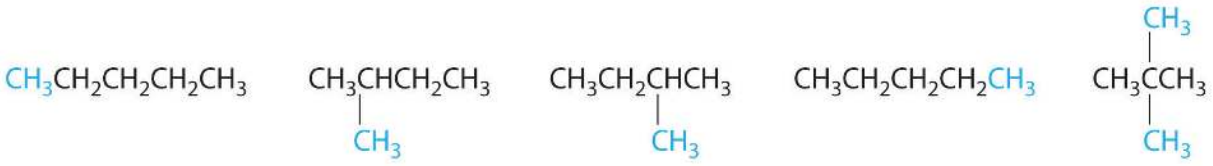


1-Propanol (*n*-propanol)



2-Propanol (isopropanol)

Consider, for example, the following five structures represented by the formula C_5H_{12}. In the conversion of one structural isomer to another, at least one bond must be broken and reformed at a different position in the molecule.

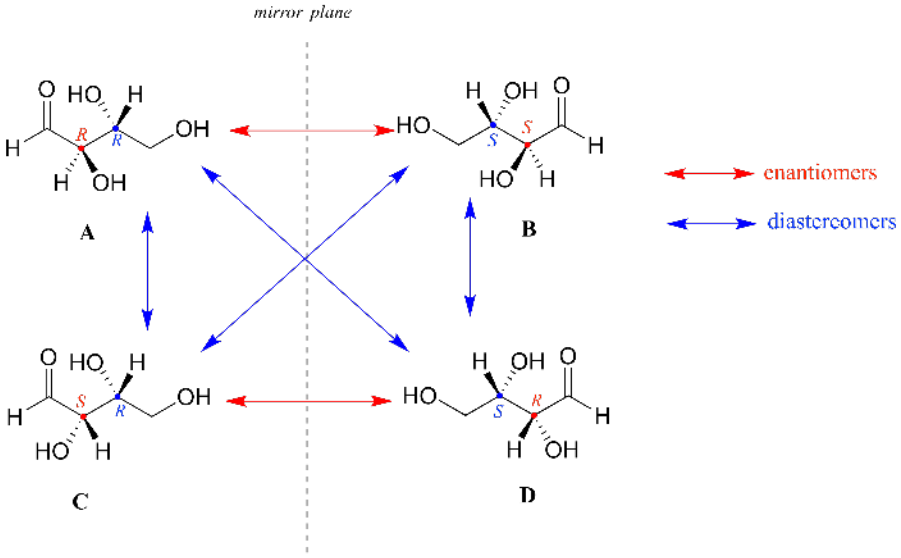


(a) (b) (c) (d) (e)

Structures (a) and (d) above represent the same compound, n-pentane. Structures (b) and (c) represent the same compound, 2-methylbutane. No bonds need to be broken and reformed to convert between (a) and (d) or between (b) and (c). The molecules are simply rotated 180° about a vertical axis. Structure (e) is named 2,2-dimethylpropane. There are only three structural isomers possible with the chemical formula C_5H_{12}: n-pentane, 2-methylbutane, and 2,2-dimethylpropane. Structural isomers have distinct physical and chemical properties.

Stereoisomers

Enantiomers are pairs of compounds that are non-superimposable images. When there are two or more chiral centers in a compounds, the diatereomers can exist. Diastereomers are stereoisomers that are NOT enantiomers. Enatiomers share all physical properties except for their interaction with plane polarized light. Diastereomers have different physical properties (melting points and boiling points and densities).



Exercise

1. What kind of isomers are the following pairs? Note: It can be difficult to answer this question directly from the names. It can be helpful to draw the structures.

a. (R)-5-chlorohexene and 6-chlorohexene
b. (2R,3R)-dibromohexane and (2R,3S)-dibromohexane

Answer

1.

a. Structural Isomers

b. Diastereomers

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

6.6: Isomerism Summary Diagram is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.7: Optical Activity and Racemic Mixtures

Learning Objective

- define and explain the lack of optical activity of racemic mixtures
- determine the percent composition of an enantiomeric mixture from polarimetry data and the for specific rotation formula

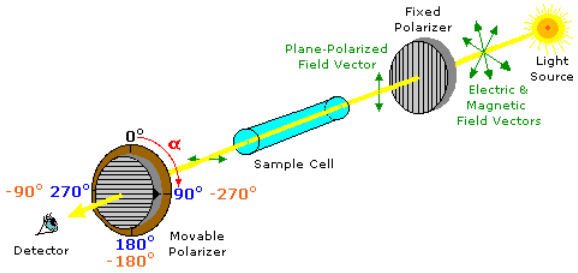
Racemic Mixtures (Racimates)

A *racemic mixture* is a 50:50 mixture of two enantiomers. Racemic mixtures were an interesting experimental discovery because two optically active samples can be combined in a 1:1 ratio to create an optically INACTIVE sample. Polarimetry is used to measure optical activity. The history and theoretical foundation are discussed below.

Identifying and distinguishing enantiomers is inherently difficult, since their physical and chemical properties are largely identical. Fortunately, a nearly two hundred year old discovery by the French physicist Jean-Baptiste Biot has made this task much easier. This discovery disclosed that the right- and left-handed enantiomers of a chiral compound perturb plane-polarized light in opposite ways. This perturbation is unique to chiral molecules, and has been termed **optical activity**.

Polarimetry

Plane-polarized light is created by passing ordinary light through a polarizing device, which may be as simple as a lens taken from polarizing sun-glasses. Such devices transmit selectively only that component of a light beam having electrical and magnetic field vectors oscillating in a single plane. The plane of polarization can be determined by an instrument called a **polarimeter**, shown in the diagram below.



Monochromatic (single wavelength) light, is polarized by a fixed polarizer next to the light source. A sample cell holder is located in line with the light beam, followed by a movable polarizer (the analyzer) and an eyepiece through which the light intensity can be observed. In modern instruments an electronic light detector takes the place of the human eye. In the absence of a sample, the light intensity at the detector is at a maximum when the second (movable) polarizer is set parallel to the first polarizer (α = 0º). If the analyzer is turned 90º to the plane of initial polarization, all the light will be blocked from reaching the detector.

Chemists use polarimeters to investigate the influence of compounds (in the sample cell) on plane polarized light. Samples composed only of achiral molecules (e.g. water or hexane), have no effect on the polarized light beam. However, if a single enantiomer is examined (all sample molecules being right-handed, or all being left-handed), the plane of polarization is rotated in either a clockwise (positive) or counter-clockwise (negative) direction, and the analyzer must be turned an appropriate matching angle, **α**, if full light intensity is to reach the detector. In the above illustration, the sample has rotated the polarization plane clockwise by +90º, and the analyzer has been turned this amount to permit maximum light transmission.

The observed rotations (**α**) of enantiomers are opposite in direction. One enantiomer will rotate polarized light in a clockwise direction, termed **dextrorotatory** or (+), and its mirror-image partner in a counter-clockwise manner, termed **levorotatory** or (–). The prefixes dextro and levo come from the Latin *dexter*, meaning right, and *laevus*, for left, and are abbreviated *d* and *l* respectively. If equal quantities of each enantiomer are examined , using the same sample cell, then the magnitude of the rotations will be the same, with one being positive and the other negative. To be absolutely certain whether an observed rotation is positive or negative it is often necessary to make a second measurement using a different amount or concentration of the sample. In the above illustration, for example, α might be –90º or +270º rather than +90º. If the sample concentration is reduced by 10%, then the

positive rotation would change to +81° (or +243°) while the negative rotation would change to –81°, and the correct α would be identified unambiguously.

Since it is not always possible to obtain or use samples of exactly the same size, the observed rotation is usually corrected to compensate for variations in sample quantity and cell length. Thus it is common practice to convert the observed rotation, α, to a **specific rotation**, by the following formula:

$$[\alpha]_D = \frac{\alpha}{lc} \tag{5.3.1}$$

where

- $[\alpha]_D$ is the specific rotation
- l is the cell length in dm
- c is the concentration in g/ml
- D designates that the light used is the 589 line from a sodium lamp

Compounds that rotate the plane of polarized light are termed **optically active**. Each enantiomer of a stereoisomeric pair is optically active and has an equal but opposite-in-sign specific rotation. Specific rotations are useful in that they are experimentally determined constants that characterize and identify pure enantiomers. For example, the lactic acid and carvone enantiomers discussed earlier have the following specific rotations.

Carvone from caraway: $[\alpha]_D$ = +62.5°	this isomer may be referred to as (+)-carvone or *d*-carvone
Carvone from spearmint: $[\alpha]_D$ = –62.5°	this isomer may be referred to as (–)-carvone or *l*-carvone
Lactic acid from muscle tissue: $[\alpha]_D$ = +2.5°	this isomer may be referred to as (+)-lactic acid or *d*-lactic acid
Lactic acid from sour milk: $[\alpha]_D$ = –2.5°	this isomer may be referred to as (–)-lactic acid or *l*-lactic acid

A 50:50 mixture of enantiomers has no observable optical activity. Such mixtures are called **racemates** or racemic modifications, and are designated (±). When chiral compounds are created from achiral compounds, the products are racemic unless a single enantiomer of a chiral co-reactant or catalyst is involved in the reaction. The addition of HBr to either cis- or trans-2-butene is an example of racemic product formation (the chiral center is colored red in the following equation).

$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$ + HBr	⟶	(±) $CH_3CH_2CHBrCH_3$

Chiral organic compounds isolated from living organisms are usually optically active, indicating that one of the enantiomers predominates (often it is the only isomer present). This is a result of the action of chiral catalysts we call enzymes, and reflects the inherently chiral nature of life itself. Chiral synthetic compounds, on the other hand, are commonly racemates, unless they have been prepared from enantiomerically pure starting materials.

There are two ways in which the condition of a chiral substance may be changed:
1. A racemate may be separated into its component enantiomers. This process is called **resolution**.
2. A pure enantiomer may be transformed into its racemate. This process is called **racemization**.

Enantiomeric Excess

The "optical purity" is a comparison of the optical rotation of a pure sample of unknown stereochemistry versus the optical rotation of a sample of pure enantiomer. It is expressed as a percentage. If the sample only rotates plane-polarized light half as much as expected, the optical purity is 50%.

$$\%\ optical\ purity = \frac{specific\ rotation\ of\ mixture}{specific\ rotation\ of\ pure\ enantiomer} \times 100$$

Because *R* and *S* enantiomers have equal but opposite optical activity, it naturally follows that a 50:50 racemic mixture of two enantiomers will have no observable optical activity. If we know the specific rotation for a chiral molecule, however, we can easily

calculate the ratio of enantiomers present in a mixture of two enantiomers, based on its measured optical activity. When a mixture contains more of one enantiomer than the other, chemists often use the concept of **enantiomeric excess (ee)** to quantify the difference. Enantiomeric excess can be expressed as:

$$ee = \frac{(\%\text{ more abundant enantiomer} - 50) \times 100}{50}$$

For example, a mixture containing 60% *R* enantiomer (and 40% *S* enantiomer) has a 20% enantiomeric excess of R: ((60-50) x 100) / 50 = 20 %.

Example

The specific rotation of (*S*)-carvone is (+)61°, measured 'neat' (pure liquid sample, no solvent). The optical rotation of a neat sample of a mixture of *R* and *S* carvone is measured at (-)23°. Which enantiomer is in excess, and what is its ee? What are the percentages of (*R*)- and (*S*)-carvone in the sample?

Solution

The observed rotation of the mixture is levorotary (negative, counter-clockwise), and the specific rotation of the pure *S* enantiomer is given as dextrorotary (positive, clockwise), meaning that the pure *R* enantiomer must be levorotary, and the mixture must contain more of the *R* enantiomer than of the *S* enantiomer.

$$\text{Rotation } (R/S \text{ Mix}) = [\text{Fraction}(S) \times \text{Rotation } (S)] + [\text{Fraction}(R) \times \text{Rotation } (R)]$$

Let Fraction (*S*) = x, therefore Fraction (*R*) = 1 – x

$$\text{Rotation } (R/S \text{ Mix}) = x[\text{Rotation } (S)] + (1 - x)[\text{Rotation } (R)]$$

$-23 = x(+61) + (1 - x)(-61)$

Solve for x: x = 0.3114 and (1 – x) = 0.6885

Therefore the percentages of (*R*)- and (*S*)-carvone in the sample are 68.9% and 31.1%, respectively.

$$ee = [(\%\text{ more abundant enantiomer} - 50) \times 100]/50$$

$$= [68.9 - 50) \times 100]/50 = 37.8\%$$

Chiral molecules are often labeled according to the sign of their specific rotation, as in (S)-(+)-carvone and (R)-(-)-carvone, or (±)-carvone for the racemic mixture. However, there is no relationship whatsoever between a molecule's R/S designation and the sign of its specific rotation. Without performing a polarimetry experiment or looking in the literature, we would have no idea that (-)-carvone has the R configuration and (+)-carvone has the S configuration.

Separation of Chiral Compounds

As noted earlier, chiral compounds synthesized from achiral starting materials and reagents are generally racemic (i.e. a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers). Separation of racemates into their component enantiomers is a process called resolution. Since enantiomers have identical physical properties, such as solubility and melting point, resolution is extremely difficult. Diastereomers, on the other hand, have different physical properties, and this fact is used to achieve resolution of racemates. Reaction of a racemate with an enantiomerically pure chiral reagent gives a mixture of diastereomers, which can be separated. For example, if a racemic mixture of a chiral alcohol is reacted with a enantiomerically pure carboxylic acid, the result is a mixture of diastereomers: in this case, because the pure (R) entantiomer of the acid was used, the product is a mixture of (R-R) and (R-S) diastereomeric esters, which can, in theory, be separated by their different physical properties. Subsequent hydrolysis of each separated ester will yield the 'resolved' (enantiomerically pure) alcohols. The used in this technique are known as '

Exercise 1

A sample with a concentration of 0.3 g/mL was placed in a cell with a length of 5 cm. The resulting rotation at the sodium D line was +1.52°. What is the $[\alpha]_D$?

Solution

5 cm = 0.5 dm

$[\alpha]_D = \alpha/(c \times l) = +1.52/(0.3 \times 0.5) = +10.1°$

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

6.7: Optical Activity and Racemic Mixtures is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.8: Resolution (Separation) of Enantiomers

Learning Objective

- explain how to resolve (separate) a pair of enantiomers

Introduction and Overview

A *racemic mixture* is a 50:50 mixture of two enantiomers. Because they are mirror images, each enantiomer rotates plane-polarized light in an equal but opposite direction and is optically inactive. If the enantiomers are separated, the mixture is said to have been *resolved*. A common experiment in the laboratory component of introductory organic chemistry involves the resolution of a racemic mixture.

The dramatic biochemical consequences of chirality are illustrated by the use, in the 1950s, of the drug Thalidomide, a sedative given to pregnant women to relieve morning sickness. It was later realized that while the (+)-form of the molecule, was a safe and effective sedative, the (−)-form was an active teratogen. The drug caused numerous birth abnormalities when taken in the early stages of pregnancy because it contained a mixture of the two forms.

Chiral Resolution

As noted earlier, chiral compounds synthesized from achiral starting materials and reagents are generally racemic (i.e. a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers). Separation of racemates into their component enantiomers is a process called resolution. Since enantiomers have identical physical properties, such as solubility and melting point, resolution is extremely difficult. Diastereomers, on the other hand, have different physical properties, and this fact is used to achieve resolution of racemates. Reaction of a racemate with an enantiomerically pure chiral reagent gives a mixture of diastereomers, which can be separated. For example, if a racemic mixture of a chiral alcohol is reacted with a enantiomerically pure carboxylic acid, the result is a mixture of diastereomers: in this case, because the pure (R) entantiomer of the acid was used, the product is a mixture of (R-R) and (R-S) diastereomeric esters, which can, in theory, be separated by their different physical properties. Subsequent hydrolysis of each separated ester will yield the 'resolved' (enantiomerically pure) alcohols. The used in this technique are known as 'Moscher's esters', after Harry Stone Moscher, a chemist who pioneered the method at Stanford University.

As noted earlier, chiral compounds synthesized from achiral starting materials and reagents are generally racemic (i.e. a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers). Separation of racemates into their component enantiomers is a process called **resolution**. Since enantiomers have identical physical properties, such as solubility and melting point, resolution is extremely difficult. Diastereomers, on the other hand, have different physical properties, and this fact is used to achieve resolution of racemates. Reaction of a racemate with an enantiomerically pure chiral reagent gives a mixture of diastereomers, which can be separated. Reversing the first reaction then leads to the separated enantiomers plus the recovered reagent.

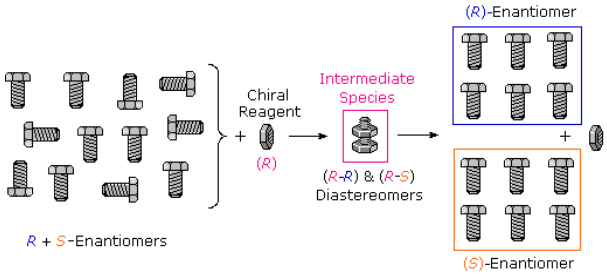


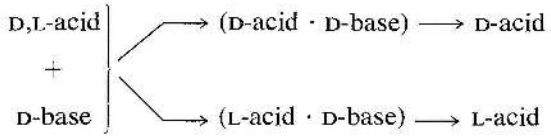
Figure 5.8.1:

Many kinds of chemical and physical reactions, including salt formation, may be used to achieve the diastereomeric intermediates needed for separation. Figure 5.8.1 illustrates this general principle by showing how a nut having a right-handed thread (R) could serve as a "reagent" to discriminate and separate a mixture of right- and left-handed bolts of identical size and weight. Only the two right-handed partners can interact to give a fully-threaded intermediate, so separation is fairly simple. The resolving moiety, i.e. the nut, is then removed, leaving the bolts separated into their right and left-handed forms. Chemical reactions of enantiomers are normally not so dramatically different, but a practical distinction is nevertheless possible.

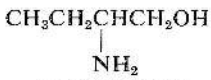
Because the physical properties of enantiomers are identical, they seldom can be separated by simple physical methods, such as fractional crystallization or distillation. It is only under the influence of another chiral substance that enantiomers behave differently, and almost all methods of resolution of enantiomers are based upon this fact. We include here a discussion of the primary methods of resolution

Chiral Amines as Resolving Agents and Resolution of Racemic Acids

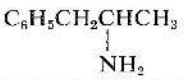
The most commonly used procedure for separating enantiomers is to convert them to a mixture of diastereomers that will have different physical properties: melting point, boiling point, solubility, and so on (Section 5-5). For example, if you have a racemic or D,L mixture of enantiomers of an acid and convert this to a salt with a chiral base having the D configuration, the salt will be a mixture of two diastereomers, (D acid . D base) and (L acid . D base). These diastereomeric salts are *not* identical and they are not mirror images. Therefore they will differ to some degree in their physical properties, and a separation by physical methods, such as crystallization, may be possible. If the diastereomeric salts can be completely separated, the acid regenerated from each salt will be either exclusively the D or the L enantiomer:



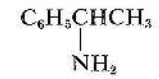
Resolution of chiral acids through the formation of diastereomeric salts requires adequate supplies of suitable chiral bases. Brucine, strychnine, and quinine frequently are used for this purpose because they are readily available, naturally occurring chiral bases. Simpler amines of synthetic origin, such as 2-amino- 1 -butanol, amphetamine, and 1 -phenylethanamine, also can be used, but first they must be resolved themselves.



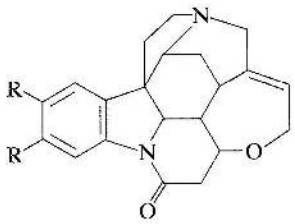
2-amino-1-butanol



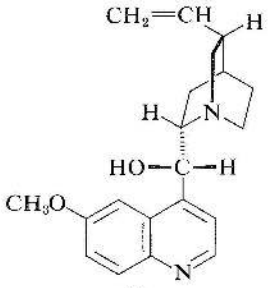
1-phenyl-2-propanamine
(amphetamine)



1-phenylethanamine



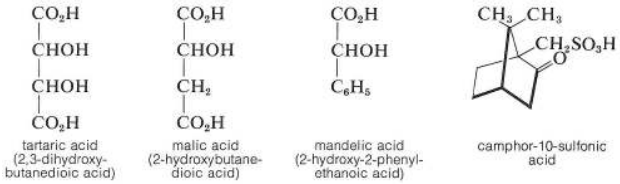
R = H, strychnine
R = OCH_3, brucine



quinine
(antimicrobial)
(antimalarial)

Resolution of Racemic Bases

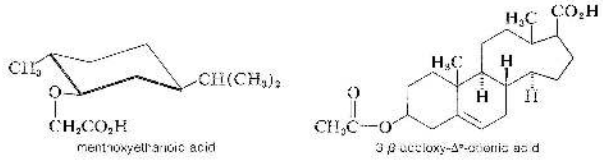
Chiral acids, such as (+)-tartaric acid, (-)-malic acid, (-)-mandelic acid, and (+)-camphor- 10-sulfonic acid, are used for the resolution of a racemic base.



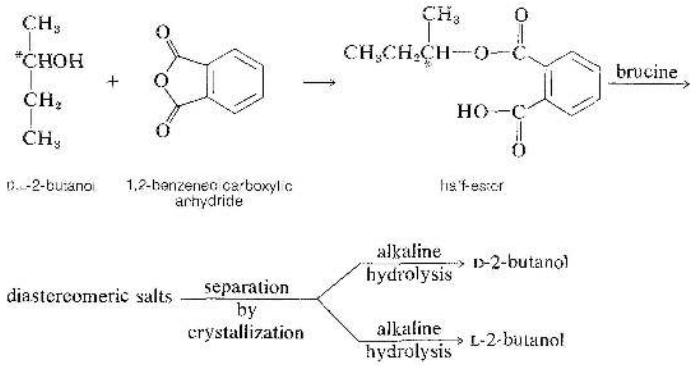
The principle is the same as for the resolution of a racemic acid with a chiral base, and the choice of acid will depend both on the ease of separation of the diastereomeric salts and, of course, on the availability of the acid for the scale of the resolution involved. Resolution methods of this kind can be tedious, because numerous recrystallizations in different solvents may be necessary to progressively enrich the crystals in the less-soluble diastereomer. To determine when the resolution is complete, the mixture of diastereomers is recrystallized until there is no further change in the measured optical rotation of the crystals. At this stage it is hoped that the crystalline salt is a pure diastereomer from which one pure enantiomer can be recovered. The optical rotation of this enantiomer will be a maximum value if it is "optically" pure because any amount of the other enantiomer could only reduce the magnitude of the measured rotation α.

Resolution of Racemic Alcohols

To resolve a racemic alcohol, a chiral acid can be used to convert the alcohol to a mixture of diastereomeric esters. This is not as generally useful as might be thought because esters tend to be liquids unless they are very high-molecularweight compounds. If the diastereomeric esters are not crystalline, they must be separated by some other method than fractional crystallization (for instance, by chromatography methods, Section 9-2). Two chiral acids that are useful resolving agents for alcohols are:



The most common method of resolving an alcohol is to convert it to a half-ester of a dicarboxylic acid, such as butanedioic (succinic) or 1,2-benzenedicarboxylic (phthalic) acid, with the corresponding anhydride. The resulting half-ester has a free carboxyl function and may then be resolvable with a chiral base, usually brucine:



Other Methods of Resolution

Qne of the major goals in the field of organic chemistry is the development of reagents with the property of "chiral recognition" such that they can effect a clean separation of enantiomers in one operation without destroying either of the enantiomers. We have not achieved that ideal yet, but it may not be far in the future. Chromatographic methods (Section 9-2), whereby the stationary phase is a chiral reagent that adsorbs one enantiomer more strongly than the other, have been used to resolve racemic compounds, but such resolutions seldom have led to both pure enantiomers on a preparative scale. Other methods, called kinetic resolutions, are excellent when applicable. The procedure takes advantage of differences in reaction rates of enantiomers with chiral reagents. One enantiomer may react more rapidly, thereby leaving an excess of the other enantiomer behind. For example, racemic tartaric acid

can be resolved with the aid of certain penicillin molds that consume the dextrorotatory enantiomer faster than the levorotatory enantiomer. As a result, almost pure (-)-tartaric acid can be recovered from the mixture:

(±)-tartaric acid + mold → (-)-tartaric acid + more mold

A disadvantage of resolutions of this type is that the more reactive enantiomer usually is not recoverable from the reaction mixture.

The crystallization procedure employed by Pasteur for his classical resolution of (±)-tartaric acid (Section 5-1C) has been successful only in a very few cases. This procedure depends on the formation of individual crystals of each enantiomer. Thus if the crystallization of sodium ammonium tartrate is carried out below 27", the usual racemate salt does not form; a mixture of crystals of the (+) and (-) salts forms instead. The two different kinds of crystals, which are related as an object to its mirror image, can be separated manually with the aid of a microscope and subsequently may be converted to the tartaric acid enantiomers by strong acid. A variation on this method of resolution is the seeding of a saturated solution of a racemic mixture with crystals of one pure enantiomer in the hope of causing crystallization of just that one enantiomer, thereby leaving the other in solution. Unfortunately, very
few practical resolutions have been achieved in this way.

Even when a successful resolution is achieved, some significant problems remain. For instance, the resolution itself does not provide information on the actual configuration of the (+) or (-) enantiomer. This must be determined by other means (see Section 19-5). Also, it is not possible to tell the enantiomeric purity (optical purity) of the resolved enantiomers without additional information. This point is discussed further in the next section.

Exercise

1. Indicate the reagents you would use to resolve the following compounds. Show the reactions involved and specify the physical method you believe would be the best to separate the diastereomers.

1. 1 -phenyl-2-propanamine
2. 2,3-pentadienedioic acid
3. 1 -phenylethanol

Solutions:

1.

a. React 1-phenyl-2-propanamine racemic mixture with a chiral acid such as (+)-tartaric acid (*R*, *R*).

Reaction will produce a mixture of diastereomeric salts (i.e. *R*, *R*, *R* and *S*, *R*, *R*).

Separate diastereomers through crystallization.

Treat salt with strong base (e.g. KOH) to recover the pure enantiomeric amine.

b. React 2,3-pentadienedioic acid mixture with a chiral base such as (*R*)-1-phenylethylamine.

Reaction will produce a mixture of diastereomeric salts.

Separate diastereomers through crystallization.

Treat salt with strong acid (e.g. HCl) to recover the pure enantiomer acid.

c. React 1-phenylethanol mixture with 1,2-benzenedicarboxylic anhydride.

Reaction will produce a mixture of diastereomeric salts.

Separate diastereomers through crystallization.

Then alkaline hydrolysis treatment to recover the pure enantiomeric alcohol.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

6.8: Resolution (Separation) of Enantiomers is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Introduction to Organic Reactions

7.1: Describing a Reaction - Equilibrium and Free Energy Changes
7.2: Types of Organic Reactions
7.3: Reaction Mechanism Notation and Symbols
7.4: Polar Reactions- the Dance of the Nucleophile and Electrophile
7.5: Homolytic Cleavage and Bond Dissociation Energies
7.6: Reaction Energy Diagrams and Transition States
7.7: Reactive Intermediates - Carbocations

7: Introduction to Organic Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.1: Describing a Reaction - Equilibrium and Free Energy Changes

Learning Objective

- perform calculations using the equation

$$\Delta G^{o} = -RT \ln K = -2.303RT \log_{10} K \tag{7.1.1}$$

and explain the relationship between equilibrium and free energy

Equilibrium Constant

For the hypothetical chemical reaction:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{7.1.2}$$

the equilibrium constant is defined as:

$$K_C = \frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b} \tag{7.1.3}$$

where the notation [A] signifies the molar concentration of species A. Note that the expression for the equilibrium constant includes only solutes and gases; pure solids and liquids do not appear in the expression. For example, the equilibrium expression for the reaction

$$\mathrm{CaH_2\,(s) + 2\,H_2O\,(g) \rightleftharpoons Ca(OH)_2\,(s) + 2\,H_2\,(g)} \tag{7.1.4}$$

is the following:

$$K_C = \frac{[H_2]^2}{[H_2O]^2} \tag{7.1.5}$$

Observe that the gas-phase species $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and $\mathrm{H_2}$ appear in the expression but the solids $\mathrm{CaH_2}$ and $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$ do not appear.

The equilibrium constant is most readily determined by allowing a reaction to reach equilibrium, measuring the concentrations of the various solution-phase or gas-phase reactants and products, and substituting these values into the Law of Mass Action.

Free Energy

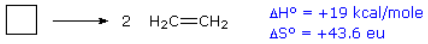
The interaction between enthalpy and entropy changes in chemical reactions is best observed by studying their influence on the equilibrium constants of reversible reactions. To this end a new thermodynamic function called Free Energy (or Gibbs Free Energy), symbol ΔG, is defined as shown in the first equation below. Two things should be apparent from this equation. First, in cases where the entropy change is small, $\Delta G \cong \Delta H$. Second, the importance of ΔS in determining ΔG increases with increasing temperature.

$$\Delta G^{o} = \Delta H^{o} - T\Delta S^{o} \tag{7.1.6}$$

where the temperature is measured in absolute temperature (K).

The free energy function provides improved insight into the thermodynamic driving forces that influence reactions. A negative ΔG^{o} is characteristic of an **exergonic reaction**, one which is thermodynamically favorable and often spontaneous, as is the melting of ice at 1 ºC. Likewise a positive ΔG^{o} is characteristic of an **endergonic reaction**, one which requires an input of energy from the surroundings.

For an example of the relationship of free energy to enthalpy consider the decomposition of cyclobutane to ethene, shown in the following equation. The standard state for all the compounds is gaseous.



This reaction is endothermic, but the increase in number of molecules from one (reactants) to two (products) results in a large positive ΔSº.

At 25 ºC (298 K):

$$\Delta G^{o} = 19 \text{ kcal/mol} - 298(43.6) \text{ cal/mole} = 19 - 13 \text{ kcal/mole} = +6 \text{ kcal/mole}.$$

Thus, the entropy change opposes the enthalpy change, but is not sufficient to change the sign of the resulting free energy change, which is endergonic. Indeed, cyclobutane is perfectly stable when kept at room temperature.

Because the entropy contribution increases with temperature, this energetically unfavorable transformation can be made favorable by raising the temperature. At 200 ºC (473 K),

$$\Delta G^{o} = 19\,kcal/mol - 473(43.6)\,cal/mole \quad (7.1.7)$$

$$= 19 - 20.6\,kcal/mole \quad (7.1.8)$$

$$= -1.6 kcal/mole. \quad (7.1.9)$$

This is now an **exergonic reaction**, and the thermal cracking of cyclobutane to ethene is known to occur at higher temperatures.

Label 'eq2' multiply defined

where R = 1.987 cal/ K mole T = temperature in K and K = equilibrium constant

Note

Equation 7.1.1 is important because it demonstrates the fundamental relationship of ΔG^{o} to the equilibrium constant, K. Because of the negative logarithmic relationship between these variables, a negative ΔGº generates a K>1, whereas a positive ΔGº generates a K<1. When ΔGº = 0, K = 1. Furthermore, small changes in ΔGº produce large changes in K. A change of 1.4 kcal/mole in ΔGº changes K by approximately a factor of 10. This interrelationship may be explored with the calculator on the right. Entering free energies outside the range -8 to 8 kcal/mole or equilibrium constants outside the range 10^{-6} to 900,000 will trigger an alert, indicating the large imbalance such numbers imply.

Applications to Organic Reactions

The equation below can also be useful without performing any calculations.

Label 'eq2' multiply defined

Conceptually, this equation helps us compare the energetics of reaction mechanisms to predict the major products. For example, if ΔG° < 0, then K > 1, and products are favored over reactants. If ΔG° > 0, then K < 1, and reactants are favored over products. If ΔG° = 0, then K = 1, and the system is at equilibrium. Recognizing the underlying energetics of equilibrium, the stability of charged reactants and products can be used to predict reaction equilibrium. Reaction conditions can also be adjusted or controlled to shift the equilibrium in the desired direction by a range of experimental methods. A theoretical understanding of the reaction free energy and equilibrium helps us predict and design the optimum reaction conditions for a desired product.

Exercises

1. At 155°C, the equilibrium constant, K_{eq}, for the reaction

   $$CH3CO2H + CH3CH2OH <=> CH3CO2CH2CH3 + H2O \quad (7.1.10)$$

   has a value of 4.0. Calculate $\Delta G°$ for this reaction at 155°C.

2. Acetylene (C_2H_2) can be converted into benzene (C_6H_6) according to the equation:

   You can't use 'macro parameter character #' in math mode

   At 25°C, $\Delta G°$ for this reaction is −503 kJ and $\Delta H°$ is −631 kJ. Determine $\Delta S°$ and indicate whether the size of $\Delta S°$ agrees with what you would have predicted simply by looking at the chemical equation.

Answer

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT\ln K_{eq} = -(8.314\ J\cdot K^{-1}\cdot mol^{-1})(428\ K)\ln(4.0) = -(8.314\ J\cdot K^{-1}\cdot mol^{-1})(428\ K)(1.386) = -4.9\times 10^3\ J\cdot mol^{-1} = -4.9\ KJ\cdot mol^{-1}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \quad \Delta S^\circ = (\Delta H^\circ - \Delta G^\circ)T = -631\ kJ - (-503\ kJ)\ 298\ K = -128\ kJ\ 298\ K = -0.430\ KJ\cdot mol^{-1} = -430\ J\cdot mol^{-1}$$

The entropy change is negative, as one would expect from looking at the chemical equation, since three moles of reactants yield one mole of product; that is, the system becomes much more “ordered” as it goes from reactants to products.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

7.1: Describing a Reaction - Equilibrium and Free Energy Changes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.2: Types of Organic Reactions

Learning Objective

- recognize and distinguish between the four major types of organic reactions (additions, eliminations, substitutions, and rearrangements)

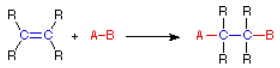
Introduction

If you scan any organic textbook you will encounter what appears to be a very large, often intimidating, number of reactions. These are the "tools" of a chemist, and to use these tools effectively, we must organize them in a sensible manner and look for patterns of reactivity that permit us make plausible predictions. Most of these reactions occur at special sites of reactivity known as functional groups, and these constitute one organizational scheme that helps us catalog and remember reactions.

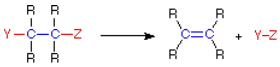
> *Ultimately, the best way to achieve proficiency in organic chemistry is to understand how reactions take place, and to recognize the various factors that influence their course.*

First, we identify four broad classes of reactions based solely on the **structural change** occurring in the reactant molecules. This classification does not require knowledge or speculation concerning reaction paths or mechanisms. The four main reaction classes are additions, eliminations, substitutions, and rearrangements.

Addition Reaction



Elimination Reaction



Substitution Reaction



Rearrangement Reaction

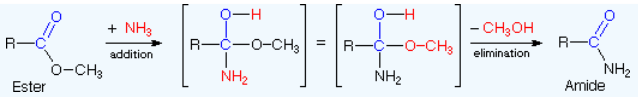


In an **addition** reaction the number of σ-bonds in the substrate molecule increases, usually at the expense of one or more π-bonds. The reverse is true of **elimination** reactions, *i.e.*the number of σ-bonds in the substrate decreases, and new π-bonds are often formed. **Substitution** reactions, as the name implies, are characterized by replacement of an atom or group (Y) by another atom or group (Z). Aside from these groups, the number of bonds does not change. A **rearrangement** reaction generates an isomer, and again the number of bonds normally does not change.

The examples illustrated above involve simple alkyl and alkene systems, but these reaction types are general for most functional groups, including those incorporating carbon-oxygen double bonds and carbon-nitrogen double and triple bonds. Some common reactions may actually be a combination of reaction types.

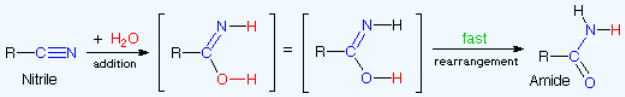
Example: substitution Reaction

The reaction of an ester with ammonia to give an amide, as shown below, appears to be a substitution reaction (Y = CH_3O & Z = NH_2); however, it is actually two reactions, an addition followed by an elimination.



Example: Addition reaction

The addition of water to a nitrile does not seem to fit any of the above reaction types, but it is simply a slow addition reaction followed by a rapid rearrangement, as shown in the following equation. Rapid rearrangements of this kind are called **tautomerizations**.



Exercise

1. Classify each reaction as addition, elimination, substitution, or rearrangement.

A) $CH_3CH_2Br + LiOH \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2OH + LiBr$

B) $CH_3CH_2CH_2Cl \longrightarrow CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + HCl$

C) $CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + H_2 \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2CH_3$

Answer

1. A = Substitution; B = Elimination; C = Addition

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

7.2: Types of Organic Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

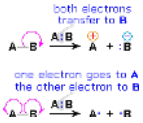
7.3: Reaction Mechanism Notation and Symbols

Learning Objective

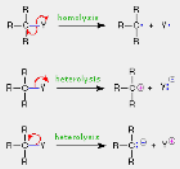
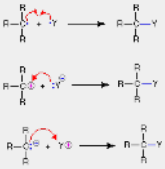
- accurately and precisely use reaction mechanism notation and symbols including curved arrows to show the flow of electrons

The Arrow Notation in Mechanisms

Since chemical reactions involve the breaking and making of bonds, a consideration of the movement of bonding (and non-bonding) valence shell electrons is essential to this understanding. It is now common practice to show the movement of electrons with curved arrows, and a sequence of equations depicting the consequences of such electron shifts is termed a **mechanism**. In general, two kinds of curved arrows are used in drawing mechanisms:

A full head on the arrow indicates the movement or shift of an electron pair:		
A partial head (fishhook) on the arrow indicates the shift of a single electron:		

The use of these symbols in bond-breaking and bond-making reactions is illustrated below. If a covalent single bond is broken so that one electron of the shared pair remains with each fragment, as in the first example, this bond-breaking is called **homolysis**. If the bond breaks with both electrons of the shared pair remaining with one fragment, as in the second and third examples, this is called **heterolysis**.

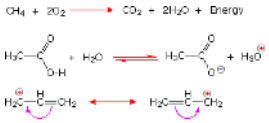
Bond-Breaking		Bond-Making
		

Other Arrow Symbols

Chemists also use arrow symbols for other purposes, and it is essential to use them correctly.

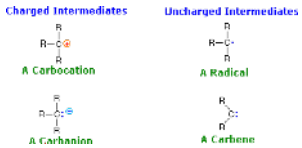
The Reaction Arrow	The Equilibrium Arrow	The Resonance Arrow

The following equations illustrate the proper use of these symbols:



Reactive Intermediates

The products of bond breaking, shown above, are not stable in the usual sense, and cannot be isolated for prolonged study. Such species are referred to as **reactive intermediates**, and are believed to be transient intermediates in many reactions. The general structures and names of four such intermediates are given below.



A pair of widely used terms, related to the Lewis acid-base notation, should also be introduced here.

- Electrophile: An electron deficient atom, ion or molecule that has an affinity for an electron pair, and will bond to a base or nucleophile.
- Nucleophile: An atom, ion or molecule that has an electron pair that may be donated in bonding to an electrophile (or Lewis acid).

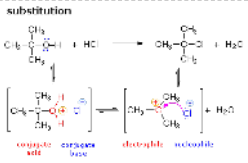
Using these definitions, it is clear that carbocations (called carbonium ions in the older literature) are electrophiles and carbanions are nucleophiles. Carbenes have only a valence shell sextet of electrons and are therefore electron deficient. In this sense they are electrophiles, but the non-bonding electron pair also gives carbenes nucleophilic character. As a rule, the electrophilic character dominates carbene reactivity. Carbon radicals have only seven valence electrons, and may be considered electron deficient; however, they do not in general bond to nucleophilic electron pairs, so their chemistry exhibits unique differences from that of conventional electrophiles. Radical intermediates are often called **free radicals**.

The importance of electrophile / nucleophile terminology comes from the fact that many organic reactions involve at some stage the bonding of a nucleophile to an electrophile, a process that generally leads to a stable intermediate or product. Reactions of this kind are sometimes called **ionic reactions**, since ionic reactants or products are often involved. Some common examples of ionic reactions and their mechanisms may be examined below.

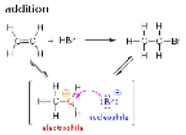
The shapes ideally assumed by these intermediates becomes important when considering the stereochemistry of reactions in which they play a role. A simple tetravalent compound like methane, CH_4, has a tetrahedral configuration. Carbocations have only three bonds to the charge bearing carbon, so it adopts a planar trigonal configuration. Carbanions are pyramidal in shape (tetrahedral if the electron pair is viewed as a substituent), but these species invert rapidly at room temperature, passing through a higher energy planar form in which the electron pair occupies a p-orbital. Radicals are intermediate in configuration, the energy difference between pyramidal and planar forms being very small. Since three points determine a plane, the shape of carbenes must be planar; however, the valence electron distribution varies.

Ionic Reactions

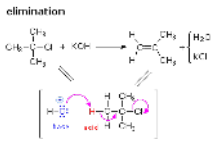
The principles and terms introduced in the previous sections can now be summarized and illustrated by the following three examples. Reactions such as these are called **ionic** or **polar** reactions, because they often involve charged species and the bonding together of **electrophiles and nucleophiles**. Ionic reactions normally take place in liquid solutions, where solvent molecules assist the formation of charged intermediates.



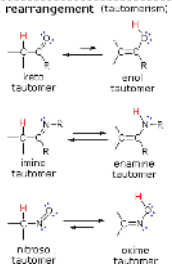
The substitution reaction shown on the left can be viewed as taking place in three steps. The first is an acid-base equilibrium, in of the alcohol. The resulting conjugate acid then loses water in a second step to give a carbocation intermediate. Finally, this e anion nucleophile to give the final product.



The addition reaction shown on the left can be viewed as taking place in two steps. The first step can again be considered an aci of the carbon-carbon double bond functioning as a base. The resulting conjugate acid is a carbocation, and this electrophile cc anion.



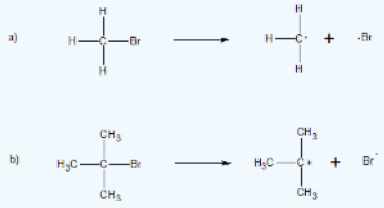
The elimination reaction shown on the left takes place in one step. The bond breaking and making operations that take place i arrows. The initial stage may also be viewed as an acid-base interaction, with hydroxide ion serving as the base and a hydrogen an acid.



There are many kinds of molecular rearrangements called isomerizations. The examples shown on the left are from an importar specifically, keto-enol tautomerization. Tautomers are rapidly interconverted constitutional isomers, usually distinguished by a hydrogen atom (colored red here) and a differently located double bond. The equilibrium between tautomers is not only rapic strongly favors one of the isomers (acetone, for example, is 99.999% keto tautomer). Even in such one-sided equilibria, evidenc comes from the chemical behavior of the compound. Tautomeric equilibria are catalyzed by traces of acids or bases that are gen

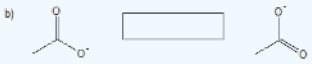
Exercise

1. Add curved arrows to explain the indicated reactivity and classify the reaction as "homolytic cleavage" or "heterolytic cleavage".



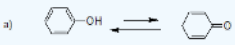
2. Add the correct arrow to each expression below using your knowledge of chemistry.

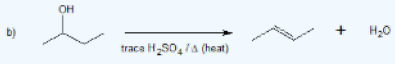
a) 

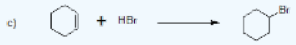
b) 

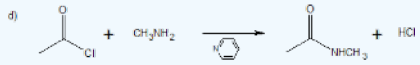
c) 

3. Classify the following reactions as substituion, addition, elimination, or tautomerization (an example of isomerization).

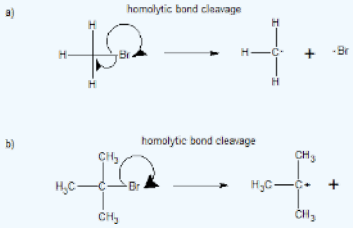
a) 

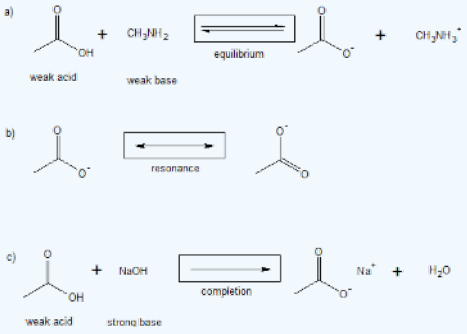
b) 

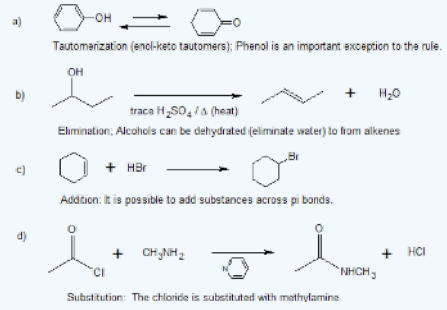
c) 

d) 

Answer

1. 

2. 

3. 

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

7.3: Reaction Mechanism Notation and Symbols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.4: Polar Reactions- the Dance of the Nucleophile and Electrophile

Learning Objective

- identify nucleophiles and electrophiles in polar reactions
- relate bond polarity to chemical reactivity

Nucleophiles and Electrophiles

The reactants of polar reactions are often called the "nucleophile" and "electrophile". These terms are related to Lewis acid-base notation, so it can be helpful to apply and transfer the knowledge and wisdom gained from this definiation of acid-base chemistry.

- Electrophile (Lewis Acid): An electron deficient atom, ion or molecule that has an affinity for an electron pair, and will bond to a base or nucleophile
- Nucleophile (Lewis Base): An atom, ion or molecule that has an electron pair that may be donated in bonding to an electrophile

Nucleophile

Nucleophilic functional groups are those which have electron-rich atoms able to donate a pair of electrons to form a new covalent bond. In both laboratory and biological organic chemistry, the most relevant nucleophilic atoms are oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur, and the most common nucleophilic functional groups are water, alcohols, phenols, amines, thiols, and occasionally carboxylates. More specifically in laboratory reactions, halide and azide (N_3^-) anions are commonly seen acting as nucleophiles.

Enolate ions are the most common carbon nucleophiles in biochemical reactions, while the cyanide ion (CN^-) is just one example of a carbon nucleophile commonly used in the laboratory. Hydrocarbons carbons with pi bonds can also be nucleophiles. Reactions with carbon nucleophiles will be dealt with in later chapters In this chapter, we will concentrate on non-carbon nucleophiles.

When thinking about nucleophiles, the first thing to recognize is that, for the most part, the same quality of 'electron-richness' that makes a something nucleophilic also makes it basic: *nucleophiles can be bases, and bases can be nucleophiles*. It should not be surprising, then, that most of the trends in basicity that we have already discussed also apply to nucleophilicity.

Neutral Nucleophiles: H_2O, NH_3, RNH_2, R_2NH, R_3N, ROH, RCO_2H. RSH, PR_3, $R_2C{=}CR_2$, and alkynes

Charged Nucleophiles: RO^-, H_2N^-, RNH^-, R_2N^-, HS^-, RSe^-, Cl^-, Br^-, I^-, F^-, CN^-, N_3^-, OH^-, and RCO_2^-

Electrophiles

In the vast majority of polar reactions, the electrophilic atom is a carbon atom bonded to an electronegative atom, usually oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, or a halogen. The concept of electrophilicity is relatively simple: an electron-poor atom with partial positive charge is an attractive target an electron-rich nucleophile. Electrophiles can be challenging to recognize because their partial positive charge is hidden in polar bonds and/or resonance. Allkyl halides and carbonyl groups are useful electrophiles for synthetic organic chemistry.

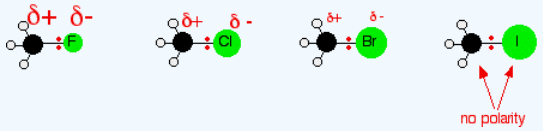
Electrophilicity of Alkyl Halides

With respect to electronegativity, halogens are more electronegative than carbons. This results in a carbon-halogen bond that is polarized. As shown in the image below, carbon atom has a partial positive charge, while the halogen has a partial negative charge.

The Polar C-X Bond



Allkyl halides are useful electrophiles for synthetic organic chemistry. Of the four halogens, fluorine is the most electronegative and iodine the least. That means that the electron pair in the carbon-fluorine bond will be dragged most towards the halogen end. Looking at the methyl halides as simple examples:



The following image shows the relative electronegativity of the halogens. Notice, as we move up the periodic table from iodine to fluorine, electronegativity increases.

Electronegativity	I	<	Br	<	Cl	<	F

The following image shows the relationships between bond length, bond strength, and molecular size. As we progress down the periodic table from fluorine to iodine, molecular size increases. As a result, we also see an increase in bond length. Conversely, as molecular size increases and we get longer bonds, the strength of those bonds decreases.

Bond length	C-F	<	C-Cl	<	C-Br	<	C-I
Bond strength	C-I	<	C-Br	<	C-Cl	<	C-F
Molecular size	F	<	Cl	<	Br	<	I

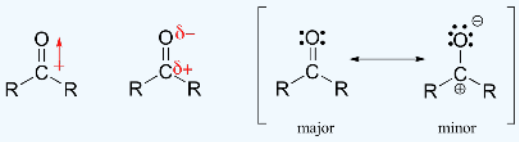
You might have thought that either of these would be more effective in the case of the carbon-fluorine bond with the quite large amounts of positive and negative charge already present. But that's not so - quite the opposite is true! The thing that governs the reactivity is the strength of the bonds which have to be broken. If is difficult to break a carbon-fluorine bond, but easy to break a carbon-iodine one. The relative electrophilicity of alkyl halides is summarized below.

Relative Electrophilicity R-I > R-Br > R-Cl > R-F

It is easier to break the weaker C-I bond.

Electrophilicity of the Carbonyl Group

The carbon atom of the carbonyl group (C=O) is electrophilic because the carbon-oxygen double bond is polar and one of the resonance contributors is ionized with a full positiv echarge on the carbonyl carbon. Oxygen is more electronegative than carbon, so electron density is higher on the oxygen side of the bond and lower on the carbon side. Both of these factors combine to increase the electrophilicity of carbonyl groups. Carbonyl chemistry is studied in greater detail in the second semester of organic chemistry.



Exercise

1. Recognizing organic compounds as nucleophiles or electrophiles is an important first step in recognizing and learning patterns of chemical reactivity. Classify the following compounds as nucleophiles or electrophiles.

a) methoxide (CH_3O^-)

b) formaldehye (CH_2O)

c) bromocyclopentane

d) water

e) sodium cyanide

f) methanamine (CH_3NH_2)

Answer

a) charged nucleophile

b) electrophile (Carbonyl carbon has partial positive charge.)

c) electrophile (Alkyl halides are always electrophiles - one reason they are an o-chem student's best friend.)

d) neutral nucleophile

e) charge nucleophile (Don't let the cation distract us from the CN^-)

f) neutral nucleophile (The lone pair electrons on the nitrogen are nucleophilic in the same way they are Lewis bases (electron donators).

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

7.4: Polar Reactions- the Dance of the Nucleophile and Electrophile is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.5: Homolytic Cleavage and Bond Dissociation Energies

Learning Objective

- calculate reaction enthalpies from bond dissociation energies

Introduction

The homolytic bond dissociation energy is the amount of energy needed to break apart one mole of covalently bonded gases into a pair of radicals. The SI units used to describe bond energy are kiloJoules per mole of bonds (kJ/Mol). It indicates how strongly the atoms are bonded to each other. *Solvation* is the interaction between solvent molecules and the ions or molecules dissolved in that solvent.

Breaking a covalent bond between two partners, A-B, can occur either heterolytically, where the shared pair of electron goes with one partner or another

$$A-B \rightarrow A^{+} + B:^{-} \tag{7.5.1}$$

or

$$A-B \rightarrow A:^{-} + B^{+} \tag{7.5.2}$$

or homolytically, where one electron stays with each partner.

$$A-B \rightarrow A^{\bullet} + B^{\bullet} \tag{7.5.3}$$

The products of homolytic cleavage are radicals and the energy that is required to break the bond homolytically is called the *Bond Dissociation Energy* (BDE) and is a measure of the strength of the bond.

Calculation of the BDE

The BDE for a molecule A-B is calculated as the difference in the enthalpies of formation of the products and reactants for homolysis

$$BDE = \Delta_f H(A^{\bullet}) + \Delta_f H(B^{\bullet}) - \Delta_f H(A-B) \tag{7.5.4}$$

Officially, the IUPAC definition of bond dissociation energy refers to the energy change that occurs at 0 K, and the symbol is D_o. However, it is commonly referred to as BDE, the bond dissociation energy, and it is generally used, albeit imprecisely, interchangeably with the bond dissociation *enthalpy*, which generally refers to the enthalpy change at room temperature (298K). Although there are technically differences between BDEs at 0 K and 298 K, those difference are not large and generally do not affect interpretations of chemical processes.

Bond Breakage/Formation

Bond dissociation energy (or enthalpy) is a state function and consequently does not depend on the path by which it occurs. Therefore, the specific mechanism in how a bond breaks or is formed does not affect the BDE. Bond dissociation energies are useful in assessing the energetics of chemical processes. For chemical reactions, combining bond dissociation energies for bonds formed and bonds broken in a chemical reaction using Hess's Law can be used to estimate reaction enthalpies.

Example: Chlorination of Methane

Consider the chlorination of methane

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl \tag{7.5.5}$$

the overall reaction thermochemistry can be calculated exactly by combining the BDEs for the bonds broken and bonds formed

$CH_4 \rightarrow CH_3\bullet + H\bullet$ BDE(CH_3-H)

$Cl_2 \rightarrow 2Cl\bullet$ BDE(Cl_2)\]

$H\bullet + Cl\bullet \rightarrow HCl$ -BDE(HCl)

$CH_3\bullet + Cl\bullet \rightarrow CH_3Cl$ -BDE(CH_3-Cl)

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl \tag{7.5.6}$$

$$\Delta H = BDE(R-H) + BDE(Cl_2) - BDE(HCl) - BDE(CH_3-Cl) \tag{7.5.7}$$

Because reaction enthalpy is a state function, it does not matter what reactions are combined to make up the overall process using Hess's Law. However, BDEs are convenient to use because they are readily available.

Alternatively, BDEs can be used to assess individual steps of a mechanism. For example, an important step in free radical chlorination of alkanes is the abstraction of hydrogen from the alkane to form a free radical.

RH + Cl• → R• + HCl

The energy change for this step is equal to the difference in the BDEs in RH and HCl

$$\Delta H = BDE(R-H) - BDE(HCl) \tag{7.5.8}$$

This relationship shows that the hydrogen abstraction step is more favorable when BDE(R-H) is smaller. The difference in energies accounts for the selectivity in the halogenation of hydrocarbons with different types of C-H bonds.

Table 6.8.1: Representative C-H BDEs in Organic Molecules

R-H	D_0, kJ/mol	D_{298}, kJ/mol	R-H	D_0, kJ/mol	D_{298}, kJ/mol
CH_3-H	432.7±0.1	439.3±0.4	H_2C=CH-H	456.7±2.7	463.2±2.9
CH_3CH_2-H		423.0±1.7	C_6H_5-H	465.8±1.9	472.4±2.5
$(CH_3)_2$CH-H		412.5±1.7	HCCH	551.2±0.1	557.8±0.3
$(CH_3)_3$C-H		403.8±1.7			
			H_2C=$CHCH_2$-H		371.5±1.7
HC(O)-H		368.6±0.8	$C_6H_5CH_2$-H		375.3±2.5
CH_3C(O)-H		374.0±1.2			

Trends in C-H BDEs

It is important to remember that C-H BDEs refer to the energy it takes to break the bond, and is the difference in energy between the reactants and the products. Therefore, it is not appropriate to interpret BDEs solely in terms of the "stability of the radical products" as is often done.

Analysis of the BDEs shown in the table above shows that there are some systematic trends:

1. **BDEs vary with hybridization:** Bonds with sp^3 hybridized carbons are weakest and bonds with sp hybridized carbons are much stronger. The vinyl and phenyl C-H bonds are similar, reflecting their sp^2 hybridization. The correlation with hybridization can be viewed as a reflection of the C-H bond lengths. Longer bonds formed with sp^3 orbitals are consequently weaker. Shorter bonds formed with orbitals that have more s-character are similarly stronger.
2. **C-H BDEs vary with substitution:** Among sp^3 hybridized systems, methane has the strongest C-H bond. C-H bonds on primary carbons are stronger than those on secondary carbons, which are stronger than those on tertiary carbons.

Interpretation of C-H BDEs for sp^3 Hybridized Carbons

The interpretation of the BDEs in saturated molecules has been subject of recent controversy. As indicated above, the variation in BDEs with substitution has traditionally been interpreted as reflecting the stabilities of the alkyl radicals, with the assessment that more highly substituted radicals are more stable, as with carbocations. Although this is a popular explanation, it fails to account fo the fact the bonds to groups other than H do not show the same types of variation.

R	BDE(R-CH3)	BDE(R-Cl)	BDE(R-Br)	BDE(R-OH)
CH_3-	377.0±0.4	350.2±0.4	301.7±1.3	385.3±0.4
CH_3CH_2-	372.4±1.7	354.8±2.1	302.9±2.5	393.3±1.7
$(CH_3)_2CH$-	370.7±1.7	356.5±2.1	309.2±2.9	399.6±1.7
$(CH_3)_3C$-	366.1±1.7	355.2±2.9	303.8±2.5	400.8±1.7

Therefore, although C-CH_3 bonds get weaker with more substitution, the effect is not nearly as large as that observed with C-H bonds. The strengths of C-Cl and C-Br bonds are not affected by substitution, despite the fact that the same radicals are formed as when breaking C-H bonds, and the C-OH bonds in alcohols actually *increase* with more substitution.

Gronert has proposed that the variation in BDEs is alternately explained as resulting from destabilization of the reactants due to steric repulsion of the substituents, which is released in the nearly planar radicals.[1] Considering that BDEs reflect the relative energies of reactants and products, either explanation can account for the trend in BDEs.

Another factor that needs to be considered is the electronegativity. The Pauling definition of electronegativity says that the bond dissociation energy between unequal partners is going to be dependent on the difference in electrongativities, according to the expression

$$D_o(A-B) = \frac{D_o(A-A) + D_o(B-B)}{2} + (X_A - X_B)^2 \qquad (7.5.9)$$

where X_A and X_B are the electronegativities and the bond energies are in eV. Therefore, the variation in BDEs can be interpreted as reflecting variation in the electronegativities of the different types of alkyl fragments.

There is likely some merit in all three interpretations. Since Gronert's original publication of his alternate explanation, there have been many desperate attempts to defend the radical stability explanation.

Exercise

1. Given that $\Delta H°$ for the reaction

   $CH_{4(g)} + 4F_{2(g)} \rightarrow CF_{4(g)} + 4HF_{(g)}$

   is −1936 kJ, use the following data to calculate the average bond energy of the \(\ce{{\sf{C-F}}}$ bonds in CF_4.

Bond	Average Bond Energy
C — H	413 kJ · mol^{-1}
F — F	155 kJ · mol^{-1}
H — F	567 kJ · mol^{-1}

2. Calculate $\Delta H°$ for the reactions given below.
   a. $CH_3CH_2OCH_3 + HI \rightarrow CH_3CH_2OH + CH_3I$
   b. $CH_3Cl + NH_3 \rightarrow CH_3NH_2 + HCl$

Answer

msub$CH_{4(g)} + 4\ F_{2(g)} \rightarrow CF_{4(g)} + 4HF_{(g)}$ $\Delta H°$=−416 kcal

Bonds broken:

$$4 \text{ mol C-H bonds} \times \frac{(413 \text{ kJ})}{(1 \text{ mol})} = 1652 \text{ kJ}$$

$$4 \text{ mol F-F bonds} \times \frac{(155 \text{ kJ})}{(1 \text{ mol})} = 620 \text{ kJ}$$

Bonds formed:

$$4 \text{ mol C-F bonds} \times \frac{(x \text{ kJ})}{(1 \text{ mol})} = 4x \text{ kJ}$$

(where x = the average energy of one mole of C-F bonds in CF_4, expressed in kJ)

$$4 \text{ mol H-F bonds} \times \frac{(567 \text{ kJ})}{(1 \text{ mol})} = 2268 \text{ kJ}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta H^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ(\text{bonds broken}) - \Delta H^\circ(\text{bonds formed}) \\ &= (1652 \text{ kJ} + 620 \text{ kJ}) - (4x + 2268 \text{ kJ}) \\ &= 1652 \text{ kJ} + 620 \text{ kJ} - 4x - 2268 \text{ kJ} \\ &= -1936 \text{ kJ} \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} 4x &= 1936 \text{ kJ} - 2268 \text{ kJ} + 620 \text{ kJ} + 1652 \text{ kJ} \\ &= 1940 \text{ kJ} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{1940 \text{ kJ}}{4 \text{ mol}} \\ &= 385 \text{ kJ} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

The average energy of a C-F bond in CF_4 is 385 kJ · mol^{-1}

2. $CH_3Cl + NH_3 \rightarrow CH_3NH_2 + HCl$

Reactant bonds broken	D		Product bonds formed	D
$CH_3—Cl$	351 kJ/mol		$CH_3—NH_2$	335 kJ/mol
$NH_2—H$	449 kJ/mol		$H—Cl$	432 kJ/mol
	800 kJ/mol			767 kJ/mol

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta H^\circ &= D_{\text{bonds broken}} + D_{\text{bonds formed}} \\ &= 800 \text{ kJ/mol} - 767 \text{ kJ/mol} \\ &= +33 \text{ kJ/mol} \end{aligned}$$

References

1. Gronert, S. *J. Org. Chem.* **2006**, *13*, 1209

Further Reading

MasterOrganicChemistry

Bond Strengths And Radical Stability

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Prof. Paul G. Wenthold (Purdue University)

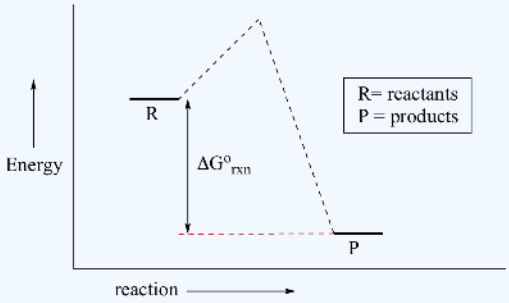
7.5: Homolytic Cleavage and Bond Dissociation Energies is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.6: Reaction Energy Diagrams and Transition States

Learning Objective

- draw Reaction Energy Diagrams from the thermodynamic and kinetic data/information
- use a Reaction Energy Diagram to discuss transition states, Ea, intermediates & rate determining step
- draw the transition state of a reaction

You may recall from general chemistry that it is often convenient to describe chemical reactions with energy diagrams. In an energy diagram, the vertical axis represents the overall energy of the reactants, while the horizontal axis is the 'reaction coordinate', tracing from left to right the progress of the reaction from starting compounds to final products. The energy diagram for a typical one-step reaction might look like this:



Despite its apparent simplicity, this energy diagram conveys some very important ideas about the thermodynamics and kinetics of the reaction. Recall that when we talk about the **thermodynamics** of a reaction, we are concerned with the difference in energy between reactants and products, and whether a reaction is 'downhill' (exergonic, energy releasing) or 'uphill (endergonic, energy absorbing). When we talk about **kinetics**, on the other hand, we are concerned with the *rate* of the reaction, regardless of whether it is uphill or downhill thermodynamically.

First, let's review what this energy diagram tells us about the thermodynamics of the reaction illustrated by the energy diagram above. The energy level of the products is *lower* than that of the reactants. This tells us that the change in standard Gibbs Free Energy for the reaction (ΔG°_{rnx}) is negative. In other words, the reaction is exergonic, or 'downhill'. Recall that the ΔG°_{rnx} term encapsulates both ΔH°_{rnx}, the change in enthalpy (heat) and ΔS°_{rnx} , the change in entropy (disorder):

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{7.6.1}$$

where T is the absolute temperature in Kelvin. For chemical processes where the entropy change is small (~0), the enthalpy change is essentially the same as the change in Gibbs Free Energy. Energy diagrams for these processes will often plot the enthalpy (H) instead of Free Energy for simplicity.

The standard Gibbs Free Energy change for a reaction can be related to the reaction's equilibrium constant (\(K_{eq}_) by a simple equation:

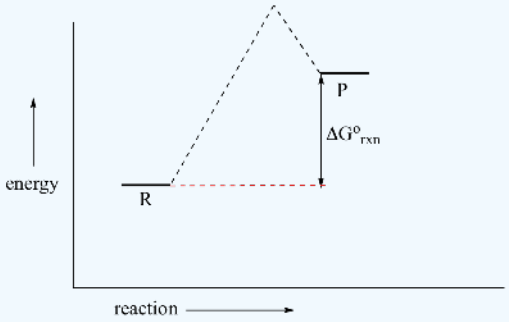
$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K_{eq} \tag{7.6.2}$$

where:

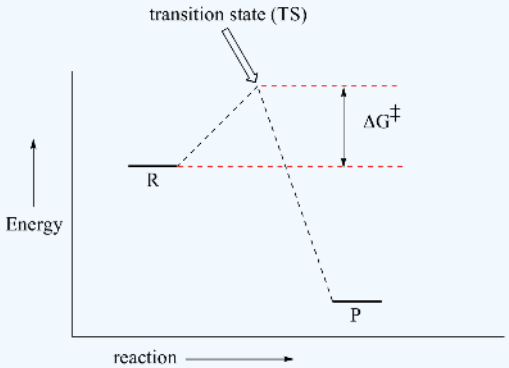
- K_{eq} = [product] / [reactant] at equilibrium
- R = 8.314 $J \times K^{-1} \times mol^{-1}$ *or* 1.987 $cal \times K^{-1} \times mol^{-1}$
- T = temperature in Kelvin (K)

If you do the math, you see that a negative value for ΔG°_{rnx} (an exergonic reaction) corresponds - as it should by intuition - to K_{eq} being greater than 1, an equilibrium constant which favors product formation.

In a hypothetical endergonic (energy-absorbing) reaction the products would have a higher energy than reactants and thus ΔG°_{rnx} would be positive and K_{eq} would be less than 1, favoring reactants.

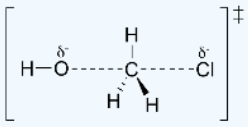


Now, let's move to kinetics. Look again at the energy diagram for exergonic reaction: although it is 'downhill' overall, it isn't a straight downhill run.



First, an 'energy barrier' must be overcome to get to the product side. The height of this energy barrier, you may recall, is called the '**activation energy'** ($\Delta G^{\ddagger}$). You may have been taught to use the term "activated complex" rather than "transition state," as the two are often used interchangeably. Similarly, the activation energy of a reaction is often represented by the symbol E_{act} or E_a. The activation energy is what determines the kinetics of a reaction: the higher the energy hill, the slower the reaction. At the very top of the energy barrier, the reaction is at its **transition state** (TS), which is the point at which the bonds are in the process of breaking and forming. The transition state is an '**activated complex'**: a transient and dynamic state that, unlike more stable species, does not have any definable lifetime. It may help to imagine a transition state as being analogous to the exact moment that a baseball is struck by a bat. Transition states are drawn with dotted lines representing bonds that are in the process of breaking or forming, and the drawing is often enclosed by brackets. Here is a picture of a likely transition state for a substitution reaction between hydroxide and chloromethane:

$$CH_3Cl + HO^- \rightarrow CH_3OH + Cl^- \tag{7.6.3}$$



This reaction involves a collision between *two* molecules: for this reason, we say that it has **second order kinetics**. The **rate expression** for this type of reaction is:

rate = k[reactant 1][reactant 2]

. . . which tells us that the rate of the reaction depends on the **rate constant** k as well as on the concentration of *both* reactants. The rate constant can be determined experimentally by measuring the rate of the reaction with different starting reactant concentrations. The rate constant depends on the activation energy, of course, but also on temperature: a higher temperature means a higher k and a faster reaction, all else being equal. This should make intuitive sense: when there is more heat energy in the system, more of the reactant molecules are able to get over the energy barrier.

Here is one more interesting and useful expression. Consider a simple reaction where the reactants are A and B, and the product is AB (this is referred to as a **condensation reaction**, because two molecules are coming together, or condensing). If we know the rate constant k for the forward reaction and the rate constant $k_{reverse}$ for the reverse reaction (where AB splits apart into A and B), we can simply take the quotient to find our equilibrium constant K_{eq}:

$$A + B \rightleftharpoons AB \qquad K_{eq} = \frac{[AB]}{[A]\,[B]} = \frac{k_{forward}}{k_{reverse}}$$

This too should make some intuitive sense; if the forward rate constant is higher than the reverse rate constant, equilibrium should lie towards products.

Exercise

1. Which reaction is faster, $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ = + 55 kJ/mol or $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ = + 75 kJ/mol?

Answer

1. The + 55 kJ/mol reaction is the faster reaction.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

7.6: Reaction Energy Diagrams and Transition States is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

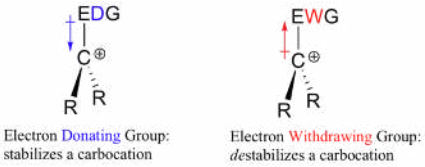
7.7: Reactive Intermediates - Carbocations

Learning Objective

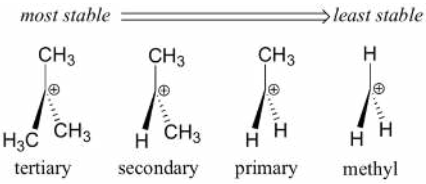
- describe the structure & relative stabilities of carbocations

Carbocations and their Stability

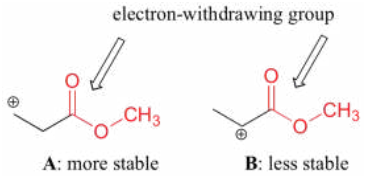
A **carbocation** is an ion with a positively-charged carbon atom. A carbocation is very electron-poor, and thus anything which donates electron density to the center of electron poverty will help to stabilize it. Conversely, a carbocation will be *destabilized* by an electron withdrawing group.



Alkyl groups are electron donating and carbocation-stabilizing because the electrons around the neighboring carbons are drawn towards the nearby positive charge, thus slightly reducing the electron poverty of the positively-charged carbon. What this means is that, in general, *more substituted carbocations are more stable*: a tert-butyl carbocation, for example, is more stable than an isopropyl carbocation. Primary carbocations are highly unstable and not often observed as reaction intermediates; methyl carbocations are even less stable.

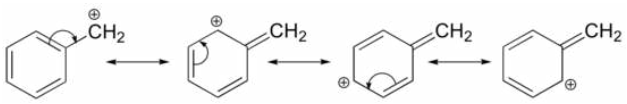


It is not accurate to say, however, that carbocations with higher substitution are *always* more stable than those with less substitution. Just as electron-donating groups can stabilize a carbocation, electron-withdrawing groups act to destabilize carbocations. Carbonyl groups are electron-withdrawing by inductive effects, due to the polarity of the C=O double bond. It is possible to demonstrate in the laboratory (see section 16.1D) that carbocation A below is more stable than carbocation B, even though A is a primary carbocation and B is secondary.



The difference in stability can be explained by considering the electron-withdrawing inductive effect of the ester carbonyl. Recall that inductive effects - whether electron-withdrawing or donating - are relayed through covalent bonds and that the strength of the effect decreases rapidly as the number of intermediary bonds increases. In other words, the effect decreases with distance. In species B the positive charge is closer to the carbonyl group, thus the destabilizing electron-withdrawing effect is stronger than it is in species A.

Stabilization of a carbocation can also occur through resonance effects, and as we have already discussed in the acid-base chapter, resonance effects as a rule are more powerful than inductive effects. Consider the simple case of a **benzylic** carbocation:

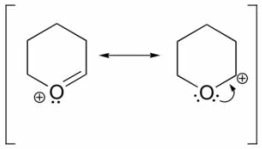


This carbocation is comparatively stable. In this case, electron donation is a resonance effect. Three additional resonance structures can be drawn for this carbocation in which the positive charge is located on one of three aromatic carbons. The positive charge is not isolated on the benzylic carbon, rather it is delocalized around the aromatic structure: this delocalization of charge results in significant stabilization. As a result, benzylic and **allylic** carbocations (where the positively charged carbon is conjugated to one or more non-aromatic double bonds) are significantly more stable than even tertiary alkyl carbocations.

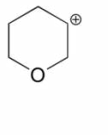


an allylic carbocation

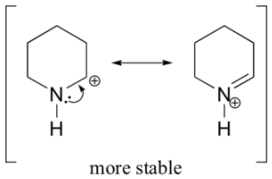
Because heteroatoms such as oxygen and nitrogen are more electronegative than carbon, you might expect that they would by definition be electron withdrawing groups that destabilize carbocations. In fact, the opposite is often true: if the oxygen or nitrogen atom is in the correct position, the overall effect is carbocation stabilization. This is due to the fact that although these heteroatoms are electron *withdrawing* groups by induction, they are electron *donating* groups by resonance, and it is this resonance effect which is more powerful. (We previously encountered this same idea when considering the relative acidity and basicity of phenols and aromatic amines in section 7.4). Consider the two pairs of carbocation species below:



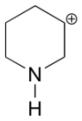
more stable



less stable
(no resonance delocalization)



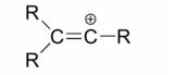
more stable



less stable
(no resonance delocalization)

In the more stable carbocations, the heteroatom acts as an electron donating group by resonance: in effect, the lone pair on the heteroatom is available to delocalize the positive charge. In the less stable carbocations the positively-charged carbon is more than one bond away from the heteroatom, and thus no resonance effects are possible. In fact, in these carbocation species the heteroatoms actually *destabilize* the positive charge, because they are electron withdrawing by induction.

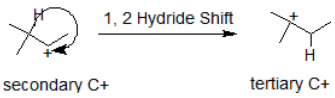
Finally, **vinylic** carbocations, in which the positive charge resides on a double-bonded carbon, are very unstable and thus unlikely to form as intermediates in any reaction.



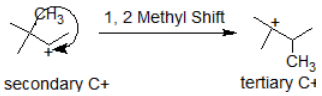
a vinylic carbocation
(very unstable)

Carbocation Rearrangements

Carbocations typically undergo rearrangement reactions from less stable structures to equally stable or more stable ones with rate constants in excess of 10^9/sec. This fact complicates synthetic pathways to many compounds, so it is important to look for carbocation rearrangements anytime they are formed. It is possible for either a neighboring hydrogen atom or methyl group to shift to the carbocation to create a more stable intermediate. In the 1,2-hydride shift shown below, the secondary carbocatin rearranges to a more stable tertiary carbocation. The numbers, 1,2- refer to the vicinal location of the rearrangement, not the nomenclature numbers.

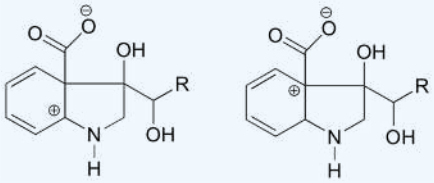


In this next example, the methyl group shifts to stabilize the carbocation.



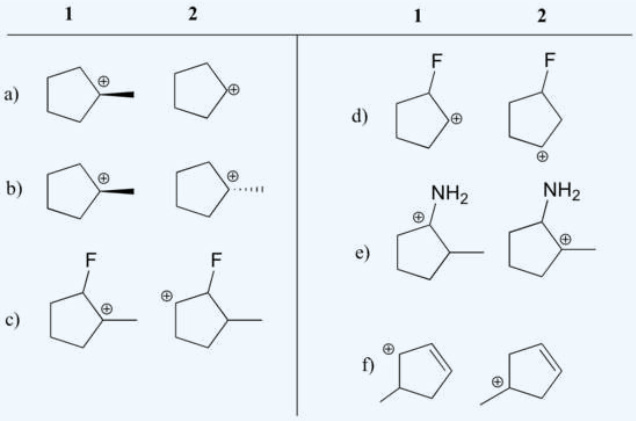
Exercise

1. In which of the structures below is the carbocation expected to be more stable? Explain.



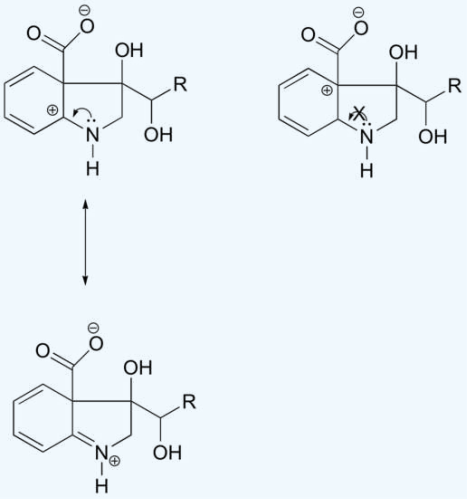
2. Draw a resonance structure of the crystal violet cation in which the positive charge is delocalized to one of the nitrogen atoms.

State which carbocation in each pair below is more stable, or if they are expected to be approximately equal. Explain your reasoning.

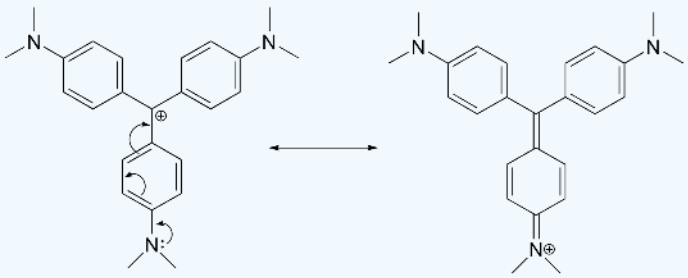


Answer

1. In the carbocation on the left, the positive charge is located in a position relative to the nitrogen such that the lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen can be donated to fill the empty orbital. This is not possible for the carbocation species on the right.



2.



3.

a) 1 (tertiary vs. secondary carbocation)

b) equal

c) 1 (tertiary vs. secondary carbocation)

d) 2 (positive charge is further from electron-withdrawing fluorine)

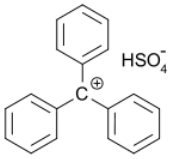
e) 1 (lone pair on nitrogen can donate electrons by resonance)

f) 1 (allylic carbocation – positive charge can be delocalized to a second carbon)

History

The history of carbocations dates back to 1891 when G. Merling[8] reported that he added bromine to tropylidene (cycloheptatriene) and then heated the product to obtain a crystalline, water-soluble material, C_7H_7Br. He did not suggest a structure for it; however, Doering and Knox[9] convincingly showed that it was tropylium (cycloheptatrienylium) bromide. This ion is predicted to be aromatic by Hückel's rule.

In 1902, Norris and Kehrman independently discovered that colorless triphenylmethanol gives deep-yellow solutions in concentrated sulfuric acid. Triphenylmethyl chloride similarly formed orange complexes with aluminium and tin chlorides. In 1902, Adolf von Baeyer recognized the salt-like character of the compounds formed.



He dubbed the relationship between color and salt formation halochromy, of which malachite green is a prime example.

Carbocations are reactive intermediates in many organic reactions. This idea, first proposed by Julius Stieglitz in 1899,[10] was further developed by Hans Meerwein in his 1922 study[11][12] of the Wagner-Meerwein rearrangement. Carbocations were also found to be involved in the S_N1 reaction, the \(E1\0 reaction, and in rearrangement reactions such as the Whitmore 1,2 shift. The chemical establishment was reluctant to accept the notion of a carbocation and for a long time the Journal of the American Chemical Society refused articles that mentioned them.

The first NMR spectrum of a stable carbocation in solution was published by Doering et al.[13] in 1958. It was the heptamethylbenzenium ion, made by treating hexamethylbenzene with methyl chloride and aluminium chloride. The stable 7-norbornadienyl cation was prepared by Story et al. in 1960[14] by reacting norbornadienyl chloride with silver tetrafluoroborate in sulfur dioxide at −80 °C. The NMR spectrum established that it was non-classically bridged (the first stable non-classical ion observed).

In 1962, Olah directly observed the tert-butyl carbocation by nuclear magnetic resonance as a stable species on dissolving tert-butyl fluoride in magic acid. The NMR of the norbornyl cation was first reported by Schleyer et al.[15] and it was shown to undergo proton-scrambling over a barrier by Saunders et al.[16]

References

1. Hansjörg Grützmacher, Christina M. Marchand (1997), "Heteroatom stabilized carbenium ions", Coordination Chemistry Reviews, volume 163, pages 287-344. doi:10.1016/S0010-8545(97)00043-X
2. Gold Book definition *carbonium ion* HTML
3. George A. Olah (1972), "Stable carbocations. CXVIII. General concept and structure of carbocations based on differentiation of trivalent (classical) carbenium ions from three-center bound penta- of tetracoordinated (nonclassical) carbonium ions. Role of carbocations in electrophilic reactions." Journal of the American Chemical Society, volume 94, issue 3, pages 808–820 doi:10.1021/ja00758a020
4. *Organic chemistry* 5th Ed. John McMurry ISBN 0-534-37617-7
5. *Organic Chemistry*, Fourth Edition Paula Yurkanis Bruice ISBN 0-13-140748-1
6. Clayden, Jonathan; Greeves, Nick; Warren, Stuart; Wothers, Peter (2001). *Organic Chemistry* (1st ed.). Oxford University Press. ISBN 978-0-19-850346-0.
7. *Organic Chemistry* by Marye Anne Fox and James K. Whitesell ISBN 0-7637-0413-X
8. Chem. Ber. 24, 3108 **1891**
9. The Cycloheptatrienylium (Tropylium) Ion W. Von E. Doering and L. H. Knox J. Am. Chem. Soc.; **1954**; 76(12) pp 3203 - 3206; doi:10.1021/ja01641a027
10. *On the Constitution of the Salts of Imido-Ethers and other Carbimide Derivatives;* Am. Chem. J. 21, 101; ISSN: 0096-4085
11. H. Meerwein and K. van Emster, *Berichte*, **1922**, *55*, 2500.
12. Rzepa, H. S.; Allan, C. S. M. (2010). "Racemization of Isobornyl Chloride via Carbocations: A Nonclassical Look at a Classic Mechanism". *Journal of Chemical Education* **87** (2): 221. Bibcode:2010JChEd..87..221R. doi:10.1021/ed800058c. edit
13. *The 1,1,2,3,4,5,6-heptamethylbenzenonium ion* W. von E. Doering and M. Saunders H. G. Boyton, H. W. Earhart, E. F. Wadley and W. R. Edwards G. Laber Tetrahedron Volume 4, Issues 1-2 , **1958**, Pages 178-185 doi:10.1016/0040-4020(58)88016-3
14. *The 7-norbornadienyl carbonium ion* Paul R. Story and Martin Saunders J. Am. Chem. Soc.; **1960**; 82(23) pp 6199 - 6199; doi:10.1021/ja01508a058
15. *Stable Carbonium Ions. X.1 Direct Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Observation of the 2-Norbornyl Cation* Paul von R. Schleyer, William E. Watts, Raymond C. Fort, Melvin B. Comisarow, and George A. Olah J. Am. Chem. Soc.; **1964**; 86(24) pp 5679 - 5680; doi:10.1021/ja01078a056
16. *Stable Carbonium Ions. XI.1 The Rate of Hydride Shifts in the 2-Norbornyl Cation* Martin Saunders, Paul von R. Schleyer, and George A. Olah J. Am. Chem. Soc.; **1964**; 86(24) pp 5680 - 5681; doi:10.1021/ja01078a057
17. George A. Olah - Nobel Lecture
18. *Nuclear magnetic double resonance studies of the dimethylcyclopropylcarbinyl cation. Measurement of the rotation barrier* David S. Kabakoff, , Eli. Namanworth J. Am. Chem. Soc. **1970**, 92 (10), pp 3234–3235 doi:10.1021/ja00713a080
19. *Stable Carbonium Ions. XVII.1a Cyclopropyl Carbonium Ions and Protonated Cyclopropyl Ketones* Charles U. Pittman Jr., George A. Olah J. Am. Chem. Soc., **1965**, 87 (22), pp 5123–5132 doi:10.1021/ja00950a026

20. F.A. Carey, R.J. Sundberg Advanced Organic Chemistry Part A 2nd Ed.

Contributors

- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

7.7: Reactive Intermediates - Carbocations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

8.1: Alkyl Halides - Structure and Physical Properties
8.2: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination
8.3: The Sn2 Reaction
8.4: Characteristics of the Sn2 Reaction
8.5: Stereochemistry of the SN2 Reaction
8.6: The Sn1 Reaction
8.7: Characteristics of the Sn1 Reaction
8.8: Rearrangements of the Carbocation and Sn1 Reactions
8.9: The Hammond Postulate and Transition States
8.10: Comparison of SN1 and SN2 Reactions
8.11: Biological Substitution Reactions

8: Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

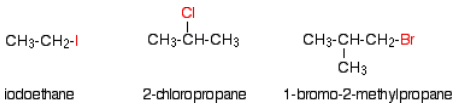
8.1: Alkyl Halides - Structure and Physical Properties

Learning Objective

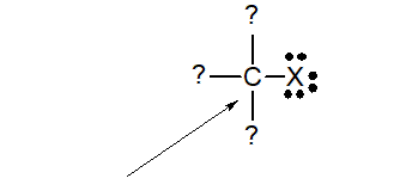
- classify alkyl halides
- predict relative boiling points and solubility of alkyl halides

Introduction

Alkyl halides are also known as haloalkanes. Alkyl halides are compounds in which one or more hydrogen atoms in an alkane have been replaced by halogen atoms (fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine). We will only look at compounds containing one halogen atom like th compounds below.



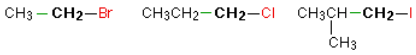
Alkyl halides fall into different classes depending on how the halogen atom is positioned on the chain of carbon atoms. Alkyl halides can be classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary. The chemical reactivity of alkyl halides is frequently discussed using alkyl halide classifications to help discern patterns and trends. Because the neutral bonding pattern for halogens is one bond and three lone pairs, the carbon and halogen always share a single bond. Alkyl halide classification is determined by the bonding pattern of the carbon atom bonded to the halogen as shown in the diagram below.



Alkyl halide classification is determined by the carbon bonded to the halogen.

Primary alkyl halides

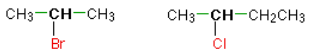
In a primary (1°) haloalkane, the carbon bonded to the halogen atom is only attached to one other alkyl group. Some examples of primary alkyl halides include thecompounds below.



Notice that it doesn't matter how complicated the attached alkyl group is. In each case there is only one linkage to an alkyl group from the CH_2 group holding the halogen. There is an exception to this: CH_3Br and the other methyl halides are often counted as primary alkyl halides even though there are **no** alkyl groups attached to the carbon with the halogen on it.

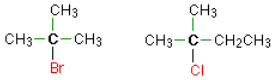
Secondary alkyl halides

In a secondary (2°) haloalkane, the carbon bonded with the halogen atom is joined directly to two other alkyl groups that can be the same or different. Some examples of secondary alkyl halides include thecompounds below.



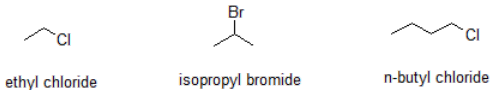
Tertiary alkyl halides

In a tertiary (3°) halogenoalkane, the carbon atom holding the halogen is attached directly to three alkyl groups, which may be any combination of same or different. Some examples of tertiary alkyl halides include thecompounds below.



Common Names

Many organic compounds are closely related to the alkanes and this similarity is incorporated into many common names. The reactions of alkanes with halogens produce halogenated hydrocarbons, compounds in which one or more hydrogen atoms of a hydrocarbon have been replaced by halogen atoms: The replacement of only one hydrogen atom gives an alkyl halide (or haloalkane). The *common names* of alkyl halides consist of two parts: the name of the alkyl group plus the stem of the name of the halogen, with the ending *-ide*.



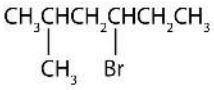
ethyl chloride | isopropyl bromide | n-butyl chloride

Examples

Give the common and IUPAC names for each compound.

1. $CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$
2. $(CH_3)_2CHCl$
3. Give the IUPAC name for each compound.

a) 

b) 

SolutionS

1. The alkyl group ($CH_3CH_2CH_2$–) is a propyl group, and the halogen is bromine (Br). The common name is therefore propyl bromide. For the IUPAC name, the prefix for bromine (bromo) is combined with the name for a three-carbon chain (propane), preceded by a number identifying the carbon atom to which the Br atom is attached, so the IUPAC name is 1-bromopropane.
2. The alkyl group [$(CH_3)_2CH$–] has three carbon atoms, with a chlorine (Cl) atom attached to the middle carbon atom. The alkyl group is therefore isopropyl, and the common name of the compound is isopropyl chloride. For the IUPAC name, the Cl atom (prefix *chloro-*) attached to the middle (second) carbon atom of a propane chain results in 2-chloropropane.
3. a) The parent alkane has five carbon atoms in the longest continuous chain; it is pentane. A bromo (Br) group is attached to the second carbon atom of the chain. The IUPAC name is 2-bromopentane.

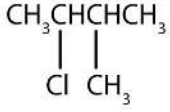
   b) The parent alkane is hexane. Methyl (CH_3) and bromo (Br) groups are attached to the second and fourth carbon atoms, respectively. Listing the substituents in alphabetical order gives the name 4-bromo-2-methylhexane.

Exercise

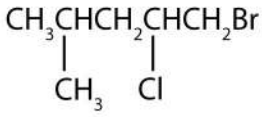
1. Give common and IUPAC names for each compound.

   a. CH_3CH_2I
   b. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2F$

2. Give the IUPAC name for each compound.

a) 

b)



Answer

1. a) ethyl iodide and iodoethane, respectively; Note the IUPAC name does not need a locator number because there is only one possible structure with two carbons and one iodine.

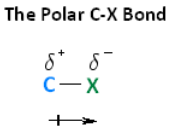
   b) butyl fluoride and 1-fluorobutane

2. a) 2-chloro-2-methylbutane

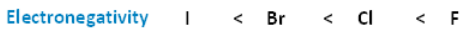
   b) 1-bromo-2-chloro-4-methylpentane

Halogens and the Character of the Carbon-Halogen Bond

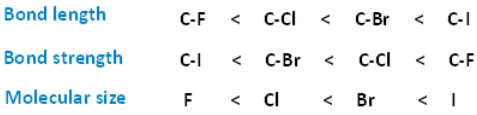
With respect to electronegativity, halogens are more electronegative than carbons. This results in a carbon-halogen bond that is polarized. As shown in the image below, carbon atom has a partial positive charge, while the halogen has a partial negative charge.



The following image shows the relationship between the halogens and electronegativity. Notice, as we move up the periodic table from iodine to fluorine, electronegativity increases.



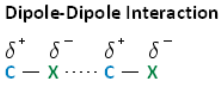
The following image shows the relationships between bond length, bond strength, and molecular size. As we progress down the periodic table from fluorine to iodine, molecular size increases. As a result, we also see an increase in bond length. Conversely, as molecular size increases and we get longer bonds, the strength of those bonds decreases.



Haloalkanes Have Higher Boiling Points than Alkanes

When comparing alkanes and haloalkanes, we will see that haloalkanes have higher boiling points than alkanes containing the same number of carbons. London dispersion forces are the first of two types of forces that contribute to this physical property. You might recall from general chemistry that London dispersion forces increase with molecular surface area. In comparing haloalkanes with alkanes, haloalkanes exhibit an increase in surface area due to the substitution of a halogen for hydrogen. The incease in surface area leads to an increase in London dispersion forces, which then results in a higher boiling point.

Dipole-dipole interaction is the second type of force that contributes to a higher boiling point. As you may recall, this type of interaction is a coulombic attraction between the partial positive and partial negative charges that exist between carbon-halogen bonds on separate haloalkane molecules. Similar to London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions establish a higher boiling point for haloalkanes in comparison to alkanes with the same number of carbons.



The table below illustrates how boiling points are affected by some of these properties. Notice that the boiling point increases when hydrogen is replaced by a halogen, a consequence of the increase in molecular size, as well as an increase in both London

dispersion forces and dipole-dipole attractions. The boiling point also increases as a result of increasing the size of the halogen, as well as increasing the size of the carbon chain.

Boiling Points of Haloalkanes (°C)						
R	X =	H	F	Cl	Br	I
CH_3		-161.7	-78.4	-24.2	3.6	42.4
CH_3CH_2		-88.6	-37.7	12.3	38.4	72.3
$CH_3(CH_2)_2$		-42.1	-2.5	46.6	71.0	102.5
$CH_3(CH_2)_3$		-0.5	32.5	78.4	101.6	130.5
$CH_3(CH_2)_4$		36.1	62.8	107.8	129.6	157.0
$CH_3(CH_2)_7$		125.7	142.0	182.0	200.3	225.5

Solubility

Solubility in water

Alkyl halides have little to no solubility in water in spite of the polar carbon-halogen bond. The attraction between the alkyl halide molecules is stronger than the attraction between the alkyl halide and water. Alkyl halides have little to no solubility in water, but be aware of densities. Polyhalogenated alkanes such as dichloromethane can have densities greater than water.

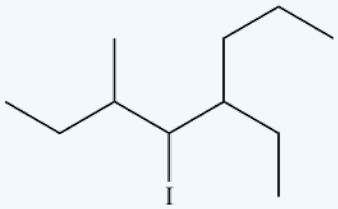
Solubility in organic solvents

Alkyl halides are soluble in most organic solvents. The London Dispersion forces play a dominant role in solubility.

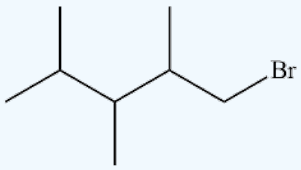
Exercises

Exercise

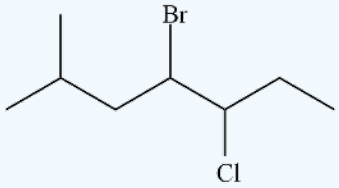
3. Classify (primary, secondary, tertiary, vicinal, or geminal) and give the IUPAC name for the following organohalides:



(A)



(B)



(C)

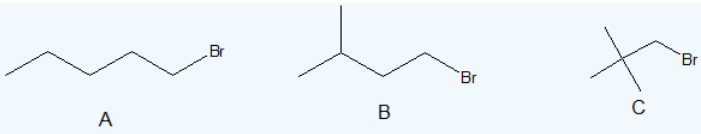
4. Classify (primary, secondary, tertiary, vicinal, or geminal) and draw the bond-line structures of the following compounds:

a) 2-Chloro-3,3-dimethylpentane

b) 1,1-Dichloro-4-isopropylcyclohexane

c) 3-bromo-3-ethylhexane

5. Arrange the following alkyl halides in order of decreasing boiling point.



6. Predict the solvent with great alkyl halide solubility.

a) water or hexane

b) water or 1-octanol

c) water or benzene

d) water or acetone

Solutions

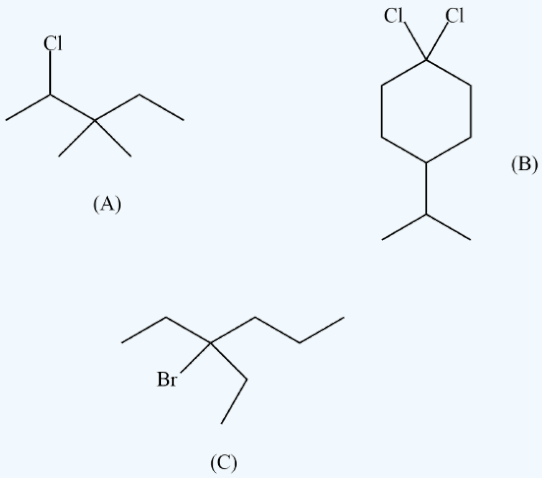
3.

a) secondary; 5-ethyl-4-iodo-3methyl-octane

b) primary; 1-bromo-2,3,4-trimethyl-pentane

c) vicinal dihalide; 4-bromo-5-chloro-2-methyl-heptane

4. (A) secondary; (B) geminal dichloride (C) tertiary



5. A > B > C

6.

a) hexane

b) benzene

c) 1-octanol

d) acetone

Alkyl halides have little to no solubility in water, but be aware of densities. Polyhalogenated alkanes can have densities greater than water.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

- Rachael Curtis (UC Davis)

8.1: Alkyl Halides - Structure and Physical Properties is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

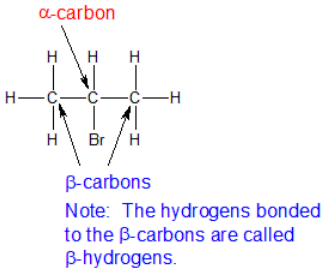
8.2: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination

Learning Objective

- apply the alpha and beta labels to alkyl halides for substitution and elimination reactions - refer to section 7.4

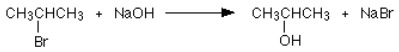
Alkyl Halide Structure and Reaction Language

The carbon bonded to a halide is called the alpha-carbon. The carbons bonded to the alpha-carbon are called beta-carbons. Carbon atoms further removed from the alpha carbon are named by continuing the Greek alphabet (alpha, beta, gamma, delta, etc). In discussing the reactions of alkyl halides, it can be effective to use the alpha- and beta- labels. The structure for 2-bromopropane is used below to illustrate the application of these terms.

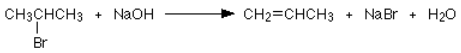


The Reactions - Nucleophilic Substitution and Elimination

Alkyl halides can undergo two major types of reactions - substitution and/or elimination. The substitution reaction is called a Nucleophilic Substitution reaction because the electrophilic alkyl halide forms a new bond with the nucleophile which substitutes for (replaces) the halogen at the alpha-carbon. Because carbon can only form four bonds, the halogen must leave and is called the "Leaving Group". Alkyl halides are excellent electrophiles because halogens share a polar bond with carbon, are polarizable, and form relatively stable leaving groups as halide anions. In the example below, 2-bromopropane is converted into propan-2-ol in a substitution reaction.



Allkyl halides can also undergo elimination reactions in the presence of strong bases. The elimination of a beta-hydrogen (hydrogen on a carbon vicinal to the alkyl halide carbon) and the halide produces a carbon-carbon double bond to form an alkene. In the example below, 2-bromopropane has undergone an elimination reaction to give an alkene - propene.

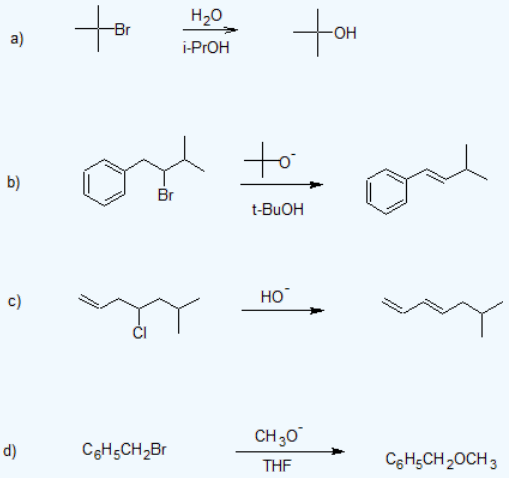


What decides whether you get substitution or elimination?

In the examples above, the reagents were the same for both substitution and elimination - the halogenoalkane and either sodium or potassium hydroxide solution. In all cases, you will get a mixture of both reactions happening - some substitution and some elimination. The product distribution depends on a number of factors. These factors will be explored in the remaining sections of this chapter. Depending on the structure of the alkyl halide, reagent type, reaction conditions, some reactions will only undergo only one pathway - substitution or elimination. While other alkyl halides will always produce a mixture of substitution and elimination products like the example above. The goal of efficient multiple-step synthetic pathways is to maximize the formation of a single product during each step. The reaction conditions explored in this chapter will be useful for future reactions we will study and learn.

Exercise

1. Classify the following reactions as "Substitutions" or "Eliminations".



Answer

1. a) substitution

   b) elimination

   c) elimination

   d) substitution

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

8.2: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

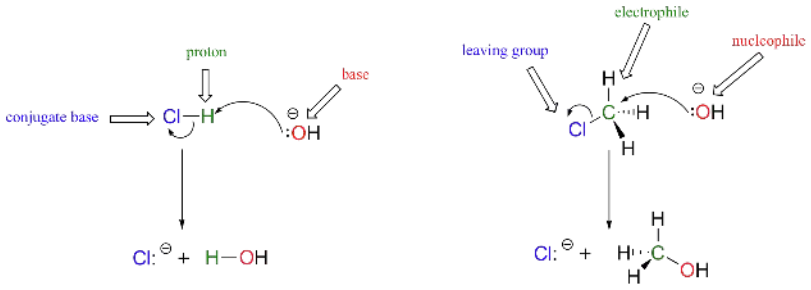
8.3: The Sn2 Reaction

Learning Objectives

- determine the rate law & predict the mechanism based on its rate equation or reaction data for S_N2 reactions
- propose mechanisms for S_N2 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for S_N2 reactions

Introduction

In many ways, the proton transfer process of a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction can be thought of as simply a special kind of nucleophilic substitution reaction, one in which the electrophile is a hydrogen rather than a carbon.



acid-base reaction **nucleophilic substitution**

In both reaction types, we are looking at very similar players: an electron-rich species (the nucleophile/base) reacts with an electron-poor species (the electrophile/proton), driving off the leaving group/conjugate base.

In the next few sections, we are going to be discussing some general aspects of nucleophilic substitution reactions, and in doing so it will simplify things greatly if we can use some abbreviations and generalizations before we dive into real examples.

What is a nucleophile (Nu)?

Instead of showing a specific nucleophile like hydroxide, we will simply refer to the nucleophilic reactant as 'Nu'. Nucleophilic functional groups are those which have electron-rich atoms able to donate a pair of electrons to form a new covalent bond. Nucleophiles can be negatively charged and some that are neutral with lone pair electrons. In both laboratory and biological organic chemistry, the most relevant nucleophilic atoms are oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur, and the most common nucleophilic functional groups are water, alcohols, phenols, amines, thiols, and occasionally carboxylates.

More specifically in laboratory reactions, halide and azide (N_3^-) anions are commonly seen acting as nucleophiles.

When thinking about nucleophiles, the first thing to recognize is that, for the most part, the same quality of 'electron-richness' that makes a something nucleophilic also makes it basic: *nucleophiles can be bases, and bases can be nucleophiles*. It should not be surprising, then, that most of the trends in basicity that we have already discussed also apply to nucleophilicity.

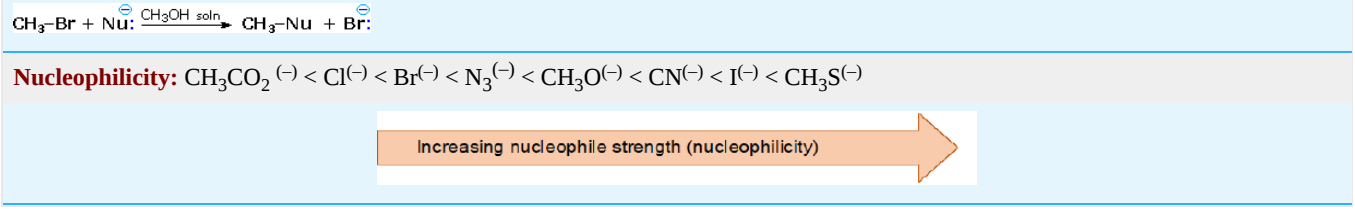
Some confusion in distinguishing basicity (base strength) and nucleophilicity (nucleophile strength) is inevitable. Since basicity is a less troublesome concept; it is convenient to start with it. Basicity refers to the ability of a base to accept a proton. Basicity may be related to the pKa of the corresponding conjugate acid, as shown below. The strongest bases have the weakest conjugate acids and vice versa. The range of basicities included in the following table is remarkable, covering over fifty powers of ten!

In an acid-base equilibrium the weakest acid and the weakest base will predominate (they will necessarily be on the same side of the equilibrium). Learning the pKa values for common compounds provides a useful foundation on which to build an understanding of acid-base factors in reaction mechanisms.

Base	$I^{(-)}$	$Cl^{(-)}$	H_2O	$CH_3CO_2^{(-)}$	$RS^{(-)}$	$CN^{(-)}$	$RO^{(-)}$	$NH_2^{(-)}$	$CH_3^{(-)}$
Conj. Acid	HI	HCl	$H_3O^{(+)}$	CH_3CO_2H	RSH	HCN	ROH	NH_3	CH_4
pKa	-9	-7	-1.7	4.8	8	9.1	16	33	48

Increasing base strength

Nucleophilicity is a more complex property. It commonly refers to the rate of substitution reactions at the halogen-bearing **carbon atom** of a reference alkyl halide, such as CH_3-Br. Thus the nucleophilicity of the $Nu:^{(-)}$ reactant in the following substitution reaction varies as shown in the chart below:



What is a Leaving Group (X or LG)?

In a similar fashion, we will call the leaving group 'X' for halogens as is customary. For other reactions, it will be more accurate to abbreviate the leaving group as "LG". The context of the reaction will dictate the abbreviation. Leaving groups are sometimes negatively charged, sometimes neutral, and sometimes positively charged. Therefore, in this general picture we will not include a charge designation on the 'X' or 'LG' species. In referring to the comparison between acid-base chemistry and substitution reactions, the stability of the leaving group is evaluated the same way we evaluate the stability of conjugate bases.

When comparing the reactivity of electrophiles that vary only in their leaving groups, then leaving group stability plays a dominant role. The electrophile with the more stable leaving group will be favored. The lower the electron density of the leaving group, the more stable it is. Neutral leaving groups are favoring over charged leaving groups. When comparing charged leaving groups, apply the concepts used to determine the relative stability of conjugate bases:

1) identity or identities of the atom(s) holding the charge

2) delocalization of the charge via resonance

3) inductive effects

4) orbital hybridization

What is an Electrophile (E)?

An electrophile accepts electrons analogous to a Lewis acid. Electrophiles (E) are sometimes protonated and sometimes neutral. Electrophiles can also be called "Substrates". Since nucleophiles, leaving groups, and electrons may be charged or neutral, we will not include charges on 'Nu' or 'X' (or 'LG') or 'E'.

We will generalize the three other groups bonded on the electrophilic alpha-carbon as R_1, R_2, and R_3: these symbols could represent hydrogens as well as alkyl groups. Finally, in order to keep figures from becoming too crowded, we will use in most cases the line structure convention in which the central, electrophilic carbon is not drawn out as a 'C'.

Here, then, is the generalized picture of a concerted (single-step) nucleophilic substitution reaction:



To recognize neutral electrophiles, we will need to identify polarity and/or resonance with compounds to create a partial positive charge to attract the nucleophile. The electrophilicity of alkyl halides comes from the polar carbon-halogen bond.

The common halogens being fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine. With the exception of iodine, these halogens have electronegativities significantly greater than carbon. Consequently, this functional group is polarized so that the carbon is electrophilic and the halogen is nucleophilic, as shown in the drawing on the right. Two characteristics other than electronegativity also have an important influence on the chemical behavior of these compounds. The first of these is covalent bond strength. The strongest of the carbon-halogen covalent bonds is that to fluorine. Remarkably, this is the strongest common single bond to carbon, being roughly 30 kcal/mole stronger than a carbon-carbon bond and about 15 kcal/mole stronger than a carbon-hydrogen bond. Because of this, **alkyl fluorides and fluorocarbons in general are chemically and thermodynamically quite stable**, and do not share any of the reactivity patterns shown by the other alkyl halides. The carbon-chlorine covalent bond is slightly weaker than a carbon-carbon bond, and the bonds to the other halogens are weaker still, the bond to iodine being about 33% weaker. The second factor to be considered is the relative stability of the corresponding halide anions, which is likely the form in which these electronegative atoms will be replaced. This stability may be estimated from the relative acidities of the H-X acids, assuming that the strongest acid releases the most stable conjugate base (halide anion). With the exception of HF (pK_a = 3.2), all the hydrohalic acids are very strong, small differences being in the direction HCl < HBr < HI.

Exercise

1. Since everything is relative in chemistry, one reaction's nucleophile can be another reaction's leaving group. Some functional groups can only react as a nuclephile or electrophile, while other functional groups can react as either a nuclephile or electrophile depending on the reaction conditions. Classify the following compounds as nucleophiles, electrophiles, or leaving groups. More than one answer may be possible.

a) bromoethane

b) hydroxide

c) water

d) chlorocyclohexane

e) ethanol

f) bromide

Answer

a) electrophile (Alkyl halides are always electrophiles - one reason they are an o-chem student's best friend.)

b) strong nucleophile

c) weak nucleophile and good leaving group

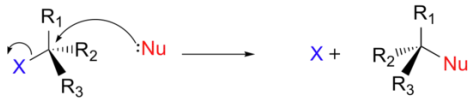
d) electrophile (Alkyl halides are always electrophiles - one reason they are an o-chem student's best friend.)

e) weak nucleophile, a poor electrophile without clever chemistry (stay tuned for future chapters), good leaving group

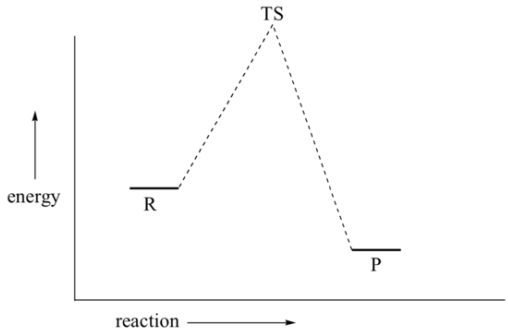
f) good nucleophile and a good leaving group

The S_N2 mechanism

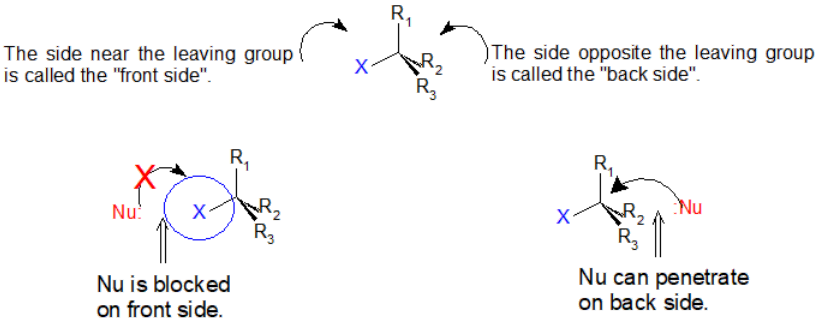
There are two mechanistic models for how an alkyl halide can undergo nucleophilic substitution, S_N2 and S_N1. The S_N2 reaction takes place in a single step with bond-forming and bond-breaking occurring simultaneously. (In all figures in this section, 'X' indicates a halogen substituent).



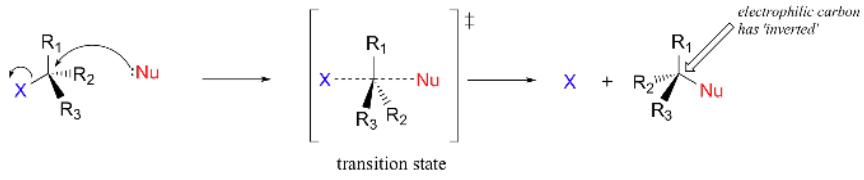
This is called an '**S_N2**' mechanism. In the term S_N2, S stands for 'substitution', the subscript N stands for 'nucleophilic', and the number 2 refers to the fact that it is a **bimolecular reaction**: the overall rate depends on a step in which two separate molecules (the nucleophile and the electrophile) collide. A potential energy diagram for this reaction shows the transition state (TS) as the highest point on the pathway from reactants to products.



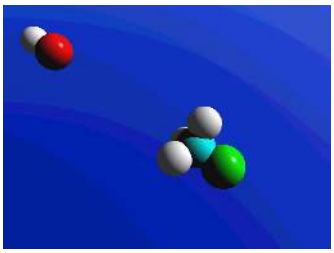
If you look carefully at the progress of the S_N2 reaction, you will realize something very important about the outcome. The nucleophile, being an electron-rich species, must react with the electrophilic carbon from the *back side* relative to the location of the leaving group. Approach from the front side simply doesn't work: the electron rich, leaving group blocks the way with electrostatic repulsion and steric hindrance.



The result of this backside penetration is that the stereochemical configuration at the central carbon *inverts* as the reaction proceeds. In a sense, the molecule is turned inside out. At the transition state, the electrophilic carbon and the three 'R' substituents all lie on the same plane.

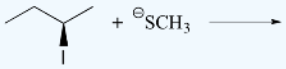


What this means is that S_N2 reactions whether enzyme catalyzed or not, are inherently stereoselective: when the substitution takes place at a stereocenter, we can confidently predict the stereochemical configuration of the product. Below is an animation illustrating the principles we have just learned, showing the S_N2 reaction between hydroxide ion and methyl iodide. Notice how backside attack by the hydroxide nucleophile results in inversion at the tetrahedral carbon electrophile.



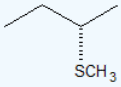
Exercise

2. Predict the structure of the product in this S_N2 reaction. Be sure to specify stereochemistry.



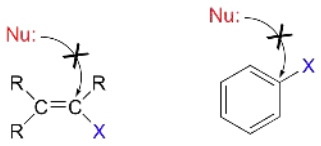
Solution

2.



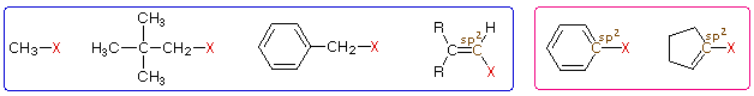
S_N2 Reactions Occur at sp^3 Carbons with a Leaving Group

One more important point must be made before continuing: nucleophilic substitutions as a rule occur at sp^3-hybridized carbons bonded to a leaving group. SN2 reactions can*not occur* where the leaving group is attached to an sp^2-hybridized carbon:



Bonds on sp^2-hybridized carbons are inherently shorter and stronger than bonds on sp^3-hybridized carbons, meaning that it is harder to break the C-X bond in these substrates. S_N2 reactions of this type are unlikely also because the (hypothetical) electrophilic carbon is protected from nucleophilic attack by electron density in the p bond. S_N1 reactions are highly unlikely, because the resulting carbocation intermediate, which would be sp-hybridized, would be very unstable (we'll discuss the relative stability of carbocation intermediates in a later section of this module).

For future reference when discerning between substitution and elimination reactions, evaluating the structure of the electrophile can eliminate possible products. **If the electrophilic carbon has no beta-hydrogens, then only substitution reactions can occur and elimination reactions are not possible** (of course carbocation rearrangements may need to be considered). The first four halides shown on the left below do not give elimination reactions on treatment with base, because they have no β-hydrogens. The two halides on the right do not normally undergo such reactions because the potential elimination products have highly strained double or triple bonds. It is also worth noting that sp^2 hybridized C–X compounds, such as the three on the right, do not normally undergo nucleophilic substitution reactions, unless other functional groups perturb the double bond(s).



no β-hydrogens

strained elimination product

Exercise

3. Predict which alkyl halides can undergo a S_N2 reaction.

a) C_6H_5Br

b) $CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$

c) CH_2CHBr

d) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CHBrCH_3$

Solutions

3.

a) No, aryl halide.

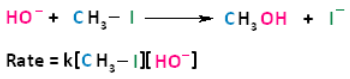
b) Yes, primary alkyl halide

c) No, vinyl halide

d) Yes, secondary alkyl halide

S_N2 Reaction Kinetics

In the term S_N2, the S stands for substitution, the N stands for nucleophilic, and the number two stands for bimolecular, meaning there are two molecules involved in the rate determining step. The rate of bimolecular nucleophilic substitution reactions depends on the concentration of both the haloalkane and the nucleophile. To understand how the rate depends on the concentrations of both the haloalkane and the nucleophile, let us look at the following example. The hydroxide ion is the nucleophile and methyl iodide is the haloalkane.



$$HO^- + CH_3-I \longrightarrow CH_3OH + I^-$$

$$\text{Rate} = k[CH_3-I][HO^-]$$

If we were to double the concentration of either the haloalkane or the nucleophile, we can see that the rate of the reaction would proceed twice as fast as the initial rate.

$$\text{Rate}_1 = k[CH_3-I][HO^-]$$
$$\text{Rate}_2 = 2k[CH_3-I][HO^-]$$
$$\text{Rate}_2 = 2\,\text{Rate}_1$$

If we were to double the concentration of both the haloalkane and the nucleophile, we can see that the rate of the reaction would proceed four times as fast as the initial rate.

$$\text{Rate}_1 = k[CH_3-I][HO^-]$$
$$\text{Rate}_2 = 4k[CH_3-I][HO^-]$$
$$\text{Rate}_2 = 4\,\text{Rate}_1$$

The bimolecular nucleophilic substitution reaction follows second-order kinetics; that is, the rate of the reaction depends on the concentration of two first-order reactants. In the case of bimolecular nucleophilic substitution, these two reactants are the haloalkane and the nucleophile. For further clarification on reaction kinetics, the following links may facilitate your understanding of rate laws, rate constants, and second-order kinetics

Exercise

4. The reaction below follows the SN2 mechanism.



$$CH_3Cl + NaOH \longrightarrow CH_3OH + NaCl$$

a) Write the rate law for this reaction.

b) Determine the value of the rate coefficient, k, if the initial concentrations are 0.01 M CH_3Cl, 0.01 M NaOH, and the initial reaction rate is 6×10^{-10} M/s.

c) Calculate the initial reaction rate if the initial reactant concentrations are changed to 0.02 M CH_3Cl and 0.0005 M NaOH.

Solutions

4.

a) rate = k $[CH_3Cl]$ $[OH^-]$

b) substitute the data into the rate expression above and apply algebra to solve for k

k = 6 x 10^{-6} $Lmol^{-1}s^{-1}$

c) Using the rate law above, substitute the value for k from the previous question along with the new concentrations to determine the new initial rate.

rate = 6 x 10^{-10} M/s

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

8.3: The S_N2 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.4: Characteristics of the S_n2 Reaction

Learning Objective

- determine the rate law & predict the mechanism based on its rate equation or reaction data for S_N2 reactions
- predict the products and specify the reagents for S_N2 reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for S_N2 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for S_N2 reactions

Introduction

To understand why some combinations of alkyl halides and nucleophiles give a substitution reaction, whereas other combinations give elimination, and still others give no observable reaction, we must investigate systematically the way in which changes in reaction variables perturb the course of the reaction. The following general equation summarizes the factors that will be important in such an investigation where X represents the leaving group (a halide for this chapter).



In order of decreasing importance, the factors impacting S_N2 reaction pathways are

1) structure of the alkyl halide

2) strength of the nucleophile

3) stability of the leaving group

4) type of solvent.

The bimolecular transition state of the S_N2 pathway means that sterics are a primary consideration. The orbitals of the nucleophile must be able to penetrate through the reaction solution and create orbital overlap with the orbitals of the electrophilic carbon. The sterics of this mechanism can be determined by applying the bonding theories for individual compounds and ions to the interaction of the nucleophile and electrophile. The strength of the nucleophile will also influence the reaction along with the stability of the leaving group. Solvents can have a subtle yet measurable effect on S_N2 pathway. *Solvation* may be defined as the interaction between molecules of solvent and particles of solute. The result of solvation is to stabilize (i.e., lower the energy of) the solute particles. Solvents with lone pairs of electrons are good at solvating cations. Protic (i.e., hydroxylic) solvents are able to solvate anions through hydrogen bonding. As water has two lone pairs of electrons and is also protic, it is good at solvating both anions and cations. The role of the solvent is often misunderstood and consequently given way too much importance. Do not drown in the solvent. Solvation effects are less significant than the structure of the alkyl halide, the reactivity of the nucleophile, and the stability of the leaving group.

The following variables and observables can be used to study the S_N2 mechanism.

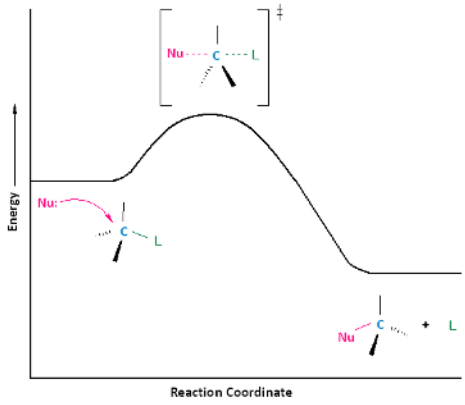
Variables	**R** change α-carbon from 1º to 2º to 3º if the α-carbon is a chiral center, set as (*R*) or (*S*) **X** change from Cl to Br to I (F is relatively unreactive) **Nu:** change from anion to neutral; change basicity; change polarizability **Solvent** polar vs. non-polar; protic vs. non-protic
Observables	**Products** substitution, elimination, no reaction. **Stereospecificity** if the α-carbon is a chiral center what happens to its configuration? **Reaction Rate** measure as a function of reactant concentration.

When several reaction variables may be changed, it is important to isolate the effects of each during the course of study. In other words: **only one variable should be changed at a time**, the others being held as constant as possible. For example, we can examine the effect of changing the halogen substituent from Cl to Br to I, using ethyl as a common R–group, cyanide anion as a common nucleophile, and ethanol as a common solvent. We would find a common substitution product, C_2H_5–CN, in all cases, but the speed or rate of the reaction would increase in the order: Cl < Br < I. This reactivity order reflects both the strength of the C–X bond, and the stability of $X^{(-)}$ as a leaving group, and leads to the general conclusion that alkyl iodides are the most reactive members of this functional class.

Bimolecular Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions Are Concerted

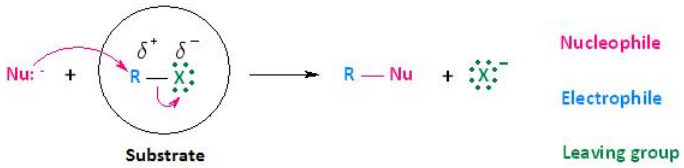
Bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (SN_2) reactions are **concerted**, meaning they are a **one step process**. The bond-making between the nucleophile and the electrophilic carbon occurs at the same time as the bond-breaking between the electophilic carbon and the halogen.

The potential energy diagram for an SN_2 reaction is shown below. The one-step mechanism means that only a single transition state is formed. A transition state, unlike a reaction intermediate, is a very short-lived species that cannot be isolated or directly observed.

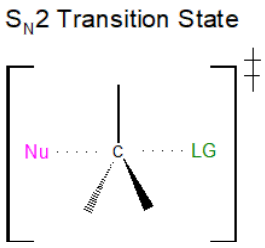


Alkyl halide (Substrate) Structure and SN2 Reaction Rates

Now that we have discussed the effects that the leaving group, nucleophile, and solvent have on biomolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2) reactions, it's time to turn our attention to how the substrate affects the reaction. Although the substrate, in the case of nucleophilic substitution of haloalkanes, is considered to be the entire molecule circled below, we will be paying particular attention to the alkyl portion of the substrate. In other words, we are most interested in the electrophilic center that bears the leaving group.

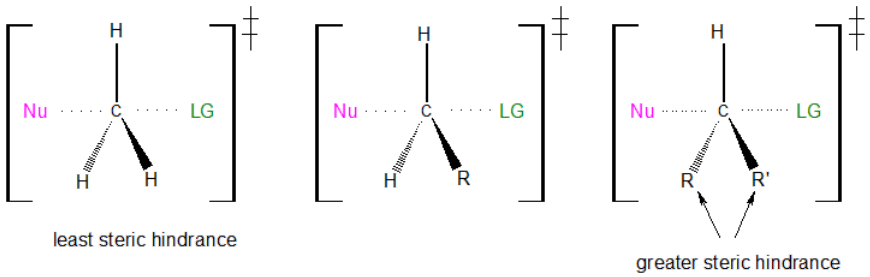


The S_N2 transition state is very crowded with a total of five groups around the electrophilic center, the nucleophile, the leaving group, and three substituents.



If each of the three substituents in this transition state were small hydrogen atoms, as illustrated in the first example below, there would be little steric repulsion between the incoming nucleophile and the electrophilic center, thereby increasing the ease at which the nucleophilic substitution reaction can occur. Remember, for the SN_2 reaction to occur, the nucleophile must be able to overlap orbitals with the electrophilic carbon center, resulting in the expulsion of the leaving group. If one of the hydrogens, however, were replaced with an R group, such as a methyl or ethyl group, there would be an increase in steric repulsion with the incoming nucleophile. If two of the hydrogens were replaced by R groups, there would be an even greater increase in steric repulsion with the incoming nucleophile.

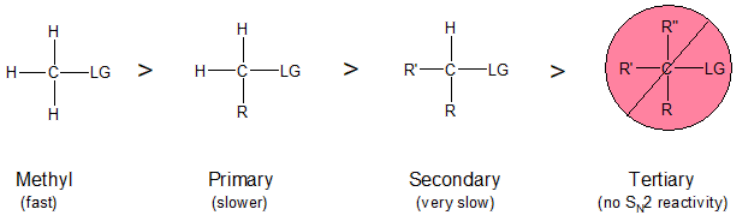
Alkyl Halide Structure and the S_N2 Transition State



How does steric hindrance affect the rate at which an SN_2 reaction will occur? As each hydrogen is replaced by an R group, the rate of reaction is significantly diminished. This is because the addition of one or two R groups shields the backside of the electrophilic carbon impeding nucleophilic penetration.

The diagram below illustrates this concept, showing that electrophilic carbons attached to three hydrogen atoms results in faster nucleophilic substitution reactions, in comparison to primary and secondary haloalkanes, which result in nucleophilic substitution reactions that occur at slower or much slower rates, respectively. Notice that a tertiary haloalkane, that which has three R groups attached, does not undergo nucleophilic substitution reactions at all. The addition of a third R group to this molecule creates a carbon that is entirely blocked.

Alkyl Halide Structure and S_N2 Relative Reactivity



Substitutes on Neighboring Carbons Slow Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

Previously we learned that adding R groups to the electrophilic carbon results in nucleophilic substitution reactions that occur at a slower rate. What if R groups are added to neighboring carbons? It turns out that the addition of substitutes on neighboring carbons will slow nucleophilic substitution reactions as well.

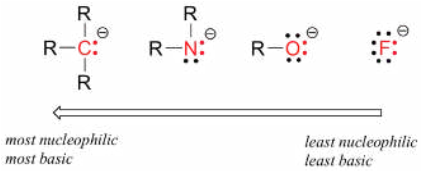
In the example below, 2-methyl-1-bromopropane differs from 1-bromopropane in that it has a methyl group attached to the carbon that neighbors the electrophilic carbon. The addition of this methyl group results in a significant decrease in the rate of a nucleophilic substitution reaction.



If R groups were added to carbons farther away from the electrophilic carbon, we would still see a decrease in the reaction rate. However, branching at carbons farther away from the electrophilic carbon would have a much smaller effect.

Nucleophilicity

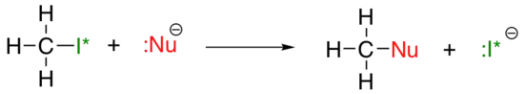
There are predictable periodic trends in nucleophilicity. Moving horizontally across the second row of the table, the trend in nucleophilicity parallels the trend in basicity:



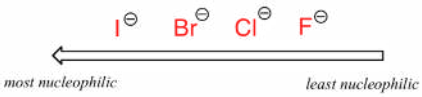
The reasoning behind the horizontal nucleophilicity trend is the same as the reasoning behind the basicity trend: more electronegative elements hold their electrons more tightly, and are less able to donate them to form a new bond. This horizontal trend also tells us that amines are more nucleophilic than alcohols, although both groups commonly act as nucleophiles in both laboratory and biochemical reactions.

Recall that the basicity of atoms decreases as we move vertically down a column on the periodic table: thiolate ions are less basic than alkoxide ions, for example, and bromide ion is less basic than chloride ion, which in turn is less basic than fluoride ion. Recall also that this trend can be explained by considering the increasing size of the 'electron cloud' around the larger ions: the electron density inherent in the negative charge is spread around a larger area, which tends to increase stability (and thus reduce basicity).

The vertical periodic trend for nucleophilicity is somewhat more complicated because the solvent can influence the nucleophilicity trend in either direction. Let's take the simple example of the S_N2 reaction below:



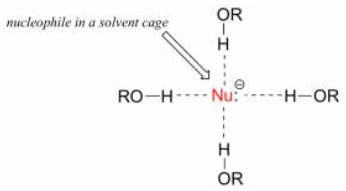
. . .where Nu^- is one of the halide ions: fluoride, chloride, bromide, or iodide, and the leaving group I* is a radioactive isotope of iodine (which allows us to distinguish the leaving group from the nucleophile when both are iodide). If this reaction is occurring in a **protic solvent** (that is, a solvent that has a hydrogen bonded to an oxygen or nitrogen - water, methanol and ethanol are the most important examples), then the reaction will go fastest when iodide is the nucleophile, and slowest when fluoride is the nucleophile, reflecting the relative strength of the nucleophile.



Relative nucleophilicity in a protic solvent

This of course, is opposite that of the vertical periodic trend for basicity, where iodide is the *least* basic. What is going on here? Shouldn't the stronger base, with its more reactive unbonded valence electrons, also be the stronger nucleophile?

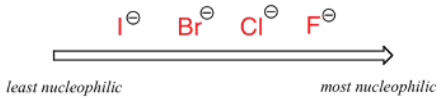
As mentioned above, it all has to do with the solvent. Remember, we are talking now about the reaction occurring in a *protic* solvent like ethanol. Protic solvent molecules form very strong ion-dipole interactions with the negatively-charged nucleophile, essentially creating a 'solvent cage' around the nucleophile:



In order for the nucleophile to react with the electrophile, it must break free, at least in part, from its solvent cage. The lone pair electrons on the larger, less basic iodide ion interact less tightly with the protons on the protic solvent molecules resulting in weaker

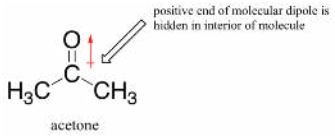
solvation - thus the iodide nucleophile is better able to break free from its solvent cage compared the smaller, more basic fluoride ion, whose lone pair electrons are bound more tightly to the protons of the solvent cage.

The picture changes if we switch to a **polar aprotic solvent**, such as acetone, in which there is a molecular dipole but *no hydrogens bound to oxygen or nitrogen*. Now, fluoride is the best nucleophile, and iodide the weakest.



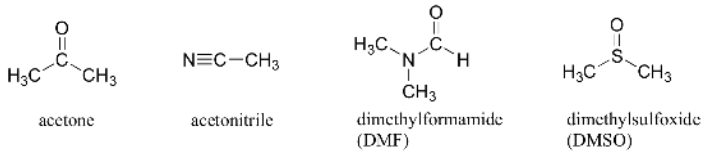
Relative nucleophilicity in a polar aprotic solvent

The reason for the reversal is that, with an aprotic solvent, the ion-dipole interactions between solvent and nucleophile are much weaker: the positive end of the solvent's dipole is hidden in the interior of the molecule, and thus it is shielded from the negative charge of the nucleophile.



A weaker solvent-nucleophile interaction means a weaker solvent cage for the nucleophile to break through, so the solvent effect is much less important, and the more basic fluoride ion is also the better nucleophile.

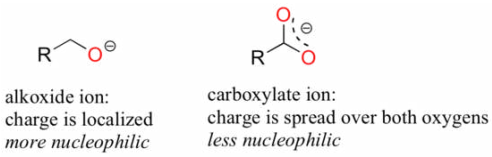
Why not use a completely nonpolar solvent, such as hexane, for this reaction, so that the solvent cage is eliminated completely? The answer to this is simple - the nucleophile needs to be in solution in order to react at an appreciable rate with the electrophile, and a solvent such as hexane will not solvate an a charged (or highly polar) nucleophile at all. That is why chemists use polar aprotic solvents for nucleophilic substitution reactions in the laboratory: they are polar enough to solvate the nucleophile, but not so polar as to lock it away in an impenetrable solvent cage. In addition to acetone, three other commonly used polar aprotic solvents are acetonitrile, dimethylformamide (DMF), and dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).



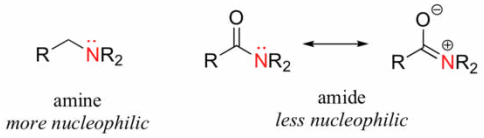
In biological chemistry, where the solvent is protic (water), the most important implication of the periodic trends in nucleophilicity is that thiols are more powerful nucleophiles than alcohols. The thiol group in a cysteine amino acid, for example, is a powerful nucleophile and often acts as a nucleophile in enzymatic reactions, and of course negatively-charged thiolates (RS^-) are even more nucleophilic. This is not to say that the hydroxyl groups on serine, threonine, and tyrosine do not also act as nucleophiles - they do.

Resonance effects on nucleophilicity

Resonance effects also come into play when comparing the inherent nucleophilicity of different molecules. The reasoning involved is the same as that which we used to understand resonance effects on basicity. If the electron lone pair on a heteroatom is delocalized by resonance, it is inherently less reactive - meaning less nucleophilic, and also less basic. An alkoxide ion, for example, is more nucleophilic and more basic than a carboxylate group, even though in both cases the nucleophilic atom is a negatively charged oxygen. In the alkoxide, the negative charge is localized on a single oxygen, while in the carboxylate the charge is delocalized over two oxygen atoms by resonance.



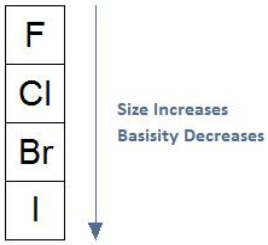
The nitrogen atom on an amide is less nucleophilic than the nitrogen of an amine, due to the resonance stabilization of the nitrogen lone pair provided by the amide carbonyl group.



The leaving group

The more stable the leaving group, the lower the transition state energy, the lower the activation energy, the faster the reaction rate. Evaluating leaving group stability is analogous to determining relative acidity by evaluating conjugate base stability. The considerations are the same: identity of the atom(s) and relative position on the periodic table, resonance delocalization, and electronegativity. Orbital hybridization is rarely relevant.

As Size Increases, Basicity Decreases, Leaving Group Stability Increases: In general, if we move from the top of the periodic table to the bottom of the periodic table as shown in the diagram below, the size of an atom will increase. As size increases, basicity will decrease, meaning a species will be less likely to act as a base; that is, the species will be less likely to share its electrons.



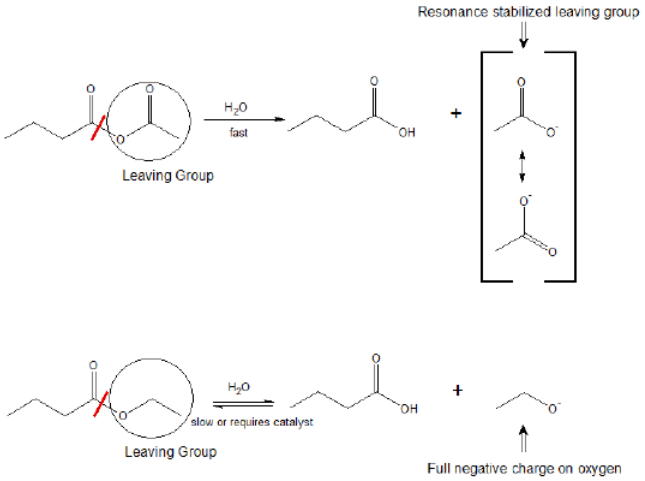
When evaluating halogens as leaving groups, the same trend is significant. Fluoride has the highest electron density and is considered the worst leaving group to the point of no reactivity. As move down the column, the leaving groups have lower electron density and greater stability with iodide considered an excellent leaving group.

Leaving Group Comparison

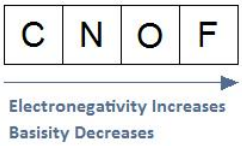
$F^- < Cl^- < Br^- < I^-$

worst fair good excellent

Resonance Decreases Basicity and Increases Leaving Group Stability: The formation of a resonance stabilized structure delocalizes the electrons over two or more atoms lowering the electron density of the leaving group and increases its stability. For halides as leaving groups there are no applications for this consideration, so we will look briefly at carbonyl chemistry to illustrate this effect. When comparing the hydrolysis rates of anhydrides and esters, anhydrides react spontaneously with water and undergo hydrolysis to form a resonance stabilized carboxylate ion. Whereas, ester hydrolysis is a much slower reaction and requires a catalyst to overcome the alkoxides as poor leaving groups. The details of these two reactions will be studied in greater detail later in this text.

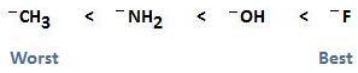


As Electronegativity Increases, Basicity Decreases and Leaving Group Stability Increases: In general, if we move from the left of the periodic table to the right of the periodic table as shown in the diagram below, electronegativity increases. As electronegativity increases, basicity will decrease, meaning a species will be less likely to act as base; that is, the species will be less likely to share its electrons.



The following diagram illustrates this concept, showing $^{-}CH_3$ to be the worst leaving group and F^- to be the best leaving group. This particular example should only be used to facilitate your understanding of this concept. In real reaction mechanisms, these groups are not good leaving groups at all. For example, fluoride is such a poor leaving group that S_N2 reactions of fluoroalkanes are rarely observed.

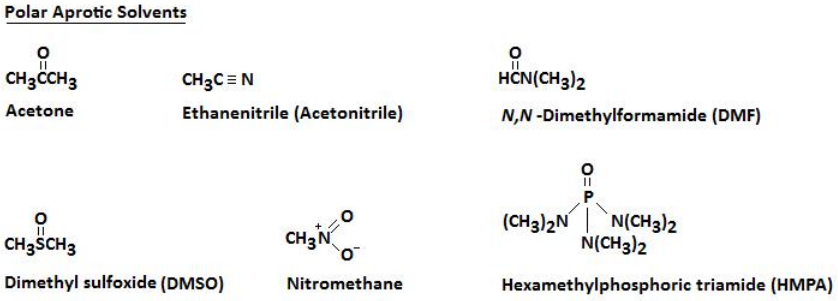
Leaving Groups Across a Period



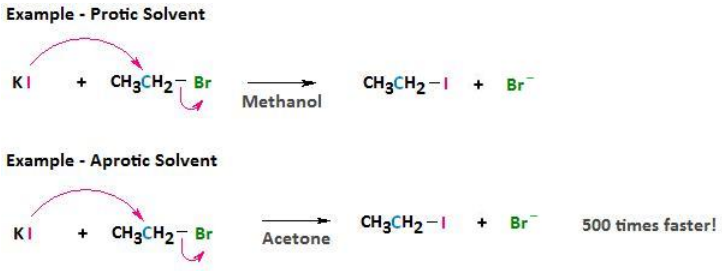
Solvent Effects on an S_N2 reaction

The rate of an S_N2 reaction is significantly influenced by the solvent in which the reaction takes place. The use of **protic solvents** (those, such as water or alcohols, with hydrogen-bond donating capability) decreases the power of the nucleophile through strong solvation. WE can view the nucleophile as being locked in a solvent cage through the strong hydrogen-bond interactions between solvent protons and the reactive lone pairs on the nucleophile. A less powerful nucleophile in turn means a slower S_N2 reaction.

S_N2 reactions are faster in **polar, aprotic solvents:** those that lack hydrogen-bond donating capability. Below are several polar aprotic solvents that are commonly used in the laboratory:

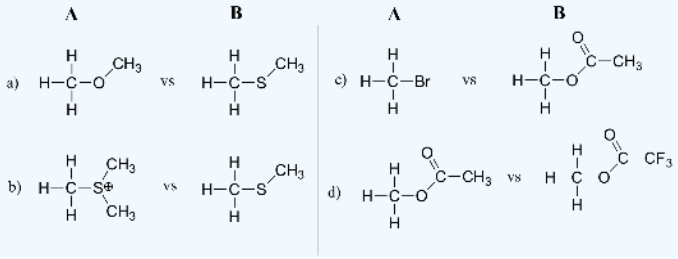


These aprotic solvents are polar but, because they do not form hydrogen bonds with the anionic nucleophile, there is a relatively weak interaction between the aprotic solvent and the nucleophile. By using an aprotic solvent we can raise the reactivity of the nucleophile. This can sometimes have dramatic effects on the rate at which a nucleophilic substitution reaction can occur. For example, if we consider the reaction between bromoethane and potassium iodide, the reaction occurs 500 times faster in acetone than in methanol.



Example

In each pair (A and B) below, which electrophile would be expected to react more rapidly in an S_N2 reaction with the thiol group of cysteine as the common nucleophile?



Explanations to explain differences in chemical reactivity need to discuss structural and/or electrostatic differences between the reactants

a) Cpd B b/c it has a more stable leaving group.

The larger atomic size of S relative to O means the sulfide (CH_3S^-) will have a lower electron density than the alkoxide (CH_3O-).

b) Cpd A b/c it has a more stable leaving group.

The neutral leaving group, $(CH_3)_2S$, is more stable than the charged sulfie leaving group (CH_3S^-).

c) Cpd B b/c the leaving group is resonance stabilized delocalizing the negative charge over two oxygen atoms. d) Cpd B b/c the leaving group has inductive electron withdrawal stabilization from the three fluorine atoms in addition to the resonance stabilzation.

Exercise

1. What product(s) do you expect from the reaction of 1-bromopentane with each of the following reagents in an S_N2 reaction?

a) KI

b) NaOH

c) $CH_3C{\equiv}C$-Li

d) NH_3

2. Which in the following pairs is a better nuceophile?

a) $(CH_3CH_2)_2N^-$ or $(CH_3CH_2)_2NH$

b) $(CH_3CH_2)_3N$ or $(CH_3CH_2)_3B$

c) H_2O or H_2S

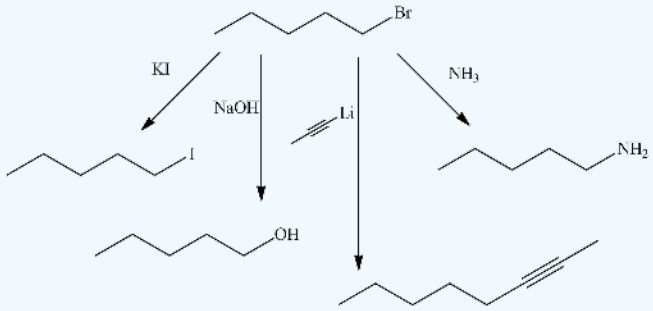
3. Order the following in increasing reactivity for an S_N2 reaction.

CH_3CH_2Br CH_3CH_2OTos $(CH_3CH_2)_3CCl$ $(CH_3CH_2)_2CHCl$

4. Solvents benzene, ether, chloroform are non-polar and not strongly polar solvents. What effects do these solvents have on an S_N2 reaction?

Answer

1. (a) - (d)



2.

a) $(CH_3CH_2)_2N^-$ as there is a charge present on the nitrogen.

b) $(CH_3CH_2)_3N$ because a lone pair of electrons is present.

c) H_2O as oxygen is more electronegative.

3.

$$(CH_3CH_2)_3CCl \text{ -or- } (CH_3CH_2)_2CHCl \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2Br \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2OTos$$

4. They will decrease the reactivity of the reaction.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

8.4: Characteristics of the Sn2 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.5: Stereochemistry of the SN2 Reaction

Learning Objective

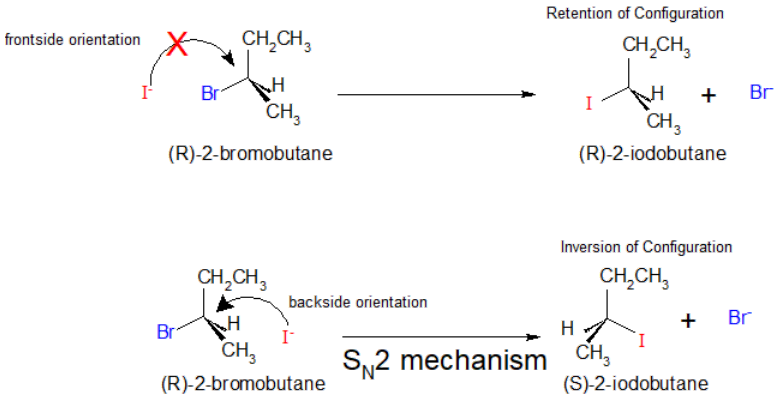
- predict the products and specify the reagents for $S_N2$reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for S_N2 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for $S_N2$reactions

S_N2 Reactions Are Stereospecific

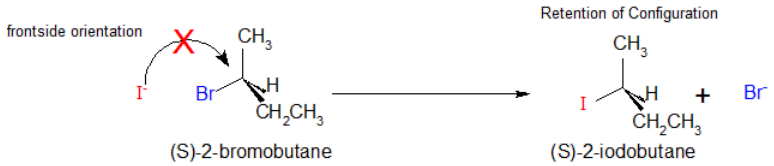
The S_N2 reaction is stereospecific like other concerted reactions.. A stereospecific reaction is one in which different stereoisomers react to give different stereoisomers of the product. The nuclephile and electrophile must be correctly oriented for orbital overlap to occur and trigger chemical reactivity. Experimental observations show that all S_N2 reactions proceed with inversion of configuration; that is, the nucleophile will always penetrate from the backside in S_N2 reactions. To think about why this might be true, remember that the nucleophile has a lone pair of electrons to be shared with the electrophilic carbon center and the leaving group is going to take a lone pair of electrons with it upon leaving. Because like charges repel each other, the nucleophile will always proceed by a backside displacement mechanism.

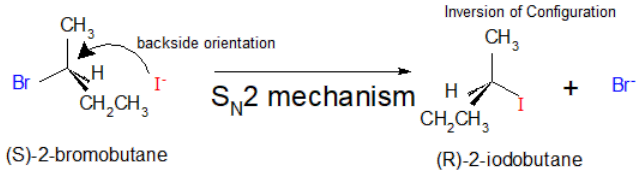
- **Frontside Orientation:** In a frontside orientation, the nucleophile approaches the electrophilic center on the same side as the leaving group. With frontside orientation, the stereochemistry of the product remains the same; that is, we have retention of configuration.
- **Backside Orientation:** In a backside orientation, the nucleophile approachss the electrophilic center on the side that is opposite to the leaving group. With backside orientation, the stereochemistry of the product does not stay the same. There is inversion of configuration.

For example, if the substrate is an R enantiomer, a frontside nucleophilic orientation results in retention of configuration, and the formation of the R enantiomer. A backside nucleophilic orientation results in inversion of configuration, and the formation of the S enantiomer.



Conversely, if the substrate is an S enantiomer, a frontside nucleophilic orientation results in retention of configuration, and the formation of the S enantiomer. A backside nucleophilic orientation results in inversion of configuration, and the formation of the R enantiomer.





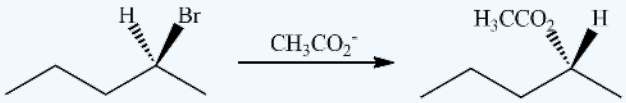
Empirically, S_N2 reactions that begin with the R enantiomer as the substrate will form the S enantiomer as the product. Those that begin with the S enantiomer as the substrate will form the R enantiomer as the product. This concept of retention and inversion of configuration can also be applied to substrates that can exist as geometric isomers (*cis* and *trans)*. If the *cis* configuration is the substrate, the resulting product will be *trans*. Conversely, if the *trans* configuration is the substrate, the resulting product will be *cis*.

Exercise

1. Predict the product of a nucleophilic substitution of (S)-2-bromopentane reacting with $CH_3CO_2^-$, Show stereochemistry.

Answer

1.



Contributors and Attributions

- Racheal Curtis (UCD)

8.5: Stereochemistry of the SN2 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.6: The Sn1 Reaction

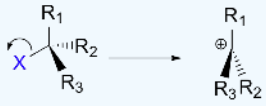
Learning Objective

- determine the rate law & predict the mechanism based on its rate equation or reaction data for S_N1 reactions
- predict the products and specify the reagents for S_N1 reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for S_N1 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for S_N1 reactions

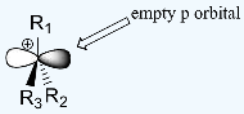
The SN1 mechanism with Stereochemistry

A second model for a nucleophilic substitution reaction is called the '**dissociative**' or '**S_N1**' mechanism. In many cases, the nucleophile is the solvent, so this mechanism can also be called "solvolysis".

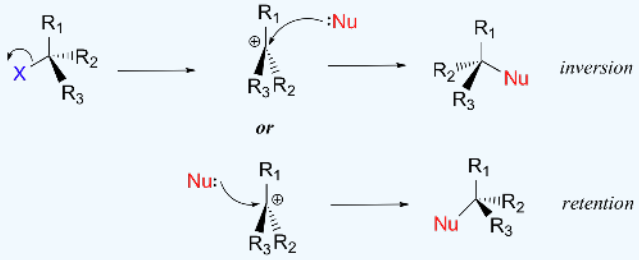
Step1: In the S_N1 mechanism, the carbocation forms when the C-X bond breaks *first*, before the nucleophile approaches



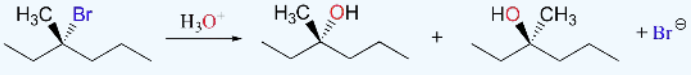
Th carbocation has a central carbon with only three bonds and bears a formal charge of +1. Recall that a carbocation should be pictured as sp^2 hybridized, with trigonal planar geometry. Perpendicular to the plane formed by the three sp^2 hybrid orbitals is an empty, unhybridized *p* orbital.



Step 2: The nucleophile reacts with the empty, 'electron hungry' *p* orbital of the carbocation to form a new bond and return the carbon to tetrahedral geometry. Because of this trigonal planar geometry, the nucleophile can approach the carbocation from either lobe of the empty p orbital (aka either side of the carbocation). This means that about half the time the product has the same stereochemical configuration as the starting material (retention of configuration), and about half the time the stereochemistry has been inverted. In other words, *racemization* of the product occurs during SN1 reactions if the electrophilic carbon is chiral. If the intermediate from a chiral alkyl halide survives long enough to encounter a random environment, the products are expected to be racemic (a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers). On the other hand, if the departing halide anion temporarily blocks the front side, or if a nucleophile is oriented selectively at one or the other face, then the substitution might occur with predominant inversion or even retention of configuration.



As an example, the tertiary alkyl bromide below, (S)-3-bromo-3-methylhexane, would be expected to form a racemic mix of *R*- and *S*-3-methyl-3-hexanol after an S_N1 reaction with water as the nucleophile.

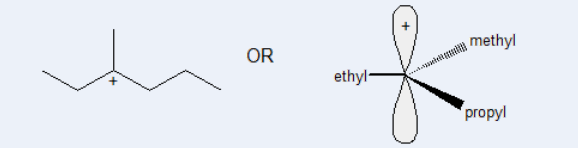


Exercise

1. Draw the structure of the intermediate in the two-step nucleophilic substitution reaction (S_N1) above.

Solution

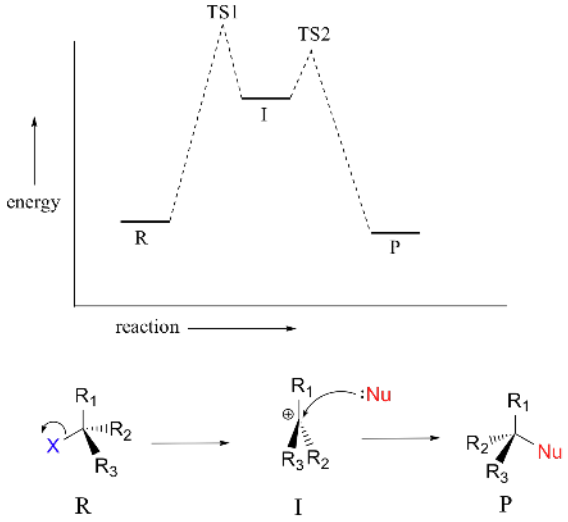
1.



When interpretting bond-line structures, it is useful to visualize the electronic structure with an unhibridized, empty p orbital extending perpendicaular to the alkyl groups.

The S_N1 Reaction Energy Diagram

The S_N1 reaction is an example of a two-step reaction with a reaction intermediate. Evaluating reactive intermediates is a very important skill in the study of organic reaction mechanisms. Many important organic reactions do not occur in a single step; rather, they are the sum of two or more discreet bond-forming / bond-breaking steps, and involve transient intermediate species that go on to react very quickly. In the S_N1 reaction, the carbocation species is a reaction intermediate. A potential energy diagram for an S_N1 reaction shows that the carbocation intermediate can be visualized as a kind of valley in the path of the reaction, higher in energy than both the reactant and product but lower in energy than the two transition states.

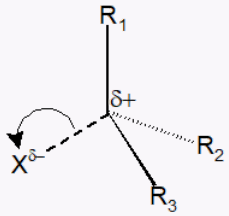


Exercise

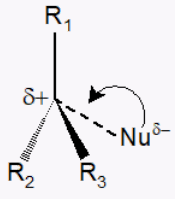
2. Draw structures representing transition state 1 (TS1) and transition state 2 (TS2) in the reaction above. Use the solid/dash wedge convention to show three dimensions.

Solution

2.



TS1 (transition state 1)



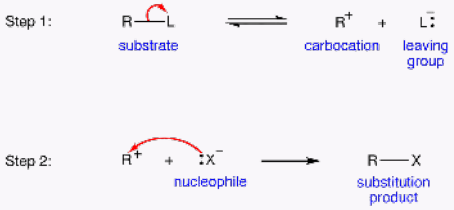
TS2 (transition state 2)

S_N1 Reaction Kinetics

In the first step of an S_N1 mechanism, two charged species are formed from a neutral molecule. This step is much the slower of the two steps, and is therefore rate-determining. In the reaction energy diagram, the activation energy for the first step is higher than that for the second step indicating that the S_N1 reaction has *first order* kinetics because the rate determining step involves one molecule splitting apart, not two molecules colliding. It is important to remember that first order refers to the rate law expression where the generic term substrate is used to describe the alkyl halide.

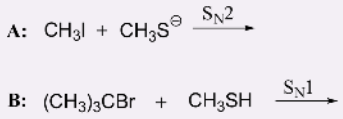
$$\text{rate} = k\,[\text{substrate}]$$

Because an S_N1 reaction is first order overall the concentration of the nucleophile does not affect the rate. The implication is that the nucleophile does not participate in the rate limiting step or any prior steps, which suggests that the first step is the rate limiting step. Since the nucleophile is not involved in the rate-limiting first step, the nature of the nucleophile does not affect the rate of an S_N1 reaction.

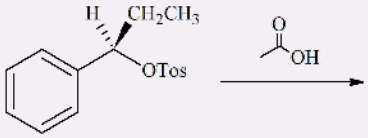


Exercise

3. Consider two nucleophilic substitutions that occur uncatalyzed in solution. Assume that reaction A is S_N2, and reaction B is S_N1. Predict, in each case, what would happen to the rate of the reaction if the concentration of the nucleophile were doubled, while all other conditions remained constant.



4. Give the products of the following S_N1 reaction. Show stereochemistry.

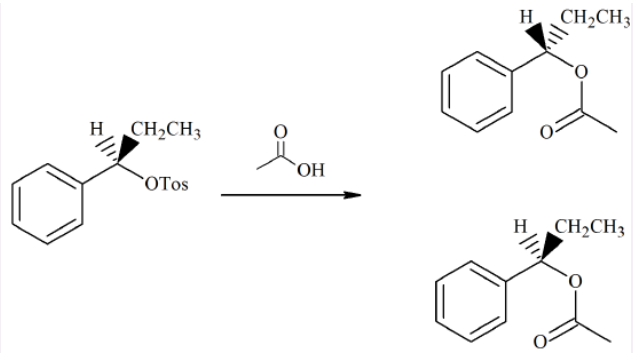


Solution

3. For Reaction A, the rate law is rate = k[CH_3I][CH_3S^-]. Therefore, if the concentration of the nucleophile, CH_3S^-, is doubled and the concentration of the alkyl halide remains the same, then the reaction rate will double.

For Reaction B, the rate law is rate = k[$(CH_3)_3Br$]. Therefore, if the concentration of the nucleophile, CH_3SH, is doubled and the concentration of the alkyl halide remains the same, then reaction rate stays the same.

4.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

8.6: The S_N1 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.7: Characteristics of the Sn1 Reaction

Learning Objective

- determine the rate law & predict the mechanism based on its rate equation or reaction data for S_N1 reactions
- predict the products and specify the reagents for S_N1 reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for S_N1 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for S_N1 reactions

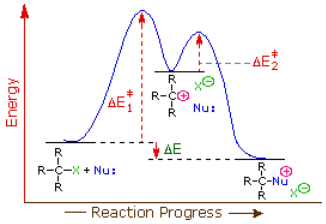
In order of decreasing importance, the factors impacting S_N1 reaction pathways are

1. structure of the alkyl halide
2. stability of the leaving group
3. type of solvent.

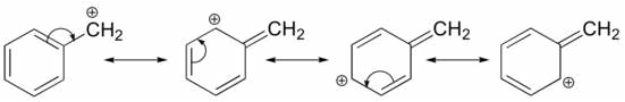
The unimolecular transition state of the S_N1 pathway means that structure of the alkyl halide and stability of the leaving group are the primary considerations. Alkyl halides that can ionize to form stable carbocations are more reactive via the S_N1 mechanism. Because carbocation stability is the primary energetic consideration, stabilization of the carbocation via solvation is also an important consideration.

Alkyl Halide Structure and Carbocation Stability

The first order kinetics of S_N1 reactions suggest a two-step mechanism in which the rate-determining step consists of carbocation formation from the ionization of the alkyl halide as shown in the diagram below. In this mechanism, the carbocation is a high-energy intermediate the bonds immediately to nearby nucleophiles. The only reactant that is undergoing change in the first (rate-determining) step is the alkyl halide, so we expect such reactions would be unimolecular and follow a first-order rate equation. Hence the name **S_N1** is applied to this mechanism.



The Hammond postulate suggests that the activation energy of the rate-determining first step will be inversely proportional to the stability of the carbocation intermediate: the more stable the carbocation, the lower the activation energy, the faster the reactivity. Therefore, carbocation stability is a primary consideration in S_N1 reactions. Carbocations can be stabilized by delocalizing the charge via resonance and through inductive electron donation of alkyl groups. Carbocations can also stabilize by rearrangement via 1,2-hydride or 1,2-methyl shifts. Carbocation rearrangements are explained in a subsequent section of this chapter.

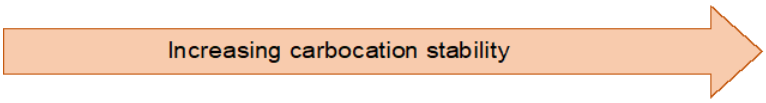


Benzyl Carbocation



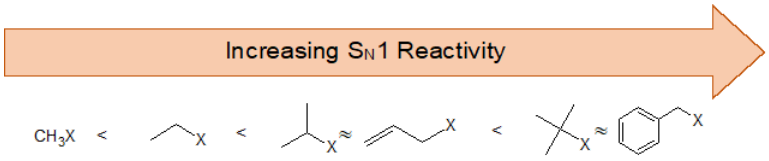
an allylic carbocation

The relative stability of carbocations is summarized below.



Carbocation Stability	$CH_3^{(+)}$	<	$CH_3CH_2^{(+)}$	<	$(CH_3)_2CH^{(+)}$	≈	$CH_2{=}CH{-}CH_2^{(+)}$	<	$C_6H_5CH_2^{(+)}$	≈	$(CH_3)_3C^{(+)}$

Consequently, we expect that 3º-alkyl halides will be more reactive than their 2º and 1º-counterparts in reactions that follow an S_N1 mechanism. This is opposite to the reactivity order observed for the S_N2 mechanism. Allylic and benzylic halides are exceptionally reactive by either mechanism. This trend is summarized in the diagram below.



Effects of Leaving Group



An S_N1 reaction speeds up with a good leaving group. This is because the leaving group is involved in the rate-determining step. A good leaving group wants to leave so it breaks the C-Leaving Group bond faster. Once the bond breaks, the carbocation is formed and the faster the carbocation is formed, the faster the nucleophile can come in and the faster the reaction will be completed.

A good leaving group is a weak base because weak bases can hold the charge. They're happy to leave with both electrons and in order for the leaving group to leave, it needs to be able to accept electrons. Strong bases, on the other hand, donate electrons which is why they can't be good leaving groups. As you go from left to right on the periodic table, electron donating ability decreases and thus ability to be a good leaving group increases. Halides are an example of a good leaving group whos leaving-group ability increases as you go down the column.



The two reactions below is the same reaction done with two different leaving groups. One is significantly faster than the other. This is because the better leaving group leaves faster and thus the reaction can proceed faster.

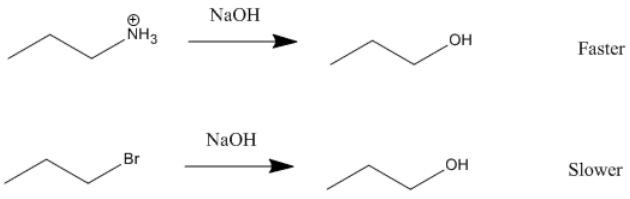


Figure below)

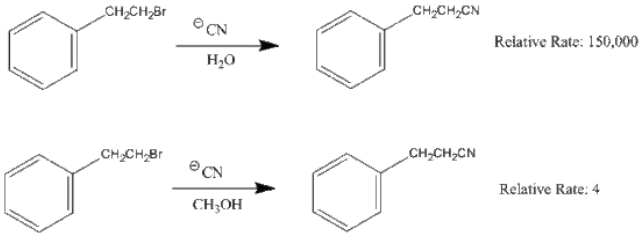


Methyl Sulfate Ion Mesylate Ion Triflate Ion Tosylate Ion

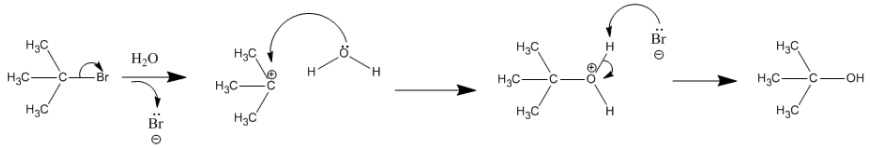
$CH_3SO_4^{2-}$ $CH_3SO_3^{2-}$ $CF_3SO_3^{2-}$ $CH_3C_6H_4SO_3^{2-}$

Solvent Effects on the S_N1 Reaction

To facilitate the charge separation of the ionization reaction in the first step, a good ionizing solvent is needed. Two solvent characteristics will be particularly important - the polarity and the solvating power. The **dielectric constant, ε,** measures polarity of solvent molecules and their ability to orient themselves between ions to attenuate (reduce) the electrostatic force one ion exerts on the other. The higher the dielectric constant the more polar the substance and in the case of SN1 reactions, the faster the rate. A dielectric constant below 15 is usually considered non-polar. Solvents having high dielectric constants, such as water (ε=81), formic acid (ε=58), dimethyl sulfoxide (ε=45) & acetonitrile (ε=39) are generally considered better ionizing solvents than are some common organic solvents such as ethanol (ε=25), acetone (ε=21), methylene chloride (ε=9) & ether (ε=4). Below is the same reaction conducted in two different solvents. The relative reaction rate in water (ε=81) is 150,000 times faster than in methanol (ε=33).



Solvation refers to the solvent's ability to stabilize ions by encasing them in a sheath of weakly bonded solvent molecules. Anions are solvated by partial positive charges of hydrogen-bonding solvents. Cations are often best solvated by the nucleophilic sites on a solvent molecule (e.g. oxygen & nitrogen atoms). The interaction of the carbocations with these nucleophilic solvents may be strong enough to form covalent bonds to carbon, thus converting the intermediate to a substitution product and creating the reaction name "solvolysis". When solvolysis occurs with water, the actions are called "hydrolysis reactions" as shown in the reaction below.



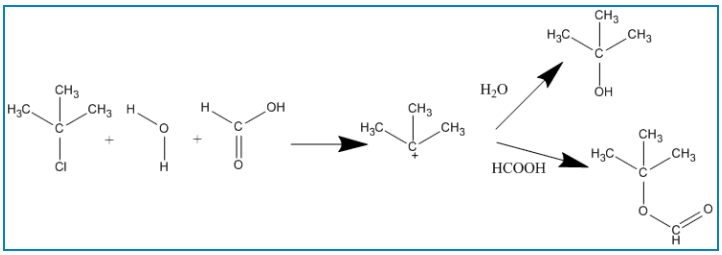
Polar Protic and Polar Aprotic Solvents

Protic solvents contain polarized hydrogen. Whereas, aprotic solvents do NOT contain polarized hydrogen. For S_N2 reactions, solvation of the nucleophile by polar protic solvents slows the reaction rate. However, in S_N1 reaction the nucleophile is not a part of the rate-determining step so this concern is not relevant. In fact, polar protic solvents actually speed up the rate of S_N1 reactions because the polar solvent helps stabilize the transition state and carbocation intermediate. Since the carbocation is unstable, anything that can stabilize this even a little will speed up the reaction. Polar aprotic solvents have a dipole moment, but their hydrogen is not highly polarized. Polar aprotic solvents are not used in S_N1 reactions because some of them can react with the carbocation intermediate and give an unwanted side-product. Rather, polar protic solvents are preferred for unimolecular substitution reactions.

Effects of Nucleophile

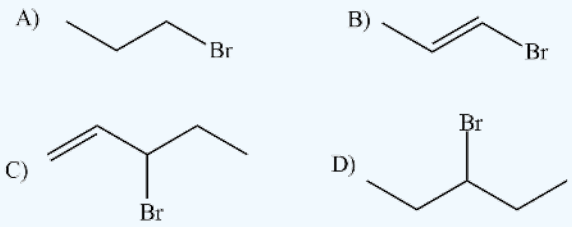
The strength of the nucleophile does not affect the reaction rate of S_N1 because the nucleophile is not involved in the rate-determining step. Since nucleophiles only participate in the fast second step, their relative molar concentrations rather than their nucleophilicities should be the primary product-determining factor. If a nucleophilic solvent such as water is used, its high concentration will assure that alcohols are the major product. However, if you have more than one nucleophile competing to bond to the carbocation, the strengths and concentrations of those nucleophiles affects the distribution of products. For example, if t-butylchloride reacts with a mixture of water and formic acid where the water and formic acid are competing nucleophiles, two different products are formed: $(CH_3)_3COH$ and $(CH_3)_3COCOH$. The relative yields of these products depends on the concentrations

and relative reactivities of the nucleophiles. With a higher electron density, water is considered the stronger nucleophile and the tertiary alcohol will be the major product if there are equal concentrations of competing nucleophiles.



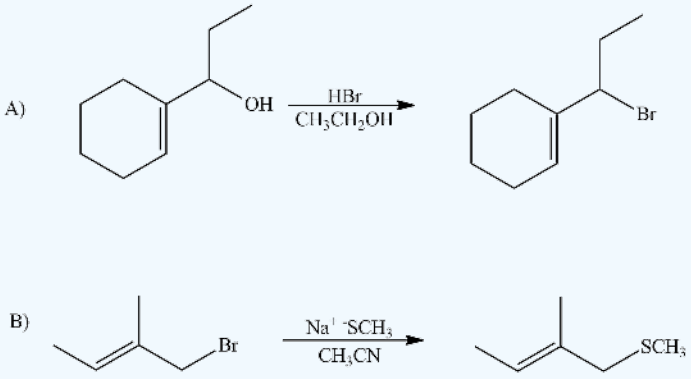
Exercises

1. Rank the following by increasing reactivity in an S_N1 reaction.



2. 3-bromo-1-pentene and 1-bromo-2-pentene undergo S_N1 reaction at almost the same rate, but one is a secondary halide while the other is a primary halide. Explain why this is.

3. Label the following reactions as most likely occuring by an S_N1 or S_N2 mechanism. Suggest why.

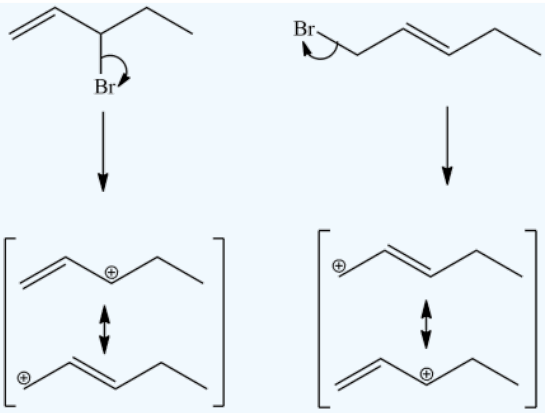


Answers

1. Consider the stability of the intermediate, the carbocation.

A < D < B < C (most reactive)

2. They have the same intermediates when you look at the resonance forms.



3. A – S_N1 *poor leaving group, protic solvent, secondary cation intermediate

B – S_N2 *good leaving group, polar solvent, primary position.

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

8.7: Characteristics of the Sn1 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

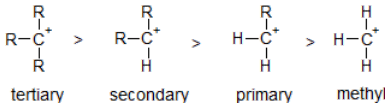
8.8: Rearrangements of the Carbocation and S_n1 Reactions

Learning Objective

- predict carbocation rearrangements in 1st order reactions

Whenever reactants like alkyl halides form carbocations, the carbocations are subject to a phenomenon known as carbocation rearrangement. A carbocation is highly reactive and holds the positive charge on carbon with a sextet rather than an octet. There are two types of rearrangements: hydride shift and alkyl shift. Rearrangements occur to create more stable carbocations. Reviewing carbocation stability from chapter 5 is helpful in identifying carbocations that can undergo rearrangement.

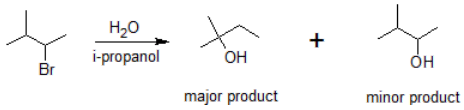
Relative Stability of Carbocations



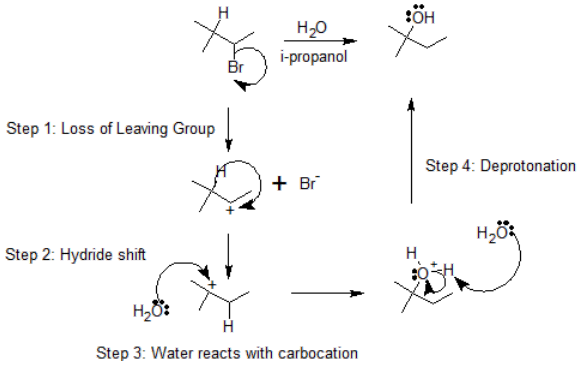
Once rearranged, the molecules can also undergo further unimolecular substitution (S_N1) or unimolecular elimination (E1). Nucleophilic reactions often produce two products, a major product and a minor product. The major product is typically the rearranged product that is more substituted (aka more stable). The minor product, in contract, is typically the normal product that is less substituted (aka less stable). Similarly, we will see in subsequent sections of this chapter that for the unimolecular elimination reaction, a more substituted alkene can form through carbocation rearrangements ("stay tuned for coming attractions").

Hydride Shift

The hydride shift can also be called the 1,2-Hydride Shift because rearrangements primarily occur between adjacent carbon atoms. The 1,2 are communicating that the carbons are vicinal (adjacent). These numbers have nothing to do with the nomenclature of the reactant. We can see the phenomenon of hydride shift in solvolysis (SN1) reactions like the example below.

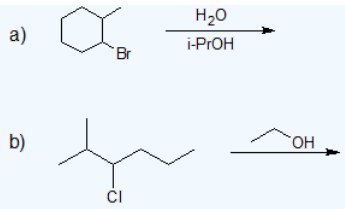


As shown in the following mechanism, the polarized carbon-chlorine bonds is heterolytically broken to produce a chloride ion and carbocation. The secondary carbocation undergoes a 1,2 hydride shift to produce the more stable tertiary carbocation. The oxygen of a water molecule acts as the nucleophile and reacts with the carbocation to form a protonated alcohol. The intermediate is deprotonated to form the final product, an alcohol. The mechanism for hydride shift occurs in *multiple steps* that includes various intermediates and transition states.

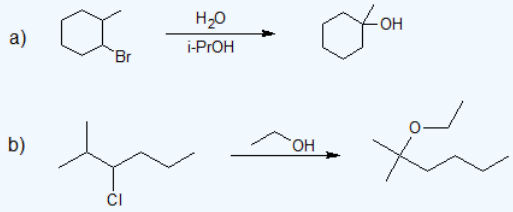


Exercise

1. Draw the bond-line structure for the major solvolysis product of each reaction.

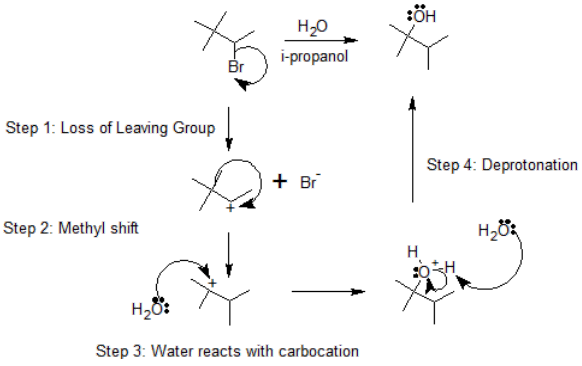


Answer



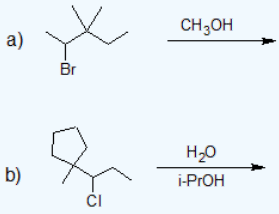
Alkyl Shift

Not all carbocations have suitable hydrogen atoms (either secondary or tertiary) that are on adjacent carbon atoms available for rearrangement. In this case, the reaction can undergo a different mode of rearrangement known as **alkyl shift** (or alkyl group migration). Alkyl Shift acts very similarily to that of hydride shift. Instead of the proton (H) that shifts with the nucleophile, we see an alkyl group that shifts with the nucleophile instead. The shifting group carries its electron pair with it to furnish a bond to the neighboring or adjacent carbocation. The shifted alkyl group and the positive charge of the carbocation switch positions on the molecule.

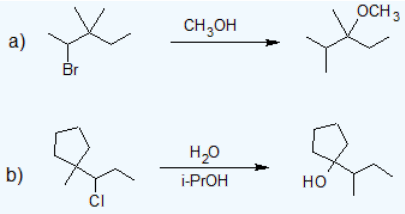


Exercise

2. Draw the bond-line structure for the major solvolysis product of each reaction.

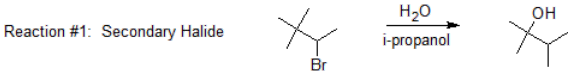


Answer



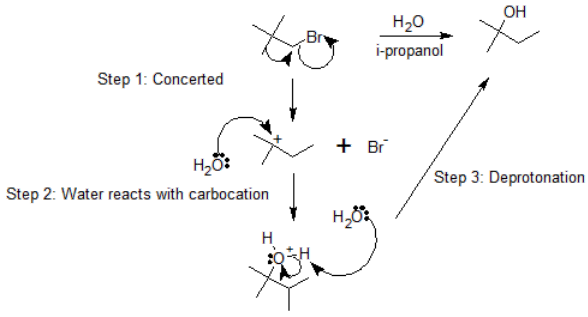
Alkyl Halide Classification and Carbocation Rearrangements

Reactions of tertiary carbocations react much faster than that of secondary carbocations and will form the major product almost exclusively. Alkyl shifts from a secondary carbocation to tertiary carbocation in S_N1 reactions occur by independent steps. When the alkyl halide is primary, then slight variations and differences between the two reaction mechanisms. In reaction #1, we see that we have a secondary substrate. This undergoes alkyl shift because it does not have a suitable hydrogen on the adjacent carbon. Once again, the reaction is similar to hydride shift. The only difference is that we shift an alkyl group rather than shift a proton, while still undergoing various intermediate steps to furnish its final product.



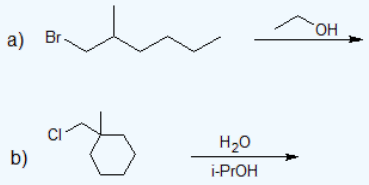


With reaction #2, on the other hand, we can say that it undergoes a *concerted* mechanism. In short, this means that everything happens in one step. This is because primary carbocations *cannot* be an intermediate and they are relatively difficult processes since they require higher temperatures and longer reaction times. After protonating the alcohol substrate to form the alkyloxonium ion, the water must leave *at the same time* as the alkyl group shifts from the adjacent carbon to skip the formation of the unstable primary carbocation.

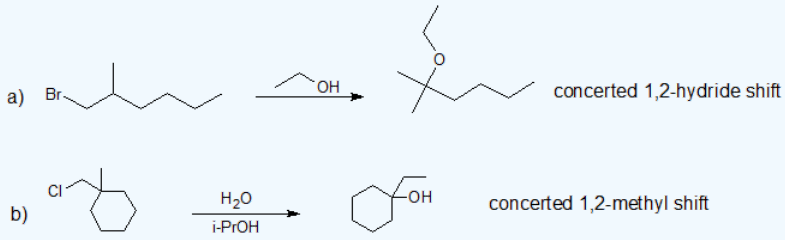


Exercise

3. Draw the bond-line structure for the major solvolysis product of each reaction.



Answer



1,3-Hydride and Greater Shifts

Typically, hydride shifts can occur at low temperatures. However, by heating the solutionf of a cation, it can easily and readily speed the process of rearrangement. One way to account for a slight barrier is to propose a 1,3-hydride shift interchanging the functionality of two different kinds of methyls. Another possibility is 1,2 hydride shift in which you could yield a secondary carbocation intermediate. Then, a further 1,2 hydride shift would give the more stable rearranged tertiary cation.

More distant hydride shifts have been observed, such as 1,4 and 1,5 hydride shifts, but these arrangements are too fast to undergo secondary cation intermediates.

Analogy

Carbocation rearrangements happen very readily and often occur in many organic chemistry reactions. Yet, we typically neglect this step. Dr. Sarah Lievens, a Chemistry professor at the University of California, Davis once said carbocation rearrangements can be observed with various analogies to help her students remember this phenomenon. For hydride shifts: "The new friend (nucleophile) just joined a group (the organic molecule). Because he is new, he only made two new friends. However, the popular kid (the hydrogen) glady gave up his friends to the new friend so that he could have even more friends. Therefore, everyone won't be as lonely and we can all be friends." This analogy works for alkyl shifts in conjunction with hydride shift as well.

References

1. Vogel, Pierre. Carbocation Chemistry. Amsterdam: Elsevier Science Publishers B.V., 1985.
2. Olah, George A. and Prakash, G.K. Surya. Carbocation Chemistry. New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2004.
3. Vollhardt, K. Peter C. and Schore, Neil E. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. New York: Bleyer, Brennan, 2007.

Outside links

- en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Carboca..._rearrangement
- Watch a short presentation on the carbocation rearrangement phenomenon

Contributors and Attributions

- Jeffrey Ma

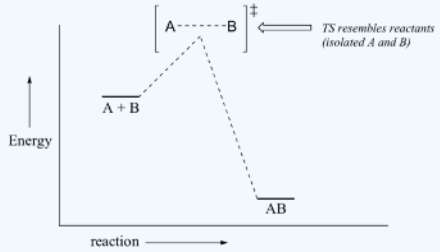
8.8: Rearrangements of the Carbocation and Sn1 Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.9: The Hammond Postulate and Transition States

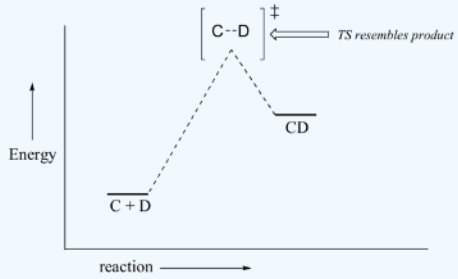
Learning Objective

- explain and apply Hammond's Postulate to substitution reactions

Now, back to transition states. Chemists are often very interested in trying to learn about what the transition state for a given reaction looks like, but addressing this question requires an indirect approach because the transition state itself cannot be observed. In order to gain some insight into what a particular transition state looks like, chemists often invoke the **Hammond postulate**, which states that *a transition state resembles the structure of the nearest stable species*. For an exergonic reaction, therefore, the transition state resembles the reactants more than it does the products.



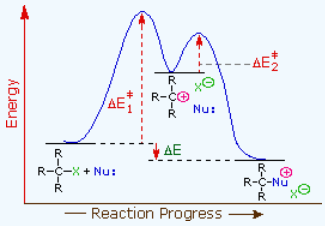
If we consider a hypothetical exergonic reaction between compounds A and B to form AB, the distance between A and B would be relatively large at the transition state, resembling the starting state where A and B are two isolated species. In the hypothetical endergonic reaction between C and D to form CD, however, the bond formation process would be much further along at the TS point, resembling the product.



The Hammond Postulate is a very simplistic idea, which relies on an assumption that potential energy surfaces are parabolic. Although such an assumption is not rigorously true, it is fairly reliable and allows chemists to make energetic arguments about transition states by employing arguments about the stability of a related species. Since the formation of a reactive intermediate is very reliably **endergonic**, arguments about the stability of reactive intermediates can serve as proxy arguments about transition state stability.

The Hammond Postulate and the SN1 Reaction

The Hammond postulate suggests that the activation energy of the rate-determining first step will be inversely proportional to the stability of the carbocation intermediate. The stability of carbocations is shown qualitatively below:



Carbocation Stability

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{CH_3(+) < CH_3CH_2(+) < (CH_3)_2CH(+) \approx\ CH_2{=}CH{-}CH_2(+)} \\ \mathrm{< C_6H_5CH_2(+) \approx\ (CH_3)_3C(+)} \end{aligned} \tag{8.9.1}$$

Consequently, we expect that 3º-alkyl halides will be more reactive than their 2º and 1º-counterparts in reactions that follow an S_N1 mechanism. This is opposite to the reactivity order observed for the S_N2 mechanism. Allylic and benzylic halides are exceptionally reactive by either mechanism.

Contributors

- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

8.9: The Hammond Postulate and Transition States is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.10: Comparison of SN1 and SN2 Reactions

Learning Objective

- distinguish 1st or 2nd order substitution reactions

Predicting S_N1 vs. S_N2 mechanisms

When considering whether a nucleophilic substitution is likely to occur via an S_N1 or S_N2 mechanism, we really need to consider three factors:

1) **The electrophile:** when the leaving group is attached to a methyl group or a primary carbon, an S_N2 mechanism is favored (here the electrophile is unhindered by surrounded groups, and any carbocation intermediate would be high-energy and thus unlikely). When the leaving group is attached to a tertiary, allylic, or benzylic carbon, a carbocation intermediate will be relatively stable and thus an S_N1 mechanism is favored. These patterns of reactivity of summarized below.

Alkyl Halide Structure	Possible Substitution Reactions
methyl and primary	S_N2 only
secondary	S_N2 and S_N1
tertiary	S_N1 only
primary and secondary benzylic and allylic	S_N2 and S_N1
tertiary benzylic and allylic	S_N1 only
vinyl and aryl	NO reaction

2) **The nucleophile**: powerful nucleophiles, especially those with negative charges, favor the S_N2 mechanism. Weaker nucleophiles such as water or alcohols favor the S_N1 mechanism.

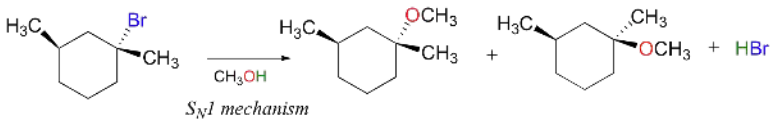
3) **The solvent**: Polar aprotic solvents favor the S_N2 mechanism by enhancing the reactivity of the nucleophile. Polar protic solvents favor the S_N1 mechanism by stabilizing the transition state and carbocation intermediate. S_N1 reactions are called solvolysis reactions when the solvent is the nucleophile.

These patterns of reactivity are summarized in the table below.

Comparison between S_N2 and S_N1 Reactions

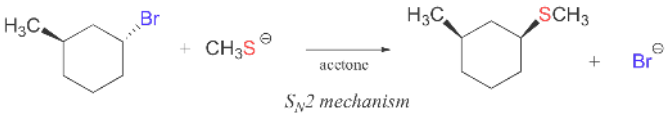
Reaction Parameter	S_N2	S_N1
alkyl halide structure	methyl > primary > secondary >>>> tertiary	tertiary > secodary >>>> primary > methyl
nucleophile	high concentration of a strong nucleophile	poor nucleophile (often the solvent)
mechanism	1-step	2-stp
rate limiting step	bimolecular transition state	carbocation formation
rate law	rate = k[R-X][Nu]	rate = k[R-X]
stereochemisty	inversion of configuration	mixed configuration
solvent	polar aprotic	polar protic

For example, the reaction below has a tertiary alkyl bromide as the electrophile, a weak nucleophile, and a polar protic solvent (we'll assume that methanol is the solvent). Thus we'd confidently predict an S_N1 reaction mechanism. Because substitution occurs at a chiral carbon, we can also predict that the reaction will proceed with racemization.



S_N1 mechanism

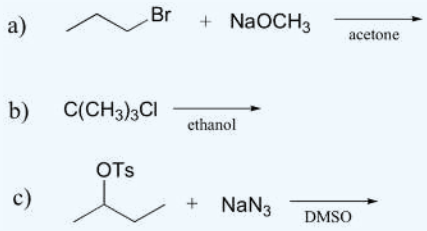
In the reaction below, on the other hand, the electrophile is a secondary alkyl bromide – with these, both S_N1 and S_N2 mechanisms are possible, depending on the nucleophile and the solvent. In this example, the nucleophile (a thiolate anion) is strong, and a polar protic solvent is used – so the S_N2 mechanism is heavily favored. The reaction is expected to proceed with inversion of configuration.



S_N2 mechanism

Exercise

1. Determine whether each substitution reaction shown below is likely to proceed by an S_N1 or S_N2 mechanism and explain your reasoning.



Answer

a) S_N2 b/c primary alkyl halide with a strong nucleophile in a polar aprotic solvent.

b) S_N1 b/c tertiary alkyl halide with a weak nucleophile that is also the solvent (solvolysis).

c) S_N2 b/c secondary alkyl halides favor this mechanism when reacted with a strong nucleophile (and weak base) in a polar aprotic solvent.

8.10: Comparison of SN1 and SN2 Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

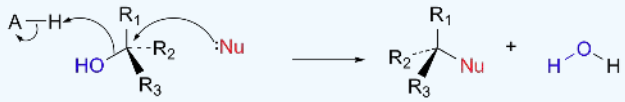
8.11: Biological Substitution Reactions

Objective

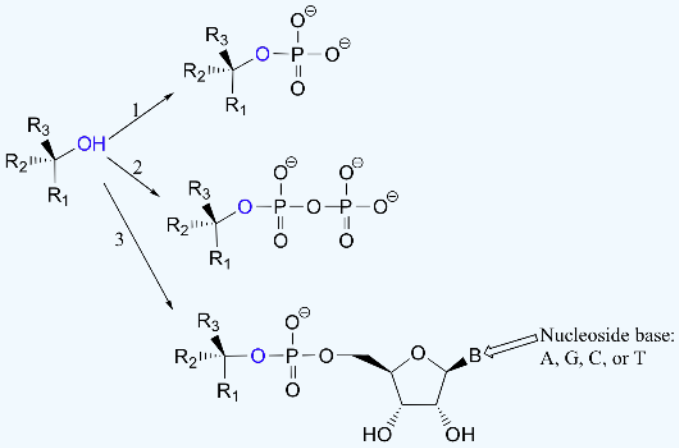
- discuss the importance of leaving groups in biological substitution reactions

Leaving Groups in Biochemical Reactions

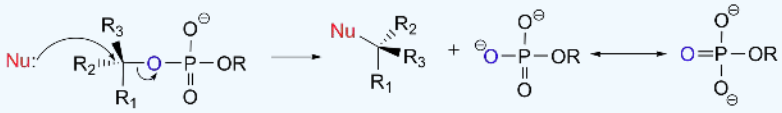
In biological reactions, we do not often see halides serving as leaving groups (in fact, outside of some marine organisms, halogens are fairly unusual in biological molecules). More common leaving groups in biochemical reactions are phosphates, water, alcohols, and thiols. In many cases, the leaving group is protonated by an acidic group on the enzyme as bond-breaking occurs. For example, hydroxide ion itself seldom acts as a leaving group – it is simply too high in energy (too basic). Rather, the hydroxide oxygen is generally protonated by an enzymatic acid before or during the bond-breaking event, resulting in a (very stable) water leaving group.



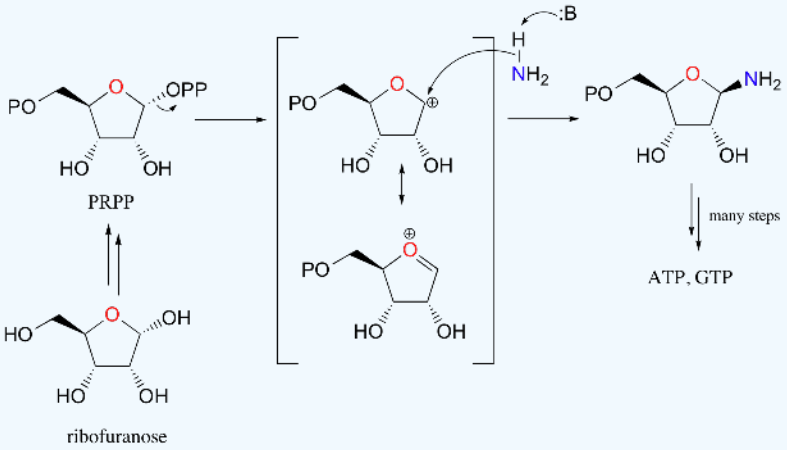
More often, however, the hydroxyl group of an alcohol is first converted enzymatically to a phosphate ester in order to create a better leaving group. This phosphate ester can take the form of a simple monophosphate (arrow 1 in the figure below), a diphosphate (arrow 2), or a nucleotide monophosphate (arrow 3).



Due to resonance delocalization of the developing negative charge, phosphates are excellent leaving groups.



Here's a specific example (from DNA nucleotide biosynthesis):

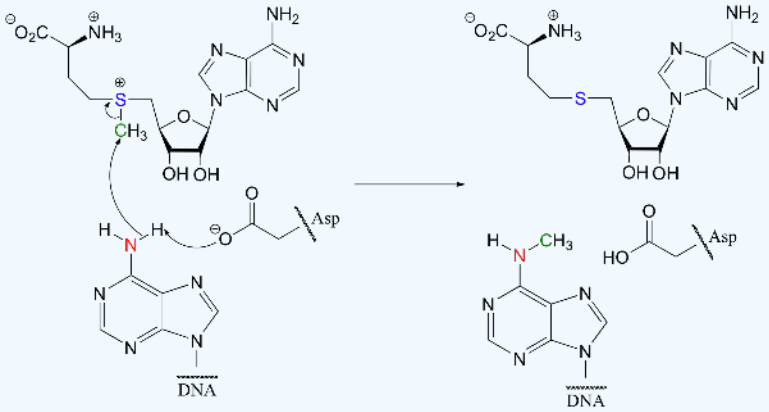


Here, the OH group on ribofuranose is converted to a diphosphate, a much better leaving group. Ammonia is the nucleophile in the second step of this S_N1-like reaction.

What is important for now is that in each case, an alcohol has been converted into a much better leaving group, and is now primed for a nucleophilic substitution reaction.

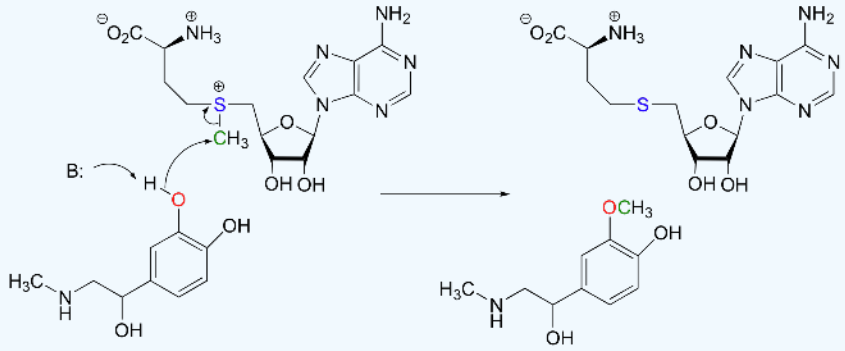
SAM Methyltransferases

Some of the most important examples of S_N2 reactions in biochemistry are those catalyzed by S-adenosyl methionine (SAM) – dependent methyltransferase enzymes. We have already seen, in chapter 6 and again in chapter 8, how a methyl group is transferred in an S_N2 reaction from SAM to the amine group on the nucleotide base adenosine:



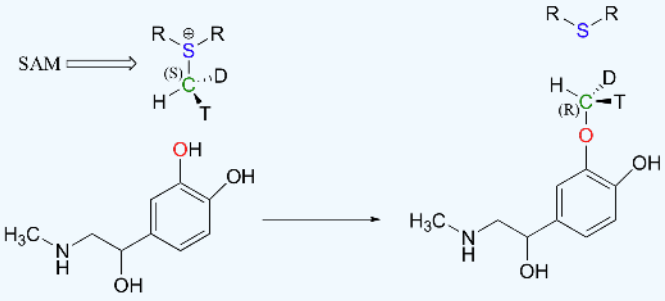
(*Nucleic Acids Res.* **2000**, *28*, 3950).

Another SAM-dependent methylation reaction is catalyzed by an enzyme called catechol-O-methyltransferase. The substrate here is epinephrine, also known as adrenaline.



Notice that in this example, the attacking nucleophile is an alcohol rather than an amine (that's why the enzyme is called an O-methyltransferase). In both cases, though, a basic amino acid side chain is positioned in the active site in just the right place to deprotonate the nucleophilic group as it attacks, increasing its nucleophilicity. The electrophile in both reactions is a methyl carbon, so there is little steric hindrance to slow down the nucleophilic attack. The methyl carbon is electrophilic because it is bonded to a positively-charged sulfur, which is a powerful electron withdrawing group. The positive charge on the sulfur also makes it an excellent leaving group, as the resulting product will be a neutral and very stable sulfide. All in all, in both reactions we have a reasonably good nucleophile, an electron-poor, unhindered electrophile, and an excellent leaving group.

Because the electrophilic carbon in these reactions is a methyl carbon, a stepwise S_N1-like mechanism is extremely unlikely: a methyl carbocation is very high in energy and thus is not a reasonable intermediate to propose. We can confidently predict that this reaction is S_N2. Does this S_N2 reaction occur, as expected, with inversion of stereochemistry? Of course, the electrophilic methyl carbon in these reactions is achiral, so inversion is not apparent. To demonstrate inversion, the following experiment has been carried out with catechol-O-methyltransferase:



Here, the methyl group of SAM was made to be chiral by incorporating hydrogen isotopes tritium (^{3}H, T) and deuterium (^{2}H, D). The researchers determined that the reaction occurred with inversion of configuration, as expected for an S_N2 displacement (*J. Biol. Chem.* **1980,** *255,* 9124).

Example

Contributors

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

8.11: Biological Substitution Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Elimination Reactions

9.1: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination
9.2: Characteristics of the E2 Reaction
9.3: Zaitsev's Rule
9.4: Characteristics of the E1 Reaction
9.5: E2 Regiochemistry and Cyclohexane Conformations
9.6: The E2 Reaction and the Deuterium Isotope Effect
9.7: Comparison of E1 and E2 Reactions
9.8: Comparing Substitution and Elimination Reactions
9.9: Biological Elimination Reactions
9.10: Additional Exercises
9.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises

9: Elimination Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

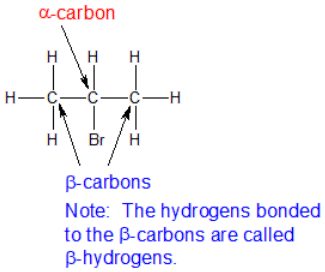
9.1: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination

Learning Objective

- apply the alpha and beta labels to alkyl halides for substitution and elimination reactions - refer to section 7.4

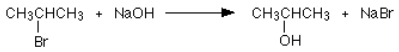
Alkyl Halide Structure and Reaction Language

The carbon bonded to a halide is called the alpha-carbon. The carbons bonded to the alpha-carbon are called beta-carbons. Carbon atoms further removed from the alpha carbon are named by continuing the Greek alphabet (alpha, beta, gamma, delta, etc). In discussing the reactions of alkyl halides, it can be effective to use the alpha- and beta- labels. The structure for 2-bromopropane is used below to illustrate the application of these terms.

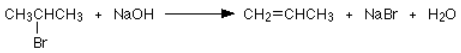


The Reactions - Nucleophilic Substitution and Elimination

Alkyl halides can undergo two major types of reactions - substitution and/or elimination. The substitution reaction is called a Nucleophilic Substitution reaction because the electrophilic alkyl halide forms a new bond with the nucleophile which substitutes for (replaces) the halogen at the alpha-carbon. Because carbon can only form four bonds, the halogen must leave and is called the "Leaving Group". Alkyl halides are excellent electrophiles because halogens share a polar bond with carbon, are polarizable, and form relatively stable leaving groups as halide anions. In the example below, 2-bromopropane is converted into propan-2-ol in a substitution reaction.



Allkyl halides can also undergo elimination reactions in the presence of strong bases. The elimination of a beta-hydrogen (hydrogen on a carbon vicinal to the alkyl halide carbon) and the halide produces a carbon-carbon double bond to form an alkene. In the example below, 2-bromopropane has undergone an elimination reaction to give an alkene - propene.

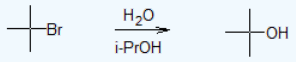


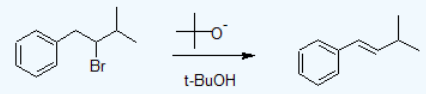
What decides whether you get substitution or elimination?

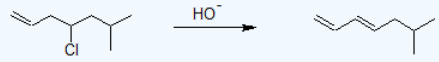
In the examples above, the reagents were the same for both substitution and elimination - the halogenoalkane and either sodium or potassium hydroxide solution. In all cases, you will get a mixture of both reactions happening - some substitution and some elimination. The product distribution depends on a number of factors. These factors will be explored in the remaining sections of this chapter. Depending on the structure of the alkyl halide, reagent type, reaction conditions, some reactions will only undergo only one pathway - substitution or elimination. While other alkyl halides will always produce a mixture of substitution and elimination products like the example above. The goal of efficient multiple-step synthetic pathways is to maximize the formation of a single product during each step. The reaction conditions explored in this chapter will be useful for future reactions we will study and learn.

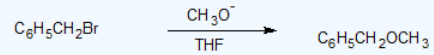
Exercise

1. Classify the following reactions as "Substitutions" or "Eliminations".

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

Answer

1. a) substitution

   b) elimination

   c) elimination

   d) substitution

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

9.1: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.2: Characteristics of the E2 Reaction

Learning Objective

- determine the rate law & predict the mechanism based on its rate equation or reaction data for E2 reactions
- predict the products and specify the reagents for E2 reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for E2 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for E2 reactions

In order of decreasing importance, the factors impacting E2 reaction pathways are

1) structure of the alkyl halide

2) strength of the base

3) stability of the leaving group

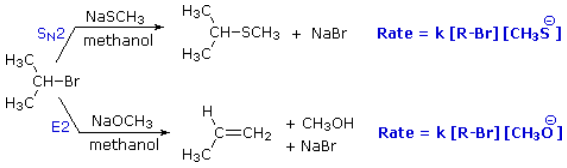
4) type of solvent.

The bimolecular transition state of the E2 pathway means that orientation of the base and leaving group are a primary consideration. Both the base and leaving group are electron rich and electrostatically repel each other forcing an anti-coplanar orientation between the base and leaving group. The structure of the alkyl halide must assume the orientation for an anti-coplar transition state. The strength of the base will also influence the reaction along with the stability of the leaving group. Solvents play a very minor role in E2 pathway.

Introduction

E2 reactions are typically seen with secondary and tertiary alkyl halides, but a hindered base is necessary with a primary halide. The mechanism by which it occurs is a single step **concerted** reaction with one transition state. The rate at which this mechanism occurs is second order kinetics, and depends on both the base and alkyl halide. A good leaving group is required because it is involved in the rate determining step. The leaving groups must be coplanar in order to form a pi bond; carbons go from sp^3 to sp^2 hybridization states.

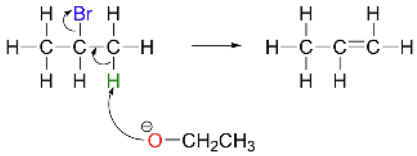
To get a clearer picture of the interplay of these factors involved in a a reaction between a nucleophile/base and an alkyl halide, consider the reaction of a 2º-alkyl halide, isopropyl bromide, with two different nucleophiles. In one pathway, a methanethiolate nucleophile substitutes for bromine in an S_N2 reaction. In the other (bottom) pathway, methoxide ion acts as a base (rather than as a nucleophile) in an elimination reaction. As we will soon see, the mechanism of this reaction is single-step, and is referred to as the E2 mechanism.



General Reaction

Below is a mechanistic diagram of an elimination reaction by the E2 pathway:

.



In this reaction, ethoxide ($CH_3CH_2O^-$) represents the base and Br representents a leaving group, typically a halogen. There is one transition state that shows the concerted reaction for the base attracting the hydrogen and the halogen taking the electrons from the bond. The product be both eclipse and staggered depending on the transition states. Eclipsed products have a synperiplanar transition

states, while staggered products have anticoplanar (antiperiplanar) transition states. Staggered conformation is usually the major product because of its lower energy confirmation.

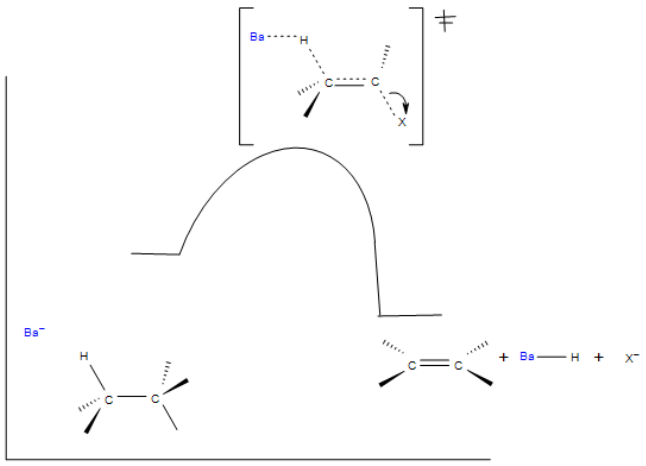
An E2 reaction has certain requirements to proceed:

- A strong base is necessary especially necessary for primary alkyl halides. Secondary and tertirary primary halides will procede with E2 in the presence of a base (OH^-, RO^-, R_2N^-)
- Both leaving groups should be on the same plane, this allows the double bond to form in the reaction. In the reaction above you can see both leaving groups are in the plane of the carbons.
- Follows Zaitsev's rule, the most substituted alkene is usually the major product.
- Hoffman Rule, a strically hindered base will result in the least substituted product.

E2 Reaction Coordinate

In the reaction energy diagram below, the base is represented as Ba^-. The bimolecular transition state determines the overall reaction rate. It is important to note the anti-coplanar orientation of the base and the leaving group. Both the base and leaving group are electron rich and electrostatically repel each other forcing an anti-coplanar orientation between the base and leaving group.

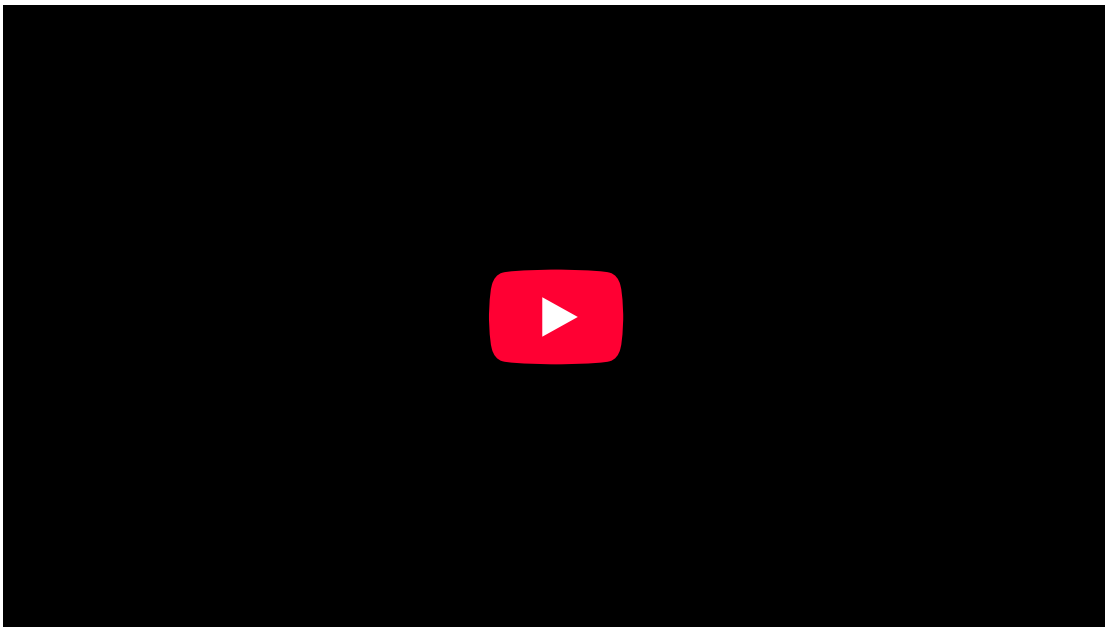
anti-coplanar transition state



The Leaving Group Effect in E_2 Reactions

As Size Increases, The Electron Density Decrease, The Ability of the Leaving Group to Leave Increases: Here we revisit the effect size has on basicity. If we move down the periodic table, size increases. With an increase in size, basicity decreases, and the ability of the leaving group to leave increases. The relationship among the following halogens, unlike the previous example, is true to what we will see in upcoming reaction mechanisms.

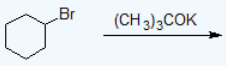
F	<	Cl	<	Br	<	I
Worst		Fair		Good		Excellent

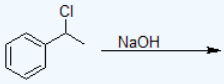


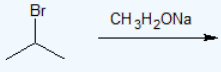


Exercise

1. Ignoring the alkene stereochemistry show the elimination product(s) of the following compounds.

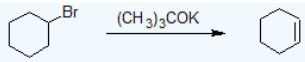
a) 

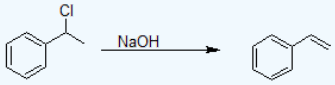
b) 

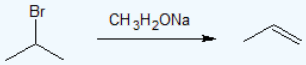
c) 

Answer

1.

a) 

b) 

c) 

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

- Layne A. Morsch (University of Illinois Springfield)

9.2: Characteristics of the E2 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.3: Zaitsev's Rule

Learning Objective

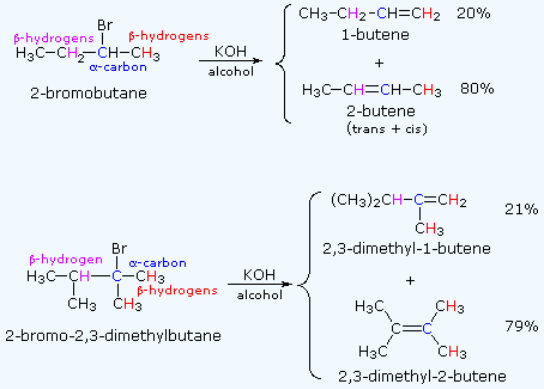
- use Zaitsev’s rule to predict major and minor products of elimination reactions

Zaisev's Rule and Regioselectivity

The prefix "regio" indicates the interaction of reactants during bond making and/or bond breaking occurs preferentially by one orientation. Because the beta-carbons of an alkyl halide may not be equivalent, there can be more than one possible elimination product. Zaitsev's Rule can be used to predict the regiochemistry of elimination reactions.

Zaitsev’s or Saytzev’s (anglicized spelling) rule is an empirical rule used to predict regioselectivity of beta-elimination reactions occurring via the E1 or E2 mechanisms. It states that in a regioselective E1 or E2 reaction the major product is the more stable alkene with the more highly substituted double bond as shown in the example below.

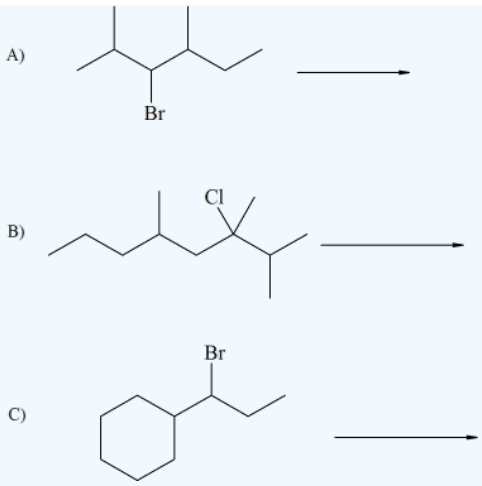
If two or more structurally distinct groups of beta-hydrogens are present in a given reactant, then several constitutionally isomeric alkenes may be formed by an E2 elimination. This situation is illustrated by the 2-bromobutane and 2-bromo-2,3-dimethylbutane elimination examples given below.



By using the strongly basic hydroxide nucleophile, we direct these reactions toward elimination. In both cases there are two different sets of beta-hydrogens available to the elimination reaction (these are colored red and magenta and the alpha carbon is blue). If the rate of each possible elimination was the same, we might expect the amounts of the isomeric elimination products to reflect the number of hydrogens that could participate in that reaction. For example, since there are three 1º-hydrogens (red) and two 2º-hydrogens (magenta) on beta-carbons in 2-bromobutane, statistics would suggest a 3:2 ratio of 1-butene and 2-butene in the products. This is not observed, and the latter predominates by 4:1. This departure from statistical expectation is even more pronounced in the second example, where there are six 1º-beta-hydrogens compared with one 3º-hydrogen. These results point to a strong regioselectivity favoring the more highly substituted product double bond, an empirical statement generally called the **Zaitsev Rule**.

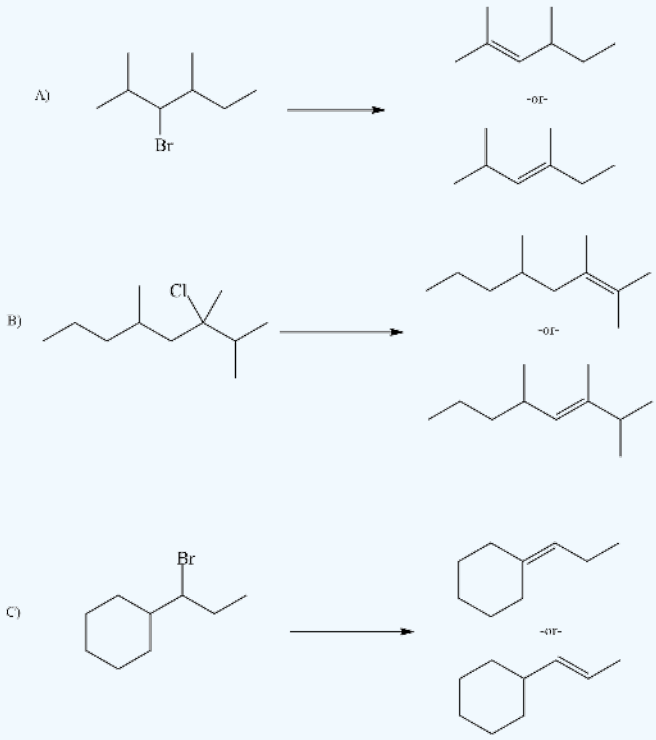
Exercise

1. Ignoring the alkene stereochemistry show the elimination product(s) of the following compounds:



Answer

1.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

9.3: Zaitsev's Rule is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

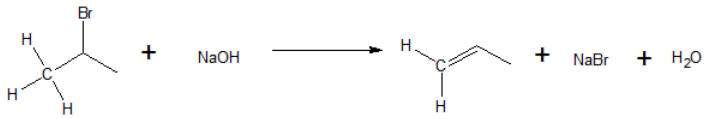
9.4: Characteristics of the E1 Reaction

Learning Objective

- determine the rate law & predict the mechanism based on its rate equation or reaction data for E1 reactions
- predict the products and specify the reagents for E1 reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for E1 reactions
- draw and interpret Reaction Energy Diagrams for E1 reactions

General Reaction

Unimolecular Elimination (E1) is a reaction in which loss of the leaving group followed by removal of he beta-hydrogen results in the formation of a double bond.



It is similar to a unimolecular nucleophilic substitution reaction (S_N1) in various ways. One being the formation of a carbocation intermediate as the rate determining (slow) step, hence the name unimolecular. . Alkyl halides that can ionize to form stable carbocations are more reactive via the E1 mechanism. Because carbocation stability is the primary energetic consideration, stabilization of the carbocation via solvation is also an important consideration. Because carbocations are highly reactive, the strength of the base is not important and weak bases can be used. Since S_N1 and E1 reactions behave similarly, they often compete against each other. Many times, both these reactions will occur simultaneously to form different products from a single reaction. However, one can be favored over another through thermodynamic control. Heating the reaction favors elimination over substitution.

In order of decreasing importance, the factors impacting E1 reaction pathways are

1) structure of the alkyl halide

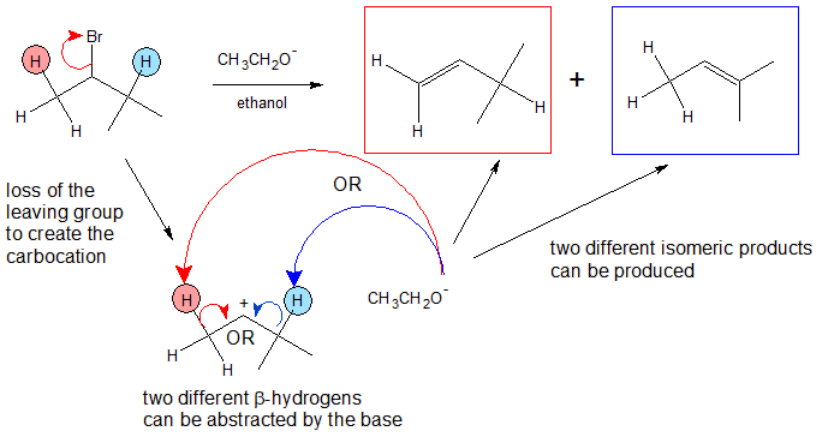
2) stability of the carbocation

3) type of solvent

4) strength of the base.

Mechanism for Alkyl Halides

As can be seen in the E1 mechanism below, the preliminary step is the leaving group (LG) leaving on its own. Because it takes the electrons in the bond along with it, the carbon that was attached to it loses its electron, making it a carbocation. Once it becomes a carbocation, a Lewis Base (B^-) deprotonates the intermediate carbocation at the beta position, which then donates its electrons to the neighboring C-C bond to form a double bond. Unlike E2 reactions, which require the proton to be *anti* to the leaving group, E1 reactions only require a neighboring hydrogen. This is due to the fact that the leaving group has already left the molecule. The final product is an alkene along with the HB byproduct and leaving group salt.



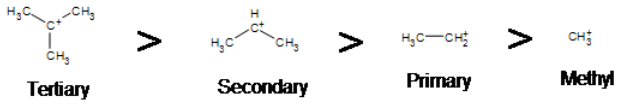
Once again, we see the two steps of the E1 mechanism.

1. A base deprotonates a beta carbon to form a pi bond.

In this case we see a mixture of products rather than one discrete one. This is the case because the carbocation has two nearby carbons that are capable of being deprotonated, but that only one forms a major product (more stable).

Reactivity

Due to the fact that E1 reactions create a carbocation intermediate, rules present in S_N1 reactions still apply.



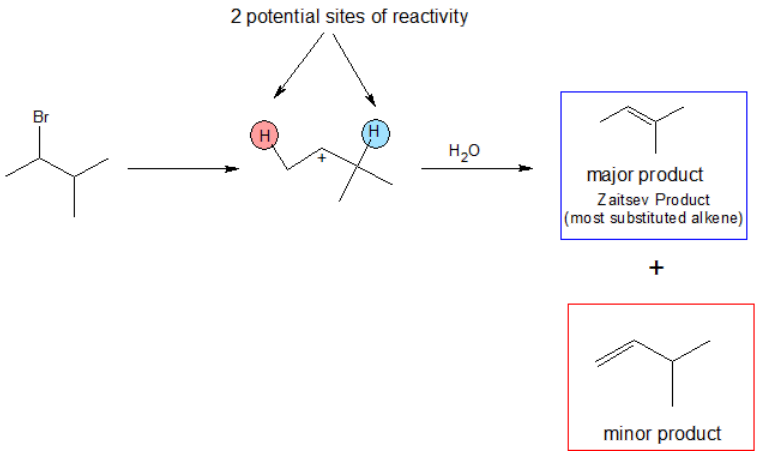
As expected, tertiary carbocations are favored over secondary, primary and methyl's. This is due to the phenomena of hyperconjugation, which essentially allows a nearby C-C or C-H bond to interact with the p orbital of the carbon to bring the electrons down to a lower energy state. Thus, this has a stabilizing effect on the molecule as a whole. In general, primary and methyl carbocations do not proceed through the E1 pathway for this reason, unless there is a means of carbocation rearrangement to move the positive charge to a nearby carbon. Secondary and Tertiary carbons form more stable carbocations, thus this formation occurs quite rapidly.

Secondary carbocations can be subject to the E2 reaction pathway, but this generally occurs in the presence of a good / strong base. Adding a weak base to the reaction disfavors E2, essentially pushing towards the E1 pathway. In many instances, solvolysis occurs rather than using a base to deprotonate. This means heat is added to the solution, and the solvent itself deprotonates a hydrogen. The medium can effect the pathway of the reaction as well. Polar protic solvents may be used to hinder nucleophiles, thus disfavoring E2 / S_n2 from occurring.

Regiochemistry & Stereochemistry of the E1 Reaction

The E1 reaction is regiospecific because it follows Zaitsev's rule that states the more substituted alkene is the major product. This infers that the hydrogen on the most substituted carbon is the most probable to be deprotonated, thus allowing for the most substituted alkene to be formed.

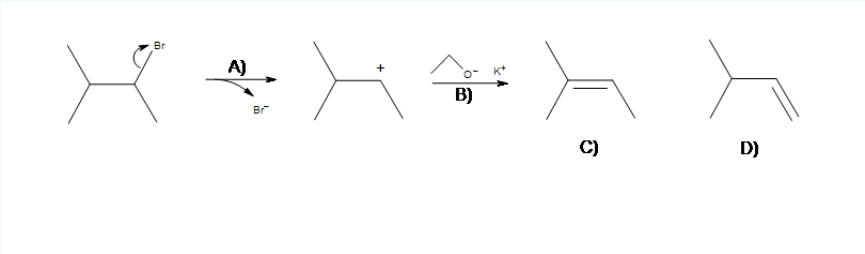
Unlike E2 reactions, the E1 reaction is not stereospecific. Thus, a hydrogen is not required to be anti-coplanar to the leaving group because the leaving group is gone. In the mechanism below, we can see two possible pathways for the reaction. Either one leads to a plausible resultant product, however, only one forms a major product. As stated by **Zaitsev's rule**, deprotonation of the most substituted carbon results in the most substituted alkene. This then becomes the most stable product due to hyperconjugation, and is also more common than the minor product.



Exercises

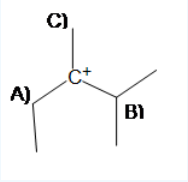
1. Which of these steps is the rate determining step (A or B)?

What is the major product formed (C or D)?

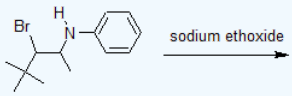


2. In order to produce the most stable alkene product, from which carbon should the base deprotonate (A, B, or C)?

If the carbocation were to rearrange, on which carbon would the positive charge go onto without sacrificing stability (A, B, or C)?



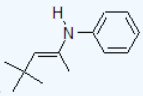
3) Predict the major product of the following reaction.



4) (True or False) – There is no way of controlling the product ratio of E1 / S_n1 reactions.

5) Explain why the presence of a weak base / nucleophile favors E1 reactions over E2.

Answer

1. A , C
2. B, B
3. 

4. False - They can be thermodynamically controlled to favor a certain product over another.

5. By definition, an E1 reaction is a Unimolecular Elimination reaction. This means the only rate determining step is that of the dissociation of the leaving group to form a carbocation. Since E2 is bimolecular and the nucleophilic attack is part of the rate determining step, a weak base/nucleophile disfavors it and ultimately allows E1 to dominate. (Don't forget about S_N1 which still pertains to this reaction simaltaneously).

Outside Links

- E1 reaction background: http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/E1_elimination

Outside Sources

1. McMurry, J., Simanek, E. Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry, 6th edition. Cengage Learning, 2007.

Contributors

- Satish Balasubramanian

9.4: Characteristics of the E1 Reaction is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.5: E2 Regiochemistry and Cyclohexane Conformations

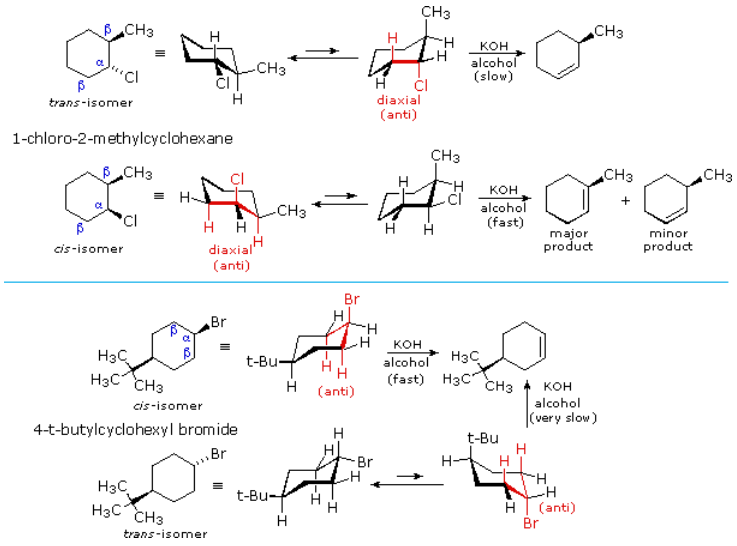
Learning Objective

- use Zaitsev's rule to predict major and minor products of elimination reactions including halocyclohexanes

Cyclohexane Conformation & Anti-coplanar Orientation

The concerted mechanism of the E2 reaction requires that the base and leaving group are orientated anti-coplanar to each other. When the beta-hydrogen and leaving group (halide for this chapter) are located on a 6-membered ring, then Zaitsev's Rule may not be followed. The beta-hydrogen and leaving group must both be in the axial position for the E2 reaction to occur. Consequently, E2 reactions of certain cycloalkyl halides show unusual rates and regioselectivity that are not explained by the principles thus far discussed. For example, trans-2-methyl-1-chlorocyclohexane reacts with alcoholic KOH at a much slower rate than does its cis-isomer. Furthermore, the product from elimination of the trans-isomer is 3-methylcyclohexene (not predicted by the Zaitsev rule), whereas the cis-isomer gives the predicted 1-methylcyclohexene as the chief product. These differences are described by the first two equations in the following diagram.

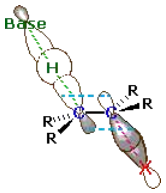
Unlike open chain structures, cyclic compounds generally restrict the spatial orientation of ring substituents to relatively few arrangements. Consequently, reactions conducted on such substrates often provide us with information about the preferred orientation of reactant species in the transition state. Stereoisomers are particularly suitable in this respect, so the results shown here contain important information about the E2 transition state.



The most sensible interpretation of the elimination reactions of 2- and 4-substituted halocyclohexanes is that this reaction prefers an **anti orientation** of the halogen and the beta-hydrogen which is attacked by the base. These anti orientations are colored in red in the above equations. The compounds used here all have six-membered rings, so the anti orientation of groups requires that they assume a diaxial conformation. The observed differences in rate are the result of a steric preference for equatorial orientation of large substituents, which reduces the effective concentration of conformers having an axial halogen. In the case of the 1-bromo-4-tert-butylcyclohexane isomers, the tert-butyl group is so large that it will always assume an equatorial orientation, leaving the bromine to be axial in the cis-isomer and equatorial in the trans. Because of symmetry, the two axial beta-hydrogens in the cis-isomer react equally with base, resulting in rapid elimination to the same alkene (actually a racemic mixture). This reflects the fixed anti orientation of these hydrogens to the chlorine atom. To assume a conformation having an axial bromine the trans-isomer must tolerate serious crowding distortions. Such conformers are therefore present in extremely low concentration, and the rate of elimination is very slow. Indeed, substitution by hydroxide anion predominates.

A similar analysis of the 1-chloro-2-methylcyclohexane isomers explains both the rate and regioselectivity differences. Both the chlorine and methyl groups may assume an equatorial orientation in a chair conformation of the trans-isomer, as shown in the top

equation. The axial chlorine needed for the E2 elimination is present only in the less stable alternative chair conformer, but this structure has only one axial beta-hydrogen (colored red), and the resulting elimination gives 3-methylcyclohexene. In the cis-isomer the smaller chlorine atom assumes an axial position in the more stable chair conformation, and here there are two axial beta hydrogens. The more stable 1-methylcyclohexene is therefore the predominant product, and the overall rate of elimination is relatively fast.

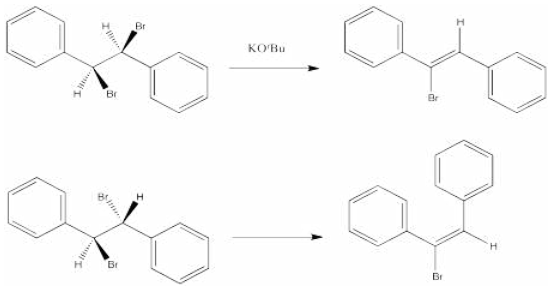


An orbital drawing of the anti-transition state is shown on the right. Note that the base attacks the alkyl halide from the side opposite the halogen, just as in the S_N2 mechanism. In this drawing the α and β carbon atoms are undergoing a rehybridization from sp^3 to sp^2 and the developing π-bond is drawn as dashed light blue lines. The symbol **R** represents an alkyl group or hydrogen. Since both the base and the alkyl halide are present in this transition state, the reaction is bimolecular and should exhibit second order kinetics. We should note in passing that a syn-transition state would also provide good orbital overlap for elimination, and in some cases where an anti-orientation is prohibited by structural constraints *syn*-elimination has been observed.

Alkyl Halide Chains

Instead, in an E2 reaction, stereochemistry of the double bond -- that is, whether the *E* or *Z* isomer results -- is dictated by the stereochemistry of the starting material, if it is diastereomeric. In other words, if the carbon with the hydrogen and the carbon with the halogen are both chiral, then one diastereomer will lead to one product, and the other diastereomer will lead to the other product.

The following reactions of potassium ethoxide with dibromostilbene (1,2-dibromo-1,2-diphenylethane) both occurred via an E2 mechanism. Two different diastereomers were used. Two different stereoisomers (*E* vs. *Z*) resulted.



Exercise

1. Which of the following compounds will react faster in an E2 reaction; *trans*-1-bromo-2-isopropylcyclohexane or *cis*-1-bromo-2-isopropylcyclohexane?

Answer

1. The *cis* isomer will react faster than the *trans*. The *cis* isomer has two possible perpendicular hydrogen in which it can eliminate from.



trans cis

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

9.5: E2 Regiochemistry and Cyclohexane Conformations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.6: The E2 Reaction and the Deuterium Isotope Effect

Learning Objective

- explain how the kinetic isotope effect (KIE) can be used to elucidate reaction mechanisms

Kinetic Isotope Effects

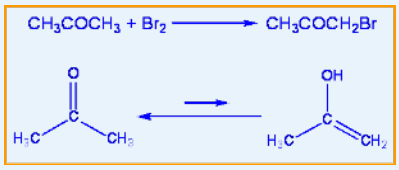
Kinetic Isotope Effects (KIEs) are used to determine reaction mechanisms by determining rate limiting steps and transition states and are commonly measured using NMR to detect isotope location or GC/MS to detect mass changes. In a KIE experiment an atom is replaced by its isotope and the change in rate of the reaction is observed. A very common isotope substitution is when hydrogen is replaced by deuterium. This is known as a deuterium effect and is expressed by the ratio k_H/k_D (as explained above). Normal KIEs for the deuterium effect are around 1 to 7 or 8. Large effects are seen because the percentage mass change between hydrogen and deuterium is great. Heavy atom isotope effects involve the substitution of carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, and bromine, with effects that are much smaller and are usually between 1.02 and 1.10. The difference in KIE magnitude is directly related to the percentage change in mass. Large effects are seen when hydrogen is replaced with deuterium because the percentage mass change is very large (mass is being doubled) while smaller percent mass changes are present when an atom like sulfur is replaced with its isotope (increased by two mass units).

Primary KIEs

Primary kinetic isotope effects are rate changes due to isotopic substitution at a site of bond breaking in the rate determining step of a reaction.

Example

Consider the bromination of acetone: kinetic studies have been performed that show the rate of this reaction is independent of the concentration of bromine. To determine the rate determining step and mechanism of this reaction the substitution of a deuterium for a hydrogen can be made.



When hydrogen was replaced with deuterium in this reaction a $\frac{k_H}{k_D}$ of 7 was found. Therefore the rate determining step is the tautomerization of acetone and involves the breaking of a C-H bond. Since the breaking of a C-H bond is involved, a substantial isotope effect is expected.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

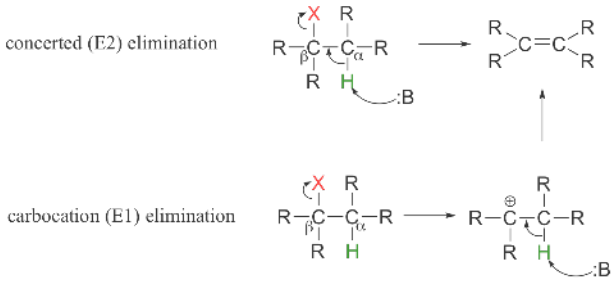
9.6: The E2 Reaction and the Deuterium Isotope Effect is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.7: Comparison of E1 and E2 Reactions

Learning Objective

- distinguish 1st or 2nd order elimination reactions

Elimination reactions of alkyl halides can occur via the bimolecular E2 mechanism or unimolecular E1 mechanism as shown in the diagram below.



Comparing E1 and E2 mechanisms

When considering whether an elimination reaction is likely to occur via an E1 or E2 mechanism, we really need to consider three factors:

1) **The base:** strong bases favor the E2 mechanism, whereas, E1 mechanisms only require a weak base.

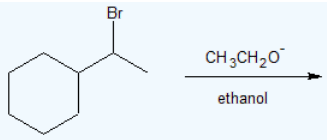
2) **The solvent**: good ionizing xolvents (polar protic) favor the E1 mechanism by stabilizing the carbocation intermediate.

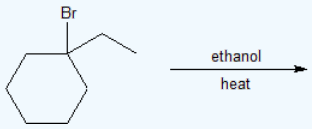
3) **The alkyl halide:** primary alkyl halides have the only structure useful in distinguishing between the E2 and E1 pathways. Since primary carbocations do not form, only the E2 mechanism is possible.

Reaction Parameter	E2	E1
alkyl halide structure	tertiary > secondary > primary	tertiary > secondary >>>> primary
nucleophile	high concentration of a strong base	weak base
mechanism	1-step	2-step
rate limiting step	anti-coplanar bimolecular transition state	carbocation formation
rate law	rate = k[R-X][Base]	rate = k[R-X]
stereochemisty	retained configuration	mixed configuration
solvent	not important	polar protic

Exercises

1. Predict the dominant elimination mechanism (E1 or E2) for each reaction below. Explain your reasoning.

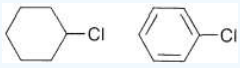
a) 

b) 

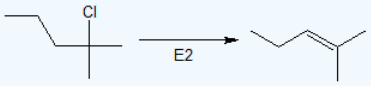
2. Which one of the following groups of compounds would eliminate **HCl** most readily on reaction with potassium hydroxide? Explain your reasoning, draw the bond-line structure and give the IUPAC name of the product.

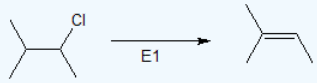
a) $(CH_3)_3CCl$ $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$ $CH_3CH(Cl)CH_2CH_3$

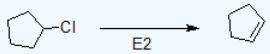
b) $(CH_3)_3CCH_2Cl$ $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2Cl$

c) 

3. Specify the reaction conditions to favor the indicated elimination mechanism.

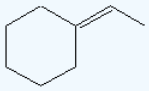
a) 

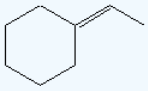
b) 

c) 

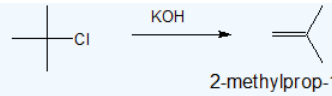
Answer

1.

a)  E2 reaction b/c secondary alkyl halide with a strong base.

b)  E1 reaction b/c tertiary alkyl halide with a weak base.

2.

a) 

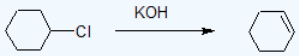
2-methylprop-1-ene

t-butyl chloride will react faster b/c it is a tertiary alkyl halide reacting with a strong base via the E2 mechanism.

b) 

3-methylbut-1-ene

1-chloro-3-methyl butane will react faster since both reactants are primary alkyl halides and the reaction conditions favor the E2 mechanism, the reactant with less steric hindrance at the beta-hydrogen will react faster.

c) 

cyclohexene

The alkyl halide b/c aryl halides cannot undergo elimination reactions under these conditions.

3. a) strong base, such as hydroxide, an alkoxide, or equivalent

b) water or alcohol or equivalent weak base with heat

c) strong base, such as hydroxide, an alkoxide, or equivalent

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

9.7: Comparison of E1 and E2 Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.8: Comparing Substitution and Elimination Reactions

Learning Objective

- predict the products and specify the reagents for S_N1, S_N2, E1 and E2 reactions with stereochemistry
- propose mechanisms for S_N1, S_N2, E1 and E2 reactions
- draw, interpret, and apply Reaction Energy Diagrams for S_N1, S_N2, E1 and E2 reactions

Summary of Reaction Patterns

Having discussed the many factors that influence nucleophilic substitution and elimination reactions of alkyl halides, we must now consider the practical problem of predicting the most likely outcome when a given alkyl halide is reacted with a given nucleophile. As we noted earlier, several variables must be considered, the most important being the structure of the alkyl group and the nature of the nucleophilic reactant.In general, in order for an S_N1 or E1 reaction to occur, the relevant carbocation intermediate must be relatively stable. Strong nucleophile favor substitution, and strong bases, especially strong hindered bases (such as tert-butoxide) favor elimination.

The nature of the halogen substituent on the alkyl halide is usually not very significant if it is Cl, Br or I. In cases where both S_N2 and E2 reactions compete, chlorides generally give more elimination than do iodides, since the greater electronegativity of chlorine increases the acidity of beta-hydrogens. Indeed, although alkyl fluorides are relatively unreactive, when reactions with basic nucleophiles are forced, elimination occurs (note the high electronegativity of fluorine).

The following table summarizes the expected outcome of alkyl halide reactions with nucleophiles. It is assumed that the alkyl halides have one or more beta-hydrogens, making elimination possible; and that low dielectric solvents (e.g. acetone, ethanol, tetrahydrofuran & ethyl acetate) are used. When a high dielectric solvent would significantly influence the reaction this is noted in red. Note that halogens bonded to sp^2 or sp hybridized carbon atoms do not normally undergo substitution or elimination reactions with nucleophilic reagents.

Nucleophile	**Anionic Nucleophiles** (Weak Bases: I^-, Br^-, SCN^-, N_3^-, $CH_3CO_2^-$, RS^-, CN^- etc.)	**Anionic Nucleophiles** (Strong Bases: HO^-, RO^-, NH_2^-, pK_a's > 15	**Neutral Nucleophiles** (H_2O, ROH, RSH, R_3N pK_a's ranging from -2 to pK_a's from -9 to 10 (left to right)
Alkyl Group			
Primary RCH_2–	Rapid S_N2 substitution. The rate may be reduced by substitution of β-carbons, as in the case of neopentyl.	Rapid S_N2 substitution. E2 elimination may also occur. *e.g.* $ClCH_2CH_2Cl + KOH$ ——> $CH_2=CHCl$	S_N2 substitution. (N ≈ S >>O)

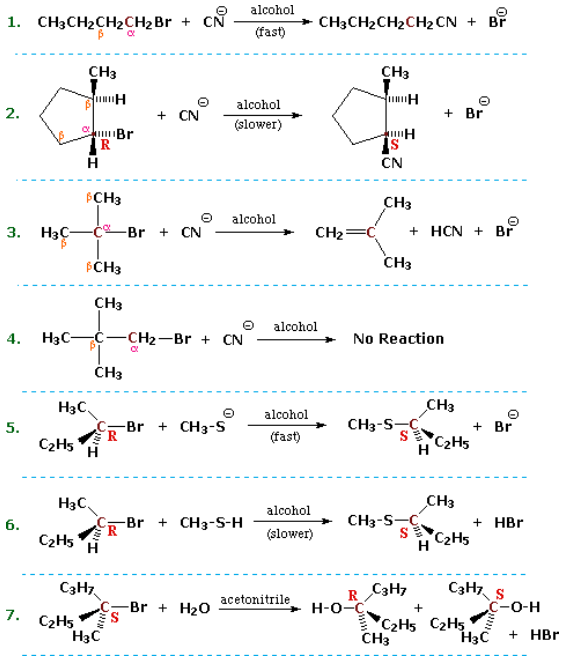
Secondary $R_2CH–$	S_N2 substitution and / or E2 elimination (depending on the basicity of the nucleophile). Bases weaker than acetate (pK_a = 4.8) give less elimination. The rate of substitution may be reduced by branching at the β-carbons, and this will increase elimination.	E2 elimination will dominate.	S_N2 substitution. (N ≈ S >>O) In high dielectric ionizing solvents, such as water, dimethyl sulfoxide & acetonitrile, S_N1 and E1 products may be formed slowly.
Tertiary $R_3C–$	E2 elimination will dominate with most nucleophiles (even if they are weak bases). No S_N2 substitution due to steric hindrance. In high dielectric ionizing solvents, such as water, dimethyl sulfoxide & acetonitrile, S_N1 and E1 products may be expected.	E2 elimination will dominate. No S_N2 substitution will occur. In high dielectric ionizing solvents S_N1 and E1 products may be formed.	E2 elimination with nitrogen nucleophiles (they are bases). No S_N2 substitution. In high dielectric ionizing solvents S_N1 and E1 products may be formed.

Allyl $H_2C=CHCH_2–$	Rapid S_N2 substitution for 1º and 2º-halides. For 3º-halides a very slow S_N2 substitution or, if the nucleophile is moderately basic, E2 elimination. In high dielectric ionizing solvents, such as water, dimethyl sulfoxide & acetonitrile, S_N1 and E1 products may be observed.	Rapid S_N2 substitution for 1º halides. E2 elimination will compete with substitution in 2º-halides, and dominate in the case of 3º-halides. In high dielectric ionizing solvents S_N1 and E1 products may be formed.	Nitrogen and sulfur nucleophiles will give S_N2 substitution in the case of 1º and 2º-halides. 3º-halides will probably give E2 elimination with nitrogen nucleophiles (they are bases). In high dielectric ionizing solvents S_N1 and E1 products may be formed. Water hydrolysis will be favorable for 2º & 3º-halides.
Benzyl $C_6H_5CH_2–$	Rapid S_N2 substitution for 1º and 2º-halides. For 3º-halides a very slow S_N2 substitution or, if the nucleophile is moderately basic, E2 elimination. In high dielectric ionizing solvents, such as water, dimethyl sulfoxide & acetonitrile, S_N1 and E1 products may be observed.	Rapid S_N2 substitution for 1º halides (note there are no β hydrogens). E2 elimination will compete with substitution in 2º-halides, and dominate in the case of 3º-halides. In high dielectric ionizing solvents S_N1 and E1 products may be formed.	Nitrogen and sulfur nucleophiles will give S_N2 substitution in the case of 1º and 2º-halides. 3º-halides will probably give E2 elimination with nitrogen nucleophiles (they are bases). In high dielectric ionizing solvents S_N1 and E1 products may be formed. Water hydrolysis will be favorable for 2º & 3º-halides.

Experimental Observations

Experimental observations are reported for the following reactions. These reactions include a range of alkyl halide structures in a variety of reaction conditions to illustrate the reaction patterns summarized above. In describing these, it is useful to designate the halogen-

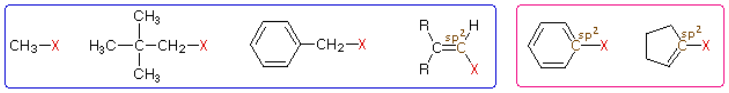
bearing carbon as **alpha** and the carbon atom(s) adjacent to it as **beta**, as noted in the first four equations shown below. Replacement or substitution of the halogen on the α-carbon (colored maroon) by a nucleophilic reagent is a commonly observed reaction, as shown in equations **1, 2, 5, 6 & 7** below. Also, since the electrophilic character introduced by the halogen extends to the β-carbons, and since nucleophiles are also bases, the possibility of base induced H-X elimination must also be considered, as illustrated by equation **3**. Finally, there are some combinations of alkyl halides and nucleophiles that fail to show any reaction over a 24 hour period, such as the example in equation **4**. For consistency, alkyl bromides have been used in these examples. Similar reactions occur when alkyl chlorides or iodides are used, but the speed of the reactions and the exact distribution of products will change.



In order to understand why some combinations of alkyl halides and nucleophiles give a substitution reaction, whereas other combinations give elimination, and still others give no observable reaction, we must investigate systematically the way in which changes in reaction variables perturb the course of the reaction. The following general equation summarizes the factors that will be important in such an investigation.

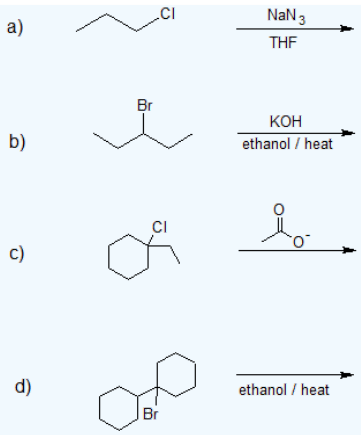


Friendly Reminder: One conclusion, relating the structure of the R-group to possible products, should be immediately obvious. **If R- has no beta-hydrogens an elimination reaction is not possible**, unless a structural rearrangement occurs first. The first four halides shown on the left below do not give elimination reactions on treatment with base, because they have no β-hydrogens. The two halides on the right do not normally undergo such reactions because the potential elimination products have highly strained double or triple bonds. It is also worth noting that sp^2 hybridized C–X compounds, such as the three on the right, do not normally undergo nucleophilic substitution reactions, unless other functional groups perturb the double bond(s).



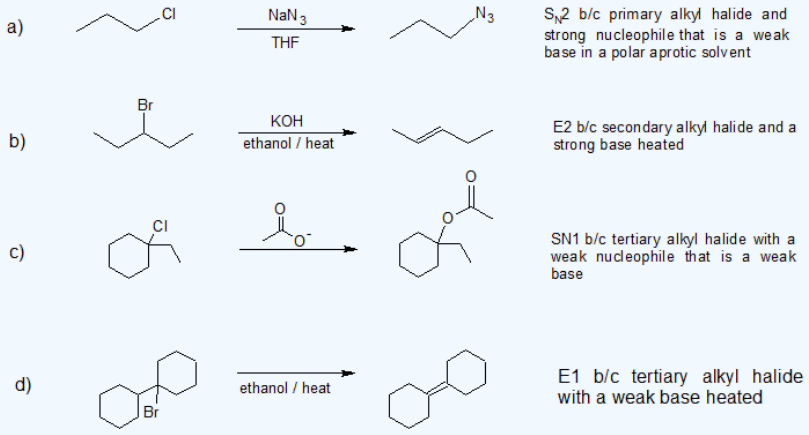
Exercise

1. Identify the dominant reaction mechanism (S_N1, S_N2, E1, or E2) and predict the major product for the following reactions.



Answer

1.



Contributors

- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

9.8: Comparing Substitution and Elimination Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

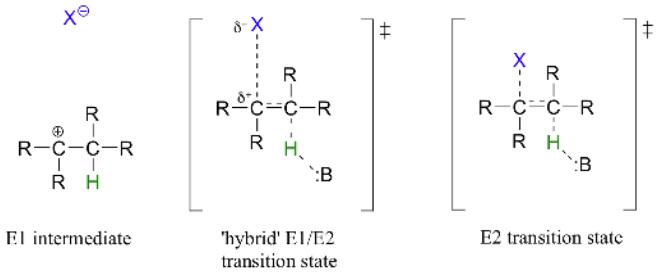
9.9: Biological Elimination Reactions

Learning Objective

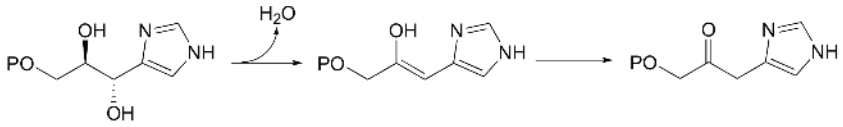
- discuss enzymatic elimination reactions of histidine

Enzymatic E1 and E2 reactions

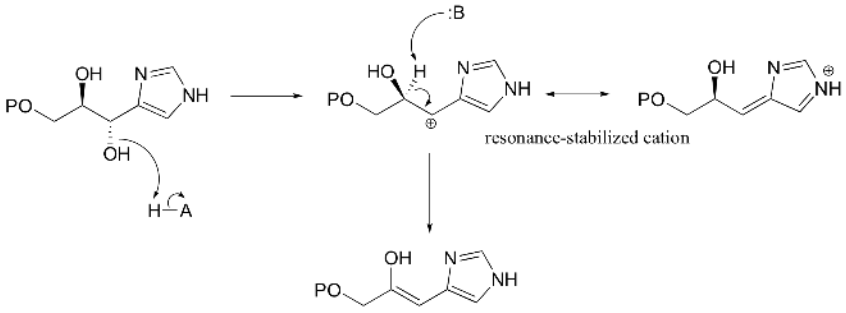
While most biochemical b-elimination reactions are of the E1cb type, some enzymatic E2 and E1 reactions are known. Like the enzymatic S_N2 and S_N1 substitution mechanisms discussed in chapters 8 and 9, the E2 and E1 models represent two possible mechanistic extremes, and actual enzymatic elimination reactions may fall somewhere in between. In an E1/E2 hybrid elimination, for example, C_β-X bond cleavage may be quite advanced (but not complete) before proton abstraction takes place - this would lead to the build-up of transient *partial* positive charge on C_β, but a discreet carbocation intermediate would not form. The extent to which partial positive charge builds up determines whether we refer to the mechanism as 'E1-like' or 'E2-like'.



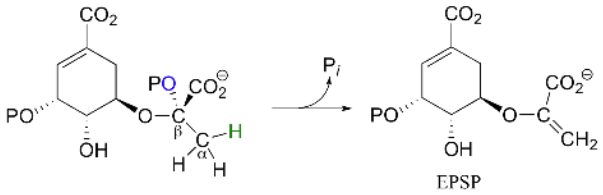
A reaction in the histidine biosynthetic pathway provides a good example of a biological E1-like elimination step (we're looking specifically here at the first, enol-forming step in the reaction below - the second step is simply a tautomerization from the enol to the ketone product.



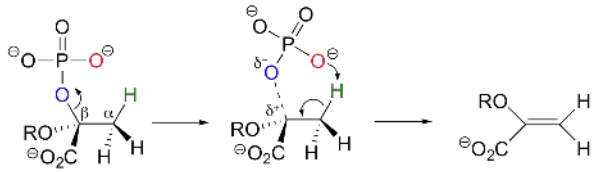
Notice in this mechanism that an E1cb elimination is not possible - there is no electron-withdrawing group (like a carbonyl) to stabilize the carbanion intermediate that would form if the proton were abstracted first. There is, however, an electron-*donating* group (the lone pair on a nitrogen) that can stabilize a positively-charged intermediate that forms when the water leaves.



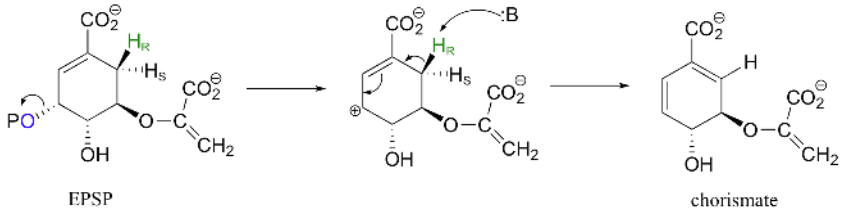
Another good example of a biological E1-like reaction is the elimination of phosphate in the formation of 5-enolpyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate (EPSP), an intermediate in the synthesis of aromatic amino acids.



Experimental evidence indicates that significant positive charge probably builds up on C_β of the starting compound, implying that C-O bond cleavage is advanced before proton abstraction occurs (notice the parallels to the Cope elimination in the previous section):

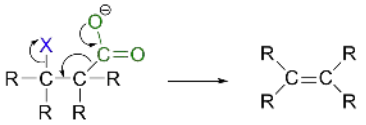


The very next step in the aromatic acid biosynthesis pathway is also an elimination, this time a 1,6-conjugated elimination rather than a simple beta-elimination.

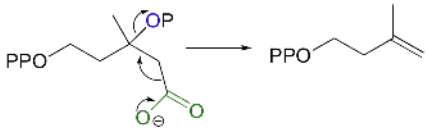


An E1-like mechanism (as illustrated above) has been proposed for this step, but other evidence suggests that a free-radical mechanism may be involved.

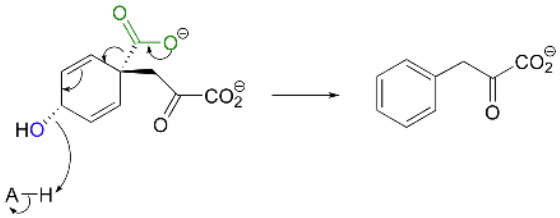
While most E1 and E2 reactions involve proton abstraction, eliminations can also incorporate a decarboxylation step.



Isopentenyl diphosphate, the 'building block' for all isoprenoid compounds, is formed from a decarboxylation-elimination reaction.



Phenylpyruvate, a precursor in the biosynthesis of phenylalanine, results from a conjugated 1,6 decarboxylation-elimination.



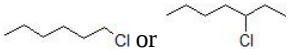
Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

9.9: Biological Elimination Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.10: Additional Exercises

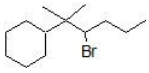
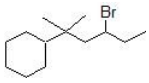
SN2

7-1 Predict which compound in each pair would undergo the SN2 reaction faster.

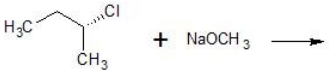
a)  or

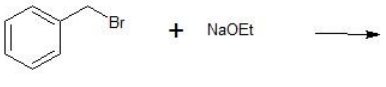
b)  or 

c)  or 

d)  or 

7-2 Predict the products of these nucleophilic substitution reactions, including stereochemistry when appropriate.

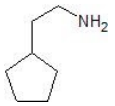
a) 

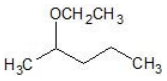
b) 

c) $CH_3CH_2C(CH_3)_2Cl + NaCN \rightarrow$

d) (S)-2-bromopentane + sodium hydroxide $\rightarrow$

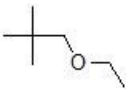
7-3 Show how each compound might be synthesized using S_N2 reaction.

a) 

b) 

c) 

7-4 Show 2 ways to synthesize the ether below using S_N2 reaction



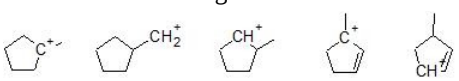
7-5 Of the two ways of synthesizing the compound in previous question (**7-4**), which one would be the most efficient? Why? Show the mechanism of the reaction as part of your explanation.

7-6 Arrange the compounds below in increasing order of nucleophilicity.

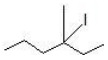
H_2O; NH_2^-; CH_3O^-; $CH_3CH_2O^-$

SN1

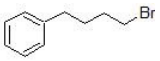
7-7 List the following carbocations in order of increasing stability.

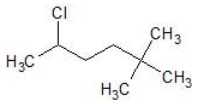


7-8 Give the solvolysis product expected when the compound is heated in methanol.

a) 

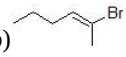
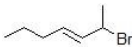
b) 

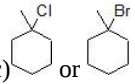
c) 

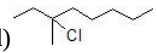
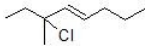
d) 

7-9 Predict with compound in each pair will undergo an SN1 reaction more quickly.

a)  or 

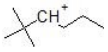
b)  or 

c) 

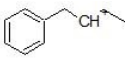
d)  or 

7-10 Show how the following carbocations would rearrange to become more stable. Draw the mechanism of the rearrangement.

a) 

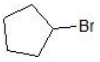
b) 

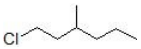
c) 

d) 

SN2 vs SN1

7-11 Predict whether each compound below would be more likely to undergo a S_N2 or S_N1 reaction.

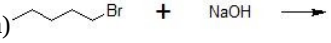
a) 

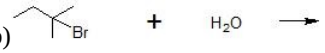
b) 

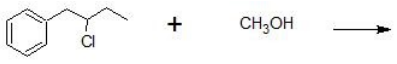
c) 

d) 

7-12 Predict the product of the following reactions.

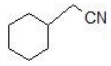
a) 

b) 

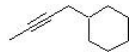
c) 

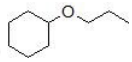
d) 

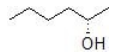
7-13 Show how each compound may be synthesized using nucleophilic substitution reactions.

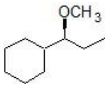
a) 

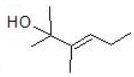
b) 

c) 

d) 

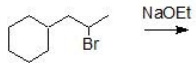
e) 

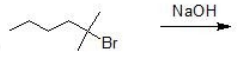
f) 

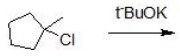
g) 

E2 vs E1

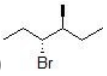
7-14 Predict the major products of the following reactions.

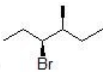
a) 

b) 

c) 

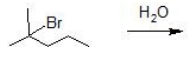
7-15 Draw the expected major product when each of the following compounds is treated with hydroxide to give an E2 reaction.

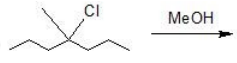
a) 

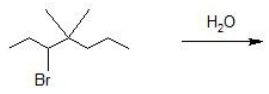
b) 

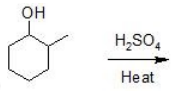
c) 

7-16 Predict all the elimination products of the following reactions and label the major product.

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

Substitution vs Elimination

7-17 Identify the function of the following reagents. The reagents will be a strong/weak nucleophile and/or a strong/weak base.

a) Cl^-

b) NaH

c) t-BuO^-

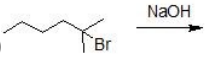
d) OH^-

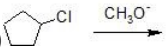
e) H_2O

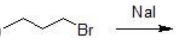
f) HS^-

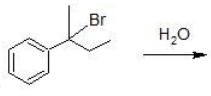
g) MeOH

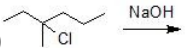
7-18 Identify which mechanism the following reactions would undergo.

a) 

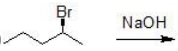
b) 

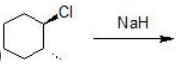
c) 

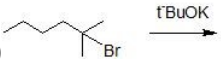
d) 

e) 

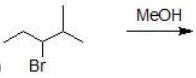
7-19 Identify all the products of the following reactions and specify the major product.

a) 

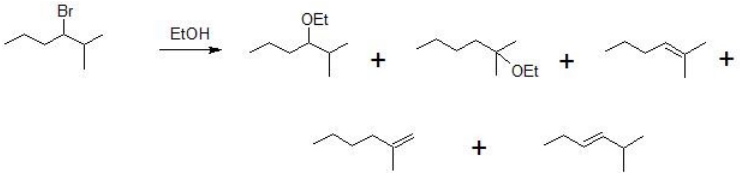
b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 

7-20 The following reaction yields five different products. Give the mechanisms for how each is formed.



9.10: Additional Exercises is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises

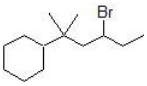
SN2

7-1

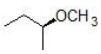
a) 

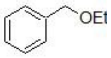
b) 

c) 

d) 

7-2

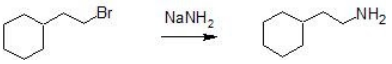
a) 

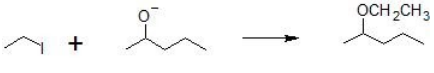
b) 

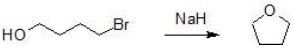
c) No reaction

d) 

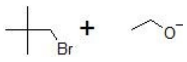
7-3

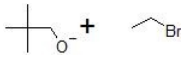
a) 

b) 

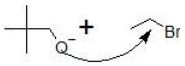
c) 

7-4

First method: 

Second method: 

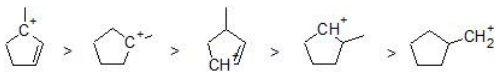
7-5 The second method is more efficient since the alkyl halide is not sterically hindered



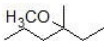
7-6 $H_2O < NH_2^- < CH_3CH_2O^- < CH_3O^-$

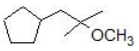
SN1

7-7

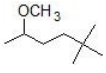


7-8

a) 

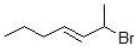
b) 

c) No reaction

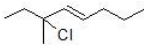
d) 

7-9

a) 

b) 

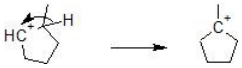
c) 

d) 

7-10

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

SN2 vs SN1

7-11

a) S_N2

b) S_N2

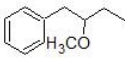
c) S_N1

d) S_N1

7-12

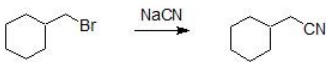
a) 

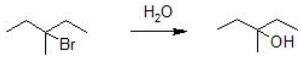
b) 

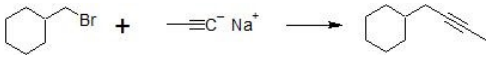
c) 

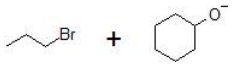
d) 

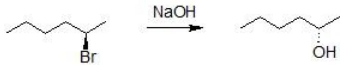
7-13

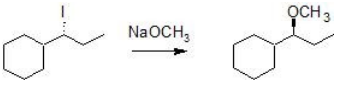
a) 

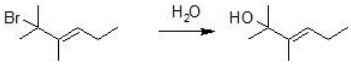
b) 

c) 

d) 

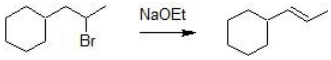
e) 

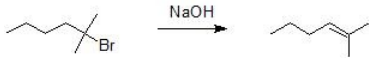
f) 

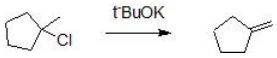
g) 

E2 vs E1

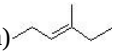
7-14

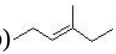
a) 

b) 

c) 

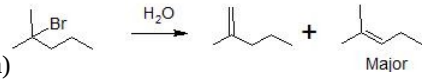
7-15

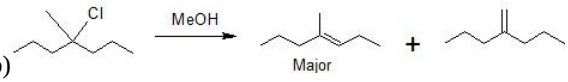
a) 

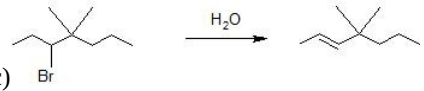
b) 

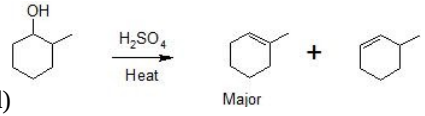
c) 

7-16

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

Substitution vs Elimination

7-17

a) Cl^- ; strong nucleophile

b) NaH ; strong base

c) t-BuO^- ; strong base

d) OH^- ; strong nucleophile ; strong base

e) H_2O ; weak nucleophile ; weak base

f) HS^- ; strong nucleophile

g) MeOH ; weak nucleophile ; weak base

7-18

a) E2, S_N1

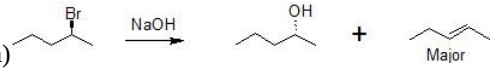
b) S_N2, E2

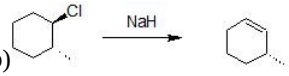
c) S_N2

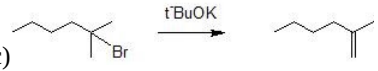
d) S_N1, E1

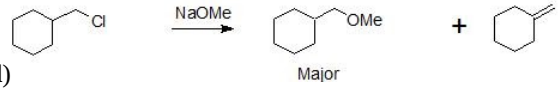
e) E2, S_N1

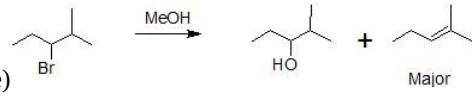
7-19

a) 

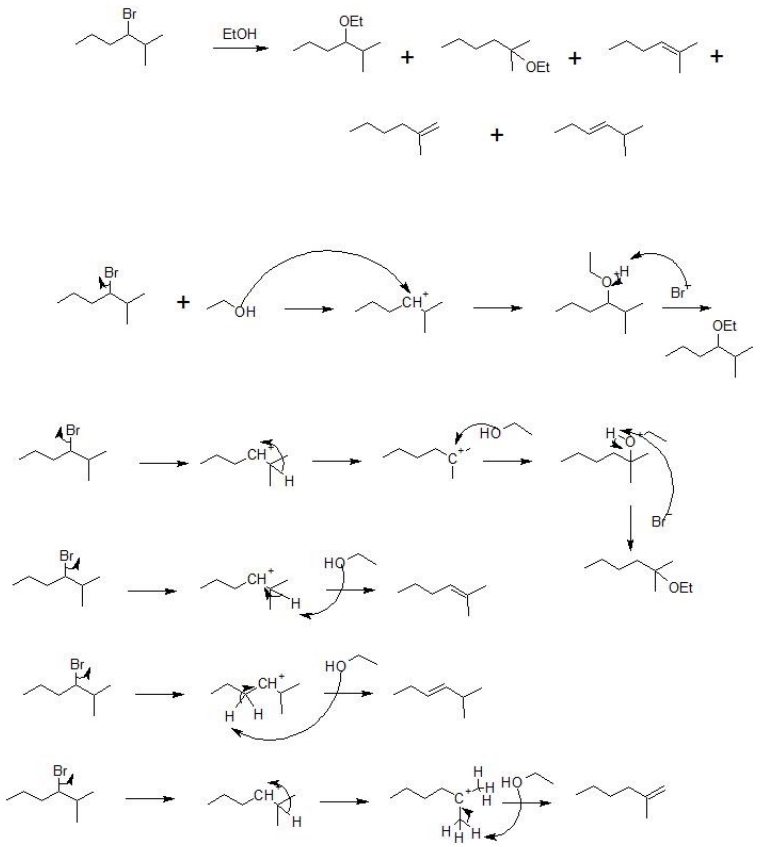
b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 

7-20



9.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Properties and Reactions of Alkenes

10.1: Alkene Structure
10.2: Physical Properties and Important Common Names
10.3: The Alkene Double Bond and Stereoisomerism
10.4: Degrees of Unsaturation
10.5: The E/Z System (when cis/trans does not work)
10.6: Stability of Alkenes
10.7: Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides
10.8: Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols
10.9: Additional Exercises. Part 1
10.10: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 1
10.11: Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs)
10.12: Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Symmetrical Alkenes
10.13: Alkene Asymmetry and Markovnikov's Rule
10.14: Hydration- Acid Catalyzed Addition of Water
10.15: Hydration- Oxymercuration-Demercuration
10.16: Hydration - Hydroboration-Oxidation
10.17: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Achiral Alkenes
10.18: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Chiral Alkenes
10.19: Addition of Halogens
10.20: Formation of Halohydrins
10.21: Reduction of Alkenes - Catalytic Hydrogenation
10.22: Oxidation of Alkenes - Epoxidation
10.23: Dihydroxylation of Alkenes
10.24: Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes
10.25: Additional Exercises, Part 2
10.26: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 2

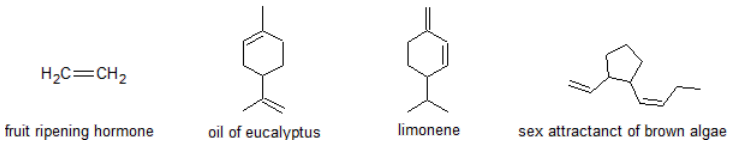
10: Properties and Reactions of Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.1: Alkene Structure

Learning Objective

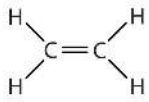
- describe the electronic structure of alkenes using Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory and Orbital Hybridization

Alkenes are a class of hydrocarbons (i.e., containing only carbon and hydrogen). They are unsaturated compounds with at least one carbon-to-carbon double bond. The double bond makes alkenes more reactive than alkanes. Olefin is another term used to describe alkenes. The alkene group can also be called a vinyl group and the carbons sharing the double bond can be called vinyl carbons.



Alkenes

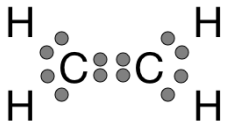
Nomenclature of alkenes is covered in chapter 3. Condensed structural formulas for the first eight alkenes are listed in Table **10.1.1** along with some relevant physical propoerties. Thus, CH_2=CH_2 stands for



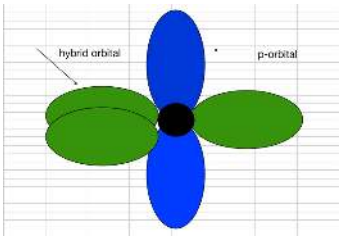
The double bond is shared by the two carbon atoms and does not involve the hydrogen atoms, although the condensed formula does not make this point obvious. Note that the molecular formula for ethene is C_2H_4, whereas that for ethane is C_2H_6.

Structure of Ethene - the simplest alkene

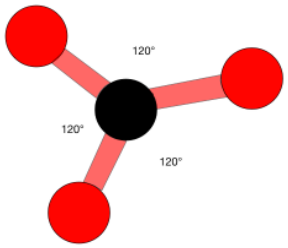
Ethene is not a very complicated molecule. It is made up of four $1s^1$ hydrogen atoms and two $2s^2$ $2p_x^1$ $2p_y^2$ carbon atoms. These carbon atoms already have four electrons, but they each want to get four more so that they have a full eight in the valence shell. Having eight valence electrons around carbon gives the atom itself the same electron configuration as neon, a noble gas. Carbon wants to have the same configuration as Neon because when it has eight valence electrons carbon is at its most stable, lowest energy state, it has all of the electrons that it wants, so it is no longer reactive.



This forms a total of three bonds to each carbon atom, giving them an sp^2 hybridization. Since the carbon atom is forming three sigma bonds instead of the four that it can, it only needs to hybridize three of its outer orbitals, instead of four. It does this by using the $2s$ electron and two of the $2p$ electrons, leaving the other unchanged. This new orbital is called an sp^2 hybrid because that's exactly what it is, it is made from one s orbital and two p orbitals.



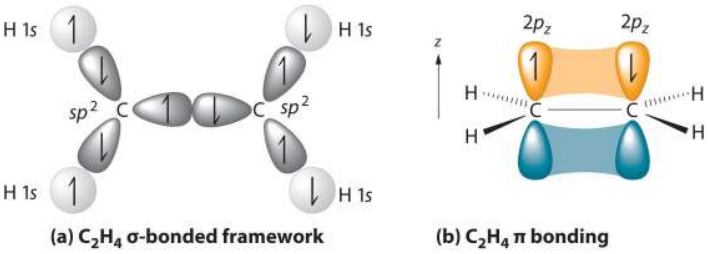
When atoms are an sp^2 hybrid they have a trigonal planar structure. These structures are very similar to a 'peace' sign, there is a central atom with three atoms around it, all on one plane. Trigonal planar molecules have an ideal bond angle of 120° on each side.



The H-C-H bond angle is 117°, which is very close to the ideal 120° of a carbon with sp^2 hybridization. The other two angles (H-C=C) are both 121.5°.

Rigidity in Ethene

There is rigidity in the ethene molecule due to the double-bonded carbons. A double bond consists of one sigma bond formed by overlap of sp^2 hybrid orbitals and one pi bond formed by overlap of parallel 2 p orbitals. In ethene there is no free rotation about the carbon-carbon sigma bond because these two carbons also share a π bond. A π bond is only formed when there is adequate overlap between both top and bottom p-orbitals. Free rotation the p-orbitals cause them to be 90° from each other breaking the π bond because there would be no overlap. Since the π bond is essential to the structure of ethene it must not break, so there can be not free rotation about the carbon-carbon sigma bond. The two carbon atoms of a double bond and the four atoms attached to them lie in a plane, with bond angles of approximately 120° as shownn in the figure below



(a) The σ-bonded framework is formed by the overlap of two sets of singly occupied carbon sp^2 hybrid orbitals and four singly occupied hydrogen 1s orbitals to form electron-pair bonds. This uses 10 of the 12 valence electrons to form a total of five σ bonds (four C–H bonds and one C–C bond).

(b) One singly occupied unhybridized $2p_z$ orbital remains on each carbon atom to form a carbon–carbon π bond. (Note: by convention, in planar molecules the axis perpendicular to the molecular plane is the z-axis.)

The first two alkenes in Table 10.1.1, ethene and propene, are most often called by their common names—ethylene and propylene, respectively (Figure 10.1.1). Ethylene is a major commercial chemical. The US chemical industry produces about 25 billion kilograms of ethylene annually, more than any other synthetic organic chemical. More than half of this ethylene goes into the manufacture of polyethylene, one of the most familiar plastics. Propylene is also an important industrial chemical. It is converted to plastics, isopropyl alcohol, and a variety of other products.

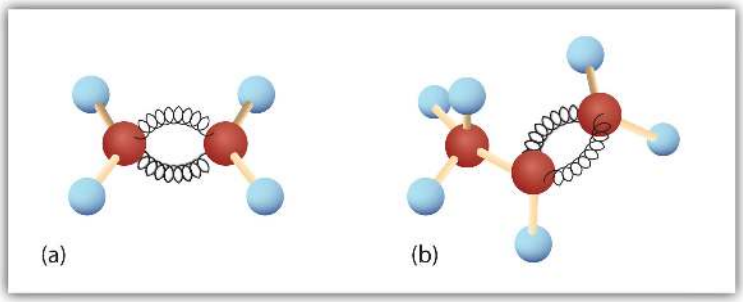


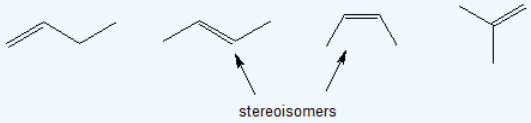
Figure 10.1.1: *Ethene and Propene. The ball-and-spring models of ethene/ethylene (a) and propene/propylene (b) show their respective shapes, especially bond angles.*

Exercise

1. Although there is only one alkene with the formula C_2H_4 (ethene) and only one with the formula C_3H_6 (propene), there are several alkenes with the formula C_4H_8. Draw all of the possible bond line structures for alkenes with the formula C_4H_8 including all possible structural and stereoisomers.

Answer

1. There are three possible structural isomers. 2-butene can exist as two different stereoisomers.



10.1: Alkene Structure is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

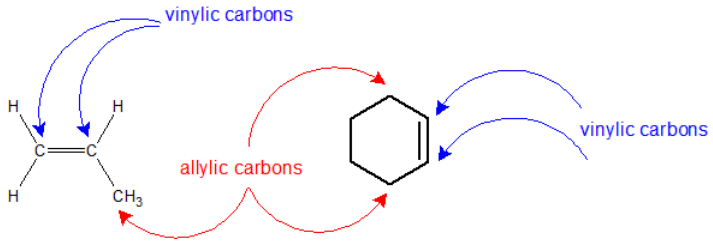
10.2: Physical Properties and Important Common Names

Learning Objectives

- memorize the common names for vinylic and allylic groups including isoprene and styrene
- predict the relative physical properties of alkenes

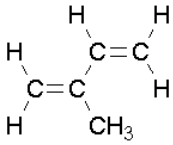
Common names

The carbon atoms sharing the double bond can be referred to as the "vinyl carbons". The carbon atoms adjacent to the vinyl carbon atoms are called "allylic carbons". These carbon atoms have unique reactivity because of the potential for interaction with the pi bond.



Overall, common names remove the -ane suffix and add -ylene. There are a couple of unique ones like ethenyl's common name is vinyl and 2-propenyl's common name is allyl that need to be memorized.

- vinyl substituent $H_2C=CH-$
- allyl substituent $H_2C=CH-CH_2-$
- allene molecule $H_2C=C=CH_2$
- isoprene is shown below



Physical Properties of Selected Alkenes

Some representative alkenes—their names, structures, and physical properties—are given in the table below.

Physical Properties of Some Selected Alkenes

IUPAC Name	Molecular Formula	Condensed Structural Formula	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)
ethene	C_2H_4	$CH_2=CH_2$	–169	–104
propene	C_3H_6	$CH_2=CHCH_3$	–185	–47
1-butene	C_4H_8	$CH_2=CHCH_2CH_3$	–185	–6
1-pentene	C_5H_{10}	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_2CH_3$	–138	30
1-hexene	C_6H_{12}	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_3CH_3$	–140	63
1-heptene	C_7H_{14}	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_4CH_3$	–119	94
1-octene	C_8H_{16}	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_5CH_3$	–102	121

Polarity and Physical Properties

Alkenes are non-polar hydrocarbons. The dominant intermolecular forces shared by alkenes are the London dispersion forces. These interactions are weak and temporary, so they are easily disrupted.

Physical States: The physical states reflect the weak attractive forces between molecules. Ethene, propene, and butene exist as colorless gases. Alkenes with 5 to 14 carbons are liquids, and alkenes with 15 carbons or more are solids.

Density: Alkenes are less dense than water with most densities in the range of 0.6 to 0.7 g/mL. Alkenes float on top of water.

Solubility: Alkenes are virtually insoluble in water, but dissolve in organic solvents. The reasons for this are exactly the same as for the alkanes.

Boiling Points: The boiling point of each alkene is very similar to that of the alkane with the same number of carbon atoms. Boiling points of alkenes depend on more molecular mass (chain length). The more intermolecular mass is added, the higher the boiling point. Intermolecular forces of alkenes gets stronger with increase in the size of the molecules. In each case, the alkene has a boiling point which is a small number of degrees lower than the corresponding alkane. The only attractions involved are Van der Waals dispersion forces, and these depend on the shape of the molecule and the number of electrons it contains.

Compound	**Boiling points (oC)**
Ethene	-104
Propene	-47
Trans-2-Butene	0.9
Cis-2-butene	3.7
Trans 1,2-dichlorobutene	155
Cis 1,2-dichlorobutene	152
1-Pentene	30
Trans-2-Pentene	36
Cis-2-Pentene	37
1-Heptene	115
3-Octene	122
3-Nonene	147
5-Decene	170

Melting Points: Melting points of alkenes depends on the packaging of the molecules so the stereochemistry of the carbon-carbon double bond has a strong influence on the relative melting points. Alkenes have similar melting points to that of alkanes, however, in cis isomers molecules are package in a U-bending shape, therefore, will display a lower melting points to that of the trans isomers. This effect is notable when comparing the melting points of fats and oils. The differences in the

melting points is strongly influenced by the long hydrocarbon tails. Oils have a greater number of cis double bonds and exist as liquids at room temperature. Whereas, fats are primarily saturated and exist as solids at room temperature.

Compound	Melting Points (0C)
Ethene	-169
Propene	-185
Butene	-138
1-Pentene	-165
Trans-2-Pentene	-135
Cis-2-Pentene	-180
1-Heptene	-119
3-Octene	-101.9
3-Nonene	-81.4
5-Decene	-66.3

Exercise

1. Draw the bond-line structures for the following compounds in order of increasing boiling point: 2-methyl-2-pentene; 2-hexene; isoprene; 2-heptene.

2. Which phase will contain the most 3-octene?

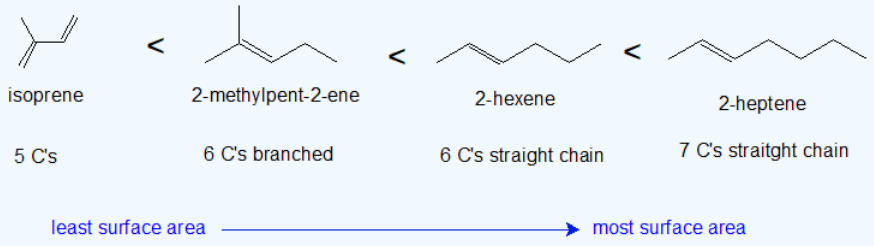
a) water or hexane

b) water or benzene

c) methanol or 1-octanol

Answer

1. relative boiling points



2. a) hexane (Hydrocarbons are hydrophobic and lipophilic.)

b) benzene (Hydrocarbons are hydrophobic and lipophilic.)

c) 1-octanol (Hydrocarbons seek the solvent with the most carbons and fewest polar groups.)

Contributors

- Trung Nguyen
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Layne A. Morsch (University of Illinois Springfield)

10.2: Physical Properties and Important Common Names is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.3: The Alkene Double Bond and Stereoisomerism

Learning Objective

- recognize and classify the stereochemistry of alkenes using the cis/trans system

Steroisomerism in Alkenes

There is free rotation about the carbon-to-carbon single bonds (C–C) in alkanes. For example, in 1,2-dichloroethane, there is free rotation about the C–C bond. The two models shown represent exactly the same molecule; they are *not* isomers. You can draw structural formulas that look different, but if you bear in mind the possibility of this free rotation about single bonds, you should recognize that these two structures represent the same molecule:

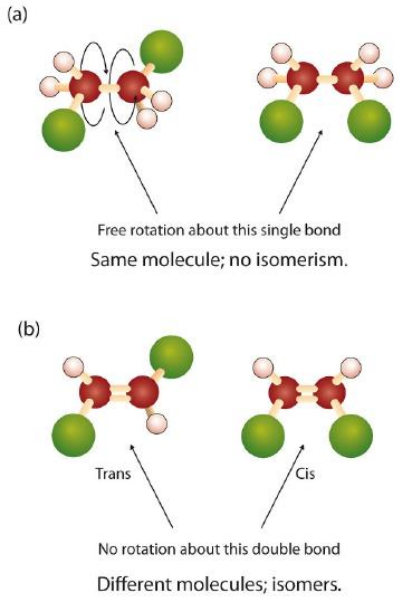


In contrast, the structure of alkenes requires that the carbon atoms of a double bond and the two atoms bonded to each carbon atom all lie in a single plane, and that each doubly bonded carbon atom lies in the center of a triangle. This part of the molecule's structure is rigid; rotation about doubly bonded carbon atoms is *not* possible without rupturing the bond. In 1,2-dichloroethene, restricted rotation about the double bond means that the relative positions of substituent groups above or below the double bond become significant. This leads to a special kind of isomerism. The isomer in which the two chlorine (Cl) atoms lie on the same side of the molecule is called the cis isomer (Latin *cis*, meaning "on this side") and is named cis-1,2-dichloroethene. The isomer with the two Cl atoms on opposite sides of the molecule is the trans isomer (Latin *trans*, meaning "across") and is named *trans*-1,2-dichloroethene. These two compounds are cis-trans isomers (or geometric isomers), compounds that have different configurations (groups permanently in different places in space) because of the presence of a rigid structure in their molecule.



cis-1,2-dichloroethene trans-1,2-dichloroethene

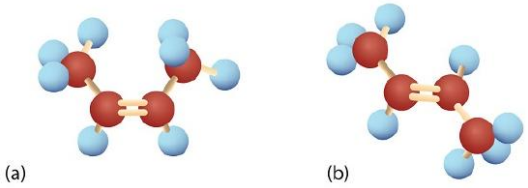
The diagram below summarizes the differences between alkanes and alkenes with respect to rotation where the carbons are red, hydrogens are off-white, and the chlorines are green.



In 1,2-dichloroethane (a), free rotation about the C–C bond allows the two structures to be interconverted by a twist of one end relative to the other. In 1,2-dichloroethene (b), restricted rotation about the double bond means that the relative positions of substituent groups above or below the double bond are significant.

Geometric Isomers have Different Physical Properties

Consider the alkene with the condensed structural formula $CH_3CH=CHCH_3$. We could name it 2-butene, but there are actually two such compounds; the double bond results in cis-trans isomerism. *Cis*-2-butene has both methyl groups on the same side of the molecule. *Trans*-2-butene has the methyl groups on opposite sides of the molecule as shown in the diagram below.



Cis-2-butene and trans-2-butene are unique compounds with slightly different physical properties as shown below. For stereospecific reactions, these compounds produce different stereoisomeric products under the same reaction conditions. This phenonenom of reactivity will be explored more closely in the next chapter on alkene reactivity.



cis-2-butene
boiling point: 3.7°C
density: 0.641 g/mL

trans-2-butene
boiling point: 0.9°C
density: 0.626 g/mL

Example

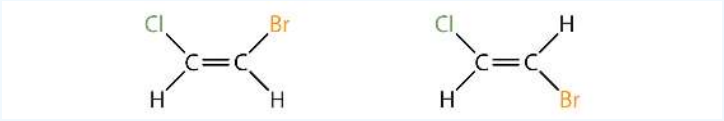
Which compounds can exist as cis-trans (geometric) isomers? Draw them.

1. CHCl=CHBr
2. $CH_2=CBrCH_3$
3. $(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2CH_3$
4. $CH_3CH=CHCH_2CH_3$

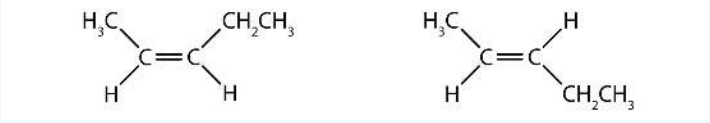
Solutions Explained

All four structures have a double bond and thus meet rule 1 for cis-trans isomerism.

1. This compound meets rule 2; it has two nonidentical groups on *each* carbon atom (H and Cl on one and H and Br on the other). It exists as both cis and trans isomers:



2. This compound has two hydrogen atoms on one of its doubly bonded carbon atoms; it fails rule 2 and does not exist as cis and trans isomers.
3. This compound has two methyl (CH_3) groups on one of its doubly bonded carbon atoms. It fails rule 2 and does not exist as cis and trans isomers.
4. This compound meets rule 2; it has two nonidentical groups on *each* carbon atom and exists as both cis and trans isomers:



Exercise

Exercise

1. If the compound below can exist as cis-trans isomers, then draw both bond-line structures.

a. CH_2=$CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$
b. CH_3CH=$CHCH_2CH_3$
c. CH_3CH_2CH=$CHCH_2CH_3$
d. $CH_2C(CH_3)CH_2CH_3$
e. $CH_3C(CH_3)CHCH_3$

2. Write out the condensed structure for ethene.

3. Draw the Kekulé (Lewis) structure for ethene.

4. Draw the bond-line structure for ethene.

5. Why is it that the carbons in ethene cannot freely rotate around the carbon-carbon double bond?

Answer

1.

a. No cis/trans possible b/c one of the vinylic carbons is bonded to two hydrogen atoms.

b. 

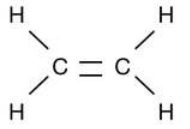
c. 

d. No cis/trans possible b/c one of the vinylic carbons is bonded to two hydrogen atoms.

e. No cis/trans possible b/c one of the vinylic carbons is bonded to two methyl groups.

2. CH_2CH_2 The carbon-carbon double bond is not shown, but can be recognized by knowing the neutral bonding patterns of carbon.

3.



4." - " Note how easy it would be to misinterpret this small dash, therefore, the structure for ethene is typically shown with a condensed or Kekule structure.

5. The carbons cannot freely rotate about the carbon-carbon double bond because rotating p-orbitals would have to pass through a 90° point where there would no longer be any overlap, so the π bond would have to break for there to be free rotation.

References

1. Vollhardt, K. P.C. & Shore, N. (2007). *Organic Chemistry* (5th Ed.). New York: W. H. Freeman.

Outside Links

- Sigma Bond: http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Sigma_bond
- Pi Bond: http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Pi_bond
- Ethene (Ethylene): http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Ethene

- Trigonal Planar Structure & Picture: http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Trigonal_planar
- bcs.whfreeman.com/vollhardtsc...5e/default.asp

Contributors and Attributions

10.3: The Alkene Double Bond and Stereoisomerism is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

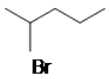
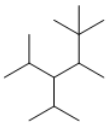
10.4: Degrees of Unsaturation

Learning Objectives

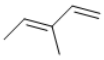
- calculate the Degrees of Unsaturation (DU) and apply it to alkene structure

Saturated and Unsaturated Molecules

In the lab, saturation may be thought of as the point when a solution cannot dissolve anymore of a substance added to it. In terms of degrees of unsaturation, a molecule only containing single bonds with no rings is considered saturated.

$CH_3CH_2CH_3$			1-methyoxypentane

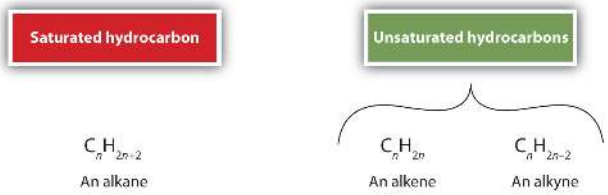
Unlike saturated molecules, unsaturated molecules contain double bond(s), triple bond(s) and/or ring(s).

$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$				3-chloro-5-octyne

There are many ways one can go about determining the structure of an unknown organic molecule. Although, nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) and infrared radiation (IR) are the primary ways of determining molecular structures, these techniques require expensive instrumentation and are not always readily available. Fortunately, calculating the degrees of unsaturation provides useful information about the structure. The degree of unsaturation indicates the total number of pi bonds and rings within a molecule which makes it easier for one to figure out the molecular structure.

DU = Degrees of Unsaturation = (number of pi bonds) + (number of rings)

Alkenes ($R_2C{=}CR_2$) and alkynes (R–C≡C–R) are called unsaturated hydrocarbons because they have fewer hydrogen atoms than does an alkane with the same number of carbon atoms, as is indicated in the following general formulas:



Calculating The Degree of Unsaturation (DU)

If the molecular formula is given, plug in the numbers into this formula:

$$DoU = \frac{2C + 2 + N - X - H}{2} \tag{7.2.1}$$

- C is the number of carbons
- N is the number of nitrogens
- X is the number of halogens (F, Cl, Br, I)

- ***H*** is the number of hydrogens

The molecular formula of a hydrocarbon provides information about the possible structural types it may represent. A saturated molecule contains only single bonds and no rings. Another way of interpreting this is that a saturated molecule has the maximum number of hydrogen atoms possible to be an acyclic alkane. Thus, the number of hydrogens can be represented by 2C+2, which is the general molecular representation of an alkane. As an example, for the molecular formula C3H4 the number of actual hydrogens needed for the compound to be saturated is 8

[2C+2=(2x3)+2=8.]

The compound needs 4 more hydrogens in order to be fully saturated (expected number of hydrogens-observed number of hydrogens=8-4=4). Degrees of unsaturation is equal to 2, or half the number of hydrogens the molecule needs to be classified as saturated. Hence, the DoB formula divides by 2. The formula subtracts the number of X's because a halogen (X) replaces a hydrogen in a compound. For instance, in chloroethane, C2H5Cl, there is one less hydrogen compared to ethane, C2H6. For example, consider compounds having the formula C5H8. The formula of the five-carbon alkane pentane is C5H12 so the difference in hydrogen content is 4. This difference suggests such compounds may have a triple bond, two double bonds, a ring plus a double bond, or two rings. Some examples are shown here, and there are at least fourteen others!

For a compound to be saturated, there is one more hydrogen in a molecule when nitrogen is present. Therefore, we add the number of nitrogens (N). This can be seen with C_3H_9N compared to C_3H_8. Oxygen and sulfur are not included in the formula because saturation is unaffected by these elements. As seen in alcohols, the same number of hydrogens in ethanol, C_2H_5OH, matches the number of hydrogens in ethane, C_2H_6.

The following chart illustrates the possible combinations of the number of double bond(s), triple bond(s), and/or ring(s) for a given degree of unsaturation. Each row corresponds to a different combination.

- One degree of unsaturation is equivalent to 1 ring or 1 double bond (1 π bond).
- Two degrees of unsaturation is equivalent to 2 double bonds, 1 ring and 1 double bond, 2 rings, or 1 triple bond (2 π bonds).

When the DU is 4 or greater, the presence of benzene rings is very likely.

DU	Possible combinations of rings/ bonds		
	# of rings	# of double bonds	# of triple bonds
1	1	0	0
	0	1	0
2	2	0	0
	0	2	0
	0	0	1
	1	1	0

Remember, the degrees of unsaturation only gives the sum of double bonds, triple bonds and/or rings. For instance, a degree of unsaturation of 3 can contain 3 rings, 2 rings+1 double bond, 1 ring+2 double bonds, 1 ring+1 triple bond, 1 double bond+1 triple bond, *or* 3 double bonds.

Example: Benzene

What is the Degree of Unsaturation for Benzene?

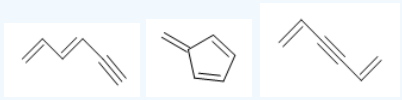
Solution

The molecular formula for benzene is C_6H_6. Thus,

DU= 4, where C=6, N=0,X=0, and H=6. 1 DoB can equal 1 ring or 1 double bond. This corresponds to benzene containing 1 ring and 3 double bonds.

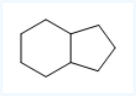
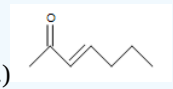
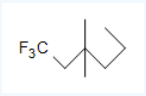


However, when given the molecular formula C_6H_6, benzene is only one of many possible structures (isomers). The following structures all have DU of 4 and have the same molecular formula as benzene. However, these compounds are very rare, unlike benzene. We will learn more about the reasons for benzen's high stability when we studey aromaticity in later chapters.



Exercises

1. Are the following molecules saturated or unsaturated:

1.  (b.)  (c.)  (d.) $C_{10}H_6N_4$

2. Using the molecules from (1) above, give the degrees of unsaturation for each.
3. Calculate the degrees of unsaturation, classify the compound as saturated or unsaturated, and list all the ring/pi bond combination possible for the following molecular formulas: (a.) C_9H_{20} (b.) C_7H_8 (c.) C_5H_7Cl (d.) $C_9H_9NO_4$
4. Calculate degrees of unsaturation (DoU) for the following, and propose a structure for each.

    a) C_5H_8

    b) C_4H_4

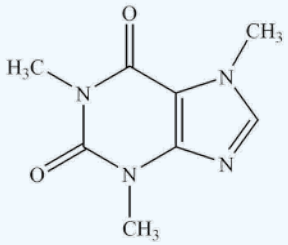
5. Calculate the degree of unsaturation (DoU) for the following molecules

    a) C_5H_5N

    b) $C_5H_5NO_2$

    c) C_5H_5Br

6. The following molecule is caffeine ($C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$), determine the degrees of unsaturation (DoU).



Answer

1.

(a.) **unsaturated** (E*ven though rings only contain single bonds, rings are considered unsaturated.)*

(b.) **unsaturated**

(c.) **saturated**

(d.) **unsaturated**

2. *If the molecular structure is given, the easiest way to solve is to count the number of double bonds, triple bonds and/or rings. However, you can also determine the molecular formula and solve for the degrees of unsaturation by using the formula.*

(a.) **2**

(b.) **2** *(one double bond and the double bond from the carbonyl)*

(c.) **0**

(d.) **10**

3.

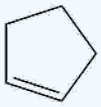
(a.) DU =**0 ; saturated** (Remember-a saturated molecule only contains single bonds)

(b.) DU = **4; unsaturated** *The molecule can contain any of these combinations of rings and pi bonds that add up to 4, such as* **(i) 4 double bonds (ii) 4 rings (iii) 2 double bonds+2 rings (iv) 1 double bond+3 rings (v) 3 double bonds+1 ring (vi) 1 triple bond+2 rings (vii) 2 triple bonds (viii) 1 triple bond+1 double bond+1 ring (ix) 1 triple bond+2 double bonds**

(c.) DU = **2; unsaturated (i) 1 triple bond (ii) 1 ring+1 double bond (iii) 2 rings (iv) 2 double bonds**

(d.) DU = **6; (i) 3 triple bonds (ii) 2 triple bonds+2 double bonds (iii) 2 triple bonds+1 double bond+1 ring (iv)...** *(As you can see, the degrees of unsaturation only gives the sum of double bonds, triple bonds and/or ring. Thus, the formula may give numerous possible structures for a given molecular formula.)*

4.



A)
2 DoU
1 ring, 1 double bond



B)
3 DoU
1 ring, 2 double bonds

5. a) 4 b) 4 c) 3

6. DU = 6

References

1. Vollhardt, K. P.C. & Shore, N. (2007). *Organic Chemistry* (5thEd.). New York: W. H. Freeman. (473-474)
2. Shore, N. (2007). *Study Guide and Solutions Manual for Organic Chemistry* (5th Ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman. (201)

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Kim Quach (UCD)

10.4: Degrees of Unsaturation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.5: The E/Z System (when cis/trans does not work)

Learning Objective

- recognize and classify the stereochemistry of alkenes using the cis/trans and E/Z systems
- give the IUPAC names for alkenes given their structure & vice versa including E/Z isomers

E/Z Nomenclature in Alkenes

The traditional system for naming the geometric isomers of an alkene, in which the same groups are arranged differently, is to name them as cis or trans. However, it is easy to find examples where the cis-trans system is not easily applied. IUPAC has a more complete system for naming alkene isomers. The R-S system for chirality is based on a set of "priority rules", which allow you to rank any groups. The rigorous IUPAC system for naming alkene isomers, called the E-Z system, is based on the same priority rules.

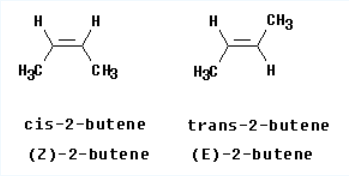
> The priority rules are often called the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog (CIP) rules, after the chemists who developed the system.

The general strategy of the E-Z system is to analyze the two groups at each end of the double bond. For each vinyl carbon, rank the two groups using the CIP priority rules. Determine whether the higher priority group at one end of the double bond and the higher priority group at the other end of the double bond are on the **same** side (Z, from German zusammen = together or "on Zee Zame Zide") or on **opposite** sides (E, from German entgegen = opposite) of the double bond.

Example 10.5.1

The figure below shows the two isomers of 2-butene. You should recognize them as cis and trans. Let's analyze them to see whether they are E or Z. Start with the left hand structure (the cis isomer). On C2 (the left end of the double bond), the two atoms attached to the double bond are C and H. By the CIP priority rules, C is higher priority than H (higher atomic number). Now look at C3 (the right end of the double bond). Similarly, the atoms are C and H, with C being higher priority. We see that the higher priority group is "down" at C2 and "down" at C3. Since the two priority groups are both on the **same** side of the double bond ("down", in this case), they are zusammen = together. Therefore, this is (Z)-2-butene.

Now look at the right hand structure (the trans isomer). In this case, the priority group is "down" on the left end of the double bond and "up" on the right end of the double bond. Since the two priority groups are on **opposite** sides of the double bond, they are entgegen = opposite. Therefore, this is (E)-2-butene.

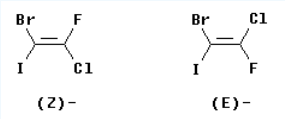


E/Z will work -- even when cis/trans fails

In simple cases, such as 2-butene, Z corresponds to cis and E to trans. However, that is **not** a rule. This section and the following one illustrate some idiosyncrasies that happen when you try to compare the two systems. The real advantage of the E-Z system is that it will always work. In contrast, the cis-trans system breaks down with many ambiguous cases.

Example 10.5.1

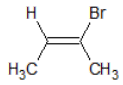
The following figure shows two isomers of an alkene with four different groups on the double bond, 1-bromo-2-chloro-2-fluoro-1-iodoethene.



It should be apparent that the two structures shown are distinct chemicals. However, it is impossible to name them as cis or trans. On the other hand, the E-Z system works fine... Consider the left hand structure. On C1 (the left end of the double bond), the two atoms attached to the double bond are Br and I. By the CIP priority rules, I is higher priority than Br (higher atomic number). Now look at C2. The atoms are Cl and F, with Cl being higher priority. We see that the higher priority group is "down" at C1 and "down" at C2. Since the two priority groups are both on the **same** side of the double bond ("down", in this case), they are zusammen = together. Therefore, this is the (Z) isomer. Similarly, the right hand structure is (E).

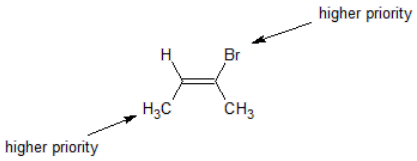
E/Z will work, but may not agree with cis/trans

There are also molecules for which the E/Z system will not agree with the cis/trans system. Let's use 2-bromo-2-butene to explore this option. Is this compound cis or trans? This molecule is clearly cis. The two methyl groups are on the same side. More rigorously, the "parent chain" is cis.



cis-2-bromo-2-butene

Is this compound E or Z? There is a methyl at each end of the double bond. On the left, the methyl is the high priority group because the other group is -H. On the right, the methyl is the low priority group because the other group is -Br. That is, the high priority groups are -CH_3 (left) and -Br (right). Thus the two priority groups are on opposite sides = entgegen = E.



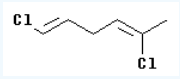
(2*E*)-2-bromobut-2-ene

This example should convince you that cis and Z are not synonyms. Cis/trans and E,Z are determined by distinct criteria. There may seem to be a simple correspondence, but it is not a rule. Be sure to determine cis,trans or E,Z separately, as needed.

Multiple double bonds

If the compound contains more than one double bond, then each one is analyzed and declared to be E or Z.

Example 10.5.3

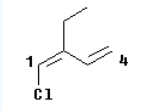


The configuration at the left hand double bond is E; at the right hand double bond it is Z. Thus this compound is (1E,4Z)-1,5-dichloro-1,4-hexadiene.

The double-bond rule in determining priorities

Example 10.5.4

Consider the compound below

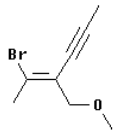


This is 1-chloro-2-ethyl-1,3-butadiene -- ignoring, for the moment, the geometric isomerism. There is no geometric isomerism at the second double bond, at 3-4, because it has 2 H at its far end.

What about the first double bond, at 1-2? On the left hand end, there is H and Cl; Cl is higher priority (by atomic number). On the right hand end, there is -CH_2-CH_3 (an ethyl group) and -CH=CH_2 (a vinyl or ethenyl group). Both of these groups have C as the first atom, so we have a tie so far and must look further. What is attached to this first C? For the ethyl group, the first C is attached to C, H, and H. For the ethenyl group, the first C is attached to a C twice, so we count it twice; therefore that C is attached to C, C, H. CCH is higher than CHH; therefore, the ethenyl group is higher priority. Since the priority groups, Cl and ethenyl, are on the same side of the double bond, this is the Z-isomer; the compound is (Z)-1-chloro-2-ethyl-1,3-butadiene.

The "first point of difference" rule

Which is higher priority, by the CIP rules: a C with an O and 2 H attached to it or a C with three C? The first C has one atom of high priority but also two atoms of low priority. How do these "balance out"? Answering this requires a clear understanding of how the ranking is done. The simple answer is that the first point of difference is what matters; the O wins.



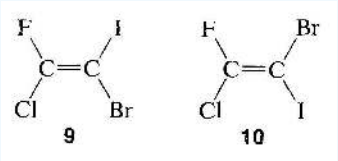
To illustrate this, consider the molecule at the left. Is the double bond here E or Z? At the left end of the double bond, Br > H. But the right end of the double bond requires a careful analysis.

At the right hand end, the first atom attached to the double bond is a C at each position. A tie, so we look at what is attached to this first C. For the upper C, it is CCC (since the triple bond counts three times). For the lower C, it is OHH -- listed in order from high priority atom to low. OHH is higher priority than CCC, because of the first atom in the list. That is, the O of the lower group beats the C of the upper group. In other words, the O is the highest priority atom of any in this comparison; thus the O "wins".

Therefore, the high priority groups are "up" on the left end (the -Br) and "down" on the right end (the -CH_2-O-CH_3). This means that the isomer shown is opposite = entgegen = E. And what is the name? The "name" feature of ChemSketch says it is (2E)-2-(1-bromoethylidene)pent-3-ynyl methyl ether.

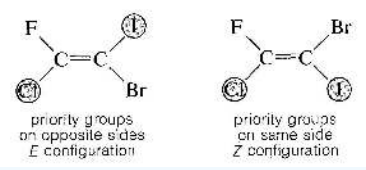
Example 10.5.1

The configuration about double bonds is undoubtedly best specified by the cis-trans notation when there is no ambiguity involved. Unfortunately, many compounds cannot be described adequately by the cis-trans system. Consider, for example, configurational isomers of 1 -fluoro- 1 -chloro-2- bromo-2-iodo-ethene, 9 and 10. There is no obvious way in which the cis-trans system can
be used:

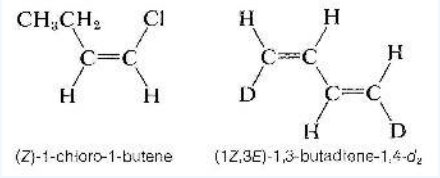


A system that is easy to use and which is based on the sequence rules already described for the R,S system works as follows:

1. An order of precedence is established for the two atoms or groups attached to each end of the double bond according to the sequence rules of Section 19-6. When these rules are applied to 1-fluoro- 1-chloro-2-bromo-2- iodoethene, the priority sequence is:
    - at carbon atom 1, C1 > F
    - at carbon atom 2, I > Br
2. Examination of the two configurations shows that the two priority groups- one on each end- are either on the same side of the double bond or on opposite sides:



The Z isomer is designated as the isomer in which the top priority groups are on the same side (Z is taken from the German word zusammen- together). The E isomer has these groups on opposite sides (E, German for entgegen across). Two further examples show how the nomenclature is used:



Exercises

1. Order the following in increasing priority.

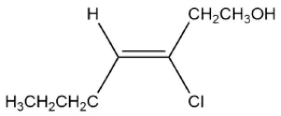
A) –H, –Cl, –OH

B) $–CH_3$, $–CH_2OH$, $–CH_2CH_3$

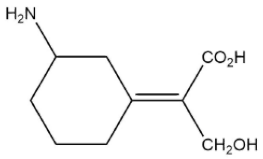
C) –C≡CH, $–CH=CH_2$, –CH=O

2. Label the following as *E* or *Z* conformations.

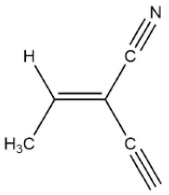
A)



B)



C)



Answer

1. A) –H < –OH < –Cl (highest priority)

B) $–CH_3$ < $–CH_2CH_3$ < $–CH_2OH$ (highest priority)

C) $–CH=CH_2$ < –C≡CH < –CH=O (highest priority)

2. A) *Z* B) *Z* C) *E*

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

>Robert Bruner (http://bbruner.org)

John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

10.5: The E/Z System (when cis/trans does not work) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

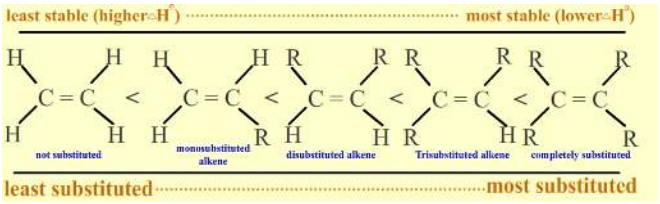
10.6: Stability of Alkenes

Learning Objective

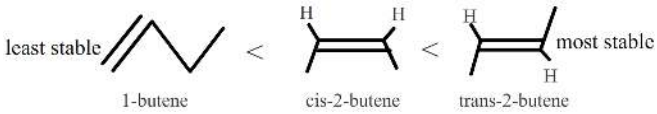
- use heats of hydrogenation to compare the stabilities of alkenes

Heats of Hydrogenation

The stability of an alkene can be determined by measuring the amount of energy associated with the hydrogenation of the molecule. Since the double bond is breaking in this reaction, the energy released in hydrogenation is proportional to the energy in the double bond of the molecule. This is a useful tool because heats of hydrogenation can be measured very accurately. The ΔH^{o} is usually around -30 kcal/mol for alkenes. Stability is simply a measure of energy. Lower energy molecules are more stable than higher energy molecules. More substituted alkenes are more stable than less substituted ones due to hyperconjugation. They have a lower heat of hydrogenation. The following illustrates stability of alkenes with various substituents:



In disubstituted alkenes, trans isomers are more stable than cis isomers due to steric hindrance. Also, internal alkenes are more stable than terminal ones. See the following isomers of butene:



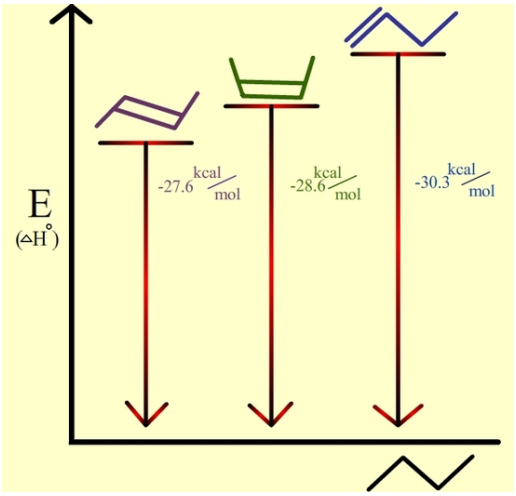


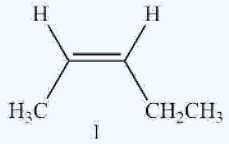
Figure ***7.6.3***: *Trans-2-butene is the most stable because it has the lowest heat of hydrogenation.*

In cycloalkenes smaller than cyclooctene, the cis isomers are more stable than the trans as a result of ring strain.

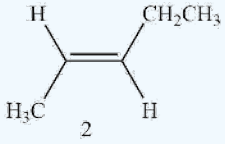
Exercises

1. When looking at their heats of hydrogenation, is the cis or the trans isomer generally more stable?
2. Arrange the following alkenes in order of increasing stability: 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene; trans-2-hexene; 2-methyl-2-pentene; cis-2-hexene
3. Which is the more stable alkene in each pair?

A)

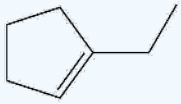


1

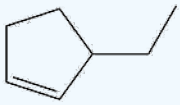


2

B)



1



2

Answer

1. Trans alkenes are more stable as demonstrated by the lower heats of hydrogenation when compared to their cis-isomers.
2. (least substituted and cis) cis-2-hexene < trans-2-hexene < 2-methyl-2-pentene < 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene (most substituted)
3. A) 2 b/c trans with same substitution at C=C B) 1 b/c the C=C is more substituted

References

1. Fox, Marye Anne, and James K. Whitesell. Organic Chemistry. 3rd ed. Sudbury, MA: Janes and Bartlett Publishers, 2004.
2. Hanson, James R. Functional Group Chemistry. Bristol, UK: The Royal Society of Chemistry, 2001.
3. Streitwieser, Andrew Jr., and Clayton H. Heathcock. Introduction to Organic Chemistry. 2nd ed. New York, NY: Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc., 1981.
4. Vollhardt, Peter C., and Neil E. Schore. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. 5th ed. New York, NY: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2007.
5. Zlatkis, Albert, Eberhard Breitmaier, and Gunther Jung. A Concise Introduction to Organic Chemistry. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1973.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anna Manis (UCD)
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

10.6: Stability of Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

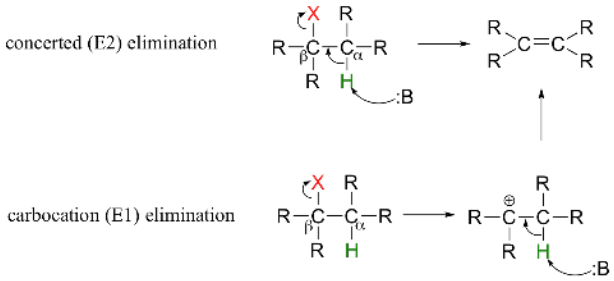
10.7: Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides

Learning Objective

- interpret and draw reaction energy diagrams for dehydrohalogenation of R-X's
- propose mechanisms for a dehydrohalogenation reactions -
- predict the products and specify the reagents for alkene synthesis from dehydrohalogenation of R-X's
- predict and explain the stereochemistry of E2 eliminations to form alkenes, especially from cyclohexanes

Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides is discussed in detail in chapter 7 sections 13 - 18. The major learning objectives are summarized briefly in this section.

Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides



When considering whether an elimination reaction is likely to occur via an E1 or E2 mechanism, we really need to consider three factors:

1. 1) **The base:** strong bases favor the E2 mechanism, whereas, E1 mechanisms only require a weak base.
2. 2) **The solvent**: good ionizing xolvents (polar protic) favor the E1 mechanism by stabilizing the carbocation intermediate.
3. 3) **The alkyl halide:** primary alkyl halides have the only structure useful in distinguishing between the E2 and E1 pathways. Since primary carbocations do not form, only the E2 mechanism is possible.

Reaction Parameter	E2	E1
alkyl halide structure	tertiary > secondary > primary	tertiary > secondary >>>> primary
nucleophile	high concentration of a strong base	weak base
mechanism	1-step	2-step
rate limiting step	anti-coplanar bimolecular transition state	carbocation formation
rate law	rate = k[R-X][Base]	rate = k[R-X]
stereochemisty	retained configuration	mixed configuration
solvent	not important	polar protic

10.7: Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

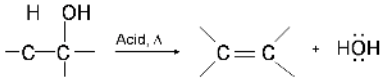
10.8: Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols

Learning Objective

- interpret and draw reaction energy diagrams for alcohol dehydration reactions
- propose mechanisms for dehydration reactions
- predict the products and specify the reagents for alkene synthesis from alcohol dehydration reactions
- predict and explain the stereochemistry of E2 eliminations to form alkenes, especially from cyclohexanes

Dehydration of Alcohols to Yield Alkenes

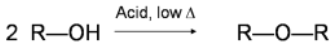
One way to synthesize alkenes is by dehydration of alcohols. Alcohols undergo E1 or E2 mechanisms to lose water and form a double bond. This mechanism is analogous to the alkyl halide mechanism. The only difference is that hydroxide is a very poor leaving group so an extra step is required. The hydroxyl group is protonated so that water is now the leaving group. Therefore, the dehydration reaction of alcohols to generate alkene proceeds by heating the alcohols in the presence of a strong acid, such as sulfuric or phosphoric acid, at high temperatures.



The required reaction temperature range decreases with increasing substitution of the hydroxy-containing carbon:

- 1° alcohols: 170° - 180°C
- 2° alcohols: 100°– 140 °C
- 3° alcohols: 25°– 80°C

If the reaction is not sufficiently heated, the alcohols do not dehydrate to form alkenes, but react with one another to form ethers (e.g., the Williamson Ether Synthesis).



Mechanism for the Dehydration of Alcohols

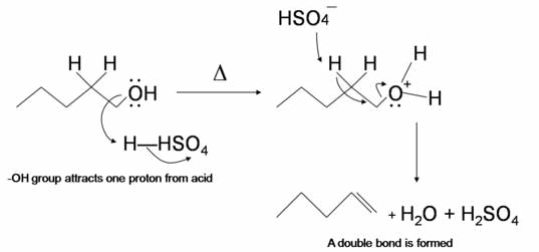
Different types of alcohols may dehydrate through a slightly different mechanism pathway. However, the general idea behind each dehydration reaction is that the –OH group in the alcohol donates two electrons to H^+ from the acid reagent to form an alkyloxonium ion. This ion acts as a very good leaving group for either the E1 or E2 mechanism. The deprotonated acid (the conjugate base) then reacts with one of the beta-hydrogens to form a double bond.

Primary Alcohols and the E2 Mechanism

Primary alcohols undergo bimolecular elimination (E2 mechanism) while secondary and tertiary alcohols undergo unimolecular elimination (E1 mechanism). The relative reactivity of alcohols in dehydration reaction is ranked as the following

Methanol < primary < secondary < tertiary

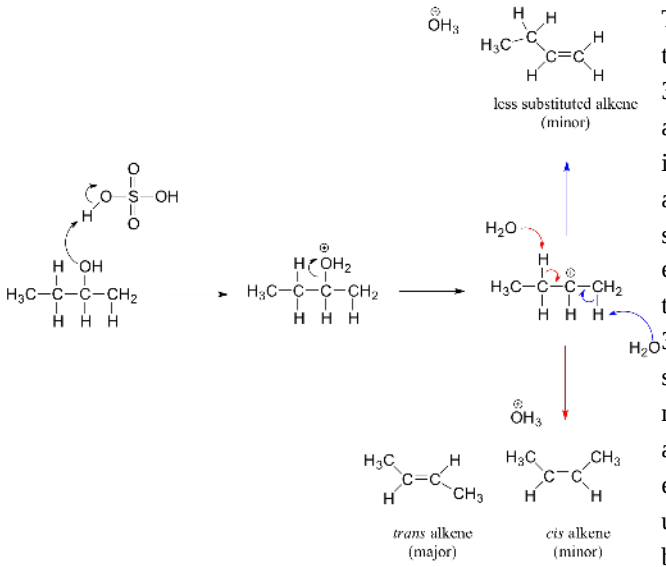
Primary alcohol dehydrates through the E2 mechanism. Oxygen donates two electrons to a proton from sulfuric acid H_2SO_4, forming an alkyloxonium ion. The resulting conjugate base (HSO_4^-) approaches in an anti-coplanar orientation relative to the leaving group and reacts with one adjacent hydrogen while the alkyloxonium ion simultaneously leaves in a concerted process, making a double bond.



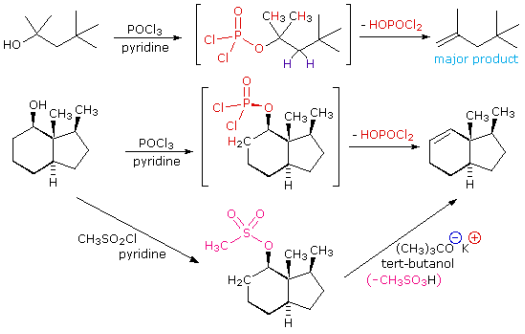
Secondary and Tertiary Alcohols and the E1 Mechanism

Secondary and tertiary alcohols dehydrate through the E1 mechanism. Similarly to the reaction above, secondary and tertiary –OH protonate to form alkyloxonium ions. However, the ion leaves first and forms a carbocation as the reaction intermediate. The water molecule (which is a stronger base than the HSO_4^- ion) then abstracts a proton from an adjacent carbon, forming a double bond.

For example, in the mechanism below that the alkene formed depends on which proton is abstracted: the red arrows show formation of the more substituted 2-butene, while the blue arrows show formation of the less substituted 1-butene. Recall the general rule that more substituted alkenes are more stable than less substituted alkenes, and *trans* alkenes are more stable than *cis* alkenes. Thereore, the *trans* diastereomer of the 2-butene product is most abundant.



The dehydration mechanism for a tertiary alcohol is analogous to that shown above for a secondary alcohol. The E2 elimination of 3º-alcohols under relatively non-acidic conditions may be accomplished by treatment with phosphorous oxychloride ($POCl_3$) in pyridine. This procedure is also effective with hindered 2º-alcohols, but for unhindered and 1º-alcohols an S_N2 chloride ion substitution of the chlorophosphate intermediate competes with elimination. Examples of these and related reactions are given in the following figure. The first equation shows the dehydration of a 3º-alcohol. The predominance of the non-Zaitsev product (less substituted double bond) is presumed due to steric hindrance of the methylene group hydrogen atoms, which interferes with the approach of base at that site. The second example shows two elimination procedures applied to the same 2º-alcohol. The first uses the single step $POCl_3$ method, which works well in this case because S_N2 substitution is retarded by steric hindrance. The second method is another example in which an intermediate sulfonate ester confers halogen-like reactivity on an alcohol. In every case the anionic leaving group is the conjugate base of a strong acid.



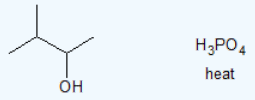
Carbocation Rearrangements and the E1 Mechanism

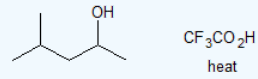
Carbocation stability is always a driving force in E1 mechanisms. It is important to evaluate the structure of all carbocation intermediates to look for the possibility of 1,2-hydride or 1,2-methyl shifts to form more stable carbocation intermediates. Carbocation rearrangements are discussed more completely in chapter 7.

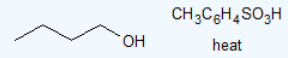
Exercise

1. Draw the bond-line structure(s) for the product(s) formed and specify the mechanism (E1 or E2) for each reaction below.

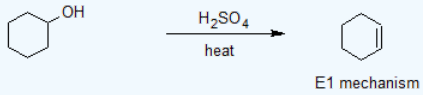
a) 

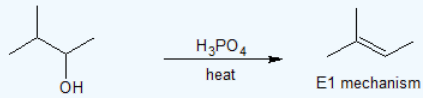
b) 

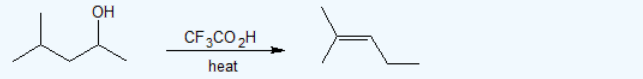
c) 

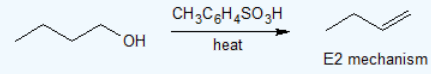
d) 

Answer

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

Contributors and Attributions

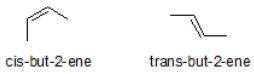
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

10.8: Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.9: Additional Exercises. Part 1

Physical Properties of Alkenes

8-1 Explain why *cis*-2-butene is less stable than *trans*-2-butene.

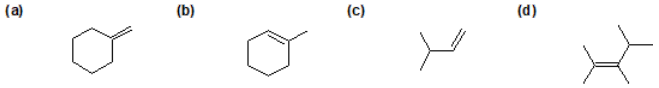


8-2 Order the following alkenes in increasing order of stability.

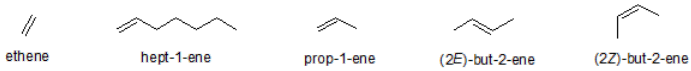


8-3 Why do more substituted alkenes experience more stability compared to less substituted alkenes?

8-4 Identify whether the following alkenes are mono-, di-, tri-, or tetra-substituted.



8-5 Place the following alkenes in order of increasing boiling points.



Elements of Unsaturation and the Orbital Description of Alkenes

8-6 Using the following equation, calculate the degrees of unsaturation for the following compounds.

$$\text{Degrees of Unsaturation} = \frac{2C + 2 + N - H - X}{2}$$

(a) C_6H_6

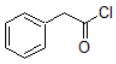
(b) C_3H_6O

(c) C_4H_6O

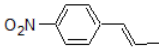
(d)



(e)



(f)

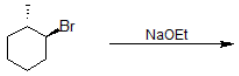


8-7 How many of each type of bonds (sigma/pi) make up a double bond?

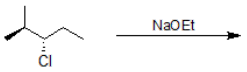
Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides

8-8 Identify the major product(s) of the following reactions. Include stereochemistry.

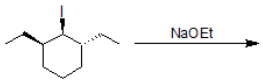
(a)



(b)

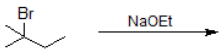


(c)

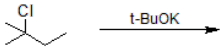


8-9 Identify the major products of the following reactions.

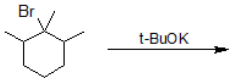
(a)



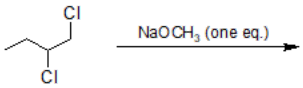
(b)



(c)



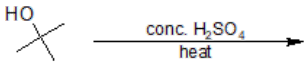
8-10 Give the product of the following reaction.



8-11 What is the IUPAC name of the product formed by the reaction in the previous problem (**8-10**)?

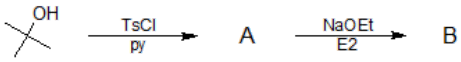
Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols

8-12 Identify the product of the following reaction.

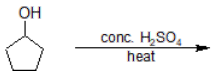


8-13 Draw the mechanism for the reaction in previous problem (**8-12**).

8-14 Draw the intermediate compounds for the following reaction.



8-15 Identify the product of the following reaction.



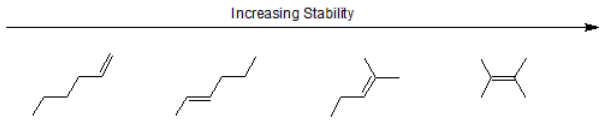
10.9: Additional Exercises. Part 1 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.10: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 1

Physical Properties of Alkenes

8-1 When in the *cis* configuration, the methyl groups experience steric strain as they are in close proximity to each other. They avoid steric interactions when in the *trans* configuration as they are able to stay as far apart as possible.

8-2



8-3 Alkyl groups are able to stabilize their neighboring carbon atoms by donating electron density, which allows for the delocalization of electron density and an increase in stability.

8-4

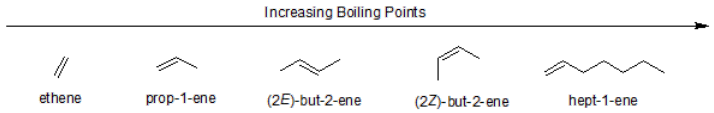
a) Disubstituted

b) Trisubstituted

c) Monosubstituted

d) Tetrasubstituted

8-5



Elements of Unsaturation and the Orbital Description of Alkenes

8-6

a) 4

b) 1

c) 2

d) 2

e) 5

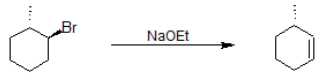
f) 6

8-7 One sigma and one pi bond together make a double bond.

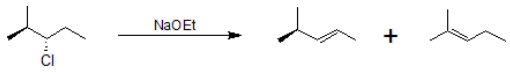
Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides

8-8

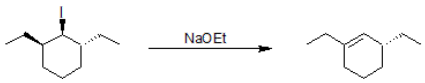
(a)



(b)

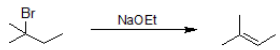


(c)

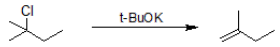


8-9

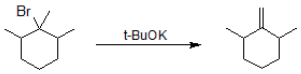
(a)



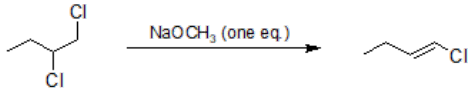
(b)



(c)



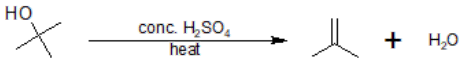
8-10



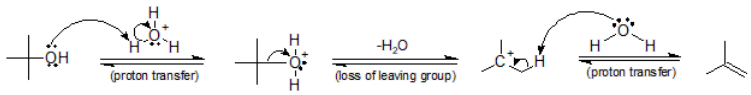
8-11 (1*E*)-1-chlorobut-1-ene

Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols

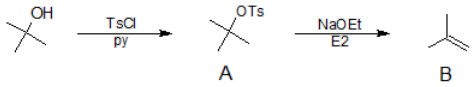
8-12



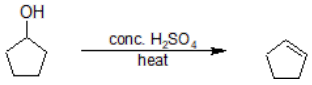
8-13



8-14



8-15



10.10: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 1 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

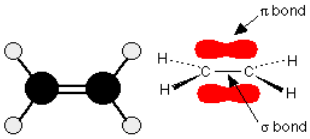
10.11: Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs)

Learning Objective

- draw the general Electrophilic Addition Reaction (EAR) mechanism for an alkene

Introduction

We are going to start by looking at ethene, because it is the simplest molecule containing a carbon-carbon double bond. What is true of C=C in ethene will be equally true of C=C in more complicated alkenes.



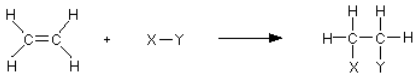
Ethene , C_2H_4, is often modeled as shown above. The double bond between the carbon atoms is, of course, two pairs of shared electrons. What the diagram doesn't show is that the two pairs aren't the same as each other. One of the pairs of electrons is held on the line between the two carbon nuclei as you would expect, but the other is held in a molecular orbital above and below the plane of the molecule. A molecular orbital is a region of space within the molecule where there is a high probability of finding a particular pair of electrons.

In this diagram, the line between the two carbon atoms represents a normal sigma bond - the pair of shared electrons lies in a molecular orbital on the line between the two nuclei where you would expect them to be. The other pair of electrons is found somewhere in the shaded part above and below the plane of the molecule. This bond is called a pi bond. The electrons in the pi bond are free to move around anywhere in this shaded region and can move freely from one half to the other. The pi electrons are not as fully under the control of the carbon nuclei as the electrons in the sigma bond. Because the pi bond electrons lie exposed above and below the rest of the molecule, they are relatively open to reaction with other compounds.

Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs)

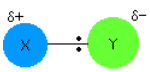
In a sense, the pi bond is an unnecessary bond. The structure would hold together perfectly well with a single bond rather than a double bond. The pi bond often breaks and the electrons in it are used to join other atoms (or groups of atoms) onto the alkene molecule. To continue with our example, ethene undergoes addition reactions. An addition reaction is a reaction in which two molecules join together to make a bigger one. Nothing is lost in the process. All the atoms in the original molecules are found in the bigger one. The pi bond is electron rich and takes the role of the nucleophile seeking out an electrophile with its full or partial positive charge.

Using a general molecule X-Y as the electrophile reacting with ethene, the atoms 'X' and 'Y' are added to the carbon chain across the vinylic carbons as shown below.

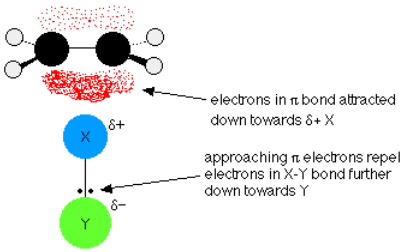


Understanding the Electrophilic Addition Mechanism

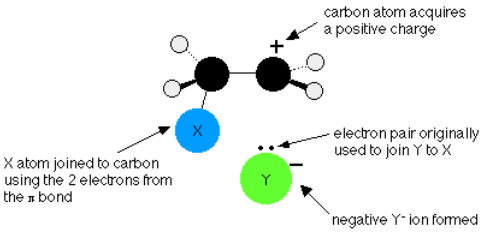
The mechanism for the reaction between ethene and a molecule X-Y begins by recognizing the electrophilic nature of X-Y. Trends in relative electronegativity help identify bonds to create partial positives within polar compounds. As shown below, we are going to assume that Y is more electronegative than X, so that the pair of electrons is pulled slightly towards the Y end of the bond. This polarity means that the X atom carries a slight positive charge (partial positive).



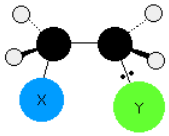
The slightly positive X atom is an electrophile and attracts the exposed pi electrons in the ethene. Now imagine what happens as they approach each other. The electrons in the half of the pi bond nearest the XY are attracted to the partial positive charge as shown below.



The two electrons in the pi bond move closer towards the X until a covalent bond is made. Simultaneously, the electrons in the X-Y bond are pushed entirely onto the Y to form the anion Y^- ion and a carbocation as shown below.

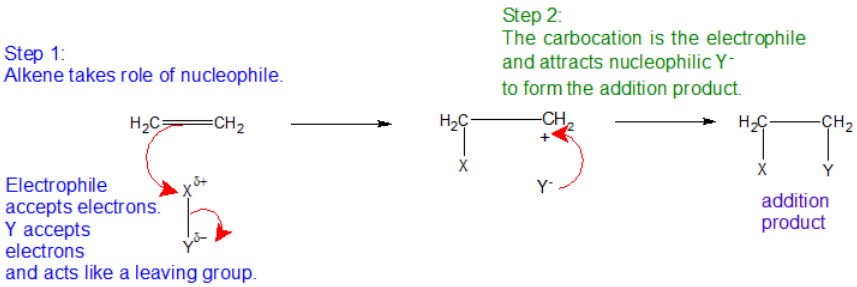


In the final step, the lone pair on Y^- is attracted to the positively charged carbocation and they react to form a second covalent bond and the product below.



EAR Mechanism

The movements of the electrons for the EAR mechanism are shown with curved arrows.



Regiochemistry and Regioselective Reactions

Regiochemistry is the orientation of the electrophile relative to the pi bond of the alkene. Electrophilic addition reactions of alkenes can be regioselective depending on the symmetry and structure of the alkene. The details will be discussed in a later sections of this chapter.

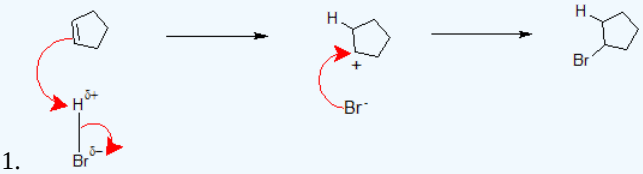
Stereoselective Reactions

Different stereoisomeric reactants produce different stereoisomeric products. Electrophilic addition reactions of alkenes can be stereoselective depending on the symmetry and structure of the alkene. The details will be discussed in a later sections of this chapter.

Exercise 10.11.1

1. In the next section, we will apply the Electrophilic Addition mechanism to actual compounds. Draw the complete mechanism when hydrogen bromide gas is bubbled through a solution of cyclopentene.

Answer

1. 

Contributors

- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

10.11: Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.12: Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Symmetrical Alkenes

Learning Objective

- predict the products/specify the reagents for EAR of hydrohalic acids (HX) with symmetrical alkenes

This section looks at the reaction of symmetrical alkenes (like ethene, but-2-ene or cyclohexene) with hydrogen halides such as hydrogen chloride and hydrogen bromide. Since these alkenes have identical groups attached to each end of the carbon-carbon double bond, regioselectivity does not apply.

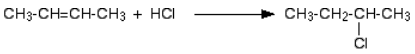
Addition to symmetrical alkenes

All alkenes undergo addition reactions with the hydrogen halides. A hydrogen atom joins to one of the carbon atoms originally in the double bond, and a halogen atom to the other.

For example, with ethene and hydrogen chloride, you get chloroethane:



With but-2-ene you get 2-chlorobutane:

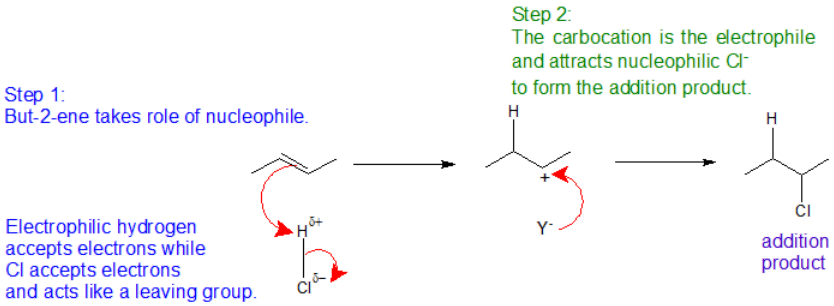


What happens if you add the hydrogen to the carbon atom at the right-hand end of the double bond, and the chlorine to the left-hand end? You would still have the same product. The chlorine would be on a carbon atom next to the end of the chain - you would simply have drawn the molecule flipped over in space. That would be different of the alkene was unsymmetrical - that's why we have to look at them separately.

Mechanism

The addition of hydrogen halides is one of the easiest electrophilic addition reactions because it uses the simplest electrophile: the proton. Hydrogen halides provide both a electrophile (proton) and a nucleophile (halide). First, the electrophile will attack the double bond and take up a set of electrons, attaching it to the molecule (1). This is basically the reverse of the last step in the E1 reaction (deprotonation step). The resulting molecule will have a single carbon- carbon bond with a positive charge on one of them (carbocation). The next step is when the nucleophile (halide) bonds to the carbocation, producing a new molecule with both the original hydrogen and halide attached to the organic reactant (2). The second step will only occur if a good nucleophile is used.

Mechanism of Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Chloride to But-2-ene



All of the halides (HBr, HCl, HI, HF) can participate in this reaction and add on in the same manner. Although different halides do have different rates of reaction, due to the H-X bond getting weaker as X gets larger (poor overlap of orbitals)s.

Reaction rates

Variation of rates when you change the halogen

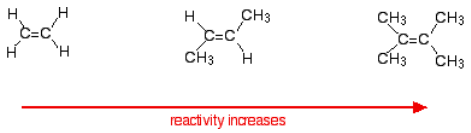
Reaction rates increase in the order HF < HCl < HBr < HI. Hydrogen fluoride reacts much more slowly than the other three, and is normally ignored in talking about these reactions.

When the hydrogen halides react with alkenes, the hydrogen-halogen bond has to be broken. The bond strength falls as you go from HF to HI, and the hydrogen-fluorine bond is particularly strong. Because it is difficult to break the bond between the hydrogen and the fluorine, the addition of HF is bound to be slow.

Variation of rates when you change the alkene

This applies to unsymmetrical alkenes as well as to symmetrical ones. For simplicity the examples given below are all symmetrical ones- but they don't have to be.

Reaction rates increase as the alkene gets more complicated - in the sense of the number of alkyl groups (such as methyl groups) attached to the carbon atoms at either end of the double bond. For example:



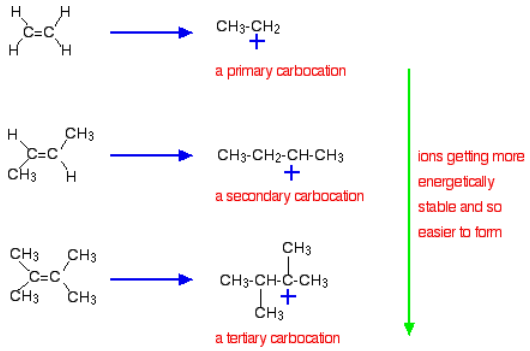
There are two ways of looking at the reasons for this - both of which need you to know about the mechanism for the reactions.

Alkenes react because the electrons in the pi bond attract things with any degree of positive charge. Anything which increases the electron density around the double bond will help this.

Alkyl groups have a tendency to "push" electrons away from themselves towards the double bond. The more alkyl groups you have, the more negative the area around the double bonds becomes.

The more negatively charged that region becomes, the more it will attract molecules like hydrogen chloride.

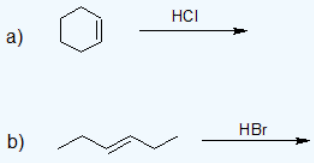
The more important reason, though, lies in the stability of the intermediate ion formed during the reaction. The three examples given above produce these carbocations (carbonium ions) at the half-way stage of the reaction:



The stability of the intermediate ions governs the activation energy for the reaction. As you go towards the more complicated alkenes, the activation energy for the reaction falls. That means that the reactions become faster.

Exercise

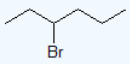
1. Draw the bond-line structures for the products of the following reactions.



Answer

1.

a) 

b) 

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

10.12: Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Symmetrical Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.13: Alkene Asymmetry and Markovnikov's Rule

Learning Objective

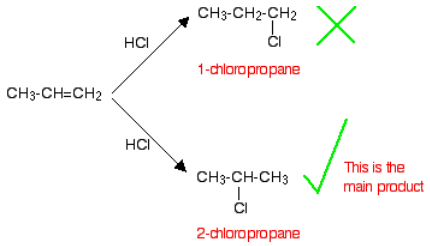
- predict the products/specify the reagents for EAR of hydrohalic acids (HX) with asymmetrical alkenes using Markovnikov's Rule for Regioselectivity
- apply the principles of regioselectivity and stereoselectivity to the addition reactions of alkenes

Addition to unsymmetrical alkenes

In terms of reaction conditions and the factors affecting the rates of the reaction, there is no difference whatsoever between these alkenes and the symmetrical ones described above. The problem comes with the orientation of the addition of the hydrogen and the halogen across the double bond.

Markovnikov's Rule

If HCl adds to an unsymmetrical alkene like propene, there are two possible ways it could add. However, in practice, there is only one major product according to Markovnikov's Rule.



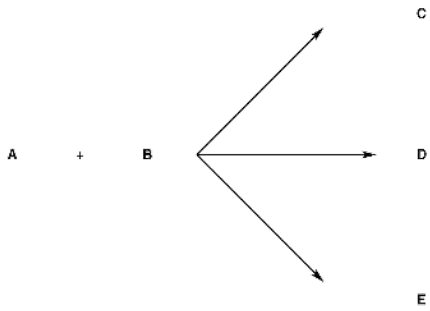
> Markovnikov's Rule: When HX is added to an unsymmetrical alkene, the hydrogen becomes attached to the carbon with the most hydrogens attached to it already.

Applying Markovnikov's Rule to the reaction above, the hydrogen bonds with the CH_2 group, because the CH_2 group has more hydrogens than the CH group. Notice that only the hydrogens directly attached to the carbon atoms at either end of the double bond count.

Regioselectivity - a closer look

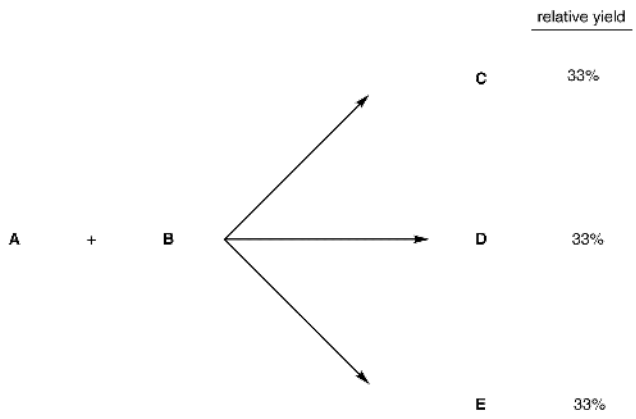
If more than one reaction could occur between a set of reactants under the same conditions giving products that are constitutional isomers and if one product forms in greater amounts than the others, the overall reaction is said to be regioselective.

Say three reactions could occur between the hypothetical reactants **A** and **B** under the same conditions giving the constitutionally isomeric products **C**, **D**, and **E**.



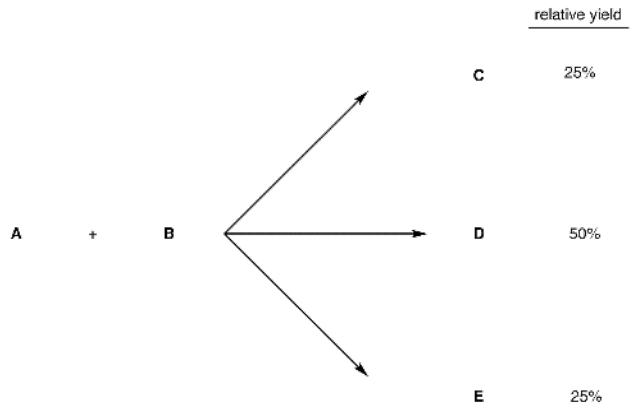
There are two possibilities:

1. The three products form in equal amounts, i.e., of the total product 33% is **C**, another 33% **D**, the remaining 33% **E**. (These percentages are called relative yields of the products.)



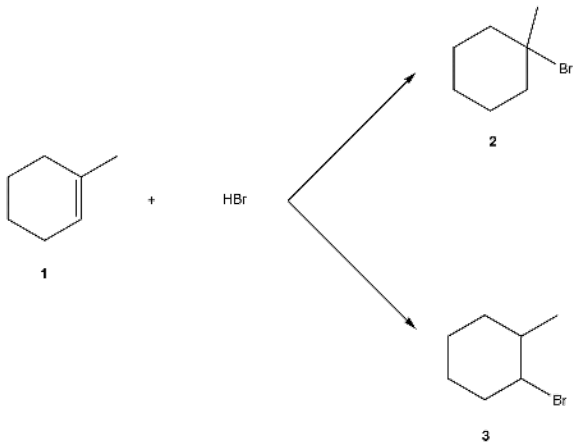
If this is what is observed, the overall reaction between **A** and **B** is not regioselective.

2. One product forms in greater amounts than the others. Say, for example, the relative yields of **C**, **D**, and **E** are 25%, 50%, and 25%, respectively.



If this is what is observed, the overall reaction between **A** and **B** is regioselective.

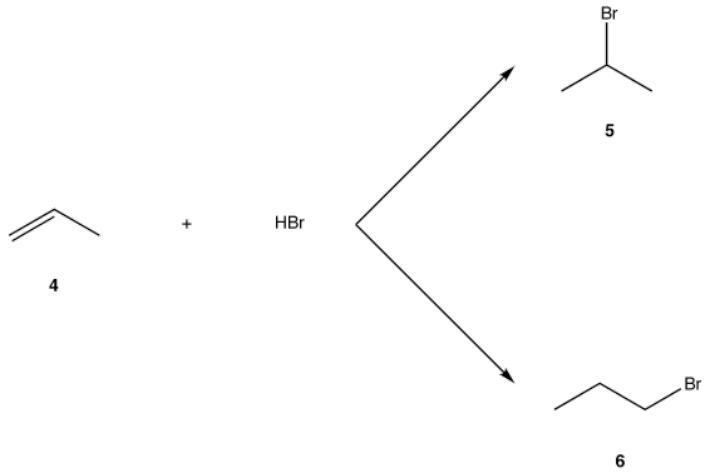
eg:



Experimentally, **2** is the major product; **3** is the minor product. Thus, the overall reaction between **1** and HBr is regioselective toward **2**.

If more than one reaction could occur between a set of reactants under the same conditions giving products that are constitutional isomers and if only one product is observed, the overall reaction is said to be 100% regioselective or regiospecific.

eg:

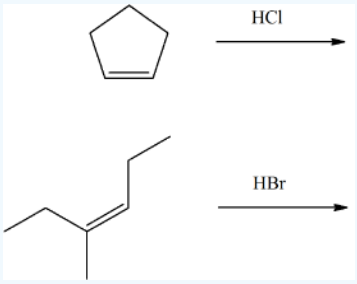


The only observed product is **5**. (Relative yields of **5** and **6** are 100% and 0%, respectively.) Thus the overall reaction between **4** and HBr is regiospecific toward **5**.

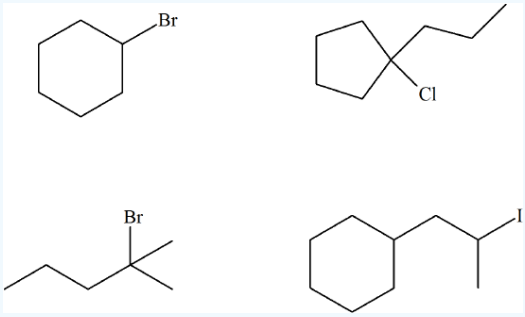
Regiospecificity is merely the limiting case of regioselectivity. All regiospecific reactions are regioselective, but not all regioselective reactions are regiospecific.

Exercises

1. Predict the product(s) for the following reactions:

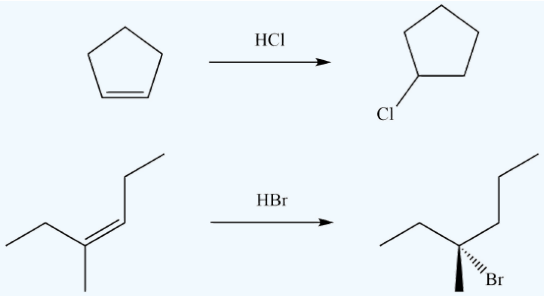


2. In each case, suggest an alkene that would give the product shown.

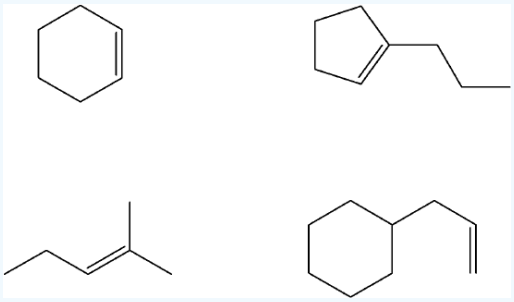


Answers

1.



2.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Gamini Gunawardena from the OChemPal site (Utah Valley University)

10.13: Alkene Asymmetry and Markovnikov's Rule is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.14: Hydration- Acid Catalyzed Addition of Water

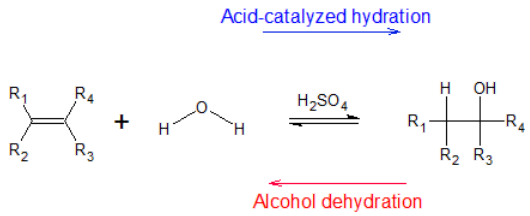
Learning Objective

- apply the principles of regioselectivity and stereoselectivity to the addition reactions of alkenes
- predict the products, specify the reagents, and discern most efficient reaction for hydration of alkenes (acid catalyzed hydration; or oxymercuration/demercuration; or hydroboration/oxidation)

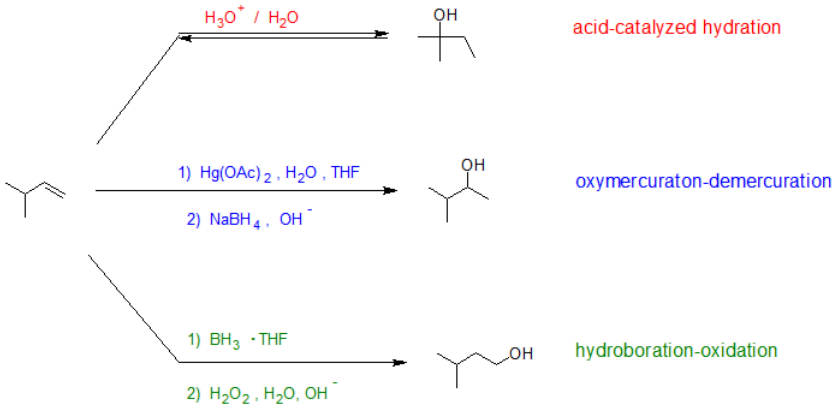
What Is Electrophilic Hydration?

Electrophilic hydration is the addition of hydrogen and a hydroxyl group across the two carbons of a double bond. Electrophilic hydration is the reverse of dehydration of alcohols and so begins the circular nature of organic chemistry. Alcohols can be dehydrated to form alkenes and alkenes can undergo electrophilic addition reactions to form alcohols. Electrophilic hydrogen is essentially a proton: a hydrogen atom stripped of its electrons. Electrophilic hydrogen is commonly used to help break double bonds or restore catalysts.

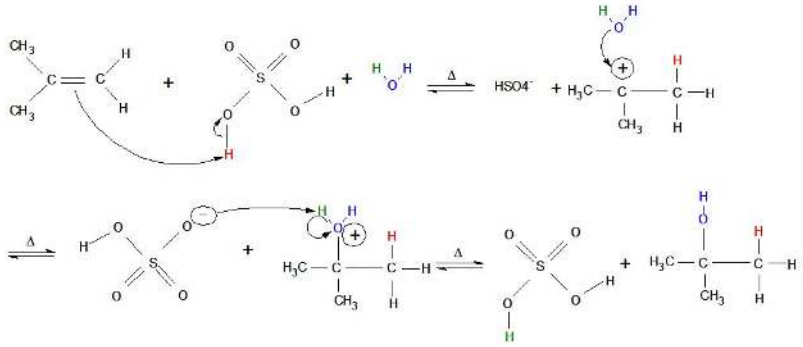
Electrophilic hydration of alkenes has practical applications in making alcohols for fuels and reagents for other reactions. The basic reaction under certain temperatures (given below) is the following:



In later sections, we will learn that mercury (II) sulfate and borane are also electrophiles that can react with alkenes to form hydration products. Each reaction pathway has its own regio- and stereochemical considerations. In the example below, we see that the same alkene produces different hydration products depending on the hydration pathway.



Mechanism for Acid-catalyzed Hydration of Alkenes



Temperatures for Types of Alcohol Synthesis

Heat is used to catalyze electrophilic hydration; because the reaction is in equilibrium with the dehydration of an alcohol, which requires higher temperatures to form an alkene, lower temperatures are required to form an alcohol. *The exact temperatures used are highly variable and depend on the product being formed.*

- Primary Alcohol: Less than 170ºC
- Secondary Alcohol: Less than 100ºC
- Tertiary Alcohol: Less than 25ºC

But...Why Does Electrophilic Hydration Work?

- An alkene placed in an aqueous non-nucleophilic strong acid immediately "reaches out" with its double bond and attacks one of the acid's hydrogen atoms (meanwhile, the bond between oxygen and hydrogen performs heterolytic cleavage toward the oxygen—in other words, both electrons from the oxygen/hydrogen single bond move onto the oxygen atom).
- A carbocation is formed on the original alkene (now alkane) in the more-substituted position, where the oxygen end of water attacks with its 4 non-bonded valence electrons (oxygen has 6 total valence electrons because it is found in Group 6 on the periodic table and the second row down: two electrons in a 2s-orbital and four in 2p-orbitals. Oxygen donates one valence electron to each bond it forms, leaving four 4 non-bonded valence electrons).
- After the blue oxygen atom forms its third bond with the more-substituted carbon, it develops a positive charge (3 bonds and 2 valence electrons give the blue oxygen atom a formal charge of +1).
- The bond between the green hydrogen and the blue oxygen undergoes heterolytic cleavage, and both the electrons from the bond move onto the blue oxygen. The now negatively-charged strong acid picks up the green electrophilic hydrogen.
- Now that the reaction is complete, the non-nucleophilic strong acid is regenerated as a catalyst and an alcohol forms on the most substituted carbon of the current alkane. At lower temperatures, more alcohol product can be formed.

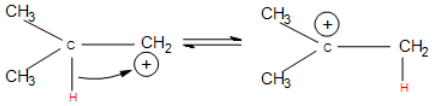
What is Regiochemistry and How Does It Apply?

Regiochemistry deals with where the substituent bonds on the product. **Zaitsev**'s and **Markovnikov**'s rules address regiochemistry, but Zaitsev's rule applies when synthesizing an alkene while Markovnikov's rule describes where the substituent bonds onto the product. In the case of electrophilic hydration, Markovnikov's rule is the only rule that *directly* applies. See the following for an in-depth explanation of regiochemistry Markovnikov explanation: Radical Additions--Anti-Markovnikov Product Formation

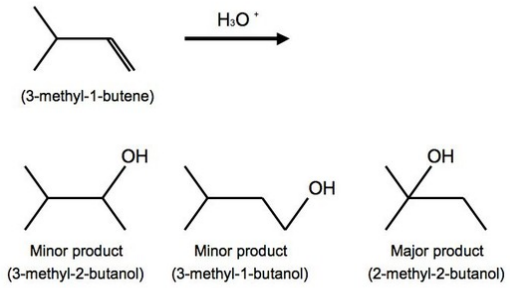
In the mechanism for a 3º alcohol shown above, the red H is added to the least-substituted carbon connected to the nucleophilic double bonds (it has less carbons attached to it). This means that the carbocation forms on the 3º carbon, causing it to be highly stabilized by *hyperconjugation*—electrons in nearby sigma (single) bonds help fill the empty p-orbital of the carbocation, which lessens the positive charge. More substitution on a carbon means more sigma bonds are available to "help out" (by using overlap) with the positive charge, which creates greater *carbocation stability*. In other words, **carbocations form on the most substituted carbon** connected to the double bond. Carbocations are also stabilized by resonance, but resonance is not a large factor in this case because any carbon-carbon double bonds are used to initiate the reaction, and other double bonded molecules can cause a completely different reaction. If the carbocation does originally form on the less substituted part of the alkene, carbocation rearrangements occur to form more substituted products.

Carbocation Rearrangements - a review

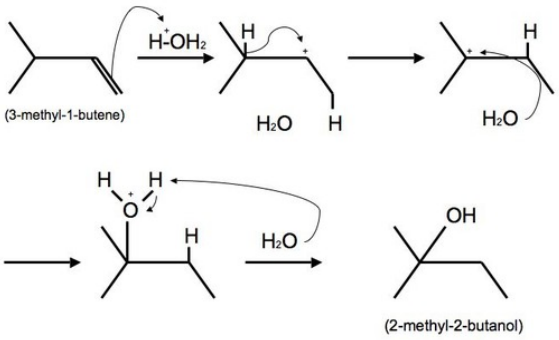
- **Hydride shifts:** a hydrogen atom bonded to a carbon atom next to the carbocation leaves that carbon to bond with the carbocation (after the hydrogen has taken both electrons from the single bond, it is known as a hydride). This changes the once neighboring carbon to a carbocation, and the former carbocation becomes a neighboring carbon atom.



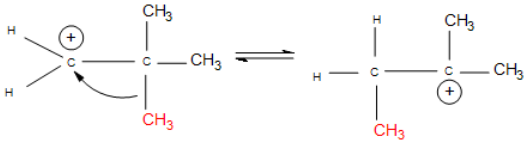
In a more complex case, when alkenes undergo hydration, we also observe hydride shift. Below is the reaction of 3-methyl-1-butene with H_3O^+ that furnishes to make 2-methyl-2-butanol:



Once again, we see multiple products. In this case, however, we see two minor products and one major product. We observe the major product because the -OH substitutent is attached to the more substituted carbon. When the reactant undergoes hydration, the proton attaches to carbon #2. The carbocation is therefore on carbon #2. Hydride shift now occurs when the hydrogen on the adjacent carbon formally switch places with the carbocation. The carbocation is now ready to be attacked by H_2O to furnish an alkyloxonium ion because of stability and hyperconjugation. The final step can be observed by another water molecule attacking the proton on the alkyloxonium ion to furnish an alcohol. We see this mechanism below:



- **Alkyl shifts:** if no hydrogen atoms are available for a hydride shift, an entire methyl group performs the same shift.

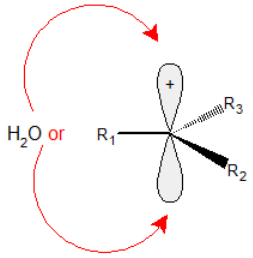


The nucleophile attacks the positive charge formed on the most substituted carbon connected to the double bond, because the nucleophile is seeking that positive charge. In the mechanism for a 3º alcohol shown above, water is the nucleophile. When the green H is removed from the water molecule, the alcohol attached to the most substituted carbon. Hence, **electrophilic hydration follows Markovnikov's rule.**

Stereochemistry of Acid-catalyzed Hydration

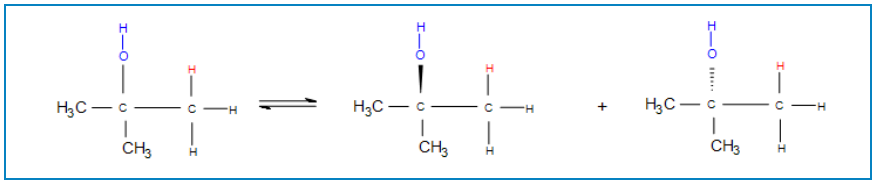
Stereochemistry deals with how the substituent bonds on the product directionally. Dashes and wedges denote stereochemistry by showing whether the molecule or atom is going into or out of the plane of the board. Whenever the bond is a simple single straight line, the molecule that is bonded is equally likely to be found going into the plane of the board as it is out of the plane of the board. This indicates that **the product is a racemic mixture**.

There is no stereochemical control in acid-catalyzed hydration reactions. The carbocation intermediate has the trigonal planar geometry of sp^2 hybridization which allows the subsequent reaction with water from either orientation.



There is no stereochemical control with a carbocation intermedate.

Electrophilic hydration adopts a stereochemistry wherein the substituent is equally likely to bond pointing into the plane of the board as it is pointing out of the plane of the board. The 3º alcohol product could look like either of the following products:



Note: Whenever a straight line is used along with dashes and wedges on the same molecule, it could be denoting that the straight line bond is in the same plane as the board. Practice with a molecular model kit and attempting the practice problems at the end can help eliminate any ambiguity.

Is this a Reversible Synthesis?

Electrophilic hydration is reversible because an alkene in water is in equilibrium with the alcohol product. To sway the equilibrium one way or another, the temperature or the concentration of the non-nucleophilic strong acid can be changed. For example:

- Less sulfuric or phosphoric acid and an excess of water help synthesize more alcohol product.
- Lower temperatures help synthesize more alcohol product.

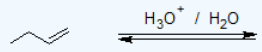
Is There a Better Way to Add Water to Synthesize an Alcohol From an Alkene?

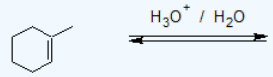
A more efficient pathway does exist: see Oxymercuration - Demercuration: A Special Electrophilic Addition. Oxymercuration does not allow for rearrangements, but it does require the use of mercury, which is highly toxic. Detractions for using electrophilic hydration to make alcohols include:

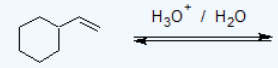
- Allowing for carbocation rearrangements
- Poor yields due to the reactants and products being in equilibrium
- Allowing for product mixtures (such as an (R)-enantiomer and an (S)-enantiomer)
- Using sulfuric or phosphoric acid

Exercise

1. Draw the bond-line structure for the major product of each reaction.

a) 

b) 

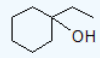
c) 

Answer

1.

a) 

b) 

c) 

1,2-hydride shift

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Lance Peery (UCD), Duyen Dao-Tran (UCD)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

10.14: Hydration- Acid Catalyzed Addition of Water is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

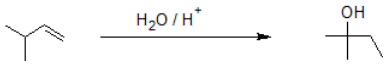
10.15: Hydration- Oxymercuration-Demercuration

Learning Objective

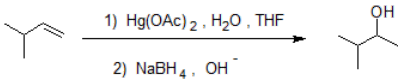
- apply the principles of regioselectivity and stereoselectivity to the addition reactions of alkenes
- predict the products, specify the reagents, and discern most efficient reaction for hydration of alkenes (acid catalyzed hydration; or oxymercuration/demercuration; or hydroboration/oxidation)

Introduction

Acid-catalyzed hydration of alkenes is limited by carbocation stability. Carbocation rearrangement can occur to form a more stable ion as shown in the example below.



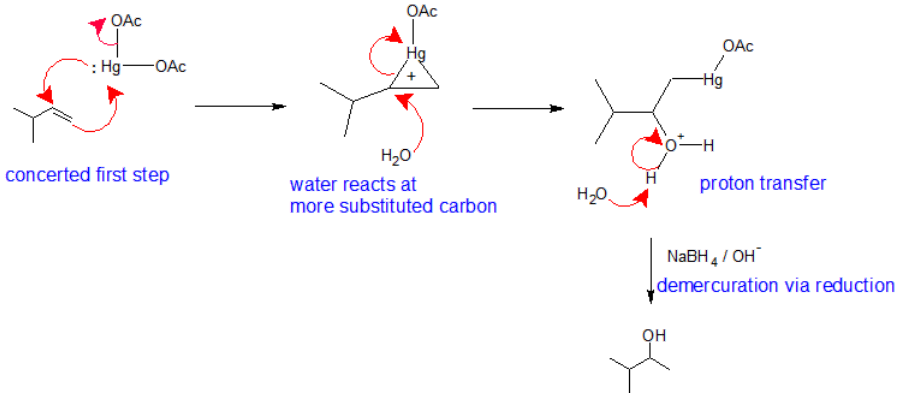
Alkene hydration using the oxymercuration-demercuration reaction pathway reliably produces the Markovnikov product without carbocation rearrangment as shown in the example below.



Oxymercuration-Demercuration is a two step pathway used to produce alcohols.

Oxymercuration-Demercuration Mechanism

This mechanism is similar to the previous electrophilic addition reactions. The major difference is that a mercurium ion bridge stabilizes the carbocation intermediate so that it cannot rearrange. Metals are electropositive. Mercury carries a partial positive charge in the acetate complex and is the electrophile. During the first step of this mechanism, the pi electrons form a bond to mercury while the lone pair on the mercury simultaneously bonds to the other vinyl carbon creating a mercurium ion bridge. The mercurium ion forms in conjunction with the loss of an acetate ion. The mercurium ion stabilizes the carbocation so that it does not rearrange. In the second step of this mechanism, a water molecule reacts with the most substituted carbon to open the mercurium ion bridge. The third step of this mechanism is a proton transfer to a solvent water molecule to neutralize the addition product. The fourth step of the reaction pathway is the reduction of the organomercury intermediate with sodium borohydride under basic conditions. The mechanism of the fourth step is beyond the scope of first year organic chemistry.



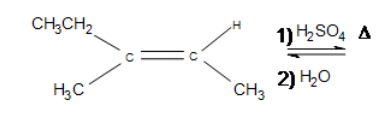
Notice that overall, the oxymercuration - demercuration mechanism follows Markovnikov's Regioselectivity with the OH group attached to the most substituted carbon and the H attached to the least substituted carbon. The reaction is useful, because strong acids are not required and carbocation rearrangements are avoided because no discreet carbocation intermediate forms.

Exercise

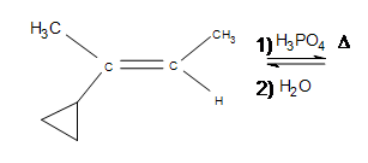
1. Show how to prepare 3-methyl2-pentanol from 3-methyl-1-pentene.

Note: Questions 2-5 have not shown the water present in the sulfuric acid solution and have indicated a second neutralization step. Some authors simply write H^+/H_2O as a single step.

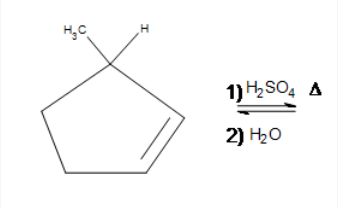
2. Draw the bond-line structure for the product.



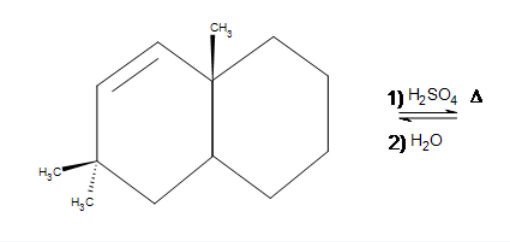
3. Draw the bond-line structure for the product. How does the cyclopropane group affect the reaction?



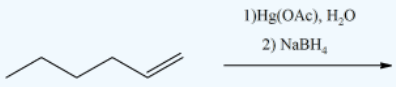
4. Draw the bond-line structure for the product. (Hint: What is different about this problem?)

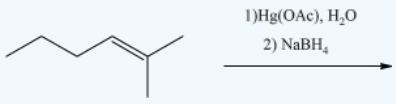


5. Draw the bond-line structure for the product(s). Indicate any shifts as well as the major product:

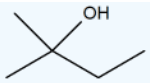


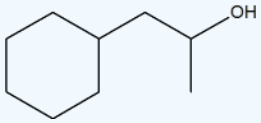
6. In each case, predict the product(s) of these reactants of oxymercuration.





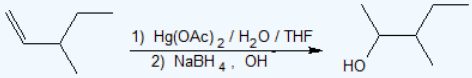
7. Propose the alkene that was the reactant for each of these products of oxymercuration.



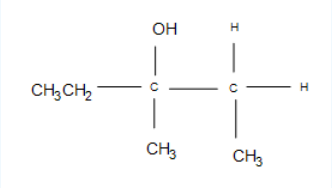


Answer

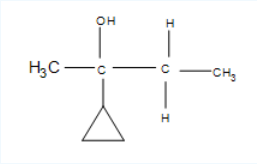
1.



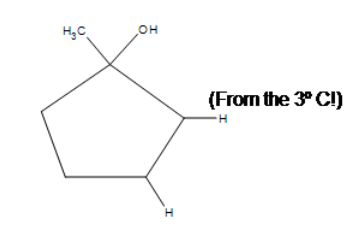
2. This reaction is electrophilic hydration.



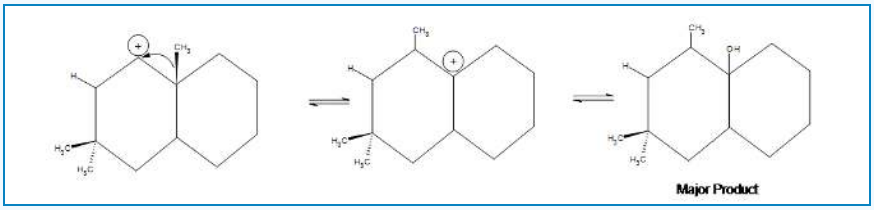
3. The answer is additional side products, but **the major product formed is still the same** (the product shown). Depending on the temperatures used, the cyclopropane may open up into a straight chain, which makes it unlikely that the major product will form (after the reaction, it is unlikely that the 3º carbon will remain as such).



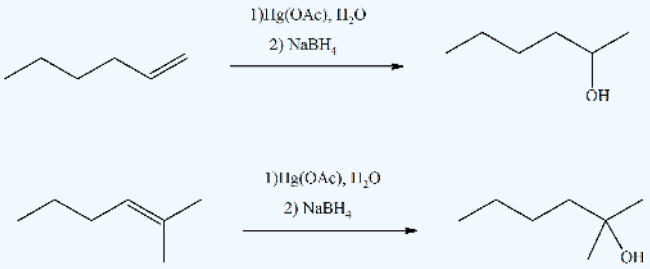
4. A hydride shift actually occurs from the top of the 1-methylcyclopentane to where the carbocation had formed.



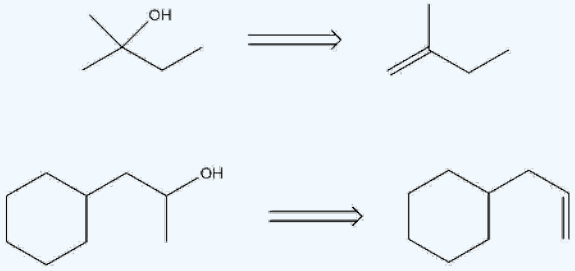
5. In the first picture shown below, an alkyl shift occurs but a hydride shift (which occurs faster) is possible. Why doesn't a hydride shift occur? The answer is because **the alkyl shift leads to a more stable product**. There is a noticeable amount of side product that forms where the two methyl groups are, but the major product shown below is still the most significant due to the hyperconjugation that occurs by being in between the two cyclohexanes.



6.



7.



References

1. Vollhardt, K. Peter C. Organic chemistry structure and function. New York: W.H. Freeman, 2007.
2. Smith, Michael B., and Jerry March. March's Advanced Organic Chemistry Reactions, Mechanisms, and Structure (March's Advanced Organic Chemistry). New York: Wiley-Interscience, 2007 2007.
3. Roderic P. Quirk , Robert E. Lea, Reductive demercuration of hex-5-enyl-1-mercuric bromide by metal hydrides. Rearrangement, isotope effects, and mechanism, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1976, 98 (19), pp 5973–5978.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Lance Peery (UCD), Duyen Dao-Tran (UCD)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

10.15: Hydration- Oxymercuration-Demercuration is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.16: Hydration - Hydroboration-Oxidation

Learning Objectives

- apply the principles of regioselectivity and stereoselectivity to the addition reactions of alkenes
- predict the products, specify the reagents, and discern most efficient reaction for hydration of alkenes (acid catalyzed hydration; or oxymercuration/demercuration; or hydroboration/oxidation)

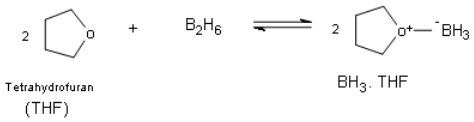
Hydroboration-Oxidation is a two step pathway used to produce alcohols. The reaction proceeds in an anti-Markovnikov manner, where the hydrogen (from $\mathbf{BH_3}$ or $\mathbf{BHR_2}$) attaches to the more substituted carbon and the boron attaches to the least substituted carbon in the alkene double bond. Furthermore, the borane acts as the electrophile by accepting two electrons in its empty p orbital from an alkene that is electron rich. This process allows boron to have an electron octet. A very interesting characteristic of this process is that it does not require any activation by a catalyst. The hydroboration mechanism has the elements of both hydrogenation and electrophilic addition and it is a stereospecific (syn addition), meaning that the hydroboration takes place on the same face of the double bond, this leads cis stereochemistry.

The Borane Complex

It is very important to understand the structure and properties of the borane molecule. Borane exists naturally as a very toxic gas and it exists as dimer of the general formula $\mathbf{B_2H_6}$ (diborane).

$$\mathbf{BH_3 \longrightarrow B_2H_6}$$

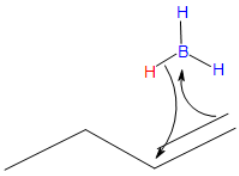
Since diborane dimer ignites spontaneously in air, it commercially distributed in ether or tetrahydrofuran (THF) solutions. In these solutions, the borane can exist as a Lewis acid-base complex which allows boron to have an octet of electrons.



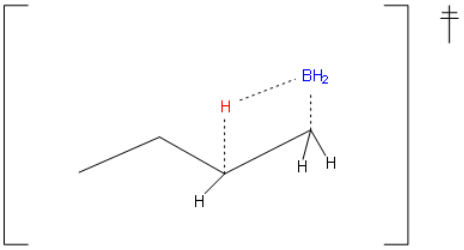
The Mechanism

Step #1: Hydroboration of the alkene

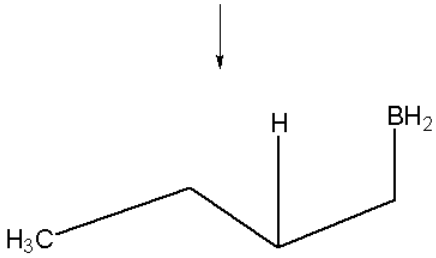
The addition of the borane to the alkene is initiated and proceeds as a concerted reaction because bond breaking and bond formation occur at the same time. The vacant 2p orbital of the boron takes the role of electrophile and accepts the pi electrons from the nucleophilic alkene. The boron adds to the less substituted carbon of the alkene, which then places the hydrogen on the more substituted carbon. Both, the boron and the hydrogen add simultaneously on the same face of the double bond (syn addition). With a concerted mechanism, there is no carbocation formation.



Transition state



* Note that a carbocation is not formed. Therefore, no rearrangement takes place.

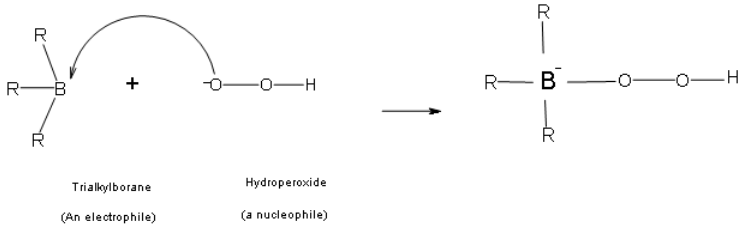


It is important to note that reaction continues two more times until all three hydrogens on the borane have reacted with alkenes to create the trialkylborane intermediate R3B.

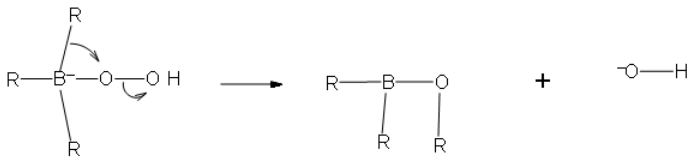
Step #2: Oxidation of the Trialkylborane by Hydrogen Peroxide

The hydrogen peroxide (**HOOH**) is the nucleophile in this reaction because it is the electron donor to the newly formed trialkylborane that resulted from the previous hydroboration.

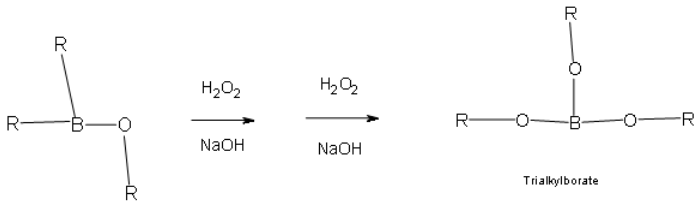
$$\mathbf{HOOH + OH^- \longrightarrow HOO^- + HOH} \tag{10.16.1}$$



In this second part of the mechanism, a rearrangement of an R group with its pair of bonding electrons to an adjacent oxygen results in the loss of a hydroxide ion.



Two more of these reactions with hydroperoxide will occur in order give a trialkylborate



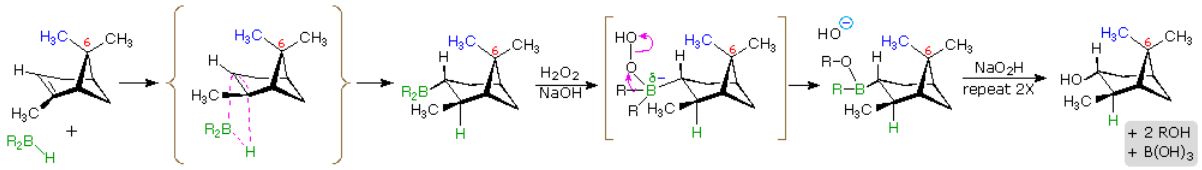
In the final step of the oxidation process, the trialkylborate reacts with aqueous **NaOH** to give the alcohol and sodium borate (\ce{Na3BO3}\).

$$\mathbf{(RO_3)B + 3\,NaOH \longrightarrow 3\,OH + Na_3BO_3} \qquad \mathbf{(10.16.2)}$$

If you need additional visuals to aid you in understanding the mechanism, click on the outside links provided at the end of this section.

Stereochemistry of the Hydroboration Step

The hydroboration reaction is among the few simple addition reactions that proceed cleanly in a syn fashion. As noted above, this is a single-step reaction. Since the bonding of the double bond carbons to boron and hydrogen is concerted, it follows that the geometry of this addition must be syn. Furthermore, rearrangements are unlikely inasmuch as a discrete carbocation intermediate is never formed. These features are illustrated for the hydroboration of α-pinene.



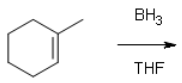
Since the hydroboration procedure is most commonly used to hydrate alkenes in an anti-Markovnikov fashion, we also need to know the stereoselectivity of the second oxidation reaction, which substitutes a hydroxyl group for the boron atom. Independent study has shown this reaction takes place with retention of configuration so the overall addition of water is also syn.

The hydroboration of α-pinene also provides a nice example of steric hindrance control in a chemical reaction. In the less complex alkenes used in earlier examples the plane of the double bond was often a plane of symmetry, and addition reagents could approach with equal ease from either side. In this case, one of the methyl groups bonded to C-6 (colored blue in the equation) covers one face of the double bond, blocking any approach from that side. All reagents that add to this double bond must therefore approach from the side opposite this methyl.

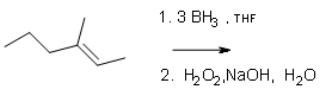
Exercises

1. Draw the bond-line structure of the product(s) for these following reactions?

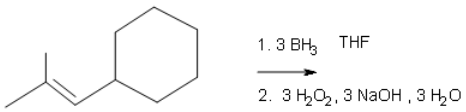
a)



b)

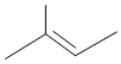


c)



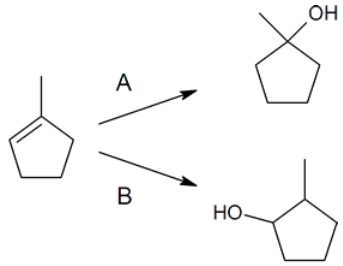
2. Draw the structural formulas for the alcohols that result from hydroboration-oxidation of the alkenes shown.

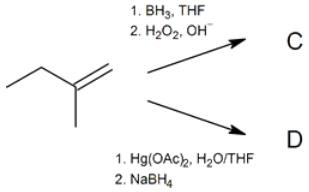
a)



b) (E)-3-methyl-2-pentene

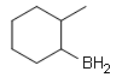
3. Write out the reagents or products (A–D) shown in the following reaction schemes.

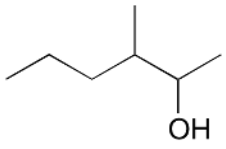


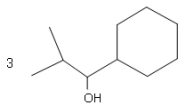


Answer

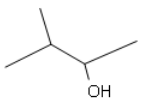
1.

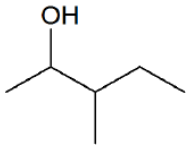
a) 

b) 

c) 

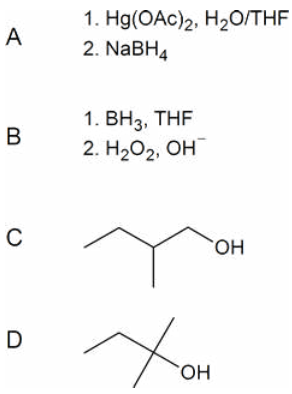
2.

a) 



b)

3.



References

1. Vollhardt, Peter, and Neil Shore. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. 5th. New York: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2007.
2. Foote, S. Christopher, and William H. Brown. Organic Chemistry. 5th. Belmont, CA: Brooks/Cole Cengage Learning, 2005.
3. Bruice, Paula Yurkanis. Oragnic Chemistry. 5th. CA. Prentice Hall, 2006.
4. Bergbreiter E. David , and David P. Rainville. Stereochemistry of hydroboration-oxidation of terminal alkenes. J. Org. Chem., 1976, 41 (18), pp 3031–3033
5. Ilich, Predrag-Peter; Rickertsen, Lucas S., and Becker Erienne. Polar Addition to C=C Group: Why Is Anti-Markovnikov Hydroboration-Oxidation of Alkenes Not "Anti-"? Journal of Chemical Education., 2006, v83, n11, pg 1681-1685

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

10.16: Hydration - Hydroboration-Oxidation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

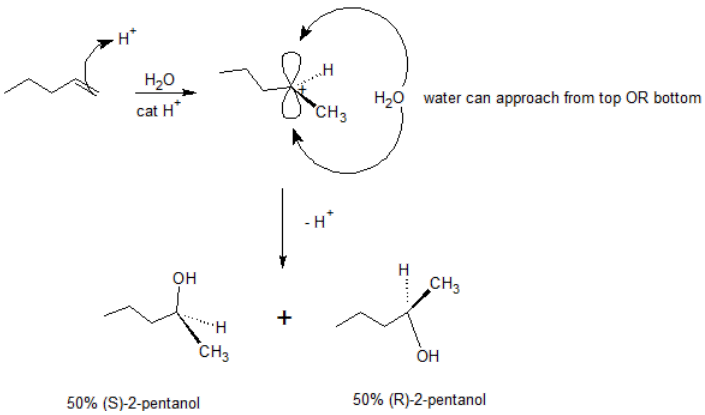
10.17: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Achiral Alkenes

Learning Objective

- discern the stereochemical differences between the EAR of chiral and achiral alkenes

Stereochemistry and the Subtle Details

Organic reactions in the laboratory or in living systems can produce chiral centres. Consider reaction of 1-pentene with water (acid catalyzed). Markovnikov regiochemistry occurs and the OH adds to the second carbon. However, both R and S products occur giving a racemic (50/50) mixture of 2-butanol. How does this occur? The proton addition to 1-pentene results in a planar carbocation intermediate. A molecule of water is then equally likely to react from the top or the bottom of this cation to produce either (S)-2-pentanol or (R)-2-pentanol, respectively, as shown in the mechanism below.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

10.17: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Achiral Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

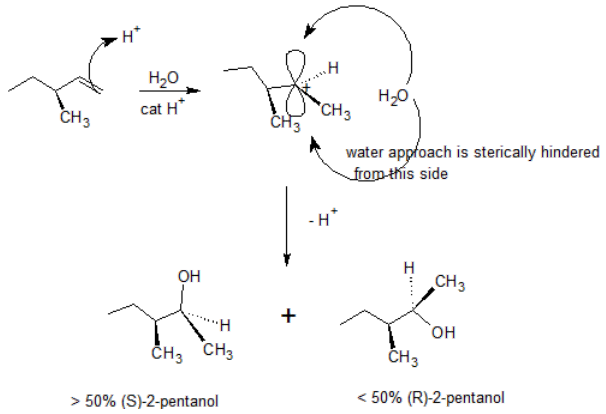
10.18: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Chiral Alkenes

Learning Objective

- discern the stereochemical differences between the EAR of chiral and achiral alkenes

Stereochemistry - the Subtle Details

In the previous section, the addition of water to the achiral alkene produced a racemic mixture of two enantiomeric alcohols. They are produced in equal amounts so the mixture is optically inactive. What would occur if we carried out a similar reaction on a chiral alkene? Consider (S)-3-methyl-1-pentene reacting with water (acid catalyzed). Proton addition produces a carbocation intermediate that is chiral (* denotes stereogenic centre). That intermediate does not have a plane of symmetry and therefore attack by water is not equal from the top and bottom. This ultimately produces R and S products in a non 50:50 ratio as shown in the mechanism below.



Exercise

1. Predict the products of the following reaction showing stereochemistry.



Answer

1. The products are diastereomers of one another.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

10.18: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Chiral Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.19: Addition of Halogens

Learning Objective

- predict the products/specify the reagents for halogenation of alkenes

Introduction

As the halogen molecule, for example Br_2, approaches the double bond of an alkene, electrons in the double bond repel electrons in the bromine molecule causing polarization of the halogen bond. This interaction induces a dipole moment in the halogen molecule bond allowing one of the halogens to gain a partial positive charge and take the role of electrophile. The nucleophilic pi electrons form a bond to the electrophilic halogen while the halogen molecular bond heterolytically breaks to release bromide as a leaving group. The halogen addition is not regioselective but stereoselective. Stereochemistry of this addition is analogous to the oxymercuration mechanism. In this reaction, a bromonium (halogenium) ion froms as the intermediate. The bromonium ion formation stabilizes the positive charge and prevents carbocation rearrangement. In the second step, the bromide released from the first step takes the role of thenucleophile and reacts with the cyclic bromonium ion with back side orientation. Therefore, the stereochemistry of the product is a **vicinial dihalides** through **anti-addition**.

$$\mathbf{R_2C{=}CR_2 + X_2 \rightarrow R_2CX{-}CR_2X} \tag{10.19.1}$$

Halogens that are commonly used in this type of the reaction are: Br_2 and Cl_2. In thermodynamical terms I_2 is too slow for this reaction because of the size of its atom, and F_2 is too vigorous and explosive. Solvents that are used for this type of electrophilic halogenation are inert (e.g., CCl_4) can be used in this reaction.

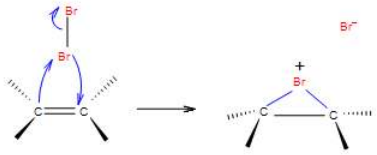
Because halogen with negative charge can attack any carbon from the opposite side of the cycle it creates a mixture of steric products.Optically inactive starting material produce optically inactive achiral products (meso) or a racemic mixture.

Electrophilic addition mechanism consists of two steps.

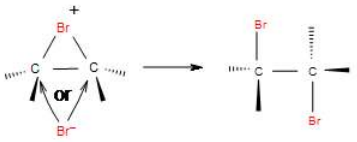
Before constructing the mechanism let us summarize conditions for this reaction. We will use Br_2 in our example for halogenation of ethylene. Halogens can act as electrophiles due to polarizability of their covalent bond. Addition of halogens is stereospecific and produces vicinial dihalides with anti-addition. Cis starting materials will give a mixture of enantiomers and trans starting materials produce a meso compound.

Nucleophile	pi electrons of alkene double bond
Electrophile	halogen (Cl_2 or Br_2)
Regiochemistry	none
Stereochemistry	anti-additon

Step 1: The addition the Br-Br bond polarizes, heterolytic cleavage occurs and Br with the positive charge forms a intermediate cycle with the double bond.

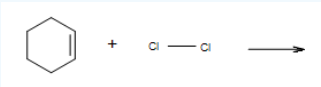


Step 2: The bromide anion reacts with either carbon of the bridged bromonium ion from the back side of the ring. The ring opens up and the two halogens are in the **anti-position** relative to each other.



Exercise

1. What is the mechanism of adding Cl_2 to the cyclohexene?

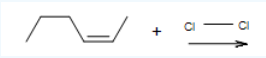


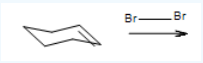
2. A reaction of Br_2 molecule in an inert solvent with alkene follows?

a) syn addition

b) anti addition

c) Morkovnikov rule

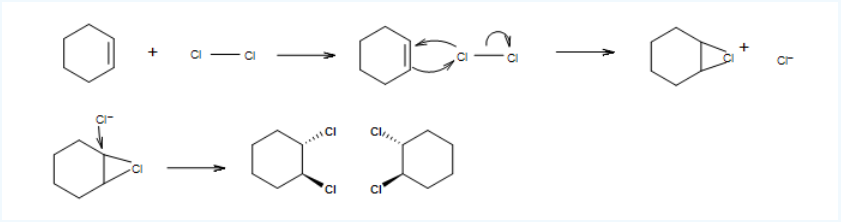
3. 

4. 

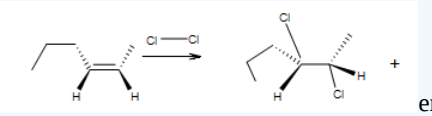
5. Predict the product of the product of 1,2-dimethylcyclopentene reacting with Br_2 with proper stereochemistry.

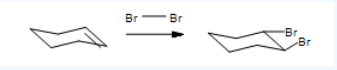
6. Predict the products for 1,2-dimethylcyclpentene reacting with HCl, give the proper stereochemistry. What is the relationship between the two products?

Answer

1. 

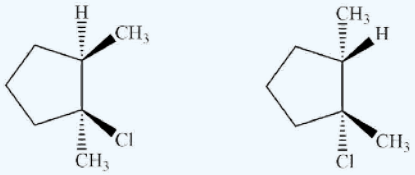
2. b

3.  enantiomer

4. 

5. 

6.



These compounds are enantiomers.

References

1. Vollhard,K.Peter C., and Neil E.Schore.Organic Chemistry:Structure and Function.New Yourk: W.H.Freeman and Company 2007
2. Chemestry-A Europian Journal 9 (2003) :1036-1044

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

10.19: Addition of Halogens is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.20: Formation of Halohydrins

Learning Objective

- predict the products/specify the reagents for hydrohalogenation of alkenes

Introduction

The proton is not the only electrophilic species that initiates addition reactions to the double bond of alkenes. Lewis acids like the halogens, boron hydrides and certain transition metal ions are able to accept the alkene pi-electrons. The resulting positively charged intermediates attract nucleophiles to give addition products.The electrophilic character of the halogens is well known. Fluorine adds uncontrollably with alkenes, and the addition of iodine is unfavorable, so these are not useful preparative methods. Chlorine (Cl_2) and bromine (Br_2) react selectively with the double bond of alkenes, so we will focus on these reactions.

The addition of chlorine and bromine to alkenes, as shown below, produces vicinal dihalo-compounds. In this reaction, we can assume that the solvent was something that is not nucleophilic, such as tetrahydrofuran (THF).

$R_2C{=}CR_2 + X_2 \longrightarrow R_2CX\text{-}CR_2X$

If this same reaction is performed in a nucleophilic solvent like water or an alcohol, then the solvent becomes the nucleophile in the second step and reacts with the bromonium (or chloronium) ion to form a halohydrin as shown below.

$$R_2C{=}CR_2 + X_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow R_2COH\text{-}CR_2X$$

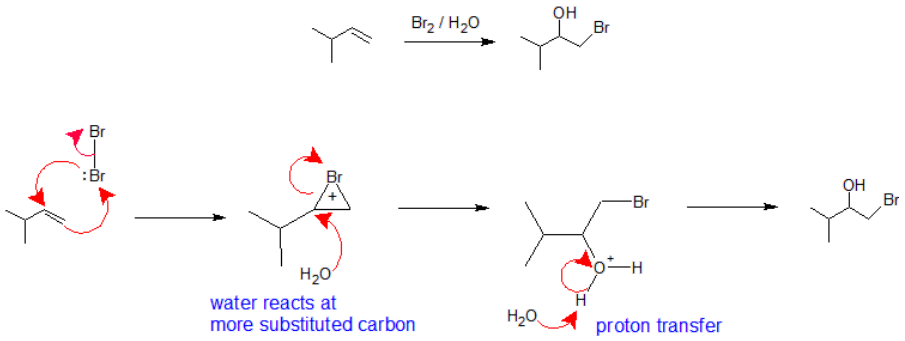
There are also other halogen-containing reagents that add to double bonds, such as hypohalous acids, HOX, and sulfenyl chlorides, RSCl. These reagents are unsymmetrical, so their addition to unsymmetrical double bonds may in principle take place in two ways. In practice, these addition reactions are regioselective, with one of the two possible constitutionally isomeric products being favored. The electrophilic moiety in both of these reagents is the halogen.

$(CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2 + HOBr \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2COH\text{-}CH_2Br$

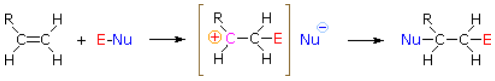
$(CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2 + C_6H_5SCl \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2CCl\text{-}CH_2SC_6H_5$

Mechanisms explain the Regioselectivity

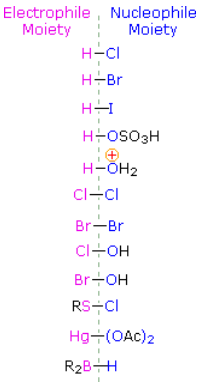
X_2/H_2O or X_2/ROH: The regioselectivity of halohydrin formation from an alkene reaction with a halogen in a nucleophilic solvent is analogous to the oxymercuration-demercuration pathway. The halogen molecule takes the role of electrophile accepting nucleophilic pi electrons from the alkene while simultaneously forming a bond with the other vinyl carbon to create a bromonium (or chloroium) ion. The bromonium (or chloronium) ion formation stabilizes the positive charge and prevents carbocation rearrangement. The solvent takes the role of the nucleophile because it is present is a much greater percentage than the leaving group and reacts with the most substituted carbon of the cyclic bromonium (or chloronium) ion to create regiochemistry. The stereochemistry of this reaction is anti-addition because the solvent approaches the bromonium ion with back side orientation to produce the addition product. However, since the interaction of the halogen with the alkene can occur from above or below, there is no stereochemical control in this reaction and a mixture of enantiomers will be produced when applicable. The final step of this mechanism is a proton transfer to a solvent water molecule to neutralize the addition product.



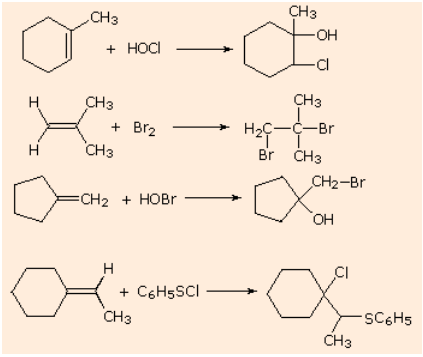
HOX or RSCl: The regioselectivity of the hypohalous acids and sulfenyl chloride reactions may be explained by the same mechanism we used to rationalize the Markovnikov rule. Bonding of an electrophilic species to the double bond of an alkene forms preferentially to produce the more stable (more highly substituted) carbocation. This intermediate should then combine rapidly with a nucleophilic species to produce the addition product.



To apply this mechanism we need to determine the electrophilic moiety in each of the reagents. By using electronegativity differences we can dissect common addition reagents into electrophilic and nucleophilic moieties, a**s shown on the right**. In the case of hypochlorous and hypobromous acids (HOX), these weak Brønsted acids (pKa's ca. 8) do not react as proton donors; and since oxygen is more electronegative than chlorine or bromine, the electrophile will be a halide cation. The nucleophilic species that bonds to the intermediate carbocation is then hydroxide ion, or more likely water (the usual solvent for these reagents), and the products are called halohydrins. Sulfenyl chlorides add in the opposite manner because the electrophile is a sulfur cation, RS(+), whereas the nucleophilic moiety is chloride anion (chlorine is more electronegative than sulfur).

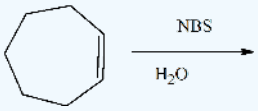


Below are some examples illustrating the addition of various electrophilic halogen reagents to alkene groups. Notice the specific regiochemistry of the products, as explained above.



Exercise

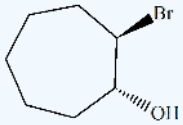
1. Predict the product of the following reaction:



2. When butene is treated with NBS in the presence of water, the product shows that the bromine is on the least substituted carbon, is this Markovnikov or anti-Markovnikov?

Answer

1.



2. Since the bromine is the first addition to the alkene, this addition would be an anti-Markovnikov addition.

Contributors

- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

10.20: Formation of Halohydrins is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

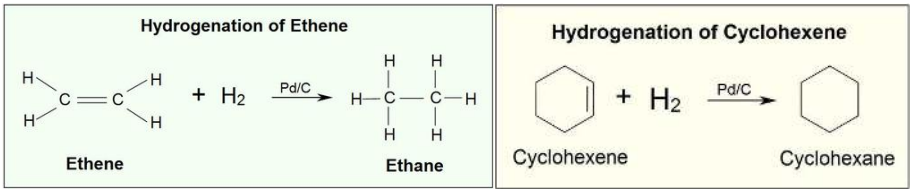
10.21: Reduction of Alkenes - Catalytic Hydrogenation

Learning Objective

- recognize organic oxidation and reduction reactions
- predict the products/specify the reagents for hydrogenation (reduction) of alkenes

Introduction

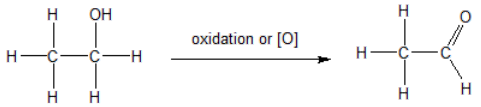
Addition of hydrogen to a carbon-carbon double bond to form an alkane is a reduction reaction that is also called catalytic hydrogenation. Hydrogenation of a double bond is a thermodynamically favorable reaction because it forms a more stable (lower energy) product. In other words, the energy of the product is lower than the energy of the reactant; thus it is exothermic (heat is released). The heat released is called the heat of hydrogenation, which is an indicator of a molecule's stability. Regioselectivity is not an issue because the same group (a hydrogen atom) is bonded to each of the vinyl carbons. The simplest source of two hydrogen atoms is molecular hydrogen (H_2), but mixing alkenes with hydrogen does not result in any discernible reaction. Although the overall hydrogenation reaction is exothermic, a high activation energy prevents it from taking place under normal conditions. This restriction may be circumvented by the use of a catalyst, as shown in the reactions below.



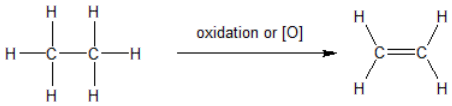
The O-chem View of Oxidation and Reduction

For inorganic chemistry, the flow of electrons is easily counted with the change in oxidation numbers of the metals and non-metals. The expressions "LEO says GER" for "Loss of Electrons is Oxidation and Gain of Electrons is Reduction" or "OIL RIG" for "Oxidation Is Loss and Reduction Is Gain" can be useful guides to recognizing oxidation and reduction reactions for inorganic chemistry. However for organic chemistry, most of the reactants and products are neutral so the electron flow is more difficult to track. For organic compounds, oxidation and reduction reactions can be recognized at least three different ways.

1) Oxidation is an increase in the number of carbon to oxygen bonds or a decrease in the number of carbon to hydrogen bonds.

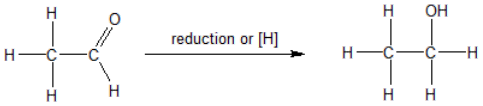


Oxidation can be recognized by the gain of carbon to oxygen bonds.

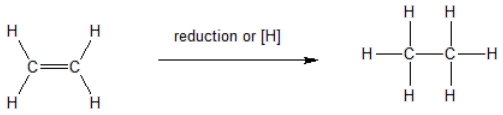


Oxidation can be recognized by the loss of carbon to hydrogen bonds.

2) Reduction is the opposite of oxidation so it is a decrease in the number of carbon to oxygen bonds or an increase in the number of carbon to hydrogen bonds.

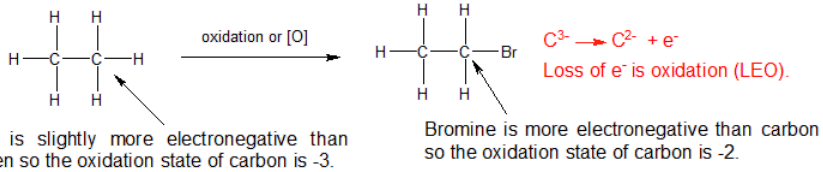


Reduction can be recognized by the loss of carbon to oxygen bonds.



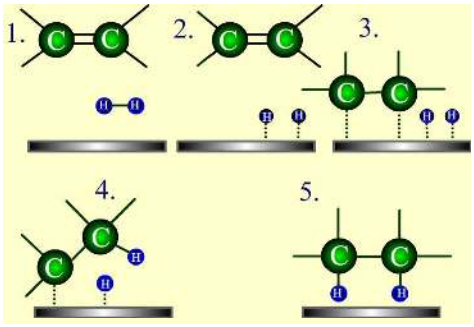
Reduction can be recognized by the gain of carbon to hydrogen bonds.

3) For reactions that do not involve a change in the bonding of carbon with oxygen and hydrogen, then we need to look at the differences in electronegativity. The shared electrons are assigned to the more electronegative element to determine the oxidation numbers.



The Catalyst

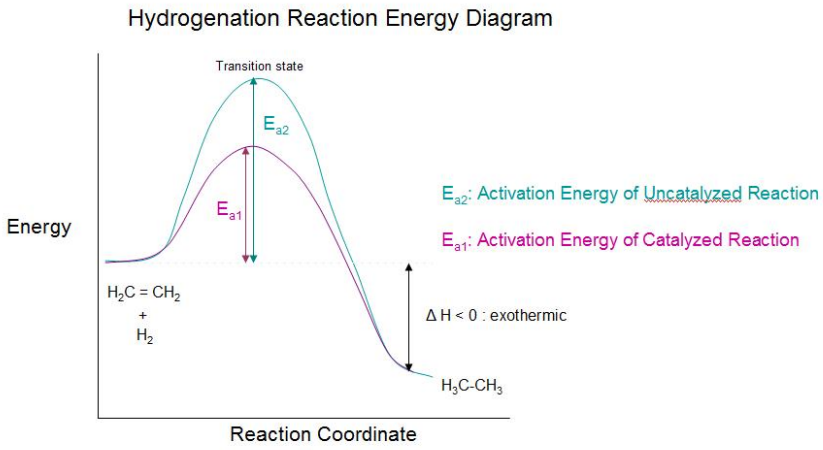
The reaction between hydrogen (H_2) gas and an alkene (a carbon-carbon double bond) requires an active metal catalyst. A catalyst increases the reaction rate by lowering the activation energy of the reaction. Although the catalyst is not consumed in the reaction, it is required to accelerate the reaction sufficiently to be observed in a reasonable amount of time. Catalysts commonly used in alkene hydrogenation are: platinum, palladium, and nickel. The metal catalyst acts as a surface on which the reaction takes place. This increases the rate by putting the reactants in close proximity to each other, facilitating interactions between them. With this catalyst present, the sigma bond of H_2 breaks, and the two hydrogen atoms instead bind to the metal (see #2 in the figure below). The π bond of the alkene weakens as it also interacts with the metal as shown in step #3 of the diagram below.



Since both the reactants are bound to the metal catalyst, the hydrogen atoms can easily add, one at a time, to the previously double-bonded carbons as shown in steps #4 and #5 above. The position of both of the reactants bound to the catalyst makes it so the hydrogen atoms are only exposed to one side of the alkene. This explains why the hydrogen atoms add to same side of the molecule, called syn-addition.

Alkene Stability and Catalytic Hydrogenation

As shown in the reaction energy diagram below, the hydrogenation of alkenes is exothermic, and heat is released corresponding to the ΔE (colored green).



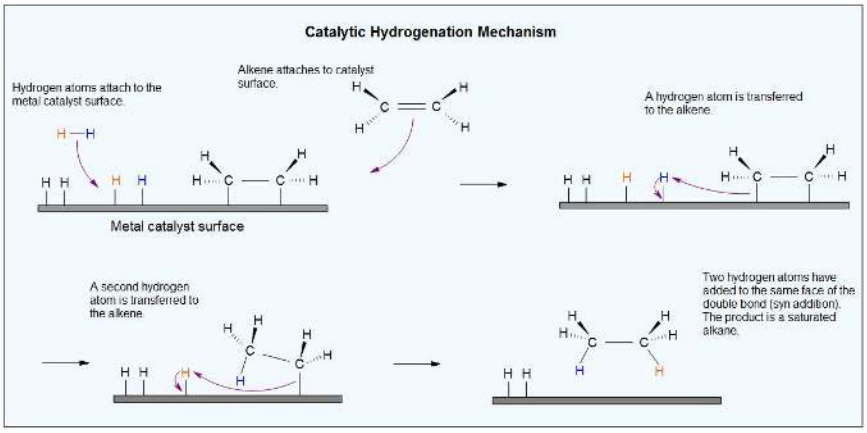
A catalyst lowers the activation energy needed for the reacting molecules to reach the transition state. The addition of a catalyst enables the hydrogenation reaction to occur, that otherwise, would not.

This heat of reaction can be used to evaluate the thermodynamic stability of alkenes having different numbers of alkyl substituents on the double bond. For example, the following table lists the heats of hydrogenation for three C_5H_{10} alkenes which give the same alkane product (2-methylbutane). Since a large heat of reaction indicates a high energy reactant, these heats are inversely proportional to the stabilities of the alkene isomers. To a rough approximation, we see that each alkyl substituent on a double bond stabilizes this functional group by a bit more than 1 kcal/mole.

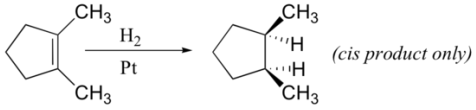
Alkene Isomer	$(CH_3)_2CHCH{=}CH_2$ 3-methyl-1-butene	$CH_2{=}C(CH_3)CH_2CH_3$ 2-methyl-1-butene	$(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_3$ 2-methyl-2-butene
Heat of Reaction (ΔH^o)	–30.3 kcal/mole	–28.5 kcal/mole	–26.9 kcal/mole

Stereochemistry of Catalytic Hydrogenation

From the mechanism shown below, we expect the addition of hydrogen to occur with syn-stereoselectivity since both reactants approach the same side of the catalyst's surface.

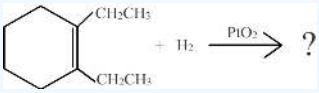


For example, 1,2-dimethylcyclopentene is reduced to 1,2-dimethylcyclopentane during catalytic hydrogenation.

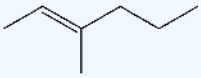


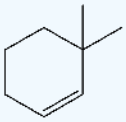
(cis product only)

Exercises

1. Use the catalytic hydrogenation of ethene with platinum oxide to answer the following questions.
   a. 0.500 mol of ethene reacts with _____ mol of hydrogen.
   b. Ethene is being _____; while _____ is being oxidized.
   c. The oxidation number of carbon in ethene is _____; in ethane it is _____.
2. When 1.000 g of a certain triglyceride (fat) is treated with hydrogen gas in the presence of Adams' catalyst, it is found that the volume of hydrogen gas consumed at 99.8 kPa and 25.0°C is 162 mL. A separate experiment indicates that the molar mass of the fat is 914 g mol^{-1}. How many carbon-carbon double bonds does the compound contain?
3. Bromobutene reacts with hydrogen gas in the presence of a platinum catalyst. What is the name of the product?
4. Cyclohexene reacts with hydrogen gas in the presence of a palladium catalyst. What is the name of the product?
5. What is the stereochemistry of an alkene hydrogenation reaction?
6. When looking at their heats of hydrogenation, is the cis or the trans isomer generally more stable?
7. 2-chloro-4-ethyl-3methylcyclohexene reacts with hydrogen gas in the presence of a platinum catalyst. What is the name of the product?
8. 

9. Predict the products if the following alkenes were reacted with catalytic hydrogen.





Answer

1. a. 0.500 mole of hydrogen gas

b. Ethene is being reduced; while hydrogen is being oxidized.

c. The oxidation number of carbon in ethene is −2; in ethane it is −3.

2. Amount of hydrogen consumed
$$\begin{aligned} &= n \text{ mol} \\ &= \frac{PV}{RT} \\ &= \frac{99.8 \text{ kPa} \times 0.162 \text{ L}}{8.31 \text{ kPa} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{K}^{-1} \times 298 \text{ K}} \\ &= 6.53 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol } H_2 \end{aligned}$$

Amount of fat used
$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{(1.000 \text{ g}) \times (1 \text{ mol})}{(914 \text{ g})} \\ &= 1.09 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol fat} \end{aligned}$$

Ratio of moles of hydrogen consumed to moles of fat
$$\begin{aligned} &= 6.53 \times 10^{-3} : 1.09 \times 10^{-3} \\ &= 6 : 1 \end{aligned}$$

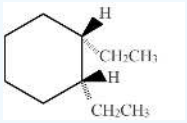
Thus, the fat contains six carbon-carbon double bonds per molecule.

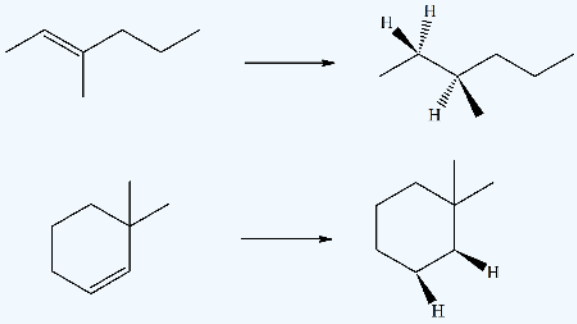
3. Bromobutane

4. Cyclohexane

5. Syn-addition

6. Trans

7. 2-chloro-4-ethyl-3methylcyclohexane
8. 

9. 

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

10.21: Reduction of Alkenes - Catalytic Hydrogenation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.22: Oxidation of Alkenes - Epoxidation

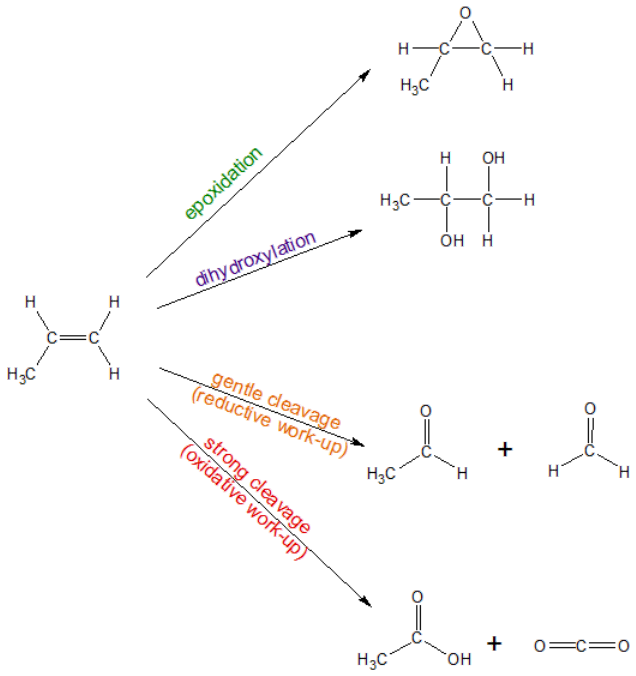
Learning Objective

- recognize organic oxidation and reduction reactions
- predict the products/specify the reagents for epoxidation of alkenes

Oxidation - a closer look

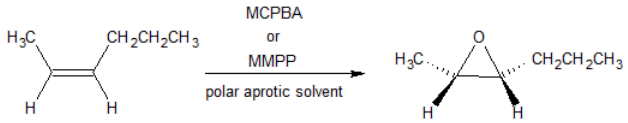
There are a variety of oxidative reagents that can react with alkenes. These reagents oxidize the alkene to different degrees and have different synthetic applications. It can be helpful to describe the relative oxidative strength of the reagents. Some reagents are so strong that the carbon chain will be cleaved at the alkene. This reactivity can also be a useful distinction. Before we explore the specific details of these different reaction pathways, let's look at the overall patterns of functional group reactivity.

The are four levels of oxidation for alkenes. The gentlest and least oxidative is epoxide (oxacyclopropane) formation in which the vinyl carbons share a single oxygen atom as a three membered ring. Moderate oxidation will convert the alkene into a vicinal diol in which each vinyl carbon is bonded to an independent oxygen atom. The stronger oxidative reactions cleave the carbon chain at the alkene. While the overall chemical process is an oxidation reaction, the work-up (second step) of the reaction can be performed under reductive or gentle conditions or a strong, oxidative cleavage reaction can occur with the strongest reagents. These four reaction pathways are summarized below.



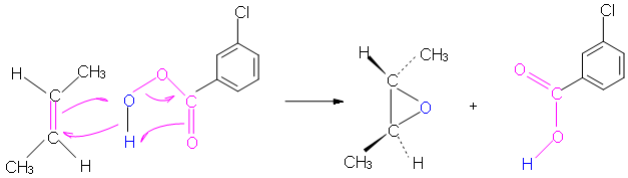
Epoxide (Oxacyclopropane) Synthesis by Peroxycarboxylic Acid

Oxacyclopropane rings, also called epoxide rings, are useful reagents that may be opened by further reaction to form anti vicinal diols. One way to synthesize oxacyclopropane rings is through the reaction of an alkene with a peroxycarboxylic acid, such as MCPBA (m-chloroperoxybenzoic acid). Oxacyclopropane synthesis by peroxycarboxylic acid requires an alkene and a peroxycarboxylic acid as well as an appropriate solvent. The peroxycarboxylic acid has the unique property of having an electropositive oxygen atom on the COOH group. The reaction is initiated by the electrophilic oxygen atom reacting with the nucleophilic carbon-carbon double bond. The mechanism involves a concerted reaction with a four-part, circular transition state. The result is that the originally electropositive oxygen atom ends up in the oxacyclopropane ring and the COOH group becomes COH.



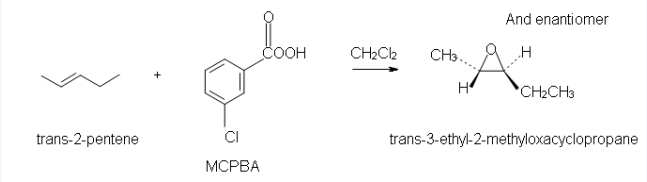
Mechanism

The mechanism is a concerted reaction between the alkene and peroxyacid. As seen with other concerted reactions, it is stereospecific: a cis-alkene will produce a cis-epoxide and a trans alkene will produce a trans-epoxide.



Peroxycarboxylic acids are generally unstable. An exception is MCPBA, shown in the mechanism above. Often abbreviated MCPBA, it is a stable crystalline solid. Consequently, MCPBA is popular for laboratory use. However, MCPBA can be explosive under some conditions. Peroxycarboxylic acids are sometimes replaced in industrial applications by monoperphthalic acid, or the monoperoxyphthalate ion bound to magnesium, which gives magnesium monoperoxyphthalate (MMPP). In either case, a nonaqueous solvent such as chloroform, ether, acetone, or dioxane is used. This is because in an aqueous medium with any acid or base catalyst present, the epoxide ring is hydrolyzed to form a vicinal diol, a molecule with two OH groups on neighboring carbons. (For more explanation of how this reaction leads to vicinal diols, see below.) However, in a nonaqueous solvent, the hydrolysis is prevented and the epoxide ring can be isolated as the product. Reaction yields from this reaction are usually about 75%. The reaction rate is affected by the nature of the alkene, with more nucleophilic double bonds resulting in faster reactions.

Example 10.22.1

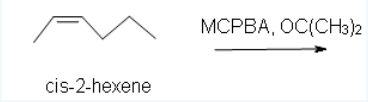


Since the transfer of oxygen is to the same side of the double bond, the resulting oxacyclopropane ring will have the same stereochemistry as the starting alkene. A good way to think of this is that the alkene is rotated so that some constituents are coming forward and some are behind. Then, the oxygen is inserted on top. (See the product of the above reaction.) One way the epoxide ring can be opened is by an acid catalyzed oxidation-hydrolysis. Oxidation-hydrolysis gives a vicinal diol, a molecule with OH groups on neighboring carbons. For this reaction, the dihydroxylation is *anti* since, due to steric hindrance, the ring is attacked from the side opposite the existing oxygen atom. Thus, if the starting alkene is trans, the resulting vicinal diol will have one S and one R stereocenter. But, if the starting alkene is cis, the resulting vicinal diol will have a racemic mixture of S, S and R, R enantiomers.

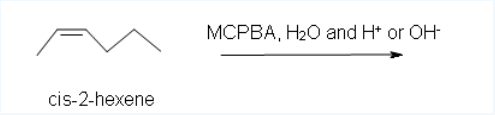
Exercise 10.22.1

1. Predict the product of the reaction of cis-2-hexene with MCPBA (meta-chloroperoxybenzoic acid)

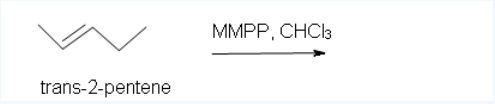
    a) in acetone solvent.



    b) in an aqueous medium with acid or base catalyst present.



2. Predict the product of the reaction of trans-2-pentene with magnesium monoperoxyphthalate (MMPP) in a chloroform solvent.

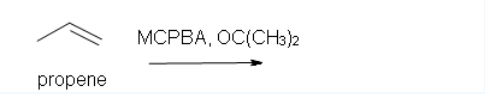


3. Predict the product of the reaction of trans-3-hexene with MCPBA in ether solvent.

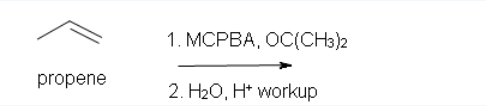


4. Predict the reaction of propene with MCPBA.

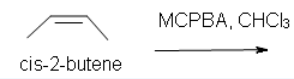
a) in acetone solvent



b) after aqueous work-up.

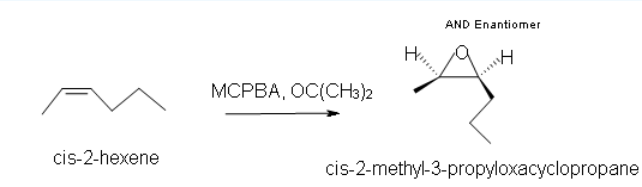


5. Predict the reaction of cis-2-butene in chloroform solvent.

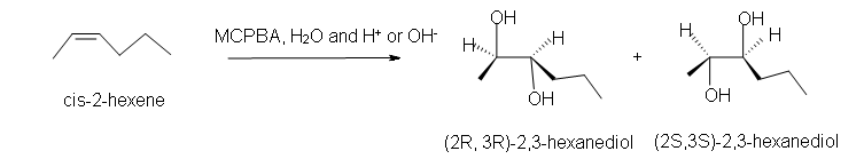


Answer

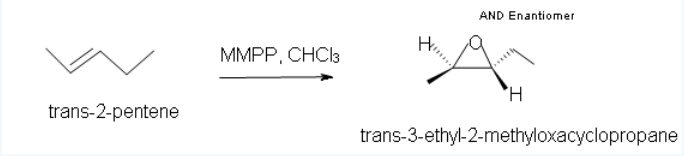
1. a) Cis-2-methyl-3-propyloxacyclopropane



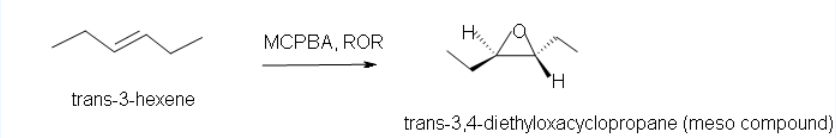
b) Racemic (2R,3R)-2,3-hexanediol and (2S,3S)-2,3-hexanediol



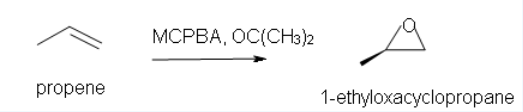
2. Trans-3-ethyl-2-methyloxacyclopropane.



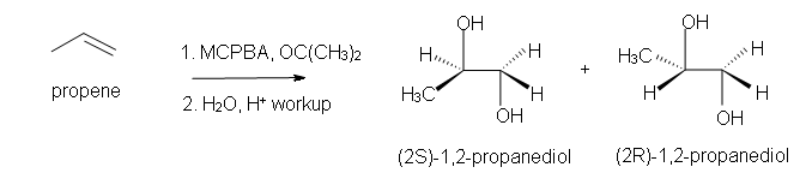
3. Trans-3,4-diethyloxacyclopropane.



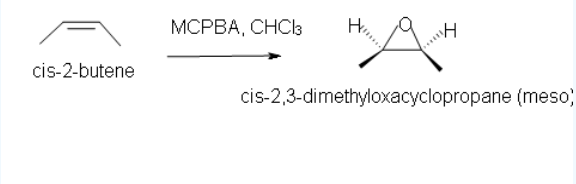
4. a) 1-ethyl-oxacyclopropane



b) Racemic (2S)-1,2-propandiol and (2R)-1,2-propanediol



5. Cis-2,3-dimethyloxacyclopropane



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Shivam Nand
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Kristen Perano

10.22: Oxidation of Alkenes - Epoxidation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

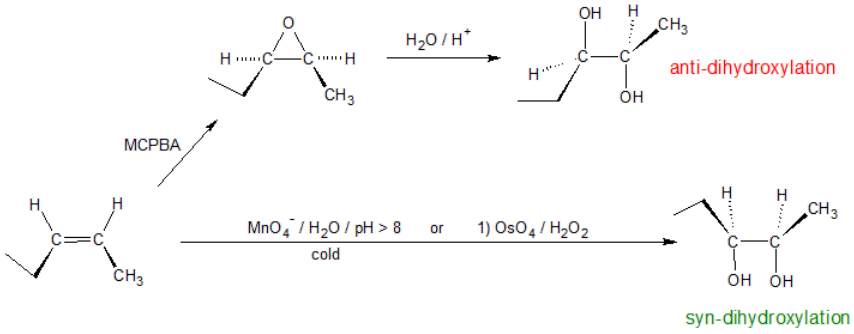
10.23: Dihydroxylation of Alkenes

Learning Objective

- predict the products/specify the reagents for dihydroxylation of alkenes

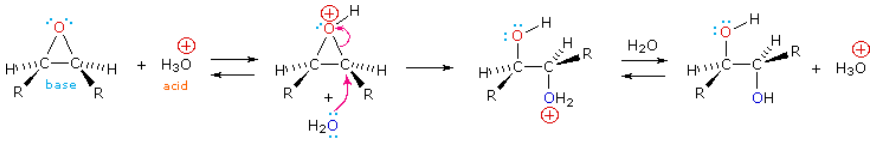
Dihydroxylation of alkenes

Alkenes can be dihydroxylated by two different stereochemical pathways: anti-dihydroxylation or syn-dihydroxylation. The opening of epoxides follows the anti-dihydroxylation mechanism, while potassium permanganate or osmium tetroxide produce the syn-dihydroxylated products. The osmium tertroxide reaction can also take place by a two-step process: 1) OsO_4 in pyridine followed by 2) H_2S or $NaHSO_3$. It is important to note that different professors will emphasize different reagent systems to accomplish the same chemical reaction. In these situations, it can be helpful to recognize the role of each reagent to discern patterns.



Anti Dihydroxylation

Epoxides may be cleaved by aqueous acid to give glycols that are often diastereomeric with those prepared by the syn-hydroxylation reaction described above. Proton transfer from the acid catalyst generates the conjugate acid of the epoxide, which is attacked by nucleophiles such as water in the same way that the cyclic bromonium ion described above undergoes reaction. The result is **anti-hydroxylation** of the double bond, in contrast to the syn-stereoselectivity of the earlier method. In the following equation this procedure is illustrated for a cis-disubstituted epoxide, which, of course, could be prepared from the corresponding cis-alkene. This hydration of an epoxide does not change the oxidation state of any atoms or groups. The mechanism for the ring opening of epoxides depends on the reaction conditions and is discussed in more detail in the next section of this chapter.



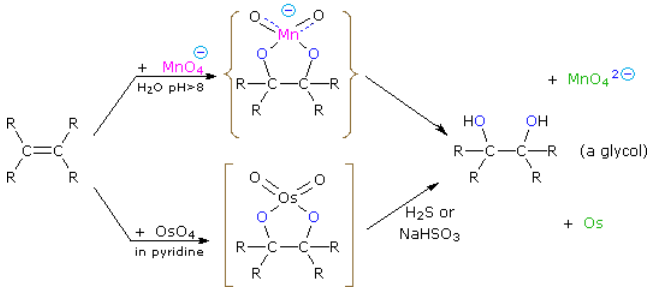
Syn Dihydroxylation

Osmium tetroxide oxidizes alkenes to give glycols through syn addition. A glycol, also known as a vicinal diol, is a compound with two -OH groups on adjacent carbons.

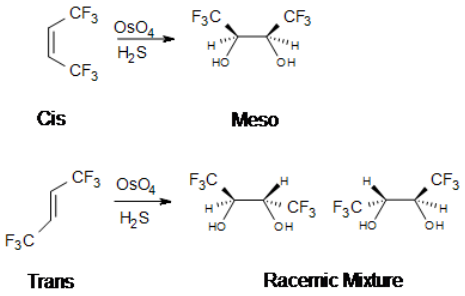


Dihydroxylated products (glycols) are obtained by reaction with aqueous potassium permanganate (pH > 8) or osmium tetroxide in pyridine solution. Both reactions appear to proceed by the same mechanism (shown below); the metallocyclic intermediate may be isolated in the osmium reaction. In basic solution the purple permanganate anion is reduced to the green manganate ion, providing a nice color test for the double bond functional group. From the mechanism shown here we would expect syn-stereoselectivity in the bonding to oxygen, and regioselectivity is not an issue.

When viewed in context with the previously discussed addition reactions, the hydroxylation reaction might seem implausible. Permanganate and osmium tetroxide have similar configurations, in which the metal atom occupies the center of a tetrahedral grouping of negatively charged oxygen atoms. How, then, would such a species interact with the nucleophilic pi-electrons of a double bond? A possible explanation is that an empty d-orbital of the electrophilic metal atom extends well beyond the surrounding oxygen atoms and initiates electron transfer from the double bond to the metal, in much the same fashion noted above for platinum. Back-bonding of the nucleophilic oxygens to the antibonding π*-orbital completes this interaction. The result is formation of a metallocyclic intermediate, as shown above.



The reaction with OsO_4 is a concerted process that has a cyclic intermediate and no rearrangements. Vicinal syn dihydroxylation complements the epoxide-hydrolysis sequence which constitutes an *anti* dihydroxylation of an alkene. When an alkene reacts with osmium tetroxide, stereocenters can form in the glycol product. Cis alkenes give meso products and trans alkenes give racemic mixtures.



OsO_4 is formed slowly when osmium powder reacts with gasoues O_2 at ambient temperature. Reaction of bulk solid requires heating to 400 °C:

$$Os_{(s)} + 2O_{2\ (g)} \rightarrow OS_4 \tag{10.23.1}$$

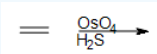
Since Osmium tetroxide is expensive and highly toxic, the reaction with alkenes has been modified. Catalytic amounts of OsO_4 and stoichiometric amounts of an oxidizing agent such as hydrogen peroxide are now used to eliminate some hazards. Also, an older reagent that was used instead of OsO_4 was potassium permanganate, $KMnO_4$. Although syn diols will result from the reaction of $KMnO_4$ and an alkene, potassium permanganate is less useful since it gives poor yields of the product because of *overoxidation*.

Chemical Highlight

Antitumor drugs have been formed by using dihydroxylation. This method has been applied to the enantioselective synthesis of ovalicin, which is a class of fungal-derived products called antiangiogenesis agents. These antitumor products can cut off the blood supply to solid tumors. A derivative of ovalicin, TNP-470, is chemically stable, nontoxic, and noninflammatory. TNP-470 has been used in research to determine its effectiveness in treating cancer of the breast, brain, cervix, liver, and prostate.

Exercise

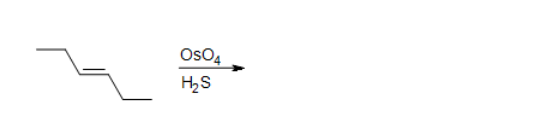
1. Give the major product.



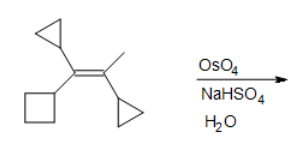
2. What is the product in the dihydroxylation of (Z)-3-hexene?



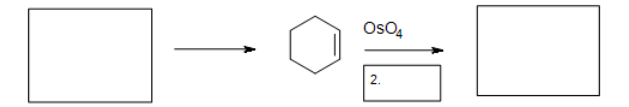
3. What is the product in the dihydroxylation of (E)-3-hexene?



4. Draw the intermediate of this reaction.

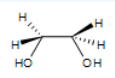


5. Fill in the missing reactants, reagents, and product.

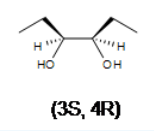


Answer

1. A syn-1,2-ethanediol is formed. There is no stereocenter in this particular reaction. The OH groups are on the same side.



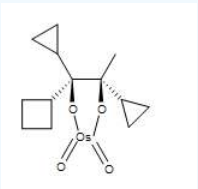
2. Meso-3,4-hexanediol is formed. There are 2 stereocenters in this reaction.



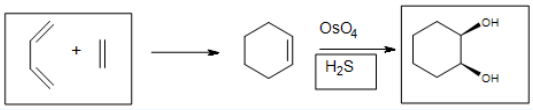
3. A racemic mixture of 3,4-hexanediol is formed. There are 2 stereocenters in both products.



4. A cyclic osmic ester is formed.



5. The Diels-Alder cycloaddition reaction is needed in the first box to form the cyclohexene. The second box needs a reagent to reduce the intermediate cyclic ester (not shown). The third box has the product: 1,2-cyclohexanediol.



References

1. Dehestani, Ahmad et al. (2005). Ligand-assisted reduction of osmium tetroxide with molecular hydrogen via a [3+2] mechanism. *Journal of the American Chemical Society, 2005, 127 (10),* 3423-3432.
2. Sorrell, Thomas, N. Organic Chemistry. New York: University Science Books, 2006.
3. Vollhardt, Peter, and Neil E. Schore. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. 5th Edition. New York: W. H. Freeman & Company, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

- Shivam Nand

10.23: Dihydroxylation of Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

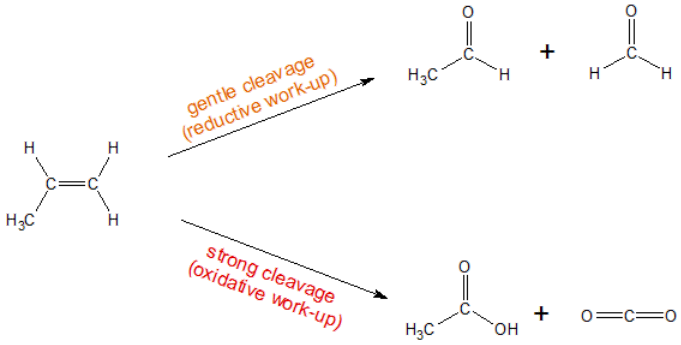
10.24: Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes

Learning Objective

- predict the products/specify the reagents for oxidative cleavage of alkenes

Overview

Oxidative cleavage can occur by several different reaction pathways. The cleavage can be strong or gentle depending on the reaction conditions and/or the work-up of the initial reaction product. Both alkenes and alkynes can undergo cleavage reactions. This section will focus on alkenes.



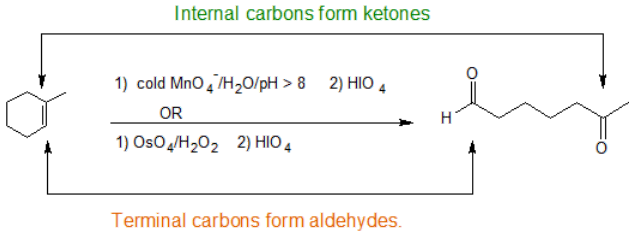
Gentle cleavage of alkenes occurs by two primary reaction pathways: ozolysis with a reductive work-up or syn-dihydroxylation followed by oxidation with perioidc acid. Gentle cleavage will leave terminal carbons partially oxidized to aldehydes. Strong cleavage of alkenes will fully oxidize terminal carbons to carboxylic acids. Internal carbons become ketones by either reaction pathway.

Why so many reactions?

At first glance, it may seem silly to have more than more reaction pathway for the same functional group conversion. As this course proceeds, it will become necessary to target reactions to a single functional group of an organic compound with multiple functional groups. A particular reaction pathway can be advantageous when the reactivity of the entire molecule is considered, not just a single functional group.

Gentle Cleavage: Syn-Dihydroxylation followed by Periodic Acid

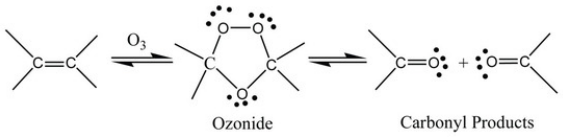
Alkenes can also be gently cleavage in a two-step reaction sequence in which the alkene first undergoes syn-dihydroxylation using cold, slightly basic $KMnO_4$ or OsO_4/H_2O_2 followed by oxidation with periodic acid (HIO_4). Both reaction sequences are shown below using 1-methylcyclohexene as an example.



Gentle Cleavage: Ozonolysis with a Reduction Work-up

Ozonolysis is a method of oxidatively cleaving alkenes or alkynes using ozone (O_3), a reactive allotrope of oxygen. The process allows for carbon-carbon double or triple bonds to be replaced by double bonds with oxygen. This reaction is often used to identify the structure of unknown alkenes by breaking them down into smaller, more easily identifiable pieces. Ozonolysis also occurs

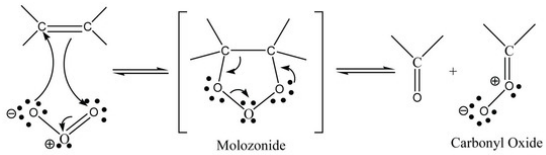
naturally and would break down repeated units used in rubber and other polymers. On an industrial scale, azelaic acid and pelargonic acids are produced from ozonolysis.



Ozonolysis Reaction Mechanism

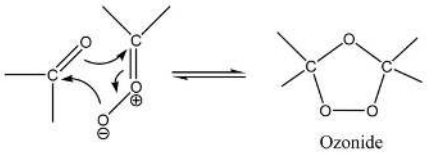
The gaseous ozone is first passed through the desired alkene solution in either methanol or dichloromethane. The first intermediate product is an ozonide molecule which is then further reduced to carbonyl products. This results in the breaking of the carbon-carbon double bond and is replaced by a carbon-oxygen double bond instead.

Step 1:



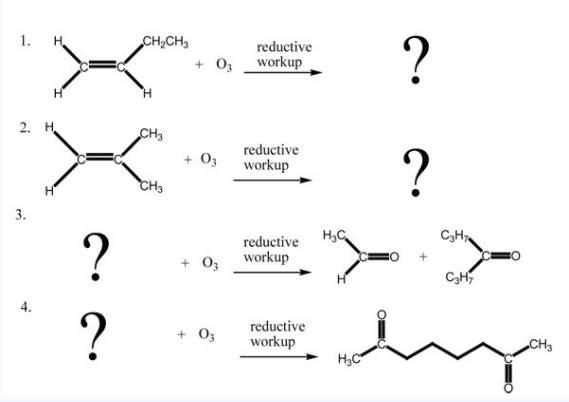
The first step in the mechanism of ozonolysis is the initial electrophilic addition of ozone to the carbon-carbon double bond to form the molozonide intermediate. Due to low stablility of molozonide, it continues reacting and breaks apart to form a carbonyl and a carbonyl oxide molecule.

Step 2:

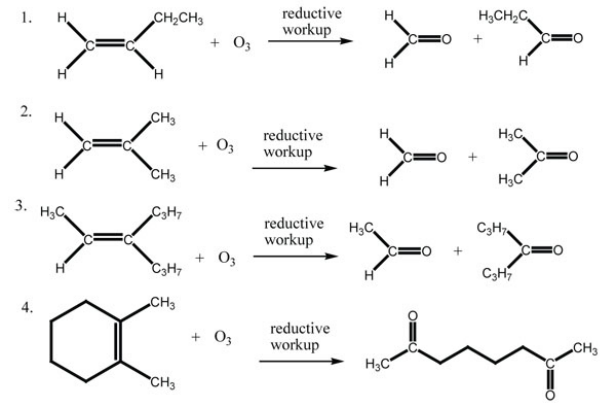


The electrons of the carbonyl and the carbonyl oxide form the stable ozonide intermediate which can then undergo an oxidative or reductive work-up to form the products of interest. A reductive workup converts the ozonide molecule into the desired carbonyl products with aldehyde on terminal carbons. An oxidative workup converts the ozonide molecule into the desired carbonyl products with carboxylic acids on terminal carbons. The two reaction workup conditions are summarized below.

Exercises

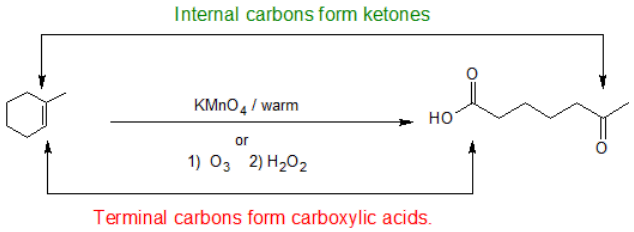


Answers



Strong Cleavage from Strong Oxidative Reactions

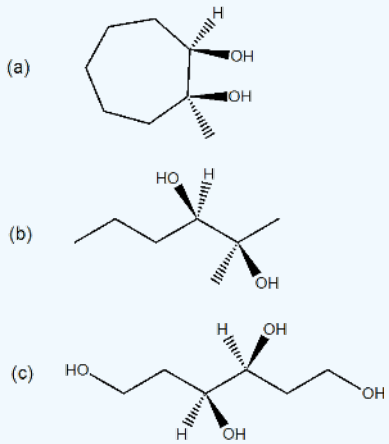
When the reaction conditions for potassium permanganate are warm, then the oxidation reaction is stronger and cleavage occurs at the alkene with any terminal carbons fully oxidizing to carboxylic acids. When the ozonolysis reaction is followed by an oxidative work-up, then any terminal carbons will oxidize fully to the carboxylic acid as shown in the example below. The example for 1-methylcyclohexene is shown below.



Exercise

5. What would you expect the products to be from the reaction of *cis*-2-pentene with *m*-chloro-peroxybenzoic acid? Show the stereochemistry of the final product.

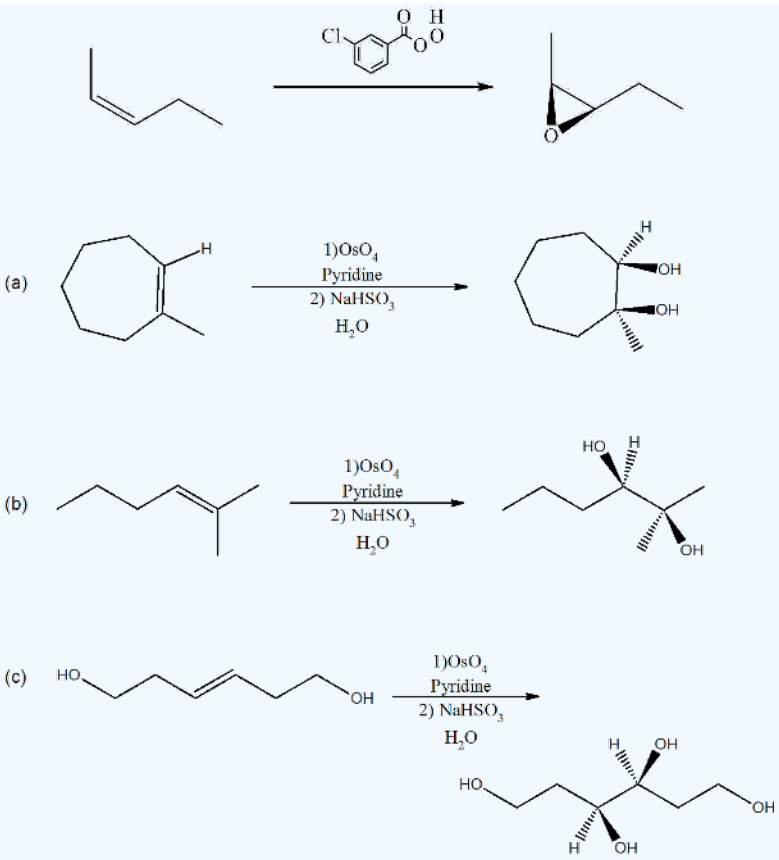
6. Give a reaction scheme with starting alkenes and required reagents to produce the following compounds.



Answer

5.

6.



References

1. Vollhardt, K., Schore, N. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. 5th ed. New York, NY: W. H. Freeman and Company, 2007.
2. Shore, N. Study Guide and Solutions Manual for Organic Chemistry. 5th ed. New York, NY: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

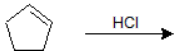
John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

10.24: Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.25: Additional Exercises, Part 2

Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkenes

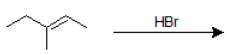
9-1 Give the IUPAC name for the product of the following reaction.



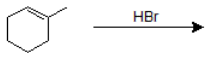
9-2 Draw the reaction mechanism of the previous problem (9-**1**)**.**

9-3 Identify the product of the following reactions.

(a)

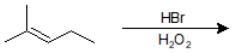


(b)



9-4 Identify the products of the following reactions.

(a)

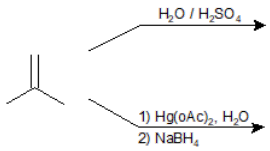


(b)

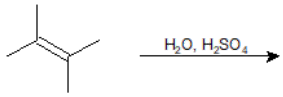


Addition of Water: Hydration of Alkenes

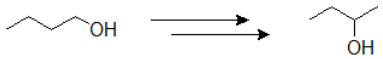
9-5 Identify the product of the following reactions.



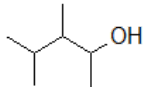
9-6 Identify the product of the following reaction.



9-7 Propose a plausible route of synthesis for the following product starting with 1-butanol.



9-8 Which of the following alkenes can be used to obtain 3,4-dimethylpentan-2-ol through a hydration reaction using dilute acid?



a) (2Z)-3,4-dimethylpent-2-ene

b) 3,4-dimethylpent-1-ene

c) 2,3,4-trimethylpent-2-ene

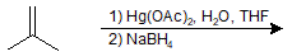
d) 2,4-dimethyl-3-methylidenepentane

Hydration by Oxymercuration-Demercuration

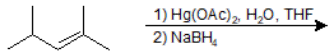
9-9 Explain why hydration of an alkene by Oxymercuration-Demercuration gives the Markovnikov product.

9-10 Identify the products of the following reactions.

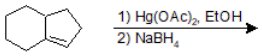
(a)



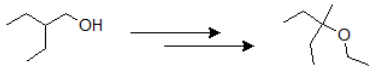
(b)



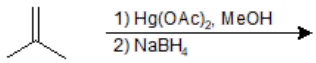
9-11 Identify the product of the following reaction.



9-12 Propose a possible route of synthesis for the following ether starting with 2-ethylbutan-1-ol.



9-13 Give the IUPAC name of the product of the following reaction.



a) 2-methylpropan-2-ol

b) 2,2-dimethylbutane

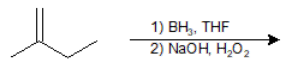
c) 2-methoxy-2-methylpropane

d) 1,1-dimethylcyclopropane

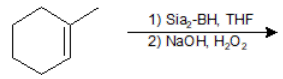
Hydroboration of Alkenes

9-14 Identify the products of the following reactions.

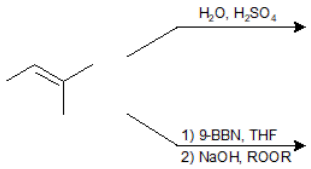
(a)



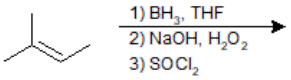
(b)



9-15 Identify the products of the following reactions.



9-16 Give the IUPAC name for the product of the following reaction.



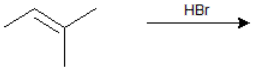
Addition of Halogens to Alkenes

9-17 Identify the products of the following reactions.

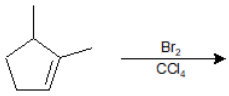
(a)



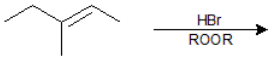
(b)



9-18 Identify the product of the following reaction.



9-19 What is the product of the following reaction?



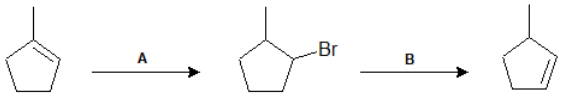
a) (2Z)-2-bromo-3-methylpent-2-ene

b) 2-bromo-3-methylpentane

c) 2,3-dibromo-3-methylpentane

d) (2E)-4-bromo-3-methylpent-2-ene

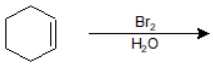
9-20 What reagents can be used in each step to obtain the following products?



9-21 Explain why you do not obtain a mixture of cis- and trans-brominated products when you react Br2/CCl4 with cyclopentene.

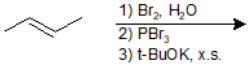
Formation of Halohydrins

9-22 Identify the product of the following reaction, making sure to include stereochemistry.

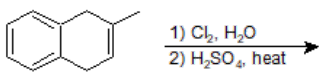


9-23 Draw the mechanism of the reaction in the previous problem (**9-22**).

9-24 Give the IUPAC name for the product of the following reaction.



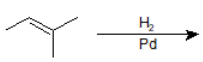
9-25 Identify the product of the following reaction.



Catalytic Hydrogenation of Alkenes

9-26 Identify the products of the following reactions.

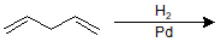
(a)



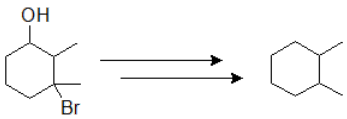
(b)



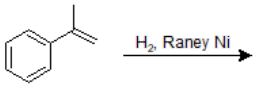
(c)



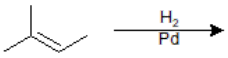
9-27 Suggest a possible route of synthesis, that includes a catalytic hydrogenation step, to obtain the following product.



9-28 Identify the product of the following reaction.

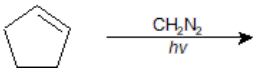


9-29 Identify the product of the following reaction, making sure to include stereochemistry.

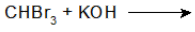


Addition of Carbenes to Alkenes

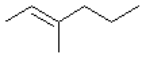
9-30 Identify the product of the following reaction.



9-31 Identify the product(s) of the following reaction.



9-32 Identify the product of the reaction when (*2E*)-3-methylhex-2-ene reacts with the carbene product from the previous problem (**9-31**), then reacts with Br_2 and *hv*.

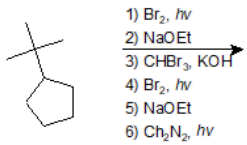


(*2E*)-3-methylhex-2-ene

9-33 Propose a possible route of synthesis for the following reaction.

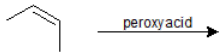


9-34 Identify the product of the following reaction.



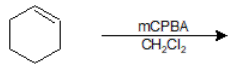
Epoxidation of Alkenes and Acid-Catalyzed Opening of Epoxides

9-35 Identify the product of the following reaction.

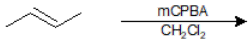


9-36 Identify the product of the following reactions, specifying stereochemistry where appropriate.

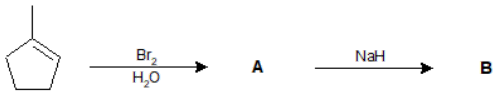
(a)



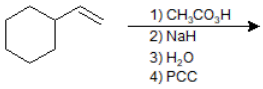
(b)



9-37 Identify the products of the following reaction, including stereochemistry.



9-38 What is the product of the following reaction?



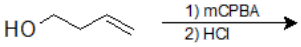
a) benzoic acid

b) 1-cyclohexylethan-1-ol

c) 1-cyclohexylethan-1-one

d) cyclohexanol

9-39 What is the product of the following reaction?



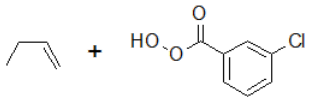
a) 4-chlorobutane-1,3-diol

b) 3-chlorobutan-1-ol

c) 2-chlorobutane-1,4-diol

d) 2,4-dichlorobutan-1-ol

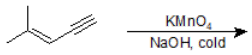
9-40 Draw the arrows for the following epoxidation reaction to show the movement of electrons.



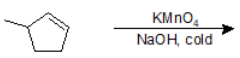
Syn Dihydroxylation of Alkenes

9-41 Identify the product of the following reaction, including stereochemistry.

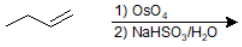
(a)



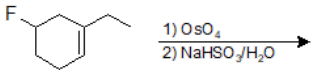
(b)



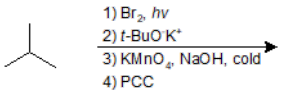
(c)



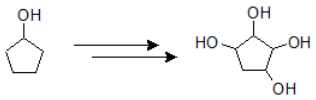
9-42 Give the IUPAC name for the product(s) of the following reaction. Include stereochemistry.



9-43 Identify the product of the following reaction.



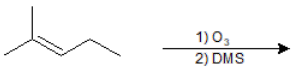
9-44 Suggest a possible route of synthesis for the following compound starting with cyclopentanol.



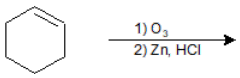
Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes

9-45 Identify the products of the following reactions.

(a)

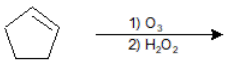


(b)

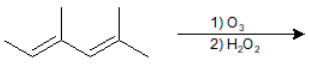


9-46 Identify the products of the following reactions.

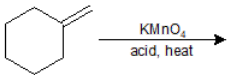
(a)



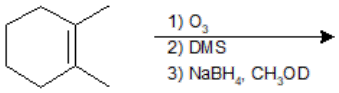
(b)



(c)

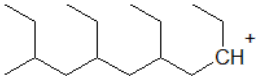


9-47 Identify the product of the following reaction.



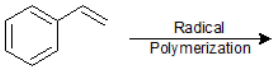
Polymerization of Alkenes

9-48 Identify the alkene monomer that composes the following polymer.



9-49 Draw the mechanism for the acid catalyzed formation of the polymer in the previous problem (**9-48**).

9-50 Draw the resulting polymer of the following reaction. Draw the chain four monomers in length.



10.25: Additional Exercises, Part 2 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.26: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 2

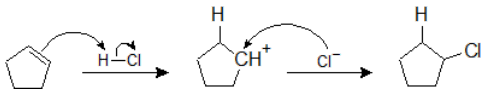
Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkenes

9-1



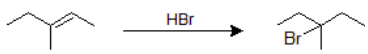
chlorocyclopentane

9-2

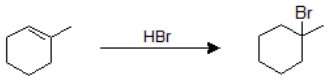


9-3

(a)

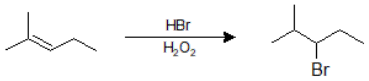


(b)



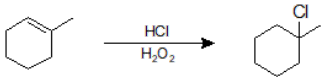
9-4

(a)



anti-Markovnikov

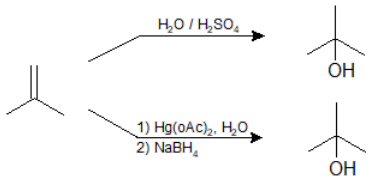
(b)



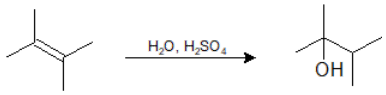
Markovnikov

Addition of Water: Hydration of Alkenes

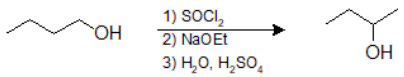
9-5



9-6



9-7



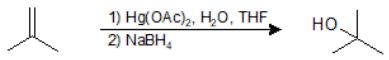
9-8 B.

Hydration by Oxymercuration-Demercuration

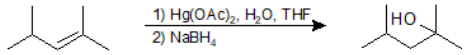
9-9 When an alkene is going through oxymercuration, it proceeds through a three-membered mercurinium ion intermediate. This does not allow for rearrangement as no carbocation is formed. In order to open the intermediate ring, the water molecule will attack the most substituted carbon, thus giving the Markovnikov regioselectivity in the final product.

9-10

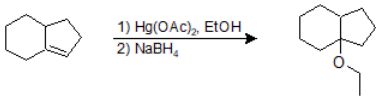
(a)



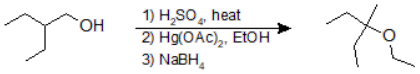
(b)



9-11



9-12

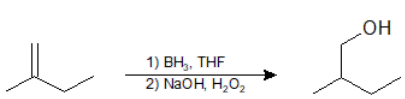


9-13 C.

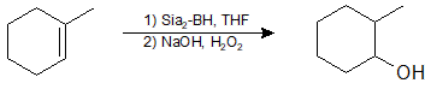
Hydroboration of Alkenes

9-14

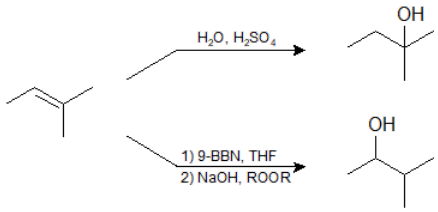
(a)



(b)



9-15

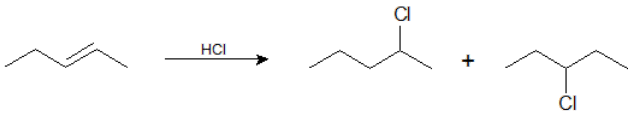


9-16 2-chloro-3-methylbutane

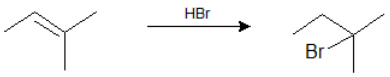
Addition of Halogens to Alkenes

9-17

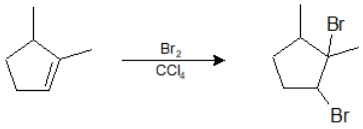
(a)



(b)



9-18



9-19 B.

9-20

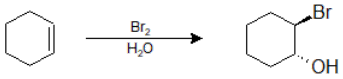
A: HBr, ROOR

B: $NaNH_2$

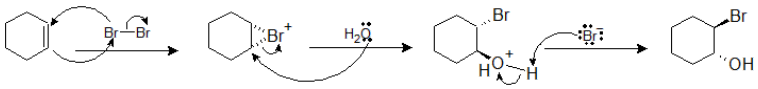
9-21 You do not obtain a mixture of cis- and trans-brominated products from this reaction (only trans products) due to the intermediate the reaction goes through. No carbocation is formed, which would allow the Br- to attack from two possible sides of the carbocation. Instead, a bromonium ion is formed and in order to add the second Br, it needs to attack one side of the bromonium ion intermediate, causing the product to always have a trans configuration.

Formation of Halohydrins

9-22

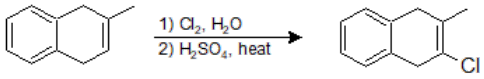


9-23



9-24 Buta-1,3-diene

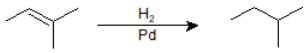
9-25



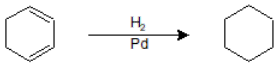
Catalytic Hydrogenation of Alkenes

9-26

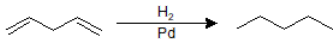
(a)



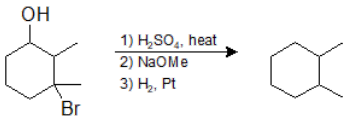
(b)



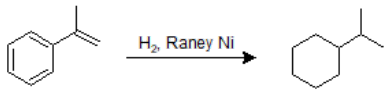
(c)



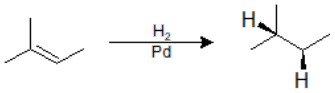
9-27



9-28

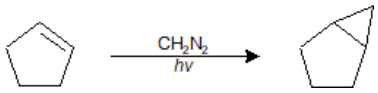


9-29

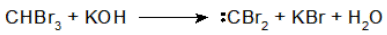


Addition of Carbenes to Alkenes

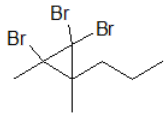
9-30



9-31

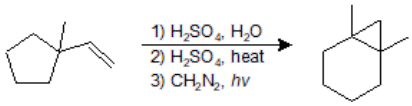


9-32

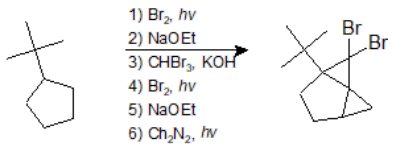


1,1,2-tribromo-2,3-dimethyl-3-propylcyclopropane

9-33

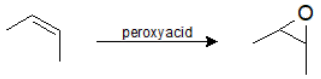


9-34



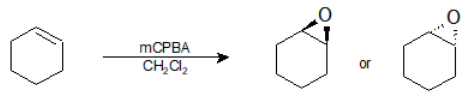
Epoxidation of Alkenes and Acid-Catalyzed Opening of Epoxides

9-35

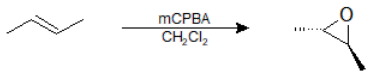


9-36

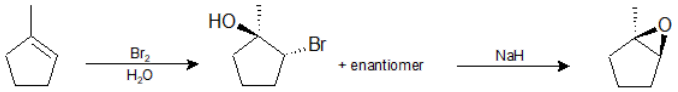
(a)



(b)



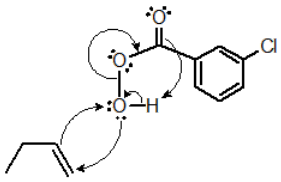
9-37



9-38 C.

9-39 A.

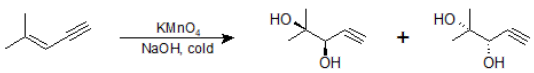
9-40



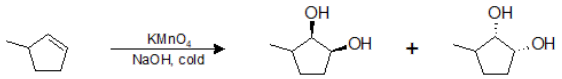
Syn Dihydroxylation of Alkenes

9-41

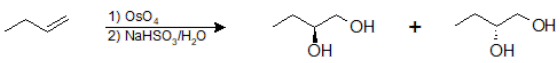
(a)



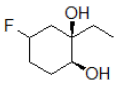
(b)



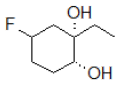
(c)



9-42

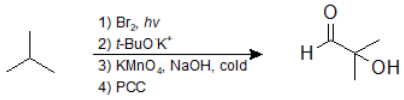


(1*R*,2*S*)-1-ethyl-5-fluorocyclohexane-1,2-diol

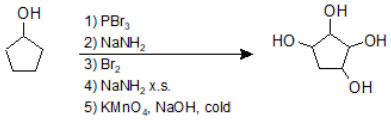


(1*S*,2*R*)-1-ethyl-5-fluorocyclohexane-1,2-diol

9-43



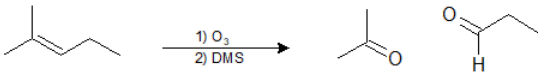
9-44



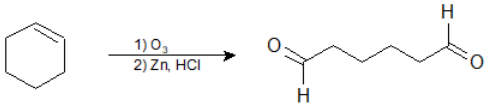
Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes

9-45

(a)

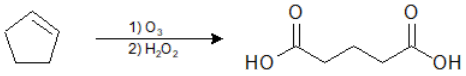


(b)

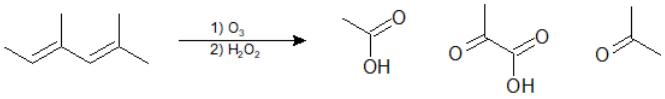


9-46

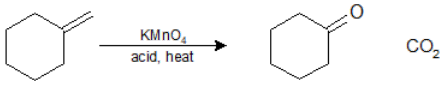
(a)



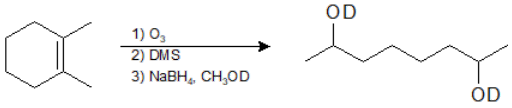
(b)



(c)

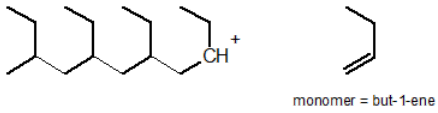


9-47

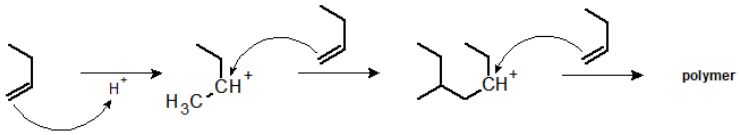


Polymerization of Alkenes

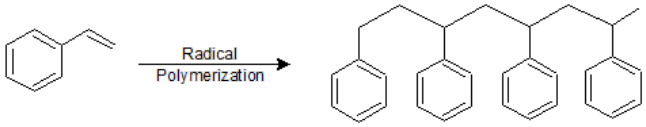
9-48



9-49



9-50



10.26: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 2 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Properties and Reactions of Alkynes

11.1: Structure and Physical Properties
11.2: 10.2 Synthesis of Alkynes - Elimination Reactions of Dihalides
11.3: Reactions of Alkynes - Addition of HX and X_2
11.4: Hydration of Alkynes for Markovnikov Products
11.5: Hydration of Alkynes for Anti-Markovnikov Products
11.6: 10.6 Reduction of Alkynes
11.7: Oxidation of Alkynes
11.8: Acidity of Terminal Alkynes and Acetylide Ions
11.9: Synthesis of Larger Alkynes from Acetylides
11.10: An Introduction to Multiple Step Synthesis
11.11: Additional Exercises
11.12: Solutions to Additional Exercises

11: Properties and Reactions of Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.1: Structure and Physical Properties

Learning Objective

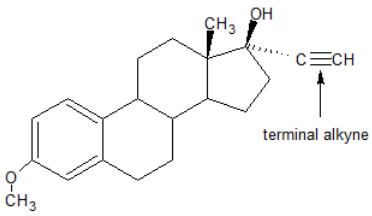
- apply bonding theories to the structure of alkynes and distinguish between internal and terminal triple bonds

Alkynes: Terminal vs Internal

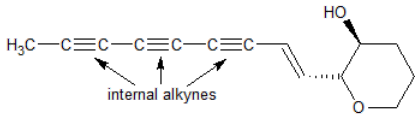
Alkynes are organic molecules with carbon-carbon triple bonds. They are unsaturated hydrocarbons with the empirical formula of C_nH_{2n-2}. The simplest alkyne is ethyne which has the common name acetylene. Acetylene is a common name to memorize.

ethyne or acetylene

It is important to distinguish between terminal and internal alkynes because they can undergo different patterns of reactivity.



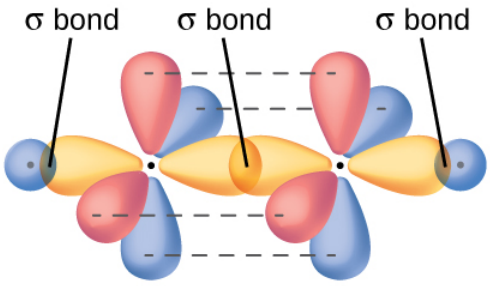
mestranol: component of oral contraceptives



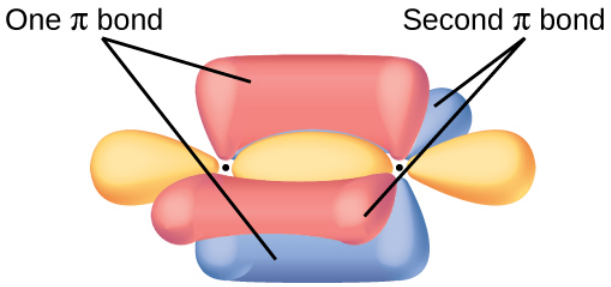
ichthyothereol: used to poison arrowheads in the Amazon

Electronic Structure

The sp hybridization of the carbon-carbon triple bond results in the perpendicular orientation of the sigma bond and two pi bonds. The close proximity of the electrons in this geometry orientation creates molecules with less stability. The structure of the carbon-carbon triple bond strongly influences the chemical reactivity of alkynes and the acidity of terminal alkynes. Because of its linear configuration (the bond angle of a sp-hybridized carbon is 180º), a ten-membered carbon ring is the smallest that can accommodate this function without excessive strain.



(a)



(b)

Physical Properties

Alkynes are nonpolar, unsaturated hydrocarbons with physical properties similar to alkanes and alkenes. Alkynes dissolve in organic solvents, have slight solubility in polar solvents, and are insoluble in water. Compared to alkanes and alkenes, alkynes have slightly higher boiling points. For example, ethane has a boiling point of -88.6 C, while ethene is -103.7 C and ethyne has a higher boiling point of -84.0 ?C.

Exercise

1. Arrange ethane, ethene, and acetylene in order of decreasing carbon-carbon length.
2. How many pi bonds and sigma bonds are involved in the structure of ethyne?
3. What contribute to the weakness of the pi bonds in an alkyne?
4. Arrange the following hydrocarbons in order of decreasing boiling point: 1-heptyne, 1-hexyne, 2-methyl-1-hexyne.
5. Predict the solvent with greater 2-butyne solubility. a) water or 1-octanol? b) water or acetone? c) ethanol or hexane?

Answer

1. relative carbon-carbon bond length: ethane < ethene < acetylene
2. There are three sigma bonds and two pi bonds.
3. The sigma bond and two pi bonds are all perpendicular to each other in the triple bond creating electron repulsion between the three pairs of bonding electrons in the triple bond.
4. 1-heptyne (99.7C) > 2-methyl-1-hexyne (91C) > 1-hexyne (71C)
5. a) 1-octanol b) acetone c) hexane

Outside links

- www.ucc.ie/academic/chem/dolc...t/alkynes.html
- www.cliffsnotes.com/WileyCDA/...eId-22631.html

References

1. Bloch, D.R. Organic chemistry demystified, New York : McGraw-Hill, 2006.
2. Vollhardt. Schore, Organic Chemistry Structure and Function Fifth Edition, New York: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

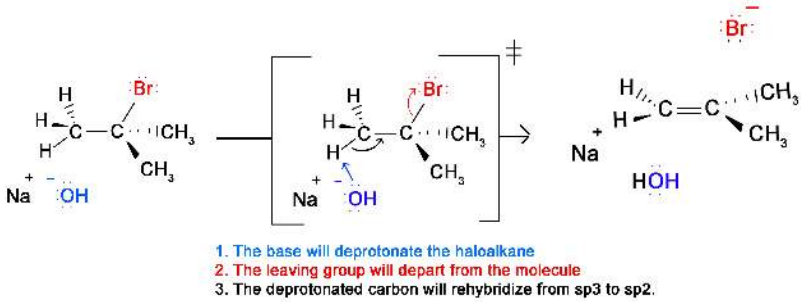
- Bao Kha Nguyen, Garrett M. Chin

11.1: Structure and Physical Properties is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

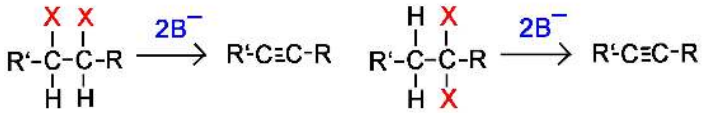
11.2: 10.2 Synthesis of Alkynes - Elimination Reactions of Dihalides

Introduction

To synthesize alkynes from dihaloalkanes we use dehydrohalogenation. The majority of these reactions take place using alkoxide bases (other strong bases can also be used) with high temperatures. This combination results in the majority of the product being from the E2 mechanism. Recall that the E2 mechanism is a concerted reaction (occurs in 1 step). However, in this 1 step there are 3 different changes in the molecule. This is the reaction between 2-bromo-2-methylpropane and sodium hydroxide.



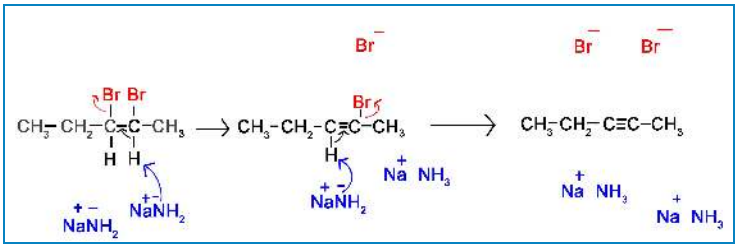
Now, if we apply this concept using 2 halides on vicinal or geminal carbons, the E2 reaction will take place twice resulting in the formation of 2 pi bonds and an alkyne as shown in the examples below where the strong base is symbolized B^-.



Double E2 of a Vicinal Dihalide Double E2 of a Geminal Dihalilde

It is important to note that the reaction of terminal haloalkanes requires 3 equivalents of base instead of 2 because of the relative acidity of alkynes that is discussed in a later section of this chapter.

The mechanism of a reaction between 2,3-dibromopentane with sodium amide in liquid ammonia is shown below where liquid ammonia is not part of the reaction, but is used as a solvent.

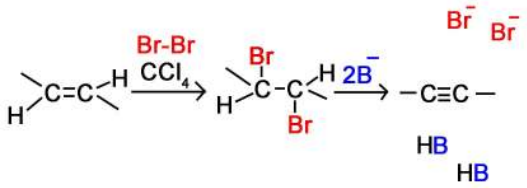


Notice the intermediate of the alkyne synthesis. It is stereospecifically in its anti form. Because the second proton and halogen are pulled off the molecule this is unimportant to the synthesis of alkynes.

Preparation of Alkynes from Alkenes

Lastly, we will briefly look at how to prepare alkynes from alkenes. This is a simple process using first halogenation of the alkene bond to form the dihaloalkane, and next, using the double elimination process form the alkyne.

This first process is gone over in much greater detail in the page on halogenation of an alkene. In general, chlorine or bromine is used with an inert halogenated solvent like chloromethane to create a vicinal dihalide from an alkene. The vicinal dihalide formed is then reacted with a strong base and heated to produce an alkyne. The two-step reaction pathway is shown below.

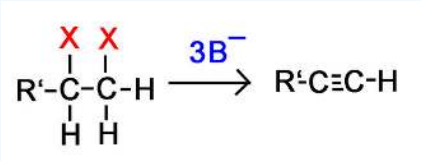


In The Lab

Due to the strong base and high temperatures needed for this reaction to take place, the triple bond may change positions. An example of this is when reactants that should form a terminal alkyne, form a 2-alkyne instead. The use of $NaNH_2$ in liquid NH_3 is used in order to prevent this from happening due to its lower reacting temperature. Even so, most chemists will prefer to use nucleophilic substitution instead of elimination when trying to form a terminal alkyne.

Exercise 11.2.1

Question 1: Why would we need 3 bases for every terminal dihaloalkane instead of 2 in order to form an alkyne?

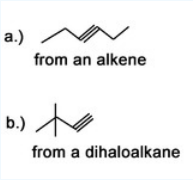


Question 2: What are the major products of the following reactions:

a.) 1,2-Dibromopentane with sodium amide in liquid ammonia

b.) 1-Pentene first with Br_2 and chloromethane, followed by sodium ethoxide ($Na^+ {}^-O\text{-}CH_2CH_3$)

Question 3: What would be good starting molecules for the synthesis of the following molecules:



Question 4: Use a 6 carbon diene to synthesize a 6 carbon molecule with 2 terminal alkynes.

Answer

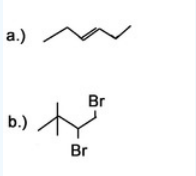
Answer 1: Remember that hydrogen atoms on terminal alkynes make the alkyne acidic. One of the base molecules will pull off the terminal hydrogen instead of one of the halides like we want.

Answer 2:

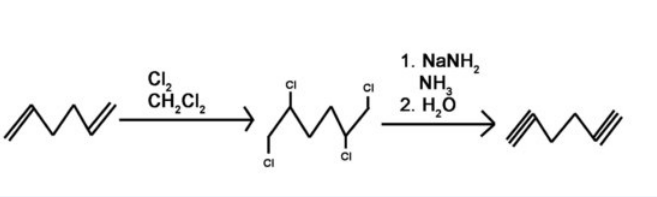
a.) 1-Pentyne

b.) 1-Pentyne

Answer 3:



Answer 4: Bromine or chlorine can be used with different inert solvents for the halogenation. This can be done using many different bases. Liquid ammonia is used as a solvent and needs to be followed by an aqueous work-up.



References

1. Vollhardt, Peter, and Neil Shore. Organic Chemistry: Structure and Function. 5th. New York: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2007.
2. Daley, Richard, and Sally Daley. "13.8 Elimination of Organohalogens." Organic Chemistry. Daley. 5 July 2005. 21 Feb. 2009. <http://www.ochem4free.info/node/143>.

11.2: 10.2 Synthesis of Alkynes - Elimination Reactions of Dihalides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.3: Reactions of Alkynes - Addition of HX and X_2

Learning Objective

- predict the products and specify the reagents for the Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs) of alkynes with HX and X_2

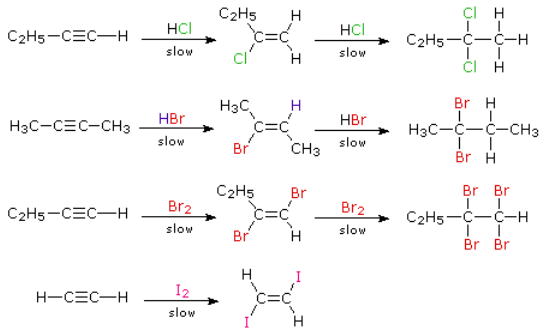
Addition by Electrophilic Reagents

Since the most common chemical transformation of a carbon-carbon double bond is an addition reaction, we might expect the same to be true for carbon-carbon triple bonds. Indeed, most of the alkene addition reactions also take place with alkynes with similar regio- and stereoselectivity.

When the addition reactions of electrophilic reagents, such as strong Brønsted acids and halogens, to alkynes are studied we find a curious paradox. The reactions are even more exothermic than the additions to alkenes, and yet the rate of addition to alkynes is slower by a factor of 100 to 1000 than addition to equivalently substituted alkenes. The reaction of one equivalent of bromine with 1-penten-4-yne, for example, gave 4,5-dibromo-1-pentyne as the chief product.

$$HC{\equiv}C\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH{=}CH_2 + Br_2 \rightarrow HC{\equiv}C\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CHBrCH_2Br$$

Although these electrophilic additions to alkynes are sluggish, they do take place and generally display Markovnikov Rule regioselectivity and anti-stereoselectivity. One problem, of course, is that the products of these additions are themselves substituted alkenes and can therefore undergo further addition. Because of their high electronegativity, halogen substituents on a double bond act to reduce its nucleophilicity, and thereby decrease the rate of electrophilic addition reactions. Consequently, there is a delicate balance as to whether the product of an initial addition to an alkyne will suffer further addition to a saturated product. Although the initial alkene products can often be isolated and identified, they are commonly present in mixtures of products and may not be obtained in high yield. The following reactions illustrate many of these features. In the last example, 1,2-diodoethene does not suffer further addition inasmuch as vicinal-diiodoalkanes are relatively unstable.



As a rule, electrophilic addition reactions to alkenes and alkynes proceed by initial formation of a **pi-complex**, in which the electrophile accepts electrons from and becomes weakly bonded to the multiple bond. Such complexes are formed reversibly and may then reorganize to a reactive intermediate in a slower, rate-determining step. Reactions with alkynes are more sensitive to solvent changes and catalytic influences than are equivalent alkenes.

Why are the reactions of alkynes with electrophilic reagents more sluggish than the corresponding reactions of alkenes? After all, addition reactions to alkynes are generally more exothermic than additions to alkenes, and there would seem to be a higher π-electron density about the triple bond (two π-bonds versus one). Two factors are significant in explaining this apparent paradox. First, although there are more π-electrons associated with the triple bond, the sp-hybridized carbons exert a strong attraction for

these π-electrons, which are consequently bound more tightly to the functional group than are the π-electrons of a double bond. This is seen in the ionization potentials of ethylene and acetylene.

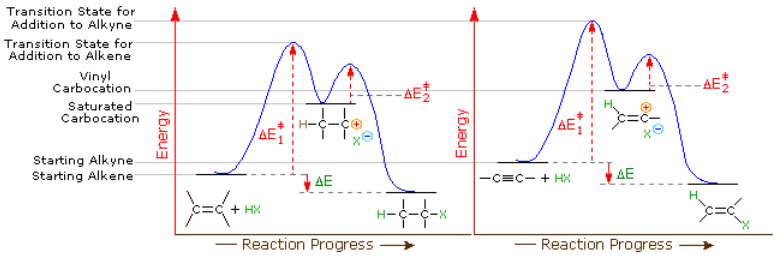
Acetylene	$HC{\equiv}CH + Energy \rightarrow [HC{\equiv}CH^{\bullet(+)} + e^{(-)}$		$\Delta H = +264$ kcal/mole
Ethylene	$H_2C{=}CH_2 + Energy \rightarrow [H_2C{=}CH_2]^{\bullet(+)} + e^{(-)}$		$\Delta H = +244$ kcal/mole
Ethane	$H_3C{-}CH_3 + Energy \rightarrow [H_3C{-}CH_3]^{\bullet(+)} + e^{(-)}$		$\Delta H = +296$ kcal/mole

As defined by the preceding equations, an **ionization potential** is the minimum energy required to remove an electron from a molecule of a compound. Since pi-electrons are less tightly held than sigma-electrons, we expect the ionization potentials of ethylene and acetylene to be lower than that of ethane, as is the case. Gas-phase proton affinities show the same order, with ethylene being more basic than acetylene, and ethane being less basic than either. Since the initial interaction between an electrophile and an alkene or alkyne is the formation of a pi-complex, in which the electrophile accepts electrons from and becomes weakly bonded to the multiple bond, the relatively slower reactions of alkynes becomes understandable.

A second factor is presumed to be the stability of the carbocation intermediate generated by sigma-bonding of a proton or other electrophile to one of the triple bond carbon atoms. This intermediate has its positive charge localized on an unsaturated carbon, and such **vinyl cations** are less stable than their saturated analogs. Indeed, we can modify our earlier ordering of carbocation stability to include these vinyl cations in the manner shown below. It is possible that vinyl cations stabilized by conjugation with an aryl substituent are intermediates in HX addition to alkynes of the type Ar-C≡C-R, but such intermediates are not formed in all alkyne addition reactions.

Carbocation Stability	$CH_3^{(+)}$	≈	$RCH{=}CH^{(+)}$	<	$RCH_2^{(+)}$	≈	$RCH{=}CR^{(+)}$	<	$R_2CH^{(+)}$	≈	$CH_2{=}CH{-}CH_2^{(+)}$	<	$C_6H_5CH_2^{(+)}$	≈	$R_3C^{(+)}$
	Methyl		1°-Vinyl		1°		2°-Vinyl		2°		1°-Allyl		1°-Benzyl		3°

Application of the Hammond postulate indicates that the activation energy for the generation of a vinyl cation intermediate would be higher than that for a lower energy intermediate. This is illustrated for alkenes versus alkynes by the following energy diagrams.



A Comparison of Energy Profiles for Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes and Alkynes

Despite these differences, electrophilic additions to alkynes have emerged as exceptionally useful synthetic transforms.

Addition of Hydrogen Halide to an Alkyne

Summary: Reactivity order of hydrogen halides: HI > HB r> HCl > HF.

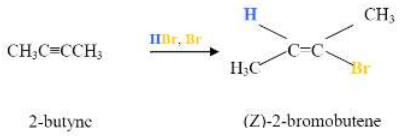
Follows Markovnikov's rule:

- Hydrogen adds to the carbon with the greatest number of hydrogens, the halogen adds to the carbon with fewest hydrogens.
- Protination occurs on the more stable carbocation. With the addition of HX, haloalkenes form.
- With the addition of excess HX, you get *anti* addition forming a geminal dihaloalkane.

Addition of a HX to an Internal Alkyne

As shown in Figure 2 below, the π electrons react with the hydrogen of the HBr and because the alkyne carbons are equivalent it does not matter which carbon adds the hydrogen. Once the hydrogen is covalently bonded to one of the carbons, the bromide will react with the carbocation intermediate to form a vinyl halide as shown in the example of forming 2-bromobutene from 2-butyne reacting with HBr. The reaction below assumes a 1:1 mole ratio of the alkyne and HBr.

Figure 2



2-butyne (Z)-2-bromobutene

Now, what happens if there is excess HBr?

Addition due to excess HX yields a geminal dihaloalkane

Figure 3



(Z)-2-bromobutene 2,2-Dibromobutane

Here, the electrophilic addition proceeds with the same steps used to achieve the product in Addition of a HX to an Internal Alkyne. The π electrons react with the hydrogen (shown in blue) adding it to the carbon on the left because the lone pair electrons of the bromine can help stabilize the carbocation intermediate that reacts with the bromide ions to form a geminal dihalide.

Addition of HX to Terminal Alkyne

For terminal alkynes, the carbon atoms sharing the triple bond are not equivalent. The addition of HX to terminal alkynes occurs in a Markovnikov-manner in which the halide attaches to the most substituted carbon. The pi electrons react with the hydrogen and it bonds to the terminal carbon. The bromide reacts with the resulting carbocation intermediate to form the vinyl halide. The overall reaction and mechanism are shown below.

Figure 4



Propyne 2-Bromopropene

Mechanism:

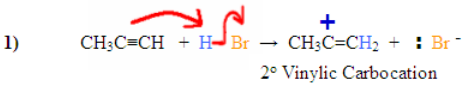
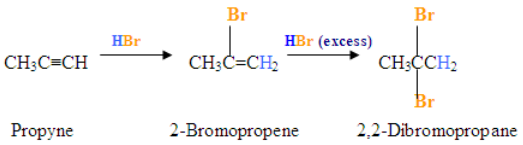


Figure4.2.bmp" />

Addition due to excess HBr present

Similar to the addition of excess HBr to internal alkynes, both halides will add to the same carbon to form a geminal dihalide.

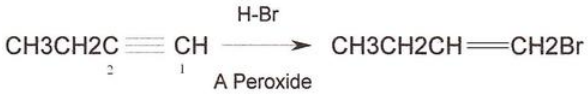
Figure 5



HBr Addition With Radical Mechanism

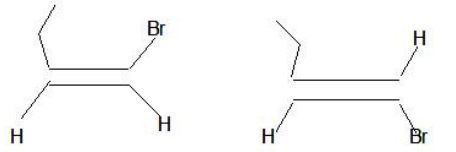
Most hydrogen halide reactions with terminal alkynes occur in a Markovnikov-manner in which the halide attaches to the most substituted carbon since it is the most positively polarized. However, there are two specific reactions among alkynes where anti-Markovnikov reactions take place: the radical addition of HBr and Hydroboration Oxidation reactions. For alkynes, an anti-Markovnikov addition takes place for terminal alkynes.

The Br of the Hydrogen Bromide (H-Br) attaches to the less substituted 1-carbon of the terminal alkyne shown below in an anti-Markovnikov manner while the Hydrogen proton attaches to the second carbon. As mentioned above, the first carbon is the less substituted carbon since it has fewer bonds attached to carbons and other substituents. The H-Br reagent must also be reacted with heat or some other radicial initiator such as a peroxide in order for this reaction to proceed in this manner. This presence of the radical or heat leads to the anti-Markovnikov addition since it produces the most stable reaction.



The product of a terminal alkyne that is reacted with a peroxide (or light) and H-Br is a 1-bromoalkene.

Regioselectivity: The Bromine can attach in a ***syn*** or ***anti*** manner which means the resulting alkene can be both ***cis*** and ***trans***. ***Syn*** addition is when both Hydrogens attach to the same face or side of the double bond (i.e. ***cis***) while the ***anti*** addition is when they attach on opposite sides of the bond (***trans***).



Cis-1-bromo-1-butene *Trans*-1-bromo-1-butene

Halogenation of Alkynes

The additon of X_2 to alkynes is analogous to the addition of X2 to alkenes. The halogen molecule becomes polarized by the approach of the nucleophilic alkyne. The pi electrons of the alkyne react with the bromine to form a carbon-bromine bond and cyclic halonium ion with halide as the leaving group. The formation of the cyclic halonium ion requires anti-addition of the nucleophilic halide to produce a vicinal dihalide alkene as shown in the reaction below.

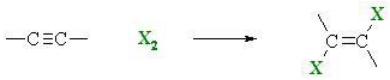
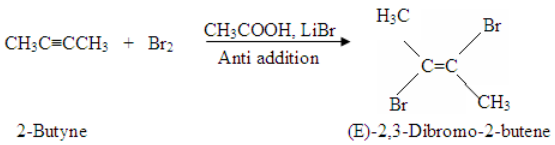
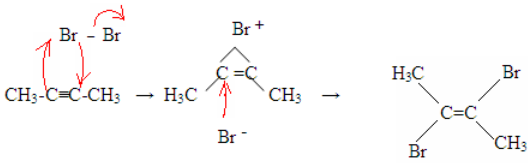


Figure 6 below shown the reaction of bromine with 2-buttyne to form (E)-2,3-ibromo-2-butene along with the mechanism.

Figure 6



Mechanism:



Exercise

1. Draw the structure, and give the IUPAC name, of the product formed in each of the reactions listed below.

a. $\mathrm{CH_3{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HCl}]{\text{1 equiv}}$

b. $\mathrm{CH_3{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HCl}]{\text{excess}}$

c. $\mathrm{CH_3{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Br_2}]{\text{1 equiv}}$

d. $\mathrm{CH_3{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Br_2}]{\text{excess}}$

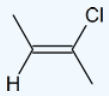
e. $\mathrm{CH_3CH_2{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HCl}]{\text{1 equiv}}$

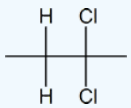
f. $\mathrm{CH_3CH_2{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HCl}]{\text{excess}}$

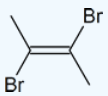
g. $\mathrm{CH_3CH_2CH_2{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Br_2}]{\text{1 equiv}}$

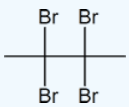
h. $\mathrm{CH_3CH_2CH_2{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Br_2}]{\text{excess}}$

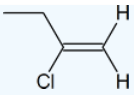
Answer

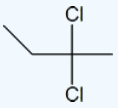
a. (*Z*)-2-chloro-2-butene 

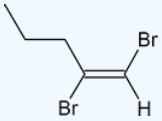
b. 2,2-dichlorobutane 

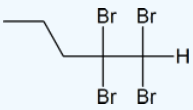
c. (*E*)-2,3-dibromo-2-butene 

d. 2,2,3,3-tetrabromobutane 

e. 2-chloro-1-butene 

f. 2,2-dichlorobutane 

g. (*E*)-1,2-dibromo-1-pentene 

h. 1,1,2,2-tetrabromopentane 

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

11.3: Reactions of Alkynes - Addition of HX and X_2 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

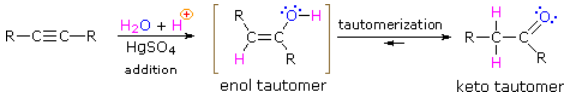
11.4: Hydration of Alkynes for Markovnikov Products

Learning Objective

- predict the products and specify the reagents for the Markovnikov-products of alkyne hydration

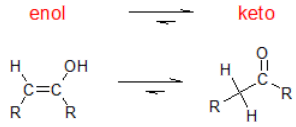
Reaction: Hydration of Alkynes (Markovnikov's Rule)

Hydration of alkynes begins similar to the hydration of alkenes through the addition of the first water molecule. However, this first hydration reaction forms an enol, an alcohol bonded to a vinyl carbon. Enols immediately undergo a special type of isomerization reaction called tautomerization to form carbonyl groups - aldehydes or ketones. To keep things simple, this reaction is called "enol-keto" tautomerization with the understanding that aldehydes form on terminal alkyne carbons. As with alkenes, hydration (addition of water) to alkynes requires a strong acid, usually sulfuric acid with a mercuric sulfate catalyst as shown below.



Enol-Keto Tautomers

Tautomers are defined as rapidly interconverted constitutional isomers, usually distinguished by a different bonding location for a labile hydrogen atom (colored red here) and a differently located double bond. The equilibrium between tautomers is not only rapid under normal conditions, but it often strongly favors one of the isomers (acetone, for example, is 99.999% keto tautomer). Even in such one-sided equilibria, evidence for the presence of the minor tautomer comes from the chemical behavior of the compound. Tautomeric equilibria are catalyzed by traces of acids or bases that are generally present in most chemical samples. The three examples shown below illustrate these reactions for different substitutions of the triple-bond. The tautomerization step is indicated by a red arrow. For terminal alkynes the addition of water follows the Markovnikov rule, as in the second example below, and the final product ia a methyl ketone (except for acetylene, shown in the first example). For internal alkynes (the triple-bond is within a longer chain) the addition of water is not regioselective. If the triple-bond is not symmetrically located (i.e. if R & R' in the third equation are not the same) two isomeric ketones will be formed.



With the addition of water, alkynes can be hydrated to form enols that spontaneously tautomerize to ketones. The reaction is catalyzed by mercury ions and follows Markovnikov’s Rule A useful functional group conversion for multiple -step syntheses is to hydrate terminal alkynes to produce methyl ketones.

Hydration of Alkyne Mechanism

The first step is an acid/base reaction where the π electrons of the triple bond acts as a Lewis base and reacts with the proton therefore protonating the carbon with the most hydrogen substituents as expected by Markovnikov's Rule. In the second step, the nucleophilic water molecule reacts with the electrophilic carbocation to produce an oxonium ion. The oxonium ion is deprotonated by a base to produce an enol which immediately tautomerizes into a ketone. The hydration reaction for propyne is shown below with its mechanism to illustrate the electron flow of the mechanism.

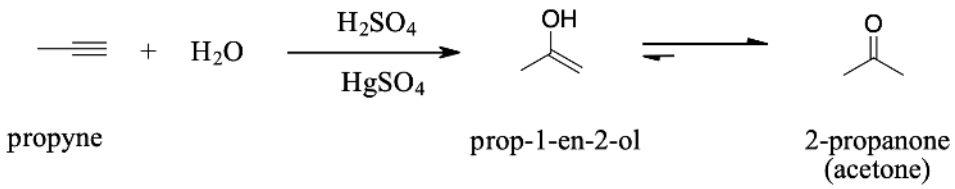
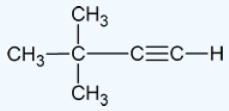


Figure9mech.bmp" />

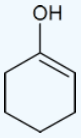
Exercise

1. Draw the structure of the product formed when each of the substances below is treated with H_2O/H_2SO_4 in the presence of $HgSO_4$.

   a. CH_3CHCCH

   b. 

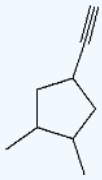
2. Draw the structure of the keto form of the compound shown below. Which form would you expect to be the most stable?



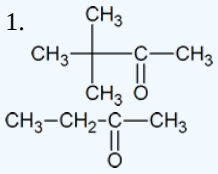
3. What alkyne would you start with to gain the following products, in an oxidation reaction? Keep in mind resonance.

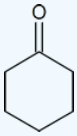


4. Propose a reaction scheme for the following compound starting from the alkyne and showing required reagents and intermediates.

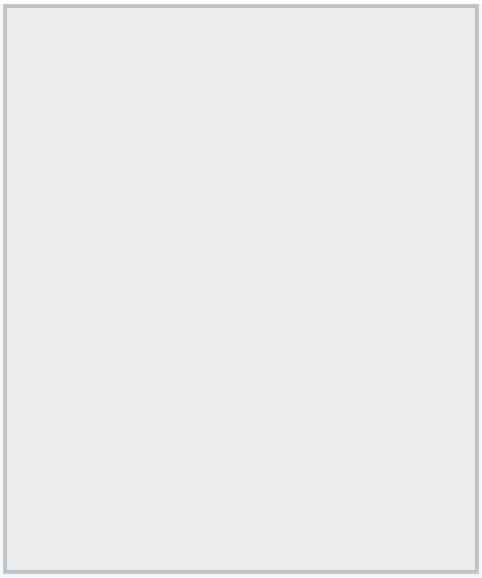


Answer

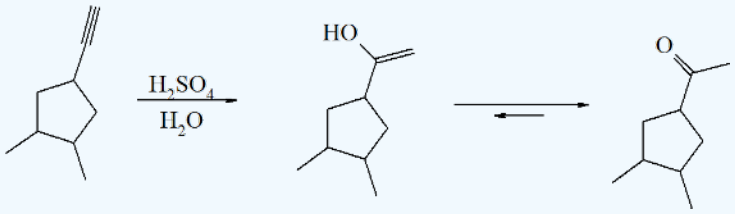
1. 

2.  ; The keto form should be the most stable.

3.



4.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

11.4: Hydration of Alkynes for Markovnikov Products is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.5: Hydration of Alkynes for Anti-Markovnikov Products

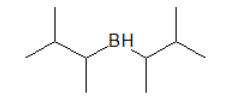
Learning Objective

- predict the products and specify the reagents for the anti-Markovnikov-products of alkyne hydration

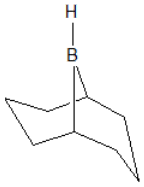
Introduction

The hydroboration-oxidation of alkynes is similar to the reaction with alkenes. However, there is one important difference. The alkyne has two pi bonds and both are capable of reacting with borane (BH_3). To limit the reactivity to only one of the pi bonds within the alkyne, a dialkyl borane reagent (R_2BH) is used. Replacing two of the hydrogens on the borane with alkyl groups also creates steric hindrance so that the hydroboration reaction produces the regioselective,

anti-Markovnikov product. Disiamylborane (Sia_2BH) and 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN) are two common reagents for the hydroboration step. Their structures are shown below.

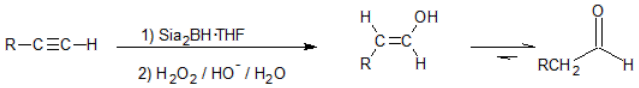


disiamylborane or Sia_2BH



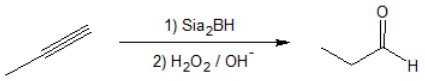
9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane or 9-BBN

The oxidation reagents (a basic hydrogen peroxide solution) are the same for both alkenes and alkynes, The overall reaction is shown below.

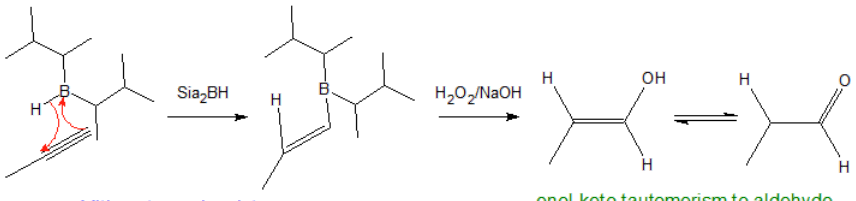


Mechanism

The hydroboration reaction of alkynes has the same stereo- and regiochemistry as the alkene reaction. The primary difference is the steric hindrance of the two isoamyl groups of the dialkyl borane creates anti-Markovnikov regeioselectivity. The hydrogen and boron bond with the same orientation to the alkyne carbon with syn-addition stereochemistry to form the enol. The enol immediately tautomerizes to the keto form which is an aldehyde for terminal alkynes. The hydration of 1-propyne is shown below along with the reaction mechanism.



mechanism

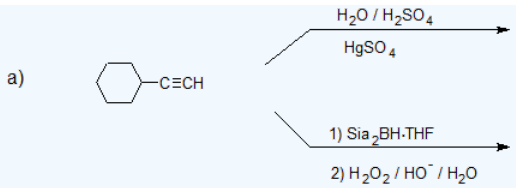


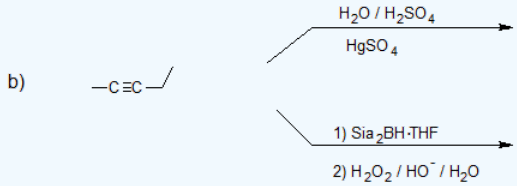
syn-addition stereochemistry
with H adding at the most substituted carbon
for anti-Markovikov regiochemistry

enol-keto tautomerism to aldehyde

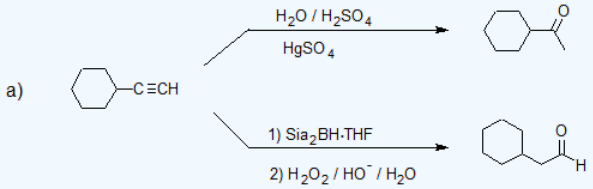
Exercise

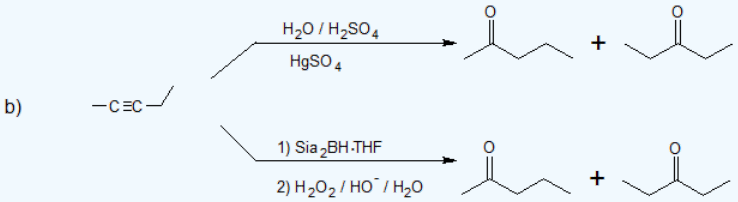
1. Draw the bond-line structure(s) for the product(s) of each reaction.





Answer





For internal alkynes, there is no difference in the reaction products.

11.5: Hydration of Alkynes for Anti-Markovnikov Products is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

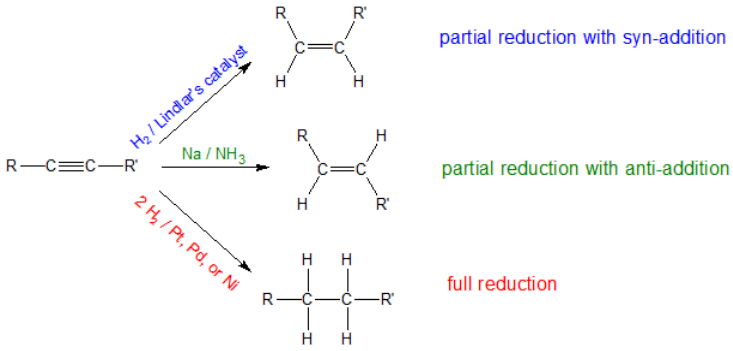
11.6: 10.6 Reduction of Alkynes

Learning Objective

- predict the products and specify the reagents for the full or partial reduction of alkynes

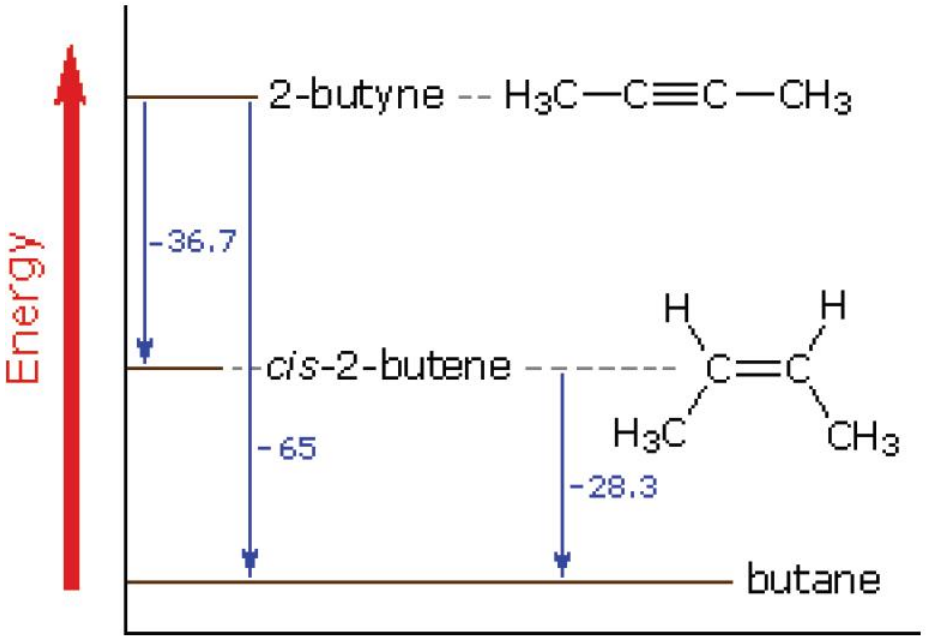
Introduction and Overview

Alkynes can undergo reduction reactions similar to alkenes. These reactions are also called hydrogenation reactions. With the presence of two pi bonds within the carbon-carbon triple bonds, the reduction reactions can be partial or complete depending on the reagents. Since partial reduction of an alkyne produces an alkene, the stereochemistry of the addition mechanism determines whether the cis- or trans- alkene is formed. The three most significant alkyne reduction reactions are summarized below.



Hydrogenation and the Relative Stability of Hydrocarbons

Like alkenes, alkynes readily undergo catalytic hydrogenation partially to cis- or trans- alkenes or fully to alkanes depending on the reaction employed.

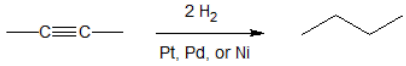


The catalytic addition of hydrogen to 2-butyne provides heat of reaction data that reflect the relative thermodynamic stabilities of these hydrocarbons, as shown above. From the heats of hydrogenation, shown in blue in units of kcal/mole, it would appear that alkynes are thermodynamically less stable than alkenes to a greater degree than alkenes are less stable than alkanes. The standard bond energies for carbon-carbon bonds confirm this conclusion. Thus, a double bond is stronger than a single bond, but not twice

as strong. The difference (63 kcal/mole) may be regarded as the strength of the π-bond component. Similarly, a triple bond is stronger than a double bond, but not 50% stronger. Here the difference (54 kcal/mole) may be taken as the strength of the second π-bond. The 9 kcal/mole weakening of this second π-bond is reflected in the heat of hydrogenation numbers (36.7 - 28.3 = 8.4).

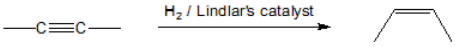
Catalytic Hydrogenation of an Alkyne

Alkynes can be fully hydrogenated into alkanes with the help of a platinum, paladium, or nickel catalyst. Because the reaction is catalyzed on the surface of the metal, it is common for these catalysts to dispersed on carbon (Pd/C) or finely dispersed as nickel (Raney-Ni). The full reduction of 2-butyne is shown below as an example.

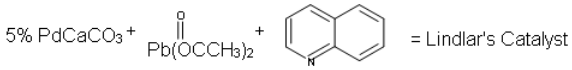


Hydrogenation of an Alkyne to a Cis-Alkene

Since alkynes are thermodynamically less stable than alkenes, we expect addition reactions of alkynes to be more exothermic and relatively faster than equivalent reactions of alkenes. For catalytic hydrogenation, the Pt, Pd, or Ni catalysts are so effective in promoting addition of hydrogen to both double and triple carbon-carbon bonds that the alkene intermediate formed by hydrogen addition to an alkyne cannot be isolated. A less efficient catalyst, Lindlar's catalyst permits alkynes to be converted to alkenes without further reduction to an alkane. Lindlar’s Catalyst transforms an alkyne to a cis-alkene because the hydrogenation reaction is occurring on the surface of the metal. Both hydrogen atoms are added to the same side of the alkyne as shown in the syn-addition mechanism for hydrogenation of alkenes in the previous chapter.

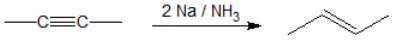


Lindlar's catalyst is prepared by deactivating (or poisoning) a conventional palladium catalyst. Lindlar’s catalyst has three components: palladium-calcium carbonate, lead acetate and quinoline. The quinoline serves to prevent complete hydrogenation of the alkyne to an alkane. This approach is similar to the one used for hydration of alkynes using a dialkyl borane for hydroboration. A strong reagent is modified into a less reactive form.

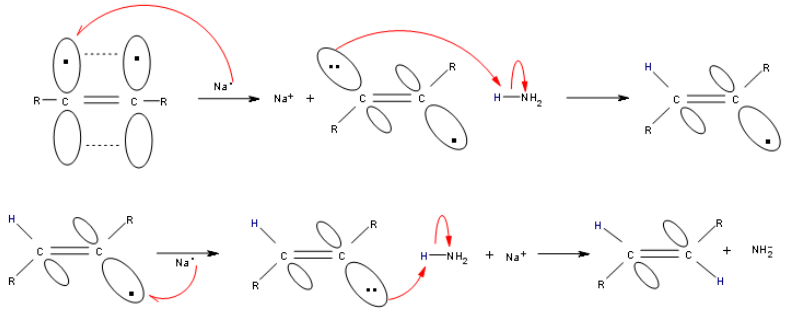


Hydrogenation of an Alkyne to a Trans-Alkene

Alkynes can be reduced to trans-alkenes with the use of sodium dissolved in an ammonia solvent. A sodium radical donates an electron to one of the p-orbitals in the carbon-carbon triple bond. This reaction forms an anion that can be protonated by a hydrogen atom in the ammonia solvent which prompts another sodium radical to donate an electron to the second p-orbital. The resulting anion is also protonated by a hydrogen from the ammonia solvent to produce a trans-alkene according to the mechanism shown below.



Mechanism for Hydrogenation of Alkynes to trans-Alkenes

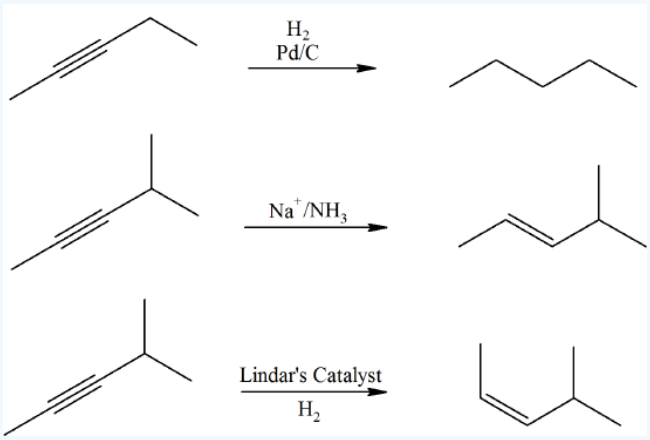


Exercise

1. Using any alkyne how would you prepare the following compounds: pentane, *trans*-4-methyl-2-pentene, *cis*-4-methyl-2-pentene.

Answer

1.



Contributors

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

11.6: 10.6 Reduction of Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

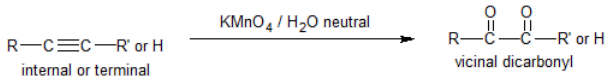
11.7: Oxidation of Alkynes

Learning Objective

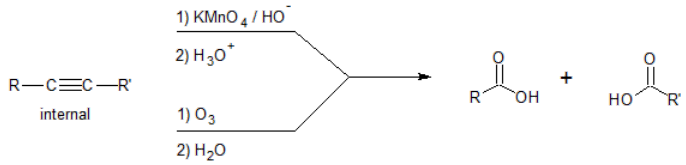
- predict the products and specify the reagents for the oxidation of alkynes

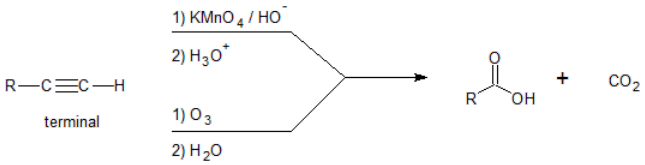
Alkynes, similar to alkenes, can be oxidized gently or strongly depending on the reaction environment. Since alkynes are less stable than alkenens, the reactions conditions can be gentler. For examples, alkynes form vicinal dicarbonyls in neutral permanganate solution. For the alkene reaction to vicinal dialcohols, the permanganate reaction requires a lightly basic environment for the reaction to occur. During strong oxidation with ozone or basic potassium permanganate, the alkyne is cleaved into two products. Because at least one of the reaction products is a carboxylic acid, it is important to consider the acid-base chemistry of the product in the reaction solution. Carboxylic acids are deprotonated in basic solutions to carboxylates. A second reaction step is required to protonate the carboxylate to the neutral form of the carboxylic acid. The generic reactions are summarized below for the different oxidative conditions - gentle or strong.

Gentle Alkyne Oxidation



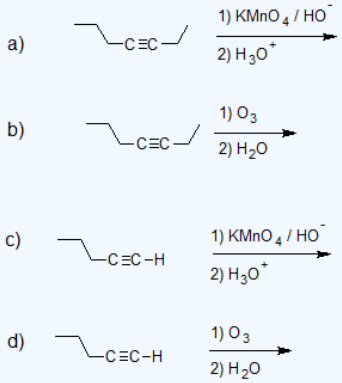
Strong Alkyne Oxidation - Oxidative Cleavage





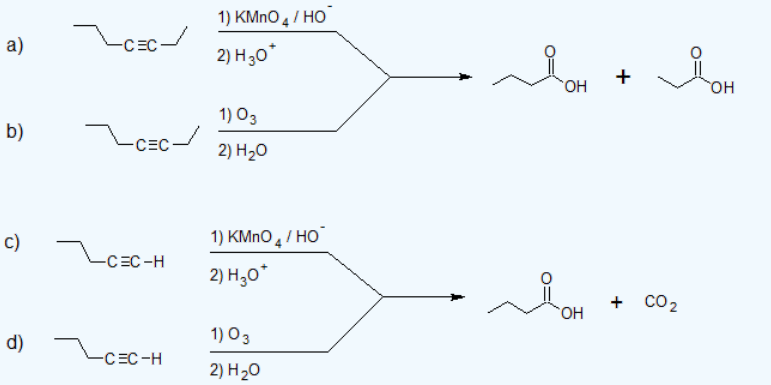
Exercise

1. Draw the bond-line structures for the product(s) of the following reactions.



Answer

1.



Oxidative cleavage of alkynes produces carboxylic acids and/or carbon dioxide. Aldehydes are not produced.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

11.7: Oxidation of Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.8: Acidity of Terminal Alkynes and Acetylide Ions

Learning Objectives

- explain why alkynes are more acidic than alkanes and alkenes
- predict the products and specify the reagents to generate nucleophilic acetylide ions and heavy metal acetylides

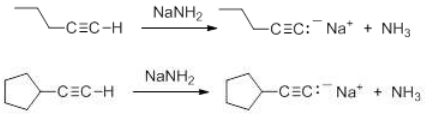
Acidity of Terminal Alkynes and Acetylilde Ion Formation

Terminal alkynes are much more acidic than most other hydrocarbons. Removal of the proton leads to the formation of an acetylide anion, $RC{\equiv}C{:}^-$. The origin of the enhanced acidity can be attributed to the stability of the acetylide anion, which has the unpaired electrons in an sp hybridized orbital. The stability results from occupying an orbital with a high degree of s-orbital character. There is a strong correlation between s-character in the orbital containing the non-bonding electrons in the anion and the acidity of hydrocarbons. The enhanced acidity with greater s-character occurs despite the fact that the homolytic C-H BDE is larger.

***Table 9.7.1**: Akynes*

Compound	Conjugate Base	Hybridization	"s Character"	pKa	C-H BDE (kJ/mol)
CH_3CH_3	$CH_3CH_2^-$	sp^3	25%	50	410
CH_2CH_2	CH_2CH^-	sp^2	33%	44	473
HCCH	HCC^-	sp	50%	25	523

Consequently, acetylide anions can be readily formed by deprotonation using a sufficiently strong base. Amide anion (NH_2^-), in the form of $NaNH_2$ is commonly used for the formation of acetylide anions.



Exercise

1. Given that the p*K*a of water is 14.00, would you expect hydroxide ion to be capable of removing a proton from each of the substances listed below? Justify your answers, briefly.
    1. ethanol (p*K*a = 16)
    2. acetic acid (p*K*a = 4.72)
    3. acetylene (p*K*a = 25)

Answer

Answers:

1.

1. No, The p*K*a of ethanol is similar to the pKa of water so proton exchange is comparable for both protonation and deprotonation between alcohols and water. Alcohols can be considered "alkylated water" and share many similarities in both physical properties and chemical reactivity.
2. Yes, very well. There is a difference of 11 p*K*a units between the p*K*a of water and the p*K*a of acetic acid. The equilibrium lies well to the right with acetate as the predominate form of the original acetic acid.
3. No, hardly at all. The hydroxide ion is too weak a base to remove a proton from acetylene. The equilibrium lies so far to the left that it is considered a "No Reaction".

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Prof. Paul G. Wenthold (Purdue University)

11.8: Acidity of Terminal Alkynes and Acetylide Ions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

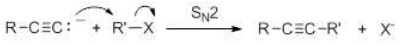
11.9: Synthesis of Larger Alkynes from Acetylides

Learning Objective

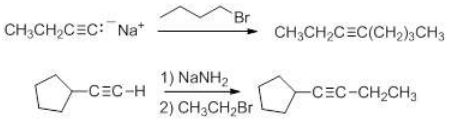
- predict the products and specify the reagents to synthesize larger alkynes with acetylide ions

Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions of Acetylides

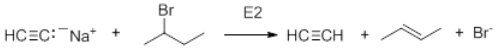
Acetylide anions are strong bases and strong nucleophiles. Therefore, they are able to displace halides and other leaving groups in substitution reactions. The product is a substituted alkyne with a longer, continuous carbon chain.



Because the ion is a very strong base, the substitution reaction follows the S_N2 mechanism and is most efficient with methyl or primary halides without substitution near the reaction center.

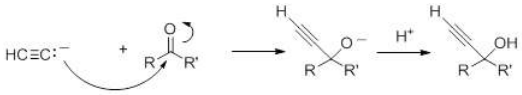


Secondary, tertiary or even bulky primary substrates will give elimination by the E2 mechanism.



Nucleophilic Addition of Acetylides to Carbonyls

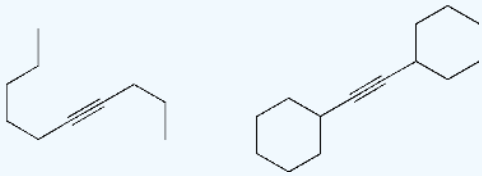
Acetylide anions will add to aldehydes and ketones to form alkoxides that are subsequently protonated to form propargyl alcohols.



With aldehydes and non-symmetric ketones, in the absence of chiral catalyst, the product will be a racemic mixture of the two enantiomers.

Exercise

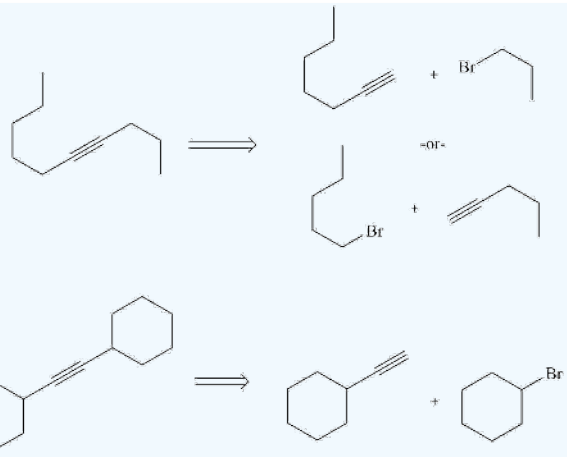
1. The pK_a of ammonia is 35. Estimate the equilibrium constant for the deprotonation of pent-1-yne by amide, as shown above.
2. Give the possible reactants for the following formations:



3. Propose a synthetic route to produce 2-pentene from propyne and an alkyl halide.

Answer

1. Assuming the pK_a of pent-1-yne is about 25, then the difference in pK_as is 10. Since pentyne is more acidic, the formation of the acetylide will be favored at equilibrium, so the equilibrium constant for the reaction is about 10^{10}.
2.



3.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Prof. Paul G. Wenthold (Purdue University)

11.9: Synthesis of Larger Alkynes from Acetylides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.10: An Introduction to Multiple Step Synthesis

Learning Objective

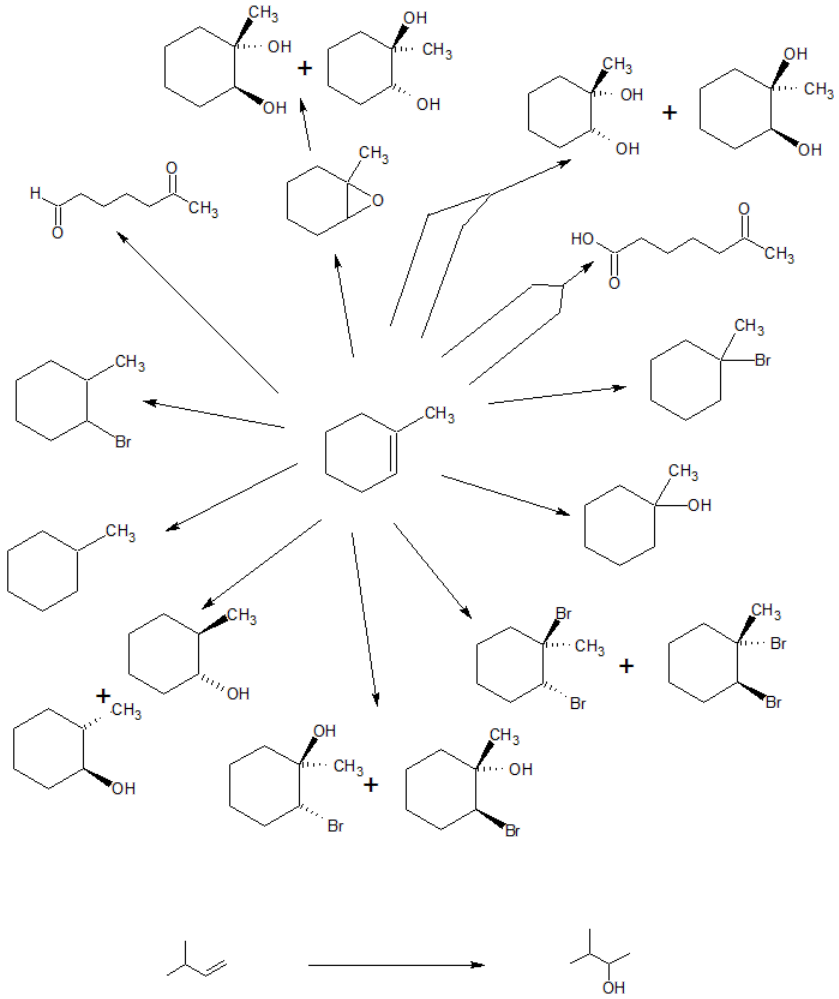
- use retrosynthetic analysis to design a multi-step synthesis with correct regiochemistry and stereochemistry using the reactions studied to date

Introduction

The study of organic chemistry introduces students to a wide range of interrelated reactions. Alkenes, for example, may be converted to structurally similar alkanes, alcohols, alkyl halides, epoxides, glycols and boranes; cleaved to smaller aldehydes, ketones and carboxylic acids; and enlarged by carbocation and radical additions as well as cycloadditions. Most of these reactions are shown in the Alkene Reaction Map below. All of these products may be subsequently transformed into a host of new compounds incorporating a wide variety of functional groups. Consequently, the logical conception of a multi-step synthesis for the construction of a designated compound from a specified starting material becomes one of the most challenging problems that may be posed. Functional group reaction maps like the one below for alkenes can be helpful in designing multi-step syntheses. It can be helpful to build and design your own reaction maps for each functional group studied.

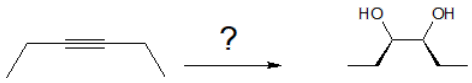
Alkene Reaction Map

Please note: The reagents for each chemical transformation have been intentionally omitted so that this map can be used as a study tool. The answers are provided at the end of this section as part of the exercises.

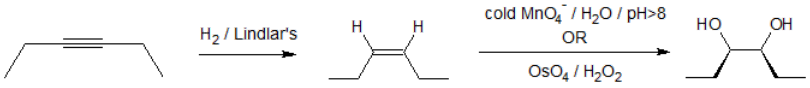


Simple Multi-Step Syntheses

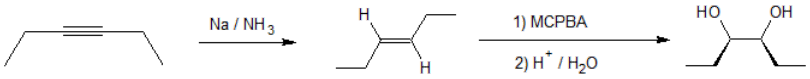
A one or two step sequence of simple reactions is not that difficult to deduce. For example, the synthesis of meso-3,4-hexanediol from 3-hexyne can occur by more than one multi-step pathway.



One approach would be to reduce the alkyne to cis or trans-3-hexene before undertaking glycol formation. Permanaganate or osmium tetroxide hydroxylation of cis-3-hexene would form the desired meso isomer.



From trans-3-hexene, it would be necessary to first epoxidize the alkene with a peracid followed by ring opening with acidic or basic hydrolysis.

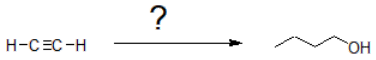


Longer multi-step syntheses require careful analysis and thought, since many options need to be considered. Like an expert chess player evaluating the long range pros and cons of potential moves, the chemist must appraise the potential success of various possible reaction paths, focusing on the scope and limitations constraining each of the individual reactions being employed. The skill is acquired by practice, experience, and often trial and error.

Thinking it Through with 3 Examples

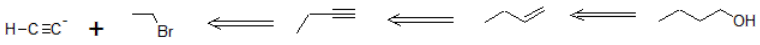
The following three examples illustrate strategies for developing multi-step syntheses from the reactions studied in the first ten chapters of this text. It is helpful to systematically look for structural changes beginning with the carbon chain and brainstorm relevant functional group conversion reactions. Retro-synthesis is the approach of working backwards from the product to the starting material.

In the first example, we are asked to synthesize 1-butanol from acetylene.

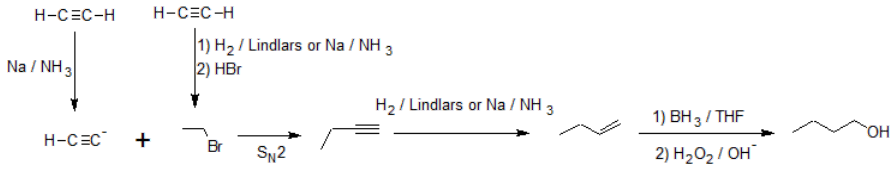


The carbon chain doubles in size indicating an acetylide S_N2 reaction with an alkyl halide. Primary alcohol formation from an anti-Markovnikov alkene hydration reaction (hydroboration-oxidation) is more likely than a substitution reaction. Applying retro-synthesis, we work backwards from the alcohol to the alkene to the alkyne from an acetylide reaction that initially builds the carbon chain.

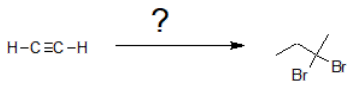
Retro-Synthesis



Working forwards, we specify the reagents needed for each transformation identified from the retro-synthesis. The ethylbromide must also be derived from acetylene so multiple reaction pathways are combined as shown below.

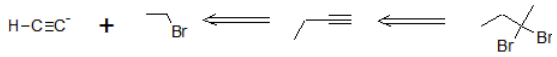


In the second example, we are asked to synthesize 1,2-dibromobutane from acetylene.

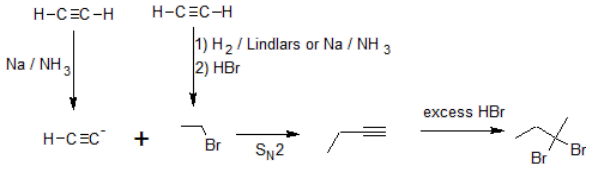


Once again there is an increase in the carbon chain length indicating an acetylide S_N2 reaction with an alkyl halide similar to the first example. The hydrohalogenation can be subtle to discern because the hydrogen atoms are not shown in bond-line structures. Comparing the chemical formulas of 1-butyne with 1,2-dibromobutane, there is a difference of two H atoms and two Br atoms indicating hydrohalogenation and not halogenation. The addition of both bromine atoms to the same carbon atom also supports the idea that hydrohalogenation occurs on an alkyne and not an alkene. The formation of the geminal dihalide also indicates hydrohalogenation instead of halogenatioin because halogenation produces vicinal dihalides. With this insight, the retro-synthesis indicates the following series of chemical transformations.

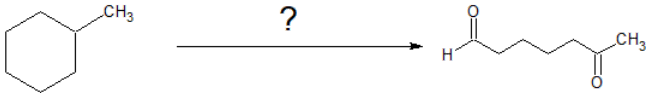
Retro-Synthesis



Working forwards, we specify the reagents needed for each transformation.

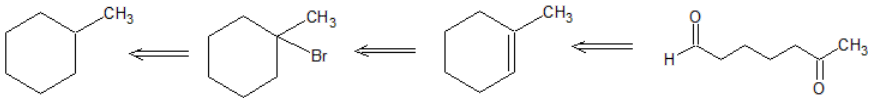


In the third example, we are asked to produce 6-oxoheptanal from methylcyclohexane.

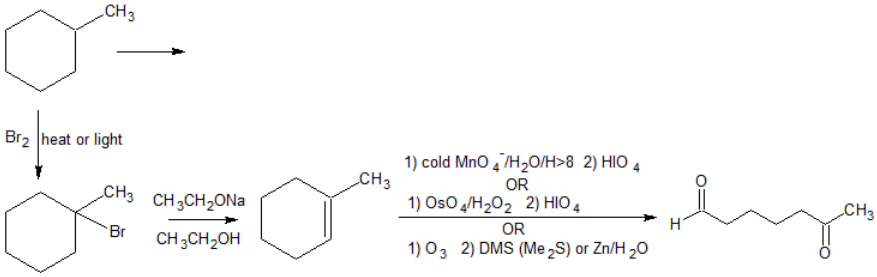


Counting the carbons, the starting material and product both contain seven carbon atoms and there is a cleavage reaction of an alkene under reductive conditions. One important missing aspect of this reaction is a good leaving group (LG). Alkanes are chemically quite boring. We can burn them as fuel or perform free-radical halogenation to create alkyl halides with excellent leaving groups. With these observations, the following retro-synthesis is reasonable.

Retro-Synthesis



Working forwards, we specify the reagents needed for each reaction. For the initial free-radical halogenation of the alkane, we have the option of chlorine (Cl2) or bromine (Br2). Because methylcyclohexane has several different classifications of carbons, the selectivity of Br2 is more important than the faster reactivity of Cl2. An strong base with heat can be used for the second step to follow an E2 mechanism and form 1-methylcyclohexene. The aldhyde group on the final product indicates gentle oxidative cleavage by any of several reaction pathways. These reactions can be combined in to the following multi-step synthesis.

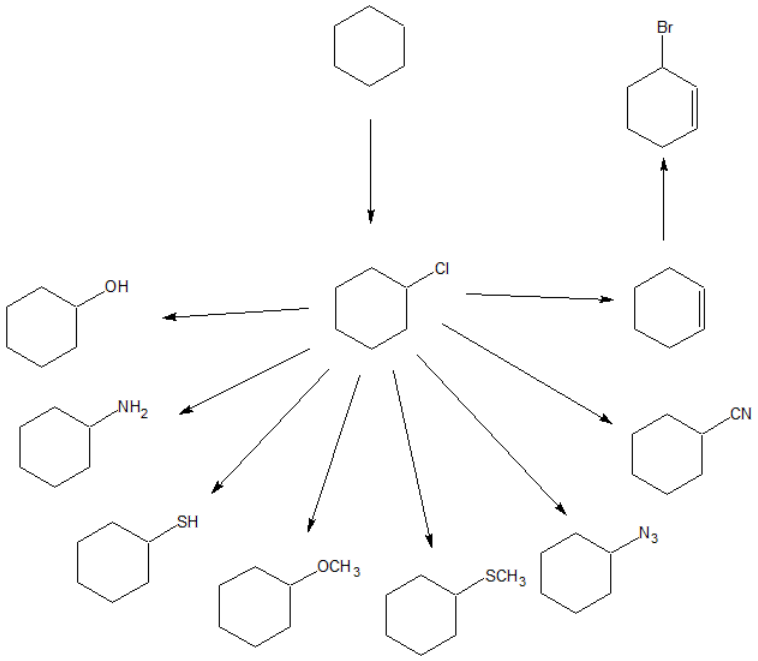


Reaction Maps to Build Functional Group Conversion Mastery

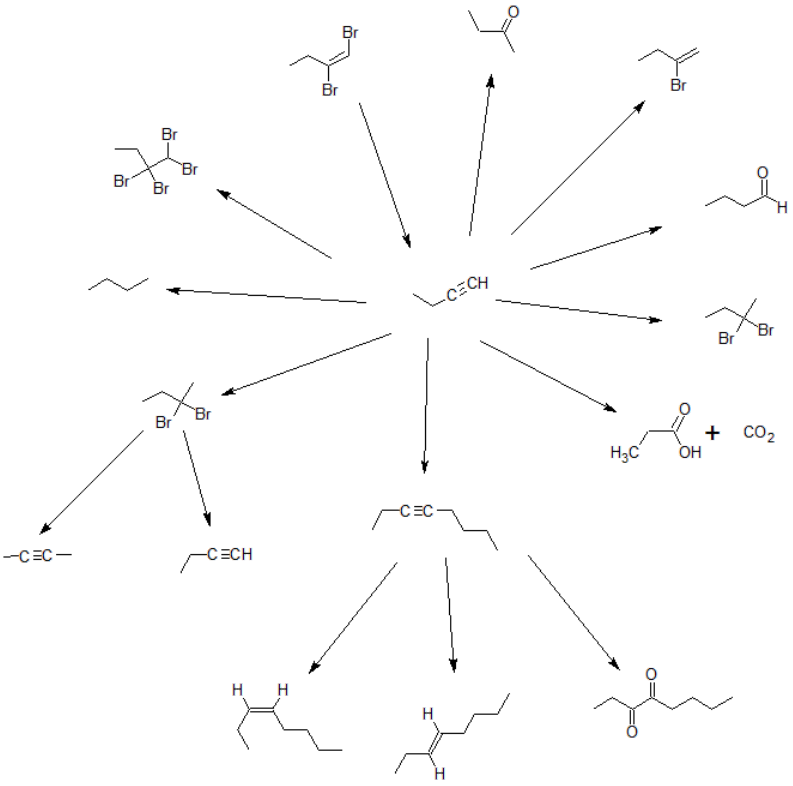
After working through the examples above, we can see how important it is to memorize all of the functional group reactions studied in the first ten chapters. We can apply the knowledge of these reactions to the wisdom of multi-step syntheses.

Please note: The reagents for each chemical transformation have been intentionally omitted so that these maps can be used as a study tools. The answers are provided at the end of this section as part of the exercises.

Alkane and Alkyl Halide Reaction Map



Alkyne Reaction Map



Exercise

1. Starting at 3-hexyne predict synthetic routes to achieve:

a) trans-3-hexene

b) 3,4-dibromohexane

c) 3-hexanol.

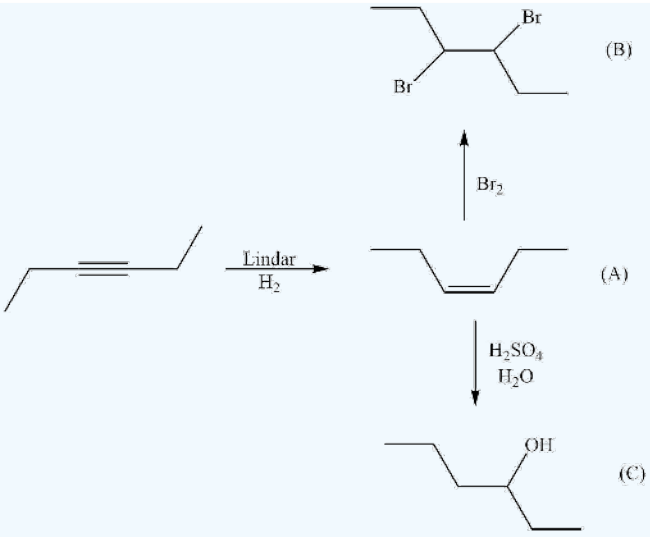
2. Starting with acetylene and any alkyl halides propose a synthesis to make

a) pentanal

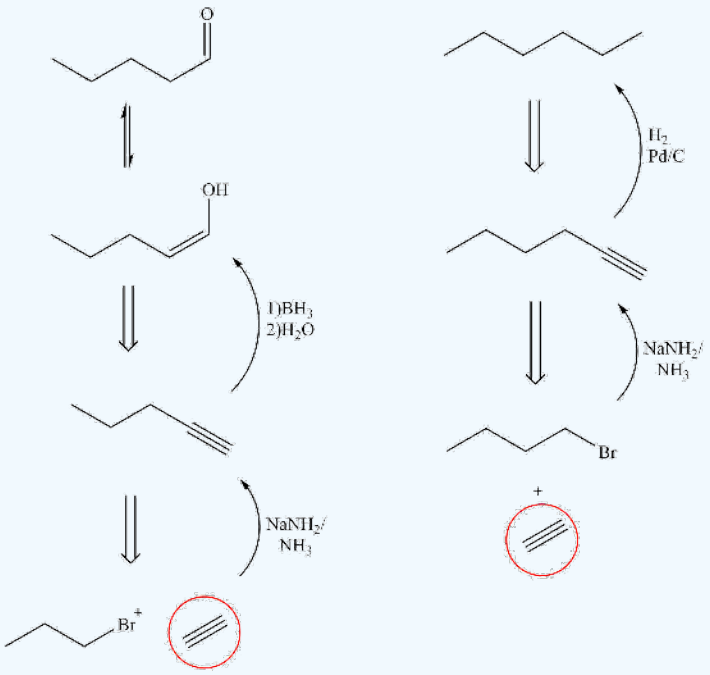
b) hexane.

Answer

1.



2.



Contributors and Attributions

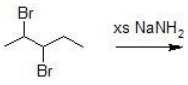
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

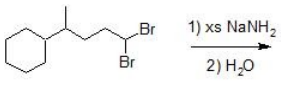
11.10: An Introduction to Multiple Step Synthesis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

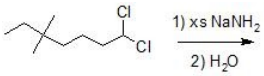
11.11: Additional Exercises

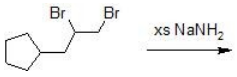
Alkyne Reactions

10-1 Predict the product of these following reactions:

a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

10-2 Using acetylene as the starting material, show how you would synthesize the following compounds

a) 

b) but-2-yne

c) 

d) 

10-3 Identify the reagents needed to turn hex-1-yne into the following compounds

a) hexane

b) oct-3-yne

c) cis-hept-2-ene

d) trans-hept-2-ene

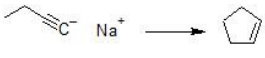
e) 2,2-dibromohexane

f) 1-bromohexene

10-4 Show how you would accomplish the following synthetic transformations.

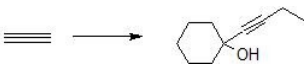
a) 

b) 

c) 

d) 

e) 

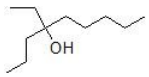
f) 

10-5 Deduce the structure of each unknown from the information given.

a) Upon catalytic hydrogenation, unknown **A** yields pentane. Ozonolysis of **A** yields butanoic acid, $HOOC(CH_2)_2CH_3$ and CO_2. Draw the structure of compound **A**

b) Upon catalytic hydrogenation, unknown **B** yields pentane. Ozonolysis of **B** yields acetaldehyde, CH_3CHO, and propionaldehyde, CH_3CH_2CHO.

10-6 Use compound **A** from the previous problem (**10-5**) and any additional reagents you may need to synthesize the following compound.

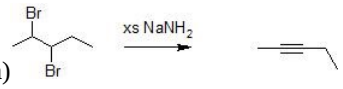


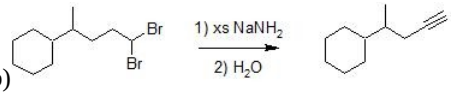
11.11: Additional Exercises is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

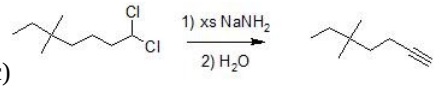
11.12: Solutions to Additional Exercises

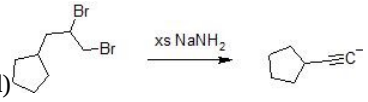
Alkyne Reactions

10-1

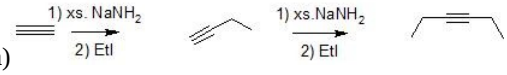
a) 

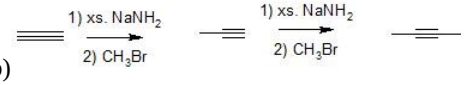
b) 

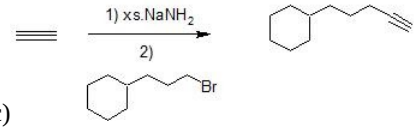
c) 

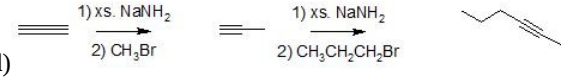
d) 

10-2

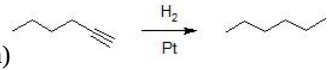
a) 

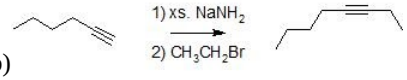
b) 

c) 

d) 

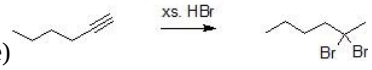
10-3

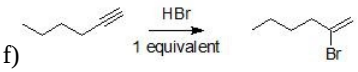
a) 

b) 

c) 

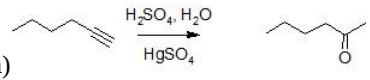
d) 

e) 

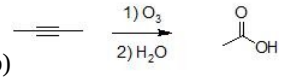
f) 

10-4

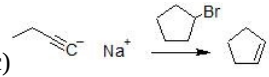
a)



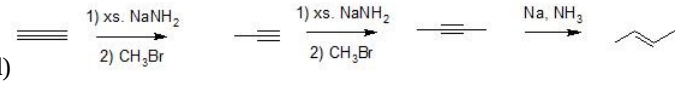
b)



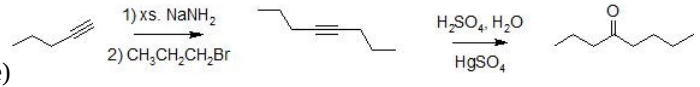
c)



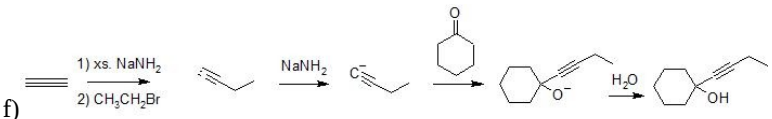
d)



e)



f)



10-5

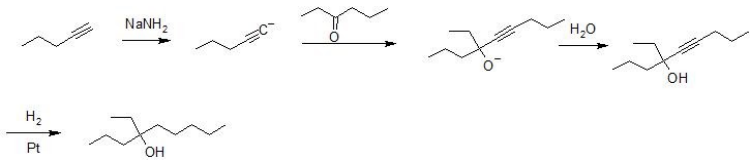
a)



b)



10-6



11.12: Solutions to Additional Exercises is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

12: Free Radical Reactions

12.1: Reactive Intermediates - Radicals

12.2: The Free-Radical Halogenation of Alkanes

12.3: Radical-Chain Addition Reactions to Alkenes

12: Free Radical Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.1: Reactive Intermediates - Radicals

Learning Objective

- describe the structure & relative stabilities of free radicals

Radicals

In chemistry, a **radical** (more precisely, a **free radical**) is an atom, molecule, or ion that has unpaired valence electrons or an open electron shell, and therefore may be seen as having one or more "dangling" covalent bonds.

With some exceptions, these "dangling" bonds make free radicals highly chemically reactive towards other substances, or even towards themselves: their molecules will often spontaneously dimerize or polymerize if they come in contact with each other. Most radicals are reasonably stable only at very low concentrations in inert media or in a vacuum.

A notable example of a free radical is the hydroxyl radical (HO•), a molecule that is one hydrogen atom short of a water molecule and thus has one bond "dangling" from the oxygen. Two other examples are the carbene molecule (:CH2), which has two dangling bonds; and the superoxide anion (•O−2), the oxygen molecule O2 with one extra electron, which has one dangling bond. In contrast, the hydroxyl anion (HO−), the oxide anion (O2−) and thecarbenium cation (CH+3) are not radicals, since the bonds that may appear to be dangling are in fact resolved by the addition or removal of electrons.

Free radicals may be created in a number of ways, including synthesis with very dilute or rarefied reagents, reactions at very low temperatures, or breakup of larger molecules. The latter can be affected by any process that puts enough energy into the parent molecule, such as ionizing radiation, heat, electrical discharges, electrolysis, and chemical reactions. Indeed, radicals are intermediate stages in many chemical reactions.

Free radicals play an important role in combustion, atmospheric chemistry, polymerization, plasma chemistry, biochemistry, and many other chemical processes. In living organisms, the free radicals superoxide and nitric oxideand their reaction products regulate many processes, such as control of vascular tone and thus blood pressure. They also play a key role in the intermediary metabolism of various biological compounds. Such radicals can even be messengers in a process dubbed redox signaling. A radical may be trapped within a *solvent cage* or be otherwise bound.

Until late in the 20th century the word "radical" was used in chemistry to indicate any connected group of atoms, such as a methyl group or a carboxyl, whether it was part of a larger molecule or a molecule on its own. The qualifier "free" was then needed to specify the unbound case. Following recent nomenclature revisions, a part of a larger molecule is now called a functional group or substituent, and "radical" now implies "free". However, the old nomenclature may still occur in the literature.

Formation

The formation of radicals may involve breaking of covalent bonds homolytically, a process that requires significant amounts of energy. For example, splitting H_2 into 2H· has a $\Delta H°$ of +435 kJ/mol, and Cl_2 into 2Cl· has a $\Delta H°$ of +243 kJ/mol. This is known as the homolytic bond dissociation energy, and is usually abbreviated as the symbol $\Delta H°$. The bond energy between two covalently bonded atoms is affected by the structure of the molecule as a whole, not just the identity of the two atoms. Likewise, radicals requiring more energy to form are less stable than those requiring less energy. Homolytic bond cleavage most often happens between two atoms of similar electronegativity. In organic chemistry this is often the O-O bond in peroxide species or O-N bonds. Sometimes radical formation is spin-forbidden, presenting an additional barrier. However, propagation is a very exothermic reaction. Likewise, although radical ions do exist, most species are electrically neutral. Radicals may also be formed by single electron oxidation or reduction of an atom or molecule. An example is the production of superoxide by the electron transport chain. Early studies of organometallic chemistry, especially tetra-alkyl lead species by F.A. Paneth and K. Hahnfeld in the 1930s supported heterolytic fission of bonds and a radical based mechanism.

Depiction in chemical reactions

In chemical equations, free radicals are frequently denoted by a dot placed immediately to the right of the atomic symbol or molecular formula as follows:

$$Cl_2 \xrightarrow{UV} Cl\cdot + Cl\cdot$$

Chlorine gas can be broken down by ultraviolet light to form atomic chlorine radicals.

Radical reaction mechanisms use single-headed arrows to depict the movement of single electrons:

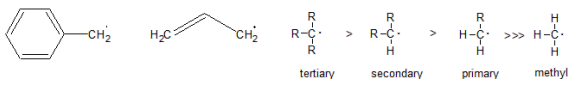


The homolytic cleavage of the breaking bond is drawn with a 'fish-hook' arrow to distinguish from the usual movement of two electrons depicted by a standard curly arrow. It should be noted that the second electron of the breaking bond also moves to pair up with the attacking radical electron; this is not explicitly indicated in this case.

Relative Stability

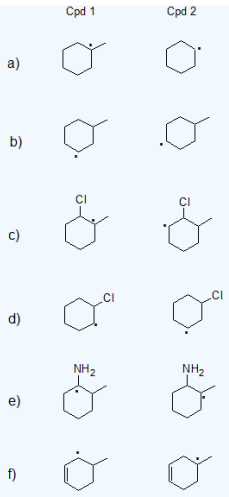
Radical alkyl intermediates are stabilized by similar physical processes to carbocations: as a general rule, the more substituted the radical center is, the more stable it is. This directs their reactions. Thus, formation of a tertiary radical ($R_3C\cdot$) is favored over secondary ($R_2HC\cdot$), which is favored over primary ($RH_2C\cdot$). Likewise, radicals next to functional groups such as carbonyl, nitrile, and ether are more stable than tertiary alkyl radicals.

Relative Stability of Carbon Radicals



Exercise

1. State which carbon radical (free radical) in each pair below is more stable or if they are expected to have comparable stability. Explain your reasoning.



Answer

1.

a) Cpd 1: Tertiary radicals are more stable than secondary radicals.

b) Cpds 1 and 2 are both secondary so they have comparable stability.

c) Cpd 1: Tertiary radicals are more stable than secondary radicals with similar effects from the Cl atom.

d) Cpd 2: Both compounds are secondary, but positive charge is further from electron-withdrawing chlorine on Cpd 2.

e) Cpd 1: Lone pair on nitrogen can donate electrons by resonance.

f) Cpd 1: Secondary allylic radicals are more stable than tertiary radicals. (Primary allylic radicals are comparable in stability to tertiary radicals.)

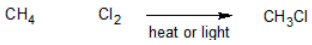
12.1: Reactive Intermediates - Radicals is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.2: The Free-Radical Halogenation of Alkanes

Alkanes (the most basic of all organic compounds) undergo very few reactions. One of these reactions is halogenation, or the substitution of a single hydrogen on the alkane for a single halogen to form a haloalkane. This reaction is very important in organic chemistry because it opens a gateway to further chemical reactions.

Introduction

While the reactions possible with alkanes are few, there are many reactions that involve haloalkanes. In order to better understand the mechanism (a detailed look at the step by step process through which a reaction occurs), we will closely examine the chlorination of methane. When methane (CH_4) and chlorine (Cl_2) are mixed together in the absence of light at room temperature nothing happens. However, if the conditions are changed, so that either the reaction is taking place at high temperatures (denoted by Δ) or there is ultra violet irradiation, a product is formed, chloromethane (CH_3Cl).

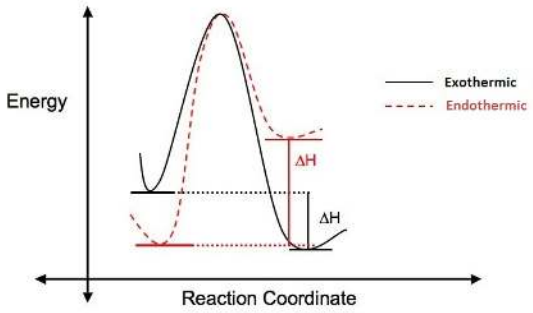


Energetics

Why does this reaction occur? Is the reaction favorable? A way to answer these questions is to look at the change in enthalpy (**Δ*H***) that occurs when the reaction takes place.

ΔH = (Energy put into reaction) – (Energy given off from reaction)

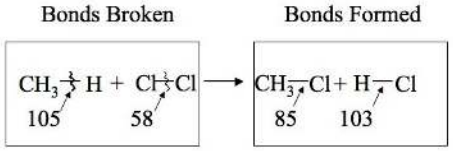
If more energy is put into a reaction than is given off, the ΔH is positive, the reaction is endothermic and not energetically favorable. If more energy is given off in the reaction than was put in, the ΔH is negative, the reaction is said to be exothermic and is considered favorable. The figure below illustrates the difference between endothermic and exothermic reactions.



ΔH can also be calculated using bond dissociation energies (ΔH°):

$$\Delta H = \sum \Delta H^\circ \text{ of bonds broken} - \sum \Delta H^\circ \text{ of bonds formed} \qquad (12.2.1)$$

Let's look at our specific example of the chlorination of methane to determine if it is endothermic or exothermic:



Change in enthalpy = (105 + 58) - (85 + 103)
= -25kcal/mol

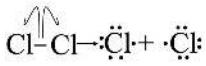
Since, the ΔH for the chlorination of methane is negative, the reaction is exothermic. Energetically this reaction is favorable. In order to better understand this reaction we need to look at the mechanism (a detailed step by step look at the reaction showing how it occurs) by which the reaction occurs.

Radical Chain Mechanism

The reaction proceeds through the radical chain mechanism. The radical chain mechanism is characterized by three steps: **initiation**, **propagation** and **termination**. Initiation requires an input of energy but after that the reaction is self-sustaining. The first propagation step uses up one of the products from initiation, and the second propagation step makes another one, thus the cycle can continue until indefinitely.

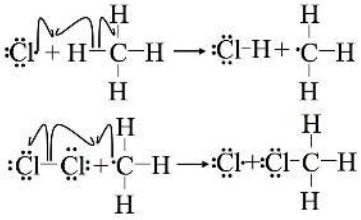
Step 1: Initiation

Initiation breaks the bond between the chlorine molecule (Cl_2). For this step to occur energy must be put in, this step is not energetically favorable. After this step, the reaction can occur continuously (as long as reactants provide) without input of more energy. It is important to note that this part of the mechanism cannot occur without some external energy input, through light or heat.

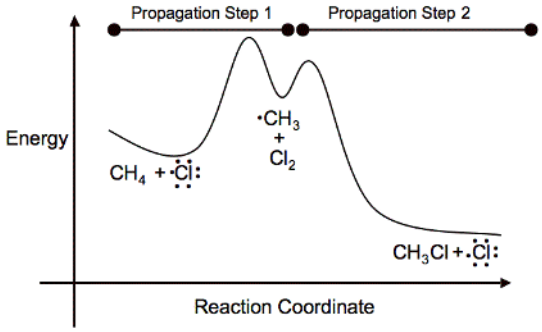


Step 2: Propagation

The next two steps in the mechanism are called propagation steps. In the first propagation step, a chlorine radical combines with a hydrogen on the methane. This gives hydrochloric acid (HCl, the inorganic product of this reaction) and the methyl radical. In the second propagation step more of the chlorine starting material (Cl_2) is used, one of the chlorine atoms becomes a radical and the other combines with the methyl radical.

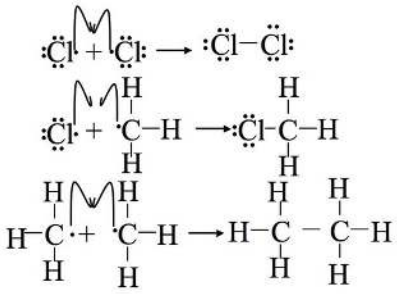


The first propagation step is endothermic, meaning it takes in heat (requires 2 kcal/mol) and is not energetically favorable. In contrast the second propagation step is exothermic, releasing 27 kcal/mol. Once the reaction is initiated, the exothermic energy released from the second propagation step provides the activation energy for the first propagation step creating a cyclic chain reaction following Le Chatelier's principle until termination.



Step 3: Termination

In the termination steps, all the remaining radicals combine (in all possible manners) to form more product (CH_3Cl), more reactant (Cl_2) and even combinations of the two methyl radicals to form a side product of ethane (CH_3CH_3).



Limitations of the Chlorination

The chlorination of methane or any other alkane does not necessarily stop after one chlorination. It may actually be very hard to get a monosubstituted chloromethane. Instead di-, tri- and even tetra-chloromethanes are formed. One way to avoid this problem is to use a much higher concentration of methane or other alkane in comparison to chloride. This reduces the chance of a chlorine radical running into a chloromethane and starting the mechanism over again to form a dichloromethane. Through this method of controlling product ratios one is able to have a relative amount of control over the product.

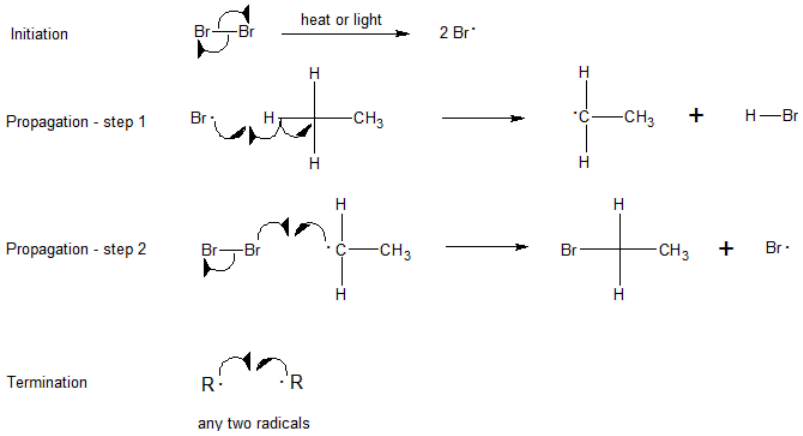
Exercises

1. Compounds other than chlorine and methane can react via free-radical halogenation. Write out the complete mechanism for the monobromination of ethane.
2. Explain how the energetically unfavorable first propagation step can continue to occur without the input of energy from an external source.
3. Which step of the radical chain mechanism requires outside energy? What can be used as this energy?
4. Use the table provided below to calculate the change in enthalpy for the monobromination of ethane.

Compound	Bond Dissociation Energy (kcal/mol)
CH_3CH_2-H	101
CH_3CH_2-Br	70
H-Br	87
Br_2	46

Solutions

1.



2. The exothermic energy released from the second propagation step provides the activation energy for the first propagation step creating a cyclic chain reaction following Le Chatelier's principle until termination.

3. The initiation step requires energy from heat o lit. For maximum photoefficiency, the wavelength of light is correlated with bond being homolytically cleaved.

4. $\Delta H = (101 + 46) - (70 + 87)$ kcal/mol

References

1. Matyjaszewski, Krzysztof, Wojciech Jakubowski, Ke Min, Wei Tang, Jinyu Huang, Wade A. Braunecker, and Nicolay V. Tsarevsky. "Diminishing Catalyst Concentration in Atom Transfer Radical Polymerization with Reducing Agents." Science 72 (1930): 379-90.
2. Phillips, Francis C. "# Researches upon the Chemical Properties of Gases." Researches upon the Chemical Properties of Gases 17 (1893): 149-236.

Outside Links

- Video of Mechanism: http://www.jbpub.com/organic-online/movies/chlormet.htm
- Wikipedia of Radical Chain Mechanism: en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Free_radical_halogenation
- Wikipedia of Le Chatelier's Principle: en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Le_Chatelier%27s_principle#Concentration

Contributors and Attributions

- Kristen Kelley and Britt Farquharson

12.2: The Free-Radical Halogenation of Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.3: Radical-Chain Addition Reactions to Alkenes

The early literature concerning the addition of hydrogen bromide to unsymmetrical alkenes at best is confused. Sometimes the same alkene was reported to give addition both according to, and in opposition to, the principles discussed for electrophilic ionic addition (Section 10-4). Much of the uncertainty on the addition of hydrogen bromide was removed by the classical researches of M. S. Kharasch and F. R. Mayo (1933) who showed that there must be two reaction mechanisms, each giving a different product. Kharasch and Mayo found, in the presence of radical inhibitors, hydrogen bromide adds to propene in a rather slow reaction to give pure 2-bromopropane:

$$CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + HBr \xrightarrow[\text{radical inhibitors}]{\text{slow}} CH_3\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_3$$

With light, peroxides, radical initiators, and in the absence of radical inhibitors a rapid radical-chain addition of hydrogen bromide occurs to yield 80% or more of 1-bromopropane:

$$CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + HBr \xrightarrow[\text{peroxides}]{\text{fast}} CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$$

Similar effects have been noted occasionally with hydrogen chloride, but never with hydrogen iodide or hydrogen fluoride. A few substances apparently add to alkenes only by radical mechanisms, and always add in the opposite way to that expected for electrophilic ionic addition.

The ionic addition of hydrogen bromide was discussed in Section 10-4 and will not be considered further at this point. Two questions with regard to the so-called *abnormal addition* will be given special attention. Why does the radical mechanism give a product of different structure than the ionic addition? Why does the radical addition occur readily with hydrogen bromide but rarely with the other hydrogen halides?

The abnormal addition of hydrogen bromide is catalyzed strongly by peroxides, which have the structure R—O—O—R and decompose thermally to give RO· radicals (see Section 4-5B):

$$R{-}\ddot{O}{:}\ddot{O}{-}R \longrightarrow 2R{-}\ddot{O}\cdot \qquad \Delta H^0 = +35 \text{ kcal}$$

The RO· radicals can react with hydrogen bromide in two ways, to abstract either hydrogen atoms or bromine atoms:

$$RO\cdot + HBr \begin{cases} \longrightarrow ROH + Br\cdot & \Delta H^0 = -23 \text{ kcal} \\ \longrightarrow ROBr + H\cdot & \Delta H^0 = +39 \text{ kcal} \end{cases}$$

Clearly, the formation of ROH and a bromine atom is energetically more favorable. The overall process of decomposition of peroxide and attack on hydrogen bromide, which results in the formation of a bromine atom, can initiate a radical-chain addition of hydrogen bromide to an alkene.

$$\text{chain propagation} \begin{cases} CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + Br\cdot \longrightarrow CH_3\dot{C}H{-}CH_2Br & \\ & \Delta H^0 = -5 \text{ kcal} \\ CH_3\dot{C}H{-}CH_2Br + HBr \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2CH_2Br + Br\cdot & \\ & \Delta H^0 = -11 \text{ kcal} \end{cases}$$

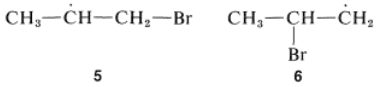
$$\text{chain termination: } R'\cdot + R'\cdot \longrightarrow R'{-}R' \qquad R'\cdot = \text{atom or radical}$$

The two chain-propagating steps, taken together, are exothermic by 16 kcal and have a fairly reasonable energy balance between the separate steps. The reaction chains apparently are rather long, because the addition is strongly inhibited by radical traps and only traces of peroxide catalyst are needed.

12.3.1: Orientation of Addition

The direction of addition of hydrogen bromide to propene clearly depends on which end of the double bond the bromine atom attacks. The important question is which of the two possible carbon radicals that may be formed is the more stable, the 1-bromo-2-

propyl radical, **5**, or the 2-bromo-1-propyl radical, **6**:



5 **6**

From **C–H** bond-dissociation energies of alkanes (see Table 5-6), the ease of formation and stabilities of the carbon radicals is seen to follow the sequence *tertiary* > *secondary* > *primary*. By analogy, the *secondary* 1-bromo-2-propyl radical, **5**, is expected to be more stable and more easily formed than the *primary* 2-bromo-1-propyl radical, **6**. The product of radical addition should be, and indeed is, 1-bromopropane:



Other reagents, such as the halogens, also can add to alkenes and alkynes by both radical-chain and ionic mechanisms. Radical addition usually is initiated by light, whereas ionic addition is favored by low temperatures and no light. Nevertheless, it often is difficult to keep both mechanisms from operating at the same time. This is important even when the alkene is symmetrical because, although the adduct will then have the same structural formula regardless of mechanism, the stereochemical configurations may differ. Electrophilic addition of halogens generally is a stereospecific antarafacial addition, but radical-chain additions are less stereospecific.

There are many reagents that add to alkenes only by radical-chain mechanisms. A number of these are listed in Table 10-3. They have in common a relatively weak bond, **X–Y**, that can be cleaved homolytically either by light or by chemical initiators such as peroxides. In the propagation steps, the radical that attacks the double bond does so to produce the more stable carbon radical. For addition to simple alkenes and alkynes, the more stable carbon radical is the one with the fewest hydrogens or the most alkyl groups at the radical center.

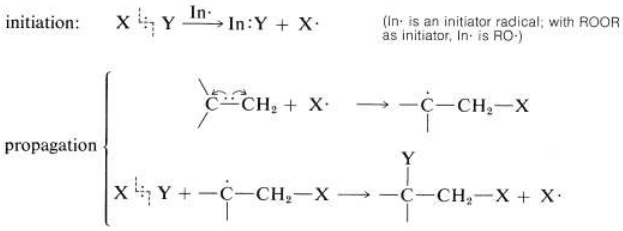
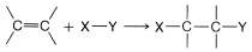
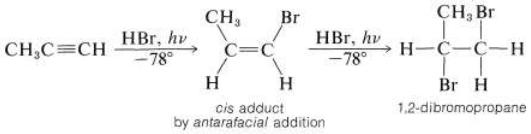


Table 10-3: *Reagents that add to Alkenes by Radical-Chain Mechanisms*



Reagent (X—Y)		Adduct	
Name	Structure	Name	Structure
hydrogen bromide	H—Br	bromoalkane	H—C—C—Br
bromine	Br—Br	dibromoalkane	Br—C—C—Br
polyhalomethanes	Cl—CCl_3	polyhaloalkanes	Cl—C—C—CCl_3
	Br—CCl_3		Br—C—C—CCl_3
	I—CF_3		I—C—C—CF_3
sulfonyl halides	Cl—SO_2R	halosulfones	Cl—C—C—SO_2R
alcohols			
methanol	H—CH_2OH	primary alcohol	H—C—C—CH_2OH
primary	H—CHROH	secondary alcohol	H—C—C—CHROH
secondary	H—CR_2OH	tertiary alcohol	H—C—C—CR_2OH
carboxylic acids	H—CR_2CO_2H	carboxylic acids	H—C—C—CR_2CO_2H
aldehydes	H—C(=O)R	ketones	H—C—C—C(=O)R
thiols	H—SR	thioethers	H—C—C—SR
amines	H—NR_2	alkylamines	H—C—C—NR_2
silanes	H—SiR_3	alkylsilanes	H—C—C—SiR_3
phosphines	H—PR_2	alkylphosphines	H—C—C—PR_2

The principles of radical addition reactions of alkenes appear to apply equally to alkynes, although there are fewer documented examples of radical additions to triple bonds. Two molecules of hydrogen bromide can add to propyne first to give *cis*-1-bromopropene (by antarafacial addition) and then 1,2-dibromopropane:



12.3.2: References

John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

This page titled 12.3: Radical-Chain Addition Reactions to Alkenes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by John D. Roberts and Marjorie C. Caserio.

- **10.8: Radical-Chain Addition Reactions to Alkenes** by John D. Roberts and Marjorie C. Caserio is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

13: Properties and Reactions of Alcohols

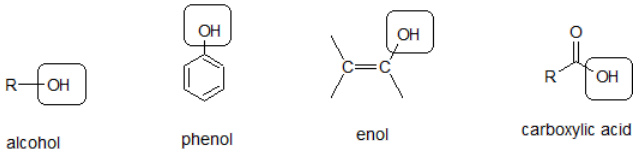
13.1: Introduction to Structure and Synthesis of Alcohols
13.2: Classification of Alcohols
13.3: Physical Properties of Alcohols
13.4: Spectroscopy of Alcohols
13.5: Synthesis of Alcohols - Review
13.6: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols
13.7: Reduction of the Carbonyl Group - Synthesis of 1º and 2º Alcohols
13.8: Organometallic Reagents
13.9: Organometallic Reagents in Alcohol Synthesis
13.10: Additional Exercises Part 1
13.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 1
13.12: Reactions of Alcohols with Hydrohalic Acids
13.13: Reactions with Phosphorus Halides and Thionyl Chloride
13.14: Dehydration Reactions of Alcohols
13.15: Oxidation States of Alcohols and Related Functional Groups
13.16: Oxidation Reactions of Alcohols
13.17: Protection of Alcohols
13.18: Additional Exercises Part 2
13.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 2

13: Properties and Reactions of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.1: Introduction to Structure and Synthesis of Alcohols

Introduction

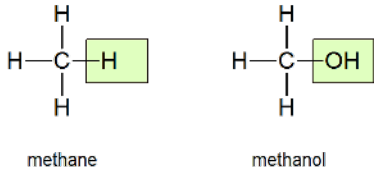
Alcohols, phenols, enols, and carboxylic acids all contain a hydroxyl group. However, the chemistry of these four different functional groups are different.



Alcohols

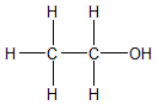
Molecules of alcohols contain one or more hydroxyl groups (OH groups) substituted for hydrogen atoms along the carbon chain.

The structure of the simplest alcohol, methanol (methyl alcohol), can be derived from that of methane by putting an OH in place of one of the H's:



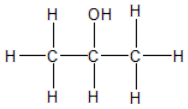
Methanol is also called wood alcohol because it can be obtained by heating wood in the absence of air, a process called **destructive distillation**. Methanol vapor given off when the wood is heated can be condensed to a liquid by cooling below its boiling point of 65°C. Methanol is highly toxic. In 1986, there were six deaths of residents of Peerless Lake, Alberta, brought about by drinking photocopier fluid which contained methanol (or methyl hydrate as it is often called in press reports). In 2000, more than 100 people died in El Salvador after black marketeers sold discarded liquor bottles that had been refilled with a methanol mixture. Indeed the problem has repeated itself globally and so often that in 2014 the World Health Organization released an information note warning of methanol poisoning outbreaks which "occur when methanol is added to illicitly- or informally-produced alcoholic drinks."

The second member of the alcohol family is ethanol (ethyl alcohol)— the substance we commonly call *alcohol*. Ethanol is also known as grain alcohol because it is obtained when grain or sugar ferments.



Fermentation refers to a chemical reaction which is speeded up by enzymes and occurs in the absence of air. (Enzymes, catalysts which occur naturally in yeasts and other living organisms, are discussed in more detail elsewhere.) Almost everyone is aware that the alcohol present in alcoholic beverages is ethanol (also called ethyl alcohol or grain alcohol). However, many people do not realize that in its pure state, or in solutions of high concentration, this substance is poisonous. In the laboratory one may find containers labeled "absolute ethanol," "95% ethanol" and "denatured ethanol." The acquisition of ethanol by laboratories, and its subsequent disposal, is carefully monitored by provincial authorities. On no account should one consider drinking laboratory ethanol, even after it has been diluted to a concentration equivalent to that found in beer. Denatured alcohol is ethanol to which appropriate quantities of poisonous or nauseating substances (such as methanol) have been added. Ethanol is used as a solvent, in some special fuels, in antifreeze, and to manufacture a number of other chemicals. You are probably most familiar with it as a component of alcoholic beverages. Ethanol makes up 3 to 6 percent of beer, 12 to 15 percent of most wines, and 49 to 59 percent of distilled liquor. (The "proof" of an alcoholic beverage is just twice the percentage of ethanol.) Alcohol's intoxicating effects are well known, and it is a mild depressant. Prolonged overuse can lead to liver damage.

A third commonly encountered alcohol, isopropyl alcohol (“rubbing alcohol” or 2-propanol), is also toxic. It has the ability to kill germs and has a temporary lubricating effect during the rubbing process. Unlike methanol, 2-propanol is not absorbed through the skin; therefore it poses less of a health hazard.

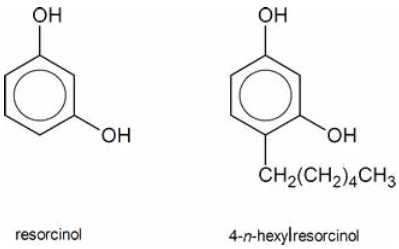


isopropanol

Phenols

A phenol is an organic compound in which a hydroxyl group is directly bonded to one of the carbon atoms of an aromatic ring. The chemical behavior of phenols is different in some respects from that of the alcohols, so it is sensible to treat them as a similar but characteristically distinct group.

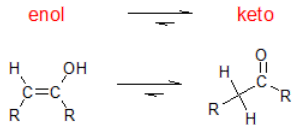
Until the late nineteenth century, a person undergoing surgery had to face the fact that he or she might suffer the consequences of what we now know to be bacterial infection, contracted during the course of the operation. The physicians of the time did not know that bacteria existed, and had no way to counter the problems that bacteria caused. In 1867, Joseph Lister, who had learned of the existence of bacteria as a result of research done by Louis Pasteur, began using solutions of phenol to clean wounds and surgical instruments. The phenol solution was an effective antiseptic, killing bacteria, and as a result, a patient’s chances of surviving surgery improved greatly. Phenol itself was rather strong for these purposes—it burns healthy tissue—and substitutes were eventually found. One such substitute, used today in throat lozenges and mouthwashes, is 4-*n*-hexylresorcinol.



resorcinol 4-*n*-hexylresorcinol

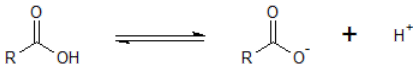
Enols

When a hydroxyl group is bonded to a vinyl carbon, the functional group is called an enol. As discussed in Chapter 10, alkyne hydration can result in enol formation. Enols undergo tautomerization to form ketones, In most cases, the keto-form is more stable and predominates the equilibrium. Phenol is an important exception to this trend.



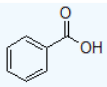
Carboxylic Acids

In carboxylic acids, the hydroxyl group is bonded to a carbonyl carbon. As the name implies, this functional group is acidic and can readily donate the proton on the hydroxyl group.



Exercise

1. Classify the following compounds as alcohols, phenols, enols, or carboxylic acids. One compound can be classified by two of the options.

a) 

b) 

c) 

Answer

1.

a) carboxylic acid

b) phenol and enol

c) alcohol

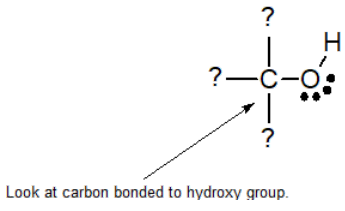
Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Ed Vitz (Kutztown University), John W. Moore (UW-Madison), Justin Shorb (Hope College), Xavier Prat-Resina (University of Minnesota Rochester), Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn.

13.1: Introduction to Structure and Synthesis of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.2: Classification of Alcohols

Alcohol classification is an application of the neutral bonding patterns for organic compounds. Oxygen can only form two bonds. The alcohol functional group requires that one of these bonds form with hydrogen to create the hydroxyl group and the other bond needs to be with carbon to create an alcohol. All of the oxygen atoms of all the alcohols look the same, so a different distinction is needed. To classify alcohols, we look at the carbon atom bonded to the hydroxyl group.



methyl alcohol = no (0) other carbon atoms (CH_3OH)

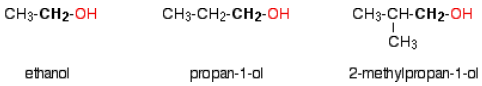
primary alcohols (1°) = 1 other carbon atoms

secondary alcohols (2°) = 2 other carbon atom

tertiary alcohols (3°) = 3 other carbon atoms

Primary alcohols

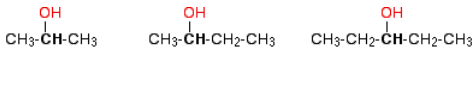
In a primary (1°) alcohol, the carbon which carries the -OH group is only attached to one alkyl group. Some examples of primary alcohols include:



Notice that it doesn't matter how complicated the attached alkyl group is. In each case there is only one linkage to an alkyl group from the CH_2 group holding the -OH group. There is an exception to this. Methanol, CH_3OH, is counted as a primary alcohol even though there are no alkyl groups attached to the carbon with the -OH group on it.

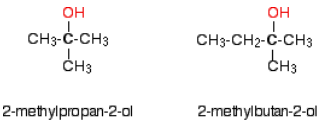
Secondary alcohols

In a secondary (2°) alcohol, the carbon with the -OH group attached is joined directly to two alkyl groups, which may be the same or different. Examples:



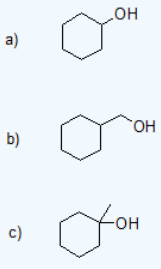
Tertiary alcohols

In a tertiary (3°) alcohol, the carbon atom holding the -OH group is attached directly to three alkyl groups, which may be any combination of same or different. Examples:



Exercise

2. Classify the following alcohols as primary, secondary, or tertiary.



Answer

2.

a) secondary

b) primary

c) tertiary

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

13.2: Classification of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

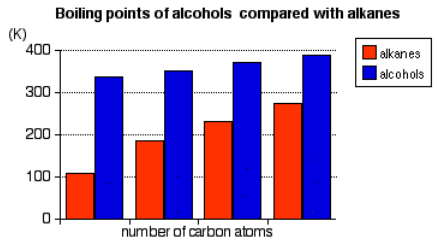
13.3: Physical Properties of Alcohols

Boiling Points

The chart below shows the boiling points of the following simple primary alcohols with up to 4 carbon atoms:

CH_3OH	CH_3CH_2OH	$CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$
methanol	ethanol	propan-1-ol	butan-1-ol

These boiling points are compared with those of the equivalent alkanes (methane to butane) with the same number of carbon atoms.



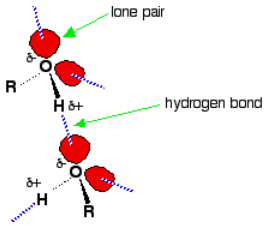
Notice that:

- The boiling points of the alcohols increase as the number of carbon atoms increases.

The patterns in boiling point reflect the patterns in intermolecular attractions.

Hydrogen bonding

Hydrogen bonding occurs between molecules in which a hydrogen atom is attached to a strongly electronegative element: fluorine, oxygen or nitrogen. In the case of alcohols, hydrogen bonds occur between the partially-positive hydrogen atoms and lone pairs on oxygen atoms of other molecules.



The hydrogen atoms are slightly positive because the bonding electrons are pulled toward the very electronegative oxygen atoms. In alkanes, the only intermolecular forces are van der Waals dispersion forces. Hydrogen bonds are much stronger than these, and therefore it takes more energy to separate alcohol molecules than it does to separate alkane molecules. This the main reason for higher boiling points in alcohols.

The effect of van der Waals forces

- **Comparison between alkanes and alcohols**: Even without any hydrogen bonding or dipole-dipole interactions, the boiling point of the alcohol would be higher than the corresponding alkane with the same number of carbon atoms.

Compare ethane and ethanol:

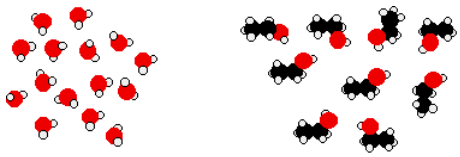


Ethanol is a longer molecule, and the oxygen atom brings with it an extra 8 electrons. Both of these increase the size of the van der Waals dispersion forces, and subsequently the boiling point. A more accurate measurement of the effect of the hydrogen bonding on boiling point would be a comparison of ethanol with propane rather than ethane. The lengths of the two molecules are more similar, and the number of electrons is exactly the same.

Solubility of alcohols in water

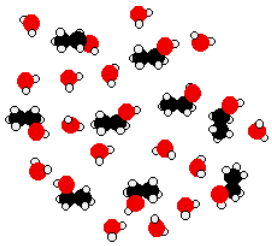
Small alcohols are completely soluble in water; mixing the two in any proportion generates a single solution. However, solubility decreases as the length of the hydrocarbon chain in the alcohol increases. At four carbon atoms and beyond, the decrease in solubility is noticeable; a two-layered substance may appear in a test tube when the two are mixed.

Consider ethanol as a typical small alcohol. In both pure water and pure ethanol the main intermolecular attractions are hydrogen bonds.



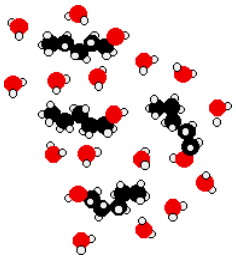
Both of these are held together mainly by hydrogen bonding.

In order to mix the two, the hydrogen bonds between water molecules and the hydrogen bonds between ethanol molecules must be broken. Energy is required for both of these processes. However, when the molecules are mixed, new hydrogen bonds are formed between water molecules and ethanol molecules.



New hydrogen bonds are set up between ethanol and water molecules.

The energy released when these new hydrogen bonds form approximately compensates for the energy needed to break the original interactions. In addition, there is an increase in the disorder of the system, an increase in entropy. This is another factor in deciding whether chemical processes occur. Consider a hypothetical situation involving 5-carbon alcohol molecules.

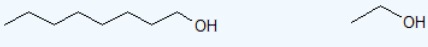


The hydrocarbon chains are forced between water molecules, breaking hydrogen bonds between those water molecules. The -OH ends of the alcohol molecules can form new hydrogen bonds with water molecules, but the hydrocarbon "tail" does not form hydrogen bonds. This means that many of the original hydrogen bonds being broken are never replaced by new ones.

In place of those original hydrogen bonds are merely van der Waals dispersion forces between the water and the hydrocarbon "tails." These attractions are much weaker, and unable to furnish enough energy to compensate for the broken hydrogen bonds. Even allowing for the increase in disorder, the process becomes less feasible. As the length of the alcohol increases, this situation becomes more pronounced, and thus the solubility decreases.

Exercise

Use 1-octanol and ethanol, shown below, to answer the following questions.



3. Which compound is more water soluble?

4. Which compound has the highest boiling point?

5. Explain why the answers above are not in conflict using your understanding of intermolecular forces, relative boiling points, and solubility.

Answer

3. ethanol

4. octanol

5. While both compounds exhibit H-bonding, the smaller, hydrophobic carbon chain of ethanol results in higher water solubility of ethanol while the longer carbon chain of octanol increases the surface area resulting in a higher boiling point.

Contributors

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

- John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

13.3: Physical Properties of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.4: Spectroscopy of Alcohols

Infrared Spectroscopy

If you look at an IR spectrum of 1-butanol, you will see:

- there are sp^3 C-H stretching and CH_2 bending modes at 2900 and 1500 cm^{-1}.
- there is a strong C-O stretching mode near 1000 cm^{-1}.
- there is a very large peak around 3400 cm^{-1}. O-H peaks are usually very broad like this one.

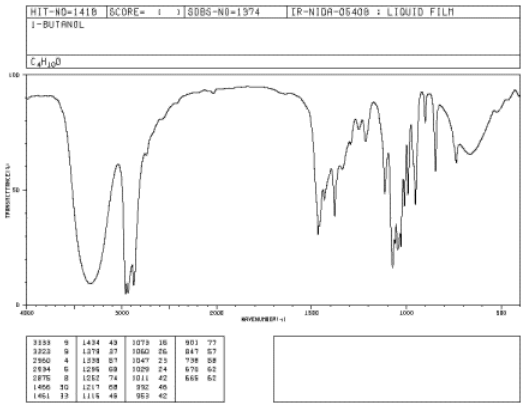


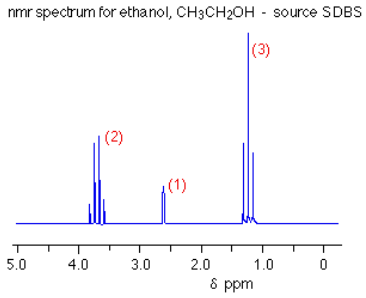
Figure IR8. IR spectrum of 1-butanol. Source: SDBSWeb : http://riodb01.ibase.aist.go.jp/sdbs/ (National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology of Japan, 14 July 2008)

Peak shapes are sometimes very useful in recognizing what kind of bond is present. The rounded shape of most O-H stretching modes occurs because of hydrogen bonding between different hydroxy groups. Because protons are shared to varying extent with neighboring oxygens, the covalent O-H bonds in a sample of alcohol all vibrate at slightly different frequencies and show up at slightly different positions in the IR spectrum. Instead of seeing one sharp peak, you see a whole lot of them all smeared out into one broad blob. Since C-H bonds don't hydrogen bond very well, you don't see that phenomenon in an ether, and an O-H peak is very easy to distinguish in the IR spectrum.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

Alcohols

Where is the -O-H peak? This is very confusing! Different sources quote totally different chemical shifts for the hydrogen atom in the -OH group in alcohols - often inconsistently. For example:



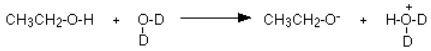
- The Nuffield Data Book quotes 2.0 - 4.0, but the Nuffield text book shows a peak at about 5.4.
- The OCR Data Sheet for use in their exams quotes 3.5 - 5.5.
- A reliable degree level organic chemistry text book quotes1.0 - 5.0, but then shows an NMR spectrum for ethanol with a peak at about 6.1.
- The SDBS database (used throughout this site) gives the -OH peak in ethanol at about 2.6.

The problem seems to be that the position of the -OH peak varies dramatically depending on the conditions - for example, what solvent is used, the concentration, and the purity of the alcohol - especially on whether or not it is totally dry.

A clever way of picking out the -OH peak

If you measure an NMR spectrum for an alcohol like ethanol, and then add a few drops of deuterium oxide, D_2O, to the solution, allow it to settle and then re-measure the spectrum, the -OH peak disappears! By comparing the two spectra, you can tell immediately which peak was due to the -OH group.

The reason for the loss of the peak lies in the interaction between the deuterium oxide and the alcohol. All alcohols, such as ethanol, are very, very slightly acidic. The hydrogen on the -OH group transfers to one of the lone pairs on the oxygen of the water molecule. The fact that here we've got "heavy water" makes no difference to that.



The negative ion formed is most likely to bump into a simple deuterium oxide molecule to regenerate the alcohol - except that now the -OH group has turned into an -OD group.

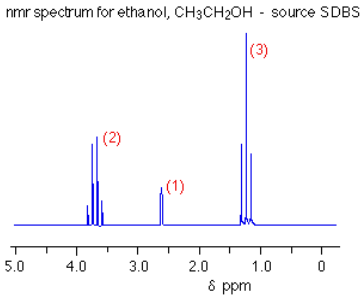


Deuterium atoms don't produce peaks in the same region of an NMR spectrum as ordinary hydrogen atoms, and so the peak disappears. You might wonder what happens to the positive ion in the first equation and the OD^- in the second one. These get lost into the normal equilibrium which exists wherever you have water molecules - heavy or otherwise.

$$2D_2O \rightleftharpoons D_3O^+ + OH^- \tag{13.4.1}$$

The lack of splitting with -OH groups

Unless the alcohol is absolutely free of any water, the hydrogen on the -OH group and any hydrogens on the next door carbon don't interact to produce any splitting. The -OH peak is a singlet and you don't have to worry about its effect on the next door hydrogens.



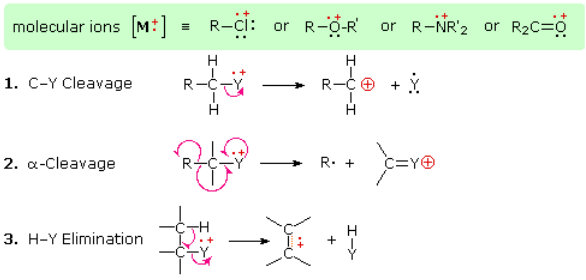
The left-hand cluster of peaks is due to the CH_2 group. It is a quartet because of the 3 hydrogens on the next door CH_3 group. You can ignore the effect of the -OH hydrogen. Similarly, the -OH peak in the middle of the spectrum is a singlet. It hasn't turned into a triplet because of the influence of the CH_2 group.

Mass Spectra Fragmentation Patterns

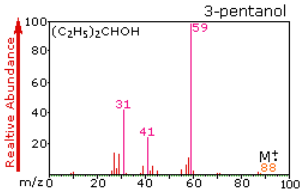
The fragmentation of molecular ions into an assortment of fragment ions is a mixed blessing. The nature of the fragments often provides a clue to the molecular structure, but if the molecular ion has a lifetime of less than a few microseconds it will not survive long enough to be observed. Without a molecular ion peak as a reference, the difficulty of interpreting a mass spectrum increases markedly. Fortunately, most organic compounds give mass spectra that include a molecular ion, and those that do not often respond successfully to the use of milder ionization conditions. Among simple organic compounds, the most stable molecular ions are those from aromatic rings, other conjugated pi-electron systems and cycloalkanes. Alcohols, ethers and highly branched alkanes generally show the greatest tendency toward fragmentation.

The presence of a functional group, particularly one having a heteroatom Y with non-bonding valence electrons (Y = N, O, S, X etc.), can dramatically alter the fragmentation pattern of a compound. This influence is thought to occur because of a "localization"

of the radical cation component of the molecular ion on the heteroatom. After all, it is easier to remove (ionize) a non-bonding electron than one that is part of a covalent bond. By localizing the reactive moiety, certain fragmentation processes will be favored. These are summarized in the following diagram, where the green shaded box at the top displays examples of such "localized" molecular ions. The first two fragmentation paths lead to even-electron ions, and the elimination (path #3) gives an odd-electron ion. Note the use of different curved arrows to show single electron shifts compared with electron pair shifts.

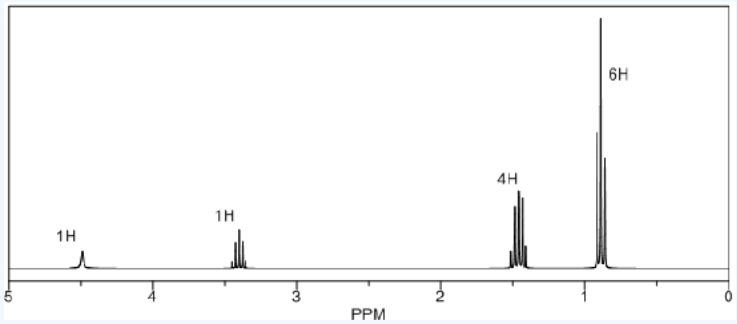


3-Pentanol shows three significant fragment ions. Alpha-fragmentation (loss of an ethyl radical) forms the m/z=59 base peak. Loss of water from this gives a m/z=41 fragment, and loss of ethene from m/z=59 gives a m/z=31 fragment.



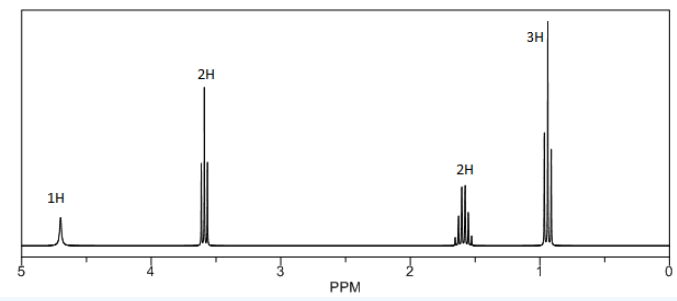
Exercise

6. From mass spectroscopy analysis it was determined that a compound has the general formula $C_5H_{12}O$. Given the following ^1H NMR spectrum, draw the structure. The integration values of each group of signals is given on the spectrum.



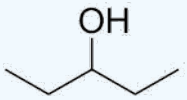
7. Given that alcohols are relatively acidic and the protons transfer in solution, what would you expect to happen to the NMR spectrum if D_2O was used as a solvent.

8. From mass spectroscopy analysis it was determined that a compound has the general formula $C3H_8O$. Given the following ^1H NMR spectrum, draw the structure. The integration values of each group of signals is given on the spectrum.



Answer

6.



7.

The alcohol proton signal's intensity in the ^{1}H NMR would be expected to diminish and likely disappear. This is due to the fact that NMR can only probe the spin changes of nuclei with an odd number of protons.

8.

1-propanol 

Contributors and Attributions

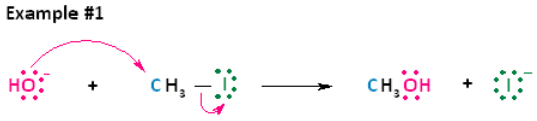
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

13.4: Spectroscopy of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.5: Synthesis of Alcohols - Review

Alcohols are prepared by S_N2 & S_N1 (solvolysis) reactions

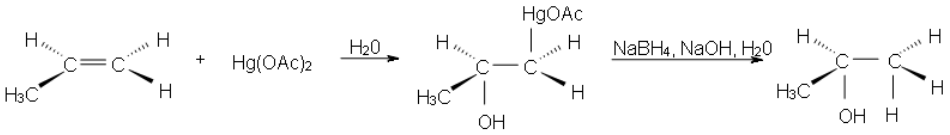
Alkyl halides can be converted to alcohols by using S_N2 reactions with OH^- as a nucleophile. Substrates that undergo substitution by SN1 reaction can be converted to alcohols using water as the nucleophile (and it can even be the solvent). Recall that S_N1 reactions are promoted in polar, protic solvents.



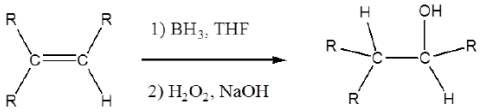
Alcohols from alkenes

Oxymercuration is a special electrophilic addition. It is anti-stereospecific and regioselective. Regioselectivity is a process in which the substituents choses one direction it prefers to be attached to over all the other possible directions. The good thing about this reaction is that there are no carbocation rearrangement due to stabilization of the reactive intermediate. Similar stabilization is also seen in bromination addition to alkenes.

Carbocation rearrangement is a process in which the carbocation intermediate can form a more stable ion. With carbocation rearrangement, the reaction would not be able to hydrate quickly under mild conditions and be produced in high yields. This reaction is very fast and proceeds with 90% yield.

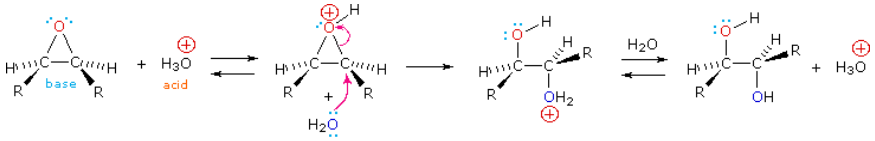


Hydroboration-Oxidation is a two step pathway used to produce alcohols. The reaction proceeds in an Anti-Markovnikov manner, where the hydrogen (from BH_3 or BHR_2) attaches to the more substituted carbon and the boron attaches to the least substituted carbon in the alkene bouble bond. Furthermore, the borane acts as a lewis acid by accepting two electrons in its empty p orbital from an alkene that is electron rich. This process allows boron to have an electron octet. A very interesting characteristic of this process is that it does not require any activation by a catalyst. The Hydroboration mechanism has the elements of both hydrogenation and electrophilic addition and it is a stereospecific (***syn addition),*** meaning that the hydroboration takes place on the same face of the double bond, this leads ***cis*** stereochemistry.

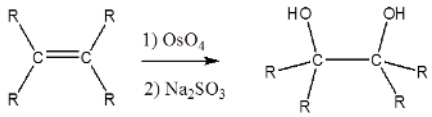


Diols from alkenes

Epoxides may be cleaved by aqueous acid to give glycols that are often diastereomeric with those prepared by the syn-hydroxylation reaction described above. Proton transfer from the acid catalyst generates the conjugate acid of the epoxide, which is attacked by nucleophiles such as water in the same way that the cyclic bromonium ion described above undergoes reaction. The result is **anti-hydroxylation** of the double bond, in contrast to the syn-stereoselectivity of the earlier method. In the following equation this procedure is illustrated for a cis-disubstituted epoxide, which, of course, could be prepared from the corresponding cis-alkene. This hydration of an epoxide does not change the oxidation state of any atoms or groups.



Osmium tetroxide oxidizes alkenes to give glycols through syn addition. A glycol, also known as a vicinal diol, is a compound with two -OH groups on adjacent carbons.



The reaction with OsO_4 is a concerted process that has a cyclic intermediate and no rearrangements. Vicinal syn dihydroxylation complements the epoxide-hydrolysis sequence which constitutes an *anti* dihydroxylation of an alkene. When an alkene reacts with osmium tetroxide, stereocenters can form in the glycol product. Cis alkenes give meso products and trans alkenes give racemic mixtures.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

13.5: Synthesis of Alcohols - Review is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.6: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols

Overview - Aqueous vs Organic Solvents

In aqueous solutions, phenols are weakly acidic and lower the pH of a solution. Sodium hydroxide can be used to fully deprotonate a phenol. Water soluble alcohols do not change the pH of the solution and are considered neutral. Aqueous solutions of sodium hydroxide can NOT deprotonate alcohols to a high enough concentration to be synthetically useful.

In solutions of organic solvents, more extreme reaction conditions can be created. Sodium metal can be added to an alcohol in an organic solvent system to fully deprotonate the alcohol to form alkoxide ions.

Acidity of Alcohols

Several important chemical reactions of alcohols involving the O-H bond or oxygen-hydrogen bond only and leave the carbon-oxygen bond intact. An important example is salt formation with acids and bases. Alcohols, like water, are both weak bases and weak acids. The acid ionization constant (Ka) of ethanol is about 10~18, slightly less than that of water. Ethanol can be converted to its conjugate base by the conjugate base of a weaker acid such as ammonia {Ka — 10~35), or hydrogen (Ka ~ 10-38). It is convenient to employ sodium metal or sodium hydride, which react vigorously but controllably with alcohols:

$$C_2H_5OH + Na^{\oplus}NH_2^{\ominus} \rightleftharpoons C_2H_5O^{\ominus}Na^{\oplus} + NH_3$$

sodium amide (sodamide) — sodium ethoxide

$$2C_2H_5OH + 2Na \longrightarrow 2C_2H_5O^{\ominus}Na^{\oplus} + H_2$$

$$C_2H_5OH + Na^{\oplus}H^{\ominus} \longrightarrow C_2H_5O^{\ominus}Na^{\oplus} + H_2$$

The order of acidity of various liquid alcohols generally is water > primary > secondary > tertiary ROH. By this we mean that the equilibrium position for the proton-transfer reaction lies more on the side of ROH as R is changed from primary to secondary to tertiary; therefore, tert-butyl alcohol is considered less acidic than ethanol:

$$ROH + OH^- \rightleftharpoons RO^- + HOH \tag{13.6.1}$$

However, in the gas phase the order of acidity is reversed, and the equilibrium position for lies increasingly on the side of the alkoxide as R is changed from primary to secondary to tertiary, tert-butyl alcohol is therefore more acidic than ethanol in the gas phase. This seeming contradiction appears more reasonable when one considers what effect solvation (or the lack of it) has on equilibria. In solution, the larger alkoxide ions, probably are less well solvated than the smaller ions, because fewer solvent molecules can be accommodated around the negatively charged oxygen in the larger ions:

$CH_3O^{\ominus}$ methoxide — $C_2H_5O^{\ominus}$ ethoxide — $(CH_3)_2CHO^{\ominus}$ isopropoxide — $(CH_3)_3CO^{\ominus}$ *tert*-butoxide

Acidity of alcohols therefore decreases as the size of the conjugate base increases. However, “naked” gaseous ions are more stable the larger the associated R groups, probably because the larger R groups can stabilize the charge on the oxygen atom better than the smaller R groups. They do this by polarization of their bonding electrons, and the bigger the group, the more polarizable it is.

Basicity of Alcohols

Alcohols are bases similar in strength to water and accept protons from strong acids. An example is the reaction of methanol with hydrogen bromide to give methyloxonium bromide, which is analogous to the formation of hydroxonium bromide with hydrogen bromide and water:

$$CH_3\ddot{O}H + HBr \rightleftharpoons CH_3\overset{H}{\ddot{O}}H^{\oplus} + Br^{\ominus}$$

methyloxonium bromide

$$H\ddot{O}H + HBr \rightleftharpoons H\overset{H}{\ddot{O}}H^{\oplus} + Br^{\ominus}$$

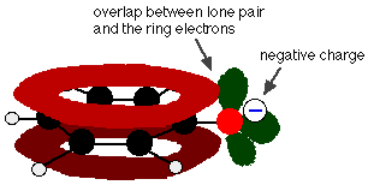
hydroxonium bromide

Acidity of Phenol

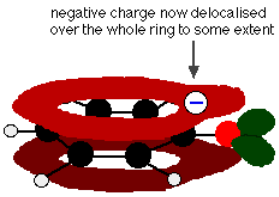
Compounds like alcohols and phenol which contain an -OH group attached to a hydrocarbon are very weak acids. Alcohols are so weakly acidic that, for normal lab purposes, their acidity can be virtually ignored. However, phenol is sufficiently acidic for it to have recognizably acidic properties - even if it is still a very weak acid. A hydrogen ion can break away from the -OH group and transfer to a base. For example, in solution in water:



Phenol is a very weak acid and the position of equilibrium lies well to the left. Phenol can lose a hydrogen ion because the phenoxide ion formed is stabilised to some extent. The negative charge on the oxygen atom is delocalised around the ring. The more stable the ion is, the more likely it is to form. One of the lone pairs on the oxygen atom overlaps with the delocalised electrons on the benzene ring.



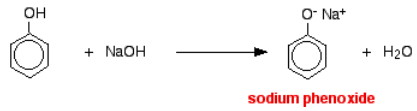
This overlap leads to a delocalization which extends from the ring out over the oxygen atom. As a result, the negative charge is no longer entirely localized on the oxygen, but is spread out around the whole ion.



Spreading the charge around makes the ion more stable than it would be if all the charge remained on the oxygen. However, oxygen is the most electronegative element in the ion and the delocalized electrons will be drawn towards it. That means that there will still be a lot of charge around the oxygen which will tend to attract the hydrogen ion back again. That is why phenol is only a very weak acid.

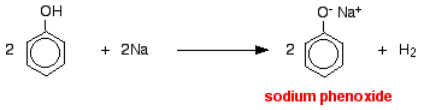
Why is phenol a much stronger acid than cyclohexanol? To answer this question we must evaluate the manner in which an oxygen substituent interacts with the benzene ring. As noted in our earlier treatment of electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions, an oxygen substituent enhances the reactivity of the ring and favors electrophile attack at ortho and para sites. It was proposed that resonance delocalization of an oxygen non-bonded electron pair into the pi-electron system of the aromatic ring was responsible for this substituent effect. A similar set of resonance structures for the phenolate anion conjugate base appears below the phenol structures.

The resonance stabilization in these two cases is very different. An important principle of resonance is that charge separation diminishes the importance of canonical contributors to the resonance hybrid and reduces the overall stabilization. The contributing structures to the phenol hybrid all suffer charge separation, resulting in very modest stabilization of this compound. On the other hand, the phenolate anion is already charged, and the canonical contributors act to disperse the charge, resulting in a substantial stabilization of this species. The conjugate bases of simple alcohols are not stabilized by charge delocalization, so the acidity of these compounds is similar to that of water. An energy diagram showing the effect of resonance on cyclohexanol and phenol acidities is shown on the right. Since the resonance stabilization of the phenolate conjugate base is much greater than the stabilization of phenol itself, the acidity of phenol relative to cyclohexanol is increased. Supporting evidence that the phenolate negative charge is delocalized on the ortho and para carbons of the benzene ring comes from the influence of electron-withdrawing substituents at those sites.



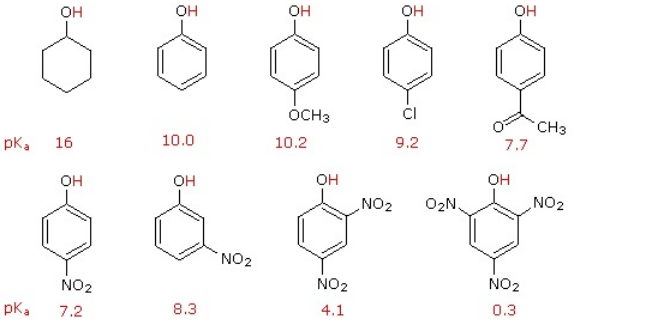
In this reaction, the hydrogen ion has been removed by the strongly basic hydroxide ion in the sodium hydroxide solution.

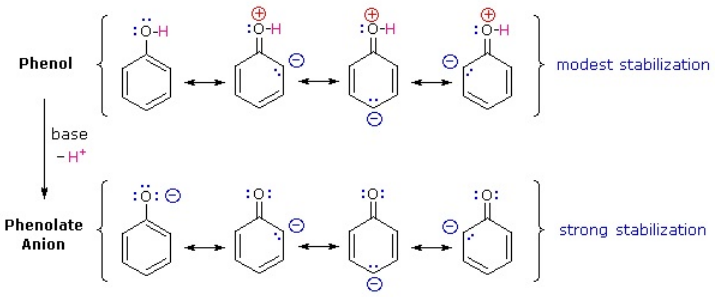
Acids react with the more reactive metals to give hydrogen gas. Phenol is no exception - the only difference is the slow reaction because phenol is such a weak acid. Phenol is warmed in a dry tube until it is molten, and a small piece of sodium added. There is some fizzing as hydrogen gas is given off. The mixture left in the tube will contain sodium phenoxide.

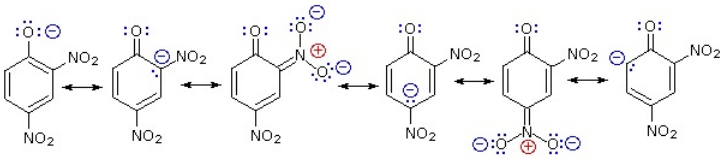


Acidity of Substituted Phenols

Substitution of the hydroxyl hydrogen atom is even more facile with phenols, which are roughly a million times more acidic than equivalent alcohols. This phenolic acidity is further enhanced by electron-withdrawing substituents ortho and para to the hydroxyl group, as displayed in the following diagram. The alcohol cyclohexanol is shown for reference at the top left. It is noteworthy that the influence of a nitro substituent is over ten times stronger in the para-location than it is meta, despite the fact that the latter position is closer to the hydroxyl group. Furthermore additional nitro groups have an additive influence if they are positioned in ortho or para locations. The trinitro compound shown at the lower right is a very strong acid called picric acid.





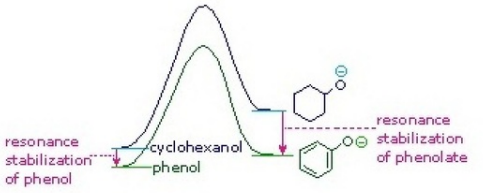


Resonance Stabilization of Phenolate by *ortho* and *para* Nitro Substituents

Comparing the Acidity of Alcohols with Phenols

Why is phenol a much stronger acid than cyclohexanol? To answer this question we must evaluate the manner in which an oxygen substituent interacts with the benzene ring. As noted in our earlier treatment of electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions, an

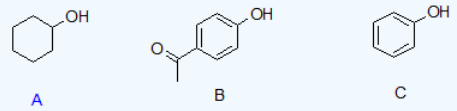
oxygen substituent enhances the reactivity of the ring and favors electrophile attack at ortho and para sites. It was proposed that resonance delocalization of an oxygen non-bonded electron pair into the pi-electron system of the aromatic ring was responsible for this substituent effect. Formulas illustrating this electron delocalization will be displayed when the "Resonance Structures" button beneath the previous diagram is clicked. A similar set of resonance structures for the phenolate anion conjugate base appears below the phenol structures.



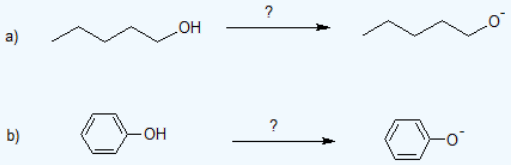
The resonance stabilization in these two cases is very different. An important principle of resonance is that charge separation diminishes the importance of canonical contributors to the resonance hybrid and reduces the overall stabilization. The contributing structures to the phenol hybrid all suffer charge separation, resulting in very modest stabilization of this compound. On the other hand, the phenolate anion is already charged, and the canonical contributors act to disperse the charge, resulting in a substantial stabilization of this species. The conjugate bases of simple alcohols are not stabilized by charge delocalization, so the acidity of these compounds is similar to that of water. An energy diagram showing the effect of resonance on cyclohexanol and phenol acidities is shown on the right. Since the resonance stabilization of the phenolate conjugate base is much greater than the stabilization of phenol itself, the acidity of phenol relative to cyclohexanol is increased. Supporting evidence that the phenolate negative charge is delocalized on the ortho and para carbons of the benzene ring comes from the influence of electron-withdrawing substituents at those sites.

Exercise

9. Arrange the following compounds in order of decreasing acidity when they are in solution.



10. Specify the base needed to deprotonate each reactant.



Answer

9. B > C > A

10. a) Na or NaH or NNH_2

b) NaOH or KOH or LiOH

Contributors

- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

John D. Robert and Marjorie C. Caserio (1977) *Basic Principles of Organic Chemistry, second edition.* W. A. Benjamin, Inc. , Menlo Park, CA. ISBN 0-8053-8329-8. This content is copyrighted under the following conditions, "You are granted permission

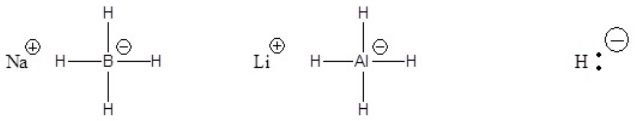
for individual, educational, research and non-commercial reproduction, distribution, display and performance of this work in any format."

13.6: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.7: Reduction of the Carbonyl Group - Synthesis of 1º and 2º Alcohols

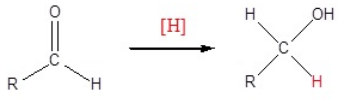
Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones

The most common sources of the hydride nucleophile are lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$) and sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$). Note! The hydride anion is not present during this reaction; rather, these reagents serve as a source of hydride due to the presence of a polar metal-hydrogen bond. Because aluminum is less electronegative than boron, the Al-H bond in $LiAlH_4$ is more polar, thereby, making $LiAlH_4$ a stronger reducing agent.

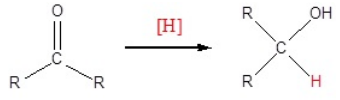


Sodium Borohydride **Lithium Aluminum Hydride** **Hydride Nucleophile**

Addition of a hydride anion ($H:^-$) to an aldehyde or ketone gives an alkoxide anion, which upon protonation yields the corresponding alcohol. Aldehydes produce 1º-alcohols and ketones produce 2º-alcohols.



Aldehyde **1° Alcohol**

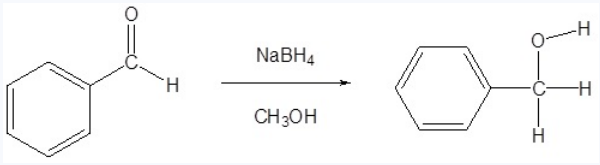


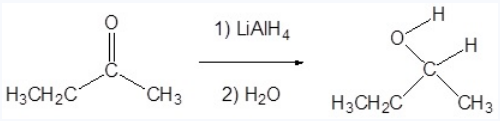
Ketone **2° Alcohol**

In metal hydrides reductions the resulting alkoxide salts are insoluble and need to be hydrolyzed (with care) before the alcohol product can be isolated. In the sodium borohydride reduction the methanol solvent system achieves this hydrolysis automatically. In the lithium aluminum hydride reduction water is usually added in a second step. The lithium, sodium, boron and aluminum end up as soluble inorganic salts at the end of either reaction. Note! $LiAlH_4$ and $NaBH_4$ are both capable of reducing aldehydes and ketones to the corresponding alcohol.

Formally, that process is referred to as a reduction. Reduction generally means a reaction in which electrons are added to a compound; the compound that gains electrons is said to be reduced. Because hydride can be thought of as a proton plus two electrons, we can think of conversion of a ketone or an aldehyde to an alcohol as a two-electron reduction. A carbonyl (aldehyde or ketone) plus two electrons and two protons becomes an alcohol.

Example 1

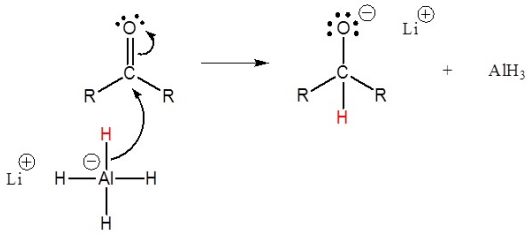




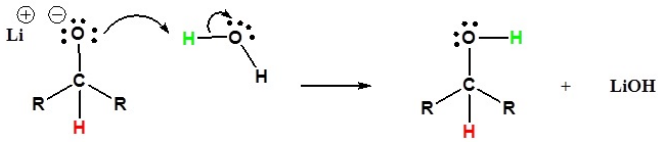
Mechanism

This mechanism is for a $LiAlH_4$ reduction. The mechanism for a $NaBH_4$ reduction is the same except methanol is the proton source used in the second step.

1) Nucleopilic hydride anion reacts with the electrophilic carbonyl carbon forcing the pi electrons onto the electronegative oxygen atom.



2) The alkoxide is protonated.



Biological Reduction

Addition to a carbonyl by a semi-anionic hydride, such as $NaBH_4$, results in conversion of the carbonyl compound to an alcohol. The hydride from the BH_4^- anion acts as a nucleophile, adding H^- to the carbonyl carbon. A proton source can then protonate the oxygen of the resulting alkoxide ion, forming an alcohol.

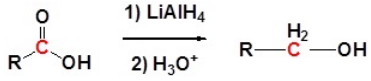
CONADH2.png

Aldehydes, ketones and alcohols are very common features in biological molecules. Converting between these compounds is a frequent event in many biological pathways. However, semi-anionic compounds like sodium borohydride don't exist in the cell. Instead, a number of biological hydride donors play a similar role.

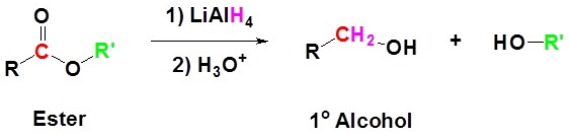
NADH is a common biological reducing agent. NADH is an acronym for nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide hydride. Insetad of an anionic donor that provides a hydride to a carbonyl, NADH is actually a neutral donor. It supplies a hydride to the carbonyl under very specific circumstances. In doing so, it forms a cation, NAD^+. However, NAD^+ is stabilized by the fact that its nicotinamide ring is aromatic; it was not aromatic in NADH.

Reduction of Carboxylic Acids and Esters

Carboxylic acids can be converted to 1° alcohols using Lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$). Note that $NaBH_4$ is not strong enough to convert carboxylic acids or esters to alcohols. An aldehyde is produced as an intermediate during this reaction, but it cannot be isolated because it is more reactive than the original carboxylic acid.



Esters can be converted to 1° alcohols using $LiAlH_4$, while sodium borohydride (***$NaBH_4$***) is not a strong enough reducing agent to perform this reaction.



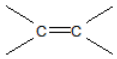
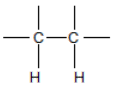
Ester

1° Alcohol

Reduction Reaction Summary

The table below summarize the reduction reactions covered so far in our text. It is important to distinguish between functional group reactivity as we add more multiple-step synthetic pathways.

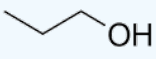
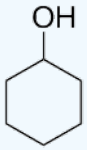
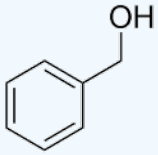
Reduction Reaction Summary

Reactant	Reduction Product with Specified Reagents: H_2 with Pt, Pd or Ni	1) $NaBH_4$ 2) H_3O^+	1) $LiAlH_4$ 2) H_3O^+
	$RCH_2—OH$	$RCH_2—OH$	$RCH_2—OH$
	$RCH_2—OH$	$RCH_2—OH$	$RCH_2—OH$
	$RCH_2—OH$	$RCH_2—OH$	$RCH_2—OH$
	no rxn	no rxn	$RCH_2—OH$
	no rxn	no rxn	

Exercise

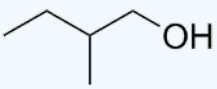
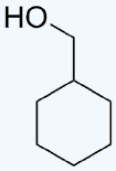
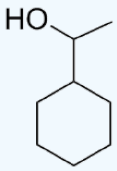
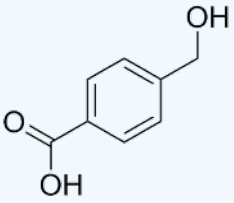
11.

Give the aldehyde, ketone, or carboxyllic acid (there can be multiple answers) that could be reduced to form the following alcohols.

(a)  (b)  (c)  (d) 

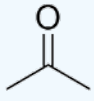
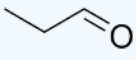
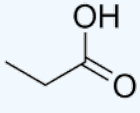
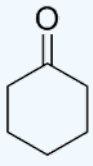
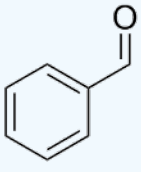
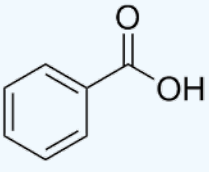
12.

Given the following alcohol, draw the structure from which it could be derived using only $NaBH_4$

(a)  (b)  (c)  (d) 

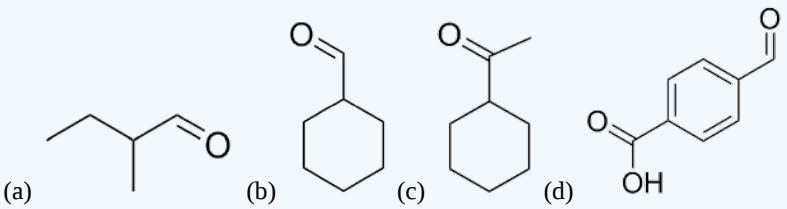
Answer

11.

(a)  (b)  or  (c)  (d)  or 

12.

Note, $NaBH_4$ is only a strong enough reducing agent to reduce ketones and aldehydes.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Chris P Schaller, Ph.D., (College of Saint Benedict / Saint John's University)

13.7: Reduction of the Carbonyl Group - Synthesis of 1º and 2º Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.8: Organometallic Reagents

Introduction

A Grignard reagent has a formula **RMgX** where **X** is a halogen, and **R** is an alkyl or aryl (based on a benzene ring) group. For the purposes of this page, we shall take R to be an alkyl group. A typical Grignard reagent might be $\mathbf{CH_3CH_2MgBr}$. Organolithium reagents have the chemical formula RLi. A typical reagent might be $\mathbf{CH_3CH_2Li}$.

Formation of Organometallic Reagents

Many organometallic reagents are commercially available, however, it is often necessary to make then. The following equations illustrate these reactions for the commonly used metals lithium and magnesium (R may be hydrogen or alkyl groups in any combination).

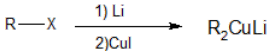
- **An Alkyl Lithium Reagent**

$$\mathbf{R_3C{-}X + 2\,Li \rightarrow R_3C{-}Li + LiX} \tag{13.8.1}$$

- **A Grignard Reagent**

$$\mathbf{R_3C{-}X + Mg \rightarrow R_3C{-}MgX} \tag{13.8.2}$$

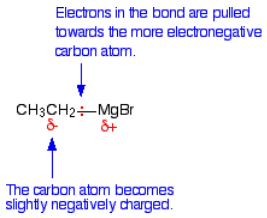
- **An Organocuprate Reagent**



Halide reactivity in these reactions increases in the order: Cl < Br < I and Fluorides are usually not used. The alkyl magnesium halides described in the second reaction are called Grignard Reagents after the French chemist, Victor Grignard, who discovered them and received the Nobel prize in 1912 for this work. The other metals mentioned above react in a similar manner, but Grignard and Alky Lithium Reagents most widely used. Although the formulas drawn here for the alkyl lithium and Grignard reagents reflect the stoichiometry of the reactions and are widely used in the chemical literature, they do not accurately depict the structural nature of these remarkable substances. Mixtures of polymeric and other associated and complexed species are in equilibrium under the conditions normally used for their preparation. Organocuprate reagents have limited reactivity and will be used for ketone synthesis.

Organometallic Reagents are Strong Nucleophiles

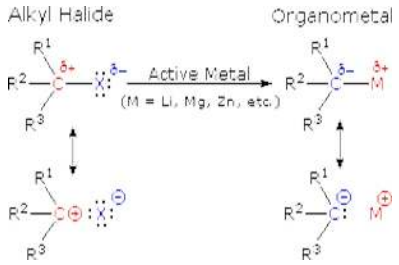
The bond between the carbon atom and the metal atom is polar. Therefore, organometallic reagents are strong nucleophiles. Using the Grignard reagent as an example, the carbon is more electronegative than magnesium, so the bonding pair of electrons is pulled towards the carbon creating a partial negative charge. Grignard reagents are strong nucleophiles. Nucleophilic carbon atoms are very useful in building carbon chains in multiple step systhesis.



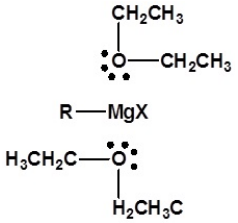
Grignard reactions create the possibility for substitution reactions at vinylic carbons. This reaction pathway is very useful since vinyl halides cannot react by the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms.

Organometallic Reagents and Protic Solvents (like water)

Everything **must** be perfectly dry because organometallic reagents react with water (see below) or any protic solvent. Reactions using the Grignard reagent must use an ether as the solvent. Organolithium reactions also require aprotic solvents, but ethers are not required and alkanes can be used as solvents. The resulting reaction mixture is used directly for the next reaction. There are no separation and isolation procedures between reaction steps. Organometallic reagents react with water or any protic solvent to produce alkanes. For this reason, everything has to be **very dry** during the preparation above. The term **dry** means that no water or other protonated solvents are present. There is still a **liquid** ether solvent.

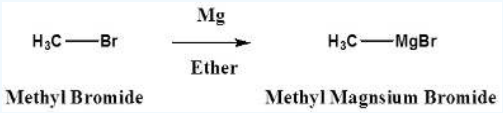


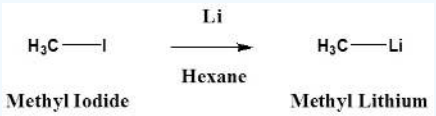
A suitable solvent must be used. For alkyl lithium formation pentane or hexane are usually used. Diethyl ether can also be used but the subsequent alkyl lithium reagent must be used immediately after preparation due to an interaction with the solvent. Ethyl ether or THF are essential for Grignard reagent formation. Lone pair electrons from two ether molecules form a complex with the magnesium in the Grignard reagent (As pictured below). This complex helps stabilize the organometallic and increases its ability to react.



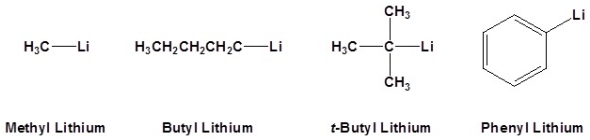
These reactions are obviously substitution reactions, but they cannot be classified as nucleophilic substitutions, as were the earlier reactions of alkyl halides. Because the functional carbon atom has been reduced, the polarity of the resulting functional group is inverted (an originally electrophilic carbon becomes nucleophilic). This change, shown below, makes alkyl lithium and Grignard reagents excellent nucleophiles and useful reactants in synthesis.

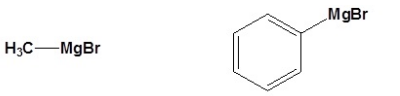
Example:





Common Organometallic Reagents



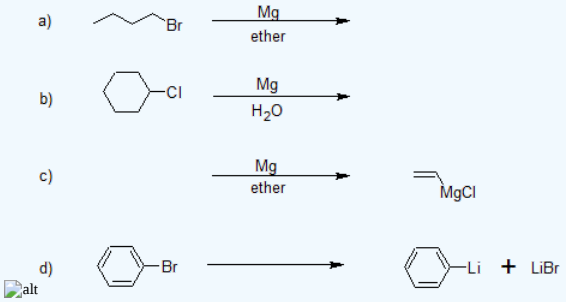


Methyl Magnesium Bromide Phenylmagnesium Bromide

Exercises

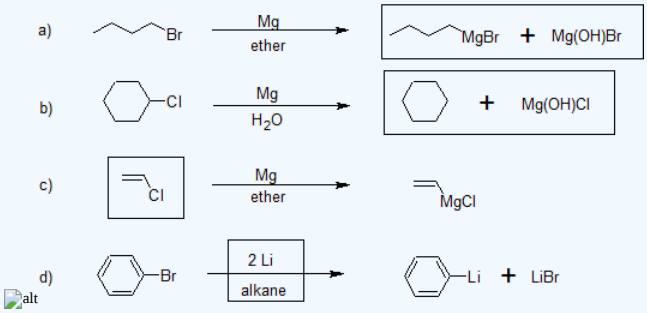
13.

Predict the product or specify the missing regent(s) in the reactions below.



Answer

13.

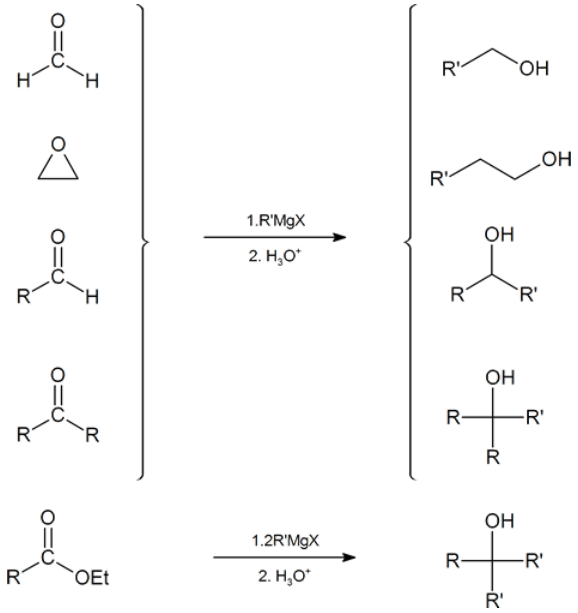


13.8: Organometallic Reagents is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.9: Organometallic Reagents in Alcohol Synthesis

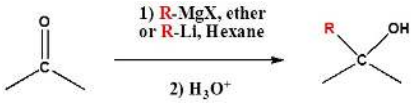
Introduction

The nucleophilic carbon atoms of organometallic reagents react with the electrophilic carbon atoms of aldehydes, ketones, acyl halides, esters, and epoxides to build larger carbon chains. In the process, an alcohol is formed. The ability to build larger organic molecules is an important and useful skill for multi-step synthesis. These various reaction pathways are summarized below showing the Grignard reagent.



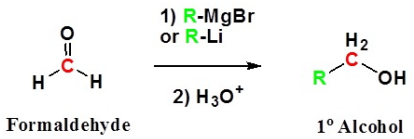
Organometallic Reactions with Aldehydes and Ketones

Because organometallic reagents react as their corresponding carbanion, they are excellent nucleophiles. The basic reaction involves the nucleophilic reaction of the carbanionic carbon in the organometallic reagent with the electrophilic carbon in the carbonyl to form alcohols.

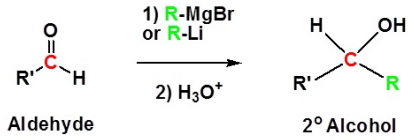


Both Grignard and Organolithium Reagents will perform these reactions.

Addition to formaldehyde gives 1° alcohols.



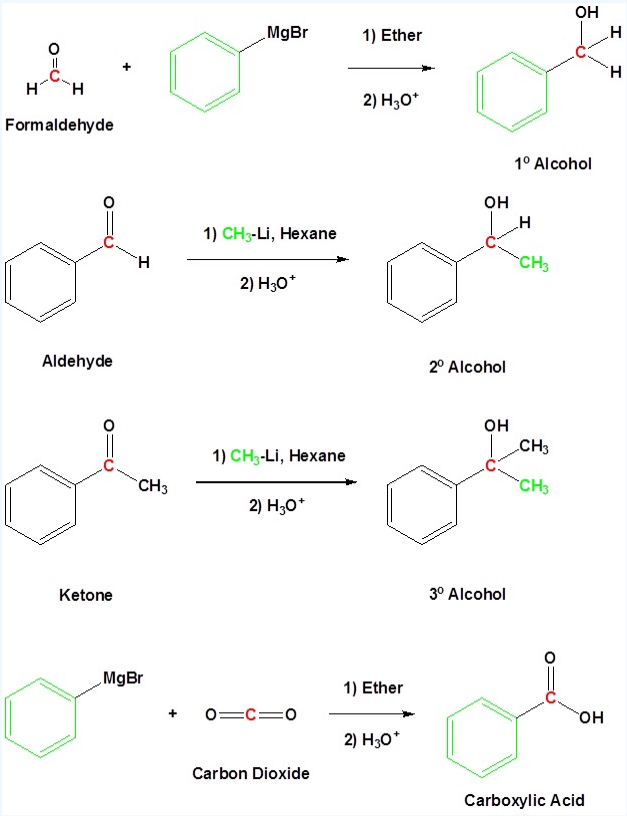
Addition to aldehydes gives 2° alcohols.



Addition to ketones gives 3° alcohols



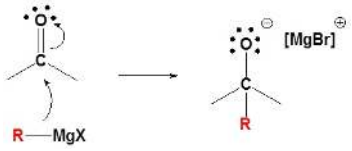
Examples



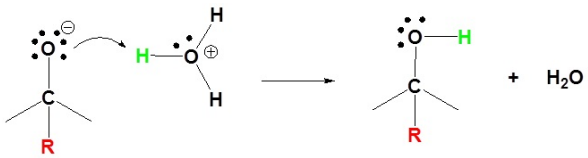
Mechanism for the Addition to Carbonyls

The mechanism for a Grignard agent is shown. The mechanism for an organolithium reagent is the same.

1) Nucleophilic reaction

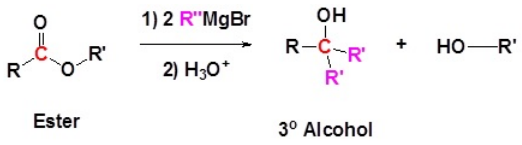


2) Protonation



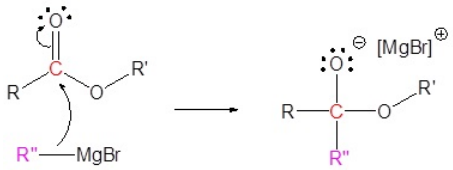
Grignard reagents convert esters to 3° alcohols

After the first Grignard reaction, the carbonyl reforms creating a ketones which can then react with the Grignard. In effect, the Grignard reagent adds twice.

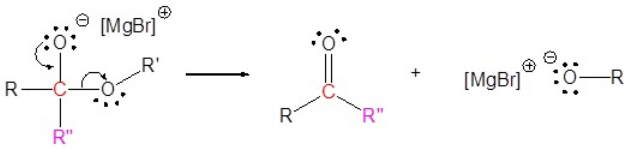


Mechanism

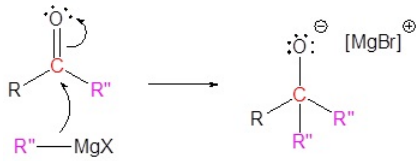
1) Nucleophilic reaction



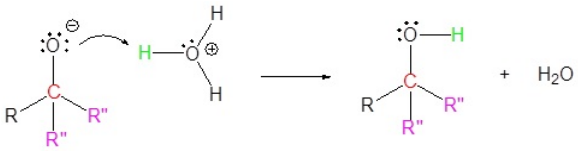
2) Carbonyl reforms with leaving group removal



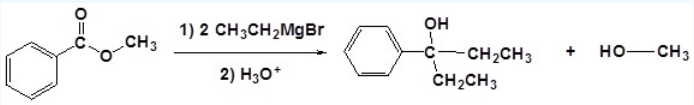
3) Nucleophilic reaction



4) Protonation

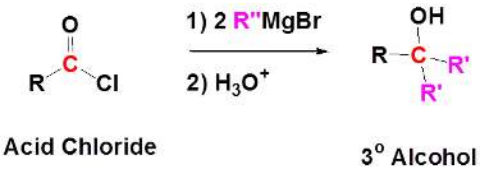


Example

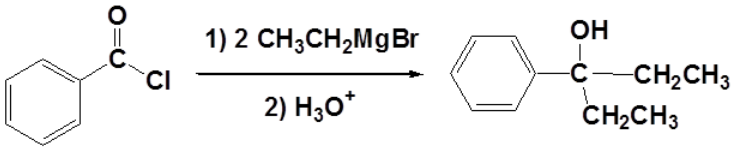


Grignard reagents convert Acyl Halides to 3° alcohols

Grignard reagents react with acyl halides similar to the reaction with esters. The first reaction produces a ketone which them undergoes a second reaction to form a tertiary alcohol following the analogous mechanism shown above for esters.

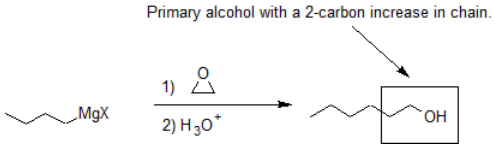


The reaction of benzoyl chloride with a Grignard reagent is shown below as an example.

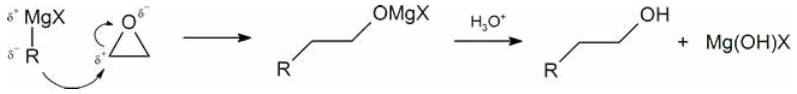


Grignard Reactions with Epoxides

Another important route for producing an alcohol from a Grignard reagent involves the reaction of the Grignard reagent with ethylene oxide to produce a primary alcohol containing two more carbon atoms than the original Grignard reagent.

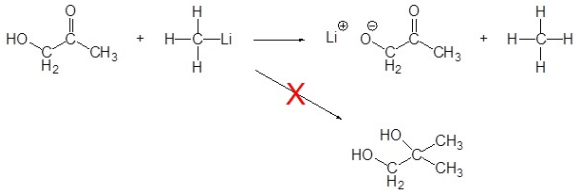


The first step of the mechanism is shown below. With the second step following the protonation step common to the other reaction pathways studied in this section.



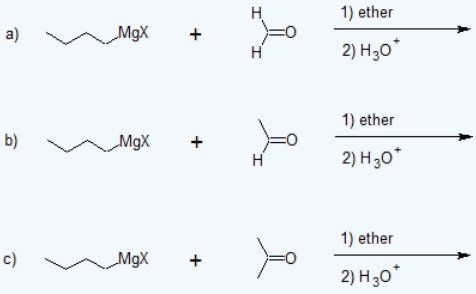
Limitation of Organometallic Reagents

As discussed above, Grignard and organolithium reagents are powerful bases. Because of this they cannot be used as nucleophiles on compounds which contain acidic hydrogens. If they are used they will act as a base and deprotonate the acidic hydrogen rather than act as a nucleophile and attack the carbonyl. A partial list of functional groups which cannot be used are: alcohols, amides, 1º amines, 2º amines, carboxylic acids, and terminal alkynes.

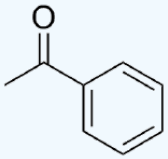


Exercises

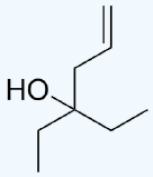
14. Predict the products of the reactions below.

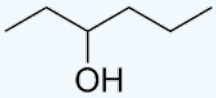


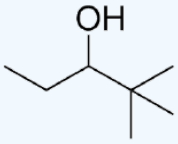
15. If allylmagnesium chloride were added to a solution of the following compound and then worked-up with acid, the product would contain a chiral center. Would the product be a racemic mixture or an enatiomerically pure product? Draw both enantiomers.

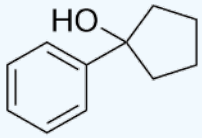


16. What combination of carbonyl compound and grignard (use MgBr) reagent would yield the following alcohols (after workup)?

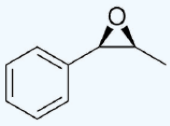
(a) 

(b) 

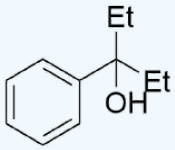
(c) 

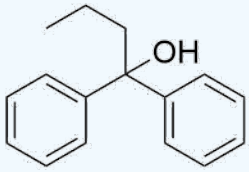
(d) 

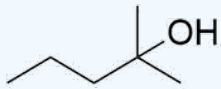
17. The following epoxide can be transformed into an alcohol using a grignard reagent, take for example allylmagnesium chloride. Draw the product of the treatment of this epoxide with this grignard after being worked up with H_2O. Note the stereochemistry and also remember that benzyllic carbons are good Sn2 electrophiles.



18. How might you prepare the following molecules from esters and Grignards?

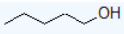
(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

Answer

14.

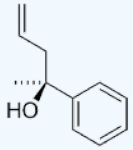
a) 

b) 

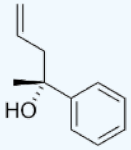
c) 

15.

The result would be a racemic mixture of the following.



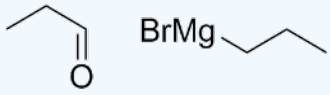
s enantiomer

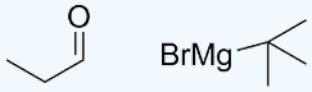


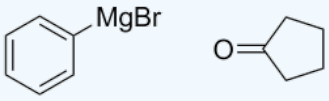
r enantiomer

16.

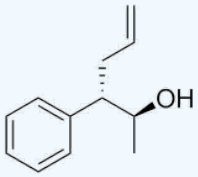
(a) 

(b) 

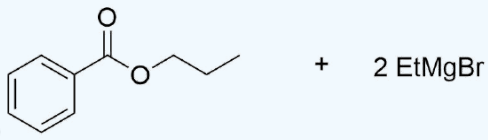
(c) 

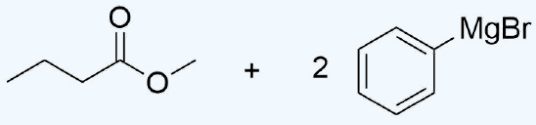
(d) 

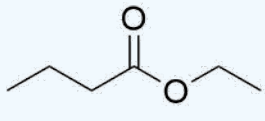
17.



18.

(a) 

(b) 

(c)  + 2 CH_3MgBr

Contributors and Attributions

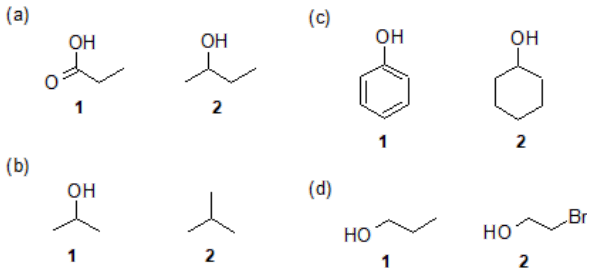
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

13.9: Organometallic Reagents in Alcohol Synthesis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

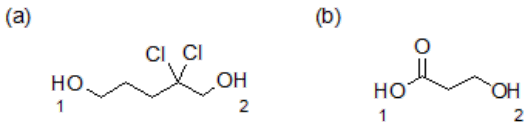
13.10: Additional Exercises Part 1

Physical Properties of Alcohols

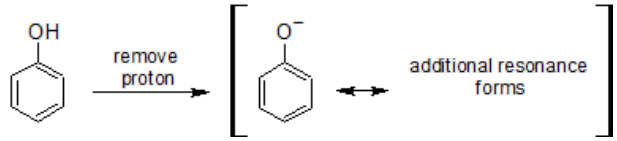
13-1 Identify which compound is more acidic. Explain your reasoning for each choice.



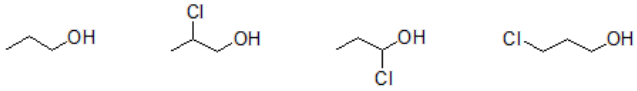
13-2 Identify which is the most acidic proton in the following compounds. Explain your reasoning for each choice.



13-3 Draw all possible resonance forms of the conjugate base of phenol.



13-4 List the following compounds in order from most to least acidic.



13-5 Predict which compound of each pair is more soluble in water and explain your reasoning.

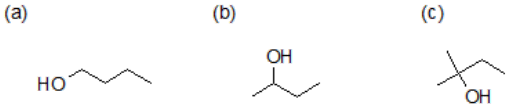
1. butan-1-ol or pentan-1-ol
2. phenol or cyclohexanol
3. octan-1,3-diol or octan-1-ol
4. 1-chlorohexane or hexan-1-ol

13-6 Predict which compound has the higher boiling point and explain your reasoning.

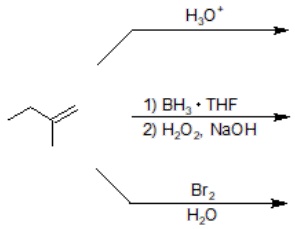
1. water or ethanol
2. butan-1-ol or octan-1-ol
3. hexan-2-ol or hexan-2-one

Synthesis of Alcohols

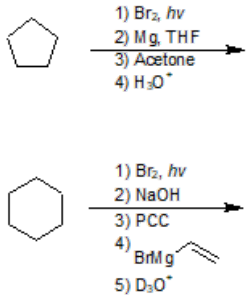
13-7 Show a possible way to synthesize the following alcohols.



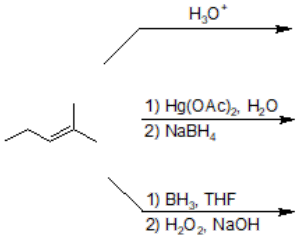
13-8 Give the product of each reaction.



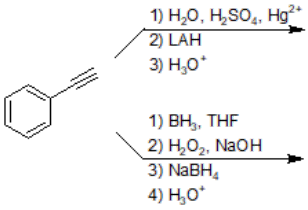
13-9 Give the product of each reaction.



13-10 Give the product of each reaction.

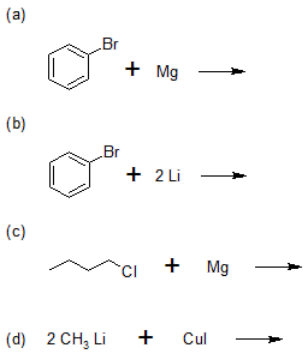


13-11 Give the product of each reaction.



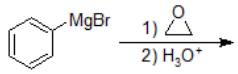
Organometallic Reagents for Alcohol Synthesis

13-12 Draw the products of the following reactions.

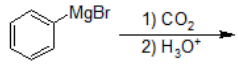


13-13 Draw the products of the following reactions.

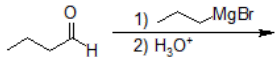
(a)



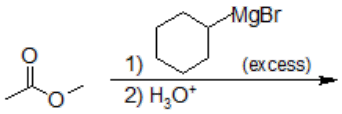
(b)



(c)

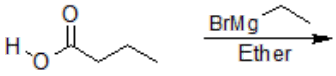


13-14 What is the final product of the following reaction.



13-15 Draw the mechanism for question **13-14**.

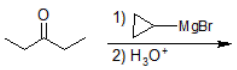
13-16 Identify the product of the following reaction and explain why that is the correct answer.



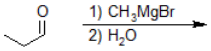
Addition of Organometallic Reagents to Carbonyl Compounds

13-17 Give the product(s) of the following reactions. Include stereochemistry when necessary.

(a)

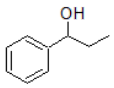


(b)



13-18 Show a possible carbonyl compound that was used to make the following alcohols through a Grignard reaction.

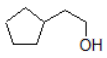
(a)



(b)

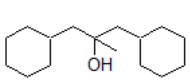


(c)

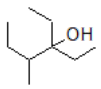


13-19 For the following compounds, identify the Grignard reagent used and the initial methyl ester compound.

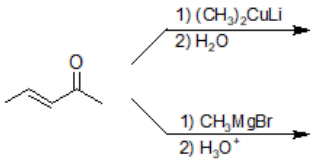
(a)



(b)

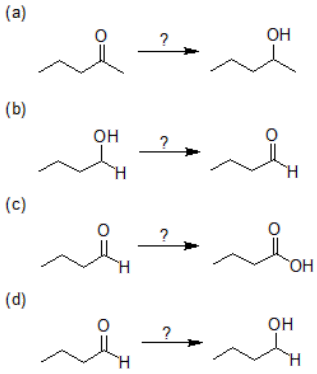


13-20 Give the products of the following reactions.

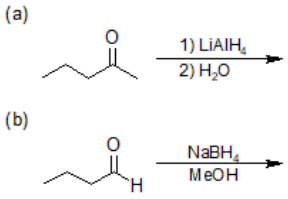


Reduction of the Carbonyl Group

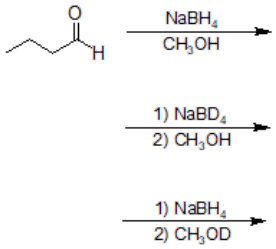
13-21 Identify whether the initial compound is undergoing oxidation or reduction.



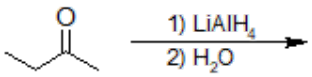
13-22 Give the product of each reaction.



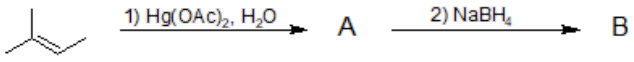
13-23 Give the product of each reaction (same starting molecule), making sure to specify where each proton ends up in the final product.



13-24 Give the mechanism for the following hydride reduction reaction.



13-25 Draw the structures for A and B.

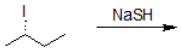


Thiols (Mercaptans)

13-26 Name the following compounds following IUPAC nomenclature.

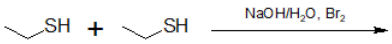


13-27 Identify the product of the following reaction. Include stereochemistry if appropriate.





13-28 Identify the product of the following reaction.



13.10: Additional Exercises Part 1 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 1

Physical Properties of Alcohols

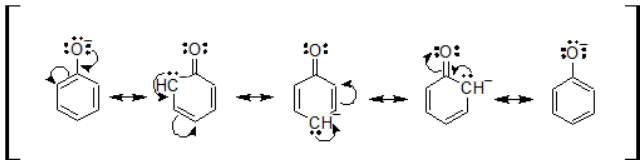
13-1

1. Compound 1 is more acidic than compound 2, since its conjugate base is stabilized by resonance.
2. Compound 1 is more acidic than compound 2 as the proton in question is bonded to a very electronegative atom (oxygen). When comparing the conjugate bases of both compounds, oxygen can stabilize a negative charge far better than the carbon atom of compound 2, allowing it to be a more stable conjugate base and stronger acid.
3. Compound 1 is more acidic than compound 2, since its conjugate base is stabilized by resonance.
4. Compound 2 is more acidic than compound 1. The halogen on compound 2 helps stabilize the negative charge of the conjugate base by withdrawing electron density through induction.

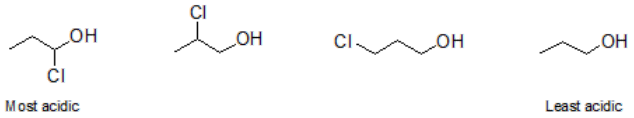
13-2

1. Proton 2 is more acidic than proton 1. The conjugate base formed by removing proton 2 is more stable than the conjugate base formed by removing proton 1, due to the strong induction effects by the halogens which withdraw electron density and stabilize the negative charge.
2. Proton 1 is more acidic than proton 2. The conjugate base formed by removing proton 1 is stabilized by resonance.

13-3 Resonance forms of the phenol conjugate base:



13-4



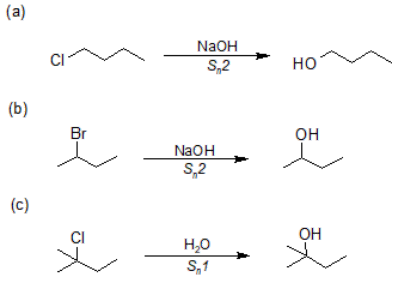
13-5

1. butan-1-ol is more soluble in water because it has a smaller hydrophobic region compared to pentan-1-ol, allowing butan-1-ol to interact with water better.
2. phenol is more soluble in water than cyclohexanol because of the more polar character of its ring. phenol is able to interact with water better than cyclohexanol due to the conjugated pi-system of electrons in its ring, which which gives it a more ionic character.
3. octan-1,3-diol is more soluble in water as it has two hydroxy groups, allowing it to form more hydrogen bonds and interact with water better than octan-1-ol.
4. hexan-1-ol is more soluble in water as it can hydrogen bond compared to alkyl halides, such as 1-chlorohexane, which are insoluble in water.

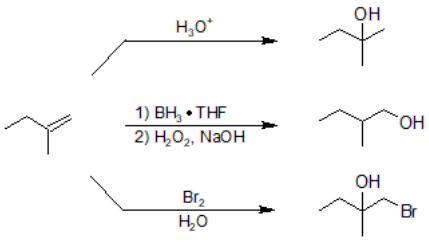
13-6

1. Water has a higher boiling point compared to ethanol as it participates in more hydrogen bonding with other water molecules, thus requiring more energy to break the intermolecular attractions between water molecules.
2. octan-1-ol has the higher boiling point compared to butan-1-ol. Both alcohols can H-bond, however the longer hydrophobic carbon chain tail of octan-1-ol experiences more van der Waal interactions compared to the shorter hydrophobic region of butan-1-ol leading to a higher boiling point.
3. Since hexan-1-ol can H-bond, it has a higher boiling point than hexan-2-one, which cannot H-bond.

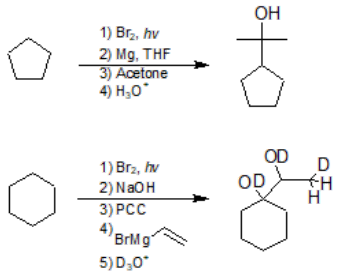
13-7



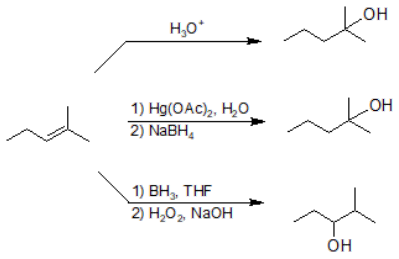
13-8



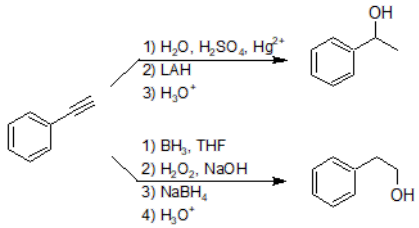
13-9



13-10

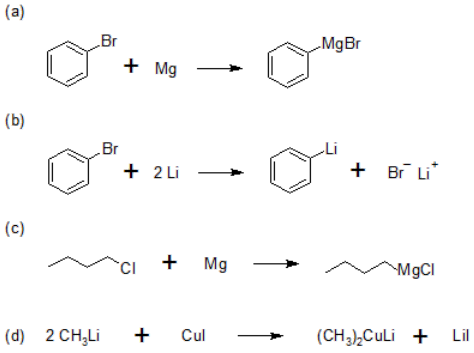


13-11

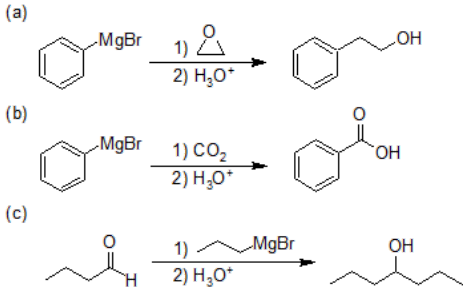


Organometallic Reagents for Alcohol Synthesis

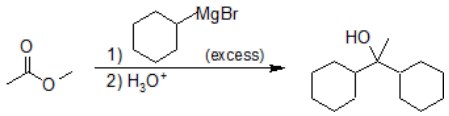
13-12



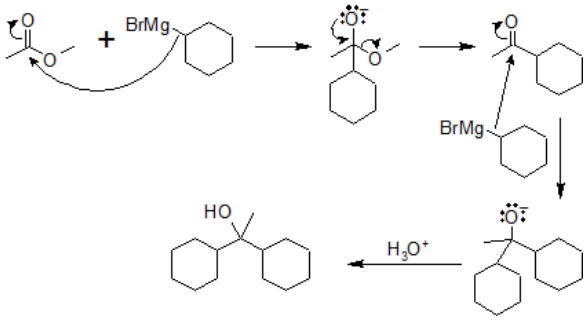
13-13



13-14

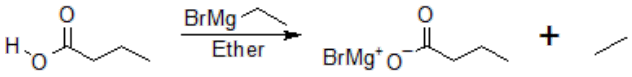


13-15



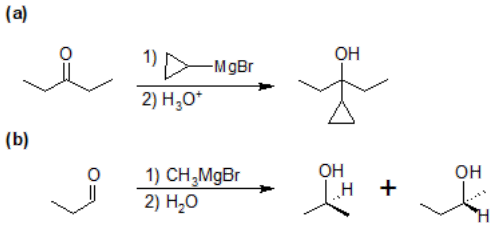
13-16

When you react an acid with an organometallic reagent, you will get a salt since organometallics are strong bases and will deprotonate the acid, before even getting a chance to attack the carbonyl carbon.

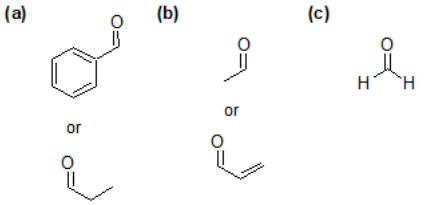


Addition of Organometallic Reagents to Carbonyl Compounds

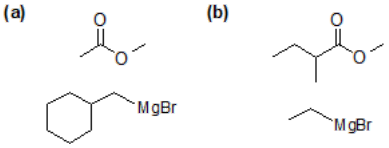
13-17



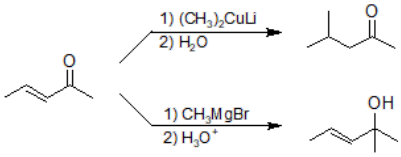
13-18



13-19



13-20

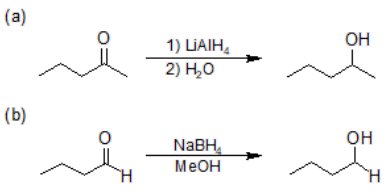


Reduction of the Carbonyl Group

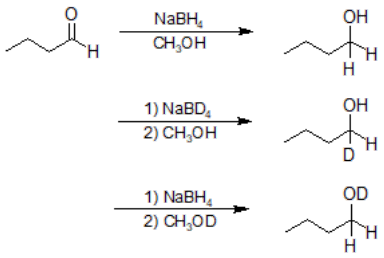
13-21

1. Reduction
2. Oxidation
3. Oxidation
4. Reduction

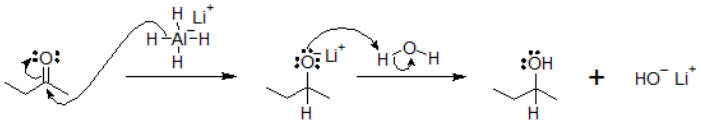
13-22



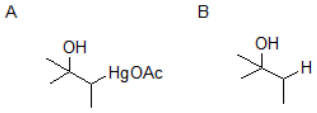
13-23



13-24



13-25

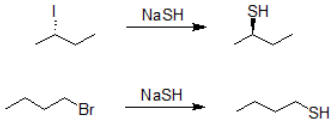


Thiols (Mercaptans)

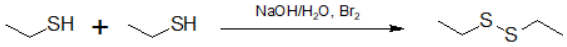
13-26



13-27



13-28



13.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 1 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.12: Reactions of Alcohols with Hydrohalic Acids

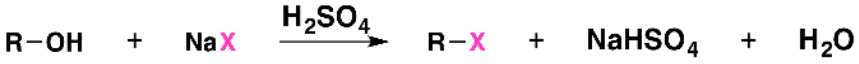
Conversion of Alcohols into Alkyl Halides

When alcohols react with a hydrogen halide, a substitution takes place producing an alkyl halide and water:

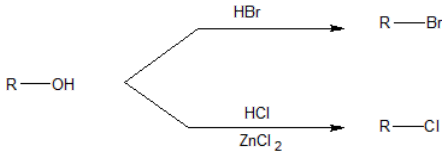


- The order of reactivity of alcohols is 3° > 2° > 1° methyl.
- The order of reactivity of the hydrogen halides is HI > HBr > HCl (HF is generally unreactive).

The reaction is acid catalyzed. Alcohols react with the strongly acidic hydrogen halides HCl, HBr, and HI, but they do not react with nonacidic NaCl, NaBr, or NaI. Primary and secondary alcohols can be converted to alkyl chlorides and bromides by allowing them to react with a mixture of a sodium halide and sulfuric acid:



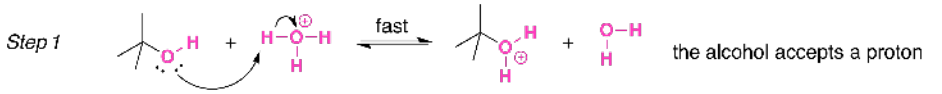
Because Cl- is a weaker nucleophile than Br-, the reaction with HCl requires a catalyst such as ZnCl2 as shown below.

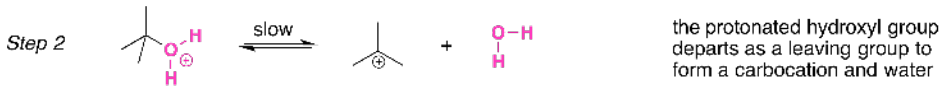


Mechanisms of the Reactions of Alcohols with HX

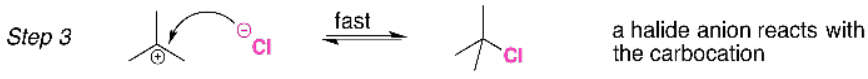
Secondary, tertiary, allylic, and benzylic alcohols appear to react by a mechanism that involves the formation of a carbocation, in an S_N1 reaction with the protonated alcohol acting as the substrate.

The S_N1 mechanism is illustrated by the reaction tert-butyl alcohol and aqueous hydrochloric acid (H_3O^+, Cl^-). The first two steps in this S_n1 substitution mechanism are protonation of the alcohol to form an oxonium ion. Although the oxonium ion is formed by protonation of the alcohol, it can also be viewed as a Lewis acid-base complex between the cation (R^+) and H_2O. Protonation of the alcohol converts a poor leaving group (OH-) to a good leaving group water, H_2O, which makes the dissociation step of the S_N1 mechanism more favorable.





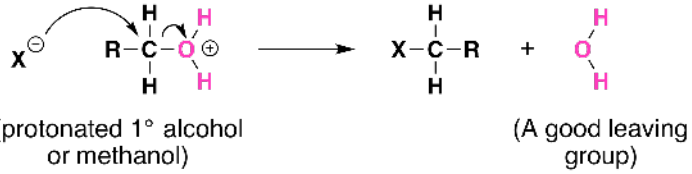
In step 3, the carbocation reacts with a nucleophile (a halide ion) to complete the substitution.



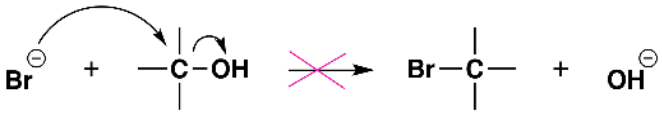
When we convert an alcohol to an alkyl halide, we carry out the reaction in the presence of acid and in the presence of halide ions, and not at elevated temperature. Halide ions are good nucleophiles (they are much stronger nucleophiles than water), and since halide ions are present in high concentration, most of the carbocations react with an electron pair of a halide ion to form a more stable species, the alkyl halide product. The overall result is an S_N1 reaction.

Not all acid-catalyzed conversions of alcohols to alkyl halides proceed through the formation of carbocations. Primary alcohols and methanol react to form alkyl halides under acidic conditions by an S_N2 mechanism.

In these reactions the function of the acid is to produce a *protonated alcohol*. The halide ion then displaces a molecule of water (a good leaving group) from carbon; this produces an alkyl halide:

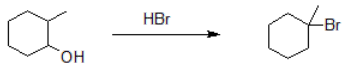


Again, acid is required. Although halide ions (particularly iodide and bromide ions) are strong nucleophiles, they are not strong enough to carry out substitution reactions with alcohols themselves. Direct displacement of the hydroxyl group does not occur because the leaving group would have to be a strongly basic hydroxide ion:



We can see now why the reactions of alcohols with hydrogen halides are acid-promoted.

Carbocation rearrangements are extremely common in organic chemistry reactions are are defined as the movement of a carbocation from an unstable state to a more stable state through the use of various structural reorganizational "shifts" within the molecule. Once the carbocation has shifted over to a different carbon, we can say that there is a structural isomer of the initial molecule. However, this phenomenon is not as simple as it sounds.

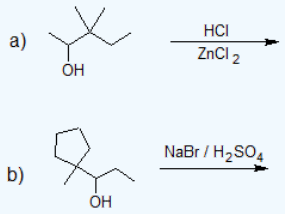


The carbocation intermediate undergoes a 1,2-hydride shift.

The most common methods for converting 1º- and 2º-alcohols to the corresponding chloro and bromo alkanes (*i.e.* replacement of the hydroxyl group) are treatments with thionyl chloride and phosphorus tribromide, respectively. These reagents are generally preferred over the use of concentrated HX due to the harsh acidity of these hydrohalic acids and the carbocation rearrangements associated with their use. The alcohol reactions with thionyl chloride or phosphorus tribromide are discussed in the next section.

Exercises

1. Predict the product of each reaction below.



Answer

1.

a) 

b) 

Contributors and Attributions

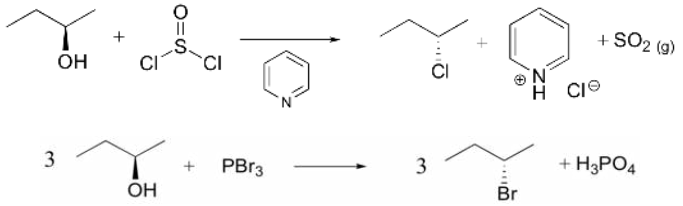
- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

13.12: Reactions of Alcohols with Hydrohalic Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

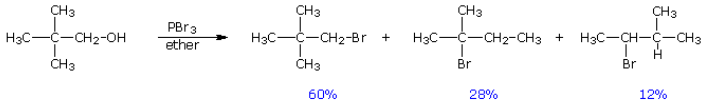
13.13: Reactions with Phosphorus Halides and Thionyl Chloride

Carbocation containment

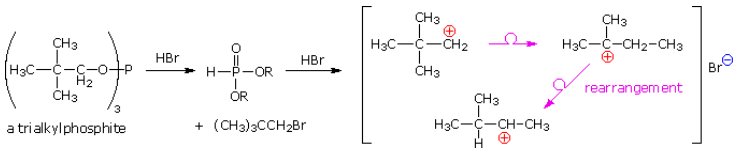
Synthetic organic chemists use phosphorus tribromide and thionyl chloride to convert an alcohol into a better leaving group without carbocation rearrangement.



Despite their general usefulness, phosphorous tribromide and thionyl chloride have shortcomings. Hindered 1º- and 2º-alcohols react sluggishly with the former, and may form rearrangement products, as noted in the following equation.



Below, an abbreviated mechanism for the reaction is displayed. The initially formed trialkylphosphite ester may be isolated if the HBr byproduct is scavenged by base. In the presence of HBr a series of acid-base and S_N2 reactions take place, along with the transient formation of carbocation intermediates. Rearrangement (pink arrows) of the carbocations leads to isomeric products.



Reaction of thionyl chloride with chiral 2º-alcohols has been observed to proceed with either inversion or retention. In the presence of a base such as pyridine, the intermediate chlorosulfite ester reacts to form an "pyridinium" salt, which undergoes a relatively clean S_N2 reaction to the inverted chloride. In ether and similar solvents the chlorosulfite reacts with retention of configuration, presumably by way of a tight or intimate ion pair. This is classified as an **S_Ni** reaction (nucleophilic substitution internal). The carbocation partner in the ion pair may also rearrange. These reactions are illustrated by the following equations. An alternative explanation for the retention of configuration, involving an initial solvent molecule displacement of the chlorosulfite group (as SO_2 and chloride anion), followed by chloride ion displacement of the solvent moiety, has been suggested. In this case, two inversions lead to retention.

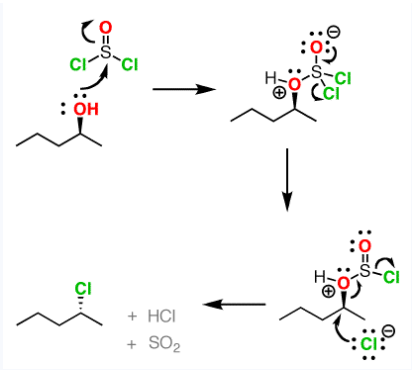
Example: Conversion of Alcohols to Alkyl Chlorides



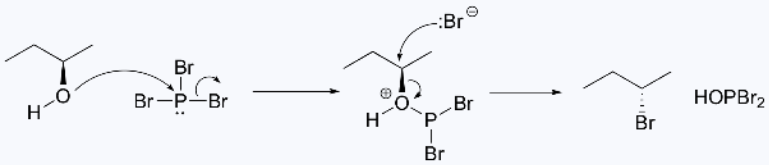
There's one important thing to note here: see the stereochemistry? It's been inverted.*(white lie alert – see below) That's an important difference between $SOCl_2$ and tosyl chloirde, TsCl, which leaves the stereochemistry alone. The TsCl reaction is studied in section 12.3.

Mechanisms

Since the reaction proceeds through a backside S_N2 reaction, there is inversion of configuration at the carbon



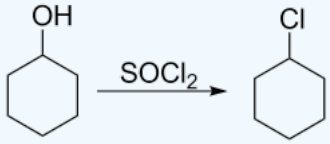
The PBr_3 reaction is thought to involve two successive S_N2-like steps:



Notice that these reactions result in inversion of stereochemistry in the resulting alkyl halide.

Exercises

2. Draw the mechanism of the reaction of thinoylchloride with cyclohexanol, given below.

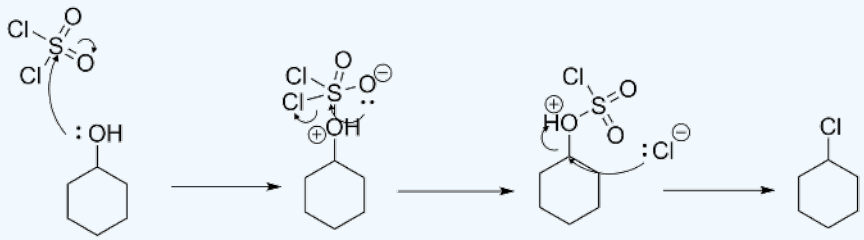


3. Draw the expected product of the reaction of cylohexanol with the following reagents.

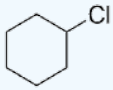
(a) $SOCl_2$ (b) PBr_3

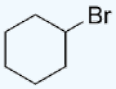
Answer

2.



3.

(a) 

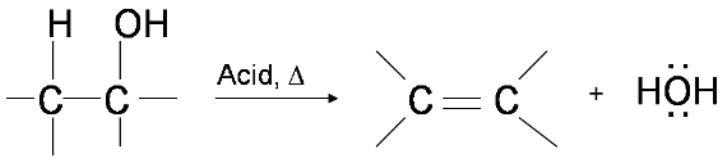
(b) 

13.13: Reactions with Phosphorus Halides and Thionyl Chloride is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.14: Dehydration Reactions of Alcohols

Dehydration of Alcohols to Yield Alkenes

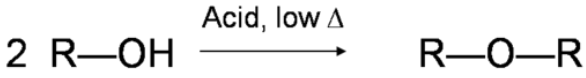
One way to synthesize alkenes is by dehydration of alcohols, a process in which alcohols undergo E1 or E2 mechanisms to lose water and form a double bond. The dehydration reaction of alcohols to generate alkene proceeds by heating the alcohols in the presence of a strong acid, such as sulfuric or phosphoric acid, at high temperatures.



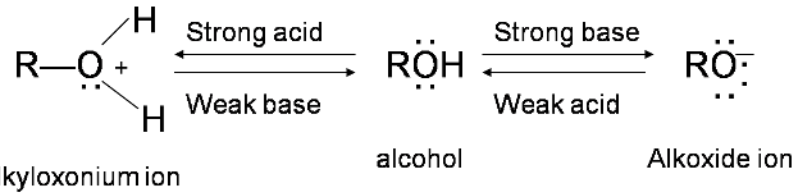
The required range of reaction temperature decreases with increasing substitution of the hydroxy-containing carbon:

- 1° alcohols: 170° - 180°C
- 2° alcohols: 100°– 140 °C
- 3° alcohols: 25°– 80°C

If the reaction is not sufficiently heated, the alcohols do not dehydrate to form alkenes, but react with one another to form ethers (e.g., the Williamson Ether Synthesis).



Alcohols are amphoteric; they can act as both acid or base. The lone pair of electrons on oxygen atom makes the –OH group weakly basic. Oxygen can donate two electrons to an electron-deficient proton. Thus, in the presence of a strong acid, R—OH acts as a base and protonates into the very acidic alkyloxonium ion +OH2 (The pKa value of a tertiary protonated alcohol can go as low as -3.8). This basic characteristic of alcohol is essential for its dehydration reaction with an acid to form alkenes.



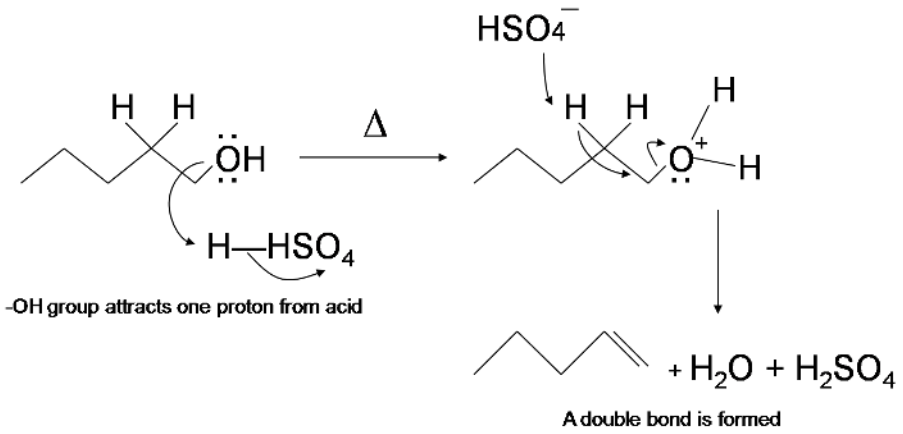
Mechanism for the Dehydration of Alcohol into Alkene

Different types of alcohols may dehydrate through a slightly different mechanism pathway. However, the general idea behind each dehydration reaction is that the –OH group in the alcohol donates two electrons to H^+ from the acid reagent, forming an alkyloxonium ion. This ion acts as a very good leaving group which leaves to form a carbocation. The deprotonated acid (the base) then reacts with the hydrogen adjacent to the carbocation and form a double bond.

Primary alcohols undergo bimolecular elimination (E2 mechanism) while secondary and tertiary alcohols undergo unimolecular elimination (E1 mechanism). The relative reactivity of alcohols in dehydration reactions is ranked as follows:

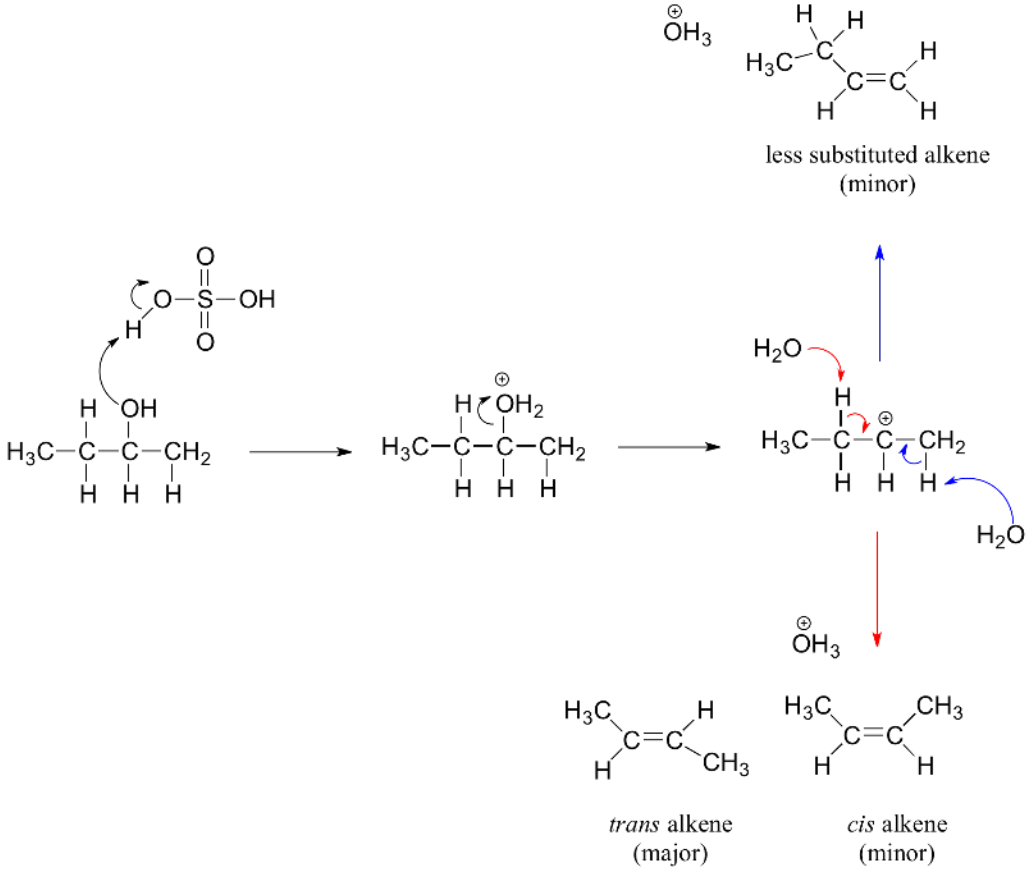
Methanol < *primary* < *secondary* < *tertiary*

Primary alcohols dehydrate through the E2 mechanism. The hydroxyl oxygen donates two electrons to a proton from sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), forming an alkyloxonium ion. Then the conjugate base, HSO_4^-, reacts with one of the adjacent (beta) hydrogen atoms while the alkyloxonium ion leaves in a concerted process, forming a double bond.



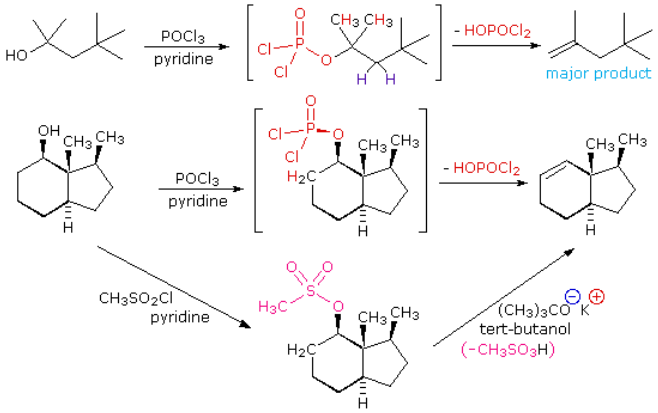
Secondary and tertiary alcohols dehydrate through the E1 mechanism. Similarly to the reaction above, secondary and tertiary –OH protonate to form alkyloxonium ions. However, in this case the ion leaves first and forms a carbocation as the reaction intermediate. The water molecule (which is a stronger base than the HSO_4^- ion) then abstracts a proton from an adjacent carbon to form a double bond. Notice in the mechanism below that the alkene formed depends on which proton is abstracted: the red arrows show formation of the more substituted 2-butene, while the blue arrows show formation of the less substituted 1-butene. Recall that according to Zaitsev's Rule, the more substituted alkenes are formed preferentially because they are more stable than less substituted alkenes. Additionally, trans alkenes are more stable than cis alkenes and are also the major product formed. For the example below, the trans diastereomer of the 2-butene product is most abundant.

Dehydration reaction of secondary alcohol



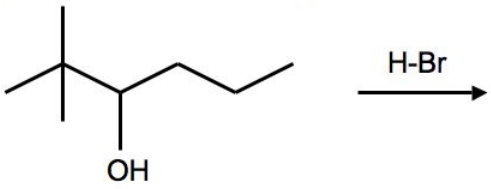
The dehydration mechanism for a tertiary alcohol is analogous to that shown above for a secondary alcohol.

The E2 elimination of 3º-alcohols under relatively non-acidic conditions may be accomplished by treatment with phosphorous oxychloride ($POCl_3$) in pyridine. This procedure is also effective with hindered 2º-alcohols, but for unhindered and 1º-alcohols an S_N2 chloride ion substitution of the chlorophosphate intermediate competes with elimination. Examples of these and related reactions are given in the following figure. The first equation shows the dehydration of a 3º-alcohol. The predominance of the non-Zaitsev product (less substituted double bond) is presumed due to steric hindrance of the methylene group hydrogen atoms, which interferes with the approach of base at that site. The second example shows two elimination procedures applied to the same 2º-alcohol. The first uses the single step POCl3 method, which works well in this case because SN2 substitution is retarded by steric hindrance. The second method is another example in which an intermediate sulfonate ester confers halogen-like reactivity on an alcohol. In every case the anionic leaving group is the conjugate base of a strong acid.

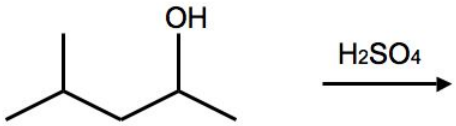


Practice Problems (aka Exercises)

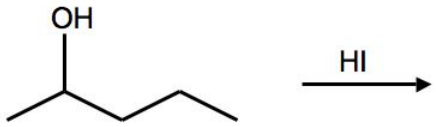
1) Please show the arrow pushing mechanism and the major final product:



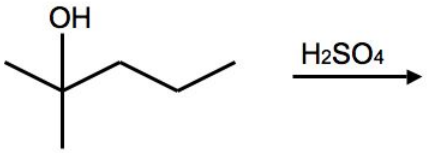
2) Please show the mechanism with **hydride shift** and show the final product:



3) Show both major and minor products of the given reaction:

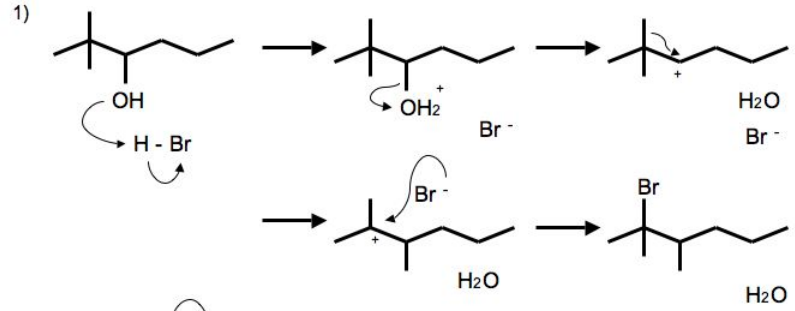


4) Show both major and minor products of the given reaction:

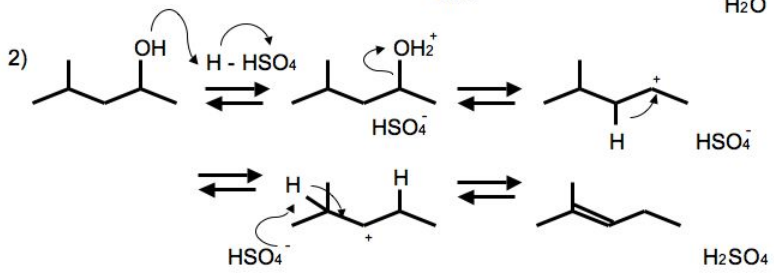


Answers to Practice Problems:

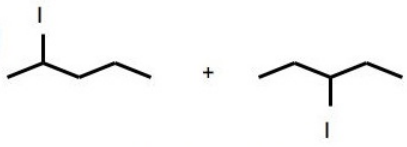
1)



2)



3)



Equal amounts

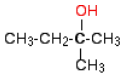
4)



Major product Minor product



2-methylpropan-2-ol

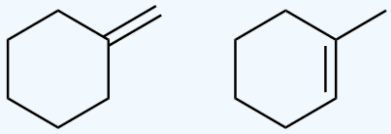


2-methylbutan-2-ol

Exercises

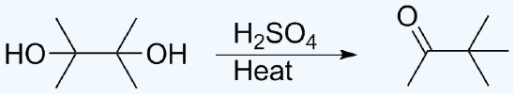
6. Starting with cyclohexanol, describe how you would prepare cyclohexene.

7. In the dehydration of 1-methylcyclohexanol, which product is favored?



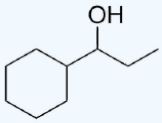
8.

In the dehydration of this diol the resulting product is a ketone. Draw the mechanism of its formation. (Hint a rearrangement occurs)



9.

Draw an arrow pushing mechanism for the acid catalyzed dehydration of the following alcohol, make sure to draw both potential mechanisms. Assume no rearrangement for the first two product mechanisms. Which of these two would likely be the major product? If there was a rearrangement, draw the expected major product.



Answer

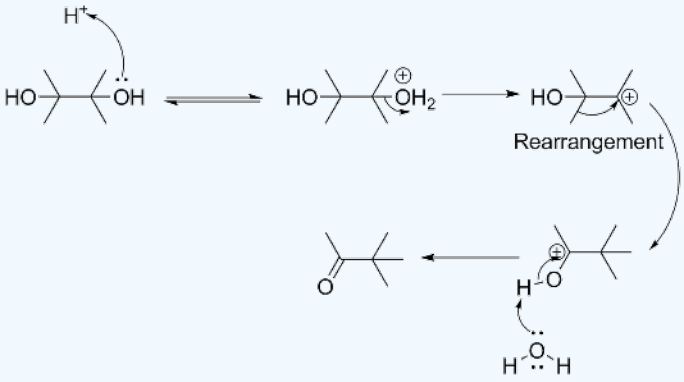
6. H_2SO_4 with heat since there are no concerns about C+ rearrangement

7. The more substituted alkene is favored, as more substituted alkenes are relatively lower in energy.



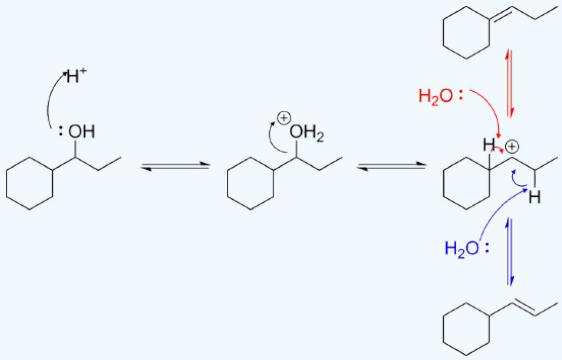
8.

This reaction is known as the Pinacol rearrangement.



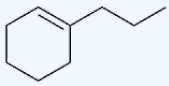
Note how the carbocation after the rearrangement is resonance stabilized by the oxygen

9. Note: While the mechanism is instructive for the first part of the this answer. The carbocation rearrangement would occur and determine the major and minor products as explained in the second part of this answer.



The major product of this mechanism would be the more highly substituted alkene, or the product formed from the red arrows.

Note: With the secondary carbocation adjacent a tertiary carbon center, a 1,2 hydride shift (rearrangement) would occur to form a tertiary carbocation and vcompound below would be the major product. The minor product being the same product as the one formed from the red arrows.



Contributors and Attributions

- Jeffrey Ma

13.14: Dehydration Reactions of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.15: Oxidation States of Alcohols and Related Functional Groups

Introduction

You are undoubtedly already familiar with the general idea of oxidation and reduction: you learned in general chemistry that when a compound or atom is oxidized it loses electrons, and when it is reduced it gains electrons. You also know that oxidation and reduction reactions occur in pairs: if one species is oxidized, another must be reduced at the same time - thus the term 'redox reaction'.

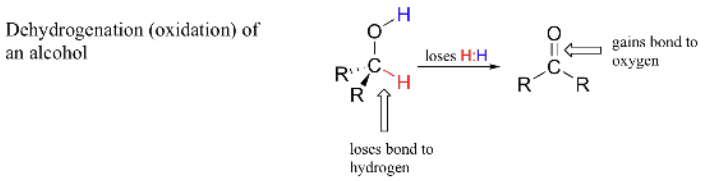
Most of the redox reactions you have seen previously in general chemistry probably involved the flow of electrons from one metal to another, such as the reaction between copper ion in solution and metallic zinc:

$$Cu^{+2}_{(aq)} + Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Cu_{(s)} + Zn^{+2}_{(aq)} \tag{16.1.1}$$

In organic chemistry, redox reactions look a little different. Electrons in an organic redox reaction often are transferred in the form of a hydride ion - a proton and two electrons. Because they occur in conjunction with the transfer of a proton, these are commonly referred to as **hydrogenation** and **dehydrogenation** reactions: a hydride plus a proton adds up to a hydrogen (H_2) molecule. Be careful - do not confuse the terms **hydrogenation** and **dehydrogenation** with **hydration** and **dehydration** - the latter refer to the gain and loss of a *water* molecule (and are *not* redox reactions), while the former refer to the gain and loss of a *hydrogen* molecule.

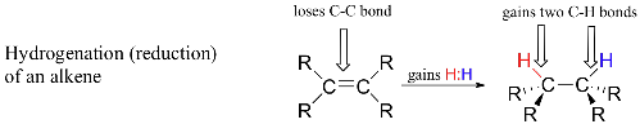
Oxidation and Reduction - The Organic Chemistry View

When a carbon atom in an organic compound loses a bond to hydrogen and gains a new bond to a heteroatom (or to another carbon), we say the compound has been dehydrogenated, or oxidized. A very common biochemical example is the oxidation of an alcohol to a ketone or aldehyde:



When a carbon atom loses a bond to hydrogen and gains a bond to a heteroatom (or to another carbon atom), it is considered to be an oxidative process because hydrogen, of all the elements, is the least electronegative. Thus, in the process of dehydrogenation the carbon atom undergoes an overall loss of electron density - and loss of electrons is oxidation.

Conversely, when a carbon atom in an organic compound gains a bond to hydrogen and loses a bond to a heteroatom (or to another carbon atom), we say that the compound has been hydrogenated, or reduced. The hydrogenation of a ketone to an alcohol, for example, is overall the reverse of the alcohol dehydrogenation shown above. Illustrated below is another common possibility, the hydrogenation (reduction) of an alkene to an alkane.

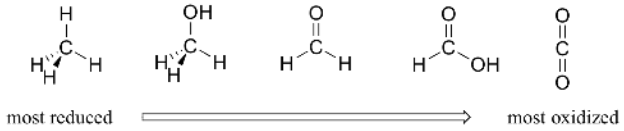


Hydrogenation results in *higher* electron density on a carbon atom(s), and thus we consider process to be one of reduction of the organic molecule.

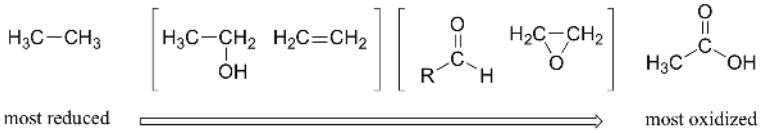
Notice that neither hydrogenation nor dehydrogenation involves the gain or loss of an oxygen *atom*. Reactions which *do* involve gain or loss of one or more oxygen atoms are usually referred to as 'oxygenase' and 'reductase' reactions.

For the most part, when talking about redox reactions in organic chemistry we are dealing with a small set of very recognizable functional group transformations. It is therefore very worthwhile to become familiar with the idea of 'oxidation states' as applied to organic functional groups. By comparing the relative number of bonds to hydrogen atoms, we can order the familiar functional groups according to oxidation state. We'll take a series of single carbon compounds as an example. Methane, with four carbon-

hydrogen bonds, is highly reduced. Next in the series is methanol (one less carbon-hydrogen bond, one more carbon-oxygen bond), followed by formaldehyde, formate, and finally carbon dioxide at the highly oxidized end of the group.



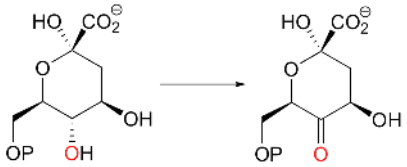
This pattern holds true for the relevant functional groups on organic molecules with two or more carbon atoms:



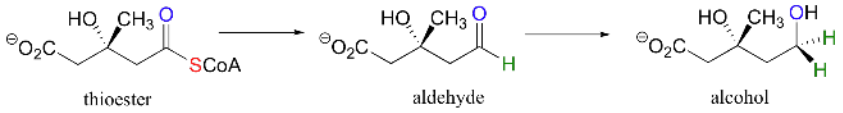
Alkanes are highly reduced, while alcohols - as well as alkenes, ethers, amines, sulfides, and phosphate esters - are one step up on the oxidation scale, followed by aldehydes/ketones/imines and epoxides, and finally by carboxylic acid derivatives (carbon dioxide, at the top of the oxidation list, is specific to the single carbon series).

Notice that in the series of two-carbon compounds above, ethanol and ethene are considered to be in the same oxidation state. You know already that alcohols and alkenes are interconverted by way of addition or elimination of water. When an alcohol is dehydrated to form an alkene, one of the two carbons loses a C-H bond and gains a C-C bond, and thus is oxidized. However, the other carbon loses a C-O bond and gains a C-C bond, and thus is considered to be reduced. Overall, therefore, there is no change to the oxidation state of the molecule.

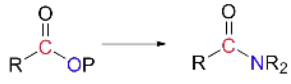
You should learn to recognize when a reaction involves a change in oxidation state in an organic reactant. Looking at the following transformation, for example, you should be able to quickly recognize that it is an oxidation: an alcohol functional group is converted to a ketone, which is one step up on the oxidation ladder.



Likewise, this next reaction involves the transformation of a carboxylic acid derivative (a thioester) first to an aldehyde, then to an alcohol: this is a *double* reduction, as the substrate loses two bonds to heteroatoms and gains two bonds to hydrogens.



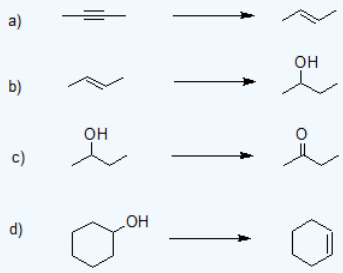
An acyl transfer reaction (for example the conversion of an acyl phosphate to an amide) is *not* considered to be a redox reaction - the oxidation state of the organic molecule is does not change as substrate is converted to product, because a bond to one heteroatom (oxygen) has simply been traded for a bond to another heteroatom (nitrogen).



It is important to be able to recognize when an organic molecule is being oxidized or reduced, because this information tells you to look for the participation of a corresponding redox agent that is being reduced or oxidized- remember, oxidation and reduction always occur in tandem! We will soon learn in detail about the most important biochemical and laboratory redox agents.

Exercises

10. Indicate whether the following reactions are oxidations [O], reductions [H], hydrations, or dehydrations.



Answer

10.

a) reduction

b) hydration

c) oxidation

d) dehydration

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

13.15: Oxidation States of Alcohols and Related Functional Groups is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

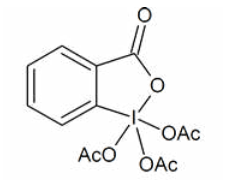
13.16: Oxidation Reactions of Alcohols

Oxidizing agents

The oxidizing agent commonly shown is a solution of sodium or potassium dichromate(VI) acidified with dilute sulfuric acid. If oxidation occurs, the orange solution containing the dichromate(VI) ions is reduced to a green solution containing chromium(III) ions. The electron-half-equation for this reaction is

$$Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14H^+ + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+} + 7H_2O \tag{17.7.1}$$

- $K_2C_r2O_7$ potassium dichromate
- CrO_3 Chromium Trioxide
- Pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) is a milder version of chromic acid that is suitable for converting a primary alcohol into an aldehyde without oxidizing it all the way to a carboxylic acid. This reagent is being replaced in laboratories by Dess-Martin periodinane (DMP), which has several practical advantages over PCC, such as producing higher yields and requiring less rigorous reaction conditions. DMP is named after Daniel Dess and James Martin, who developed it in 1983. Both reagents are used along with H_2SO_4, H_2O



Dess–Martin periodinane (DMP)

Primary alcohols

Primary alcohols can be oxidized to either aldehydes or carboxylic acids depending on the reaction conditions. In the case of the formation of carboxylic acids, the alcohol is first oxidized to an aldehyde which is then oxidized further to the acid.

Full oxidation to carboxylic acids

You need to use an excess of the oxidizing agent and make sure that the aldehyde formed as the half-way product stays in the mixture. The alcohol is heated under reflux with an excess of the oxidizing agent. When the reaction is complete, the carboxylic acid is distilled off. The full equation for the oxidation of ethanol to ethanoic acid is:

$$3CH_3CH_2OH + 2Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 16H+ \rightarrow 3CH_3COOH + 4Cr^{3+} + 11H_2O \tag{17.7.1}$$

The more usual simplified version looks like this:

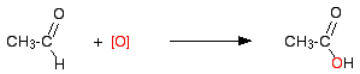
$$CH_3CH_2OH + 2[O] \rightarrow CH_3COOH + H_2O \tag{17.7.2}$$

Alternatively, you could write separate equations for the two stages of the reaction - the formation of ethanal and then its subsequent oxidation.

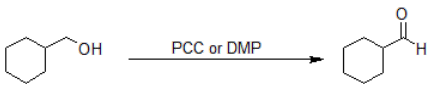
$$CH_3CH_2OH + [O] \rightarrow CH_3CHO + H_2O \tag{17.7.3}$$

$$CH_3CHO + [O] \rightarrow CH_3COOH \tag{17.7.4}$$

This is what is happening in the second stage:

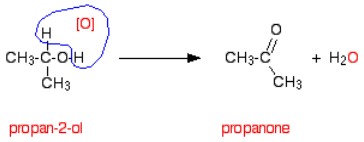


Partial oxidation to carboxylic acids



Secondary alcohols

Secondary alcohols are oxidized to ketones - and that's it. For example, if you heat the secondary alcohol propan-2-ol with sodium or potassium dichromate(VI) solution acidified with dilute sulfuric acid, you get propanone formed. Playing around with the reaction conditions makes no difference whatsoever to the product. Using the simple version of the equation and showing the relationship between the structures:

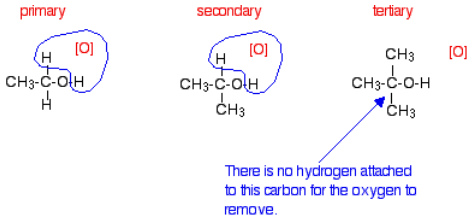


If you look back at the second stage of the primary alcohol reaction, you will see that an oxygen "slotted in" between the carbon and the hydrogen in the aldehyde group to produce the carboxylic acid. In this case, there is no such hydrogen - and the reaction has nowhere further to go.

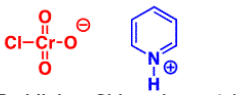
Tertiary alcohols

Tertiary alcohols are not oxidized by acidified sodium or potassium dichromate(VI) solution - there is no reaction whatsoever. If you look at what is happening with primary and secondary alcohols, you will see that the oxidizing agent is removing the hydrogen from the -OH group, and a hydrogen from the carbon atom attached to the -OH. Tertiary alcohols don't have a hydrogen atom attached to that carbon.

You need to be able to remove those two particular hydrogen atoms in order to set up the carbon-oxygen double bond.



Oxidation of Primary Alcohols by PCC - a closer look

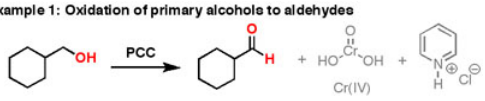


Pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) is a milder version of chromic acid.

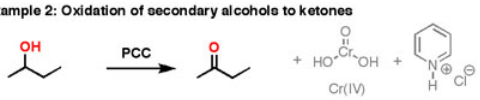
PCC oxidizes alcohols one rung up the oxidation ladder, from primary alcohols to aldehydes and from secondary alcohols to ketones. Unlike chromic acid, PCC will not oxidize aldehydes to carboxylic acids. Similar to or the same as: CrO_3 and pyridine (the Collins reagent) will also oxidize primary alcohols to aldehydes. Here are two examples of PCC in action.

- If you add one equivalent of PCC to either of these alcohols, you obtain the oxidized version. The byproducts (featured in grey) are Cr(IV) as well as pyridinium hydrochloride.
- One has to be careful with the amount of water present in the reaction. If water were present, it can ad to the aldehyde to make the hydrate, which could be further oxidized by a second equivalent of PCC were it present. This is not a concern with ketones, since there is no H directly bonded to C.

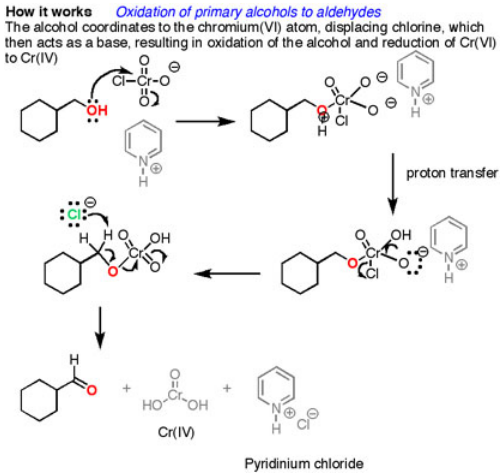
Example 1: Oxidation of primary alcohols to aldehydes



Example 2: Oxidation of secondary alcohols to ketones



How does it work? Oxidation reactions of this sort are actually a kind of elimination reaction. We're going from a carbon-oxygen single bond to a carbon-oxygen double bond. The elimination reaction can occur because we're putting a good leaving group on the oxygen, namely the chromium, which will be displaced when the neighboring C-H bond is broken with a base.

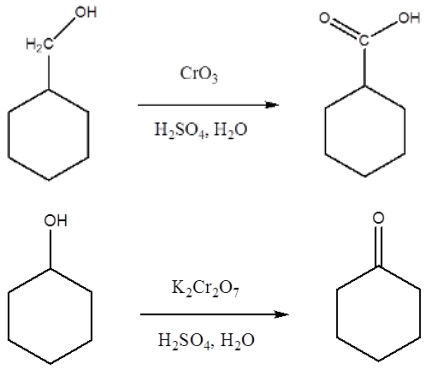


In the first step, the oxygen on the chromium reacts with the alcohol hydroxy group to form the Cr-O bond. Secondly, a proton on the (now positive) OH is transferred to one of the oxygens of the chromium, possibly through the intermediacy of the pyridinium salt. A chloride ion is then displaced, in a reaction reminiscent of a 1,2 elimination reaction, to form what is known as a chromate ester.

The C-O double bond is formed when a base removes the proton on the carbon adjacent to the oxygen. [aside: I've drawn the base as Cl^- although there are certainly other species which could also act as bases here (such as an alcohol). It is also possible for pyridine to be used as the base here, although only very low concentrations of the deprotonated form will be present under these acidic conditions.] The electrons from the C-H bond move to form the C-O bond, and in the process break the O-Cr bond, and Cr(VI) becomes Cr(IV) in the process (drawn here as O=Cr(OH)2).

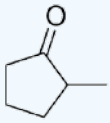
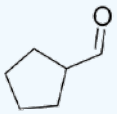
Real life notes: If you end up using PCC in the lab, don't forget to add molecular sieves or Celite or some other solid to the bottom of the flask, because otherwise you get a nasty brown tar that is a real major pain to clean up. The toxicity and mess associated with chromium has spurred the development of other alternatives like TPAP, IBX, DMP, and a host of other neat reagents you generally don't learn about until grad school.

Examples



Exercises

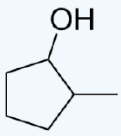
11. Draw the alcohol that the following ketones/aldehydes would have resulted from if oxidized. What oxidant could be used?

(a)  (b) 

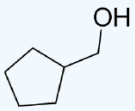
12. Show the products of the oxidation of 1-propanol and 2-propanol with chromic acid in aqueous solution.

Answer

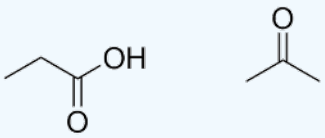
11. Any oxidant capable of oxidizing an alcohol to a ketone would work, such as the Jones reagent (CrO_3, H_2SO_4, H_2O), PCC, or Dess-Martin periodinane.

(a) 

(b) Since this is a primary alcohol, there are some precautions necessary to avoid formation of the carboxyllic acid. Milder oxidants such as the Dess-Martin periodinane, and also PCC (there is no water to form the carboxyllic acid) would work.



12. The answers are correlated with the question.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)

James Ashenhurst (MasterOrganicChemistry.com)

13.16: Oxidation Reactions of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.17: Protection of Alcohols

Introduction

Often during the synthesis of complex molecules, one functional group in a molecule interferes with an intended reaction on a second functional group on the same molecule. An excellent example is the fact that a Grignard reagent can't be prepared from halo alcohol because the C-Mg bond is not compatible with the acidic -OH group.

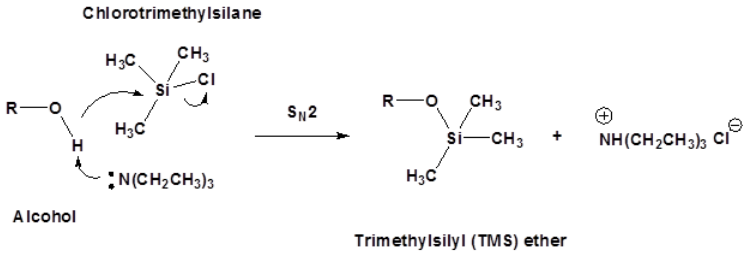
When situations like this occurs, chemists circumvent the problem by protecting the interfering functional group.

Functional group protection involves three steps:

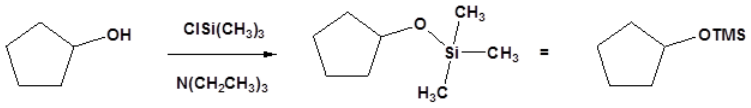
1. Blocking the interfering functionality by introducing a protecting group.
2. Performing the intended reaction.
3. Removing the protecting group and reforming the original functional group.

There are several methods for protecting an alcohol, however, the most common is the reaction with a chlorotrialkylsilane, Cl-SiR_3 This reactions forms a trialkylsilyl ether, R'-O-SiR_3. Chlorotrimethylsilane is often used in conjuction with a base, such as triethylamine, The base helps to form the alkoxide anion and remove the HCl produced by the reaction.

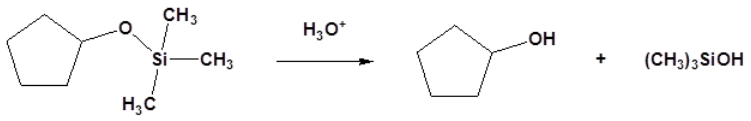
General Reaction



Example

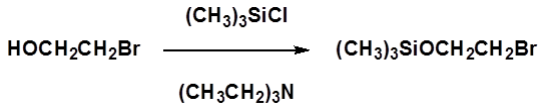


The silyl ether protecting group can be removed by reaction with an aqueous acid or the fluoride ion.

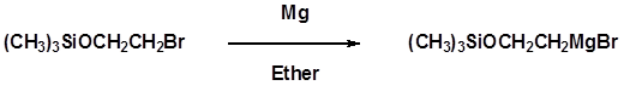


By utilizing a protecting group a Grignad reagent can be formed and reacted on a halo alcohol.

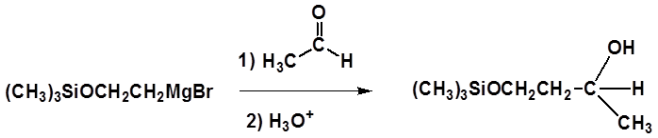
1) Protect the Alcohol



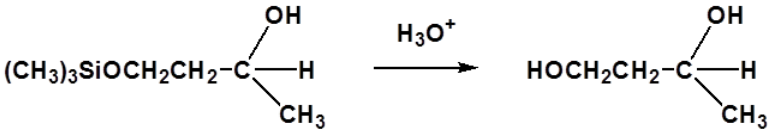
2) Form the Grignard Reagent



3) Perform the Grignard Reaction

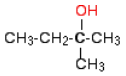


4) Deprotection





2-methylpropan-2-ol



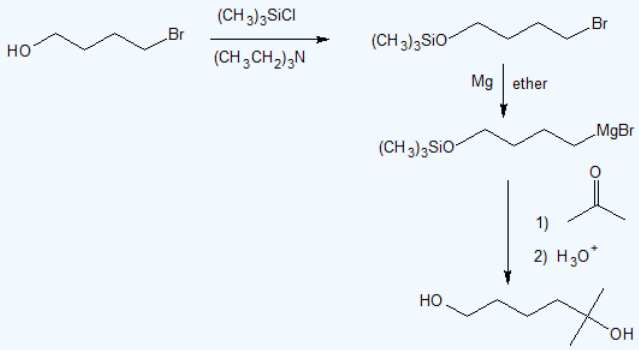
2-methylbutan-2-ol

Exercise

14. Propose a multiple-step synthesis to transform 4-bromo-1-butanol into 5-methylhexane-1,5-diol.

Answer

14.



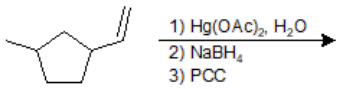
Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)

13.17: Protection of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.18: Additional Exercises Part 2

14-1 What is the IUPAC name for the product of the following reaction?



a) 1-(3-methylcyclopentyl)ethan-1-ol

b) (3-methylcyclopentyl)acetaldehyde

c) 1-(3-methylcyclopentyl)ethan-1-one

d) 1-(3-methylcyclopentyl)ethane-1,2-diol

14-2 Convert 3-chlorocyclohexanol to the following products. Any of these products can be used as the reactant in any subsequent part.

(a) 3-chlorocyclohexane

(b) 3-chlorocyclohexyl tosylate

(c) 3-chlorohexanone

d) sodium 3-chlorocyclohexan-1-olate

(e) 3-chloro-1-methylcyclohexanol

(f) 1-bromo-3-chlorocyclohexane

(g) 3-chlorocyclohexyl acetate

(h) 1-chloro-3-ethoxycyclohexane

14-3 Show how you would synthesis the chloride, bromide, and iodide from the corresponding alcohols

(a) 1-halopentane (halo=chloro, bromo, iodo)

(b) halocyclobutane

(c) 1-halo-1-ethylcyclopentane

(d) 1-halo-2-propylcyclopentane

14-4 Predict the major products of the following reactions. Clearly indicate stereochemistry where appropriate.

(a) (R)-pentan-2-ol + TsCl in pyridine

(b) (R)-2-pentyl tosylate + NaBr

(c) cyclopentanol + CrO3/H2SO4

(d) 2-cyclopenttylethanol +CrO3.pyridine.HCl

(e) 2-cyclopenttylethanol+ CrO3/H2SO4

(f) 1-propanol + HCl/ZnCl2

(g) 2-methylpropan-2-ol +HBr

(h) ethanol + CH3MgCl

(i) potassium *tert*-butoxide + ethyl iodide

(j) tert-butyl tosylate + sodium ethoxide

(k) 1-methylcyclohexanol + H2SO4/heat

(l) product from (k) + OsO4/H2O2, then HIO4

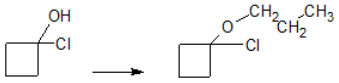
(m) sodium cyclohexoxide + 1-iodopropane

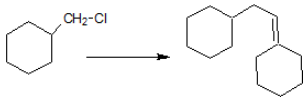
(n) sodium ethoxide + isopropyl tosylate

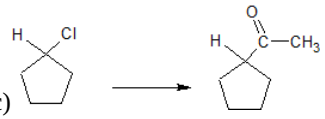
(o) cyclopentylmethanol + DMSO+ oxalyl chloride

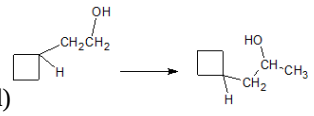
(p) cyclopropanol + DMP reagent

14-5 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformation

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

14-6 Predict the major products of sulfuric acid catalyzed dehydration

(a) butan-1-ol

(b) 2-methyl-3-pentanol

(c) cyclohexanol

(d) 1-cyclopentylethanol

(d) cyclohexylmethanol

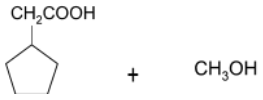
(e) 2-methylcyclohexanol

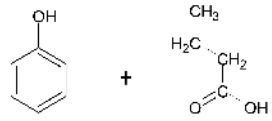
14-7 Predict the products of the following ester synthesis reactions

(a) $CH_3CH_2COOH + CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$

(b) $CH_3CH_2OH + HNO_3$

(c) $CH_3OH + H_3PO_4$

(d) 

(e) 

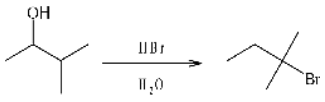
14-8 Show how you would convert (R)-2-pentanol to:

(a) (S)-2-chloropentane

(b) (R)-2-bromopentane

(c) (S)-2-pentanol

14-9 When 3-methyl-2-butanol reacts with concentrated aqueous HBr, the major product is 2-bromo-2-methylbutane



a) Propose a plausible mechanism for the above reaction

b) Show how you would convert 3-methyl-2-butanol into 2-bromo-3-methylbutane:



14-10 Predict the major products when trans-2-ethylcyclopentanol reacts with the following reagents. Include stereochemistry if necessary.

(a) PBr_3

(b) $SOCl_2$

(c) Lucas reagent

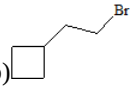
(d) concentrated HBr

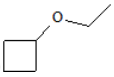
(e) TsCl/py then NaCN

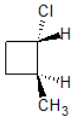
(f)TsCl/py then NaOEt

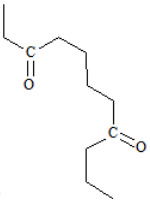
14-11 Using an alcohol of your choice, show how you would synthesis each following compound.

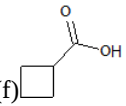
(a) 

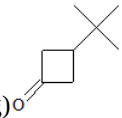
(b) 

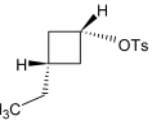
(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

(h) 

14-12 Describe chemical tests that can be used to distinguish the following pairs of compounds. Include the reagents, reaction conditions, observations, and chemical equations in your answers.

(a) 2-propanol and 2-methyl-2-propanol

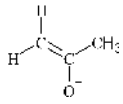
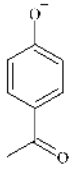
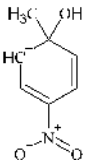
(b) 1-propanol and 2-propanol

(c) cyclopentanol and cyclopentene

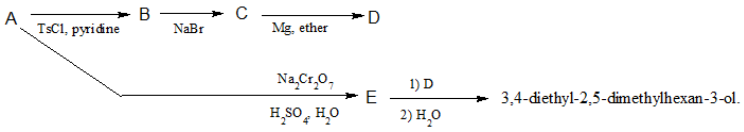
(d) cyclopentanol and 1-cyclopentylethanone

(e) cyclopentanone and 1-methylcyclopentanol

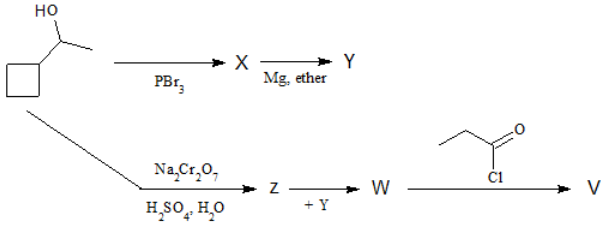
14-13 Draw important resonance structures for the following compounds

(a)  (b)  (c) 

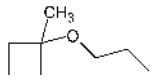
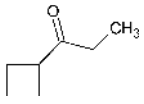
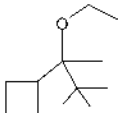
14-14 The following sequence of reaction transforms alcohol A to 3,4-diethyl-2,5-dimethylhexan-3-ol. Propose structure for compounds A, B, C, D, and E.

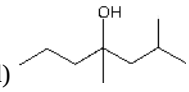
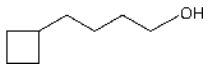
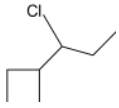


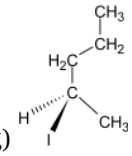
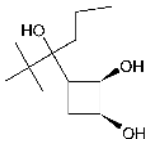
14-15 Consider the following transformation. Identify the structures of compound X, Y, Z, W, and V.



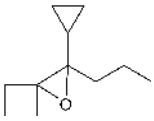
14-16 Show how each of the following compounds can be synthesized. You might use any alcohol containing five or fewer carbon atoms as your starting materials.

(a)  (b)  (c) 

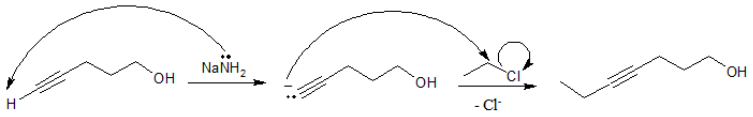
(d)  (e)  (f) 

(g)  (h) 

14-17 Show how you would synthesize the following compound. Only use alcohols containing four or fewer carbons as your organic materials. You might use any necessary solvents and inorganic reagents.



14-18



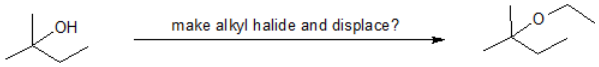
a) The above transformation does not work because of a common conceptual error. What is the conceptual error implicit in this transformation?

b) Show how you could accomplish the transformation in good yield?

14-19 X and Y are constitutional isomers of molecular formula C3H6O. Given the following results with four chemical test, propose structures and assign IUPAC names for X and Y.

	$SOCl_2$	**$K_2Cr_2O_7$**	**Br_2 (liquid)**	**Tollens' reagent**
Compound X	No Rxn	Orange -> Green	No Rxn	No Rxn
Compound Y	Bubbles	Orange -> Green	Decolorize	Grey precipitate of Silver

14-20 The Williamson ether synthesis converts an alkyl halide or tosylate to an ether. Would the following synthesis be possible? If not, explain why not and show an alternative synthesis that would be more likely to work.

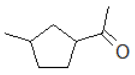


13.18: Additional Exercises Part 2 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 2

14-1

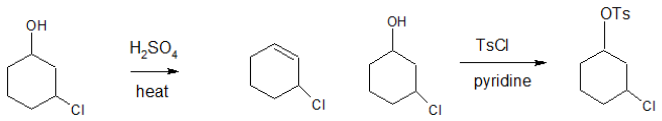
C.



1-(3-methylcyclopentyl)ethan-1-one

14-2

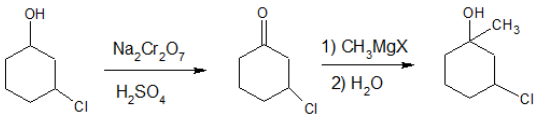
(a) (b)



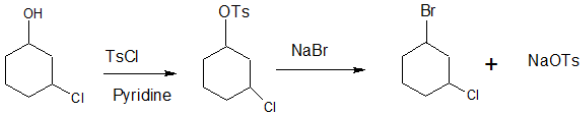
(c) (d)



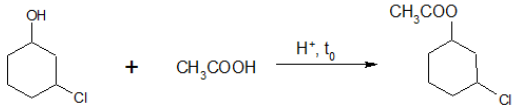
(e)



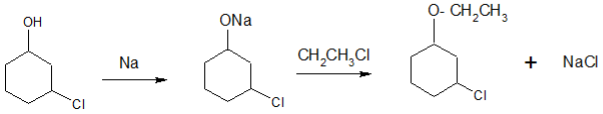
(f)



(g)

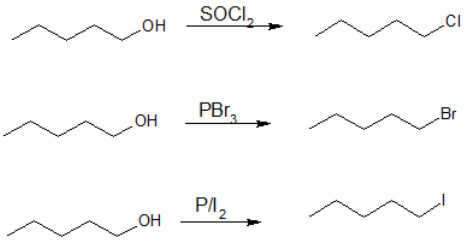


(h)

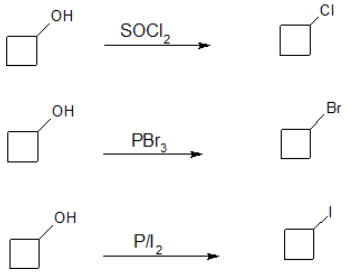


14-3

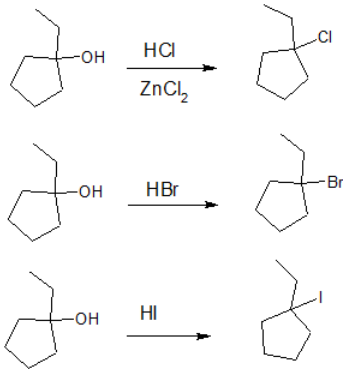
(a)


OH
SOCl2
Cl
OH
PBr3
Br
OH
P/I2
I

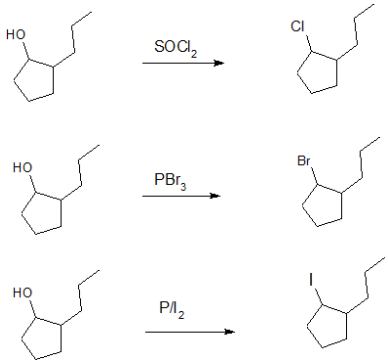
(b)


OH
SOCl2
Cl
OH
PBr3
Br
OH
P/I2
I

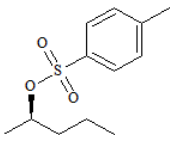
(c)

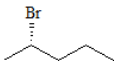

OH
HCl
ZnCl2
Cl
OH
HBr
Br
OH
HI
I

(d)

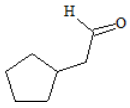

HO
SOCl2
Cl
HO
PBr3
Br
HO
P/I2
I

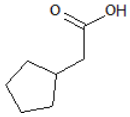
14-4

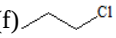
(a) 
O
S
O
O

(b) 

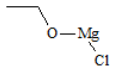
(c) 

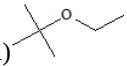
(d) 

(e) 

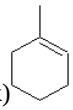
(f) 

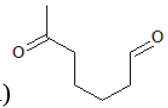
(g) 

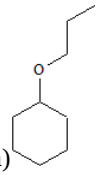
(h) 

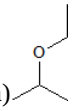
(i) 

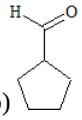
(j) 

(k) 

(l) 

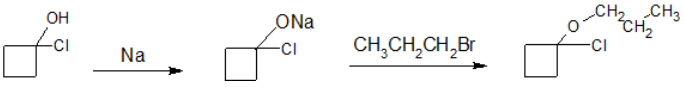
(m) 

(n) 

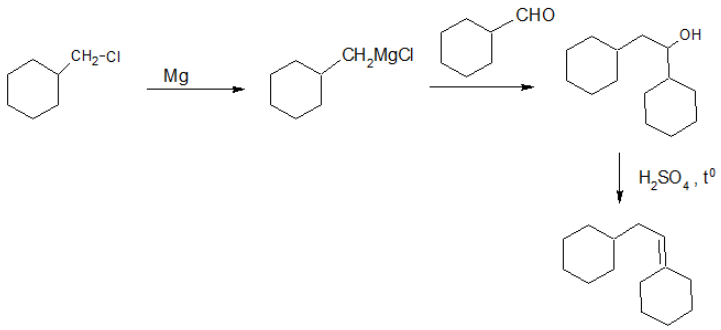
(o) 

(p) 

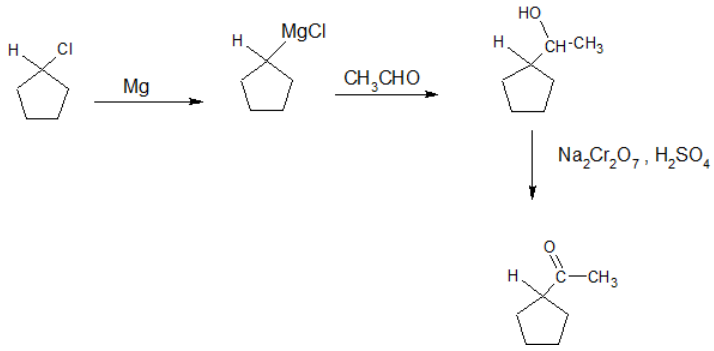
14-5

(a) 

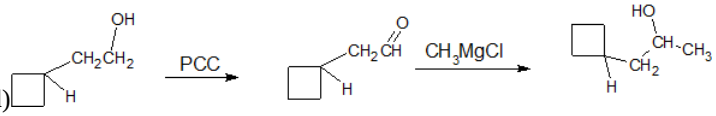
(b)



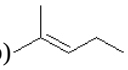
(c)

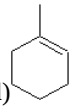
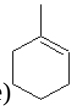
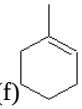


(d)



14-6

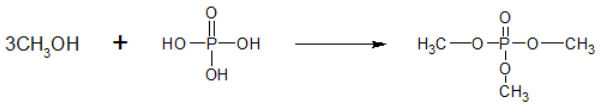
(a)  (b)  (c) 

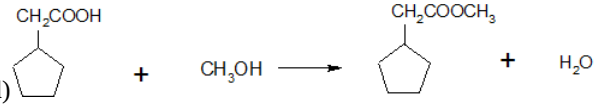
(d)  (e)  (f) 

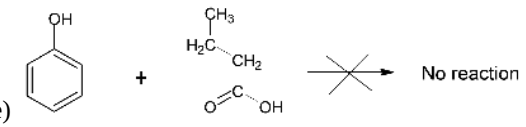
14-7

(a) $CH_3CH_2COOH + CH_3CH_2CH_2OH \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2COOCH_2CH_2CH_3$

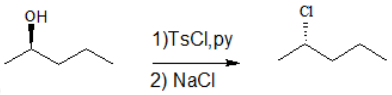
(b) $HNO_3 + CH_3CH_2OH \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2ONO_2 + H_2O$

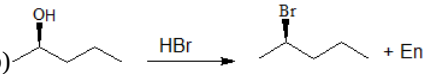
(c) 

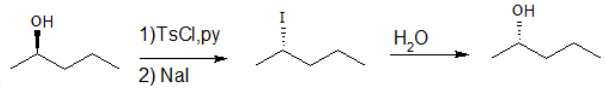
(d) 

(e) 

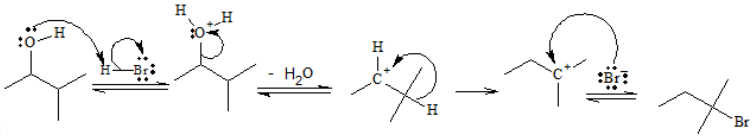
14-8

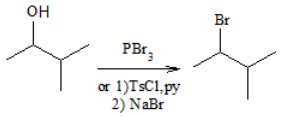
(a) 

(b) 

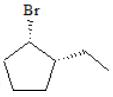
(c) 

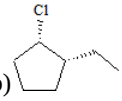
14-9

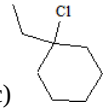
(a) 

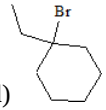
(b) 

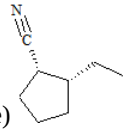
14-10

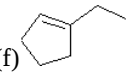
(a) 

(b) 

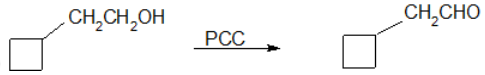
(c) 

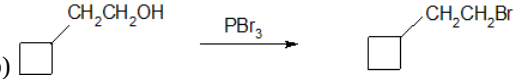
(d) 

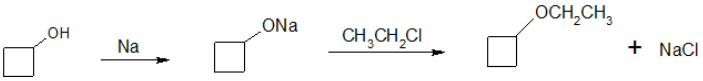
(e) 

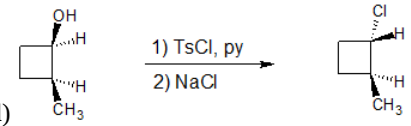
(f) 

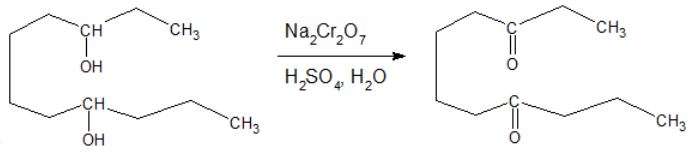
14-11

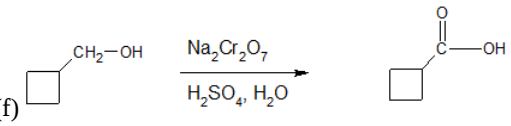
(a) 

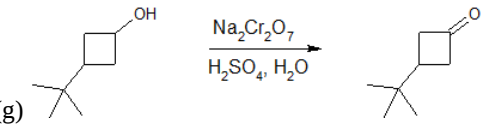
(b) 

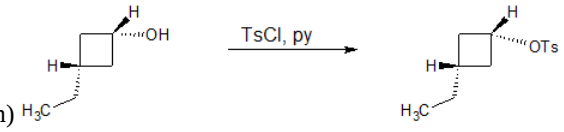
(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

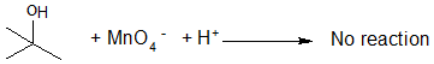
(g) 

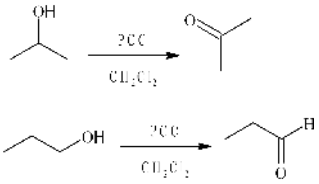
(h) 

14-12

(a) We can use potassium permanganate solution to distinguish between 2-propanol and 2-methyl-2-propanol. In acidic condition, KMnO4 oxidizes 2-propanol into acetone which forms the MnO2 brown precipitate and vanishes KMnO4 purple. As tertiary alcohol cannot be oxidized, 2-methyl-2-propanol remains purple.



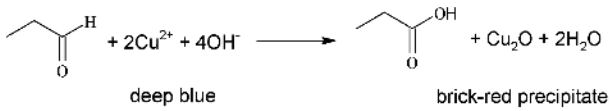


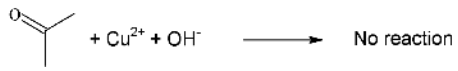


(b) 1-propanol and 2-propanol first need to be oxidized into propanal and acetone respectively.

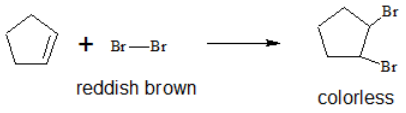
Note: we use pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) in methylene chloride CH2Cl2 to produce aldehyde without further oxidation.

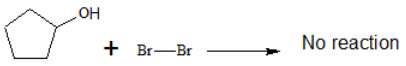
Fehling's test then can be used to determine the presence of an aldehyde. Propanal reacts with Fehling's reagent (Cu2+ in basic solution), forming a brick-red precipitate Cu2O, while acetone cannot react to Fehling's solution, remaining a deep transparent blue color.





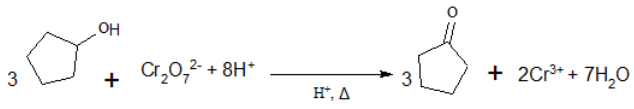
(c) We can use Bromine test to distinguished between cyclopentanol and cyclopentene. Bromine reacts rapidly with cyclopentene, in which the reddish brown color disappears quickly without forming HBr gas bubble. Cyclopentanol does not react with bromine.

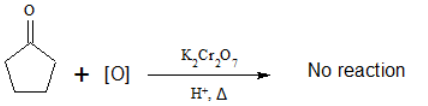




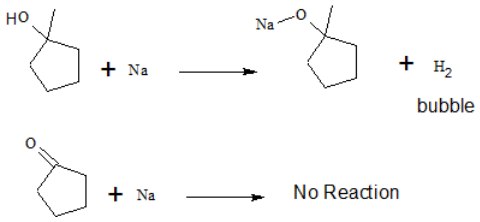
(d) Besides KMnO4, K2Cr2O7 in acidic condition is another oxidizing agent that can be used to distinguish between cyclopentanol and cyclopentanone. Acidified K2Cr2O7 oxidizes cyclopentanol into cyclopentanone. Evidence for the reaction is the orange

solution (Cr2O72-) turns green solution (Cr3+).
1-cyclopentylethanone cannot be oxidized, remaining the orange solution.



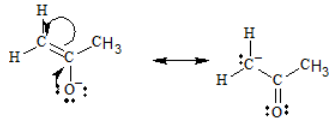


(e) Sodium metal can be used to distinguish between cyclopentanone and 1-methylcyclopentanol. 1-methylcyclopentanol reacts with Na, forming sodium 1-methylcyclopentanolate and releasing H2 bubbles. Cyclopentanone does not react with sodium metal.

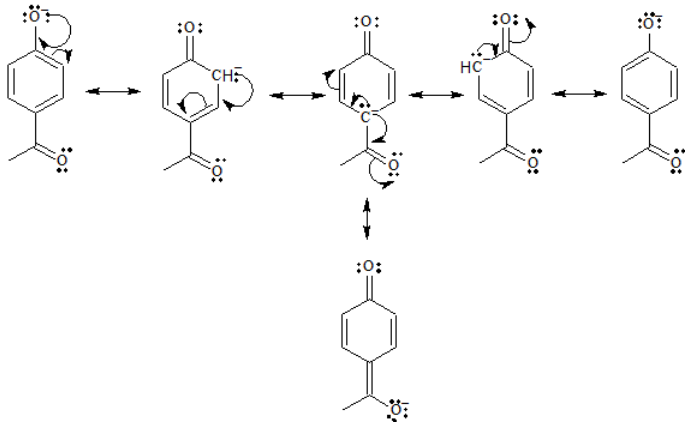


14-13

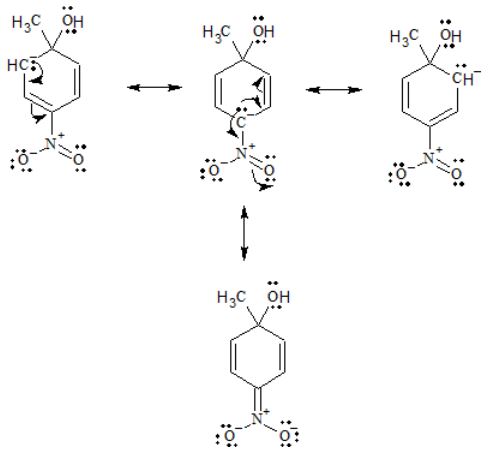
(a)



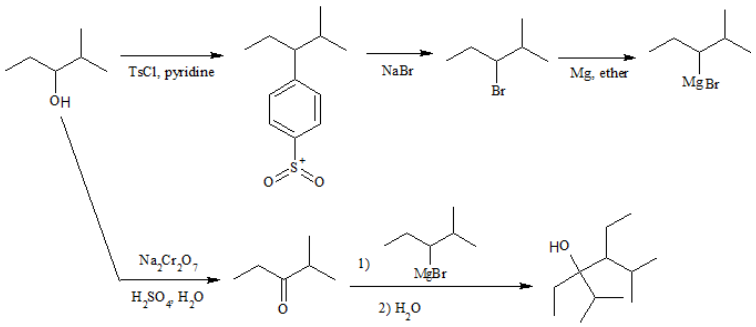
(b)



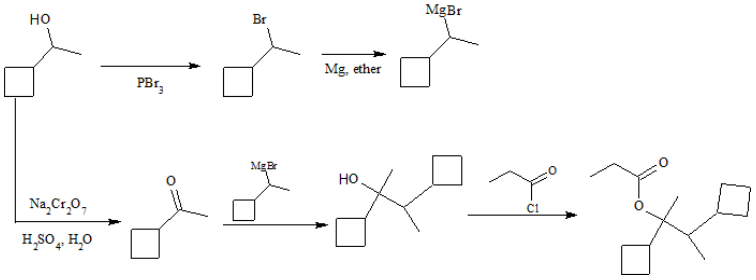
(c)



14-14

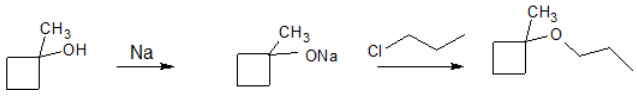


14-15

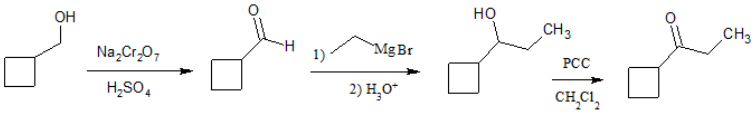


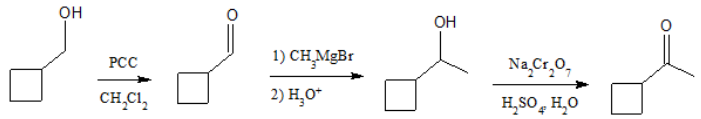
14-16

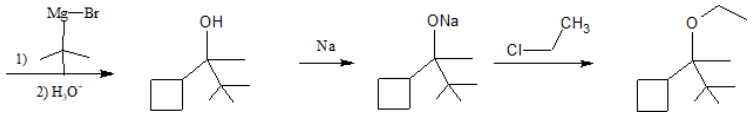
(a)



(b)

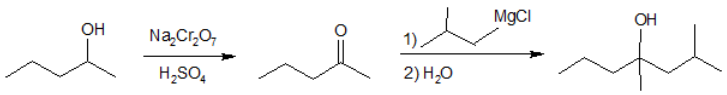



OH
PCC
CH_2Cl_2
O
1) CH_3MgBr
2) H_3O^+
OH
$Na_2Cr_2O_7$
H_2SO_4, H_2O
O

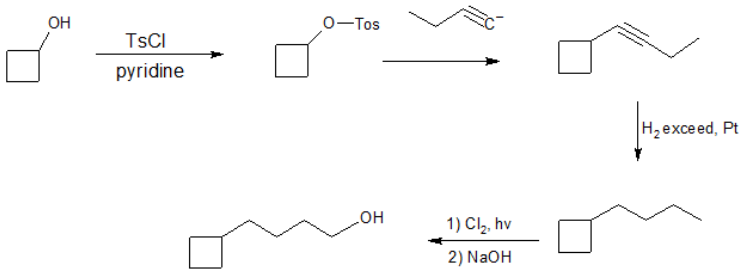

Mg—Br
1)
2) H_3O^-
OH
Na
ONa
Cl
CH_3
O

(c)

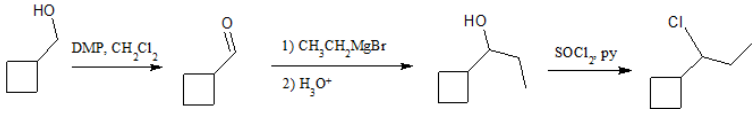
(d)


OH
$Na_2Cr_2O_7$
H_2SO_4
O
1)
MgCl
2) H_2O
OH

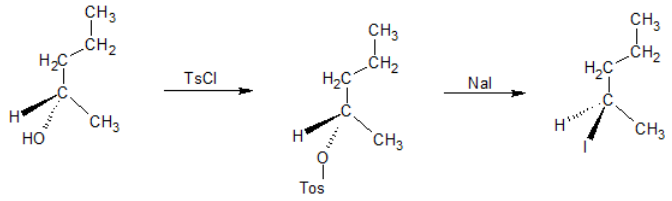
(e)


OH
TsCl
pyridine
O—Tos
H_2 exceed, Pt
OH
1) Cl_2, hv
2) NaOH

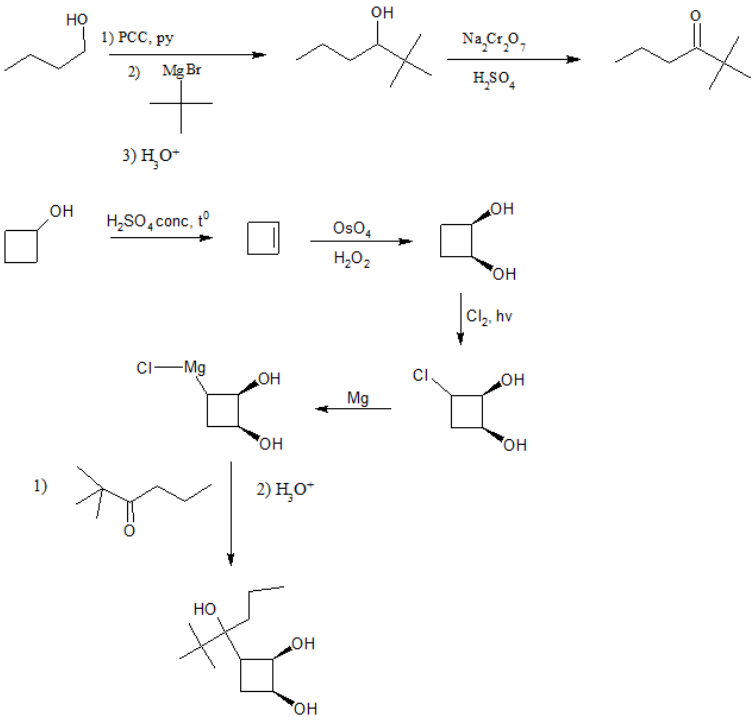
(f)


HO
DMP, CH_2Cl_2
O
1) CH_3CH_2MgBr
2) H_3O^+
HO
$SOCl_2$, py
Cl

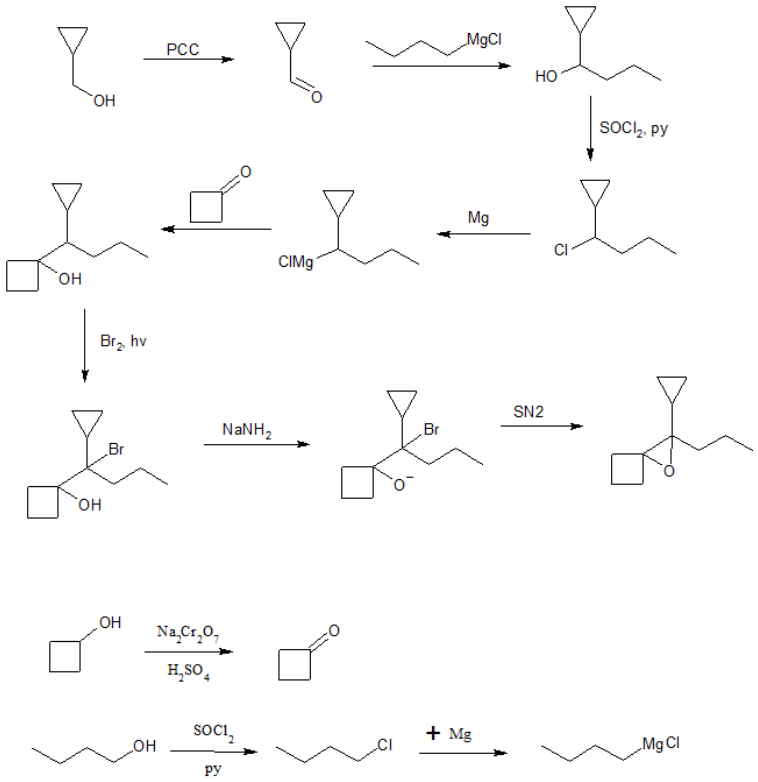
(g)


CH_3
CH_2
H_2C
C
H
HO
CH_3
TsCl
CH_3
CH_2
H_2C
C
H
O
Tos
CH_3
NaI
CH_3
CH_2
H_2C
C
H
I
CH_3

(h)



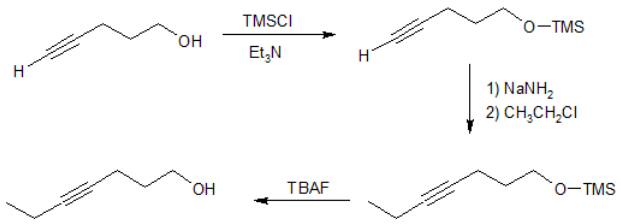
14-17



14-18

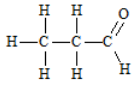
a) Alcohol functional group typically has pKa of 16 while the pKa of a terminal alkyne is usually about 25. The strong base NaNH2 would deprotonate the stronger acid, which in this case is the terminal alkyne. The resulting alkoxide then react with the alkyl halide CH3CH2Cl

b)



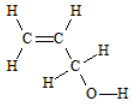
14-19

Compound X



propanal

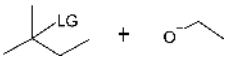
Compound Y



prop-2-en-1-ol

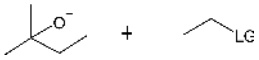
14-20

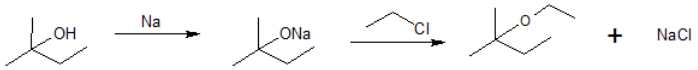
Williamson ether synthesis is an SN2 reaction, which favors strong nucleophile and a primary substrate for back-side attack. Since a tertiary alcohol is given, the resulting alkyl halide is also tertiary, which is sterically hindered for SN2 reaction to occur.



The alkoxide then would function as a base, and an elimination reaction would happen instead of SN2 reaction.

An alternative synthesis that is more likely to occur involving the reaction between a tertiary alkoxide and a primary alkyl halide:





13.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 2 is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

14: Infrared Spectroscopy and Mass Spectrometry

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter and completing ALL the exercises, a student can be able to

- correlate regions of the electromagnetic spectrum to spectroscopic techniques - refer to section 11.1
- explain how an IR spectrometer works and the IR region interacts with organic compounds - refer to section 11.2
- explain the role of asymmetry in IR absorption - refer to section 11.3
- interpret IR spectra - refer to section 11.4, 11.5, and 11.6
- expalin how a mass spectrometer works - refer to section 11.7
- explain the source of the base peak and molecular ion in a mass spectrum - refer to section 11.7
- correlate bond strength to fragmentation patterns - refer to section 11.8
- use fragmentation patterns to elucidate structural features of organic compounds - refer to section 11.9
- explain how high-resolution mass can be used to determine chemical formulas - refer to section 11.10

14.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum and Spectroscopy

14.2: Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy

14.3: IR-Active and IR-Inactive Vibrations

14.4: Interpretting IR Spectra

14.5: Infrared Spectra of Some Common Functional Groups

14.6: Summary and Tips to Distinguish between Carbonyl Functional Groups

Template:HideTOC

14: Infrared Spectroscopy and Mass Spectrometry is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum and Spectroscopy

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. write a brief paragraph discussing the nature of electromagnetic radiation.
2. write the equations that relate energy to frequency, frequency to wavelength and energy to wavelength, and perform calculations using these relationships.
3. describe, in general terms, how absorption spectra are obtained.

Key Terms

Make certain that you can define, and use in context, the key terms below.

- electromagnetic radiation
- electromagnetic spectrum
- hertz (Hz)
- infrared spectroscopy
- photon
- quantum

Study Notes

From your studies in general chemistry or physics, you should be familiar with the idea that electromagnetic radiation is a form of energy that possesses wave character and travels through space at a speed of $3.00 \times 10^{8} \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$. However, such radiation also displays some of the properties of particles, and on occasion it is more convenient to think of electromagnetic radiation as consisting of a stream of particles called *photons*.

In spectroscopy, the frequency of the electromagnetic radiation being used is usually expressed in *hertz* (*Hz*), that is, cycles per second. Note that $1 \text{ Hz} = \text{s}^{-1}$.

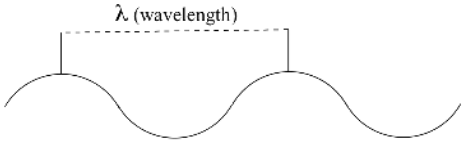
A *quantum* is a small, definite quantity of electromagnetic radiation whose energy is directly proportional to its frequency. (The plural is "quanta.") If you wish, you can read about the properties of electromagnetic radiation and the relationships among wavelength, frequency and energy, or refer to your general chemistry textbook if you still have it.

Note also that in SI units, Planck's constant is $6.626 \times 10^{-34} \text{J} \cdot \text{s}$.

The electromagnetic spectrum

Electromagnetic radiation, as you may recall from a previous chemistry or physics class, is composed of electrical and magnetic waves which oscillate on perpendicular planes. Visible light is electromagnetic radiation. So are the gamma rays that are emitted by spent nuclear fuel, the x-rays that a doctor uses to visualize your bones, the ultraviolet light that causes a painful sunburn when you forget to apply sun block, the infrared light that the army uses in night-vision goggles, the microwaves that you use to heat up your frozen burritos, and the radio-frequency waves that bring music to anybody who is old-fashioned enough to still listen to FM or AM radio.

Just like ocean waves, electromagnetic waves travel in a defined direction. While the speed of ocean waves can vary, however, the speed of electromagnetic waves – commonly referred to as the speed of light – is essentially a constant, approximately 300 million meters per second. This is true whether we are talking about gamma radiation or visible light. Obviously, there is a big difference between these two types of waves – we are surrounded by the latter for more than half of our time on earth, whereas we hopefully never become exposed to the former to any significant degree. The different properties of the various types of electromagnetic radiation are due to differences in their wavelengths, and the corresponding differences in their energies: *shorter wavelengths correspond to higher energy.*



High-energy radiation (such as gamma- and x-rays) is composed of very short waves – as short as 10^{-16} meter from crest to crest. Longer waves are far less energetic, and thus are less dangerous to living things. Visible light waves are in the range of 400 – 700 nm (nanometers, or 10^{-9} m), while radio waves can be several hundred meters in length.

The notion that electromagnetic radiation contains a quantifiable amount of energy can perhaps be better understood if we talk about light as a stream of *particles*, called **photons**, rather than as a wave. (Recall the concept known as 'wave-particle duality': at the quantum level, wave behavior and particle behavior become indistinguishable, and very small particles have an observable 'wavelength'). If we describe light as a stream of photons, the energy of a particular wavelength can be expressed as:

$$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} \tag{12.5.1}$$

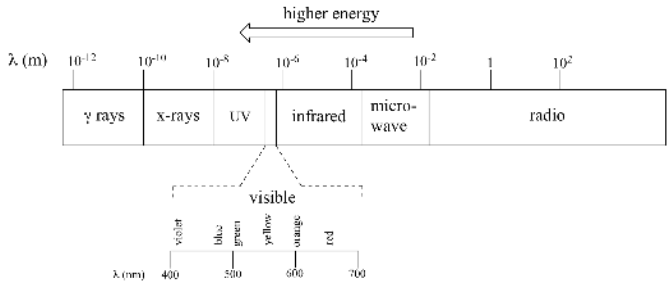
where E is energy in kcal/mol, **λ** (the Greek letter *lambda*) is wavelength in meters, *c* is 3.00 x 10^{8} m/s (the speed of light), and *h* is 9.537 x 10^{-14} kcal•s•mol^{-1}, a number known as Planck's constant.

Because electromagnetic radiation travels at a constant speed, each wavelength corresponds to a given frequency, which is the number of times per second that a crest passes a given point. Longer waves have lower frequencies, and shorter waves have higher frequencies. Frequency is commonly reported in hertz (Hz), meaning 'cycles per second', or 'waves per second'. The standard unit for frequency is s^{-1}.

When talking about electromagnetic waves, we can refer either to wavelength or to frequency - the two values are interconverted using the simple expression:

$$\lambda\nu = c \tag{12.5.2}$$

where **ν** (the Greek letter '*nu*') is frequency in s^{-1}. Visible red light with a wavelength of 700 nm, for example, has a frequency of 4.29 x 10^{14} Hz, and an energy of 40.9 kcal per mole of photons. The full range of electromagnetic radiation wavelengths is referred to as the **electromagnetic spectrum**.



Notice in the figure above that visible light takes up just a narrow band of the full spectrum. White light from the sun or a light bulb is a mixture of all of the visible wavelengths. You see the visible region of the electromagnetic spectrum divided into its different wavelengths every time you see a rainbow: violet light has the shortest wavelength, and red light has the longest.

Example

Visible light has a wavelength range of about 400-700 nm. What is the corresponding frequency range? What is the corresponding energy range, in kcal/mol of photons?

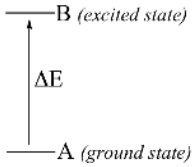
Solution

Molecular spectroscopy – the basic idea

In a spectroscopy experiment, electromagnetic radiation of a specified range of wavelengths is allowed to pass through a sample containing a compound of interest. The sample molecules absorb energy from some of the wavelengths, and as a result jump from a

low energy ‘ground state’ to some higher energy ‘excited state’. Other wavelengths are *not* absorbed by the sample molecule, so they pass on through. A detector on the other side of the sample records which wavelengths were absorbed, and to what extent they were absorbed.

Here is the key to molecular spectroscopy: *a given molecule will specifically absorb only those wavelengths which have energies that correspond to the energy difference of the transition that is occurring.* Thus, if the transition involves the molecule jumping from ground state A to excited state B, with an energy difference of **Δ**E, the molecule will specifically absorb radiation with wavelength that corresponds to **Δ**E, while allowing other wavelengths to pass through unabsorbed.



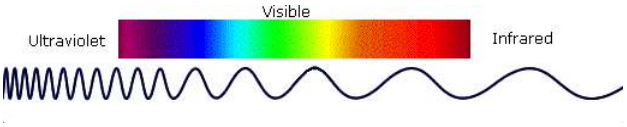
By observing which wavelengths a molecule absorbs, and to what extent it absorbs them, we can gain information about the nature of the energetic transitions that a molecule is able to undergo, and thus information about its structure.

14.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum and Spectroscopy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.2: Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy

Introduction

Photon energies associated with the infrared (from 1 to 15 kcal/mole) are not large enough to excite electrons, but may induce vibrational excitation of covalently bonded atoms and groups.

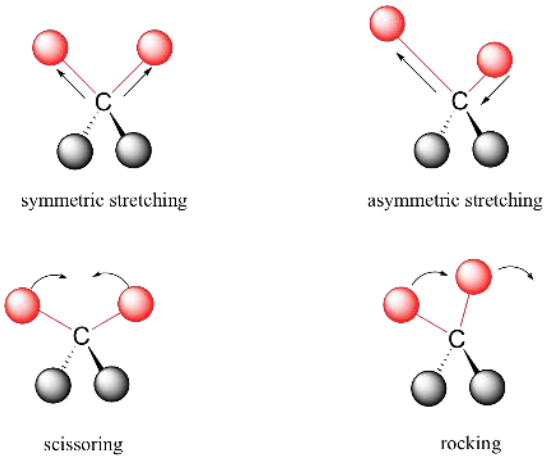


The covalent bonds in molecules are not rigid sticks or rods, such as found in molecular model kits, but are more like stiff springs that can be stretched and bent. The mobile nature of organic molecules was noted in the chapter concerning conformational isomers. We must now recognize that, in addition to the facile rotation of groups about single bonds, molecules experience a wide variety of vibrational motions, characteristic of their component atoms. Consequently, virtually all organic compounds will absorb infrared radiation that corresponds in energy to these vibrations. Infrared spectrometers, similar in principle to the UV-Visible spectrometer described elsewhere, permit chemists to obtain absorption spectra of compounds that are a unique reflection of their molecular structure.

Vibrational Spectroscopy

A molecule composed of n-atoms has 3n degrees of freedom, six of which are translations and rotations of the molecule itself. This leaves 3n-6 degrees of vibrational freedom (3n-5 if the molecule is linear). Vibrational modes are often given descriptive names, such as stretching, bending, scissoring, rocking and twisting. The four-atom molecule of formaldehyde, the gas phase spectrum of which is shown below, provides an example of these terms. If a ball & stick model of formaldehyde is not displayed to the right of the spectrum, press the **view ball&stick model** button on the right. We expect six fundamental vibrations (12 minus 6), and these have been assigned to the spectrum absorptions. To see the formaldehyde molecule display a vibration, click one of the buttons under the spectrum, or click on one of the absorption peaks in the spectrum.

Covalent bonds in organic molecules are not rigid sticks – rather, they behave more like springs. At room temperature, organic molecules are always in motion, as their bonds stretch, bend, and twist. These complex vibrations can be broken down mathematically into individual **vibrational modes**, a few of which are illustrated below.

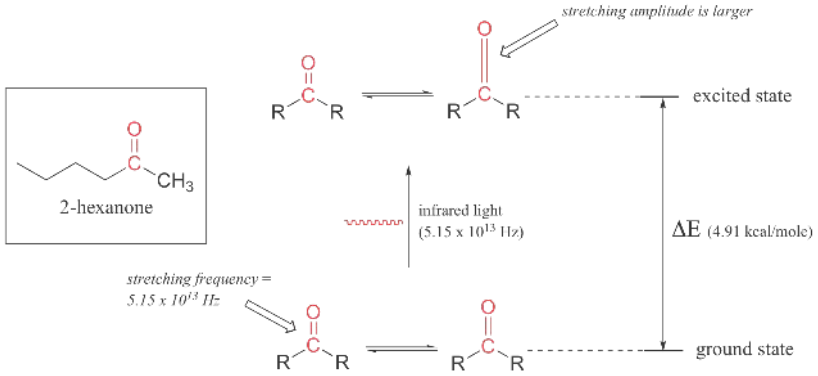


The energy of molecular vibration is *quantized* rather than continuous, meaning that a molecule can only stretch and bend at certain 'allowed' frequencies. If a molecule is exposed to electromagnetic radiation that matches the frequency of one of its vibrational modes, it will in most cases absorb energy from the radiation and jump to a higher vibrational energy state - what this means is that the *amplitude* of the vibration will increase, but the vibrational *frequency* will remain the same. The difference in energy between the two vibrational states is equal to the energy associated with the wavelength of radiation that was absorbed. It turns out that it is

the *infrared* region of the electromagnetic spectrum which contains frequencies corresponding to the vibrational frequencies of organic bonds.

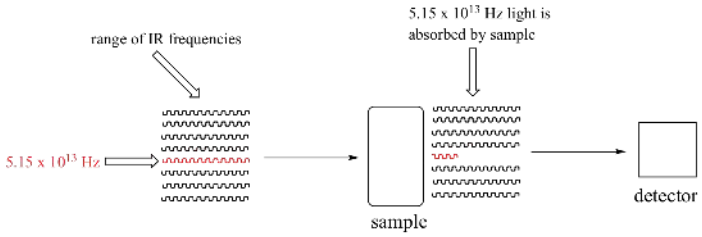
An IR Spectrum

We will use a ketone sample to illustrate this process. The sample is irradiated with infrared light and the carbonyl bond will specifically absorb light with this same frequency, which by equations 4.1 and 4.2 corresponds to a wavelength of 5.83 x 10^{-6} m and an energy of 4.91 kcal/mol. When the carbonyl bond absorbs this energy, it jumps up to an excited vibrational state.



The value of **Δ**E - the energy difference between the low energy (ground) and high energy (excited) vibrational states - is equal to 4.91 kcal/mol, the same as the energy associated with the absorbed light frequency. The molecule does not remain in its excited vibrational state for very long, but quickly releases energy to the surrounding environment in form of heat, and returns to the ground state.

With an instrument called an infrared spectrophotometer, we can 'see' this vibrational transition. In the spectrophotometer, infrared light with frequencies ranging from about 10^{13} to 10^{14} Hz is passed though our sample of cyclohexane. Most frequencies pass right through the sample and are recorded by a detector on the other side.

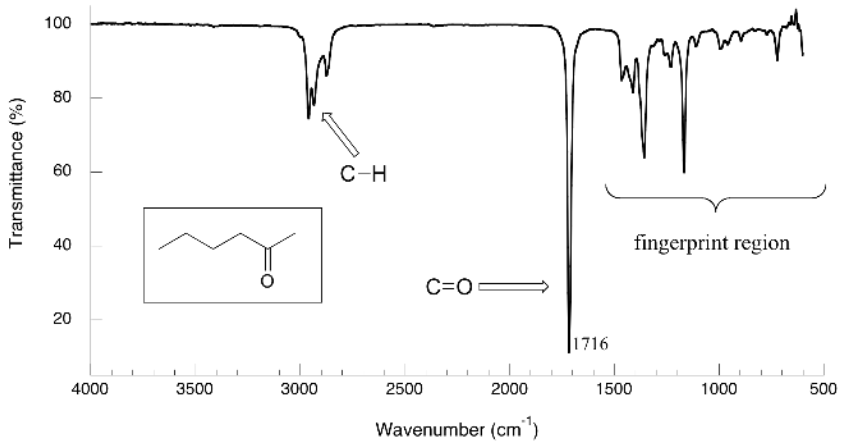


Our 5.15 x 10^{13} Hz carbonyl stretching frequency, however, is absorbed by the 2-hexanone sample, and so the detector records that the intensity of this frequency, after having passed through the sample, is something less than 100% of its initial intensity.

The vibrations of a 2-hexanone molecule are not, of course, limited to the simple stretching of the carbonyl bond. The various carbon-carbon bonds also stretch and bend, as do the carbon-hydrogen bonds, and all of these vibrational modes also absorb different frequencies of infrared light.

The power of infrared spectroscopy arises from the observation that *different functional groups have different characteristic absorption frequencies*. The carbonyl bond in a ketone, as we saw with our 2-hexanone example, typically absorbs in the range of 5.11 - 5.18 x 10^{13} Hz, depending on the molecule. The carbon-carbon triple bond of an alkyne, on the other hand, absorbs in the range 6.30 - 6.80 x 10^{13} Hz. The technique is therefore very useful as a means of identifying which functional groups are present in a molecule of interest. If we pass infrared light through an unknown sample and find that it absorbs in the carbonyl frequency range but not in the alkyne range, we can infer that the molecule contains a carbonyl group but not an alkyne.

Now, let's look at some actual output from IR spectroscopy experiments. Below is the IR spectrum for 2-hexanone.



There are a number of things that need to be explained in order for you to understand what it is that we are looking at. On the horizontal axis we see IR wavelengths expressed in terms of a unit called **wavenumber** (cm^{-1}), which tells us how many waves fit into one centimeter. On the vertical axis we see '**% transmittance**', which tells us how strongly light was absorbed at each frequency (100% transmittance means no absorption occurred at that frequency). The solid line traces the values of % transmittance for every wavelength – the 'peaks' (which are actually pointing down) show regions of strong absorption. For some reason, it is typical in IR spectroscopy to report wavenumber values rather than wavelength (in meters) or frequency (in Hz). The 'upside down' vertical axis, with absorbance peaks pointing down rather than up, is also a curious convention in IR spectroscopy. We wouldn't want to make things too easy for you!

A calculator for interconverting these frequency and wavelength values is provided on the right. Simply enter the value to be converted in the appropriate box, press "Calculate" and the equivalent number will appear in the empty box.
Infrared spectra may be obtained from samples in all phases (liquid, solid and gaseous). Liquids are usually examined as a thin film sandwiched between two polished salt plates (note that glass absorbs infrared radiation, whereas NaCl is transparent). If solvents are used to dissolve solids, care must be taken to avoid obscuring important spectral regions by solvent absorption. Perchlorinated solvents such as carbon tetrachloride, chloroform and tetrachloroethene are commonly used. Alternatively, solids may either be incorporated in a thin KBr disk, prepared under high pressure, or mixed with a little non-volatile liquid and ground to a paste (or mull) that is smeared between salt plates.

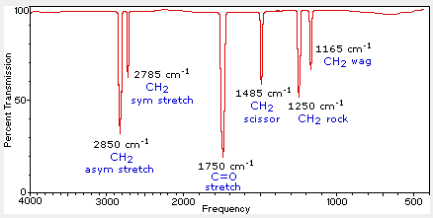
Frequency - Wavelength Converter

Frequency in cm^{-1}

Calculate

Wavelength in μ

Gas Phase Infrared Spectrum of Formaldehyde, $H_2C=O$



1. View CH2 Asymmetric Stretch
   View CH2 Symmetric Stretch
   View C=O Stretch
   View CH2 Scissoring
   View CH2 Rocking
   View CH2 Wagging

O Ball&Stick Model
O Spacefill Model
O Stick Model
O Motion Off

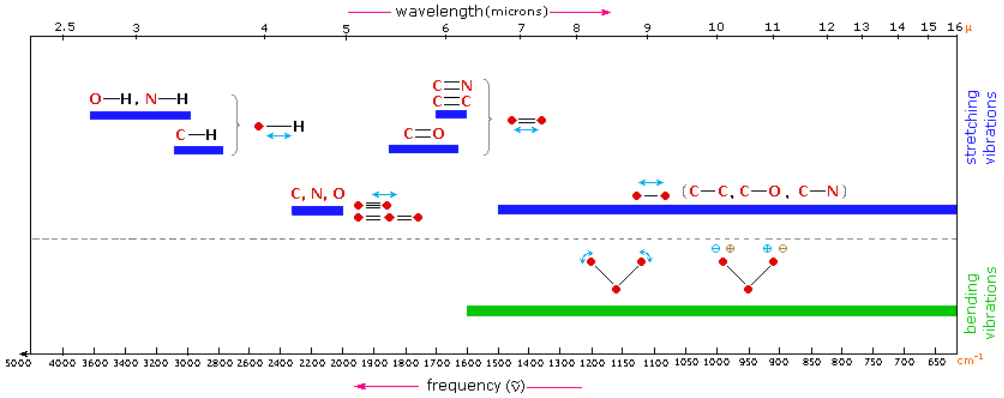
The exact frequency at which a given vibration occurs is determined by the strengths of the bonds involved and the mass of the component atoms. For a more detailed discussion of these factors Click Here. In practice, infrared spectra do not normally display separate absorption signals for each of the 3n-6 fundamental vibrational modes of a molecule. The number of observed absorptions may be increased by additive and subtractive interactions leading to combination tones and overtones of the fundamental vibrations, in much the same way that sound vibrations from a musical instrument interact. Furthermore, the number of observed absorptions may be decreased by molecular symmetry, spectrometer limitations, and spectroscopic selection rules. One selection rule that influences the intensity of infrared absorptions, is that a change in dipole moment should occur for a vibration to absorb infrared energy. Absorption bands associated with C=O bond stretching are usually very strong because a large change in the dipole takes place in that mode.

Some General Trends:

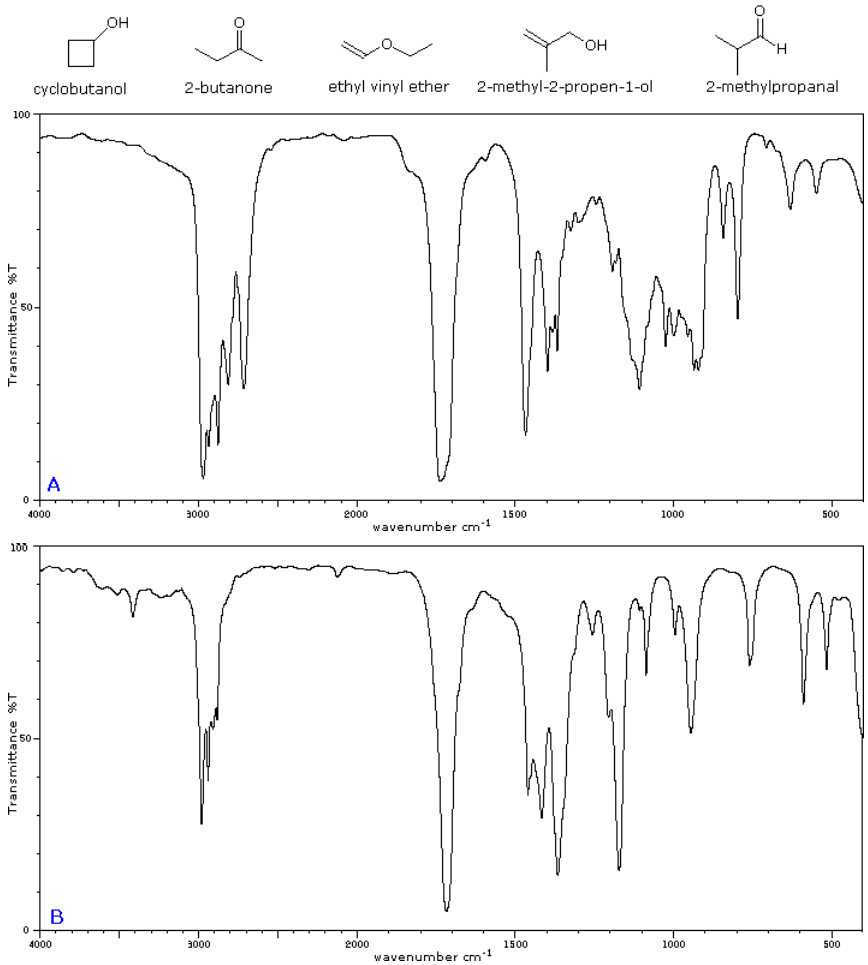
1. Stretching frequencies are higher than corresponding bending frequencies. (It is easier to bend a bond than to stretch or compress it.)
2. Bonds to hydrogen have higher stretching frequencies than those to heavier atoms.
3. Triple bonds have higher stretching frequencies than corresponding double bonds, which in turn have higher frequencies than single bonds.(Except for bonds to hydrogen).

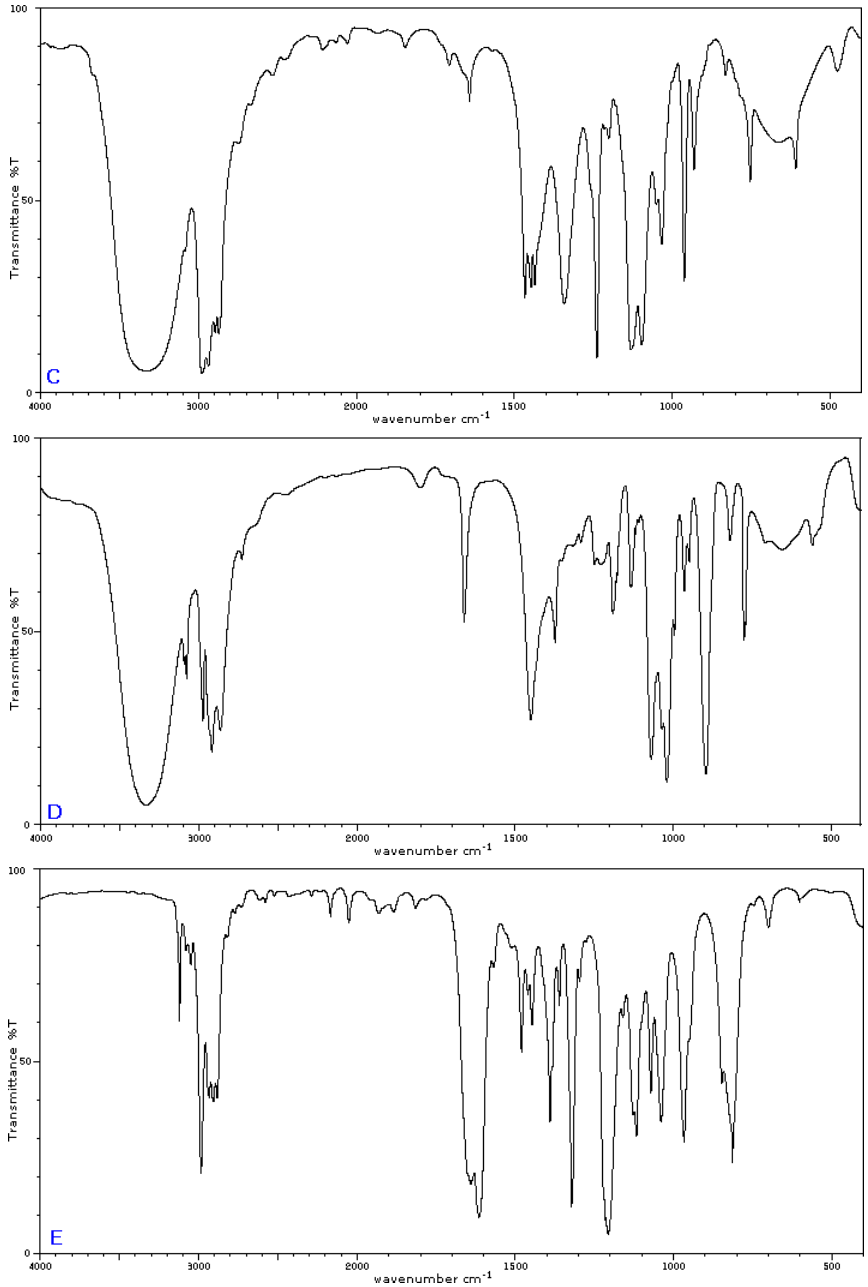
The general regions of the infrared spectrum in which various kinds of vibrational bands are observed are outlined in the following chart. Note that the blue colored sections above the dashed line refer to stretching vibrations, and the green colored band below the

line encompasses bending vibrations. The complexity of infrared spectra in the 1450 to 600 cm^{-1} region makes it difficult to assign all the absorption bands, and because of the unique patterns found there, it is often called the **fingerprint** region. Absorption bands in the 4000 to 1450 cm^{-1} region are usually due to stretching vibrations of diatomic units, and this is sometimes called the **group frequency** region.



To illustrate the usefulness of infrared absorption spectra, examples for five C_4H_8O isomers are presented below their corresponding structural formulas. Try to associate each spectrum (A - E) with one of the isomers in the row above it.





Answers

Internal Links

- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis

Contributors

- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

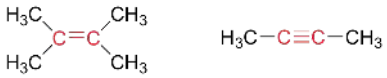
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

14.2: Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.3: IR-Active and IR-Inactive Vibrations

Some bonds absorb infrared light more strongly than others, and some bonds do not absorb at all. *In order for a vibrational mode to absorb infrared light, it must result in a periodic change in the dipole moment of the molecule*. Such vibrations are said to be **infrared active**. In general, the greater the polarity of the bond, the stronger its IR absorption. The carbonyl bond is very polar, and absorbs very strongly. The carbon-carbon triple bond in most alkynes, in contrast, is much less polar, and thus a stretching vibration does not result in a large change in the overall dipole moment of the molecule. Alkyne groups absorb rather weakly compared to carbonyls.

Some kinds of vibrations are **infrared inactive**. The stretching vibrations of completely symmetrical double and triple bonds, for example, do not result in a change in dipole moment, and therefore do not result in any absorption of light (but other bonds and vibrational modes in these molecules *do* absorb IR light).



infrared-inactive double and triple bonds

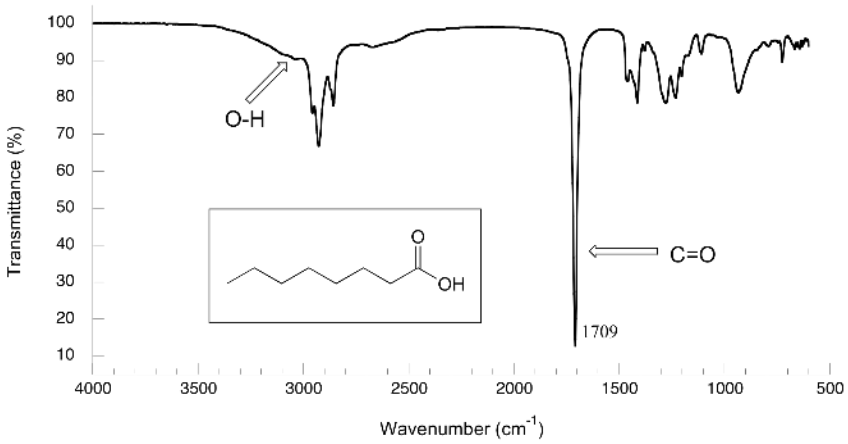
14.3: IR-Active and IR-Inactive Vibrations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.4: Interpretting IR Spectra

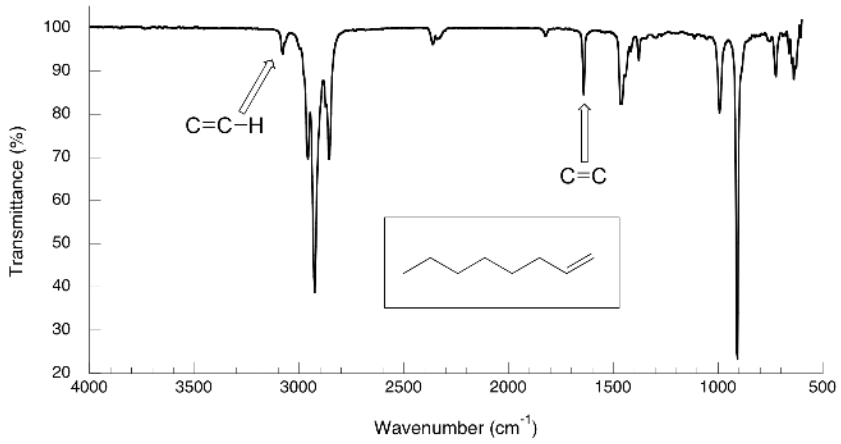
Guided IR Spectrum Interpretation

Now, let's take a look at the IR spectrum for 1-hexanol. There is a very broad 'mountain' centered at about 3400 cm^{-1}. This signal is characteristic of the O-H stretching mode of alcohols, and is a dead giveaway for the presence of an alcohol group. The breadth of this signal is a consequence of hydrogen bonding between molecules.

In the spectrum of octanoic acid we see, as expected, the characteristic carbonyl peak, this time at 1709 cm^{-1}. We also see a low, broad absorbance band that looks like an alcohol, except that it is displaced slightly to the right (long-wavelength) side of the spectrum, causing it to overlap to some degree with the C-H region. This is the characteristic carboxylic acid O-H single bond stretching absorbance.



The spectrum for 1-octene shows two peaks that are characteristic of alkenes: the one at 1642 cm^{-1} is due to stretching of the carbon-carbon double bond, and the one at 3079 cm-1 is due to stretching of the s bond between the alkene carbons and their attached hydrogens.



Alkynes have characteristic IR absorbance peaks in the range of 2100-2250 cm^{-1} due to stretching of the carbon-carbon triple bond, and terminal alkenes can be identified by their absorbance at about 3300 cm-1, due to stretching of the bond between the sp-

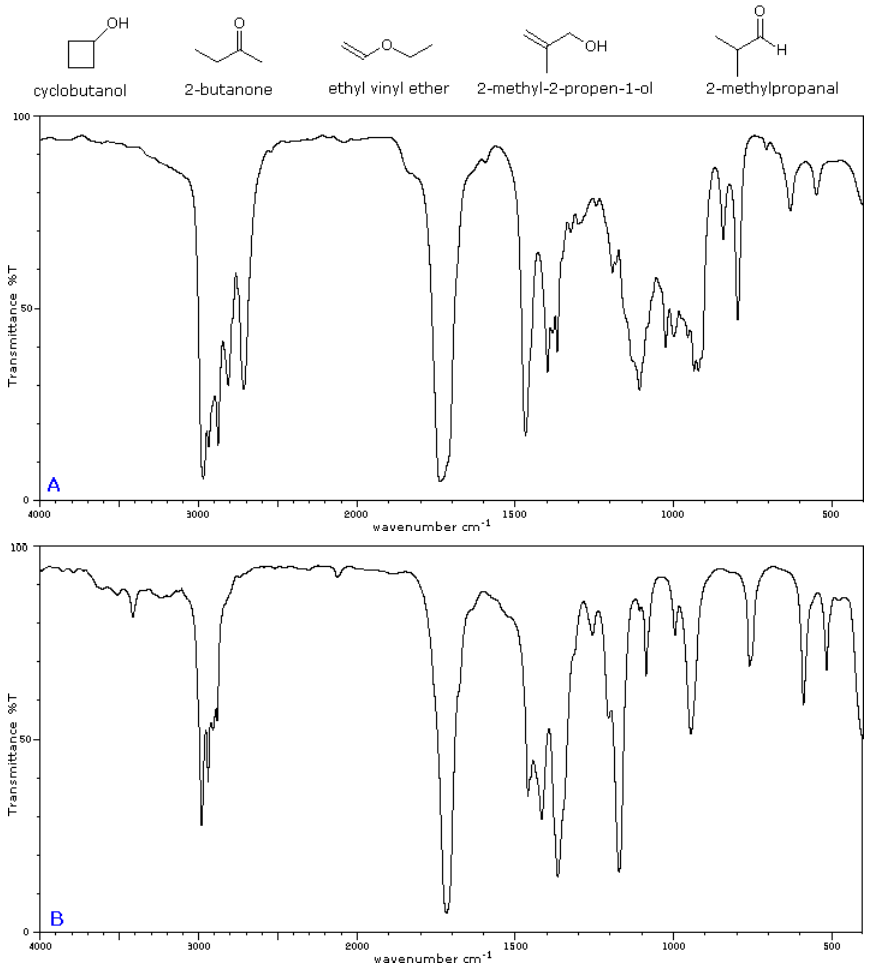
hybridized carbon and the terminal hydrogen.

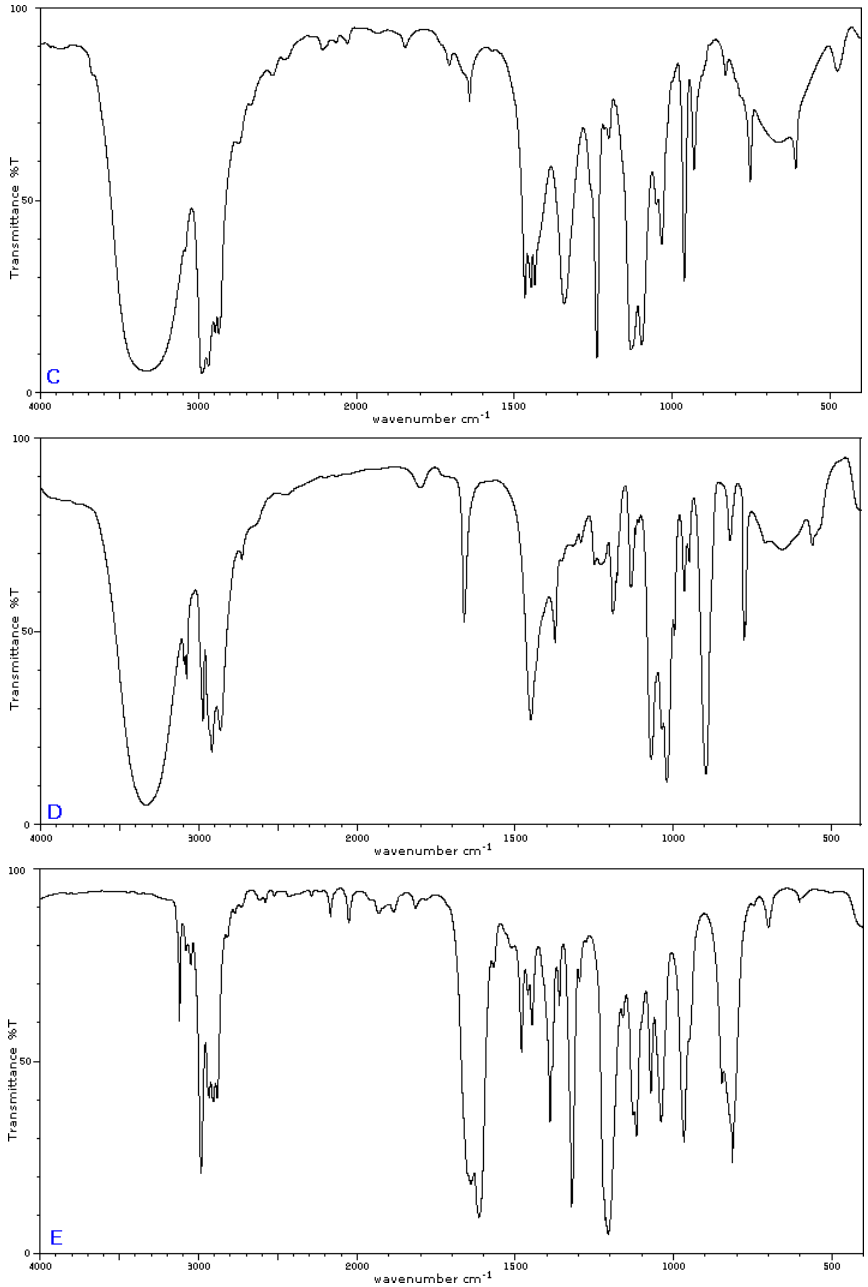
It is possible to identify other functional groups such as amines and ethers, but the characteristic peaks for these groups are considerably more subtle and/or variable, and often are overlapped with peaks from the fingerprint region. For this reason, we will limit our discussion here to the most easily recognized functional groups, which are summarized in this table.

As you can imagine, obtaining an IR spectrum for a compound will not allow us to figure out the complete structure of even a simple molecule, unless we happen to have a reference spectrum for comparison. In conjunction with other analytical methods, however, IR spectroscopy can prove to be a very valuable tool, given the information it provides about the presence or absence of key functional groups. IR can also be a quick and convenient way for a chemist to check to see if a reaction has proceeded as planned. If we were to run a reaction in which we wished to convert cyclohexanone to cyclohexanol, for example, a quick comparison of the IR spectra of starting compound and product would tell us if we had successfully converted the ketone group to an alcohol.

More examples of IR spectra

To illustrate the usefulness of infrared absorption spectra, examples for five C_4H_8O isomers are presented below their corresponding structural formulas. Try to associate each spectrum with one of the isomers in the row above it.





Exercises

Questions

Q12.7.1

What functional groups give the following signals in an IR spectrum?

A) 1700 cm^{-1}

B) 1550 cm^{-1}

C) 1700 cm^{-1} and 2510-3000 cm^{-1}

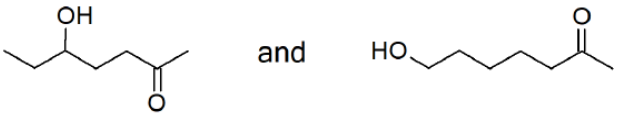
Q12.7.2

How can you distinguish the following pairs of compounds through IR analysis?

A) CH_3OH (Methanol) and $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ (Diethylether)

B) Cyclopentane and 1-pentene.

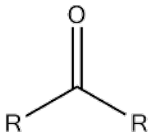
C)

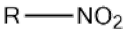


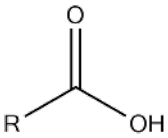
(i) (ii)

Solutions

S12.7.1

A)  Carbonyl

B)  Nitro

C)  Carboxylic Acid

S12.7.2

A) A OH peak will be present around 3300 cm^{-1} for methanol and will be absent in the ether.

B) 1-pentene will have a alkene peak around 1650 cm^{-1} for the C=C and there will be another peak around 3100 cm^{-1} for the sp^2 C-H group on the alkene

C) Cannot distinguish these two isomers. They both have the same functional groups and therefore would have the same peaks on an IR spectra.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry
- **Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis** by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

14.4: Interpretting IR Spectra is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.5: Infrared Spectra of Some Common Functional Groups

Common Group Frequencies Summary

When analyzing an IR spectrum, it is helpful to overlay the diagram below onto the spectrum with our mind to help recognize functional groups.

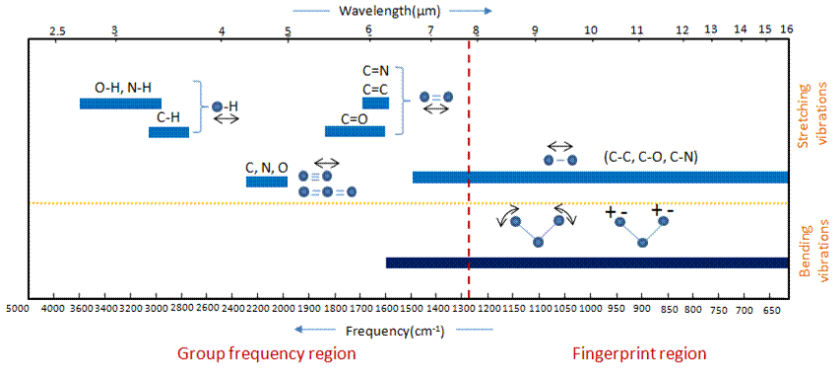


Figure 1. Group frequency and fingerprint regions of the mid-infrared spectrum

The region of the infrared spectrum from 1200 to 700 cm^{-1} is called the fingerprint region. This region is notable for the large number of infrared bands that are found there. Many different vibrations, including C-O, C-C and C-N single bond stretches, C-H bending vibrations, and some bands due to benzene rings are found in this region. The fingerprint region is often the most complex and confusing region to interpret, and is usually the last section of a spectrum to be interpreted. However, the utility of the fingerprint region is that the many bands there provide a fingerprint for a molecule.

Group Frequencies - a closer look

Detailed information about the infrared absorptions observed for various bonded atoms and groups is usually presented in tabular form. The following table provides a collection of such data for the most common functional groups. Following the color scheme of the chart, stretching absorptions are listed in the blue-shaded section and bending absorptions in the green shaded part. **More detailed descriptions for certain groups (e.g. alkenes, arenes, alcohols, amines & carbonyl compounds) may be viewed by clicking on the functional class name**. Since most organic compounds have C-H bonds, a useful rule is that absorption in the 2850 to 3000 cm^{-1} is due to sp^3 C-H stretching; whereas, absorption above 3000 cm^{-1} is from sp^2 C-H stretching or sp C-H stretching if it is near 3300 cm^{-1}.

Stretching Vibrations	Bending Vibrations

Functional Class	Range (cm^{-1})	Intensity	Assignment	Range (cm^{-1})	Intensity	Assignment
Alkanes	2850-3000	str	CH_3, CH_2 & CH 2 or 3 bands	1350-1470 1370-1390 720-725	med med wk	CH_2 & CH_3 deformat CH_3 deformation CH_2 rocking
Alkenes	3020-3100 1630-1680 1900-2000	med var str	=C-H & $=CH_2$ (usually sharp) C=C (symmetry reduces intensity) C=C asymmetric stretch	880-995 780-850 675-730	str med med	=C-H & $=CH_2$ (out-of-plane bending) cis-RCH=CHR
Alkynes	3300 2100-2250	str var	C-H (usually sharp) C≡C (symmetry reduces intensity)	600-700	str	C-H deformation
Arenes	3030 1600 & 1500	var med-wk	C-H (may be several bands) C=C (in ring) (2 bands) (3 if conjugated)	690-900	str-med	C-H bending & ring puckering
Alcohols & Phenols	3580-3650 3200-3550 970-1250	var str str	O-H (free), usually sharp O-H (H-bonded), usually broad C-O	1330-1430 650-770	med var-wk	O-H bending (in-plane) O-H bend (out-of-plane)
Amines	3400-3500 (dil. soln.) 3300-3400 (dil. soln.) 1000-1250	wk wk med	N-H (1°-amines), 2 bands N-H (2°-amines) C-N	1550-1650 660-900	med-str var	NH_2 scissoring (1°-amines) NH_2 & N-H wagging (shifts on H-bonding)
Aldehydes & Ketones	2690-2840(2 bands) 1720-1740 1710-1720					
med str str str str str str	C-H (aldehyde C-H) C=O (saturated aldehyde) C=O (saturated ketone) aryl ketone α, β-unsaturation cyclopentanone cyclobutanone	1350-1360 1400-1450 1100	str str med	α-CH_3 bending α-CH_2 bending C-C-C bending		
Carboxylic Acids & Derivatives	2500-3300 (acids) 1705-1720 (acids) 1210-1320 (acids)	overlap C-H				
str str med-str str	O-H (very broad) C=O (H-bonded) O-C (sometimes 2-peaks)	1395-1440	med	C-O-H bending		

str str str str str	C=O C=O (2-bands) O-C C=O O-C (2-bands) C=O (amide I band)	 1590-1650 1500-1560	 med med	 N-H (1°-amide) II band N-H (2°-amide) II band
Nitriles **Isocyanates,Isothiocyanates, Diimides, Azides & Ketenes**	2240-2260 2100-2270	med med	C≡N (sharp) -N=C=O, -N=C=S -N=C=N-, $-N_3$, C=C=O	

Recognizing Group Frequencies in IR Spectra - a very close look

Hydrocarbons

Hydrocarbons compounds contain only C-H and C-C bonds, but there is plenty of information to be obtained from the infrared spectra arising from C-H stretching and C-H bending.

In alkanes, which have very few bands, each band in the spectrum can be assigned:

- C–H stretch from 3000–2850 cm^{-1}
- C–H bend or scissoring from 1470-1450 cm^{-1}
- C–H rock, methyl from 1370-1350 cm^{-1}
- C–H rock, methyl, seen only in long chain alkanes, from 725-720 cm^{-1}

Figure 3. shows the IR spectrum of octane. Since most organic compounds have these features, these C-H vibrations are usually not noted when interpreting a routine IR spectrum. Note that the change in dipole moment with respect to distance for the C-H stretching is greater than that for others shown, which is why the C-H stretch band is the more intense.

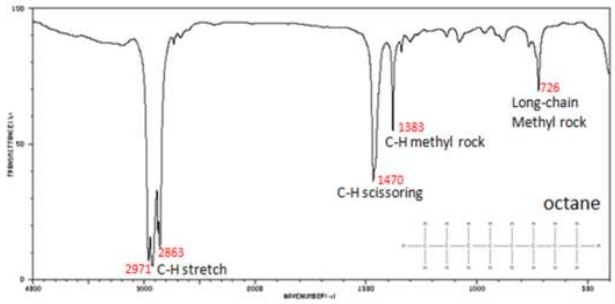


Figure 3. Infrared Spectrum of Octane

In alkenes compounds, each band in the spectrum can be assigned:

- C=C stretch from 1680-1640 cm^{-1}
- =C–H stretch from 3100-3000 cm^{-1}
- =C–H bend from 1000-650 cm^{-1}

Figure 4. shows the IR spectrum of 1-octene. As alkanes compounds, these bands are not specific and are generally not noted because they are present in almost all organic molecules.

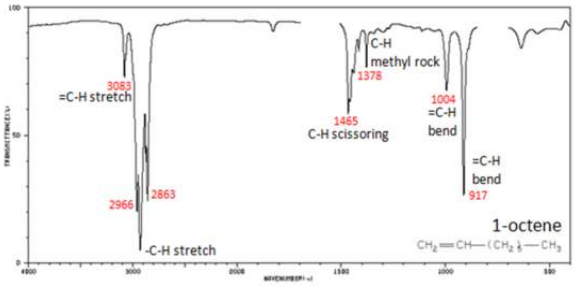


Figure 4. Infrared Spectrum of 1-Octene

In alkynes, each band in the spectrum can be assigned:

- –C?C– stretch from 2260-2100 cm^{-1}
- –C?C–H: C–H stretch from 3330-3270 cm^{-1}
- –C?C–H: C–H bend from 700-610 cm^{-1}

The spectrum of 1-hexyne, a terminal alkyne, is shown below.

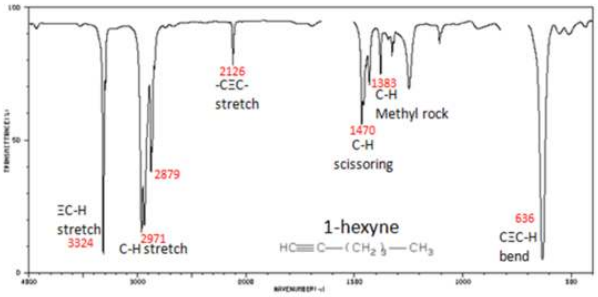


Figure 5. Infrared Spectrum of 1-Hexyne

In aromatic compounds, each band in the spectrum can be assigned:

- C–H stretch from 3100-3000 cm^{-1}
- overtones, weak, from 2000-1665 cm^{-1}
- C–C stretch (in-ring) from 1600-1585 cm^{-1}
- C–C stretch (in-ring) from 1500-1400 cm^{-1}
- C–H "oop" from 900-675 cm^{-1}

Note that this is at slightly higher frequency than is the –C–H stretch in alkanes. This is a very useful tool for interpreting IR spectra. Only alkenes and aromatics show a C–H stretch slightly higher than 3000 cm^{-1}.

Figure 6. shows the spectrum of toluene.

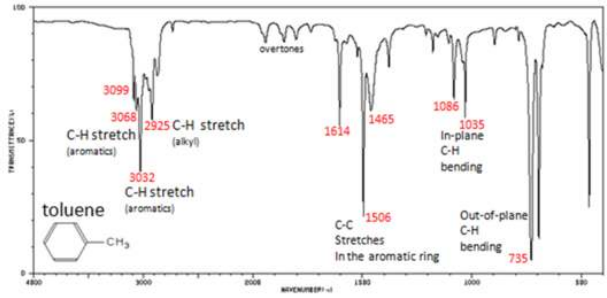


Figure 6. Infrared Spectrum of Toluene

Functional Groups Containing the C-O Bond

Alcohols have IR absorptions associated with both the O-H and the C-O stretching vibrations.

- O–H stretch, hydrogen bonded 3500-3200 cm^{-1}
- C–O stretch 1260-1050 cm^{-1} (s)

Figure 7. shows the spectrum of ethanol. Note the very broad, strong band of the O–H stretch.

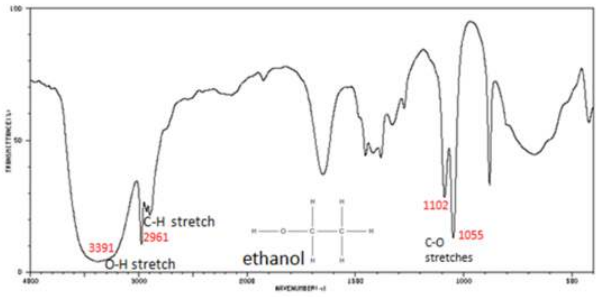


Figure 7. Infrared Spectrum of Ethanol

The carbonyl stretching vibration band C=O of saturated aliphatic ketones appears:

- C=O stretch - aliphatic ketones 1715 cm^{-1}

- ?, ?-unsaturated ketones 1685-1666 cm^{-1}

Figure 8. shows the spectrum of 2-butanone. This is a saturated ketone, and the C=O band appears at 1715.

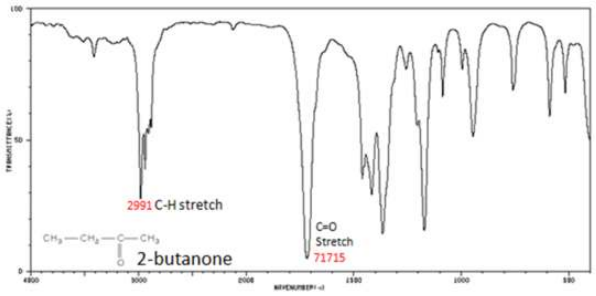


Figure 8. Infrared Spectrum of 2-Butanone

If a compound is suspected to be an aldehyde, a peak always appears around 2720 cm^{-1} which often appears as a shoulder-type peak just to the right of the alkyl C–H stretches.

- H–C=O stretch 2830-2695 cm^{-1}
- C=O stretch:
  - aliphatic aldehydes 1740-1720 cm^{-1}
  - alpha, beta-unsaturated aldehydes 1710-1685 cm^{-1}

Figure 9. shows the spectrum of butyraldehyde.

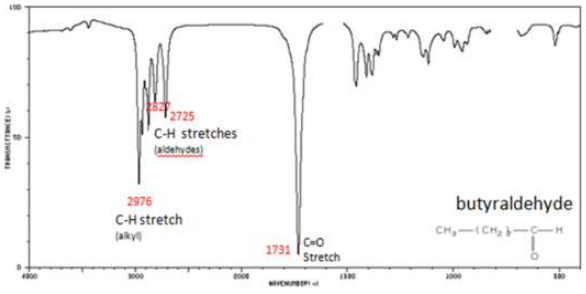


Figure 9. Infrared Spectrum of Butyraldehyde

The carbonyl stretch C=O of esters appears:

- C=O stretch
  - aliphatic from 1750-1735 cm^{-1}
  - ?, ?-unsaturated from 1730-1715 cm^{-1}

- C–O stretch from 1300-1000 cm^{-1}

Figure 10. shows the spectrum of ethyl benzoate.

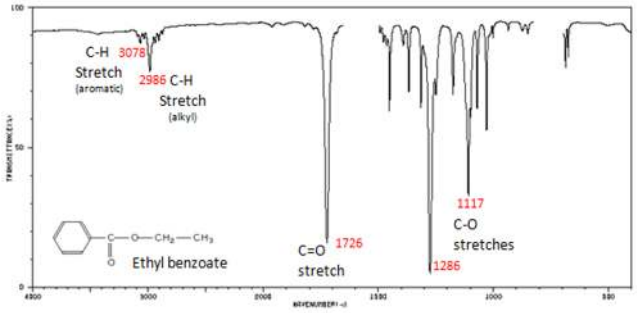


Figure 10. Infrared Spectrum of Ethyl benzoate

The carbonyl stretch C=O of a carboxylic acid appears as an intense band from 1760-1690 cm^{-1}. The exact position of this broad band depends on whether the carboxylic acid is saturated or unsaturated, dimerized, or has internal hydrogen bonding.

- O–H stretch from 3300-2500 cm^{-1}
- C=O stretch from 1760-1690 cm^{-1}
- C–O stretch from 1320-1210 cm^{-1}
- O–H bend from 1440-1395 and 950-910 cm^{-1}

Figure 11. shows the spectrum of hexanoic acid.

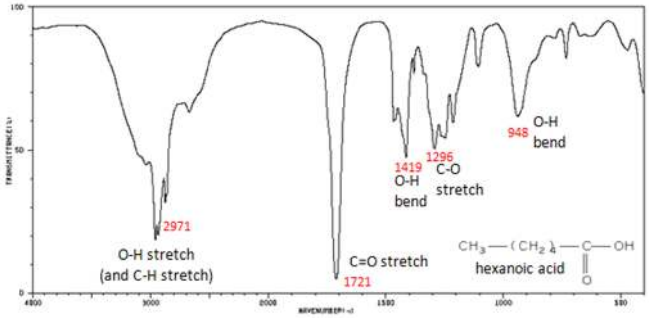


Figure 11. Infrared Spectrum of Hexanoic acid

Organic Nitrogen Compounds

- N–O asymmetric stretch from 1550-1475 cm^{-1}
- N–O symmetric stretch from 1360-1290 cm^{-1}

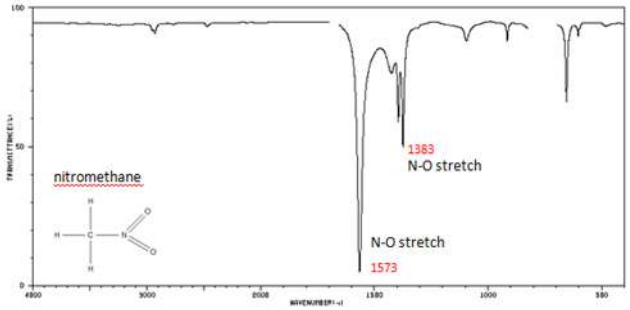


Figure 12. Infrared Spectrum of Nitomethane

Organic Compounds Containing Halogens

Alkyl halides are compounds that have a C–X bond, where X is a halogen: bromine, chlorine, fluorene, or iodine.

- C–H wag (-CH_2X) from 1300-1150 cm^{-1}

- C–X stretches (general) from 850-515 cm^{-1}
  - C–Cl stretch 850-550 cm^{-1}
  - C–Br stretch 690-515 cm^{-1}

The spectrum of 1-chloro-2-methylpropane are shown below.

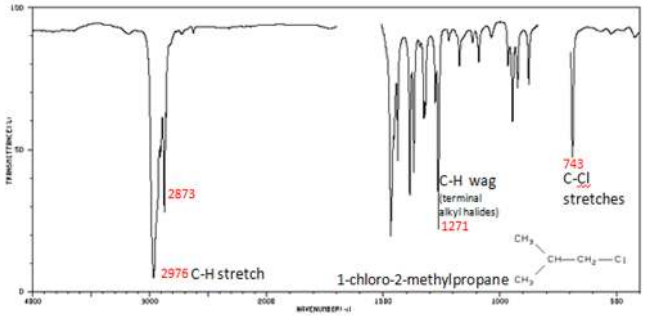


Figure 13. Infrared Spectrum of 1-chloro-2-methylpropane

For more Infrared spectra Spectral database of organic molecules is introduced to use free database. Also, the infrared spectroscopy correlation table is linked on bottom of page to find other assigned IR peaks.

Exercise

1. What functional groups give the following signals in an IR spectrum?

A) 1700 cm^{-1}

B) 1550 cm^{-1}

C) 1700 cm^{-1} and 2510-3000 cm^{-1}

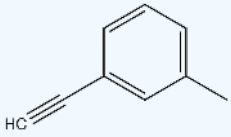
2. How can you distinguish the following pairs of compounds through IR analysis?

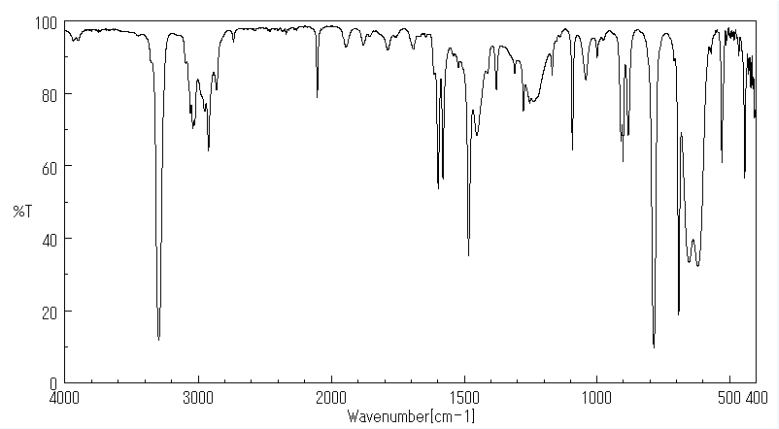
A) CH_3OH (Methanol) and $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ (Diethylether)

B) Cyclopentane and 1-pentene.

C)

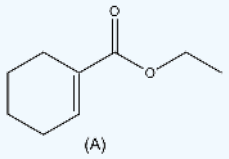
3. The following spectra is for the accompanying compound. What are the peaks that you can I identify in the spectrum?



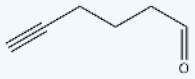


Source: SDBSWeb : http://sdbs.db.aist.go.jp (National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 2 December 2016)

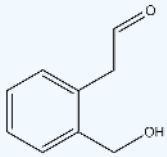
4. What absorptions would the following compounds have in an IR spectra?



(A)



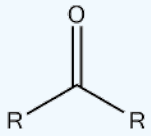
(B)



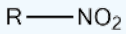
(C)

Answer

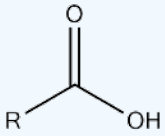
1.

A) 

Carbonyl

B) 

Nitro

C) 

Carboxylic Acid

2.

A) A OH peak will be present around 3300 cm^{-1} for methanol and will be absent in the ether.

B) 1-pentene will have a alkene peak around 1650 cm^{-1} for the C=C and there will be another peak around 3100 cm^{-1} for the sp^2 C-H group on the alkene

C) Cannot distinguish these two isomers. They both have the same functional groups and therefore would have the same peaks on an IR spectra.

3.

Frequency (cm-1) Functional Group

3200 C≡C-H

2900-3000 C-C-H, C=C-H

2100 C≡C

1610 C=C

(There is also an aromatic undertone region between 2000-1600 which describes the substitution on the phenyl ring.)

4.

A)

Frequency (cm-1) Functional Group

2900-3000 C-C-H, C=C-H

1710 C=O

1610 C=C

1100 C-O

B)

Frequency (cm-1) Functional Group

3200 C≡C-H

2900-3000 C-C-H, C=C-H

2100 C≡C

1710 C=O

C)

Frequency (cm-1) Functional Group

3300 (broad) O-H

2900-3000 C-C-H, C=C-H

2000-1800 Aromatic Overtones

1710 C=O

1610 C=C

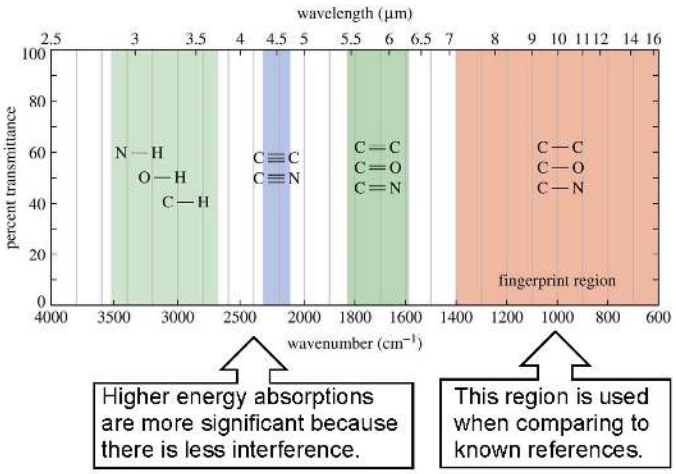
Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- William Reusch, Professor Emeritus (Michigan State U.), Virtual Textbook of Organic Chemistry

14.5: Infrared Spectra of Some Common Functional Groups is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.6: Summary and Tips to Distinguish between Carbonyl Functional Groups

Summary for Interpreting IR Spectra



IR Absorption Bands to Memorize

- ≈ 3400 cm^{-1}: O-H and N-H stretch
- ≈ 3100 cm^{-1}: sp and sp^2 C-H stretch
- ≈ 2900 cm^{-1}: sp^3 C-H stretch
- ≈ 2700 cm^{-1}: aldehyde C-H stretch (fangs)
- ≈ 2200 cm^{-1}: C≡C & C≡N stretch
  (primarily for terminal C≡C & C≡N)
- ≈ 1700 cm^{-1}: C=O stretch
- ≈ 1600 cm^{-1}: C=C stretch (primarily for terminal C=C)
- ≈ 1200 cm^{-1}: C-O stretch

Distinguishing between Functional Groups with Carbonyls C=O's

While there may subtle differences in the wavenumbers of the carbonyl stretch between some of the functional groups, it is the secondary features of the IR spectrum that help with discernment.

Functional Grp	Carbonyl Stretch	Secondary IR Spectral Feature
Aldehyde	1710 cm^{-1}	fangs at 2700 & 2800 cm^{-1}
Ketone	1710 cm^{-1}	
Acid	1710 cm^{-1}	broad O-H stretch between 3500-2500 cm^{-1}
Ester	1735 cm^{-1}	C-O stretch ≈ 1200 cm^{-1}
Amide	1660 cm^{-1} (doublet)	N-H stretch ≈ 3300 cm^{-1} 2 peaks for $RCONH_2$ 1 peak for RCONHR'
Acid Chloride	1800 cm^{-1}	energy of carbonyl stretch
Anhydride	1800 & 1750 cm^{-1}	energy of carbonyl doublet

14.6: Summary and Tips to Distinguish between Carbonyl Functional Groups is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

15: Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

Learning Objectives

After reading this chapter and completing ALL the exercises, a student can be able to

- explain how ^{1}H NMR spectrometers work - refer to section 12.1
- interpret chemical shifts of ^{1}H NMR spectra as they relate to shielding and deshielding - refer to section 12.2 and 12.14
- explain the delta scale of ^{1}H NMR spectra - refer to section 12.3
- recognize equivalent protons within an organic compound - refer to section 12.4
- correlate functional group structural features with chemical shifts - refer to section 12.5
- determine the proton ratio from ^{1}H NMR spectra peak integration data - refer to section 12.6
- explain and interpret spin-spin splitting patterns in ^{1}H NMR spectra - refer to section 12.7
- explain and interpret spin-spin splitting patterns in ^{1}H NMR spectra - refer to section 12.8
- describes examples of some uses of ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy - refer to section 12.9
- explain how ^{13}C NMR spectrometers work - refer to section 12.10
- interpret the chemical shifts of ^{13}C NMR spectra to determine the structural features of organic compounds - refer to section 12.11 and 12.14
- explain how DEPT (distortionless enhancement by polarization transfer) is used to determine the number of hydrogens bonded to each carbon - refer to section 12.12
- describes some uses of ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy - refer to section 12.13

15.1: Theory of Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR)

15.2: NMR Spectra - an introduction and overview

15.3: Chemical Shifts and Shielding

15.4: ¹H NMR Spectroscopy and Proton Equivalence

15.5: Functional Groups and Chemical Shifts in ¹H NMR Spectroscopy

15.6: Integration of ¹H NMR Absorptions- Proton Counting

15.7: Spin-Spin Splitting in ¹H NMR Spectra

15.8: More Complex Spin-Spin Splitting Patterns

15.9: Uses of ¹H NMR Spectroscopy

15.10: Sample NMR Spectra

Template:HideTOC

15: Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.1: Theory of Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR)

Nuclear precession, spin states, and the resonance condition

Some types of atomic nuclei act as though they spin on their axis similar to the Earth. Since they are positively charged they generate an electromagnetic field just as the Earth does. So, in effect, they will act as tiny bar magnetics. Not all nuclei act this way, but fortunately both ^{1}H and ^{13}C do have nuclear spins and will respond to this technique.



NMR Spectrometer

In the absence of an external magnetic field the direction of the spin of the nuclei will be randomly oriented (see figure below left). However, when a sample of these nuclei is place in an external magnetic field, the nuclear spins will adopt specific orientations much as a compass needle responses to the Earth's magnetic field and aligns with it. Two possible orientations are possible, with the external field (*i.e.* parallel to and in the same direction as the external field) or against the field (*i.e.* antiparallel to the external field). See figure below right.

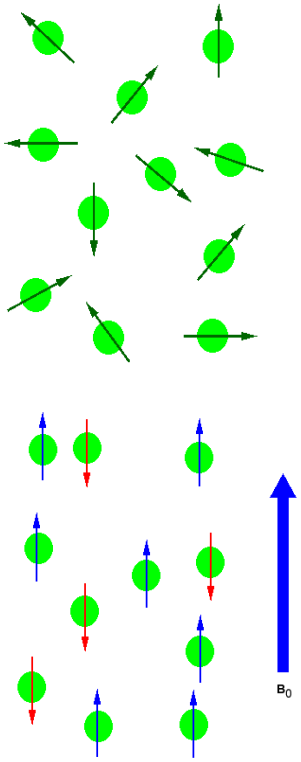
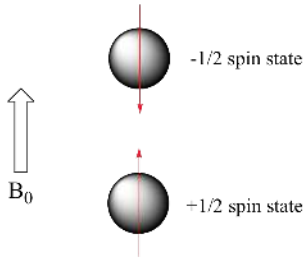


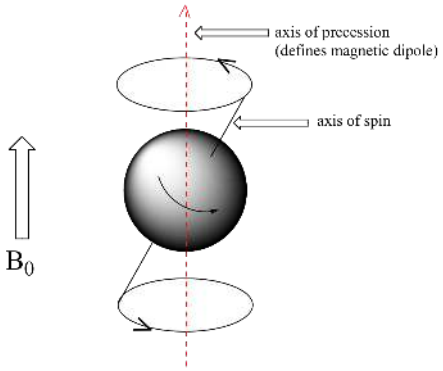
Figure 1: (Left) Random nuclear spin without an external magnetic field. (Right)Ordered nuclear spin in an external magnetic field

When the same sample is placed within the field of a very strong magnet in an NMR instrument (this field is referred to by NMR spectroscopists as the **applied field**, abbreviated $\mathbf{B_0}$) each hydrogen will assume one of two possible **spin states**. In what is referred to as the +½ spin state, the hydrogen's magnetic moment is aligned *with* the direction of B_0, while in the -½ spin state it is aligned *opposed to* the direction of B_0.



Because the +½ spin state is slightly lower in energy, in a large population of organic molecules slightly more than half of the hydrogen atoms will occupy this state, while slightly less than half will occupy the –½ state. *The difference in energy between the two spin states increases with increasing strength of B_0.*This last statement is in italics because it is one of the key ideas in NMR spectroscopy, as we shall soon see.

At this point, we need to look a little more closely at how a proton spins in an applied magnetic field. You may recall playing with spinning tops as a child. When a top slows down a little and the spin axis is no longer completely vertical, it begins to exhibit **precessional motion**, as the spin axis rotates slowly around the vertical. In the same way, hydrogen atoms spinning in an applied magnetic field also exhibit precessional motion about a vertical axis. It is this axis (which is either parallel or antiparallel to B_0) that defines the proton's magnetic moment. In the figure below, the proton is in the +1/2 spin state.



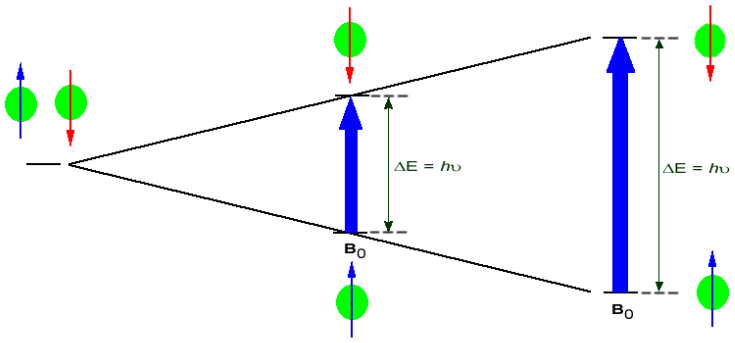
The **frequency of precession** (also called the **Larmour frequency,** abbreviated $\boldsymbol{\omega_L}$) is simply the number of times per second that the proton precesses in a complete circle. A proton`s precessional frequency increases with the strength of B_0.

If a proton that is precessing in an applied magnetic field is exposed to electromagnetic radiation of a frequency ν that matches its precessional frequency ω_L, we have a condition called **resonance**. *In the resonance condition, a proton in the lower-energy +½ spin state (aligned with B_0) will transition (flip) to the higher energy –½ spin state (opposed to B_0). In doing so, it will absorb radiation at this resonance frequency* $\boldsymbol{\nu} = \boldsymbol{\omega_L}$. This frequency, as you might have already guessed, corresponds to the energy difference between the proton's two spin states. With the strong magnetic fields generated by the superconducting magnets used in modern NMR instruments, the resonance frequency for protons falls within the radio-wave range, anywhere from 100 MHz to 800 MHz depending on the strength of the magnet.

If the ordered nuclei are now subjected to EM radiation of the proper frequency the nuclei aligned with the field will absorb energy and "spin-flip" to align themselves against the field, a higher energy state. When this spin-flip occurs the nuclei are said to be in "resonance" with the field, hence the name for the technique, **N**uclear **M**agentic **R**esonance or NMR.

The amount of energy, and hence the exact frequency of EM radiation required for resonance to occur is dependent on both the strength of the magnetic field applied and the type of the nuclei being studied. As the strength of the magnetic field increases the

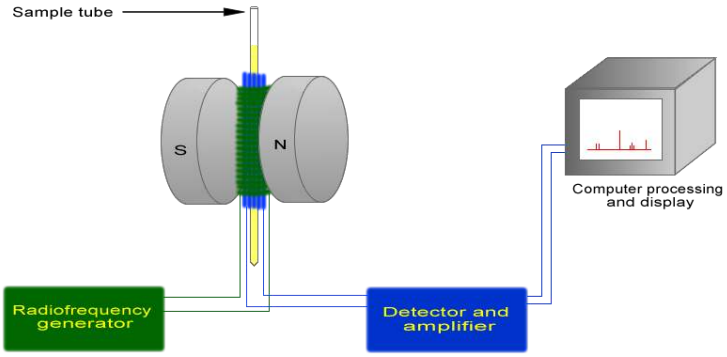
energy difference between the two spin states increases and a higher frequency (more energy) EM radiation needs to be applied to achieve a spin-flip (see image below).



Superconducting magnets can be used to produce very strong magnetic field, on the order of 21 tesla (T). Lower field strengths can also be used, in the range of 4 - 7 T. At these levels the energy required to bring the nuclei into resonance is in the MHz range and corresponds to radio wavelength energies, *i.e.* at a field strength of 4.7 T 200 MHz bring ^{1}H nuclei into resonance and 50 MHz bring ^{13}C into resonance. This is considerably less energy then is required for IR spectroscopy, ~10^{-4} kJ/mol versus ~5 - ~50 kJ/mol.

^{1}H and ^{13}C are not unique in their ability to undergo NMR. All nuclei with an odd number of protons (^{1}H, ^{2}H, ^{14}N, ^{19}F, ^{31}P ...) or nuclei with an odd number of neutrons (*i.e.* ^{13}C) show the magnetic properties required for NMR. Only nuclei with even number of both protons and neutrons (^{12}C and ^{16}O) do not have the required magnetic properties.

The basic arrangement of an NMR spectrometer is displayed below. A sample (in a small glass tube) is placed between the poles of a strong magnetic. A radio frequency generator pulses the sample and excites the nuclei causing a spin-flip. The spin flip is detected by the detector and the signal sent to a computer where it is processed.



Exercise

1. If in a field strength of 4.7 T, H^{1} requires 200 MHz of energy to maintain resonance. If atom X requires 150 MHz, calculate the amount of energy required to spin flip atom X's nucleus. Is this amount greater than the energy required for hydrogen?

2. Calculate the energy required to spin flip at 400 MHz. Does changing the frequency to 500 MHz decrease or increase the energy required? What about 300 MHz.

Answer

1.

$E = h\upsilon$

$E = (6.62 \times 10^{-34})(150\ \text{MHz})$

$E = 9.93 \times 10^{-26}$ J

The energy is equal to 9.93×10^{-26} J. This value is smaller than the energy required for hydrogen (1.324×10^{-25} J).

2.

$E = h\upsilon$

$E = (6.62 \times 10^{-34})(400 \text{ MHz})$

$E = 2.648 \times 10^{-25}$ J

The energy would increase if the frequency would increase to 500 MHz, and decrease if the frequency would decrease to 300 MHz.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Dr. Richard Spinney (The Ohio State University)

15.1: Theory of Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.2: NMR Spectra - an introduction and overview

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. explain, in general terms, the origin of shielding effects in NMR spectroscopy.
2. explain the number of peaks occurring in the ^{1}H or ^{13}C NMR spectrum of a simple compound, such as methyl acetate.
3. describe, and sketch a diagram of, a simple NMR spectrometer.
4. explain the difference in time scales of NMR and infrared spectroscopy.
5. predict the number of peaks expected in the ^{1}H or ^{13}C NMR spectrum of a given compound.

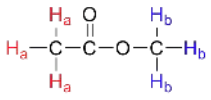
Study Notes

Before you go on, make sure that you understand that each signal in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum shown for methyl acetate is due to a different proton environment. The three protons on the same methyl group are equivalent and appear in the spectrum as one signal. However, the two methyl groups are in two different environments (one is more deshielded) and so we see two signals in the whole spectrum (aside from the TMS reference peak).

Methyl acetate has a very simple ^{1}H NMR spectrum, because there is no proton-proton coupling, and therefore no splitting of the signals. In later sections, we discuss splitting patterns in ^{1}H NMR spectra and how they help a chemist determine the structure of organic compounds.

The basics of an NMR experiment

Given that chemically nonequivalent protons have different resonance frequencies in the same applied magnetic field, we can see how NMR spectroscopy can provide us with useful information about the structure of an organic molecule. A full explanation of how a modern NMR instrument functions is beyond the scope of this text, but in very simple terms, here is what happens. First, a sample compound (we'll use methyl acetate) is placed inside a very strong applied magnetic field (B_0).



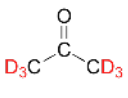
methyl acetate

All of the protons begin to precess: the H_a protons at precessional frequency ω_a, the H_b protons at ω_b.At first, the magnetic moments of (slightly more than) half of the protons are aligned with B_0, and half are aligned against B_0. Then, the sample is hit with electromagnetic radiation in the radio frequency range. The two specific frequencies which match $\omega_a$andω_b(i.e. the resonance frequencies) cause those H_a and H_b protons which are aligned *with* B_0 to 'flip' so that they are now aligned *against* B_0. In doing so, the protons absorb radiation at the two resonance frequencies. The NMR instrument records which frequencies were absorbed, as well as the intensity of each absorbance.

In most cases, a sample being analyzed by NMR is in solution. If we use a common laboratory solvent (diethyl ether, acetone, dichloromethane, ethanol, water, etc.) to dissolve our NMR sample, however, we run into a problem – there many more solvent protons in solution than there are sample protons, so the signals from the sample protons will be overwhelmed. To get around this problem, we use special NMR solvents in which all protons have been replaced by deuterium. Recall that deuterium is NMR-active, but its resonance frequency is very different from that of protons, and thus it is `invisible` in ^{1}H-NMR. Some common NMR solvents are shown below.



deuterated chloroform ($CDCl_3$)



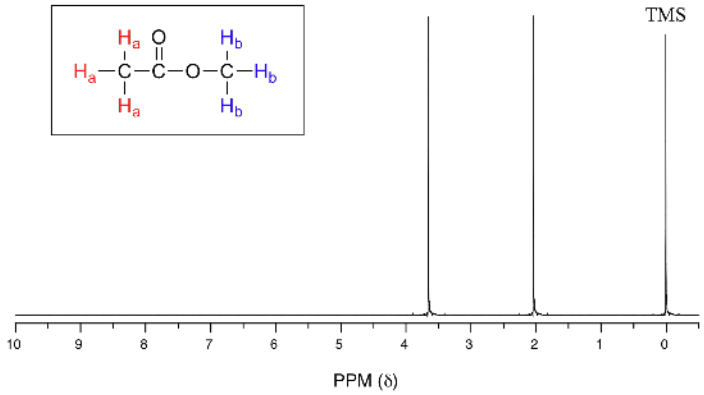
d_6-acetone



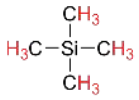
D_2O

The Chemical Shift

Let's look at an actual ^{1}H-NMR plot for methyl acetate. Just as in IR and UV-vis spectroscopy, the vertical axis corresponds to intensity of absorbance, the horizontal axis to frequency (typically the vertical axis is not shown in an NMR spectrum).



We see three absorbance signals: two of these correspond to H_a and H_b, while the peak at the far right of the spectrum corresponds to the 12 chemically equivalent protons in tetramethylsilane (TMS), a standard reference compound that was added to our sample.



tetramethylsilane (TMS)

You may be wondering about a few things at this point - why is TMS necessary, and what is the meaning of the `ppm (δ)` label on the horizontal axis? Shouldn't the frequency units be in Hz? Keep in mind that NMR instruments of many different applied field strengths are used in organic chemistry laboratories, and that the proton's resonance frequency range depends on the strength of the applied field. The spectrum above was generated on an instrument with an applied field of approximately 7.1 Tesla, at which strength protons resonate in the neighborhood of 300 million Hz (chemists refer to this as a 300 MHz instrument). If our colleague in another lab takes the NMR spectrum of the same molecule using an instrument with a 2.4 Tesla magnet, the protons will resonate at around 100 million Hz (so we'd call this a 100 MHz instrument). It would be inconvenient and confusing to always have to convert NMR data according to the field strength of the instrument used. Therefore, chemists report resonance frequencies not as absolute values in Hz, but rather as values *relative to a common standard*, generally the signal generated by the protons in TMS. This is where the ppm – parts per million – term comes in. Regardless of the magnetic field strength of the instrument being used, the resonance frequency of the 12 equivalent protons in TMS is defined as a zero point. The resonance frequencies of protons in the sample molecule are then reported in terms of how much higher they are, in ppm, relative to the TMS signal (almost all protons in organic molecules have a higher resonance frequency than those in TMS, for reasons we shall explore quite soon).

The two proton groups in our methyl acetate sample are recorded as resonating at frequencies 2.05 and 3.67 ppm higher than TMS. One-millionth (1.0 ppm) of 300 MHz is 300 Hz. Thus 2.05 ppm, on this instrument, corresponds to 615 Hz, and 3.67 ppm corresponds to 1101 Hz. If the TMS protons observed by our 7.1 Tesla instrument resonate at exactly 300,000,000 Hz, this means that the protons in our ethyl acetate samples are resonating at 300,000,615 and 300,001,101 Hz, respectively. Likewise, if the TMS protons in our colleague's 2.4 Tesla instrument resonate at exactly 100 MHz, the methyl acetate protons in her sample resonate at 100,000,205 and 100,000,367 Hz (on the 100 MHz instrument, 1.0 ppm corresponds to 100 Hz). The absolute frequency values in each case are not very useful – they will vary according to the instrument used – but the *difference* in resonance frequency from the TMS standard, expressed in parts per million, should be the same regardless of the instrument.

Expressed this way, the resonance frequency for a given proton in a molecule is called its **chemical shift**. A frequently used symbolic designation for chemical shift in ppm is the lower-case Greek letter *delta* (δ). Most protons in organic compounds have chemical shift values between 0 and 12 ppm from TMS, although values below zero and above 12 are occasionally observed. By

convention, the left-hand side of an NMR spectrum (higher chemical shift) is called **downfield**, and the right-hand direction is called **upfield**.

In our methyl acetate example we included for illustrative purposes a small amount of TMS standard directly in the sample, as was the common procedure for determining the zero point with older NMR instruments . That practice is generally no longer necessary, as modern NMR instruments are designed to use the deuterium signal from the solvent as a standard reference point, then to extrapolate the 0 ppm baseline that corresponds to the TMS proton signal (in an applied field of 7.1 Tesla, the deuterium atom in $CDCl_3$ resonates at 32 MHz, compared to 300 MHz for the protons in TMS). In the remaining NMR spectra that we will see in this text we will not see an actual TMS signal, but we can always assume that the 0 ppm point corresponds to where the TMS protons *would* resonate if they were present.

Example

A proton has a chemical shift (relative to TMS) of 4.56 ppm.

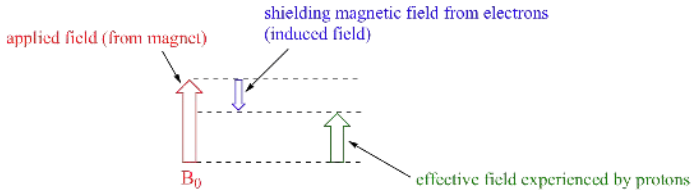
a. a) What is its chemical shift, expressed in Hz, in a 300 MHz instrument? On a 200 MHz instrument?
b. b) What is its resonance frequency, expressed in Hz, in a 300 MHz instrument? On a 200 MHz instrument?

(Assume that in these instruments, the TMS protons resonate at exactly 300 or 200 MHz, respectively)

Solution

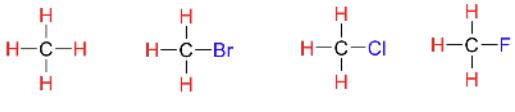
Diamagnetic shielding and deshielding

We come now to the question of *why* nonequivalent protons have different chemical shifts. The chemical shift of a given proton is determined primarily by its immediate electronic environment. Consider the methane molecule (CH_4), in which the protons have a chemical shift of 0.23 ppm. The valence electrons around the methyl carbon, when subjected to B_0, are induced to circulate and thus generate their own very small magnetic field that *opposes* B_0. This **induced field**, to a small but significant degree, *shields* the nearby protons from experiencing the full force of B_0, an effect known as **local diamagnetic shielding**. The methane protons therefore do not experience the full force of B_0 - what they experience is called B_{eff}, or the **effective field**, which is slightly *weaker* than B_0.



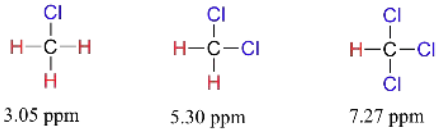
Therefore, their resonance frequency is slightly lower than what it would be if they did not have electrons nearby to shield them.

Now consider methyl fluoride, CH_3F, in which the protons have a chemical shift of 4.26 ppm, significantly higher than that of methane. This is caused by something called the **deshielding effect**. Because fluorine is more electronegative than carbon, it pulls valence electrons away from the carbon, effectively *decreasing* the electron density around each of the protons. For the protons, lower electron density means less diamagnetic shielding, which in turn means a greater overall exposure to B_0, a stronger B_{eff}, and a higher resonance frequency. Put another way, the fluorine, by pulling electron density away from the protons, is *deshielding* them, leaving them more exposed to B_0. As the electronegativity of the substituent increases, so does the extent of deshielding, and so does the chemical shift. This is evident when we look at the chemical shifts of methane and three halomethane compounds (remember that electronegativity increases as we move up a column in the periodic table).

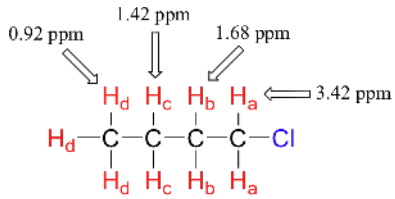


To a large extent, then, we can predict trends in chemical shift by considering how much deshielding is taking place near a proton. The chemical shift of trichloromethane is, as expected, higher than that of dichloromethane, which is in turn higher than that of

chloromethane.



The deshielding effect of an electronegative substituent diminishes sharply with increasing distance:



The presence of an electronegative oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, or sp^2-hybridized carbon also tends to shift the NMR signals of nearby protons slightly downfield:

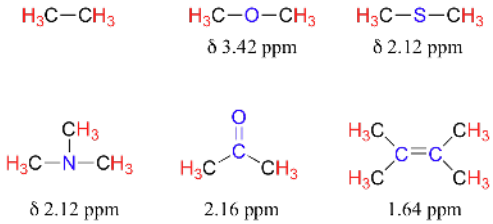
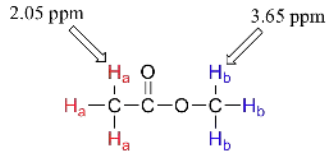
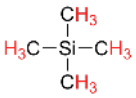


Table 2 lists typical chemical shift values for protons in different chemical environments.

Armed with this information, we can finally assign the two peaks in the the ^{1}H-NMR spectrum of methyl acetate that we saw a few pages back. The signal at 3.65 ppm corresponds to the methyl ester protons (H_b), which are deshielded by the adjacent oxygen atom. The upfield signal at 2.05 ppm corresponds to the acetate protons (H_a), which is deshielded - but to a lesser extent - by the adjacent carbonyl group.



Finally, a note on the use of TMS as a standard in NMR spectroscopy: one of the main reasons why the TMS proton signal was chosen as a zero-point is that the TMS protons are highly shielded: silicon is slightly *less* electronegative than carbon, and therefore *donates* some additional shielding electron density. Very few organic molecules contain protons with chemical shifts that are negative relative to TMS.

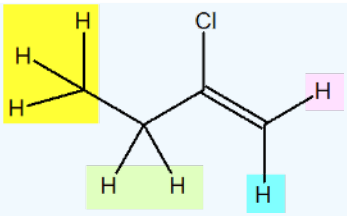


Exercise

3. 2-cholorobutene shows 4 different hydrogen signals. Explain why this is.

Answer

3. The same colors represent the same signal. 4 different colors for 4 different signals. The hydrogen on the alkene would give two different signals.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

15.2: NMR Spectra - an introduction and overview is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.3: Chemical Shifts and Shielding

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. describe the delta scale used in NMR spectroscopy.
2. perform calculations based on the relationship between the delta value (in ppm), the observed chemical shift (in Hz), and the operating frequency of an NMR spectrometer (in Hz).

Key Terms

Make certain that you can define, and use in context, the key terms below.

- chemical shift
- delta scale
- upfield/downfield

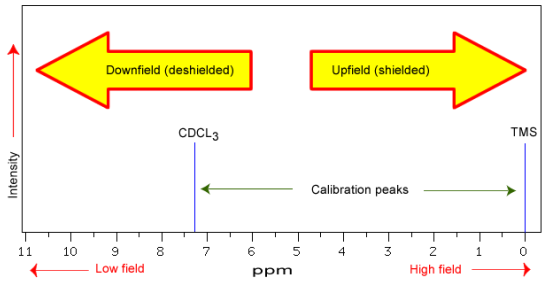
Study Notes

Although the calculations described in this section will help you understand the principles of NMR, it is the actual delta values, not the calculations, which are of greatest importance to the beginning organic chemist. Thus, we shall try to focus on the interpretation of NMR spectra, not the mathematical aspects of the technique.

In Section 13.9 we discuss ^{1}H NMR chemical shifts in more detail. Although you will eventually be expected to associate the approximate region of a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with a particular type of proton, you are expected to use a general table of ^{1}H NMR chemical shifts such as the one shown in Section 13.9.

Chemical Shifts

The NMR spectra is displayed as a plot of the applied radio frequency versus the absorption. The applied frequency increases from left to right, thus the left side of the plot is the low field, downfield or deshielded side and the right side of the plot is the high field, upfield or shielded side (see the figure below). The concept of shielding will be explained shortly.



The position on the plot at which the nuclei absorbs is called the **chemical shift**. Since this has an arbitrary value a standard reference point must be used. The two most common standards are TMS (tetramethylsilane, $(Si(CH_3)_4)$ which has been assigned a chemical shift of zero, and $CDCl_3$ (deuterochloroform) which has a chemical shift of 7.26 for ^{1}H NMR and 77 for ^{13}C NMR.

The scale is commonly expressed as parts per million (ppm) which is independent of the spectrometer frequency. The scale is the **delta (δ) scale**.

$$\delta = \frac{\text{frequency of signal} - \text{frequency of standard}}{\text{spectrometer frequency}} \times 10^{6}$$

The range at which most NMR absorptions occur is quite narrow. Almost all ^{1}H absorptions occur downfield within 10 ppm of TMS. For ^{13}C NMR almost all absorptions occurs within 220 ppm downfield of the C atom in TMS.

Shielding in NMR

Structural features of the molecule will have an effect on the exact magnitude of the magnetic field experienced by a particular nucleus. This means that H atoms which have different chemical environments will have different chemical shifts. This is what makes NMR so useful for structure determination in organic chemistry. There are three main features that will affect the shielding of the nucleus, electronegativity, magnetic anisotropy of π systems and hydrogen bonding.

Electronegativity

The electrons that surround the nucleus are in motion so they created their own electromagnetic field. This field opposes the the applied magnetic field and so reduces the field experienced by the nucleus. Thus the electrons are said to **shield** the nucleus. Since the magnetic field experienced at the nucleus defines the energy difference between spin states it also defines what the chemical shift will be for that nucleus. Electron with-drawing groups can decrease the electron density at the nucleus, deshielding the nucleus and result in a larger chemical shift. Compare the data in the table below.

Compound, CH_3X	CH_3F	CH_3OH	CH_3Cl	CH_3Br	CH_3I	CH_4	$(CH_3)_4Si$
Electronegativity of X	4.0	3.5	3.1	2.8	2.5	2.1	1.8
Chemical shift δ (ppm)	4.26	3.4	3.05	2.68	2.16	0.23	0

As can be seen from the data, as the electronegativity of X increases the chemical shift, δ increases. This is an effect of the halide atom pulling the electron density away from the methyl group. This exposes the nuclei of both the C and H atoms, "deshielding" the nuclei and shifting the peak downfield.

The effects are cumulative so the presence of more electron withdrawing groups will produce a greater deshielding and therefore a larger chemical shift, *i.e.*

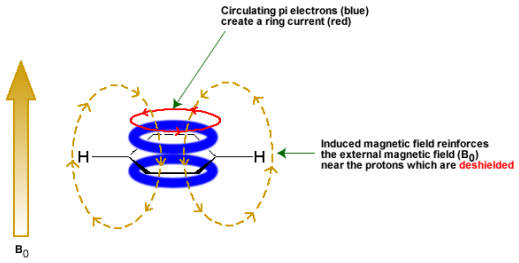
Compound	CH_4	CH_3Cl	CH_2Cl_2	$CHCl_3$
δ (ppm)	0.23	3.05	5.30	7.27

These **inductive effects** are not only felt by the immediately adjacent atoms, but the deshielding can occur further down the chain, *i.e.*

NMR signal	$-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2Br$
δ (ppm)	1.25 1.69 3.30

Magnetic Anisotropy: Pi Electron Effects

The π electrons in a compound, when placed in a magnetic field, will move and generate their own magnetic field. The new magnetic field will have an effect on the shielding of atoms within the field. The best example of this is benzene (see the figure below).

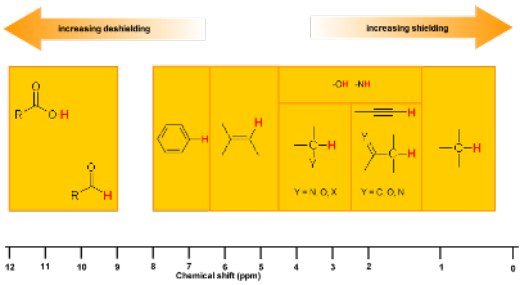


This effect is common for any atoms near a π bond, *i.e.*

Proton Type	Effect	Chemical shift (ppm)
C_6H_5-H	highly deshielded	6.5 - 8
C=C-H	deshielded	4.5 - 6
C≡C-H	shielded*	~2.5
O=C-H	very highly deshielded	9 - 10
* the acetylene H is shielded due to its location relative to the π system		

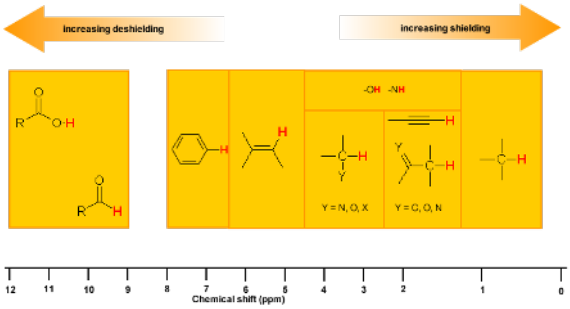
Hydrogen Bonding

Protons that are involved in hydrogen bonding (*i.e.*-OH or -NH) are usually observed over a wide range of chemical shifts. This is due to the deshielding that occurs in the hydrogen bond. Since hydrogen bonds are dynamic, constantly forming, breaking and forming again, there will be a wide range of hydrogen bonds strengths and consequently a wide range of deshielding. This as well as solvation effects, acidity, concentration and temperature make it very difficult to predict the chemical shifts for these atoms.



Experimentally -OH and -NH can be identified by carrying out a simple D_2O exchange experiment since these protons are exchangeable.

- run the normal H-NMR experiment on your sample
- add a few drops of D_2O
- re-run the H-NMR experiment
- compare the two spectra and look for peaks that have "disappeared"



Exercise

4. The following peaks were from a H^1 NMR spectra from a 400 MHz spectrometer. Convert to δ units

A. $CHCl_3$ 1451 Hz

B. CH_3Cl 610 Hz

C. CH_3OH 693 Hz

D. CH_2Cl_2 1060 Hz

5. Butan-2-one shows a chemical shift around 2.1 on a 300 MHz spectrometer in the H^1 NMR spectrum.

A. How far downfield is this peak from TMS in Hz?

B. If the spectrum was done with a 400 MHz instrument, would a different chemical shift be seen?

C. On this new 400 MHz spectrum, what would be the difference in Hz from the chemical shift and TMS?

Answer

4.

A. 3.627 ppm

B. 1.525 ppm

C. 1.732 ppm

D. 2.65 ppm

5.

A. Since TMS is at 0 δ = 0 Hz for reference, the difference between the two would be 630 Hz

B. No not a different chemical shift, but a different frequency would be seen, 840 Hz

C. 840 Hz

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Dr. Richard Spinney (The Ohio State University)

15.3: Chemical Shifts and Shielding is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.4: ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy and Proton Equivalence

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. identify those protons which are equivalent in a given chemical structure.
2. use the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a simple organic compound to determine the number of equivalent sets of protons present.

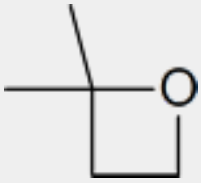
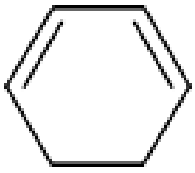
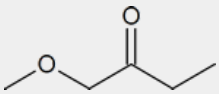
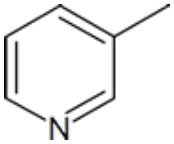
Key Terms

Make certain that you can define, and use in context, the key terms below.

- diastereotopic
- enantiotopic
- homotopic

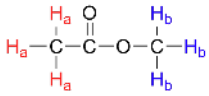
Study Notes

It is important at this stage to be able to identify equivalent protons in any organic compound given the structure of that compound. Once you know the number of different groups of equivalent protons in a compound, you can predict the number (before coupling) and relative strength of signals. Look at the following examples and make sure you understand how the number and intensity ratio of signals are derived from the structure shown.

Structure	Number of Signals	Ratio of Signals	
$CH_3OCH_2CH_2Br$	3	A : B : C	3 : 2 : 2
	1		
	3	A : B : C	2 : 2 : 6 (or 1 : 1 : 3)
	3	A : B : C	2 : 4 : 2 (or 1 : 2 : 1)
	4	A : B : C : D	3 : 2 : 2 : 3
	5	A : B : C : D : E	3 : 1 : 1 : 1 : 1

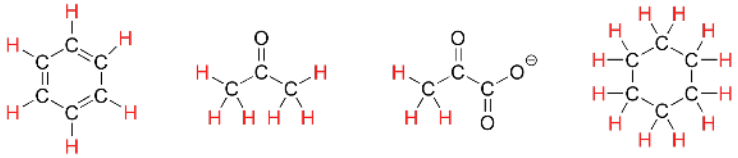
If all protons in all organic molecules had the same resonance frequency in an external magnetic field of a given strength, the information in the previous paragraph would be interesting from a theoretical standpoint, but would not be terribly useful to organic chemists. Fortunately for us, however, resonance frequencies are not uniform for all protons in a molecule. *In an external magnetic*

field of a given strength, protons in different locations in a molecule have different resonance frequencies, because they are in non-identical electronic environments. In methyl acetate, for example, there are two 'sets' of protons. The three protons labeled H_a have a different - and easily distinguishable – resonance frequency than the three H_b protons, because the two sets of protons are in non-identical environments: they are, in other words, chemically nonequivalent.



On the other hand, the three H_a protons are all in the same electronic environment, and are chemically equivalent to one another. They have identical resonance frequencies. The same can be said for the three H_b protons.

The ability to recognize chemical equivalancy and nonequivalency among atoms in a molecule will be central to understanding NMR. In each of the molecules below, all protons are chemically equivalent, and therefore will have the same resonance frequency in an NMR experiment.



benzene acetone pyruvate cyclohexane

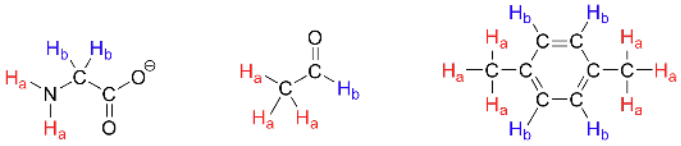
You might expect that the equitorial and axial hydrogens in cyclohexane would be non-equivalent, and would have different resonance frequencies. In fact, an axial hydrogen *is* in a different electronic environment than an equitorial hydrogen. Remember, though, that the molecule rotates rapidly between its two chair conformations, meaning that any given hydrogen is rapidly moving back and forth between equitorial and axial positions. It turns out that, except at extremely low temperatures, this rotational motion occurs on a time scale that is much faster than the time scale of an NMR experiment.



ring-flip process is *fast* compared to the NMR time-scale

In this sense, NMR is like a camera that takes photographs of a rapidly moving object with a slow shutter speed - the result is a blurred image. In NMR terms, this means that all 12 protons in cyclohexane are equivalent.

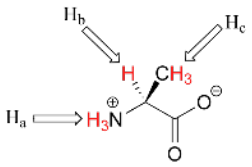
Each the molecules in the next figure contains *two* sets of protons, just like our previous example of methyl acetate, and again in each case the resonance frequency of the H_a protons will be different from that of the H_b protons.



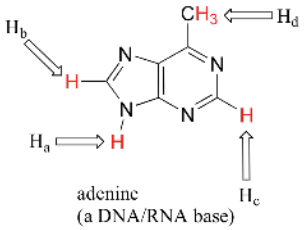
glycine acetaldehyde *para*-xylene

Notice how the symmetry of *para*-xylene results in there being only two different sets of protons.

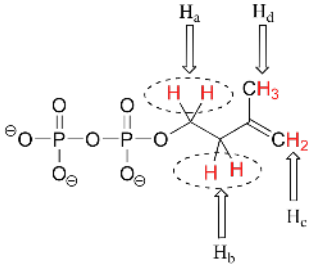
Most organic molecules have several sets of protons in different chemical environments, and each set, in theory, will have a different resonance frequency in ^{1}H-NMR spectroscopy.



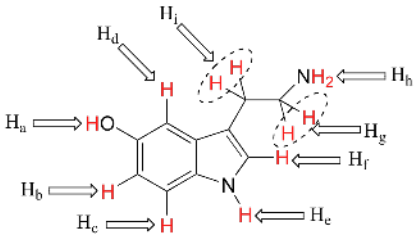
alanine
(an amino acid)



adenine
(a DNA/RNA base)

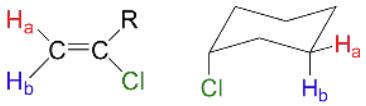


isopentenyl diphosphate
(a lipid building block)

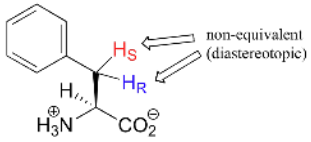


seratonin (a neurotransmitter)

When stereochemistry is taken into account, the issue of equivalence vs nonequivalence in NMR starts to get a little more complicated. It should be fairly intuitive that hydrogens on different sides of asymmetric ring structures and double bonds are in different electronic environments, and thus are non-equivalent and have different resonance frequencies. In the alkene and cyclohexene structures below, for example, H_a is *trans* to the chlorine substituent, while H_b is *cis* to chlorine.

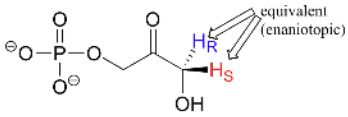


What is not so intuitive is that diastereotopic hydrogens (section 3.10) on chiral molecules are also non-equivalent:

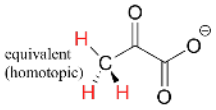


phenylalanine

However, enantiotopic and homotopic hydrogens are chemically equivalent.



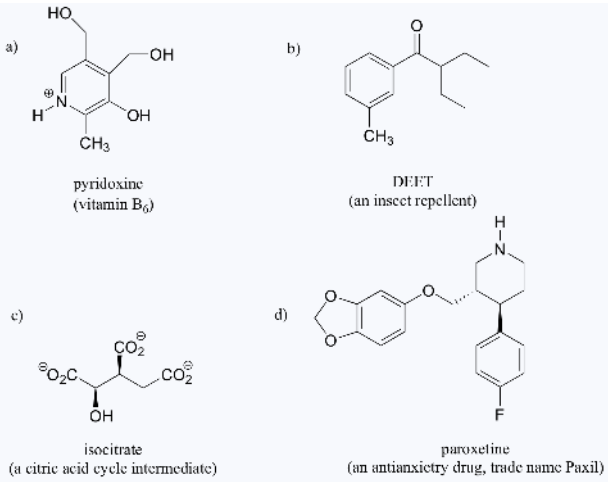
dihydroxyacetone
phosphate



pyruvate

Example

How many different sets of protons do the following molecules contain? (count diastereotopic protons as non-equivalent).



Solution

Exercise

6. How many non-equivalent hydrogen are in the following molecules; how many different signals will you see in a H^1 NMR spectrum.

A. $CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$

B. $CH_3OCH_2C(CH_3)_3$

C. Ethyl Benzene

D. 2-methyl-1-hexene

Answer

6. A. 3; B. 3; C. 5; D. 7

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

15.4: ¹H NMR Spectroscopy and Proton Equivalence is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.5: Functional Groups and Chemical Shifts in ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. state the approximate chemical shift (δ) for the following types of protons:
    1. aromatic.
    2. vinylic.
    3. those bonded to carbon atoms which are in turn bonded to a highly electronegative element.
    4. those bonded to carbons which are next to unsaturated centres.
    5. those bonded to carbons which are part of a saturated system.
2. predict the approximate chemical shifts of each of the protons in an organic compound, given its structure and a table of chemical shift correlations.

Study Notes

You should not attempt to memorize the chemical shifts listed in the table of this section, although it is probable that you will need to refer to it quite frequently throughout the remainder of this course. To fulfil Objective 1, above, you should be familiar with the information presented in the figure of chemical shift ranges for organic compounds. If you have an approximate idea of the chemical shifts of some of the most common types of protons, you will find the interpretation of ^{1}H NMR spectra less arduous than it might otherwise be. Notice that we shall not try to understand why aromatic protons are deshielded or why alkynyl protons are not deshielded as much as vinylic protons. These phenonomena can be explained, but the focus is on the interpretation of ^{1}H NMR spectra, not on the underlying theory.

^{1}H NMR Chemical Shifts

Chemical shift is associated with the Larmor frequency of a nuclear spin to its chemical environment. Tetramethylsilan[TMS; $(CH_3)_4Si$] is generally used for standard to determine chemical shift of compounds: δ_{TMS}=0ppm. In other words, frequencies for chemicals are measured for a ^{1}H or ^{13}C nucleus of a sample from the ^{1}H or ^{13}C resonance of TMS. It is important to understand trend of chemical shift in terms of NMR interpretation. The proton NMR chemical shift is affect by nearness to electronegative atoms (O, N, halogen.) and unsaturated groups (C=C,C=O, aromatic). Electronegative groups move to the down field (left; increase in ppm). Unsaturated groups shift to downfield (left) when affecting nucleus is in the plane of the unsaturation, but reverse shift takes place in the regions above and below this plane. ^{1}H chemical shift play a role in identifying many functional groups. Figure 1. indicates important example to figure out the functional groups.

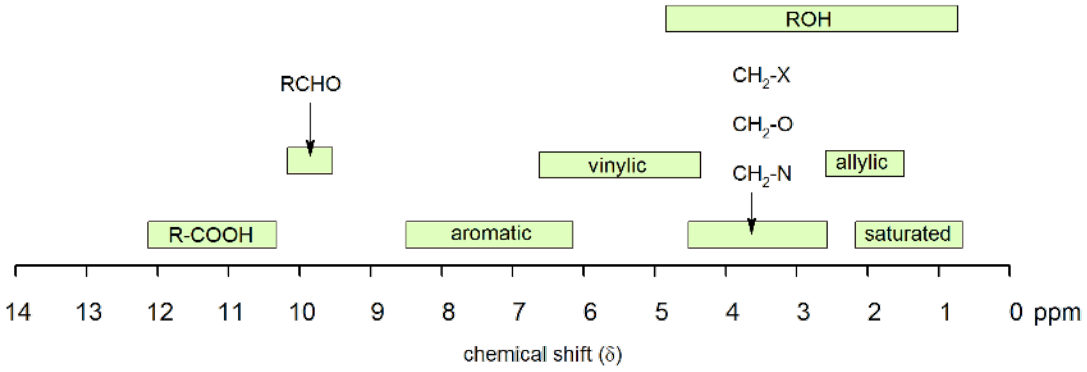
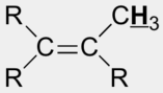
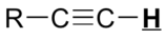
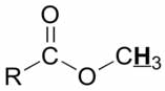
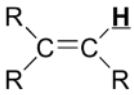
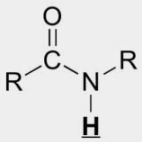
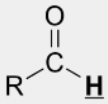
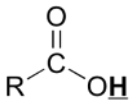


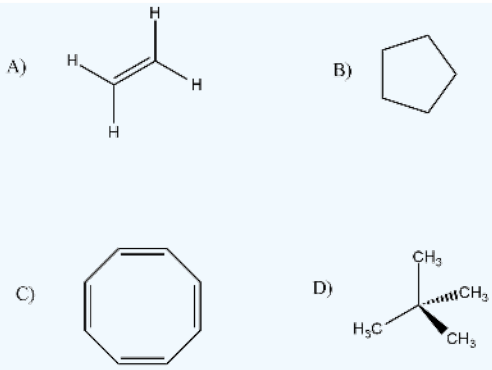
Figure 1. 1H chemical shift ranges for organic compounds

Chemical shift values are in parts per million (ppm) relative to tetramethylsilane.

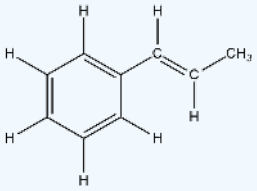
Hydrogen type	Chemical shift (ppm)
RC**H**$_3$	0.9 - 1.0
RC**H**$_2$R	1.2 - 1.7
R$_3$C**H**	1.5 – 2.0
	2.0 – 2.3
	1.5 – 1.8
RN**H**$_2$	1 - 3
ArC**H**$_3$	2.2 – 2.4
	2.3 – 3.0
ROC**H**$_3$	3.7 – 3.9
	3.7 – 3.9
RO**H**	1 - 5
	3.7 – 6.5
	5 - 9
Ar**H**	6.0 – 8.7
	9.5 – 10.0
	10 - 13

Exercise

7. The following have one H^1 NMR peak. In each case predict approximately where this peak would be in a spectra.



8. Identify the different equivalent protons in the following molecule and predict their expected chemical shift.

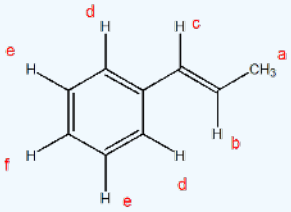


Answer

7. A. 5.20 δ; B. 1.50 δ; C. 6.40 δ; D. 1.00 δ

8. There are 6 different protons in this molecule

The shifts are (close) to the following: (a) 2 δ; (b) 6 δ; (c) 6.5 δ; (d) 7 δ; (e) 7.5 δ; (f) 7 δ



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

15.5: Functional Groups and Chemical Shifts in ¹H NMR Spectroscopy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.6: Integration of ^{1}H NMR Absorptions- Proton Counting

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. explain what information can be obtained from an integrated ^{1}H NMR spectrum, and use this information in the interpretation of such a spectrum.
2. use an integrated ^{1}H NMR spectrum to determine the ratio of the different types of protons present in an organic compound.

Study Notes

The concept of peak integration is that the area of a given peak in a 1H NMR spectrum is proportional to the number of (equivalent) protons giving rise to the peak. Thus, a peak which is caused by a single, unique proton has an area which measures one third of the area of a peak resulting from a methyl (CH_3) group in the same spectrum.

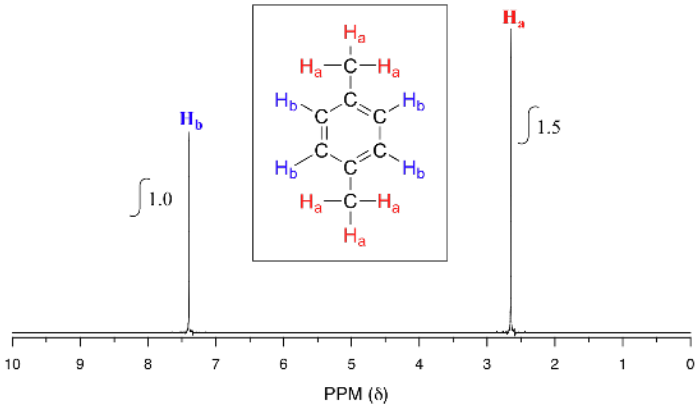
In practice, we do not have to measure these areas ourselves: it is all done electronically by the spectrometer, and an integration curve is superimposed on the rest of the spectrum. The integration curve appears as a series of steps, with the height of each step being proportional to the area of the corresponding absorption peak, and consequently, to the number of protons responsible for the absorption.

As it can be difficult to decide precisely where to start and stop when measuring integrations, you should not expect your ratios to be exact whole numbers.

Signal integration

The computer in an NMR instrument can be instructed to automatically integrate the area under a signal or group of signals. This is very useful, because *in ^{1}H-NMR spectroscopy the area under a signal is proportional to the number of hydrogens to which the peak corresponds*. The two signals in the methyl acetate spectrum, for example, integrate to approximately the same area, because they both correspond to a set of three equivalent protons.

Take a look next at the spectrum of *para*-xylene (IUPAC name 1,4-dimethylbenzene):



This molecule has two sets of protons: the six methyl (H_a) protons and the four aromatic (H_b) protons. When we instruct the instrument to integrate the areas under the two signals, we find that the area under the peak at 2.6 ppm is 1.5 times greater than the area under the peak at 7.4 ppm. This (along with the actual chemical shift values, which we'll discuss soon) tells us which set of protons corresponds to which NMR signal.

The integration function can also be used to determine the relative amounts of two or more compounds in a *mixed* sample. If we have a sample that is a 50:50 (mole/mole) mixture of benzene and acetone, for example, the acetone signal should integrate to the same value as the benzene sample, because both signals represent six equivalent protons. If we have a 50:50 mixture of acetone and

cyclopentane, on the other hand, the ratio of the acetone peak area to the cylopentane peak area will be 3:5 (or 6:10), because the cyclopentane signal represents ten protons.

Example 15.6.1

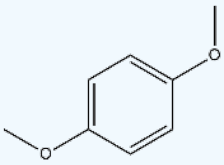
You take a ^{1}H-NMR spectrum of a mixed sample of acetone ($CH_3(CO)CH_3$) and dichloromethane (CH_2Cl_2). The integral ratio of the two signals (acetone : dichloromethane) is 2.3 to 1. What is the molar ratio of the two compounds in the sample?

Example 15.6.2

You take the ^{1}H-NMR spectrum of a mixed sample of 36% *para*-xylene and 64% acetone in $CDCl_3$ solvent (structures are shown earlier in this chapter). How many peaks do you expect to see? What is the expected ratio of integration values for these peaks? (set the acetone peak integration equal to 1.0)

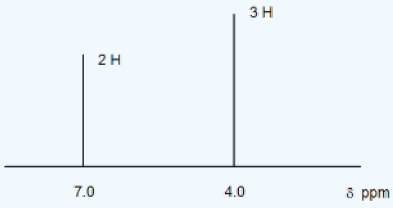
Exercise

9. Predict how many signals the following molecule would have? Sketch the spectra and estimate the integration of the peaks.



Answer

9. There will be two peaks. Ideal general spectrum shown with integration.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

15.6: Integration of ¹H NMR Absorptions- Proton Counting is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.7: Spin-Spin Splitting in ^{1}H NMR Spectra

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. explain the spin-spin splitting pattern observed in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a simple organic compound, such as chloroethane or 2-bromopropane.
2. interpret the splitting pattern of a given ^{1}H NMR spectrum.
3. determine the structure of a relatively simple organic compound, given its ^{1}H NMR spectrum and other relevant information.
4. use coupling constants to determine which groups of protons are coupling with one another in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum.
5. predict the splitting pattern which should be observed in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a given organic compound.

Key Terms

Make certain that you can define, and use in context, the key terms below.

- coupling constant
- multiplet
- quartet
- triplet
- doublet

Study Notes

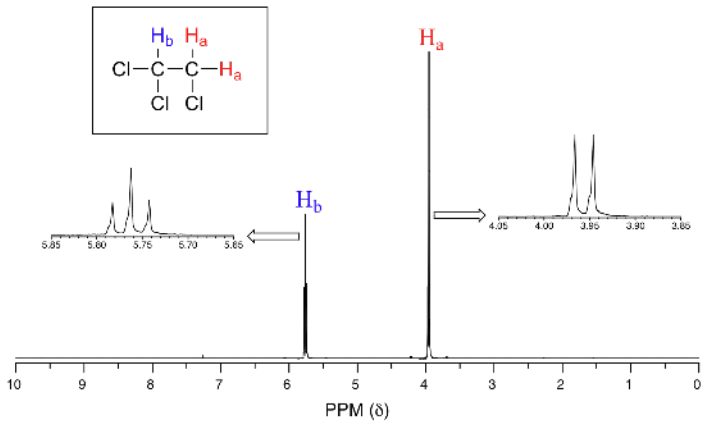
From what we have learned about ^{1}H NMR spectra so far, we might predict that the spectrum of 1,1,2-trichloroethane, $CHCl_2CH_2Cl$, would consist of two peaks—one, at about 2.5-4.0 δ, expected for CH_2-halogen compounds and one shifted downfield because of the presence of an additional electronegative chlorine atom on the second carbon. However, when we look at the spectrum it appears to be much more complex. True, we see absorptions in the regions we predicted, but these absorptions appear as a group of two peaks (a *doublet*) and a group of three peaks (a *triplet*). This complication, which may be disturbing to a student who longs for the simple life, is in fact very useful to the organic chemist, and adds greatly to the power of NMR spectroscopy as a tool for the elucidation of chemical structures. The split peaks (*multiplets*) arise because the magnetic field experienced by the protons of one group is influenced by the spin arrangements of the protons in an adjacent group.

Spin-spin coupling is often one of the more challenging topics for organic chemistry students to master. Remember the $n + 1$ rule and the associated coupling patterns.

The source of spin-spin coupling

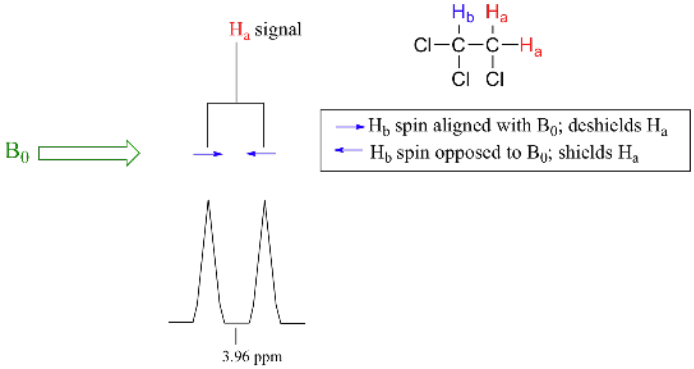
The ^{1}H-NMR spectra that we have seen so far (of methyl acetate and *para*-xylene) are somewhat unusual in the sense that in both of these molecules, each set of protons generates a single NMR signal. In fact, the ^{1}H-NMR spectra of most organic molecules contain proton signals that are 'split' into two or more sub-peaks. Rather than being a complication, however, this splitting behavior actually provides us with more information about our sample molecule.

Consider the spectrum for 1,1,2-trichloroethane. In this and in many spectra to follow, we show enlargements of individual signals so that the signal splitting patterns are recognizable.

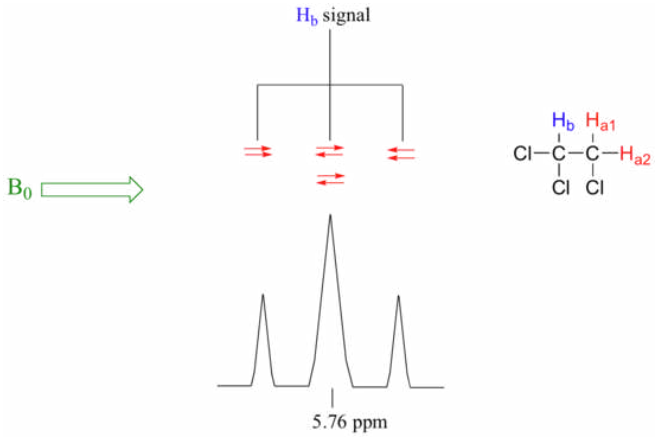


The signal at 3.96 ppm, corresponding to the two H_a protons, is split into two subpeaks of equal height (and area) – this is referred to as a **doublet**. The H_b signal at 5.76 ppm, on the other hand, is split into three sub-peaks, with the middle peak higher than the two outside peaks - if we were to integrate each subpeak, we would see that the area under the middle peak is twice that of each of the outside peaks. This is called a **triplet**.

The source of signal splitting is a phenomenon called **spin-spin coupling**, a term that describes the magnetic interactions between neighboring, non-equivalent NMR-active nuclei. In our 1,1,2 trichloromethane example, the H_a and H_b protons are spin-coupled to each other. Here's how it works, looking first at the H_a signal: in addition to being shielded by nearby valence electrons, each of the H_a protons is also influenced by the small magnetic field generated by H_b next door (remember, each spinning proton is like a tiny magnet). The magnetic moment of H_b will be aligned *with* B_0 in (slightly more than) half of the molecules in the sample, while in the remaining half of the molecules it will be opposed to B_0. The B_{eff} 'felt' by H_a is a slightly weaker if H_b is aligned against B_0, or slightly stronger if H_b is aligned with B_0. In other words, in half of the molecules H_a is *shielded* by H_b (thus the NMR signal is shifted slightly upfield) and in the other half H_a is *deshielded* by H_b(and the NMR signal shifted slightly downfield). What would otherwise be a single H_a peak has been split into two sub-peaks (a doublet), one upfield and one downfield of the original signal. These ideas an be illustrated by a **splitting diagram**, as shown below.

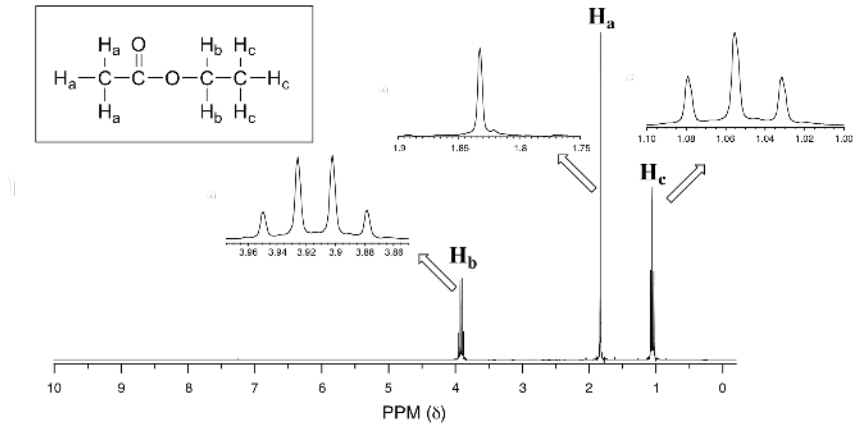


Now, let's think about the $H_b$signal. The magnetic environment experienced by H_b is influenced by the fields of both neighboring H_a protons, which we will call H_{a1} and H_{a2}. There are four possibilities here, each of which is equally probable. First, the magnetic fields of both H_{a1} and H_{a2} could be aligned with B_0, which would deshield H_b, shifting its NMR signal slightly downfield. Second, both the H_{a1} and H_{a2} magnetic fields could be aligned opposed to B_0, which would shield H_b, shifting its resonance signal slightly upfield. Third and fourth, H_{a1} could be with B_0 and H_{a2} opposed, or H_{a1}opposed to B_0 and H_{a2} with B_0. In each of the last two cases, the shielding effect of one H_a proton would cancel the deshielding effect of the other, and the chemical shift of H_b would be unchanged.



So in the end, the signal for H_b is a **triplet**, with the middle peak twice as large as the two outer peaks because there are *two* ways that H_{a1} and H_{a2} can cancel each other out.

Now, consider the spectrum for ethyl acetate:



We see an unsplit '**singlet**' peak at 1.833 ppm that corresponds to the acetyl (H_a) hydrogens – this is similar to the signal for the acetate hydrogens in methyl acetate that we considered earlier. This signal is unsplit because there are no adjacent hydrogens on the molecule. The signal at 1.055 ppm for the H_c hydrogens is split into a triplet by the two H_b hydrogens next door. The explanation here is the same as the explanation for the triplet peak we saw previously for 1,1,2-trichloroethane.

The $H_b$hydrogens give rise to a **quartet** signal at 3.915 ppm – notice that the two middle peaks are taller then the two outside peaks. This splitting pattern results from the spin-coupling effect of the *three* H_c hydrogens next door, and can be explained by an analysis similar to that which we used to explain the doublet and triplet patterns.

Example

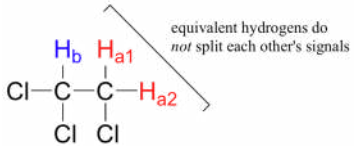
a. Explain, using left and right arrows to illustrate the possible combinations of nuclear spin states for the H_c hydrogens, why the H_b signal in ethyl acetate is split into a quartet.
b. The integration ratio of doublets is 1:1, and of triplets is 1:2:1. What is the integration ratio of the H_b quartet in ethyl acetate? (Hint – use the illustration that you drew in part a to answer this question.)

Solution

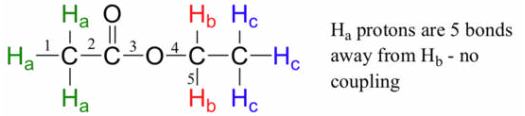
By now, you probably have recognized the pattern which is usually referred to as the ***n* + 1 rule**: if a set of hydrogens has *n* neighboring, non-equivalent hydrogens, it will be split into *n* + 1 subpeaks. Thus the two H_b hydrogens in ethyl acetate split the H_c signal into a triplet, and the three H_c hydrogens split the H_b signal into a quartet. This is very useful information if we are trying to determine the structure of an unknown molecule: if we see a triplet signal, we know that the corresponding hydrogen or set of

hydrogens has two `neighbors`. When we begin to determine structures of unknown compounds using ^{1}H-NMR spectral data, it will become more apparent how this kind of information can be used.

Three important points need to be emphasized here. First, signal splitting only occurs between non-equivalent hydrogens – in other words, H_{a1} in 1,1,2-trichloroethane is *not* split by H_{a2}, and vice-versa.

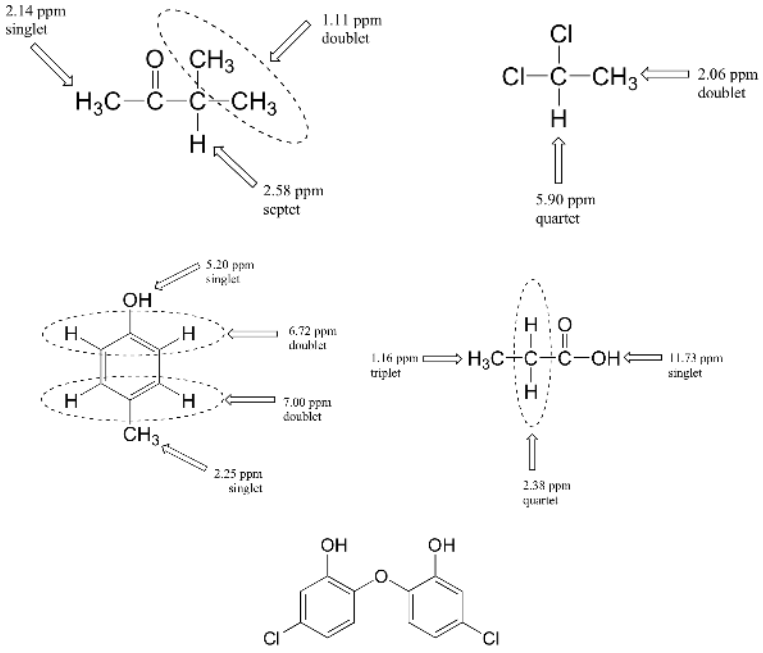


Second, splitting occurs primarily between hydrogens that are separated by three bonds. This is why the H_a hydrogens in ethyl acetate form a singlet– the nearest hydrogen neighbors are five bonds away, too far for coupling to occur.



Occasionally we will see four-bond and even 5-bond splitting, but in these cases the magnetic influence of one set of hydrogens on the other set is much more subtle than what we typically see in three-bond splitting (more details about how we quantify coupling interactions is provided in section 5.5B). Finally, splitting is most noticeable with hydrogens bonded to carbon. Hydrogens that are bonded to heteroatoms (alcohol or amino hydrogens, for example) are coupled weakly - or not at all - to their neighbors. This has to do with the fact that these protons exchange rapidly with solvent or other sample molecules.

Below are a few more examples of chemical shift and splitting pattern information for some relatively simple organic molecules.



Multiplicity in Proton NMR

The number of lines in a peak is always one more (n+1) than the number of hydrogens on the neighboring carbon. This table summarizes coupling patterns that arise when protons have different numbers of neighbors.

# of lines	ratio of lines	term for peak	# of neighbors
1	-	singlet	0
2	1:1	doublet	1
3	1:2:1	triplet	2
4	1:3:3:1	quartet	3
5	1:4:6:4:1	quintet	4
6	1:5:10:10:5:1	sextet	5
7	1:6:15:20:15:6:1	septet	6
8	1:7:21:35:35:21:7:1	octet	7
9	1:8:28:56:70:56:28:8:1	nonet	8

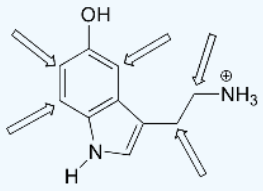
Example

How many proton signals would you expect to see in the ^{1}H-NMR spectrum of triclosan (a common antimicrobial agent found in detergents)? For each of the proton signals, predict the splitting pattern. Assume that you see only 3-bond coupling.

Solutions

Example

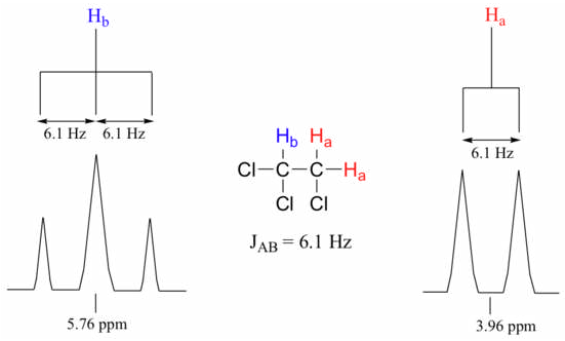
Predict the splitting pattern for the ^{1}H-NMR signals corresponding to the protons at the locations indicated by arrows (the structure is that of the neurotransmitter serotonin).



Solutions

Coupling constants

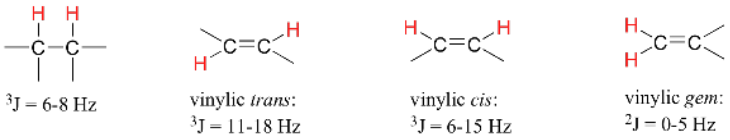
Chemists quantify the spin-spin coupling effect using something called the **coupling constant**, which is abbreviated with the capital letter *J*. The coupling constant is simply the difference, expressed in Hz, between two adjacent sub-peaks in a split signal. For our doublet in the 1,1,2-trichloroethane spectrum, for example, the two subpeaks are separated by 6.1 Hz, and thus we write $^3J_{a\text{-}b}$ = 6.1 Hz.



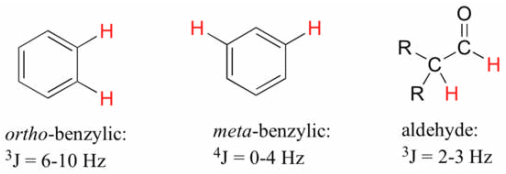
The superscript 3 tells us that this is a three-bond coupling interaction, and the a-b subscript tells us that we are talking about coupling between H_a and H_b. Unlike the chemical shift value, *the coupling constant, expressed in Hz, is the same regardless of the applied field strength of the NMR magnet*. This is because the strength of the magnetic moment of a neighboring proton, which is the source of the spin-spin coupling phenomenon, does *not* depend on the applied field strength.

When we look closely at the triplet signal in 1,1,2-trichloroethane, we see that the coupling constant - the `gap` between subpeaks - is 6.1 Hz, the same as for the doublet. This is an important concept! The coupling constant $^3J_{a\text{-}b}$ quantifies the magnetic interaction between the H_a and H_b hydrogen sets, and *this interaction is of the same magnitude in either direction*. In other words, H_a influences H_b to the same extent that H_b influences H_a. When looking at more complex NMR spectra, this idea of **reciprocal coupling constants** can be very helpful in identifying the coupling relationships between proton sets.

Coupling constants between proton sets on neighboring sp^3-hybridized carbons is typically in the region of 6-8 Hz. With protons bound to sp^2-hybridized carbons, coupling constants can range from 0 Hz (no coupling at all) to 18 Hz, depending on the bonding arrangement.



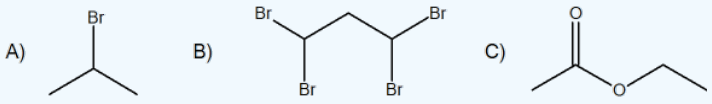
For vinylic hydrogens in a *trans* configuration, we see coupling constants in the range of ^3J = 11-18 Hz, while *cis* hydrogens couple in the ^3J = 6-15 Hz range. The 2-bond coupling between hydrogens bound to the same alkene carbon (referred to as geminal hydrogens) is very fine, generally 5 Hz or lower. *Ortho* hydrogens on a benzene ring couple at 6-10 Hz, while 4-bond coupling of up to 4 Hz is sometimes seen between *meta* hydrogens.



Fine (2-3 Hz) coupling is often seen between an aldehyde proton and a three-bond neighbor. Table 4 lists typical constant values.

Exercise

10. Predict the splitting patterns of the following molecules:



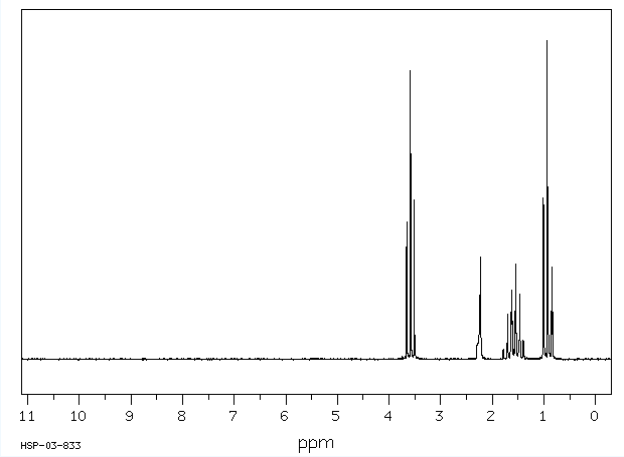
11. Draw the following according to the criteria given.

A. C_3H_5O; two triplet, 1 doublet

B. $C_4H_8O_2$; three singlets

C. C_5H_{12}; one singlet

12. The following spectrum is for C_3H_8O. Determine the structure.



A triplet; B singlet; C sextet; D triplet

Source: SDBSWeb : http://sdbs.db.aist.go.jp (National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 3 December 2016)

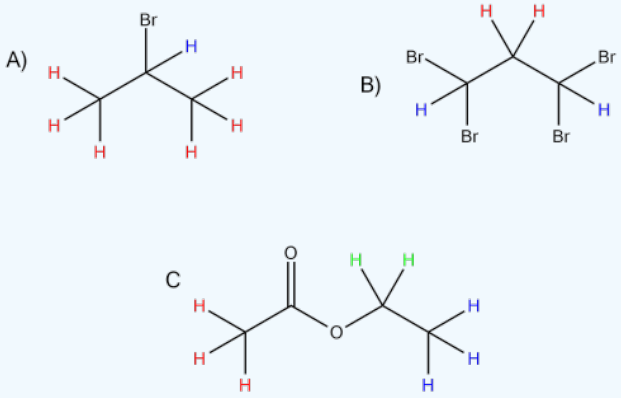
Answer

10.

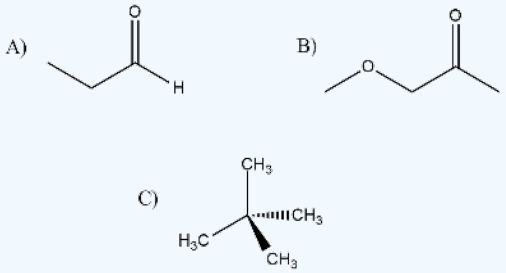
A. H: Doublet. H: Septet

B. H: Doublet, H: Triplet

C. H: Singlet, H: Quartet, H: Triplet

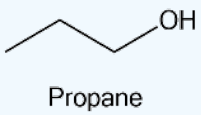


11.



These are just some drawings, more may be possible.

12.



Propane

Note: Remember, chemically equivalent protons do not couple with one another to give spin-spin splitting.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Chris P Schaller, Ph.D., (College of Saint Benedict / Saint John's University)

15.7: Spin-Spin Splitting in ^{1}H NMR Spectra is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.8: More Complex Spin-Spin Splitting Patterns

Objectives

After completing this section, you should be able to

1. explain how multiple coupling can give rise to complex-looking ^{1}H NMR spectra.
2. predict the splitting pattern expected in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of an organic compound in which multiple coupling is possible.
3. interpret ^{1}H NMR spectra in which multiple coupling is evident.

Key Terms

Make certain that you can define, and use in context, the key term below.

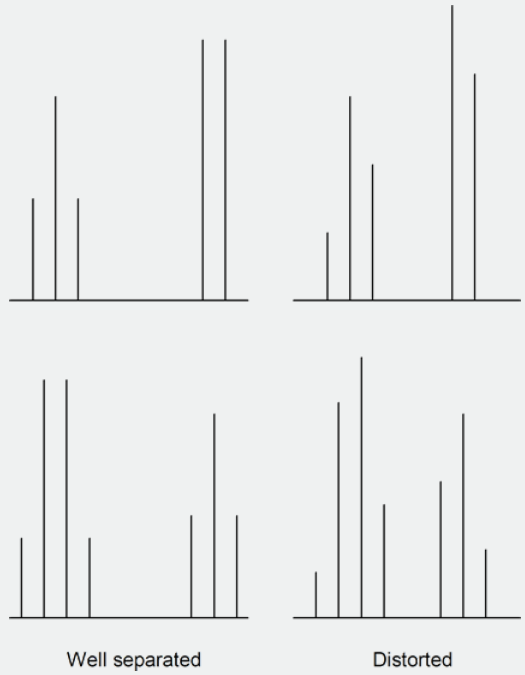
- tree diagram

Study Notes

We saw the effects of spin-spin coupling on the appearance of a ^{1}H NMR signal. These effects can be further complicated when that signal is coupled to several different protons. For example, $BrCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$ would produce three signals. The hydrogens at C_1 and C_3 would each be triplets because of coupling to the two hydrogens on C_2. However, the hydrogen on C_2 "sees" two different sets of neighbouring hydrogens, and would therefore produce a triplet of triplets.

Another effect that can complicate a spectrum is the "closeness" of signals. If signals accidently overlap they can be difficult to identify. In the example above, we expected a triplet of triplets. However, if the coupling is identical (or almost identical) between the hydrogens on C_2 and the hydrogens on both C_1 and C_3, one would observe a quintet in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum. [You can try this yourself by drawing a tree diagram of a triplet of triplets assuming, first, different coupling constants, and then, identical coupling constants.] Keep this point in mind when interpreting real ^{1}H NMR spectra.

Also, when multiplets are well separated, they form patterns. However, when multiplets approach each other in the spectrum they sometimes become distorted. Usually, the inner peaks become larger than the outer peaks. Note the following examples:



Aromatic ring protons quite commonly have overlapping signals and multiplet distortions. Sometimes you cannot distinguish between individual signals, and one or more messy multiplets often appear in the aromatic region.

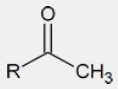
It is much easier to rationalize the observed ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a known compound than it is to determine the structure of an unknown compound from its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. However, rationalizations can be a useful learning technique as you try to improve your proficiency in spectral interpretation. Remember that when a chemist tries to interpret the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of an unknown compound, he or she usually has additional information available to make the task easier. For example, the chemist will almost certainly have an infrared spectrum of the compound and possibly a mass spectrum too. Details of how the compound was synthesized may be available, together with some indication of its chemical properties, its physical properties, or both.

In examinations, you will be given a range of information (IR, MS, UV data and empirical formulae) to aid you with your structural determination using ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy. For example, you may be asked to determine the structure of $C_6H_{12}O$ given the following spectra:

Infrared spectrum: 3000 cm^{-1} and 1720 cm^{-1} absorptions are both strong

^{1}H NMR	δ (ppm)	Protons	Multiplicity
	0.87	6	doublet
	1.72	1	broad multiplet
	2.00	3	singlet
	2.18	2	doublet

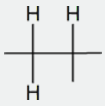
To answer this question, you note that the infrared spectrum of $C_6H_{12}O$ shows $\ce{\sf{C-H}}$ stretching (3000 cm^{-1}) and $\ce{\sf{C-O}}$ stretching (1720 cm^{-1}). Now you have to piece together the information from the ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Notice the singlet with three protons at 2.00 ppm. This signal indicates a methyl group that is not coupled to other protons. It could possibly mean the presence of a methyl ketone functional group.



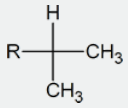
The signal at 1.72 ppm is a broad multiplet, suggesting that a carbon with a single proton is beside carbons with several different protons.



The doublet signal at 2.18 ppm implies that a $\ce{\sf{-CH2-}}$ group is attached to a carbon having only one proton.

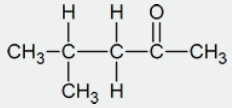


The six protons showing a doublet at 0.87 ppm indicate two equivalent methyl groups attached to a carbon with one proton.



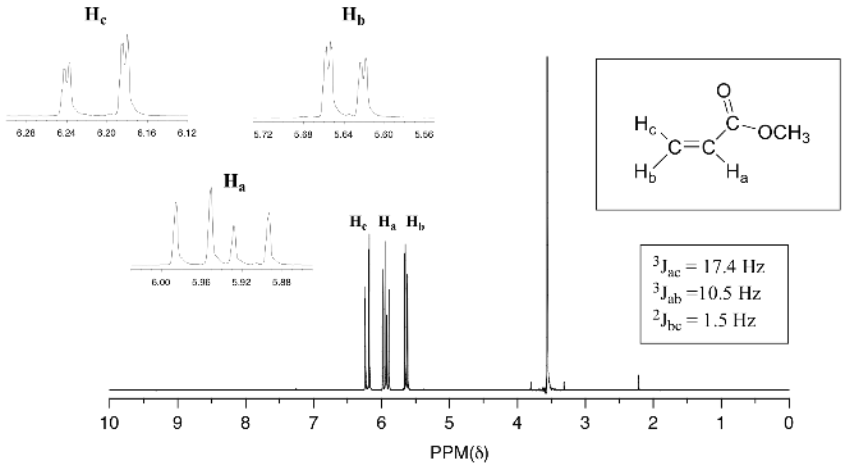
Whenever you see a signal in the 0.7-1.3 ppm range that is a multiplet of three protons (3, 6, 9) it is most likely caused by equivalent methyl groups.

Using trial and error, and with the above observations, you should come up with the correct structure.

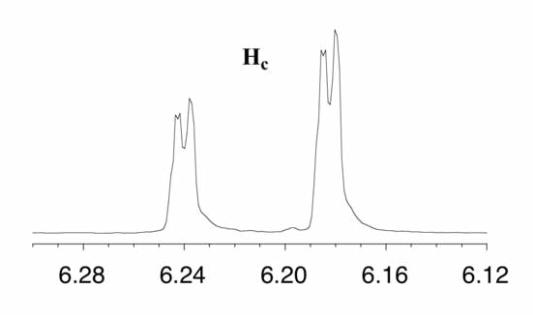


Complex coupling

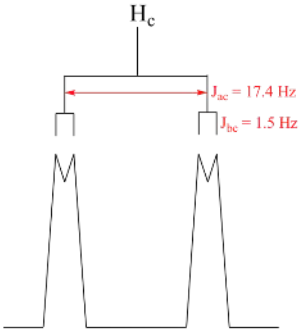
In all of the examples of spin-spin coupling that we have seen so far, the observed splitting has resulted from the coupling of one set of hydrogens to *just one* neighboring set of hydrogens. When a set of hydrogens is coupled to *two or more* sets of nonequivalent neighbors, the result is a phenomenon called **complex coupling**. A good illustration is provided by the ^{1}H-NMR spectrum of methyl acrylate:



First, let's first consider the H_c signal, which is centered at 6.21 ppm. Here is a closer look:

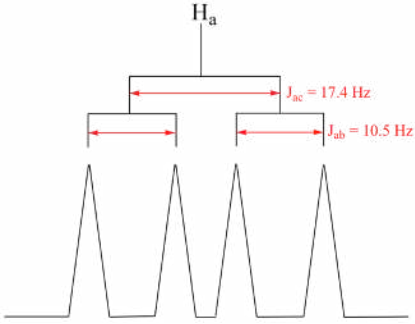


With this enlargement, it becomes evident that the Hc signal is actually composed of four sub-peaks. Why is this? H_c is coupled to both H_a and H_b , but with *two different coupling constants*. Once again, a splitting diagram (or tree diagram) can help us to understand what we are seeing. H_a is *trans* to H_c across the double bond, and splits the H_c signal into a doublet with a coupling constant of $^3J_{ac}$ = 17.4 Hz. In addition, each of these H_c doublet sub-peaks is split again by H_b (*geminal* coupling) into two more doublets, each with a much smaller coupling constant of $^2J_{bc}$ = 1.5 Hz.

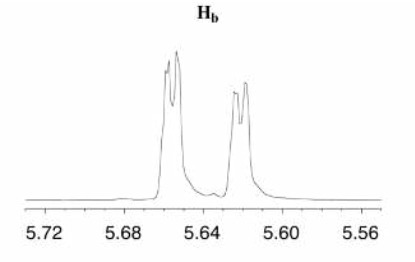


The result of this `double splitting` is a pattern referred to as a **doublet of doublets**, abbreviated `**dd**`.

The signal for H_a at 5.95 ppm is also a doublet of doublets, with coupling constants $^3J_{ac}$= 17.4 Hz and $^3J_{ab}$ = 10.5 Hz.



The signal for H_b at 5.64 ppm is split into a doublet by H_a, a *cis* coupling with $^3J_{ab}$ = 10.4 Hz. Each of the resulting sub-peaks is split again by H_c, with the same *geminal* coupling constant $^2J_{bc}$ = 1.5 Hz that we saw previously when we looked at the H_c signal. The overall result is again a doublet of doublets, this time with the two `sub-doublets` spaced slightly closer due to the smaller coupling constant for the *cis* interaction. Here is a blow-up of the actual $H_b$signal:



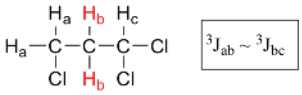
Example

Construct a splitting diagram for the H_b signal in the ^{1}H-NMR spectrum of methyl acrylate. Show the chemical shift value for each sub-peak, expressed in Hz (assume that the resonance frequency of TMS is exactly 300 MHz).

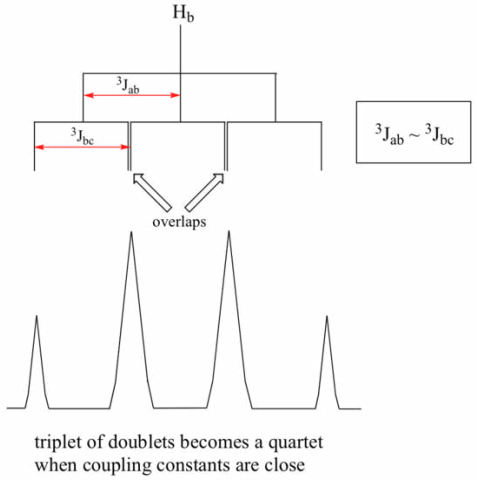
Solution

When constructing a splitting diagram to analyze complex coupling patterns, it is usually easier to show the larger splitting first, followed by the finer splitting (although the reverse would give the same end result).

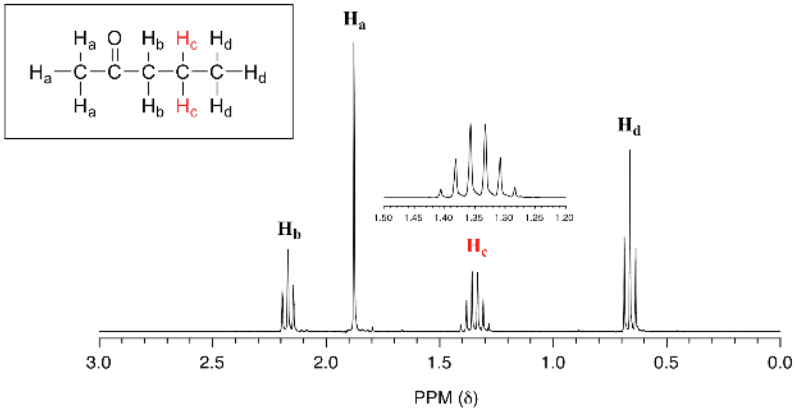
When a proton is coupled to two different neighboring proton sets with identical or very close coupling constants, the splitting pattern that emerges often appears to follow the simple `*n* + 1 rule` of non-complex splitting. In the spectrum of 1,1,3-trichloropropane, for example, we would expect the signal for H_b to be split into a triplet by H_a, and again into doublets by H_c, resulting in a 'triplet of doublets'.



H_a and H_c are not equivalent (their chemical shifts are different), but it turns out that $^3J_{ab}$ is very close to $^3J_{bc}$. If we perform a splitting diagram analysis for H_b, we see that, due to the overlap of sub-peaks, the signal appears to be a quartet, and for all intents and purposes follows the *n* + 1 rule.

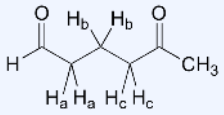


For similar reasons, the H_c peak in the spectrum of 2-pentanone appears as a sextet, split by the five combined H_b and H_d protons. Technically, this 'sextet' could be considered to be a 'triplet of quartets' with overlapping sub-peaks.



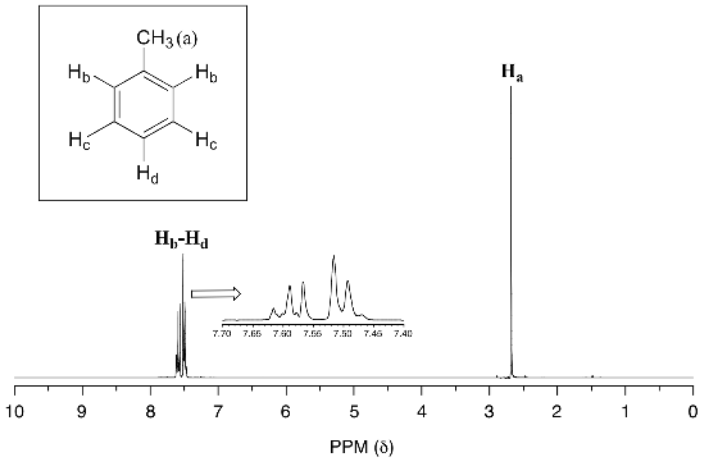
Example

What splitting pattern would you expect for the signal coresponding to H_b in the molecule below? Assume that $J_{ab} \sim J_{bc}$. Draw a splitting diagram for this signal, and determine the relative integration values of each subpeak.



Solution

In many cases, it is difficult to fully analyze a complex splitting pattern. In the spectrum of toluene, for example, if we consider only 3-bond coupling we would expect the signal for H_b to be a doublet, H_d a triplet, and H_c a triplet.

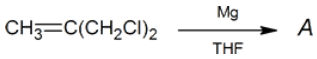


In practice, however, all three aromatic proton groups have very similar chemical shifts and their signals overlap substantially, making such detailed analysis difficult. In this case, we would refer to the aromatic part of the spectrum as a **multiplet**.

When we start trying to analyze complex splitting patterns in larger molecules, we gain an appreciation for why scientists are willing to pay large sums of money (hundreds of thousands of dollars) for higher-field NMR instruments. Quite simply, the stronger our magnet is, the more resolution we get in our spectrum. In a 100 MHz instrument (with a magnet of approximately 2.4 Tesla field strength), the 12 ppm frequency 'window' in which we can observe proton signals is 1200 Hz wide. In a 500 MHz (~12 Tesla) instrument, however, the window is 6000 Hz - five times wider. In this sense, NMR instruments are like digital cameras and HDTVs: better resolution means more information and clearer pictures (and higher price tags!)

Practice Unknowns

1. Given the information below, draw the structures of compounds *A* through *D*.
   a. An unknown compound *A* was prepared as follows:



Mass spectrum:

base peak *m*/*e* = 39
parent peak *m*/*e* = 54

^{1}H NMR spectrum:

δ (ppm)	Relative Area	Multiplicity
1.0	2	triplet
5.4	1	quintet

   b. Unknown compound *B* has the molecular formula $C_7H_6O_2$.

Infrared spectrum:

3200 cm^{-1} (broad) and 1747 cm^{-1} (strong) absorptions

^{1}H NMR spectrum:

δ (ppm)	Protons
6.9	2
7.4	2
9.8	1
10.9	1

Hint: Aromatic ring currents deshield all proton signals just outside the ring.

c. Unknown compound *C* shows no evidence of unsaturation and contains only carbon and hydrogen.

Mass spectrum:

parent peak *m*/*e* = 68

^{1}H NMR spectrum:

δ (ppm)	Relative Area	Multiplicity
1.84	3	triplet
2.45	1	septet

Hint: Think three dimensionally!

d. Unknown compound *D* ($C_{15}H_{14}O$) has the following spectral properties.

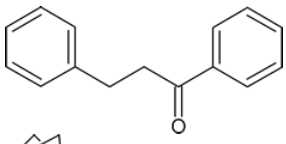
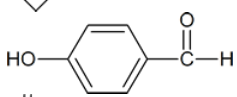
Infrared spectrum:

3010 cm^{-1} (medium)
1715 cm^{-1} (strong)
1610 cm^{-1} (strong)
1500 cm^{-1} (strong)

^{1}H NMR spectrum:

δ (ppm)	Relative Area	Multiplicity
3.00	2	triplet
3.07	2	triplet
7.1-7.9	10	Multiplets

Answers

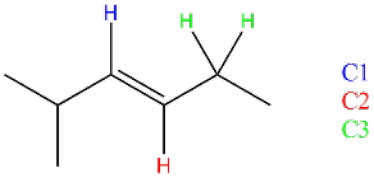
1. 
2. 
3. 

4. 

Questions

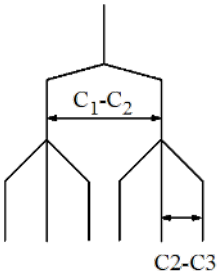
Q13.12.1

In the following molecule, the C2 is coupled with both the vinyl, C1, and the alkyl C3. Draw the splitting tree diagram.



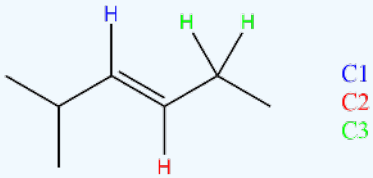
Solutions

S13.12.1



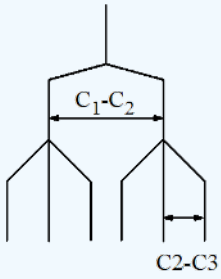
Exercise

13. In the following molecule, the C2 is coupled with both the vinyl, C1, and the alkyl C3. Draw the splitting tree diagram.



Answer

13.



Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

15.8: More Complex Spin-Spin Splitting Patterns is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.9: Uses of ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy

There will be cases in which you already know what the structure might be. In these cases:

- You should draw attention to pieces of data that most strongly support your expected structure. This approach will demonstrate evaluative understanding of the data; that means you can look at data and decide what parts are more crucial than others.
- You should also draw attention to negative results: that is, peaks that might be there if this spectrum matched another, possible structure, but that are in fact missing.

One of the most complicated problems to deal with is the analysis of a mixture. This situation is not uncommon when students run reactions in lab and analyse the data.

- Sometimes the spectra show a little starting material mixed in with the product.
- Sometimes solvents show up in the spectrum.
- As you might expect, the minor component usually shows up as smaller peaks in the spectrum. If there are fewer molecules present, then there are usually fewer protons to absorb in the spectrum.
- In this case, you should probably make two completely separate sets of data tables for your analysis, one for each compound, or else one for the main compound and one for impurities.

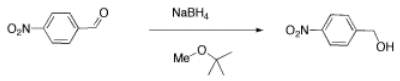
Remember that integration ratios are really only meaningful within a single compound. If your NMR sample contains some benzene (C_6H_6) and some acetone (CH_3COCH_3), and there is a peak at 7.15 that integrates to 1 proton and a peak at 2.10 ppm integrating to 6 protons, it might mean there are 6 protons in acetone and 1 in benzene, but you can tell that isn't true by looking at the structure. There must be six times as many acetone molecules as benzene molecules in the sample.

There are six protons in the benzene, and they should all show up near 7 ppm. There are six protons in acetone, and they should all show up near 2 ppm. Assuming that small integral of 1H for the benzene is really supposed to be 6H, then the large integral of 6H for the acetone must also represent six times as many hydrogens, too. It would be 36 H. There are only six hydrogens in acetone, so it must represent six times as many acetone molecules as there are benzenes.

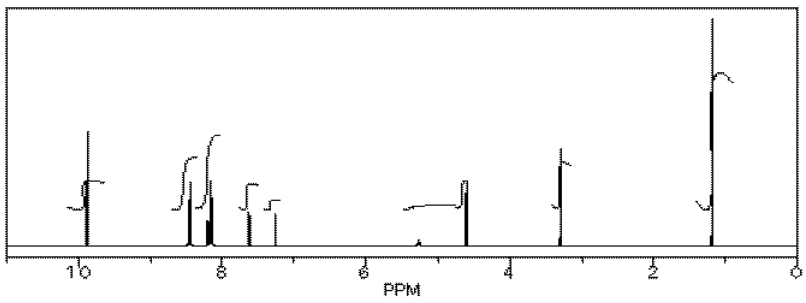
Similarly, if you have decided that you can identify two sets of peaks in the ^{1}H spectrum, analysing them in different tables makes it easy to keep the integration analysis completely separate too ; 1 H in one table will not be the same size integral as 1 H in the other table unless the concentrations of the two compounds in the sample are the same.

However, comparing the ratio of two integrals for two different compounds can give you the ratio of the two compounds in solution, just as we could determine the ratio of benzene to acetone in the mixture described above.

We will look at two examples of sample mixtures that could arise in lab. Results like these are pretty common events in the labIn the first example, a student tried to carry out the following reaction, a borohydride reduction of an aldehyde. The borohydride should give a hydride anion to the C=O carbon; washing with water should then supply a proton to the oxygen, giving an alcohol.

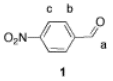
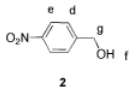


Her reaction produced the following spectrum.



(simulated data)

From this data, she produced the table below.

	shift	integration	int(n)	internal ratio	multiplicity	part structure	assignment
a	9.9 ppm	11 mm	2H	1H	singlet		
b	8.5 ppm	23 mm	4H	2H	doublet		
c	8.1 ppm	(20 mm?)	4H	2H	doublet		
d	8.2 ppm	(10 mm?)	2H	2H	doublet		
e	7.6 ppm	9 mm	2H	2H	doublet		
f	5.3 ppm	2 mm	0.4H	<1H	singlet	OH	
g	4.7 ppm	12 mm	2H	2H	singlet		
h	7.2 ppm	4 mm	0.8H	1H	singlet	$CHCl_3$	
i	3.3 ppm	8 mm	1.5H	3H	singlet		
j	1.2 ppm	24 mm	4.5H	9H	singlet		
			23.4H total				

Ratio of reactant **1** to product **2** is 2:1 based on peaks at 9.9 and 4.7 ppm (2H / 1H) : (2H / 2H); the reaction is 33% complete [2 / (2+1)]

Ratio of product **2** to TBME is 2:1 based on peaks at 4.7 and 3.3 ppm (2H / 2H) : (1.5H / 3H); the ratio of **1:2**:TBME is 2:1:0.5, so the sample is 57% **1** [2/(2+1+0.5)], 29% **2** and 14% TBME.

Notice how she calculated that ratio. She found a peak in molecule 1, the aldehyde, that she was pretty sure corresponded to the aldehydic hydrogen, the H attached to the C=O; in other words, the CH=O. She found another peak from molecule 2, the alcohol, that she was pretty sure represented the two hydrogens on the carbon attached to oxygen, the CH_2-O.

The integrals for those two peaks are equal. They are both 2H in her table. However, she notes that within each molecule, the first integral really represents 1H and the second represents 2H. That means there must be twice as many of molecule 1 as there are molecule 2. That way, there would be 2 x CH=O, and its integral would be the same as the 1 x CH_2-O in the other molecule.

One way to approach this kind of problem is to:

- choose one peak from each of the two compounds you want to compare.
- decide how many hydrogens each peak is supposed to represent in a molecule. Is it supposed to be a CH_2, a CH, a CH_3?
- divide the integral value for that peak by that number of hydrogens it is supposed to represent in a molecule.
- compare the two answers (integral A / ideal # H) vs (integral B / ideal # H).
- the ratio of those two answers is the ratio of the two molecules in the sample.

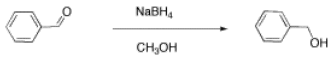
So there is twice as much aldehyde as alcohol in the mixture. In terms of these two compounds alone, she has 33% alcohol and 66% aldehyde. That's (1/(1+2)) x100% for the alcohol, and (2/(1+2)) x100% for the aldehyde. That calculation just represents the amount of individual component divided by the total of the components she wants to compare.

There are a number of things to take note of here.

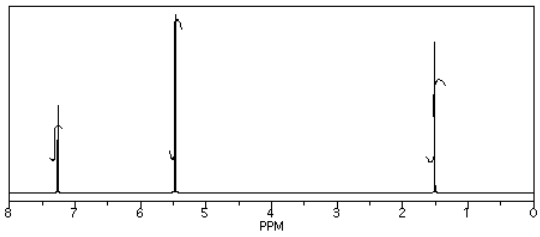
- Her reaction really didn't work very well. She still has majority starting material, not product.
- She will get a good grade on this lab. Although the experiment didn't work well, she has good data, and she has analyzed it very clearly.
- She has separated her data table into different sections for different compounds. Sometimes that makes it easier to analyze things.
- She has noted the actual integral data (she may have measured the integral with a ruler) and also converted it into a more convenient ratio, based on the integral for a peak that she felt certain about.

- She went one step further, and indicated the internal integration ratio within each individual compound.
- She calculated the % completion of the reaction using the integral data for the reactant and product, and she made clear what part of the data she used for that calculation. A similar procedure could be done if a student were just trying to separate two components in a mixture rather than carry out a reaction.
- She also calculated the overall purity of the mixture, including a solvent impurity that she failed to remove.
- However, $CHCl_3$ is not included in her analysis of purity. $CHCl_3$ really isn't part of her sample; it was just present in the NMR solvent, so it doesn't represent anything in the material she ended up with at the end of lab.

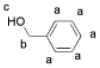
Another student carried out a similar reaction, shown below. He also finished the reaction by washing with water, but because methanol is soluble in water, he had to extract his product out of the water. He chose to use dichloromethane for that purpose.



He obtained the following data.



From this data, he constructed the following table.

	shift	integration	int(n)	multiplicity	partial structure	assignment
a	7.3 ppm	16 mm	5H	singlet		
b	5.4 ppm	64 mm	2H	singlet		
c	1.6 ppm	37 mm	1H	singlet	OH	

There are some things to learn about this table, too.

- Does the integration ratio really match the integral data? Or is this just wishful thinking?
- This table might reflect what he wants to see in the data. But what else could be in the data?
- $CHCl_3$ is often seen in NMR spectra if $CDCl_3$ is used for the NMR sample. It's there, at 7.2 ppm.
- "Leftover" or residual solvent is very common in real lab data. There it is, CH_2Cl_2 from the extraction, at 5.4 ppm.
- What about water? Sometimes people don't dry their solutions properly before evaporating the solvent. There is probably water around 1.5 to 1.6 ppm here.

This student might not get a very good grade; the sample does not even show up in the spectrum, so he lost it somewhere. But his analysis is also poor, so he will really get a terrible grade.

Example

Three students performed a synthesis of a fragrant ester, ethyl propanoate, $CH_3CH_2CO_2CH_2CH_3$. During their reactions, they each used a different solvent. The students were able to see peaks in the NMR spectrum for ethyl propanoate, as well as peaks for chloroform ($CHCl_3$, in the $CDCl_3$ they used to make their NMR samples).

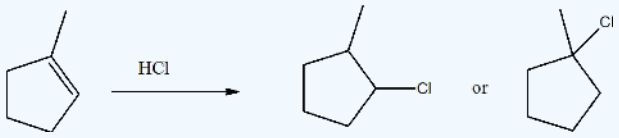
- See the first student's spectrum.
- See the second student's spectrum.
- See the third student's spectrum.

They were also able to determine that they had some leftover solvent in their samples by consulting a useful table of solvent impurities in NMR (which they found in Goldberg et. al., Organometallics 2010, 29, 2176-2179).

1. What is the ratio of leftover solvent to ethyl propanoate in each sample?
2. What is the percent of each sample that is leftover solvent

Exercise

14. How can H^1 NMR determine products? For example, how can you tell the difference between the products of this reaction?



Answer

14. Yes, you are able to determine the difference in the spectra. For the 2-chloro compound will have multiple quartets while the 1-chloro compound will only have a quintet and a triplet for the signals in the ring.

Contributors and Attributions

- Dr. Dietmar Kennepohl FCIC (Professor of Chemistry, Athabasca University)
- Prof. Steven Farmer (Sonoma State University)
- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

Chris P Schaller, Ph.D., (College of Saint Benedict / Saint John's University)

15.9: Uses of ¹H NMR Spectroscopy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.10: Sample NMR Spectra

Sample ^{1}H-NMR Spectra

List of Animated ^{1}H-NMR Spectra				
Bromoethane	**1-bromopropane**	**2-propanol**	**3-bromopropene**	**propanal**
Phenol	**acetone**	**propanoic acid**	**ethyl acetate**	**2-propenamide**
For all spectra click on a peak to highlight the protons responsible for the peak.				
More spectra can be found at Animated Spectra				

To see the integratals, right click on the spectra to open the menu, go to "view" and check the integrate" box.

Contributors and Attributions

Dr. Richard Spinney (The Ohio State University)

15.10: Sample NMR Spectra is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

Index

A

addition reaction
- 7.2: Types of Organic Reactions

alkanes
- 10.2: Physical Properties and Important Common Names

C

chirality
- 6.1: Chirality

Cyclohexane Conformations
- 5.14: Cyclohexane Conformations

D

Dehydration of Alcohols
- 13.14: Dehydration Reactions of Alcohols

Dihydroxylation of Alkenes
- 10.23: Dihydroxylation of Alkenes

E

elimination reaction
- 7.2: Types of Organic Reactions

enantiomers
- 6.1: Chirality

F

Fischer projection
- 6.2: Fischer Projections to communicate Chirality

functional group
- 3.4: Organic Functional Groups

H

Hammond Postulate
- 8.9: The Hammond Postulate and Transition States

I

isomers
- 3.2: Isomerism Introduction

L

Lewis structures
- 1.7: Electron-Dot Model of Bonding - Lewis Structures

M

Markovnikov's Rule
- 10.13: Alkene Asymmetry and Markovnikov's Rule

Meso Compounds
- 6.5: Meso Compounds

O

octet rule
- 1.5: Octet Rule - Ionic and Covalent Bonding (Review)

ozonolysis
- 10.24: Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes

R

rearrangement reaction
- 7.2: Types of Organic Reactions

redox
- 13.15: Oxidation States of Alcohols and Related Functional Groups

resonance
- 3.3: Resonance

S

substitution reaction
- 7.2: Types of Organic Reactions

U

Unimolecular Elimination
- 9.4: Characteristics of the E1 Reaction

Z

Zaitsev’s Rule
- 9.3: Zaitsev's Rule

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Chem 12A: Organic Chemistry Fall 2022

Webpages: 181

All licenses found:

- Undeclared: 100% (181 pages)

By Page

- Chem 12A: Organic Chemistry Fall 2022 - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry- review of atoms and molecules - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: Introduction to Organic Chemistry - *Undeclared*
    - 1.2: Structure of the Atom - *Undeclared*
    - 1.3: The Electronic Structure of Atoms - *Undeclared*
    - 1.4: Electron Configurations and Electronic Orbital Diagrams (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 1.5: Octet Rule - Ionic and Covalent Bonding (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 1.6: Lewis Structures and Formal Charges (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 1.7: Electron-Dot Model of Bonding - Lewis Structures - *Undeclared*
    - 1.8: Common Bonding Patterns for Organic Chemistry - *Undeclared*
    - 1.9: Hybridization and Molecular Shapes (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 1.10: Molecular Orbital (MO) Theory (Review) - *Undeclared*
  - 2: Polarity, Intermolecular Forces, and Physical Properties of Molecules - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 2.2: Intermolecular Forces (IMFs) - Review - *Undeclared*
    - 2.3: Organic Functional Groups- H-bond donors and H-bond acceptors - *Undeclared*
    - 2.4: Intermolecular Forces and Relative Boiling Points (bp) - *Undeclared*
    - 2.5: Intermolecular Forces and Solubilities - *Undeclared*
  - 3: Representations of Organic Molecules - *Undeclared*
    - 3.1: Structural Formulas - Lewis, Kekule, Bond-line, Condensed, and Perspective - *Undeclared*
    - 3.2: Isomerism Introduction - *Undeclared*
    - 3.3: Resonance - *Undeclared*
    - 3.4: Organic Functional Groups - *Undeclared*
  - 4: Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Arrhenius Acids and Bases (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 4.2: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases (Review) - *Undeclared*
    - 4.3: Distinguishing between pH and pKa - *Undeclared*
    - 4.4: Predicting Relative Acidity - *Undeclared*
    - 4.5: Lewis Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*
  - 5: Alkanes and Conformations - *Undeclared*
    - 5.1: Hydrocarbons and the Homologous Series - *Undeclared*
    - 5.2: Generic (Abbreviated) Structures (aka R Groups) - *Undeclared*
    - 5.3: Overview of the IUPAC Naming Strategy - *Undeclared*
    - 5.4: Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.5: Uses and Sources of Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.6: Cycloalkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.7: Haloalkane - Classification and Nomenclature - *Undeclared*
    - 5.8: Hydrocarbon Functional Groups - *Undeclared*
    - 5.9: Physical Properties of Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.10: Structure and Conformations of Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.11: Conformations of Butane - *Undeclared*
    - 5.12: Conformations of Higher Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.13: Cycloalkanes and Ring Strain - *Undeclared*
    - 5.14: Cyclohexane Conformations - *Undeclared*
    - 5.15: Conformations of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes - *Undeclared*

- 5.16: Cis-trans Isomerism in Cycloalkanes - *Undeclared*
- 5.17: Conformations of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes - *Undeclared*
- 5.18: Additional Exercises - *Undeclared*
- 5.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises - *Undeclared*

6: Stereoisomerism - *Undeclared*

- 6.1: Chirality - *Undeclared*
- 6.2: Fischer Projections to communicate Chirality - *Undeclared*
- 6.3: Absolute Configuration and the (R) and (S) System - *Undeclared*
- 6.4: Diastereomers - more than one chiral center - *Undeclared*
- 6.5: Meso Compounds - *Undeclared*
- 6.6: Isomerism Summary Diagram - *Undeclared*
- 6.7: Optical Activity and Racemic Mixtures - *Undeclared*
- 6.8: Resolution (Separation) of Enantiomers - *Undeclared*

7: Introduction to Organic Reactions - *Undeclared*

- 7.1: Describing a Reaction - Equilibrium and Free Energy Changes - *Undeclared*
- 7.2: Types of Organic Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 7.3: Reaction Mechanism Notation and Symbols - *Undeclared*
- 7.4: Polar Reactions- the Dance of the Nucleophile and Electrophile - *Undeclared*
- 7.5: Homolytic Cleavage and Bond Dissociation Energies - *Undeclared*
- 7.6: Reaction Energy Diagrams and Transition States - *Undeclared*
- 7.7: Reactive Intermediates - Carbocations - *Undeclared*

8: Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions - *Undeclared*

- 8.1: Alkyl Halides - Structure and Physical Properties - *Undeclared*
- 8.2: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination - *Undeclared*
- 8.3: The S_n2 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 8.4: Characteristics of the S_n2 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 8.5: Stereochemistry of the SN2 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 8.6: The S_n1 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 8.7: Characteristics of the S_n1 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 8.8: Rearrangements of the Carbocation and S_n1 Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 8.9: The Hammond Postulate and Transition States - *Undeclared*
- 8.10: Comparison of SN1 and SN2 Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 8.11: Biological Substitution Reactions - *Undeclared*

9: Elimination Reactions - *Undeclared*

- 9.1: Reactions of Alkyl Halides- Substitution and Elimination - *Undeclared*
- 9.2: Characteristics of the E2 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 9.3: Zaitsev's Rule - *Undeclared*
- 9.4: Characteristics of the E1 Reaction - *Undeclared*
- 9.5: E2 Regiochemistry and Cyclohexane Conformations - *Undeclared*
- 9.6: The E2 Reaction and the Deuterium Isotope Effect - *Undeclared*
- 9.7: Comparison of E1 and E2 Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 9.8: Comparing Substitution and Elimination Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 9.9: Biological Elimination Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 9.10: Additional Exercises - *Undeclared*
- 9.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises - *Undeclared*

10: Properties and Reactions of Alkenes - *Undeclared*

- 10.1: Alkene Structure - *Undeclared*
- 10.2: Physical Properties and Important Common Names - *Undeclared*
- 10.3: The Alkene Double Bond and Stereoisomerism - *Undeclared*
- 10.4: Degrees of Unsaturation - *Undeclared*
- 10.5: The E/Z System (when cis/trans does not work) - *Undeclared*
- 10.6: Stability of Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 10.7: Alkene Synthesis by Elimination of Alkyl Halides - *Undeclared*
- 10.8: Alkene Synthesis by Dehydration of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
- 10.9: Additional Exercises. Part 1 - *Undeclared*
- 10.10: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 1 - *Undeclared*
- 10.11: Electrophilic Addition Reactions (EARs) - *Undeclared*
- 10.12: Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Symmetrical Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 10.13: Alkene Asymmetry and Markovnikov's Rule - *Undeclared*
- 10.14: Hydration- Acid Catalyzed Addition of Water - *Undeclared*
- 10.15: Hydration- Oxymercuration-Demercuration - *Undeclared*
- 10.16: Hydration - Hydroboration-Oxidation - *Undeclared*

- 10.17: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Achiral Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 10.18: Stereochemistry of Reactions - Hydration of Chiral Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 10.19: Addition of Halogens - *Undeclared*
- 10.20: Formation of Halohydrins - *Undeclared*
- 10.21: Reduction of Alkenes - Catalytic Hydrogenation - *Undeclared*
- 10.22: Oxidation of Alkenes - Epoxidation - *Undeclared*
- 10.23: Dihydroxylation of Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 10.24: Oxidative Cleavage of Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 10.25: Additional Exercises, Part 2 - *Undeclared*
- 10.26: Solutions to Additional Exercises, Part 2 - *Undeclared*

- 11: Properties and Reactions of Alkynes - *Undeclared*
  - 11.1: Structure and Physical Properties - *Undeclared*
  - 11.2: 10.2 Synthesis of Alkynes - Elimination Reactions of Dihalides - *Undeclared*
  - 11.3: Reactions of Alkynes - Addition of HX and X_2 - *Undeclared*
  - 11.4: Hydration of Alkynes for Markovnikov Products - *Undeclared*
  - 11.5: Hydration of Alkynes for Anti-Markovnikov Products - *Undeclared*
  - 11.6: 10.6 Reduction of Alkynes - *Undeclared*
  - 11.7: Oxidation of Alkynes - *Undeclared*
  - 11.8: Acidity of Terminal Alkynes and Acetylide Ions - *Undeclared*
  - 11.9: Synthesis of Larger Alkynes from Acetylides - *Undeclared*
  - 11.10: An Introduction to Multiple Step Synthesis - *Undeclared*
  - 11.11: Additional Exercises - *Undeclared*
  - 11.12: Solutions to Additional Exercises - *Undeclared*
- 12: Free Radical Reactions - *Undeclared*
  - 12.1: Reactive Intermediates - Radicals - *Undeclared*
  - 12.2: The Free-Radical Halogenation of Alkanes - *Undeclared*
  - 12.3: Radical-Chain Addition Reactions to Alkenes - *Undeclared*
- 13: Properties and Reactions of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.1: Introduction to Structure and Synthesis of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.2: Classification of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.3: Physical Properties of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.4: Spectroscopy of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.5: Synthesis of Alcohols - Review - *Undeclared*
  - 13.6: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.7: Reduction of the Carbonyl Group - Synthesis of 1º and 2º Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.8: Organometallic Reagents - *Undeclared*
  - 13.9: Organometallic Reagents in Alcohol Synthesis - *Undeclared*
  - 13.10: Additional Exercises Part 1 - *Undeclared*
  - 13.11: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 1 - *Undeclared*
  - 13.12: Reactions of Alcohols with Hydrohalic Acids - *Undeclared*
  - 13.13: Reactions with Phosphorus Halides and Thionyl Chloride - *Undeclared*
  - 13.14: Dehydration Reactions of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.15: Oxidation States of Alcohols and Related Functional Groups - *Undeclared*
  - 13.16: Oxidation Reactions of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.17: Protection of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
  - 13.18: Additional Exercises Part 2 - *Undeclared*
  - 13.19: Solutions to Additional Exercises Part 2 - *Undeclared*
- 14: Infrared Spectroscopy and Mass Spectrometry - *Undeclared*
  - 14.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum and Spectroscopy - *Undeclared*
  - 14.2: Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy - *Undeclared*
  - 14.3: IR-Active and IR-Inactive Vibrations - *Undeclared*
  - 14.4: Interpretting IR Spectra - *Undeclared*
  - 14.5: Infrared Spectra of Some Common Functional Groups - *Undeclared*
  - 14.6: Summary and Tips to Distinguish between Carbonyl Functional Groups - *Undeclared*
- 15: Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy - *Undeclared*
  - 15.1: Theory of Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) - *Undeclared*
  - 15.2: NMR Spectra - an introduction and overview - *Undeclared*
  - 15.3: Chemical Shifts and Shielding - *Undeclared*
  - 15.4: ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy and Proton Equivalence - *Undeclared*
  - 15.5: Functional Groups and Chemical Shifts in ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy - *Undeclared*
  - 15.6: Integration of ^{1}H NMR Absorptions- Proton Counting - *Undeclared*
  - 15.7: Spin-Spin Splitting in ^{1}H NMR Spectra - *Undeclared*

- 15.8: More Complex Spin-Spin Splitting Patterns - *Undeclared*
- 15.9: Uses of ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy - *Undeclared*
- 15.10: Sample NMR Spectra - *Undeclared*

- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*